START

Microfilmed For

OCLC Online Computer Library Center, Inc.

November 1998

Microfilmed By
Preservation Resources
Bethlehem, PA 18017

Camera Operators
Sandy Kehm

COPYRIGHT

The copyright law of the United States - Title 17, United States Code - concerns the making of photocopies or other reproductions of copyrighted material.

Under certain conditions specified in the law, libraries and archives are authorized to furnish a photocopy or other reproduction. One of these specified conditions is that the photocopy or reproduction is not to be "used for any purpose other than private study, scholarship, or research." If a user makes a request for, or later uses, a photocopy or reproduction for purposes in excess of "fair use," that user may be liable for copyright infringement.

This institution reserves the right to refuse to accept a copy order if, in its judgement, fulfillment of the order would involve violation of the copyright law.

Dewey, Melvil

Decimal classification and relative index...16th ed.

Lake Placid Club, N.Y.

1958

BIBLIOGRAPHIC RECORD TARGET

```
OCLC:  15254256            Rec stat:    n
Entered:    19870302       Replaced:    19980607       Used:    19980805
▶ Type:  a     ELvl:  K     Srce:  d     Audn:        Ctrl:        Lang:  eng
BLvl:  m       Form:        Conf:  0     Biog:        MRec:        Ctry:  nyu
               Cont:        GPub:        Fict:  0     Indx:  0
Desc:  a       Ills:        Fest:  0     DtSt:  s     Dates: 1958,     ¶
▶   1  040     EQO ≠c EQO ≠d UBA ¶
▶   2  090     ≠b  ¶
▶   3  049     PR1A ¶
▶   4  100 1   Dewey, Melvil, ≠d 1851-1931. ¶
▶   5  245 10  Decimal classification and relative index / ≠c [by Melvil
Dewey]. ¶
▶   6  250     16th ed. / ≠b editor: Benjamin A. Custer. ¶
▶   7  260     Lake Placid (N.Y.) : ≠b Forest Press, ≠c 1958. ¶
▶   8  300     2 v. (viii, 1409, 1411-2439 p.) ; ≠c 26 cm. ¶
▶   9  505 1   v. 1. Tables -- v. 2. Index. ¶
▶  10  650  7  Representacao Tematica (Classificacao) ≠2 larpcal ¶
▶  11  650  7  Biblioteconomia (Teoria) ≠2 larpcal ¶
▶  12  700 1   Custer, Benjamin Allen, ≠d 1912- ¶
```

MICROFILMED BY
PRESERVATION RESOURCES
Bethlehem, PA 18017

on behalf of the
OCLC Online Computer Library Center, Inc.
Dublin, Ohio 43017

Film Size: 35mm
Image Placement: 2A
Reduction Ratio: 12:1
Date Filming Began: 11-17-98
Camera Operator: S.K.

GUIDE TO CONTENTS

Dewey Decimal Classification
1876-1979

Reel No.	Edition/Year
6	13th ed. (1932) - v. 1 Tables, v. 2 Index
7	14th ed. (1942) - v. 1 Tables, v. 2 Index
8	15th ed. (1951) - Standard (15th) Edition
9	16th ed. (1958) - v. 1 Tables
10	16th ed. (1958) - v. 2 Index

GUIDE TO CONTENTS

Dewey Decimal Classification
1876-1979

Reel No.	Edition/Year	
11	17th ed. (1965) -	v.1 Tables, v. 2 Index
12	18th ed. (1971) -	v. 1 Introduction/Tables v. 2 Schedules
13	18th ed. (1971) -	v. 3 Index
14	19th ed. (1979) -	v. 1 Introduction/Tables v. 2 Schedules
15	19th ed. (1979) -	v. 3 Index

REEL

9

THIS REEL CONTAINS:

16th ed. (1958)

v. 1 Tables

SOME PAGES IN THE ORIGINAL CONTAIN FLAWS AND DEFECTS WHICH APPEAR ON THE FILM

2.0 mm ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz1234567890

1.5 mm ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz1234567890

PM-MGP
METRIC GENERAL PURPOSE TARGET
PHOTOGRAPHIC

200 mm

150 mm

100 mm

A5

A4

A3

1.0 1.1 1.25 1.4 1.6 1.8 2.0 2.2 2.5 2.8 3.2 3.6 4.0 4.5

1.0 mm ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz1234567890

1.5 mm ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz1234567890

2.0 mm ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz 1234567890

2.5 mm ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz 1234567890

PRECISION℠ RESOLUTION TARGETS

A&P International
2715 Upper Afton Road, St. Paul, MN 55119-4760
612/738-9329 FAX 612/738-1496

4.5 mm ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz 1234567890

3.5 mm ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz1234567890

Volume 1
Tables

DEWEY
Decimal Classification

Edition 16

Decimal Classification

DEWEY

Decimal Classification and Relative Index

Devised by

MELVIL DEWEY

16th Edition

OCLC INC.
OCLC INFORMATION CENTER
OCLC, INC.

Volume 1

Tables

FOREST PRESS INC

LAKE PLACID CLUB
ESSEX COUNTY
NEW YORK

© Melvil Dewey
1876, 1885, 1911, 1913, 1915, 1919
© Library Bureau
1888, 1891, 1894, 1899
© Forest Press, Inc.
1951
© Lake Placid Club Education Foundation
1922, 1927, 1932, 1942, 1952, 1958

Words which the editors have reason to believe constitute trade-marks have been designated as such by the symbol ®. However, neither the presence nor the absence of such a designation should be regarded as affecting the legal status of any trade-mark.

The Library of Congress has cataloged this publication as follows:

Dewey, Melvil, 1851–1931.
Dewey decimal classification and relative index. 16th ed. Lake Placid Club, N. Y., Forest Press [1958]

2 v. (viii, 2439 p.) 26 cm.

First published anonymously in 1876 under title: A classification and subject index. 2d–14th editions published under title: Decimal classification and relativ index.

Contents.—v. 1. Tables.—v. 2. Index.

1. Classification, Decimal. I. Title.

Z696.D519 1958 025.43 58-9964

Library of Congress

THIS BOOK WAS COMPOSED, PRINTED AND BOUND
IN THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA
AT KINGSPORT PRESS, INC., KINGSPORT, TENNESSEE

Contents

Volume 1

Foreword 1

Editor's introduction 5
- History 5
- Basic plan 7
- Mnemonic aids 8
- Form divisions 10
- Annotations in the tables 12
- Alternative provisions 14
- Variations 15
- Use of letters 16
- Structure 18
- Degree of expansion 19
- Dealing with long numbers 20
- Relocations 21
- Obsolescent schedules 22
- Evolutionary development 23
- Suggestions for use 23
  - How to use the tables and index 23
  - How to determine the subject of a book 23
  - How to assign the class number 24
- Spelling 25
- Acknowledgments 25
- Conclusion 27

Melvil Dewey's introduction 29
- Description 29
  - Orijin and growth 29
  - Extent of use 30
  - What is the sistem? 31
  - Notation 32
  - Best known decimal form 32
  - Relativ subject index 33
  - What relativ index includes 35

Tables 35
Coordination 37
New subjects 37
Choice and arranjement of heds 37
Sequence of allyd subjects 37
Cachtitles 38
Form distinctions 38
Minute clasing 39
Tentativ tables 40
Nemonics 40
Decimalism 42
Relativ location 43
Sizes on shelvs 45

Catalogs 45
Name catalog 45
Shelflist 45
Clast catalog 45
Dictionary catalog 46

Advantajes 47
Shelvs 47
Shelflist 47
Accession book 47
Pamflets 47
Sale duplicates 47
Charjing sistem 48
Subject references 48
Recataloging or reclasifying 48
Adaptability 48
Arabic numerals 49
Endowment of special departments 49
Summary 49

Sugjestions to uzers 50
Numeration 50
Plan of book 50
Familiarity with clasification 51
Subject of a book 51
Assyning clas numbers 52
Number of figures uzed in clas number 54
Bilding numbers 55
Book numbers 56

Variations practicabl 57
Cautions 57
Letter or simbol notations for chanjes or aditions 59
Fiction 59
Juvenils 60
Biografy 60
Paralel libraries 61
Combining languaj and literature 61
Reference library 61
Contractions for specialists 62
Use of alfabet or cronolojy for final subdivisions 63
Broken order 63
Pro and con division of topics 64

Bibliografic modifications 65
Accretion syn + 66
Cupling syn — 66
Relation syn : 66
Form syn (0) 67
Universality syn ∞ 67
Place syn (3)–(9) 67
Languaj syn = 67
Time syn " " 67
Jeneral points of view syn 00 67
A to Z 68
Sequence 68

Other uses 68
Bookstores 68
Offis files 68
Scrapbooks 69
Index rerums 69
Topical indexes 71
Aknowlejments 71
Future of D C 73

Summaries 76
Form divisions 89
Symbols and devices used in tables 96
Tables 97

Volume 2

Explanation of the relative index 1411
Symbols and devices used in index 1416
Index 1417
Geographic divisions 2421
Special author table for William Shakespeare 2425
Table for college and university publications 2428
Obsolescent schedules 2429

Foreword

"We earnestly request all users to give us the benefit of their criticism in order that sometime our successors may actually bring out 'the perfect book.'" This invitation which appeared in the foreword to the Standard (15th) edition was, of course, not accepted by "all users" but a generous number did respond in print, through correspondence, or orally. This extensive criticism, both favorable and unfavorable, cannot be summarized here but its constructive nature provided specific guidance for the preparation of this edition and led to a request on the part of the Lake Placid Club Education Foundation that the Library of Congress assume the responsibility for the editorial work. Responsibility for editorial policy rests with the Decimal Classification Editorial Policy Committee, a joint committee of the Lake Placid Club Education Foundation, the American Library Association, and the Library of Congress.

Editions 2–14 of the classification were each characterized largely by the addition of expansions of particular parts of the classification. After the 14th edition appeared in 1942 many American librarians came to believe that a standard edition, in which all parts of the classification were expanded to the same degree, would be preferable to one in which some parts appeared in extreme detail while others were relatively unelaborated.[1] In response to this desire for a standard edition the 15th edition which appeared in 1951 included reductions of those parts which were deemed to be in too great detail, expansions of parts insufficiently detailed, and, in addition to provision for new concepts, a modernization of the terminology.

Criteria for the 16th edition were adopted by the Editorial Policy Committee in 1953, and revised in 1955, to guide the editorial staff in the preparation of an edition to meet the criticisms that the 15th edition was insufficient for the needs of many libraries. In the restatement, the objectives of this edition were described as follows:

> The 16th Edition shall be designed for use in the classification of books and similar materials in general libraries, regardless of size, except (1) those libraries which prefer to use an abridged edition and (2) those libraries with special collections which prefer to use close

[1] Clapp, V. W. *Progress towards the 16th edition of Dewey.* Journal of Cataloging and Classification, v. 12, p. 197–98, Oct. 1956.

classification for which extremely detailed expansions are needed. Its structure should be such that it can be applied broadly or in detail, depending upon type and size of library. This requires maintenance of the flexibility of notation in the DC—a valuable feature not common to all classification schemes—which makes possible the shortening of numbers without damaging the structure of the schedules, so that the same edition can be used by libraries varying greatly in size. Stability of the fundamental structure of the schedules should be maintained, so that any part of any one of the three types of editions—abridged, regular or standard, and a possible future bibliographic edition—can be used with parts of the others, without making total reclassification necessary. The 16th Edition should also take into account, in both introduction and schedules, the needs of library schools in teaching the theory, principles, and practice of the DC.[2]

The most important decision that faced the Decimal Classification Editorial Policy Committee was whether to follow the principle of *continuity and integrity of numbers* or that of *keeping pace with knowledge*. These principles and the Committee's decision are well stated in Godfrey Dewey's preface to the 7th edition:

> In the making and editing of any classification, two basic principles are constantly in conflict. One is the DC traditional policy of integrity of numbers, which enables its users to depend on each new edition to include few or no relocations of topics but to include expansions which are based on the schedules in earlier editions, thereby achieving continuity and avoiding the cost of reclassification. The other principle is the philosophy of keeping pace with knowledge, which holds that any classification scheme, to retain its usefulness must, from time to time, restate or redefine and regroup or rearrange subjects according to the changed concepts of a new generation. The first principle, strongly urged by Melvil Dewey, governed the editorial policy of the first 14 editions; the second principle influenst largely the editorial policy of Edition 15, resulting in relocation of something like a thousand topics, about 300 of which would appear in an abridged edition.
>
> Professional opinion of these policies has varied widely but with no clear cut majority either as to principles or practice. In order to determine as clearly as possible the wishes of the library profession, and to incorporate the readjustments to meet those wishes in the present

[2] Journal of Cataloging and Classification, v. 12, p. 93, April 1956.

> abridged edition, instead of waiting several years for Edition 16, publication of this edition was delayed for several months to give time for a questionnaire to be sent to nearly a thousand representative libraries and library schools. In the light of that questionnaire, about 55% of the relocations promulgated in Edition 15 are being retained; about 45% restored to the status of earlier editions culminating in Edition 14. At the same time, the Decimal Classification Editorial Policy Committee has expressly confirmed, for the future, the guiding principle of integrity of numbers; accepting the recommendation of the Special Advisory Committee on the Decimal Classification, appointed by the ALA Division of Cataloging and Classification: that relocation of subjects be made sparingly, and only upon overwhelming need and demand.

The Decimal Classification Editorial Policy Committee knows that the conflict between these two principles will prevent any library classification from reaching the status of "the perfect book" but still invites criticism of this edition with the hope of making further improvements in the 17th edition.

The Committee has nine members, six of whom are appointed for six-year terms with nominations alternating between the Lake Placid Club Education Foundation and the American Library Association, the other three representing Forest Press, Inc., the Library of Congress (as long as LC maintains its concern with the Decimal Classification), and the Cataloging and Classification Section, Resources and Technical Services Division of the ALA. Present members are Elizabeth C. Borden, Godfrey Dewey, Virginia Drewry, Carlyle J. Frarey, Bertha M. Frick, Evelyn M. Hensel, Harriet D. MacPherson, Lucile M. Morsch, and Fremont Rider. Others who served during the preparation of this edition are Verner W. Clapp, who served as chairman until October 1956, Janet S. Dickson, the late Milton J. Ferguson, Richard O. Pautzsch, and Mrs. Lela de Otte Surrey.

Lucile M. Morsch
CHAIRMAN, DECIMAL CLASSIFICATION
EDITORIAL POLICY COMMITTEE

Washington, D.C.
1 May 1958

Editor's Introduction

History

The confusion of the contents of the Amherst College Library in 1872 must have presented to Melvil Dewey, student library assistant, a similar challenge to that of his mother's pantry when, at the age of five, he rearranged it systematically. Always an enthusiastic reformer, and urged on by his hatred of waste of time, it probably did not seem to him unusual that at twenty he should try to bring order out of chaos, a situation which had evidently been of little concern to his predecessors. Ultimately, in solving the problem at Amherst, he achieved a high degree of order for a vast number of libraries the world over.

After study of the classification of knowledge as conceived by Aristotle, Bacon, Locke, and other philosophers, and the recently publisht [1] library classifications of Schwartz and Harris, Dewey decided to use a scheme of arranging books by subject based upon Harris's inversion of the Baconian order of History, Poesy, Philosophy. This decision to use a subject arrangement was a radical departure from the almost universal practice of arranging books alphabetically by their authors' names, or by size or accession or even color.

The problem of devising a simple scheme of notation was possibly more difficult than deciding upon the plan of arrangement. None of the philosophic classifications used such a device. The Schwartz scheme was complicated by the addition of symbols for size, and the Harris notation provided only for classes, not for single books. Dewey's visits to libraries in New York and New England revealed only how much need there was for an efficient system. The three existing schemes for decimal arrangement of books, du Maine's in 1583, the Glasgow, *ca.* 1790, and the Shurtleff in 1856, evidently did not impress Dewey. All three were based upon numbering shelves rather than books. In a moment of inspiration, born of intensive study and thought, came the solution which now seems so simple, the application of Arabic numerals used decimally as notation for books arranged by subject.

The Amherst Library Committee may well have been somewhat star-

[1] For simplified spelling in this work, see the section on *Spelling* below.

tled to receive from a student assistant three papers proposing, not only a revolutionary classification scheme for the library, but also a carefully considered account of its merits and how it was especially adapted to the needs of the Amherst Library. However, it approved the proposal, and, with the advice and help of others, the following three years were devoted by Dewey to improving and extending the original plan and in reorganizing and classifying the library.

In 1876 *A Classification and Subject Index for Cataloguing and Arranging the Books and Pamphlets of a Library,* an improved and amplified version of the original plan, was publisht anonymously. In the years that followed, Dewey was instrumental in establishing a number of library organizations which, in turn, contributed to the success of the new classification. Almost simultaneously with the publication of the classification, the American Library Association and an organization later to be known as the Library Bureau were founded. The *American Library Journal* issued its first number in the same year. Eleven years later, the first library school was opened at Columbia University. Thus, for the first time, the library profession was given a multiplicity of outlets for the expression and propagation of its increasingly liberal concept of the function of libraries and the resultant necessity for efficient library operation.

In its radical departure from the old order, the Decimal Classification was wonderfully fitted to the progressive spirit of this period of transition. It never lacked adherents, and they never lacked channels for spreading their enthusiasm. How widespread its use and popularity in the United States had become is well illustrated by the creation in 1930, because of popular demand, of a section in the Library of Congress for the purpose of assigning Decimal Classification numbers to books which libraries using the scheme might be expected to acquire. A recent estimate has shown that about 96 percent of the public libraries in the United States, 89 percent of the college and university libraries, and 64 percent of the special libraries follow the system.

Use of the classification has spread outside the United States to Canada, Latin America, Europe, Asia, Africa, and Australia. In part, or in its entirety, it has been translated into French, Spanish, Portuguese, German, Dutch, Czech, Greek, Hebrew, Turkish, Japanese, Korean, Indonesian, Malayalam, and other languages.

Some impetus to this general acceptance was given by the Institut International de Bibliographie in 1895, when it decided to use the DC as

the basis for a bibliographic classification for its international subject index. In 1905 the Institut publisht the *Classification Décimale,* using the basic plan of the DC expanded considerably and employing supplementary symbols to designate subject relationships. In 1927–1929 a revision was publisht under the title, *Classification Décimale Universelle.* Both of these are referred to interchangeably as the CD, the UDC, and the Brussels Classification. They have been translated in full or in abridged form from the French into a number of other languages, including Dutch, Swedish, German, and English. Differences have appeared thru the years between the DC and the CD, due in part to the more complex demands of a bibliographic classification, but the basis is still fundamentally that establisht by Dewey.

Basic Plan

The Decimal Classification divides all knowledge, as represented by books and other materials which are acquired by libraries, into nine main classes numbered by digits 1 to 9. Material too general to belong to any one of these classes, such as newspapers and encyclopedias, falls into a tenth class numbered 0 which precedes the others. The classes are written as hundreds; thus, 000 is general works, 100 is philosophy, 200 is religion. Each class is separated into nine divisions, with general works on the class occupying a tenth division which precedes the others. Thus, 500 is pure science in general (dictionaries, periodicals, collected essays, and the like), while 510 is mathematics, 520 is astronomy and allied sciences, 530 is physics, and so on. Each division is again divided into nine sections preceded by a general section; thus, 510 is mathematics in general, 511 arithmetic, 512 algebra, 513 elementary Euclidean geometry. Further division, to any extent whatsoever which may be desirable to bring together like materials and separate unlike ones, may be made by the addition of digits following a decimal point. Altho most numbers in this edition do not exceed six digits in length, *i.e.,* three to the right of the decimal point, nevertheless, the requirements of the literature in various subject fields which have grown rapidly since Melvil Dewey's original scheme was developt are such that the numbers extend sometimes to nine and in a few cases to even more digits.

All the books acquired by a library may be clast according to the tables provided by the DC, each being assigned to, and markt with the number of, the class, division, section, or subsection to which it belongs, the num-

ber being the device which brings together on the library's shelves all its books on a given subject, placing them next to books on related subjects, and placing related subjects together as part of the broad class which contains them, the whole in an orderly progression.

The basic pattern is presented in a series of summaries, the first of which shows the ten classes, the second the one hundred divisions, and the third the approximately one thousand sections. Use of the classification will rapidly make one familiar with the first two summaries and much of the third.

The three summaries are followed by full classification tables, often called schedules, which present in numerical order all classes, divisions, sections, and subsections to the full degree of expansion required by most general libraries of practically any size. Because the schedules are filled with definitions, scope notes, synonyms, cross references, directions, and other helpful devices which are described below, it is important that the classifier always refer to them before attempting to class a specific book; he should never attempt to do this from the summaries alone, which are supplied simply as a sort of bird's-eye view of the full schedules. Scattered thru the schedules are 76 special summaries which supplement the general ones by showing the pattern of division of various three-, four-, and five-figure numbers which, in their full development, are so complex as to be difficult to view as a whole.

In volume two is an alphabetic index, no less important a part of the classification than the tables, which supplies for all headings and many synonyms and related terms the number where each subject may be found in the schedules. Because the index is "relative," showing where the various relations of a given subject may be clast, the classifier should refer to it even when he feels certain just where in the full tables the subject of his particular book belongs, to make sure that he has not overlookt a better number.

Full explanation of how to use the schedules, the index, and supplementary tables follows.

Mnemonic Aids

Numerous devices recur thruout the schedules which promote the ease of use of the system. One of these is the repeated use of certain numbers with the same meaning. For example, 450 is Italian language, 850 is Italian literature, 945 is Italian history, 035 is Italian encyclopedias, 075 is

Italian newspapers, and so on. In each of these cases the digit 5 stands for Italy. This does not, of course, mean that 5 always denotes Italy, for its use is required in many other contexts, but Italy is always represented by 5.

This mnemonic feature is especially useful in the areas of language, literature, geography, and history. In class 400 language, and class 800 literature, 2 means English (*e.g.*, 420 English language, 820 English literature), 3 German, 4 French, 5 Italian, 6 Spanish, 69 Portuguese (469 and 869), and so on. Under each *language*, 3 means dictionaries, 4 means synonyms, 5 means grammar, *e.g.*, English dictionary 423, French synonyms 444, Portuguese grammar 469.5. Under each *literature*, 1 means poetry, 2 means drama, 3 means fiction, 4 means essays, 5 means oratory, *e.g.*, German drama 832, Italian oratory 855. In class 900 history, Europe is 940, and 942 means England, 943 Germany, 944 France, 945 Italy, 946 Spain, 946.9 Portugal; under 950 Asia, 951 means China, 952 Japan, 954 India. In this fashion, the modern history of the entire earth is spread out over 940–999.

Each of these systems of division, the language division of 400 and the geographic division of 900, particularly the latter, are repeated in many appropriate places. Geography itself is clast in 910, and geography of specific parts of the world is in 914–919 *divided like* 940–999. Thus, whereas 940 is history of Europe, 914 is geography of Europe; whereas 942 is history of England, 914.2 is geography of England; whereas 946.9 is history of Portugal, 914.69 is geography of Portugal. In the same way, 336.4–336.9 is public finance of specific countries, with public finance of the United States in 336.73 because history of the United States is 973. This kind of division is not limited to whole countries: a guidebook to Detroit, Michigan is 917.743 4, because history of Detroit is 977.434; the reader will observe that the digits following 91 (for geography and description) are the same as those following 9 (for history), with the decimal point always following the third digit. In exactly the same way, many numbers thruout the schedules may be divided like 940–999 or like other appropriate sequences of numbers which have been spelled out at different points in the schedules, thus rendering it unnecessary to repeat long sequences over and over. For example, 312.3 statistics on incidence of specific diseases is divided like 616 medicine, so that, since 616.912 is medical treatment of smallpox, 312.391 2 is statistics on incidence of smallpox. In a few cases, a number may be divided like the entire classification, 000–999; most noteworthy of these is 016 bibliography, which

may be divided by any appropriate number, *e.g.*, bibliography of medical treatment of smallpox 016.616 912, bibliography of English fiction 016.823, bibliography of history of Detroit 016.977 434.

By far the most frequently used division is that like 940–999, or like 930–999 (930 is ancient history). A list of the numbers which may be divided like these numbers follows the relative index.

The classifier should not permit his fascination with the possibilities of dividing one number like another to lead him into ill-advised combinations which may turn out to be more confusing than helpful. Addition of digits not specifically provided in the schedules is likely to result in the blocking of a number which a future edition may expand in a way which will serve his purposes more satisfactorily. It is always preferable, if local additions are required, to use letters or other devices instead of digits. Numbers are fascinating things, but the unwary can trip over them. The classifier should also remember that the instruction, "divide like," always means to divide like another number *only where applicable.*

Form Divisions

Altho the classification is generally by subject except in class 800 literature, subarrangement for the form of presentation of a subject is often desirable. To provide for this the classifier may use the regular "form divisions," a full list of which immediately precedes the complete tables. The chief ones are:

01 Philosophy and theory
02 Handbooks and outlines
03 Dictionaries and encyclopedias
04 Essays and lectures
05 Periodicals
06 Organizations and societies
07 Study and teaching
08 Collections and polygraphy
09 History and local treatment

It will be noted that, while these are known as form divisions, and handbooks, dictionaries, periodicals are true forms, some of the divisions are more properly subject aspects, *e.g.*, philosophy, study and teaching, history. The chief point to be remembered, however, is that most subjects can be treated according to any one or more of these forms or aspects.

The form divisions may be used with any subject when applicable. For example, a dictionary of science 503, study and teaching of mathematics 510.7, history of Italian poetry 851.09. When two divisions are applicable,

e.g., lectures on philosophy of science, 01, 07, 09, which are partly of a subject nature, should be preferred to 02–06, 08.

Altho the form divisions may be used with any subject, they should not be used indiscriminately. It is, for example, wise not to divide by them when the number to be divided is more than four or five digits in length, except where the possibility is explicitly shown in the schedules, lest their use block the library's taking advantage of expansions which may be introduced into future editions. This is particularly true when the subject which the classifier proposes to divide has a broader meaning than the subject of the book being classified. A form division should not be used when the specific aspect is otherwise provided for by the schedules, *e.g.*, 655.1 history of printing, 704.9 collected writings on art; the schedules often, but not always, lead the classifier from the expected form division number to the number which has been used in its stead. The relative index, too, has entries leading to such deviations from form division numers, *e.g.*, Theory music 781. In general, except in the 900's, form division 09, as well as other numbers which the tables recommend be divided like 930 or 940–999, should not be divided closer than by the country, or in the United States by the state. Furthermore, any title should be clast by its most specific subject before subdivision by place is considered, *e.g.*, taxation in the United States 336.209 73 (or preferably just 336.2) rather than 336.73 public finance in the United States. Likewise, a form division for a specific work should be applied only to the narrowest number which includes the book, *e.g.*, essays on English history in 942.004, not in 940.04 or in 904.

In general, only one 0 is required to identify a form division, *e.g.*, 503 not 500.03, 510.7 not 510.07. However, in certain schedules it has been necessary to use 0 with a special meaning, and then the classifier should, and normally is instructed in the schedule itself to, use two 0's for the form divisions; in a very few cases, three 0's are required for form divisions. For example, in class 900 a 0 is normally used to distinguish period divisions in history, so that history of England in the Tudor period is 942.05, while a periodical devoted to English history is 942.005; and again, local government in Europe is 352.04, local elections are 352.004, essays on local government are 352.000 4.

Form divisions are always given explicitly in the tables under the ten major classes, *e.g.*, 109, 204, 303. Under other numbers they are spelled out only for specific reasons, such as when the form division of a number has been extended to take on a special but related meaning in addition to

the normal one, or instead of the normal one which is not applicable to the specific subject.

Annotations in the Tables

Even with careful choice of terms for the headings corresponding to the numbers in the classification tables, it may be difficult for the busy classifier under the pressure of his daily work to decide where various titles should be clast. For example, altho it is easy enough to determine that a general work on the history of England should go in 942, it is not so obvious what should be done with a book on the history of the Commonwealth of Nations. What is the difference between a collection of English essays, and a collection of essays about English literature? Should a work on gambling class in 798.48 with betting on the horses? Do reparations for World War I go with works on the war, in history, or with works on public debt, in economics? To assist in making such decisions quickly and easily, this edition of the DC is the most extensively annotated of any in its long history. Notes are of several varieties.

Definitions are supplied for terms which might not appear in common reference sources, and also to distinguish the specific meaning intended from among a variety of common meanings.

Scope notes indicate the aspects of a given subject which are intended to be included in a specific number. A special kind of scope note is "comprehensive works," which means that, when different aspects of a subject are clast in different places, works treating of the subject comprehensively are clast at the place indicated; it is always followed by a cross reference telling where to class specific aspects. For example, comprehensive works on penmanship are clast in 652.1, but some specific aspects of the subject are clast elsewhere, *e.g.*, handwriting analysis and identification 137.7, handwriting analysis in criminal investigation 364.12, paleography 417, manuscripts 091, methods of teaching writing in elementary schools 372.51.

Inclusion notes enumerate parts of a topic and closely related topics which, because the amount of book literature is expected to be insufficient to justify their having separate numbers, are clast in the same number as the main topic. Sometimes an inclusion note under a broad topic is intended to apply to each of the subdivisions of that topic which are provided for separately, *e.g.*, the note, "including selection, deterioration, preservation, construction properties," which appears with 691 building

construction materials, is meant to apply to each subdivision, 691.1 timber, 691.2 building stones, 691.3 concrete and reinforst concrete, 691.6 glass, and so on.

Instruction notes supply specific directions of various sorts, *e.g.*, when to use irregular form divisions, when to divide like another number or series of numbers, when to arrange subtopics alphabetically, where to find alternative provision for a subject, where to class topics which, in an earlier edition, were clast at the place where the note appears.

Cross references, which are printed in *italics*, refer the classifier to other numbers where he should class related topics, thus to a degree serving to differentiate between numbers. For example, under 309.2 social planning, the classifier is told to see 338.9 for economic planning and 711 for planning of physical facilities. Many references, especially those following "comprehensive works" scope notes, are "blanket" references, which advise the classifier to turn to that one of a group of related topics which is the subject of the specific book in his hand. Such a reference may be found at 942, history of England, "*For a specific part of the Commonwealth of Nations, see the part, e.g., Canada* 971," and at 770 photography, "*For a specific application of photography, see the subject, e.g., astronomical photography* 522.63." The classifier must not let himself become baffled by references which at first sight appear to be "blind," that is, to lead to non-existent numbers. Upon examination he will realize that each such number referred to has been built from a base number by addition of digits authorized in a "divide-like" note or of digits coming from the form division table.

Centered headings, which appear with the numbers and headings centered on the page instead of with numbers in the usual number column, and which show the spread of a sequence of numbers which is spelled out in detail immediately following, perform two functions. One function is to show the organization of material by serving as a substitute for a broad comprehensive number when such does not exist and cannot be inserted. Such a centered heading is 787.1–787.42 bowed string instruments, used to distinguish these subdivisions of 787 string instruments and their music from 787.5–787.92 plectral instruments. The other function is to serve as a prop for various notes which need not then be repeated over and over with each specific number, when no single broad comprehensive number is available for the purpose. Examples of such headings are 231–237 specific subjects of doctrinal theology, and 940–999 medieval and modern history of specific places. Centered headings

are not to be confused with sets of consecutive numbers shown in the number column, which are followed each by one heading without further breakdown. The distinction may be seen clearly by examining centered 974.101–974.104 and non-centered 974.201–974.204.

Alternative Provisions

Every library has problems, needs, demands on its services which are to some extent unique, and this is necessarily reflected in its classification practices. Protestant theological seminaries, for example, will usually prefer to have works on the sacraments in 265, while Roman Catholic seminaries will more likely prefer 234.16. Most libraries like to class travel in a given country separately from its history, but some institutions, particularly those serving as popular reading centers, find it more suitable to class travel right along with history. In particular, special libraries have classification needs divergent from those of general libraries. The present edition is intended for general libraries of almost any size except the very smallest, but the editors have made alternative provision from time to time for libraries having varying needs. Unlike the situation in earlier editions, each alternative provision is indicated in such a way as to show clearly the "editors' preference." Libraries using the alternative will do so with awareness that, while their practice has official standing, it will not be supported by the numbers assigned from this edition to Library of Congress cards; DC numbers on LC cards will always follow the "editors' preferences." With these exceptions, great effort has been made to supply a clear-cut number for each topic, without overlap or dual provision.

One especially vexing problem for which alternatives have been offered as a palliative is that of classification of the history (and, by extension, all other topics divided geographically like 940–999) of territories which, as a result of the political vicissitudes of the past half century, have undergone one or more changes of political affiliation. The classification of numerous areas has been, so to speak, frozen in earlier editions in the number for the nation of which each such area formed a part when the classification tables were first developt. Many large libraries would now find it forbiddingly expensive to reclassify works on these areas into the numbers for the nations of which today they form a part, and, even if reclassification were undertaken, no one would be so foolhardy as to say that the map will in the future remain static. On the other hand, some libraries find their service seriously hampered because areas are not clast

according to 1958 political affiliation. After study of a number of possible solutions, the editors have decided to follow the principle that position on the map rather than political ties should determine classification, so far as "editors' preference" goes, but still to permit alternative arrangements for those libraries which require them. Hence, the classifier will find, thruout the 940's and 950's, for example, directions to "class works on a specific part of Pakistan with the part, *e.g.*, East Bengal 954.145; if preferred, class all specific parts of Pakistan in 954.7."

Variations

It would not be practical, or even possible, to indicate all variations required for their own specific purposes by the multiplicity of libraries which follow the DC in its general pattern. It is readily recognized that few institutions are likely to follow the schedules verbatim. Small libraries will find expansion too great and numbers too long; this is discust below under the heading *Structure*. Some libraries will desire further expansion for certain subjects. And some will require reorganization of schedules and changes of emphases.

An institution needing an expansion should consult with the Editorial Office, which, if the need appears to have general support, will undertake to prepare it. If an expansion is not immediately available, the broad classification should be made to serve until the official expansion is ready. A good expansion takes a great amount of time for study, research, interviewing, and correspondence, and necessitates a broad and dispassionate over-all approach. Such a project is generally of too great magnitude for the majority of librarians with their full quota of other duties. The librarian going ahead on his own to make changes or expansions should remember that, once the change is made, whether good or bad, the library, because of the expense of reclassifying, is likely to be saddled with it indefinitely, unable to make use of official expansions and improvements in subsequent editions.

There are, however, ways of simplifying the tables which the editors recommend, not only to small libraries but also to libraries with special collections. There is no avoiding the fact that, historically, the DC is based upon a Protestant Anglo-Saxon culture. In spite of this, as we have shown in the section on *History* of the classification, its use has been accepted in many parts of the world, not only in western Europe, but also in eastern Europe and the Orient, where the space and expansion of num-

bers devoted to American and English literature, United States history, Christianity, western philosophy, and so on, are out of proportion to the needs of libraries. Yet the editors have considered that they had a prime responsibility for furnishing a satisfactory and useful classification for the libraries of the United States, and solution to the problem of a classification universally acceptable has not yet been found. In spite of this, the present edition has made a start toward providing more useful expansions of topics in which libraries of cultures other than Protestant, Anglo-Saxon, and Western are likely to excel. It is the editors' expectation that the next edition, the 17th, will do still better.

But the library which has a large collection on subjects and in languages not strongly represented in United States libraries has a real problem in that the base numbers for the subjects in which it specializes are so much longer than the numbers for those in which U.S. libraries more often specialize. It is, therefore, recommended, that, when needed, a letter or combination of two letters be used as a substitute for a long base number, *e.g.*, works on Arabic language in 4A0–4A9 (to be shelved first in the 400 class) instead of 492.7–492.79, Arabic literature in 8A0–8A9, works on Buddhism in 2B instead of 294.3, works on history of Brazil in a Brazilian library in B instead of 981 (provided, of course, that the library has not followed the suggestion given at 920 to class biography in B, in which case another symbol would be required). This same suggestion may also be of use to libraries in any country with large collections on subjects with long base numbers. An institution specializing in electrical engineering could use E in place of 621.3, shelving it as if it were 621.3. UN may be used in place of 341.13. Examples could be multiplied. Other simplifications are suggested in the schedules at appropriate places.

Use of Letters

Altho the DC is a classification based on figures used decimally, it may be modified and supplemented by letters of the alphabet used in several ways and for a variety of purposes. In the first place, letters may be used as a substitute for one or more digits in the class number, as recommended above, or they may replace the whole class number. Some of the most widely used of these are suggested in the schedules, *e.g.*, B for individual biography in place of a three-figure or longer number from the

920's; F for fiction in English or other vernacular language, instead of 813, 823, 833, etc., especially in public libraries. Other uses are J for juvenile fiction; JF (or jF) for fairy tales in juvenile collections; JE (or jE) for easy picture books for the very young.

Second, letters may be used in front of class numbers to show special location or special form of material, *e.g.*, R for reference books, as in R423, J (j) for classified juvenile books, M for music scores in one library and for maps in another, F, G, I for French, German, Italian respectively in a popular foreign-language reading department of a metropolitan public library.

Third, they may be used in the formation of book numbers, which supplement class numbers by distinguishing the separate books clast in a single number, usually by an alphabetic author arrangement.

Use and construction of book numbers is discust in Bertha R. Barden's pamphlet, *Book Numbers*, publisht by the American Library Association in 1937. Most libraries build book numbers from the Cutter or Cutter-Sanborn tables. A special book number arrangement for subdivision of 822.33 William Shakespeare appears at the end of volume two.

Thruout the schedules the classifier will find recommendations that specific subjects within classes be arranged alphabetically, *e.g.*, under 920 biography and 598.8 Passeriformes or perching birds.

On the assumption that most libraries use Cutter-Sanborn book numbers, it is often recommended that, in a given class which is to have alphabetic subarrangement by subject, A1 be used for general works. The purpose of this is to segregate general and comprehensive or collective works at the beginning of the class instead of permitting libraries to fall into the trap, as some have, of mixing subjects and authors in one alphabet. For example, under 923.173 biographies of Presidents of the United States, it is unwise to shelve a work on all the Presidents by a hypothetical Samuel Wilson in W753 next to Baker's life of Woodrow Wilson in W754B16. The collection belongs in A1W753, and will be followed on the shelves by works on John Adams in A214.

The classifier will also find alphabetic arrangement sometimes offered as an alternative to systematic arrangement. One of the most sweeping of these is under 974–979, where it is proposed that local history be arranged alphabetically under each state of the United States as an alternative to systematic arrangement under several thousand counties, each with its own number.

One more use of A1 (or Z9 if preferred) may be suggested: as a device to gather together early material in a class where timeliness is of special importance, such as in technical subjects like aeronautics.

Structure

Ideally, a logical classification should be divided into parts, each part into subparts, each subpart into still smaller units, with the notation showing the structural breakdown at each level, until the specificity of existing literature is reached. To do this in the DC, however, frequently results in unreasonably long numbers, particularly in those areas where whole new disciplines of science have sprung up since the original pattern was establisht by Melvil Dewey and his successors, as, for example, in the technical revolution in electronic engineering 621.38.

It has, therefore, been necessary at countless places in the tables to establish or to continue from earlier editions irregular structure of the decimal numbers. In some places, not enough digits are available in a decimal system to provide for all the subdivisions of a topic which require separate provision, as, for example, in the countries of Europe under 940, where Spain and Portugal must share 946, and no less than five countries share 943. In other places, more digits are available than are required for the subdivisions of a subject, and it seemed wise (in the past more than in the present edition, where the editors have been chary of using up all available numbers) to place topics subordinate to a larger topic in numbers coordinate with that of the larger topic, as, for example, in 221–224, where 221 is used for the Old Testament as a whole, and 222–224 for its parts.

It is possible, of course, to retain regular subject structure, even when the notation is irregular, by use of indention and type face, and this has been done in the present as in past editions. All too often, classifiers do not notice that structure is always shown by indention, and they may ask, for example, why is the Bahai faith, which is an independent religion, clast in 297.89 as a subdivision of 297 Islam, without realizing or understanding that the two numbers are coordinate by indention and by size of type.

There are two major reasons for maintenance of regular numerical structure to the greatest extent compatible with common sense. The first is that it makes it easier to teach and learn the DC and its principles, and

the second is that it makes it less troublesome for the small library to cut back schedules for use in classifying small groups of books, and then to expand, as the libraries become middle-sized and eventually large, simply by adding figures to the numbers already assigned to books. Since the present edition is designed for use by libraries of various sizes, classifiers in those institutions which wish to cut the schedules back should be especially wary as to the hazards of irregularity, the meaning of indention, and the best ways to reduce the length of numbers without incurring the risk at a later date of having to change numbers rather than merely to lengthen them. It is all very well to decide that no number longer than four digits will be used and all digits beyond the fourth will be lopped off. But to do so will throw all material on electric power generation, storage batteries, house wiring, radiocommunication, and railway electrification into one number, and also will place works on Bahaism with those on Moslem sects. On the other hand, the library which decides to class all works on birds in 598.2 will find itself in difficulties when, at a later date, it wishes to expand, and finds that the various orders of birds are in 598.3–598.9, numbers which are coordinate in length but subordinate in meaning to 598.2. *Reduction of the schedules must be performed judiciously.*

Degree of Expansion

Since this edition is intended for use in general libraries of any size, its fullness is based upon the number of titles which large libraries may be expected to acquire in any given subject. The editors have tried to provide enough subdivisions but not too many, and have been guided by the principle that the existence in American libraries of more than twenty titles which would fall in a given number raises a presumption in favor of subdivision. The detail varies from one part of the tables to another, depending on the amount of material which has been publisht and is likely to be acquired by libraries. In this respect, the 16th edition varies distinctly from earlier editions, where some sections were developt beyond the needs of general libraries and other sections not at all. As compared with the two editions immediately preceding, Edition 14 has 31,364 separate entries in the tables, Edition 15 has 4,688, while Edition 16 has 17,928. However, because of the greater fullness of treatment thru annotation, Edition 16 is at least 25 percent greater in over-all size than Edition 14.

	16	*15*	*14*
000	333	156	897
100	499	109	2028
200	760	284	805
300	1703	810	2527
400	324	188	319
500	2083	635	3649
600	4031	955	9860
700	1407	456	2880
800	302	285	2024
900	6486	810	6375
	17,928	4,688	31,364

Edition 16 has approximately 63,000 index entries, very close to the number in Edition 14.

Dealing with Long Numbers

Altho the maximum length of numbers in an ideal system should perhaps not exceed six digits, which, with even distribution and constant density, would allow one million separate numbers, no such ideal can be achieved short of making a brand new decimal classification. Structure and expansion, discust in the two preceding sections, create many unavoidably long numbers, notably when divide-like provisions are followed.

Long numbers create hazards in transcription onto books, cards, and call slips, and no way to minimize these can be suggested. However, long numbers can be affixt to the spines of thin books, and made less unsightly on cards, by increasing the number of lines of the class number from one to two or even three. It might be decided arbitrarily to divide all numbers longer than six digits into two lines, *e.g.*,

336.343	336	338	and even 331
	.3432	.456141	.892816
			1073

An interesting device used by a few libraries is to limit the numbers on the books, used for shelving purposes, to a predetermined number of

digits, say 4 or 6, and to give on catalog and shelflist cards the complete numbers, based on the full schedule, with the shelving digits in black and the additional digits in color.

Relocations

The problem created by the relocation of topics in the 15th edition from the numbers provided for them in the 14th and earlier editions is explained in the *Foreword*. All relocations of topics from the 14th and 15th editions to new numbers in the 16th (and obviously this includes all the relocations of the 15th, which in the present edition must remain as relocations from the 14th or, by return to the 14th, become relocations from the 15th) are shown in the schedules, both at the number where now located and at the number relocated from, and in the index.

A series of conventions has been establisht to show relocations. A set of [square brackets] is employed in the schedules to distinguish numbers which are no longer in force or no longer in force with the meaning indicated; a dagger † preceding a number means that the number was used with the sense indicated in the 14th edition, while an asterisk * means the same for the 15th edition. In the index the dagger and asterisk have the same meanings, but superseded entries are preceded by the word *formerly* in italics rather than enclosed in square brackets.

When the classifier has these meanings well establisht in his mind, he should have no difficulty in understanding the relocation notes, and should be able with little trouble to annotate this edition, at those places where he decides not to reclassify, so as to continue to follow 14th or 15th edition practice without actually using the older volumes themselves except for occasional reference.

One kind of relocation has not been shown in the index, or in the tables except at the place relocated from. This is the "shotgun" relocation, which directs the classifier to class works on a given subject thruout the whole classification. A list of numbers from which "shotgun" relocations are made follows:

†174.1–.4
†336.14
†336.279
*336.395
†526.99

There are in this edition 1,603 relocations. Of these, 832 are total, meaning that the entire number has been dropt, while 771 are partial, meaning that, while some topics have been shifted from a number, certain other topics remain in it. Counting both total and partial relocations, 851 are from the 14th edition, and 618 from the 15th. Of those from the 14th, 487 were already in the 15th, 255 are from one subdivision to another of a number not that far subdivided in the 15th, and 109 are relocations of topics the location of which in the 15th cannot be determined because of its extensive reduction of numbers. Of the relocations from the 15th edition, 528 were restored to their 14th edition locations, 42 are from one subdivision to another of a number not that far subdivided in the 14th, and 48 are relocations of topics the location of which in the 14th cannot be determined because of insufficient expansion. Finally, 134 of the relocations are new, that is, they are from both the 14th and the 15th editions; these have been made only for what appear to the editors to be fairly compelling reasons. In tabular form:

	000	100	200	300	400	500	600	700	800	900	Total
From 14											
Already 15	5	33	5	103	7	97	150	64	9	14	487
15 not divided	5	9	1	23	1	87	73	38	1	17	255
15 not clear	1	1		10		50	32	10		5	109
Total	11	43	6	136	8	234	255	112	10	36	851
From 15											
Back to 14	16	14	24	131	19	87	156	56	3	22	528
14 not divided			3	1	1	5	16	1		15	42
14 not clear	2		2	1		13	12	6	3	9	48
Total	18	14	29	133	20	105	184	63	6	46	618
From both 14 & 15		4	3	17	3	22	50	24	2	9	134
Grand total	29	61	38	286	31	361	489	199	18	91	1603

Of this total, not more than 50 may be regarded as major, that is, requiring the average large general library to reclassify more than about 30 titles each; nearly all of these are the kind forst upon the editors because of relocation from Edition 14 to Edition 15.

Obsolescent Schedules

In one subject area a special situation exists. Concepts in the fields of inorganic and organic chemistry 546–547 have changed so completely

since the schedules were first developt that it was out of the question to interpolate modern concepts thru expansion of the existing schedules. Accordingly, these two sections have been revised thoroly with little regard to earlier provisions, and with old numbers used with new meanings as required. Since immediate adoption of these all-new schedules may be prohibitively expensive for many libraries, obsolescent schedules are supplied following the relative index, based on the 14th edition schedules, with provision for certain new concepts and with helpful expansions. Libraries taking advantage of the expansions should note, however, that these obsolescent schedules will be dropt in Edition 17, and that reclassification to the new schedule should be undertaken before 17 appears (in approximately seven years) if that is at all possible.

Evolutionary Development

To minimize the periodic major readjustments incident to the coming of a new edition and to establish a continuous flow of information keeping pace with knowledge, the publishers have arranged that purchasers who return a card enclosed in this volume will receive "DC Additions, Notes and Decisions" as they accumulate, probably quarterly, and also notices of any new special expansions available at a nominal price. Thus with the current edition and these supplements, DC will always be up to date.

Suggestions for Use

How to Use the Tables and Index

It is wise to learn the ten main classes. Knowledge of the hundred divisions and numerous sections and subsections should follow gradually from use, without the necessity of special study, and will result more quickly if the tables are consulted first rather than the index. Locating the subject of a book within the scope of its main class brings familiarity with the class as a whole. When the tables are used in this way, the index should be checkt to verify the result obtained.

How to Determine the Subject of a Book

There are several methods of deciding upon the subject of a book. These may be used in varying combinations where the subject is obscure.

Title: The title often indicates what the book is about. However, it is sometimes misleading; in consequence, some further method should be used as a check.

Table of contents: This is usually an excellent guide to the subject of a book.

Chapter headings: If there is no table of contents, chapter headings or marginal notes are likely to give a good indication of the contents.

Preface: It is always wise to scan the preface for the author's point of view, even if it merely verifies your decision already based upon some other aid.

Reference books: Information regarding the subject of the book may be obtained from bibliographies, catalogs, biographical dictionaries, histories of literature, encyclopedias, reviews.

Subject matter: An exhaustive examination of the subject matter of the book itself will occasionally be necessary.

Specialists: Experts should be consulted when all other methods fail, and sometimes for verification of a tentative decision.

How to Assign the Class Number

When the subject of the book has been decided upon, its number may be found in the tables either by using them directly or by means of the index. Even if one is quite familiar with the classification, decisions based upon direct use of the tables should be checked with the index. It shows relationship and subordination, and often presents a choice of points of view. This method makes possible a much more accurate classification of the book than when only one portion of the tables is used.

The basic principle involved in the assignment of the class number is that of usefulness. As libraries and their clienteles differ, the decision as to where a book will be of the greatest value must be the responsibility of the individual classifier. The majority of books present no very complicated problem. There can be only a remote possibility that an elementary physics book could be more useful in some other class than physics. But, would a bibliography of physics be of more use in the bibliography section or with the physics books? The decision must be based upon an accurate knowledge of the aims of the individual library, and that can be gained only by the classifier's own experience, not by rules set down here.

The contents of the book, not its form or the wording of its title, should usually determine its number. The content of a history of art is

primarily art, not history, and such a book would be most useful in the art section.

When a book treats of two or three subjects, assign it to the class in which it will be most valuable. The other subject or subjects may be taken care of in the catalog by means of added subject cards. If a decision regarding this type of book cannot be based on the principle of use, assign the class number to the first subject treated in the book.

When a book treats equally of four or more sections of a division, give it the division number, *e.g.*, a book discussing light, heat, sound, mechanics would be given the division number of 530.

Translations, reviews, keys, analyses, and other works about specific books should be assigned the class number of the original book.

The classifier may save much time by consulting the number which may already have been assigned to the book. DC numbers may be found on Library of Congress cards, Wilson cards, in ALA *Book List, Book Review Digest, Standard Catalog Series, Children's Catalog.*

A record of all difficulties and decisions should be made for the sake of uniformity and future efficiency. These notes should be written in the tables, in an interleaved copy, or arranged by class number in a file.

Spelling

In general, spelling of this edition follows standard reference tools. However, as a mark of respect to Melvil Dewey's long and deep interest in spelling reform a few simplifications are followed consistently, namely, the words adopted in 1898 by the National Education Association: *catalog, decalog, demagog, pedagog, prolog, program, tho, altho, thoro, thorofare, thru, thruout.* In past tenses and past participles of verbs, *ed* is simplified to *t* and spelling modified as required when so *pronounst,* provided no possibility of misinterpretation is admitted. The classifier will find *publisht* but not *produst.*

Acknowledgments

The Editor wishes to express his deep appreciation to all those without whom there could have been no 16th edition, many of whom have contributed more than they realized and far beyond their nominal responsibility to the Decimal Classification.

To the directors of the Forest Press, Inc., Verner W. Clapp, Deo B.

Colburn, Godfrey Dewey, Walter A. Hafner, and Howard Haycraft, all of whom have brought together in happy marriage the acumen of the business man and the bibliophily of the librarian and scholar.

To the members of the Decimal Classification Editorial Policy Committee, whose names are enumerated in the *Foreword,* and especially to its successive chairmen, Verner W. Clapp (wearing another of his many hats) and Lucile M. Morsch, both of whom have always been ready with wise counsel and strong support when the going was difficult.

To the many members of the Special Advisory Committee on the Decimal Classification of the ALA Division of Cataloging and Classification (later the Cataloging and Classification Section of the ALA Resources and Technical Services Division), and especially to its chairman, Janet S. Dickson, from all of whom came help when needed, based in many cases upon what must have been a staggering amount of time and study. To the library administrators who supported the members of this committee so generously.

To all the unorganized advisers, librarians and subject experts, more than two hundred strong, from libraries, laboratories and classrooms thruout the United States and in many nations abroad.

To the officers of the Library of Congress, who supported the editorial project with warmth and wisdom from the time that it was first proposed by the ALA, following publication of Edition 15, that the Library undertake it, Luther H. Evans, L. Quincy Mumford, Verner W. Clapp (another hat), Lucile M. Morsch. And, for his weekly and sometimes daily doses of common sense, his brilliant understanding of all the problems encountered in the editorial work, his constant availability as a bulwark in all vicissitudes, most especially to my immediate superior, John W. Cronin.

To my predecessor as Editor, the late David Judson Haykin, who laid out the guidelines, recruited most of the excellent staff, and set the project on its way.

To my colleagues in the Decimal Classification Section of the Library, Alice M. Kenton and Elva L. Krogh, both of whom, in addition to their normal duties in assigning DC numbers for use on LC cards, gave countless hours toward the timely completion of the editorial work.

To Alpheus L. Walter and his staff of the Library's Card Division for gracious assistance in a variety of ways, most notably in printing and

arranging a quarter of a million cards for the index and in printing thousands of copies of preliminary schedules.

To the Editorial Office staff. First, to those who joined it briefly to work on special schedules, Jay Allen, Harold Beyerly, Marjorie Clopine, Paul Gratke, the late Chauncey M. Louttit, the late John B. Montignani. Next, to the former members of the regular staff, Mary Anglemyer, Belinda Dameron, Elsie Glynn, Eleanor Hungerford, Margaret M. Levchenko. Then, particularly to those who worked very long hours at high pressure during the final year, Dorothy Fauntleroy Gover, Marie Molnar Henshaw, Marietta S. Korson, Elsie Kresge Yoder. Finally, to that jewel of an associate, Julia C. Pressey, who, of us all, knows the most about the DC.

Conclusion

The reader is referred to the introduction by Melvil Dewey, which follows, for more complete information on many matters briefly toucht upon in the foregoing. It is reprinted, with a few minor changes, just as Dr. Dewey wrote and spelled it, and should be read in the context of the time in which it was written. Some statements in it and some examples are now obsolete, or do not apply specifically to the present edition, but the general principles enunciated are as true in 1958 as they were in 1876 or in 1926.

A much briefer but apt quotation from Dewey in 1876 must close this introduction: "A scheme can be satisfactory in use only to those who realize . . . inherent difficulties and are satisfied because of their knowledge that a plan free from annoying difficulties is wholly unattainable."

Benjamin A. Custer
EDITOR

Dewey Decimal Classification
Editorial Office
Processing Department
The Library of Congress
Washington, D.C.
21 April 1958

Melvil Dewey's Introduction

Orijin and growth The plan of this Clasification and Index was developt erly in 1873, the result of long study of library economy as found in hundreds of books and pamflets, and in over 50 personal visits to libraries. This study convinst me that usefulness of libraries myt be greatly increast without aded expense. Only a fraction of the servis posibl cud be got from them without clasification, catalogs, indexes and other aids, to tel librarians and readers what they containd on any givn subject; yet, by methods then uzed, this cud be dun satisfactorily only at a cost so great as to be prohibitiv to all but a few welthy libraries. With rare exceptions, libraries wer growing rapidly. Catalogs, made at great cost, soon became antiquated. Methods uzed involvd frequent rearranjement, renumbering and remarking of books, and of necesity remaking of catalogs and indexes, as the only escape from a confuzion that seriusly cripld usefulness. In this costly repetition, work of previus librarians was larjly lost. The great need was a sistem which wud enable each to stand on the sholders of his predecessors, and fully utilize their labors; which wud make work dun today permanent, insted of sumthing to be superseded in so few years as not to be worth doing in the best way; which wud supply the best applyances, insted of leaving yung librarians not only to lern how to work, but to make all their own tools.

Practical use for 54 years proves that this sistem wil accomplish this result; for with its aid catalogs, shelflists, indexes and references, essential to this increast usefulness, can be made faster and cheaper than by any method not having its essential features, and, when dun, they ar better and vastly more permanent. Practical utility and economy ar its keynotes and no theoretic refinement has been allowd to modify the skeme, if it wud detract from usefulness or ad to cost.

It was chiefly necesary to find a method that wud clas, arranje and index books and pamflets on shelvs, cards of a catalog, clippings and notes in scrapbooks and index rerums, references to all these items, and indeed any literary material in any form, as redily as an ordinary index gyds to proper paje of a bound book. This difficult problem was solvd by uzing

no reference marks except the simplest simbols known to the human mind, arabic numerals with their uzual arithmetic values, and by aiding their unequald simplicity by many practical nemonic [mnemonic] devices.

Tho the importance of clasification was recognized, the filosofic sistems proposed wer so difficult fully to understand or apply that not 1 person in 1000 cud uze them practicaly. Decimal Clasification simplicity and even more its Relativ Index hav made this work 10-fold eazier. In recent years, use of the sistem has spred rapidly in all civilized cuntries, meeting success in thousands of different applications. In its simpl form a skoolboy can quikly master it and keep for instant reference not only his books but every note, clipping or pamflet. Almost every profession and occupation has lernd its wonderful laborsaving powers. It is in daily use by miriads of business and professional men who wud never even attempt to understand or uze the old sistems.

By mere adition of figures, without chanjing this shorter form, this very simpl sistem is redily made to record the utmost refinements of specialists, and the Relativ Index, as simpl as a, b, c, sends the novis to the exact place where the expert has clasifyd the matter sought. Thus 942 is history of England, and 942.99055 is history of County Pembroke in Wales, under Elizabeth, 5th of the Tudors. A colon between 2 numbers to mean 'in relation to', and other combining simbols for time, languaj etc. make of the sistem a compact shorthand for each fact. But this brevity is les important than the eaz with which matter so markt can be arranjed (giving figures and decimal point their common arithmetic value), stored as compactly as wisht and found again in the least posibl time.

The sistem has been found equaly valuabl for cataloging, indexing, analyzing and summarizing, and for clasifying, numbering and arranjing books and pamflets on shelvs.

The 1st edition, publisht in 1876, 12 pajes of tables containing 1000 sections, was criticized as altogether too elaborate for even a larj library. As fast, however, as the Relativ Index with its remarkabl powers became known, the rapidly increasing uzers askt for further subdivisions, til Tables hav grown from 2600 entries in Index of 1876 to 43,000 in this edition 12, becauz it has been found so eazy to gain the admitted great advantajes of close clasification, and yet, by means of this Index, avoid the old difficulties.

Extent of use The rejister of libraries which hav actualy adopted it, tho growing rapidly, is incomplete. Libraries often uze the sistem for

many years before we lern the fact. We rejister all byers of the Clasification, so far as known, but do not assume that a library has adopted the sistem becauz it has orderd the book. A L A Bulletin, Sep. 1926, p. 167, estimates a use by about 14,000 libraries. There is also an immense use (for which not even approximate statistics can be furnisht) by individuals, with their private, business and professional colections of books, pamflets etc., and in their correspondence and notes files. The sistem has been adopted, not only thruout U S, but in other parts of North America, in South America, in many European cuntries, and, stil more distant, in Asia, Hawaii, Philippines, Java, Australia and Africa, and the Tables ar known to hav been translated, either wholy or in part, into French, German, Italian, Spanish, Portuguese, Norwegian, Russian, Hungarian, Bohemian, Chinese and Japanese.

The table below shows the growth of the editions.

Edition	Date	Number of pajes: Preface, etc.	Tables	Index, etc.	Total	Copies printed
1	1876	12	12	18	42	1000
2	1885	66	162	86	314	500
3	1888	4	227	185	416	500
4	1891	41	234	191	466	1000
5	1894	"	235	"	467	2000
6	1899	"	260	210	511	7600
7	1911	48	420	324	792	2000
8	1913	"	462	340	850	2000
9	1915	"	465	342	856	3000
10	1919	"	517	374	940	4000
11	1922	61	551	376	988	5000
12	1927	67	683	491	1243	9340
13	1932	75	902	670	1647	9750
14	1942	80	1048	799	1927	15632
15	1951	55	469	192	716	11200
15 Rev.	1952	56	"	402	927	11045

What is the Sistem? A Subject Clasification with a Relativ Index[1] so numberd or letterd that reference is compact, accurate and quik, is the

[1] Tho the author is interested only in the usefulness of the sistem, not in questions of priority of its invention, extended investigation by others fails to show that this most important feature of the sistem—the Relativ Index, on which all else hinjes—had ever before been uzed as here to index by a singl reference most diverse mate-

essential feature; anything beyond this is merely applying this plan with varius helps and accessories. Any subject clasification with a *relativ* index in which the entry indexes a book in the ordinary way, and also indexes shelvs, cards, clippings or any other literary material, is a form of this sistem.

Notation We devized and experimented with several notations by means of numbers, letters, and combined numbers and letters, with bases of 26, 35, 50, 100 and 150, yet none seemd good enuf to warrant publishing details, except that here printed, based on simpl arabic numerals with their uzual decimal powers. International adoption of this sistem is larjly becauz no one ever complains that any clasification is too simpl, while there is constant complaint of complexity. Decimal simplicity has so commended itself that many think of it as the only form, tho obviusly it wud be just as much a 'relativ index sistem' if the clasification wer wholy markt by letters or other simbols.

The Subject Index is the simplest application of a, b, c, the simbols next in simplicity to 1, 2, 3. This use of the simplest 2 sets of simbols known, with their common meanings, has givn our notation its worldwide reputation as the simplest yet devized.

Best known decimal form Decimal form means simply that heds ar groupt and numberd with common arithmetic figures uzed decimaly. This, the only decimal form thus far carefuly elaborated and publisht, is commonly spoken of as if it wer the only posibl form of our orijinal plan; tho obviusly an infinit variety of 'relativ index sistems' in decimal form *cud* be made by filling the outline with different heds, or with the same heds in different order.

To make out new heds involvs labor and cost vastly beyond the dreams of any person who has not tryd exactly this work. Time actualy spent on tables here printed, by varius committees and individuals, totals hundreds of years and has cost an immense sum. Uniform and urjent advice of the experienst is to adopt a poorer skeme alredy made rather than undertake so herculean a labor. When dun, the maker may posibly be

rial. Relativ location had been uzed, but not in the present combination with the subject index, which givs it most of its value. The Clasification Tables, while adopting sugjestions from many sources, ar orijinal in their sistem of arranjement and notation, and in many minor features. The decimal form and many nemonic features hav not been found in erlier use, tho since their invention in 1873 these as wel as the Subject Index and other features hav been very frequently copid, often with, but oftener without, aknowlejment of their source. But we ar glad to find this sistem, which has cost so much labor, doing good servis even for those who neglect to mention where they found so valuabl a laborsaving literary tool.

better suited with it, but few if any others wil be. It is wizer for anyone whose time is of value, to uze it in sumthing more practicaly useful to himself and his library than in trying to construct a 'satisfactory' skeme of clasification. No one yet ever wholy suited himself or anyone else, and probably no one ever wil. By adopting this alredy workt out he saves much time and money, and gains the immense advantaj of uzing a sistem in common with thousands of others, so that he may utilize their labors and investigations and share with them economies of cooperation.

Relativ Subject Index This alfabetic Index, the most important feature of the sistem, consists of hedings gatherd from a great variety of sources, as uzers of the sistem hav found them desirabl in 54 years experience. After all these efforts, many new heds ar aded in each new edition.

The Index gyds in both numbering and finding books. In assyning numbers, the most specific hed that wil contain the book having been determind, reference to that hed in Index givs proper clas number. Conversely, in finding books on any givn subject, reference to Index givs number under which they ar found on shelvs, in shelflist, or in clast catalog. When any new subject cums up, interline it and its sinonims in Index, with clas number decided on, so clasifyer may be uniform with himself in future work.

The Index givs similar or sinonimus words, and the same words in different connections, so any intelijent person wil surely get the ryt number. A reader wishing to know sumthing of the tarif looks under T, and, at a glance, finds 337 as its number. This gyds him to shelvs, to all books and pamflets, to shelf catalog, to clast subject catalog on cards, to clast record of loans, and, in short, in simpl numeric order, thruout the whole library to *anything* bearing on his subject. If he turns to Tables, he sees that it means clas 3, Sociolojy; division 3, Economics; section 7, Protection and free trade; but the number alone is enuf to clas the book or find it, for either clasifyer or reader. If he had lookt under P for protection, or F for free trade, or D for duties, or C for customs, or under any other leading word relating to his subject, he wud hav been referd to 337, or sum one of its subdivisions.

Had he lookt for 'railroad' he wud hav found after it 22 separate entries, each preceded by a word or fraze indicating the faze of the subject in the skeme. A book on railroads may treat of the desirability of government ownership, control etc. and then is clearly a question of social syence; or it may be a practical handbook for an employee, ex-

plaining business methods of railroading, running trains, handling freight, etc. when it is as clearly one of the useful arts. The clasifyer knows to which of these heds his book belongs, and the reader knows in which of its fazes he wishes to examin the subject. Moreover, 3 and 6 beginning the numbers clearly indicate caracter of each clas. But even if significance of these figures is entirely disregarded, no confuzion results, for, on consulting the numbers in catalog, in skeme, or on shelvs the difference is clearly seen. In other cases, it is more useful to keep books on the same subject together, tho treated from different standpoints. A glance at the Index tels either reader or clasifyer which plan has been adopted.

All topics in blakface typ in Index ar further divided in Tables, where one may see the subheds. This saves reprinting all these subdivisions, which wud increase Index bulk many-fold; e.g. if one having a book on 'prison labor' looks in the Index for 'Convict labor' or 'Prison contracts, he finds at once its special number 331.51; but if, on the other hand he thinks to look only for jeneral subject 'Labor', he finds in blakface typ the entry 'Labor, political economy, 331', and turning to Tables he finds under 331 the subdivision '331.51, Convict labor', the exact topic in hand.

The greatest objection to a clast catalog has always been the difficulty in knowing just where to clas a book and just where to look for it when again wanted. Different librarians, or the same librarian at different times, clast the same or similar books in widely different places. Where one man did all the work for many years, there was a degree of uniformity; but even then there was danjer of looking at the same book at different times from different viewpoints, thus cauzing confuzion. When the daily pres is ful of one faze of a subject, tendency is strong to clas all books on this subject from current viewpoint; and next year, if a different side of this same subject is before the public, there is same tendency to clas books from new viewpoint, thereby separating similar books and bringing together books on different fazes. But fortunately, practical usefulness does not require that the ideas of this or that one be followd, but only that books of same caracter be always put in same place, and that there be sum means of knowing redily what that place is. The Relativ Index, with its cachwords, was desynd and is found in use to meet both these requirements, for it insures that books on same faze of any subject cuming before the clasifyers shal be assynd to same place, and that any reader seeking these books shal be referd instantly to that

place. If this is dun, all requirements of a good clasification ar fild. If it is not dun, the sistem is a failure; for the only real test of any skeme is its helpfulness to its uzers.

Sum prominent opponents of clast catalogs admit that the Relativ Subject Index, in deciding where to clas a book at first and where to look for it ever afterwards, has removed their strongest objections. Certainly it wud be imposibl to make an Index more compact or eazier of reference.

This Index allows a great part of the work of clasifying to be dun in advance by experts in larj central libraries with ampl resources, thus securing, at a mere fraction of uzual cost, better and more uniform results than wud be posibl to the ordinary clasifyer and reducing labor to much narrower limits than ever before.

To these thousands of subjects hav been carefuly assynd their individual numbers, many of them after long consideration and consultation with specialists. No one person is lerned enuf to clas wizely books on all subjects and syences; but botanists can assyn all botanic subjects to the ryt number, mathematicians all mathematical topics, and thus the Index wil in time becum as accurate as the best skolarship of the day can make it. Even if the decision reacht is not always wizest, all practical purposes ar servd, becauz, as each clasifyer copies the number from same Index, all books on that subject ar together; and, as each reader get his number from this same Index, he goes directly to the book he seeks.

What Relativ Index includes The Index, containing 43,000 entries and constantly being enlarjd by ading new subjects, aims to include all topics exprest or implyd in Tables, together with every corresponding sinonim likely to be sought, but does not include most names of cuntries, towns, animals, plants etc. except when mentiond in Tables; e.g. it can not enumerate all species of trilobites, but when clasifyer has found from proper reference books that Remopleurides is a trilobite, the Index sends him to 565.393, and he can clas his monograf on that subject.

Tables The essential complement of the Subject Index is the Tables of Clasification, so mapt out as to show in 4 ways—i.e. by size of typ, face of typ, indention, and number of figures prefixt—each subject's rank in the Clasification.

The field of knowlej is divided into 9 main clases, numberd 1 to 9, and cyclopedias, periodicals etc. so jeneral as to belong to *none* of these clases ar markt 0 (naught) and form a 10th clas; e.g. clas 1 is library of Filosofy; clas 5, library of Syence; clas 9, History, etc. These special

clases or libraries ar then considerd independently, and each is separated again into 9 special divisions of the main subject, numberd 1 to 9, as wer the clases, jeneral works belonging to *no* division having 0 for their division number. Thus 59 is division 9 (Zoolojy) of clas 5 (Syence). A 3d division is then made by separating each of these divisions into 10 sections, numberd in same way with 0 and the 9 dijits; and this decimal subdivision is repeated, til it secures as many subsections as may be needed in any topic. Thus 513 is section 3 (Jeometry) of division 1 (Mathematics) of clas 5 (Pure syence). This number, giving clas, division, section and subsection, if any, is cald the clas number, and is applyd to every book and pamflet belonging to the library. All jeometries ar thus numberd 513, all mineralojies 549, and so thruout the library all books on any givn subject bear the number of that subject in this skeme.

Where 0 occurs before the decimal point in a clas number, it has its normal zero value. Thus a book numberd 510 is clas 5, division 1, but *no* section; i.e. treats of division 51 (Mathematics) in jeneral, and is limited to no 1 section, as is jeometry, markt 513. 500 indicates a treatis on syence in jeneral, limited to no division. 0 occurring in the 1st place wud in the same way show that the book was limited to no clas; e.g. a jeneral cyclopedia which treats of all 9 clases.

With the same 'jeneral' sense, 0 is often uzed to indicate chanje in caracter of subdivision, meaning in this case 'basis of subdivision chanjes at this point', i.e. figure (or figures) following 0 apply to what precedes *in jeneral,* e.g. 505 indicates syence in *jeneral* treated in the form of a periodical. In history, clasification is by cuntries (i.e. *jeografic*) and as minute jeografic divisions ar needed for travels, gyd books, and varius other uses, the figures 1–9 ar jeneraly uzed for jeografic subdivisions and again for further jeografic subdivisions, as far as needed, and 0 followd by another figure for time division, i.e. the figures before the 0 indicate the locality as a whole, while figures after the 0 indicate the special time at which the history of the locality is being considerd; e.g. 942.06, consisting of 942 (*jeografic* division) and 06 (*time* division), means history of England in *jeneral* in time of the Stuarts, while 942.6 and 942.67 mean respectivly history of eastern England and history of Essex co., to which the same time division may be aded, giving 942.606 and 942.6706 as the history of those localities under the Stuarts. As any subdivision may, by ading figures 1–9, be givn 9 further subdivisions, any desired degree of minuteness may be secured in clasing special subjects.

First subdivision under many rubrics is used for General and theoretic

questions to provide for such specific topics as ar common to all or most of the principal subdivisions of a relativly broad subject.

Coordination Theoreticly division of every subject into just 9 parts is absurd. Practicaly it is desirabl to clas as minutely as posibl, without use of aded figures; and decimals, on which our skeme hinjes, allow 9 divisions as redily as fewer. This has proved wholy satisfactory in practis, tho apparently destroying proper coordination in sum places.

Where more than 9 divisions ar needed the difficulty is commonly obviated by grouping on singl numbers the subjects most closely allyd, or by assyning 1–8 specificly to most important subjects and grouping minor subjects on 9 as 'Other.' Since any of these groups may be further subdivided for specific topics as needed, provision is thus made for an unlimited number of subjects.

As in every skeme, many minor subjects ar under jeneral heds to which they do not strictly belong. In sum cases, these heds ar printed in distinctiv typ; e.g. 829 Anglo-Saxon, under English literature. The rule has been to assyn these subjects to the most nearly allyd heds, or where it was tho't they wud be most useful. The only alternativ was to omit them altogether. If any such omission occurs, it wil be supplyd as soon as discoverd, for we intend to provide in the Tables a place for every known topic.

New subjects A new topic is always closely related to sum existing hed. If there is no blank number availabl it is combined with the hed nearest allyd, and, when important enuf, distinct provision for the new cumr is made by ading another decimal. The sistem is thus capabl of unlimited expansion, and can never break down for lak of room for growth.

Choice and arranjement of heds Detaild explanation of selection and arranjement of the many thousand heds wud be tedius; but everywhere filosofic theory and accuracy hav yielded to practical usefulness. The imposibility of making a satisfactory clasification of all knowlej as preservd in books, has been appreciated from the first, and theoretic harmony and exactness hav been repeatedly sacrificed to practical requirements.

Sequence of allyd subjects Wherever practicabl, heds hav been so arranjed that each subject is preceded and followd by most nearly allyd subjects, and thus aded convenience is secured both in clast catalogs and on shelvs; e.g. Bilding (690) follows Mekanic trades (680) at end of Useful arts, and Arkitecture follows at beginning of Fine arts.

Students of Biolojy (570) find fossil life or Paleontolojy (560) before, and vejetabl life or Botany (580) after, this followd in turn by animal

life or Zoolojy (590), ending with Mammals (599); while Useful arts (600) begin with human Anatomy (611) under Medicin, thus giving a regular growth from fossil plant thru vejetabl and animal kingdoms to living man.

Cachtitles In naming hedings, strict accuracy has often been sacrificed to brevity, for short familiar titles ar more important than that terms chosen shud express fully and exactly caracter of all books clast under them. Many subjects, apparently omitted, wil be found in the Index, assynd, with allyd subjects, to a hed which bears the name of the most important only. Reference to the Index wil decide at once most doutful points.

Form distinctions The clasification is mainly by *subject* or *content* regardless of form but an aded form distinction for jeneral treatises is found practicaly useful.

Thus, in Syence there ar many compends, dictionaries, essays, periodicals and socyeties, treating of Syence in jeneral, and so having 0 for the division figure, but treating it under different forms, and therefore divided into sections according to this form: 501 for filosofy or theories of Syence, 502 for compends, 503 for dictionaries, etc. This treatment is as nearly as practicabl, uniform in all clases. Creasy's '15 decisiv battles' is 904, the 1st figure being 9, becauz the book is clearly history; the 2d figure 0, becauz limited to *no* division of clas 9; and the 3d figure 4, becauz the book is a colection of essays.

The 10 main clases ar regularly divided by form, e.g. 809, history of literature in jeneral. For divisions, sections or subsections having *enuf* jeneral material to make such division advizabl, form numbers, preceded by 0, may be uzed (e.g. 820.9, history of English literature; 821.09, history of English poetry), except when 0 and the following number hav been otherwize assynd, e.g. 821.04 English liric poetry, *not* essays on English poetry; 942.05 England in time of the Tudors, *not* a periodical on English history. A history of English literature is 820.9, not 809, becauz every book belongs to the *most specific hed* that wil contain it; so 809 is limited to histories of literature in jeneral. Books treating of many clases, such as jeneral cyclopedias or periodicals, go in clas 0 and ar then divided by form into cyclopedias, periodicals, socyeties or newspapers.

Do not confuze form number 07, meaning 'methods of study or teaching', with number for same subject under 375, which is for its value as a means of education, or for its curiculum place.

These form distinctions ar introduced at the beginning of the clas be-

cauz the number of jeneral works is larj, and these 1st numerals wud otherwize be unuzed.

Form divisions always hav the same set of numbers, preceded by 0, i.e. 1 filosofy, theories etc.; 2 compends, outlines; 3 dictionaries, cyclopedias; 4 essays, lectures, letters etc.; 5 periodicals, magazines etc.; 6 socyeties, associations, transactions, reports etc.; 7 education, study, teaching, training etc.; 8 poligrafy, colections etc.; 9 history. Thus a periodical on a subject has the subject number followd by 05; e.g. a periodical on public helth, 614.05.

But if the number alredy ends in 0, 0 is not repeated before form-division figures; e.g. a zoolojic magazine is 590.5, not 590.05.

Minute clasing On first publication in 1876, a common criticizm was that 1000 heds cud never be successfuly uzed, however desirabl so close clasification myt be. As soon, however, as actual experience proved it as eazy to uze 1000 heds in the new sistem as 100 in the old, the obviusly great practical value of close clasing led one uzer after another to urj strongly publication of more subdivisions. Minute as ar many now givn there ar none that sum hav not askt for and almost none that others hav not declared needless. Subdivisions ar made in such a way that one may uze all, or any part and ignore the rest without difficulty or confuzion, thus allowing each to uze minute subdivisions where he wishes or needs them, without being forst into refinements in subjects where he has few books or litl interest. Since the degree to which any skeme shal be applyd is optional with each clasifyer and close analisis is useful to everyone in defining content or in clarifying differences between related subjects, even elaborate skemes ar printed in ful if no essential objection has been bro't against them by the best qualifyd critics. The 1st 3 figures only may be uzed when preferd, and the rest show the scope of the subject. On many topics minute subsections ar printed simply for this purpose, and for use in indexing periodicals and socyety transactions, and in keeping notes. Note typ is uzed for topics clearly useful only to specialists or as showing scope. Many others probably belonging in same category, if doutful ar in regular typ of their grade.

The advantaj of close clasing is unquestiond, if the uzer knows just what it is. With this plan it is not only practicabl, but comparativly eazy. If there ar only 10 books on a givn topic, it is useful to hav them in groups amung themselvs, for otherwize they wud hav only accidental order, which is of servis to no one. A reader wishing a specific book shud go, not to shelvs, but to catalog, where he can find its place quickest. If

he wishes a specific subject, he is sent instantly to its exact place by the Subject Index. If he wishes to study the library's resources at the shelvs, he wil be *greatly helpt by minute clasing.* A teacher showing his pupil the material on any subject wud, if there wer only 20 books, surely *put together* those covering same points, even if there wer only 2. Much more shud librarians group closely their greater colections, that readers may gain sumthing of the advantajes of an experienst gyd.

Thus every specialist has his own special library. If a student of syence in jeneral, he is sent to clas 5; if his department is zoolojy, his library is 59; if his specialty is shels, he finds all works and references on that subject in library 594. Whether a specialist needs it or not, every subject, being a library by itself, shows resources and wants as no catalog can. A catalog can not be made to take satisfactorily the place of handling books themselvs. This advantaj weighs most in a colej or socyety library, where many go to the shelvs; but even if only librarians ar admitted, close clasing is worth its cost becauz of aded power givn.

Tentativ tables More and more minute subdivisions hav been specialy cald for til the 1000 heds of 1873, with 2600 index entries in edition 1, hav increast til they command 43,000 index entries, in edition 12. After getting many sugjestions, sumtimes hundreds, for aditions or further subdivisions of sum subject, we draft a skeme and test it on a sampl colection. To get larjer cooperation in perfecting it we sumtimes print the new draft in Tables without including its new words in Index, so every uzer wil see what is proposed and if interested may test it on his own work and submit sugjestions for improvement. Then in the next edition, with this great help, needed revisions can be made and all new words inserted in Index.

As result of agreement between Institut International de Bibliographie and ourselvs we hav included in edition 12 many I I B expansions, while sum other expansions recently prepared by us hav not yet, for lak of time, been submitted to I I B and must therefore, strictly speaking, be regarded as tentativ til accepted by that body, but as these expansions wer developt with view to such acceptance we look for litl chanje, and their larj number has made it impractical to designate them.

Nemonics [mnemonics] Heds hav sumtimes been arranjed to secure nemonic aid in numbering and finding books without the Index; thus China has always number 1. In Ancient history, it has the 1st section, 931; in Modern history, under Asia, it has 951. Similarly the Indian number is 4; English, 2; German, 3; French, 4; Italian, 5; Spanish, 6; Russian,

7; European, 4; Asian, 5; African, 6; North American, 7; South American, 8; and so for all divisions by languajes or cuntries. Italian 5, for instance, is in 035, 055, 065, 450, 850, 945, and other many others. This nemonic principl is specialy prominent in Filolojy and Literature, and their divisions, and in *form* distinctions uzed in the 1st 9 sections of each clas. Filosofy, methods or theory, occurring as a hed, is always 1; dictionaries and cyclopedias ar 3; essays, 4; periodicals, 5; associations, socyeties and institutions, 6; education, 7; poligrafy or colections, 8; history, 9. In numerus cases several minor heds ar groupt together as Other, uzualy numberd 9.

While Italian is always 5, 5 is by no means always Italian. Grammar is 5, Periodicals ar 5, Asia is 5, Oratory is 5, etc. Even wer it posibl, to limit 5 to Italian wud waste numbering material, and results wud not justify cost. The purpose is to giv practical aid, not to follow fanciful theory. A clasifyer marking a French grammar, remembers that all Filolojy begins with 4, and, as French is always 4 and grammar 5, he knows the number *must* be 445. Italian (5), poetry (1), is plainly 851 with no danjer of being mistaken for 'poetry of grammar' or 'theory of Asia,' becauz the numbers also hav those meanings. This feature is an *aid,* not regular method, and in all doutful cases one refers at once to Index or Tables. Sugjested difficulties ar uzualy creations of injenius theorists and not outgrowth of practical experience.

Wherever practical, this nemonic principl is uzed in subdividing sections. 558, Jeolojy of South America, is subdivided by ading the *sections* of 980, History of South America. Jeolojy of Brazil then *must* be 558.1: nemonicly, the 1st 5 is Syence; 2d 5, Jeolojy; 8, South America; and 1, Brazil. Any library attendant or regular uzer of the skeme recognizes 558.1 at a glance as Jeolojy of Brazil. This nemonic feature occurs in several hundred places, and is of great practical utility in numbering and finding books without catalog or index, and in determining caracter of any book simply from its call number. Extent of use is shown in 5 tables appended to main Index, giving alfabetic lists of (1) subjects, with clas number of each, which may be subdivided jeograficly; (2) form divisions, with figures to be aded in making such division; (3) languajes, with their clas numbers, which may be further subdivided filolojicly by ading figures givn in Index table 4; (4) filolojic divisions, with figures to be aded in subdividing any languaj in Index table 3; (5) literatures, with their clas numbers, which may be further subdivided by ading form divisions from English literature.

As in close subdivision, wish for nemonic correspondence has never outweighd any claim of greater usefulness. In many cases choice between numbers was hardly perceptibl: e.g. whether in filolojy order shud be French, Spanish, Italian, or French, Italian, Spanish. In such cases nemonic numbers wer givn preference, and 54 years use has proved this wizest. Great gain, beside eaz of remembering, results from this *uniform* use of same numbers with same meaning whenever similar division is made. Wherever division by languajes or cuntries is made, it follows filolojy or history numbers, and in Tables, the note 'Divided like 900' fully takes the place of reprinting all history subdivisions. This saving justifys use of these numbers in sum cases, even where a sumwhat different order myt seem more nearly fitted to the special case; e.g. in 342, constitutional history of Canada (342.71) and Australia (342.94) next that of England (342.42) wud be better than our order, which separates them both from England and from each other. Stil by following the uzual 'procrustean' numbers, many topics can be subdivided minutely without further study, by simply applying history or languaj subdivisions. A singl ilustration of the astonishing power this principl givs wil suffice, tho thousands myt be givn: 016 is 'Bibliografy of special subjects, divided like main clasification', therefore by aid of tables under 581, 016.581974742 redily translates itself to all uzers into 'Bibliografy of flora of Albany co., N Y'. While these 12 figures myt never be uzed, if a specialist wishes minute division, it is redy to his hand, conforms to Index, and wil be clearly understood by anyone familiar with our plan. A specialist wud in such cases probably adopt a contraction for his long number, and uze in ful only the minute divisions.

Decimalism Utility has not been sacrificed in order to force subjects on the 'decimal procrustean bed'. *Decimals hav been uzed as servants, not as masters.* When subjects ar combined or separated into just 10 heds, it has been from no necesity of the skeme, but becauz it seemd most useful, all things considerd. In many cases there wer orijinaly only 3 to 7 heds insted of 10; but uzualy, during years of testing before publication, it proved advizabl to divide sum of these heds, as it took no aded space or labor. On the other hand, there wer cases where more than 10 heds seemd more natural; and, as any number up to 100 is provided for by ading one decimal, this was dun in most cases. As only 1000 sections wer first printed, it was often necesary to put 2 or more closely allyd topics together under the same number, as must stil be dun whenever a library limits number of figures uzed to 3; but during 54

years use subdivisions hav multiplyd, til now nearly every topic has its own special number. The skeme givs us for each topic, as it wer, a case of 9 pijeonholes, with a larj space at the top; and we uze them as every practical business man uzes such pijeonholes about his desk. If, as in 220, there ar les than 9 main topics, it is often convenient to uze the extra spaces for subdivisions. Thus we keep separate, under Old Testament, historic, poetic, and profetic books; and under New Testament, the Gospels, Epistls and Apocalips. Spaces ar there, and it is convenient to uze them for jeneral works on those groups—a reason that experience proves a good anser to the charj of lak of coordination, tho indention and typ in Tables make that charj baseless. Then in 280, having more than 9 topics, if we ar uzing only 3 figures we put Congregational in same space with Presbyterian, and small denominations together in the last box, just as a business man puts his papers in his pijeonholes. If he insisted on having a different case made to order for each use, it wud cost over twice as much; he cud not group them together or interchanje them, and they wud not fit offis shelvs.

There has been perverse misapprehension of this feature, and critics oftenest stumbl over 'procrustean 10'. In fact, this is an element of usefulness. A railroad also has the fault that it is procrustean in its path and in its times. It can not cum to yur door nor wait yur convenience, as does the automobile; it can not go to the fields for its loads of produce; it can not turn out for obstacls; but *becauz it is procrustean* it can do its larj-scale work much better and quicker and cheaper. The paralel cud be fairly extended to many other cases, but any tho'tful mind wil recognize that the economy and eaz of working the Decimal sistem ar larjly dependent on its being procrustean. To this we owe much of the great simplicity of the Relativ Index, many nemonic correspondences, and the useful 0 to indicate form and period divisions. Our intersecting lines of space and time in History, etc., of languaj and form in Filolojy and Literature, and scores of similar advantajes, depend wholy on 'procrustean 10', or else on sum other number equaly procrustean, but lacking the advantajes of exact correspondence to our arithmetic.

Relativ location Economy and simplicity cald not only for the Subject Index, but also for sum plan of consolidating the 2 sets of marks previusly uzed; one teling *what* subject a book treated, the other *where* the book was shelvd. By relativ location and decimal clas numbers we make our simpl arabic numerals tel of each book and pamflet, both *what* it is, and *where* it is.

In fixt relation, to find book, pamflet, clipping or note is like finding a man when yu know his town, street, hous and room.

In relativ location it is like finding a soldier if yu know his army, division, rejiment and cumpany. If John Smith is 3d man in 2d row of Cumpany B, rejiment 69, 4th division, whether the rejiment is in camp, on parade or on march, his place is not determind by the bit of ground on which he stands, but by his relation to the rest of the army. If soldiers ar ded and in the cemetery they ar as eazily found by fixt as by relativ location. But if the army is alive and militant, as every library or private working colection o't to be, its resources shud be *findabl* whether in camp, on march or in action.

In arranjing books on shelvs, the formerly common absolute or fixt location by shelf and book number is wholy abandond, relativ location by clas and book number being our chief feature. Accumpanying clas number is the book number, which prevents confuzion of different books on the same subject. In finding books, numbers markt on baks ar followd, the upper being the clas and the lower the book number. Clas is found in its numeric order amung clases, just as shelf is found in fixt sistems. Shelvs ar not numbrd, as increasing different departments, opening new rooms, and any arranjing of clases to bring books most circulated nearest delivery desk, wil at different times bring different clas numbers on any givn shelf. New books, as recievd, ar numberd and put in place, in same way that new titles ar aded to card catalog.

Thus all books on any givn subject stand together, and no aditions or chanjes ever separate them. Not only ar found together all books on subject sought, but most nearly allyd subjects precede and follow, they in turn being preceded and followd by other allyd subjects as far as practicabl. Readers not having access to shelvs find short titles arranjed in same order in shelflist, and ful titles, imprints, aded subject entries, references, notes etc. in clast catalog.

Parts of sets, and books on same or allyd subjects, ar never separated as they ar sure to be, sooner or later, in a library arranjed on fixt plan, unless it be frequently rearranjed and recatalogd, a procedure too expensiv even for very welthy libraries. Relativ sistem clas and book numbers remain unchanjed thru all chanjes of shelving, bildings or order of clases.

Amung hundreds of points raizd by librarians as to its practical workings and usefulness, the only one in which it was not shown to be equal

or superior to erlier sistems was that in this relativ location a book which this year stands, e.g. at the end of a certain shelf, may not be on that shelf at all another year, becauz of uneven growth of parts of the library. This slyt objection, however, inheres in any sistem where books ar arranjed by subjects, rather than by shelvs, windows, doors, and similar non-intelectual distinctions.

Sizes on shelvs Most libraries hav abandond close distinction of sizes. It is true that this distinction saves a litl space, but at far too great a cost; for every distinction of sizes makes a paralel clasification. If books ar groupt in 5 sizes, one must look in 5 places before he can be sure of having seen them all.

It is better to shelv octavos and all smaller books together in 1 series, and arranje in paralel libraries only quartos and folios, which ar too larj to stand on regular shelvs, showing series in which any oversize book is put by a size letter prefixt to the book or clas number; e.g. 749 qA or q749 A shows that book A on Artistic furniture is too larj for regular shelvs, and so is placed in q or quarto series. Or uze a wood or pasteboard dummy to show location of a book not in its regular place. But, however solvd, size problems ar no more trublsum with Decimal than with any other clasification.

Catalogs

Any sistem of catalogs may be uzed with this skeme, but the 2 essentials of even the simplest sistem ar name or author catalog and shelflist. The chief uses of this sistem for catalogs ar for shelflists and for clast catalogs on cards.

Name catalog In this, arranjed strictly by names of authors and of persons or places writn about, the clas number holds a subordinate place, yet is constantly useful. If printed, it appears in a singl colum as in the Relativ Index, and where there is no subject catalog one can rapidly pik out books on any topic by glancing down colum for clas number wanted.

Shelflist Here clas number is again hyly important, as it makes this list the most useful form of brief subject catalog, giving author's name and brief title of every book on specific subject bearing that clas number.

Clast catalog In the clast card catalog the clasification is mapt out

abuv the cards by projecting gyds, making reference almost instantaneus. Subjects ar arranjed in 1, 2, 3 order of their decimal subject numbers exactly as in clas tables, and cards of each subject ar then subarranjed alfabeticly by authors (or, in sum cases, e.g. biografy or local history, by subjects) or cronolojicly, or by book numbers.

The printed subject catalog on this plan is also most compact and satisfactory in use. Under each clas number ar givn the library's resources on that subject, the heding giving, for convenience, name as wel as number of subject; e.g. '513 Jeometry'. Jeneral notes ar printed in finer typ under jeneral heds, and a relativ index at the end shows just where to open the book to find any topic. As clas numbers ar put in place of paje numbers, this index servs for *any* catalog, list or library arranjed on this plan.

Dictionary catalog The dictionary catalog is as eazily uzed with this sistem as with any other, and is at present on the crest of its wave of popularity. Its failure to meet skolars' requirements has often been pointed out. While far the best for an index, it stil leavs much need of a good clast catalog. But difficulties both of making and of uzing a clast catalog wer formerly so great that there was a conviction amung many librarians that notwithstanding its great advantajes, the idea must be abandond as impracticabl, tho other eminent authorities ably argued that the poorest clast catalog was better than one unclast, and that any use of such a catalog was in itself a lesson in bibliografy. Now that the serius difficulties of making a good clast catalog hav been so larjly removed by the simpl arabic numerals and Relativ Index of this decimal plan, the merits of clast over the more common dictionary sistems ar dubly prominent.

The Subject Index of this sistem is a skeleton dictionary catalog, covering everything not fully coverd by the 'name catalog'. Insted of giving book titles under each hed, the number *refers* to all those titles simply and directly. The index may be made on any of the varius dictionary plans, with all the advantajes it may possess. To us, simplest seemd best. We giv only short heds with brief indication in doutful cases of viewpoint taken in assyning clas numbers.

We therefore unite advantajes of dictionary and clast catalogs, not by mingling them and so losing much of simplicity of one and as much of excelence of the other, but by realy uzing both, each with its own merits. Only one set of titles is needed, for our clas numbers make this availabl for both catalogs.

Advantajes

Shelvs The sistem on the shelvs is the simplest form of relativ location. Many libraries hav adopted it for shelf arranjement, where catalogs recently printed, or larj investment in another plan, made it too expensiv to chanje anything else.

Shelflist By simply printing the shelflist at any time an admirabl subject clas list is made for any topic on which there may be present interest; e.g. if a town contemplates a new water supply, interest is greatly stimulated, and everything about waterworks is wanted. The librarian has only to open his shelflist to 628.1 and 352.6 and print it. This great advantaj is gaind with but slyt variation from the form found best in its regular use as a shelflist for examination of shelvs to detect losses and misplacements.

Accession book Where shelf mark colums ar uzed, tables of number of books aded on each subject ar redily made. A glance shows caracter, by subjects, of books aded during any givn period; for, wherever this clas number occurs, it tels not only *where* the book is shelvd but also *what* it is about.

Pamflets These clas numbers applyd to pamflets, whether catalogd or uncatalogd, hav proved specialy satisfactory. Number is writn on upper left corner, and pamflets ar shelvd in pamflet boxes, side by side with books on same subject, or they may be kept in vertical files or on special shelvs divided every 10 cm by perpendicular partitions, or, if preferd, each pamflet may be put in exact place as if bound. Litl expense is incurd, and yet entire pamflet resources of the library on any subject can be produced almost instantly. The immense advantajes of this clast arranjement, both in economy and usefulness, wil be appreciated by every keeper of a pamflet colection. A name or author catalog is made on slips if time allows. The pamflets themselvs ar the best subject catalog. Placing all material under its clas number on regular shelvs, has the great advantaj of enabling anyone examining a subject to see all resources in 1 place, so far as posibl.

Sale duplicates The same arranjement is admirabl here. Duplicates ar so constantly chanjing that a catalog can hardly be afforded, and a subject arranjement on any other plan that this is difficult to maintain, Stil, it is very important that there be sum means of knowing what duplicates there ar on any givn subject. By simply penciling clas numbers on books

and arranjing these numericly, it is posibl to giv the information more quikly, cheaply and satisfactorily than in any other way.

Charjing sistem Clas numbers may be uzed for charjing with the following advantajes: Minutest statistics of circulation can be made by simply counting charjes and entering the number for each clas on a report sheet. If filing is dun by call numbers, as either a primary or a secondary consideration, whereabouts of any book lent or amount of use of any subject is quikly found; file givs an up-to-date record of all books lent in any subject; e.g. cards filed under 52 show for Astronomy or those under 822 for English drama just how many and what books ar out and who hav them. Such a circulation table, always at hand, and with no extra expense or labor, since it is a natural part of the sistem, is hyly prized by all interested in caracter of jeneral use of the library, while it can by trifling labor be converted into a permanent record by entering on a report sheet. If a reader's card is uzed, caracter of the individual's reading is here shown and never before has so much attention as now been givn to educating readers' tastes.

Subject references For these it has peculiar advantajes. Many uzers ar undertaking analises and cros references to an extent hitherto tho't wholy or almost imposibl. These few figures tel as clearly as a long heding exactly what the reference is, while gain in eaz of use is even greater than in time and space saved in recording. The clearness and directness of the method aid wonderfuly in this work. References to transactions, or chapters in essays, may be made in the most compact and uzabl form.

Recataloging or reclasifying When Amherst College in 1873 first adopted this plan and began to recatalog its library, it was found (as in hundreds of cases since) entirely practicabl to chanje to the new sistem gradualy, as means allowd, without interfering in any appreciabl degree with circulation. Methods employd for thus chanjing without interrupting use must vary according to different conditions. The essential feature is enuf distinction between old and new call numbers to be eazily recognized by attendants. If old call numbers consist wholy of figures, the initial letter of the Cutter author numbers furnishes this requisit. All numbers of figures only ar then recognized as old, and all numbers containing a letter as in the new sistem.

Adaptability The sistem is so flexibl that it adapts itself to almost any circumstances. It may be uzed with proportionate results in almost any one of its applications without the others. It may be applyd to pamflets alone, bringing order out of caos, and solving this vext and vexing prob-

lem; or it may be uzed for catalogs, leaving shelf arranjement as before; or it may be applyd to shelvs, while the catalog is dictionary or any other typ.

Arabic numerals Arabic numerals can be writn and found quicker and with les danjer of confuzion or mistake than any other simbols. Therefore roman numerals, capitals and small letters, and similar simbols found in most clasification sistems ar entirely discarded, and by exclusiv use of arabic numerals thruout shelvs, and indexes, catalogs and other records, there is secured the greatest accuracy, economy and convenience. This advantaj is specialy prominent in comparison with sistems where author's name or the title must be writn, in calling for or charjing books and in making references.

Endowment of special departments Another great advantaj is peculiar adaptability to special endowments. One specialy interested in any subject can often be induced to endow that subject, thus providing for bying each year all the best publications.

If John Doe is specialy interested in opera, the library says: 'Giv us $1000 as endowment of 782, and we wil call it the 'Doe Library of Dramatic Music'. There wil be found every book, pamflet, newspaper clipping, or manuscript that the library has or can get on this subject. Gifts from others wil be placed in the Doe Library, the donor's name being givn on the bookplate, and for jenerations to cum every person interested in opera wil be grateful for yur foundation'. In this way 782 is assynd to John Doe, and his pride is stimulated in developing it. If another man with larjer means and interest wil endow the whole subject of music 780, there is no difficulty or impropryety in including 782, the Doe Dramatic Music Library, as the 2d section of 780, the Roe Music Library.

This is one of the most promising fields for development, for almost every library has amung its readers sum specialy interested, who if properly approacht wud endow sum topic, even if a small one, and this relativ location, with its definit number expressing just the ground coverd, may be of great servis in working up these special endowments.

Summary To sum up its claims: It is by far most inexpensiv; eazily understood, rememberd and uzed; practical rather than theoretic; brief and familiar in nomenclature; susceptibl of partial and gradual adoption without confuzion; convenient for arranjing pamflets, sale duplicates, and notes, and for indexing, and in keeping statistics and cheks for books off shelvs; a satisfactory adaptation of card catalog principl to shelvs. It

shelvs books compactly; uzes simpl and few simbols; can be expanded, without limit and without confuzion or wasted labor, both in catalogs and on shelvs or in catalogs alone; cheks thuroly and conveniently against mistakes; admits redily numerus cros references; is unchanjeabl in its call numbers, and so givs them in all places where needed; in its Index affords an anser to the greatest objection to clast catalogs, and was the 1st satisfactory union of the advantajes of clast and dictionary sistems.

Sugjestions to uzers

Hold book in ryt hand and turn with left, then both clas numbers and index heds show most plainly on left marjins and reference is quicker when eye follows left pajes only.

Numeration In thinking or speaking of clas numbers, to avoid confuzion **always divide at the decimal point, and name it;** e.g. read 942.27 'nine forty-two, point twenty-seven', never 'ninety-four two twenty-seven'. If 'point' wer omitted, the ear myt redily interpret 270.2 (two seventy, two) as 272, while 'two seventy, point two' can never be misunderstood.

Plan of book

Tables First paje shows 10 clases into which all topics ar divided. Next paje shows 9 divisions of each of these 10 clases, in a birdseye view of the whole skeme on a singl paje. Then follows a sinoptic view of 10 pajes, one for each clas, showing the 9 sections of each division of each clas.

Following these sinopses is the complete clasification, which repeats in proper order, clases, divisions and sections, with all subsections. For convenience of uzers, who thus get fuller and clearer ideas of the field which each number covers, sinonimus terms, exampls, brief notes, dates and varius cachwords ar often aded to main heds. Therefore all references to numbers **shud be lookt up in the ful tables** of subsections, uzing summaries only when a merely sinoptic view is wisht.

Index Next an alfabetic index of all heds refers by clas number to exact place of each in Tables. This Index includes also, as far as found, all sinonims or alternativ names for heds, and any other entries likely to help a reader find his subject more redily. Even a uzer who knows just

where to turn to his subject in the Tables, may, by consulting the Index, be put on the trak of valuabl allyd matter which he myt otherwize overlook.

Use of Tables and Index

Familiarity with Clasification Get a jeneral knowlej of the skeme by lerning the 10 main clases [yu wil soon know the 100 divisions also without special study], so that yu can tel to what subject a givn number belongs from its 1st figure, without referring to Tables. Specific knowlej of minute divisions wil cum gradualy, but rapidly, from use. Assyn numbers by uzing Tables alone, and then always verify yur result by the Index. Thus yu wil more rapidly acquire knowlej of the Clasification and facility in its use. To do this, decide first to which of the 10 clases the subject belongs; next, take that clas as if there wer no other, and decide to which of its 10 divisions the subject belongs; then, in the same way, select section and subsection, thus running down yur topic in its groovs, which becum 10-fold narrower at each step. **As a chek against error, even tho familiar with the skeme, uze Index freely.**

Subject of a book To find this out, consult:

1 **Title,** since it is jeneraly chosen to show what the book is about, but as many titles ar vague or misleading, never clas from title alone but always examin also

2 **Contents table,** which is best gyd to true subject. If there is no contents table read

3 **Hedings of chapters,** or marjinal topics

4 **Preface** Unless alredy certain, glance thru this to each author's viewpoint and verify impressions gaind from title and contents

5 **Reference books** If preceding means fail, consult relyabl bibliografies, clast and annotated catalogs, biografic dictionaries, histories of literature, cyclopedias, reviews etc. for information about caracter of book.

6 **Subject matter** If 5 shorter methods abuv fail, examin subject matter of book itself, and if stil in dout, to avoid mistakes, put aside on an 'under consideration' shelf til yu can examin more thuroly or consult

7 **Specialists** Experts ar uzualy glad to examin any new books in their departments, enuf to clas them, i.e. to define their true subject and relations. Old ones they know where to put alredy.

Be specialy careful when dealing with flexibl terms, e.g. child welfare,

to make sure of the caracter of its application in that individual book.

After deciding what the book is about, find this subject in Tables, either thru Index or by uzing Tables directly, which for beginners is a longer process, seldom to be trusted without subsequent reference to Index; e.g. Pollock's *Land laws* myt naturaly be clast from Tables alone as '333, Land: ownership; ryts; rent', which seems exactly to fit this book. Index, however, shows 2 numbers, both referring to land laws, but from different viewpoints; i.e. 347.2, legal, and 333, economic. The object of this book, as seen in the preface, is to giv a popular presentation of English statutes pertaining to landholding, not to discuss history and theory of land laws from economist's viewpoint. It should be clast '347.2, Realty', which myt hav been overlookt but for Index.

Assyning clas numbers 1 Practical usefulness controls. *Put each book under the subject to the student of which it is most useful,* unless local reazons 'attract' it to a place stil more useful in yur library.

2 *Content* or real subject of which a book treats, and not *form* or accidental wording of title, determins its place. Following this rule, put a filosofy of art with Art, not with Filosofy; a history of mathematics with Mathematics, not with History; for filosofy or history is simply the *form* which these books hav taken. Their true content or subject is Art or Mathematics, and to the student of these subjects they ar most useful.

3 Always remember that the question is not 'where wil one probably look for a certain book', but 'under what subject is the book of greatest value'; e.g. it is of litl consequence whether 'one wud be apt to look' under 595.16 for Darwin's *Formation of vegetable mould,* but of much consequence that one studying erthworms shud find that book in 595.16 Erthworms, since it is chiefly valuabl as a study of erthworms' habits. Anyone wanting that special book shud look for it in catalog under Darwin.

4 Giv every book most specific number which wil contain it. This varies in different libraries according to number of figures uzed, e.g. specific number for 'compulsory vaccination' is 614.4738; but in a library uzing only 3 figures, 'most specific' number posibl is 614, which must take everything on Public helth.

Sumtimes a library unwizely puts all books of a division together, if but few; e.g. all mathematical works ar markt 510. It takes just as many figures and in most cases just as much labor and if a man wants the 1 calculus in the whole library he has to serch thru perhaps 100 volumes in 510, when otherwize he wud instantly find it standing alone as 517.

5 'Predominant tendency' or obvius purpose of a book uzualy decides its number at once. Stil a book often treats of 2 or more subjects. In such cases put it where it wil be most useful, and make aded entries for all subordinate subjects. For a clast catalog giv the aded entry numbers on both bookplate and main subject card as wel as on aded entry cards.

It is a markt advantaj that these aded entries, notes etc. may be made from time to time at convenience. It is necesary at first to determin only predominant tendency of book in order to clas it; aded entries ar made whenever found desirabl.

Supply these numbers indicating more closely caracter of book as rapidly as posibl, and invite all specialists, in connection with their reading, to call attention to every desirabl aded topic notist. The numbers take litl room, ar eazily aded, and in most cases ar very valuabl.

6 If 2 subjects hav distinct paje limits, jeneraly clas under 1st and make analitic entry under 2d; but if 2d is decidedly more important or much greater in bulk, clas under that, with analitic entry under 1st. Always put a book under 1st subject, unless there is good reazon for entering it under another.

7 Consider not only scope and tendency of each book, but also nature and specialties of each library.

Any subject of which a library makes a specialty naturaly 'attracts' allyd subjects. This influence is strongest in minute clasing. To admit this variation, many subjects hav in this skeme 2 or more places, according to these different sides; e.g. a book on 'skool hyjiene', which a medical library puts under 613, has also a place in 371.7, where education specialists require it.

8 If a book treats of a majority of the sections of any division, giv it division number, insted of most important section number with aded entries. Unless sum one section is so prominently treated as to warrant placing the book in it, clas a book covering 4 or more sections under division number; e.g. clas a volume on lyt, heat and sound, under hed most fully discust, with aded entries for the others; but if it treats also of mekanics, hydrostatics and neumatics, clas as 530, or jeneral fizics, tho no mention be made of electricity, magnetism or molecular fizics.

9 When a book deals with 2 consecutiv and closely allyd subjects, jeneraly clas with 1st and regard this as including 2d, but if 2d is decidedly predominant, clas with this and either disregard 1st or make aded entry, according to importance of that portion.

10 To secure uniformity, make for future reference ful notes of all

difficulties and decisions, for it is more important to put books on same subject *together* than to put them in a more nearly absolutely correct place. These notes shud be writn on broad marjins of the Clas Tables or in an interleavd copy or on P slips arranjed by clas numbers like a clast catalog.

11 Keep colected works, libraries etc. together, and assyn, like individual books, to most specific hed that wil contain them; or assyn to most prominent of varius subjects treated, with aded entries for others; or, better, separate and clas parts as independent works.

This last practis constantly grows in favor, and many librarians now larjly disregard uniform bindings and 'series' lettering, and, unless contents of volumes ar so connected that they can not be separated, clas each under most specific hed that wil contain it.

12 Clas translations, reviews, keys, analises, ansers and other books *about* specific books with orijinal book, as being there most useful.

Number of figures uzed in clas number Decide this according to circumstances in each library. Small libraries often uze minute subsections beyond 3 figures only in certain divisions like Travel, 913–919, where closer jeografic division is specialy needed, and in 400 and 800, when a 4th figure is needed to separate different languajes.

In very small colections 2 figures myt do til growth required further division; but it is economy, and saves handling books again, to uze at least 3 figures at first, even in smallest colections. In larjer or rapidly growing libraries all subdivisions may be uzed for same reazon, tho number of books may not then seem to justify it. Whether there ar 1 or 1000 books on any topic, they take no more shelf space if clast minutely, and work is dun once for all. When larj accessions cum, even if a century later, this number wil not hav to be alterd. A library having but 20 books on Education myt think it unwize to uze the ful skeme, but the whole 20 wud go on a singl shelf, and take no more room, and the Index wud refer more exactly to what was wanted. Number of books yu hav on any subject has in this sistem no special weight. In relativ location, any number of consecutiv topics without a book wastes no space on shelvs or in catalogs. Numbers ar merely skipt. This not only does no harm, but has great negativ value, as looking for a number and finding it blank or skipt shows that yu *hav nothing on that subject*—information 2d in value only to finding sumthing, for one need no longer serch.

The practical objection to close clasing is that it givs a longer number, when this is uzed to charj by in a lending library. In a reference library

ful subsections shud always be uzed. Where short numbers ar imperativ, giv ful clas number on another part of the bookplate, not to be uzed in charjing, but as a gyd to contents. Thus when a clasifyer has once examind a book and found out just what it is about, he records it to benefit others.

Bilding numbers

Jeografic divisions In dividing by cuntries according to note 'Divided like 930–999', found so often in Tables, ad only the number following initial 9, for this 9 means not locality but simply clas 9, History; e.g. 942, history of England, analyzd is 9 history, 42 England (4 Europe, 2 England). If jeolojy of England is wanted, ad to 55 (jeolojy number) 42 (number for England) and yu hav 554.2. History of N Y state is 974.7, of which 747 is locality number; 353.9747, number for N Y state administration, is bilt by ading to number for state administration, 353.9, number for N Y state, 747.

Languaj and literature In 890, where directed to 'divide like 490', note that 890, Minor literatures, and 490, Minor languajes, correspond exactly, so that only figures following 49 ar to be aded to 89 to bild a minor literature number; e.g. Polish languaj is 491.85; ading 185 to 89, Minor literatures, givs 891.85 Polish literature. In brief, to form literature from filolojy numbers substitute 8 for 1st figure, 4; e.g. Sanskrit languaj 491.2, Sanskrit literature 891.2. Under 490, the filolojic divisions (dictionaries, grammar etc.), and under 890 the form divisions (poetry, drama etc.) shud be uzed only when clas number represents a *specific* languaj or literature, e.g. 491.7 Russian, but *not* 497 North American, awaiting further division by languaj.

If directed to 'divide like main clasification', as in 016, number for required subject is aded exactly as it stands in Tables; e.g. bibliografy of Polish poetry, 016.891851.

Combining numbers in a way not printed in Tables must be dun with great care, or confuzion results. Many uzers, fascinated with the posibilities of the sistem, make combinations more injenius than useful; e.g. 'The horse's foot and how to shoe it' was once markt 636.1682, i.e. blaksmithing number, 682, aded to horse number, 636.1. Horseshoeing is now in Tables as 682.1, while 636.168 means American ponies.

Often a clasifyer ads a figure to show sum distinction. It seems short and desirabl, but later he may find he has shut himself off from uzing

sum other division greatly preferd. For his personal aditions, letters or other simbols not numbers shud be uzed. Every aded simbol must be clearly writn in Tables and Index. Never trust memory for decisions.

Book numbers

The call number of a book (number by which it is cald for) jeneraly consists of both clas and book numbers. The same clas number applys to all books on same subject; the book number distinguishes each individual work from all others in that clas, and is the same for all volumes or copies of same work. When a specific volume is wanted the number for that volume must be aded to clas and book numbers to complete the call number. Most important methods of assyning book numbers ar:

Author numbers Invention of translation sistems by which a name is represented by its initial, with remaining letters translated into numbers, e.g. Freeman, F85, has led most libraries to arranje books under each clas number alfabeticly by authors, or in local history by towns, or in individual biografy and bibliografy by biografees and bibliografees. This keeps together all works by same author or on same town or same biografee, etc. and even in larj clases enables one to find any book redily without consulting catalogs. One great advantaj is that same author has same book number in every subject; i.e. figures ar 'significant' like our clas numbers, and translate themselvs into names. Great practical nemonic convenience results from this form of book number. Most widely uzed of these translation sistems is C. A. Cutter's, known as 'Cutter numbers', publisht by Library Bureau.

Special author tables A 2d method, for authors having special numbers, e.g. Shakspere, 822.33, or Milton, 821.47, is uniform use for such authors, of book numbers A-N, with O-Z assynd on basis of their individual works, as ilustrated under 'Special author tables', on pajes following Relativ Index.

Time numbers A 3d arranjement of books under clas numbers is cronolojic by date of 1st publication. Its advantaj is in presenting historic development of subject, the book writn erliest being on the left, the latest work on the ryt, and then of any givn book it is evident that all those on the left wer writn before it, all those on the ryt after it. In syence and useful arts this has special value, while in literature author arranjement is better. W. S. Biscoe's translation sistem of dates givs a more compact and satisfactory mark for year than date writn in ful. (For ful

explanations and table see 'Biscoe time numbers', on pajes following Relativ Index)

Accession order A 4th arranjement, simpler but otherwize les desirabl, is in accession order; 1st book put in a clas being numbrd 1, and 2d 2, the 3d 3.

It is entirely practicabl to uze 2, 3 or all 4 of these methods at same time in same library, one peculiarity of the sistem being the eaz with which it may be adapted to almost any special circumstances. The advantajes of the cronolojic numbering ar most markt in syence and useful arts; the alfabetic is best in clases where names of authors or subjects outrank dates; and special author numbers in cases where clas number alredy indicates author, so corresponding indication in book number wud be useless duplication; while the old accession-order plan is good in special colections which must be kept separate and ar no longer aded to, since here the extreme simplicity of 1, 2, 3 order is secured with no sacrifice. It is stil better, if this last method is uzed, to adopt A, B, C, insted of 1, 2, 3, as 26 insted of 9 books may be markt with 1 caracter, and chiefly becauz it is hyly desirabl that each book number begin with a letter, which can not be mistaken for end of clas number if writn on same line; e.g. 1st book under 513, if numberd 1, myt be so writn as to confuze with subsection 513.1, but 513A cud not be misinterpreted. If figures ar uzed, take care to write them as a fraction or with separating dash; e.g. 513 or 513–1.

1

Variations practicabl in adjusting to special local requirements

Sum uzers assume that adopting Decimal Clasification and Relativ Index carries with it other parts of the sistem uzed by the author at Amherst, Wellesley or Columbia colejes or in New York State Library. In fact, the plan in each differd sumwhat from all the others, and many of the thousands of public and private libraries now uzing it hav adopted stil other variations; for special constituency, circumstances and resources of each library must be considerd in deciding what is best for it. This decision shud be made by one familiar, not only with the library and its needs, but also with all methods of any merit and with comparativ eaz and cost of introducing them into any givn library.

Cautions Having decided to adopt this sistem in its *decimal* form as workt out and printed, determin whether to adopt certain variations,

noted in 1–5 below as practicabl, and in sum cases useful and desirabl. The inexperienst uzer is very likely to feel entirely competent, without reading more than a singl paje of the Tables, regardless of its bearings on hundreds of other places, and without so much as looking at the author's explanations, to institute a series of 'improvements'. Experience shows that nothing cud be more disastrus. It seems a simpl matter to put a topic a line hyer or lower, but in sum cases this may affect over 100 Index entries, and there is no posibl way to be sure of correcting them except by examining each of 43,000 heds. Proposed chanjes, carefuly studid out and submitted as improvements, ar frequently shown by our old records to hav been adopted and uzed in the exact form proposed til unforeseen considerations forst us to chanje to the form as printed. Even after years of experience one is not safe in pronouncing on an apparent improvement without consulting voluminus records of previus experiments.

Even sum who hav uzed the sistem longest hav been misled into adopting chanjes which on tryal they wer compeld to reject, going bak to orijinal form at cost and confuzion of 2 chanjes. In so apparently simpl a thing as introducing subdivisions on blank numbers, mistakes ar often made; and when too late to correct them the makers regret their neglect to consult the editor and secure advice and cooperation of those most familiar with the manifold interrelations. Even wer the independent divisions equaly good, they do not agree with those which wil later be printed in Tables and Index, so that every copy of the printed skeme wil hav to be corrected in manuscript before it is uzabl in that library. The only safe rule is to *make no chanjes or subdivisions* without submitting them to the editor, who wil gladly advize on such matters without charj, not on ground of any superior wizdom, nor even becauz of larjer experience in this special work, but becauz in this way only can it be lernd if corresponding subdivisions hav been alredy assynd sumwhat differently.

A uzer who adopts printed form avoids criticizm sure to be aimd at any posibl skeme. The moment he makes 1 'improvement' he must defend all his heds or alter them to suit each critic. Much time is saved by saying that the skeme is uzed **as printed**, and blunders ar the author's, not the uzer's. A list of chanjes made by others without consultation was writn for this caution, but is omitted lest it seem invidius. It ilustrates how eazy it is for able men to make what no one questions after explanation to hav been outryt blunders, in 'improving and ading to' the

printed skeme. We ar always grateful for sugjestions from anyone, and, having alredy spent so much time in efforts to improve this sistem for the common good of all uzers, invite cooperation of those interested in completing needed subdivisions and eliminating any errors that remain in either Tables or Index.

Sugjested variations

The following brief notes show the most important variations found practicabl in the 'relativ index and location sistem,' oftener cald the Decimal Clasification or 'Dewey sistem', or oftenest simply 'D C'.

1 Letter or simbol notations for chanjes or aditions To protect other uzers from confuzion, the publishers insist, as entitled to by copyryt, that D C numbers shal not be printed with chanjed meanings or aditions, without sum clear indication of the fact in the number itself. If reazons which led to adoption of form printed ar not conclusiv to another, we wish to remove any obstacls to his use of the sistem with such chanjes as shal satisfy him. This can redily be dun by uzing a letter or sum other caracter than the 10 dijits, to mark chanjes; e.g. if yu wish a different set of subdivisions under any number, make it out to suit, and letter it a, b, c, etc. It wil arranje in its exact place and exact order without difficulty, and no other uzer of the sistem wil be confuzed by yur forms. In Index, cancel 1, 2, 3, etc. yu hav discarded, and write in a, b, c, etc. adopted. **Whenever yu uze our exact numbers, uze also our exact and universal meanings for them as indext.** For any aditions or chanjes of yur own, uze letters or simbols of yur own which can not be mistaken for ours, uzing, of course, our figures to the place where difference begins; e.g. if yu want a new heding next to 551.34, Icebergs, it can not properly go as decimal 1. Mark it 551.34a, and it arranjes as wisht. If yu wish to chanje a hed from one place to another, cancel it where it stands, and *leav that number blank* in Tables. Then insert the hed in its new place as abuv, as if it had never been in our Tables. Unuzed decimals ar often *alredy appropriated* for authorized subdivisions, tho they may not be printed til several editions later.

This plan of introducing letters or other simbols wherever each uzer pleazes, wil giv all needed freedom to the personal equation and desire for 'orijinality', and meet all real wants for peculiar clasification in peculiar cases.

Fiction In sum cases it is uzualy best to modify clas numbers by letters as abuv. In popular libraries half the circulation is often fiction. It

is a great saving to omit clas number entirely and uze merely book number, it being understood that *no* clas number means 'fiction'. Sum libraries go stil further and for fiction omit book number as wel as clas number. Sum even omit book numbers in other clases.

Juvenils After fiction, great circulation makes juvenils a good place to economize, if they ar kept separate, as is uzualy desirabl in popular libraries. Books ar clast as if for adults (except that a short number may be uzed) J being prefixt to show their special caracter. This givs J alone as clas number for juvenil fiction; J942 is a child's history of England. These books ar arranjed in a paralel library by themselvs, so J942 cums between J941, juvenil history of Scotland, and J943, juvenil history of Germany.

The separate J library can at any time be abandond by distributing J books amung the regular clases, either ignoring J entirely, or preferably by putting all J books by themselvs at end of each clas number. In former case, if shorter numbers hav been uzed for juvenils than for adults they shud be extended to correspond; in latter case, numbers may either be extended and the books shelvd at end of exact subdivision, or the shorter numbers may be retaind and the books groupt at end of entire section, e.g. *all* juvenil works on English history may be kept under short number J942 and shelvd after all adult works on English history, both 942 alone and 942 with subdivisions.

There ar thus 3 methods: 1, to hav a separate J library; 2, to hav J books by themselvs at end of each clas number; 3, to hav J books in alfabetic order amung other books on same subject. In this last case J is useful only to call attention plainly to their juvenil caracter.

Unless shorter numbers ar uzed for juvenils than for adults the same marking is uzed for all these plans, and one can be chanjed to another by simply distributing books the other way and teling attendants.

Biografy For this larj clas, opinions differ as to best treatment. Beside the plan printed in Tables the following methods ar widely uzed.

For *individual* biografy, i.e. that relating to a singl person (including books containing biografies of not more than 4 persons)

1 Put all biografies in one alfabet of names of *persons writn about,* uzing 92 for clas number, and indicating the subject or biografee by a Cutter book number; e.g. life of Grant, 92 G76. This is most compact for charjing, and is preferd in popular libraries of larj circulation. Insted of 92 for clas number, B is often uzed, but is les desirabl, since it has no lojical place in a numeric arranjement on shelvs and is sumtimes confuzed with the author's initial in fiction.

2 Distribute biografy as far as posibl to subjects it ilustrates, leaving, of course, under 920 the lives not bearing specialy on any subject; e.g. all lives of musicians go under 780 and its subdivisions, life of Wagner being 782.2 insted of 927.82 as in Tables. When 9 is uzed to indicate history of a special subject, 92 may be uzed for its biografy; e.g. 780.9 History of music, 780.92 Biografy of musicians.

Collectiv biografy may be clast in a singl group under 920, or by subject under 920–928, as in Tables, or distributed thruout the clasification, according to 2d plan givn abuv for individual biografy, subarranjement with any of these methods being alfabetic by author.

Paralel libraries This treatment of fiction, juvenils and biografy ilustrates the principl. Its other chief application is for languaj colections. Sum libraries hav a constituency not reading English, and so need a paralel library in Italian or Swedish, etc. This is most eazily made by simply prefixing languaj initial to clas number. If arranjed in one series of subjects this initial is ignored, or all books in the special languajes may be groupt under initial letters at end of each clas number. The paralel library is made by simply putting together all books having same languaj initial and then arranjing by clas numbers. Initials uzed ar F, French, G, German, I, Italian, Sp, Spanish, Sw, Swedish, Dn, Danish, Du, Dutch, N, Norwegian, W, Welsh, A, Arabic, etc. Where only 1 languaj is so markt in a givn library, jeneraly only 1 letter shud be uzed, so as to avoid an extra letter in charjing; e.g. S wil anser for either Spanish or Swedish if uzed in only 1 sense. A prefixt letter may, however, hav been uzed with a different meaning, e.g. R for Reference, necesitating more than 1 letter for the languaj prefix, *even if only 1 languaj* is represented by the initial, e.g. Ru for Russian. This plan has proved very satisfactory in actual use.

Combining languaj and literature Same principl can be applyd also in combining each languaj with its literature, if it is preferd to abolish class Filolojy, and make it simply an appendix to Literature; e.g. uzing 82f for English filolojy and ading filolojy subdivisions, English dictionaries wud becum 82f3, English grammars 82f5, etc. arranjed either just before or just after English literature, 820, 821, etc. and reverse wud hold true if a filolojist wisht to abolish Literature and make it an appendix to Filolojy.

Reference library To separate books most needed, the best plan is to mark R before clas numbers, and arranje books together as an R library. When books ar to go into jeneral colection again, draw a line thru this letter.

In same way it frequently happens that a jeneral private library is givn on condition that it be kept together; e.g. Phoenix library of Columbia University. This has P prefixt to clas number, and thus is a paralel library by itself. An initial is better than * or similar mark, for it helps memory and is just as brief. Same plan applys if the library has an 'inferno' for books not uzed without permits, or for distant rooms where books worth keeping but seldom cald for can be arranjed in a paralel storaj library.

Stil another provision is made in 080, 8 being regular number for jeneral colections (as in 508, 520.8 etc.), for those special libraries which can not be separated becauz of binding or conditions of gift; but insted of the 3 figures in 080, a singl letter, as described abuv, indicates the special colection, and it is eazy to lern location of the few special colections of any one library.

Omission of initial O in the clas 'Jeneral works' has been tryd; e.g. 51 insted of 051 for an American periodical, but is not advized, for the eye gets so in the habit of reading as *Syence* any number beginning with 5, that there is a mental hich if, e.g. jeneral periodicals ar writn 51, etc. insted of 051, etc. Another reazon is that Institut International de Bibliographie regards as neglijibl a final 0 and uzes the 1 and 2 figure numbers as we uze those same numbers fild out by 0 to 3 figures, e.g. 1 for filosofy, like our 100, 22 for Bible, like our 220. Also in clasification it sumtimes happens that the 1st 2 figures ar obvius at a glance, but time must be taken to determin the 3d. It is convenient to write these 1st figures, but if a mathematical book receivs its 1st 2 figures (51), this unfinisht number is likely to be confuzed with the 2-figure number 51. This danjer may be larjly avoided by writing the decimal point after a blank; e.g. 51 ., to show that a figure is omitted.

2 Contractions for specialists The sistem is often uzed by specialists for very minute work, where decimals run out to 6 or more places. Theoreticly it is better to write all these figures, thus showing relation to the universe of knowlej, but there is no practical gain to justify the labor if a great quantity of slips must be numberd. A specialist working on 'Swedish poetry of the aje of Gustavus' can uze a singl letter insted of the ful 839.715 and save 5 caracters in numbering each note; or a dash may be writn for all but the last figure, thus '—5'. A body of such notes can be inserted together in their place in an index at 839.715, with a colord card to mark the special groups, with litl danjer of confuzion. Stil a stickler for theoretic completeness wil write a ful index number for each separate slip.

3 Use of alfabet or cronolojy for final subdivisions While our plan is decimal as distinguisht from 'dictionary' we *always alfabet* wherever that is more useful. Indeed, the main feature of our plan is its alfabetic Relativ Index. Frequently in minute divisions it is economy to arranje alfabeticly or by dates without uzing a translation sistem. This is specialy true in index rerums and notes of specialists. After numbers hav been uzed as far as that is the most useful form, then either the name chosen for hed or the year can be inserted at the end; e.g. towns in a givn state, individual birds or insects cuming under one number, names of men writn about in biografy, etc. Sum may prefer to adopt this plan in places where we hav chosen a grouping; e.g. in chemistry, to put all metals in one alfabet under 546.3, insted of uzing numbers 546.3–.99. If this chanje is wisht, a more complete one wil probably be better: put all elements, metallic and nonmetallic, in 1 alfabet under 546. Such use of the alfabet cauzes no confuzion with the Index, as it simply subdivides more closely, unless, as in the case of 546.3, the alfabet replaces heds alredy printed. In this case, cancel all subsections in the Tables by drawing a line obliquely thru heds discarded, and mark in marjin 'Alfabet by elements,' e.g.

546.3	Metals	Alfabet by elements
.31	Alkali group	
.32	Potassium	
.33	Sodium	
.34	Lithium	
.35	Rubidium	
.36	Caesium	

Then find each of these heds in Index and cancel all figures after 546.3, e.g.

Potassium, inorganic chemistry, 546.32
Rubidium, " 546.35

This plan has special value in this place, as new elements ar discoverd from time to time, and can redily be inserted in alfabetic place. Stil many chemists think it valuabl to hav similar metals groupt together for convenience of study, and to cover books writn on the group as a whole, and also think it important to hav a number for rejected elements, becauz literature and references about them remain, and must be provided for.

4 Broken order Another common and often desirabl variation for shelf arranjement is to break sequence of numbers, to get most-uzed books nearest delivery desk. Theory keeps numbers in strict sequence;

but a hyer rule everywhere is 'sacrifice any theory for a substantial gain'. Practicaly there ar few libraries where it is not best to break order of clases. Often divisions ar best arranjed out of numeric place; e.g. 520 Astronomy may be wanted in a room accessibl at nyt; fiction, juvenils and biografy ar always wanted near the delivery desk in a public library, and in strict order ar as likely to cum at the most distant point. Numberless local reazons may make a broken order desirabl. There need be no hesitation in adopting it if enuf is gaind, but there shud be charts clearly showing where each division starts; e.g. after 430 'Preceding 830'; after 520 'In observatory', it being necesary to specify room for books entirely removed from jeneral library arranjement. The summary of 100 divisions is furnisht by Library Bureau, on celluloid charts, to show location. Opposit each division shud be markt its beginning on shelvs, and it is eazy to vary the order as much as desirabl, tho of course the nearer the divisions run in regular order, 000–999, the eazier it is for a stranjer to find his way about. Variations in order of sections ar les wize and seldom necesary, but if made, a wood or cardboard dummy in regular place shud hav markt on its side the actual location of any section removed.

This broken-order plan is best for bringing together filolojy and literature of each languaj without altering numbers or prefixing any letter. Let 420 be shelvd just ahed of 820, 430 ahed of 830, and so for all languajes, making the jeneral note that all 400s ar shelvd just ahed of corresponding 800s, and remembering that after main languajes 4 or more figures ar required to indicate languaj alone, so Portuguese filolojy goes between 868 and 869, Russian between 891.69 and 891.7, Bohemian between 891.85 and 891.86, etc.

5 Pro and con division of topics It is very useful in many cases to separate books on a topic with strongly markt sides, so either set of views and arguments may be seen by itself. This has been dun in sum cases by subdivision, e.g. 337 Protection and free trade. In others it is equaly useful, and can be indicated by an aded mark, e.g. 324.3 Woman suffraj. The number may be uzed for jeneral works, giving facts etc. and advocates and opponents may be separated by + and – for positiv and negativ, or by p and c, the initials for pro and con, which tho short, ar too long for a circulating library to uze in charjing but may be disregarded for that purpose if book numbers ar so assynd as to distinguish. In reference libraries, on cards, etc. most wil prefer to write out *pro* and *con*, to mark the 2 groups. The order on shelvs is, of course, alfabetic, i.e. 324.3, 324.3c, 324.3p; or if + and – ar uzed, the uzual order is followd: +,–.

These 5 notes sugjest the ranje of variations which may be made, and ilustrate D C adaptability to widely different conditions.

Bibliografic modifications

After study of all other availabl sistems the Decimal Clasification was adopted in 1895 by the newly organized Institut International de Bibliographie (known as I I B) as best adapted for its projected universal subject bibliografy to cover ultimately all subjects in all languajes in all periods of the world's history.

Determining factors wer:

1 Decimal Clasification was of topics, independent of languaj or exact sinonim by which exprest
2 Its notation was in itself the only international languaj, since it consisted solely of arabic numerals, uzed all over the world
3 Its decimal principl allowd indefinit intercalation

Overdetaild as the Clasification alredy seemd to many librarians, lak of subdivision was the Institute's 1st difficulty and it urjd us at once to enlarj the Tables. State Library duties at that time made concentration on this imposibl, but we promist cooperation and criticizm if I I B wud draft required extensions. When its remarkably rapid work precluded even adequate criticizm, it was authorized to publish its tables and assured that the American revision wud vary from them as litl as practicabl. At Geneva in 1924 the harmonizing of the American and European editions was agreed on and to D C editor was delegated the very extensiv work of checking the variant forms and recommending which shud be kept, a work which is now wel under way.

Obviusly, bibliografic and jeneral library use ar so different that in sum cases what is clearly best for real needs of skolarly specialists, where any simbols can be uzed on index cards, wud be quite impracticabl for a public library, which must hav simbols that can be markt on the bak of books, redily uzed by the unskild public in writing call slips, and rapidly handld by low-priced runners and yung clerks. This difficulty can, however, often be obviated by allowing alternativ forms.

I I B has devized and uzes injenius simbols, expressing many interrelations and greatly increasing numbering capacity. But these new simbols ar tho't by many too complex for ordinary shelf or catalog use, tho 25 years use by I I B with unskild clerks has proved that this objection is more fear than result of fair tryal. They ar givn here broadly for personal notes of specialists and other close clasifyers, to whom their vast prac-

tical advantajes wil strongly appeal, and as a key to notation on I I B bibliografic cards. Elaborate details and explanations ar in *Classification décimale,* Brussels, 1905, of which a new edition is announst for 1927. Obviusly these simbols allow subdivision of the same number in many different ways without confuzion.

The most important of these devices ar *3 Relation syn* and *6 Place syn* and their use in libraries where they hav been tryd has proved that it is entirely practicabl, even for marking books.

The wide and ever-growing ranje of application of certain subjects makes it imposibl to subdivide satisfactorily by assyning definit numbers, but use of colon to show relation between 2 subjects provides an automatic method which can be uzed with any subject for unlimited subdivision. (For ilustration see note under 150 Sykolojy.)

Use of ( ) round a local number provides an automatic method of local subdivision for any subject, as there may be need in an individual library, while the simbol shows instantly the *local* nature of the subdivision.

1 **Accretion syn +** This simplest of simbols, equivalent to 'and', indicates exactly what it sugjests, that the articl so numberd treats of all subject numbers connected by +; e.g. 637+614.32 a work concerning dairies and also on inspection of dairy products.

2 **Cupling syn –** This is uzed for cupling to a subject a series of subdivisions common to a group of subjects, as 400 Filolojy (e.g. 45–3 Italian dictionary, 45–4 Italian sinonims, 45–5 Italian grammar; 46–3 Spanish dictionary, 46–4 Spanish sinonims, 46–5 Spanish grammar), 800 Literature (85–3 Italian fiction, 85–4 Italian essays, 85–5 Italian oratory; 86–3 Spanish fiction, 86–4 Spanish essays, 86–5 Spanish oratory), 546 Inorganic chemistry (546.51–3 Oxids of led, 546.51–4 Sulfid of led, 546.51–5 Chlorid of led; 546.56–3 Oxids of copper, 546.56–4 Sulfid of copper, 546.56–5 Chlorid of copper; 546.57–3 Oxids of silver, 546.57–4 Sulfid of silver, 546.57–5 Chlorid of silver). It shud, however, be uzed only where such use is specificly mentiond in the Tables, as confuzion wud otherwize result. This syn is so similar to that commonly uzed for 'to and including' that when it is uzed with Institut meaning it is advizabl to uze word 'to' for the other meaning.

3 **Relation syn :** This is most useful simbol of all, as it involvs no chanje of number except omission of final 0 by those preferring shortest form. It indicates merely that subjects so connected ar *considerd in relation to each other,* thus affording means of expressing almost limitless

interrelations: e.g. ethics in relation to fine arts is 17:7 (or, better, in ful 170:700). Vice versa, art in its ethical aspect is 7:17 (or 700:170); order of numbers before and after colon depending on emfasis, or on subject with which they ar to be arranjed.

4 **Form syn (0)** Form or jeneralities ar exprest by a parenthetic number beginning with 0. This is further subdivided as follows:

(0:) Form simbol; e.g. 335 (0:843) means Socialism treated in form of a French novel.

(00) Subdivisions peculiar to a subject; e.g. for history it means sources. It is further subdivided and in sum cases modifyd by a hyfend figure; e.g. 9(44) (001–3) means *Catalog* of *official* sources of French history, (001) meaning official sources and –3 meaning catalogs, indexes, lists etc.

(01)–(09) ar the same as our regular form numbers 01–09. Obviusly we can not replace our long establisht simpl form numbers by sumthing so much more complex that it is impracticabl for shelf use.

5 **Universality syn ∞** The mathematical syn of infinity is uzed with place and time syns to mean 'Without limitation': with place syn (see 6 below) it means 'including all places', e.g. 9 (∞) History of all cuntries; with time syn (see 8 below) it means 'covering all periods', e.g. 9 (∞) "∞" History of all cuntries at all times.

6 **Place syn (3)–(9)** These replace our regular cuntry subdivisions found in 930–999, but do not conflict, as I I B merely leavs D C 930–999 vacant, and writes History of France 9(44) insted of 944. Other auxiliary place numbers indicating jeneral rejion, direction, jeolojic place, prehistoric time, etc. ar also provided in place curvs.

7 **Languaj syn =** This syn preceding languaj numbers as found in 400 Filolojy, indicates subdivision by languaj; e.g. 523.5=9185 means a work on meteors, in Polish, 91.85 being filolojy number for Polish languaj in 400.

8 **Time syn " "** Numbers denoting time division ar writn in quotes. I I B skeme givs an elaborate time-division sistem based on exact dates; e.g. "1922. 12. 11", meaning year 1922, 12th month, 11th day.

9 **Jeneral points of view syn 00** Each of the following numbers for point of view (except 005) has also a series of subdivisions:

001 Speculativ: idea, purpose, plan etc.
002 Realization: execution, construction etc.
003 Economic: industrial production, cost and sale prices, etc.
004 Servis and use: workings, administration

005 Equipment and apparatus
006 Bildings and establishments: details of organization and servis
007 Special personnel

10 A to Z Alfabetic arranjement by name of person, place or thing is indicated according to circumstances by initial or whole name.

Sequence of these simbols in clas number may be varid by uzers to produce any special arranjement wisht, but unless distinct notis of this is givn, sequence is arbitrary in the following order:

( ) " " = : - A-Z

e.g. 9(44)"17"=2 History of France in 18th century, writn in English

Other uses

Tho this sistem was devized 1st for library catalog and shelf arranjement, 54 years hav developt many new applications. Nearly every administrativ department feels directly the great economy, and in every field of literary activity this clasification has been found a great labor-saver, whose practical usefulness has exceeded the most sanguin hopes of its erly frends.

Bookstores The plan is a great convenience to both dealers and customers, when applyd to miscelaneus stok. Very often a much wanted book, specialy if not recently publisht, is reported 'not in stok', when D C arranjement by subject wud hav reveald its place at once. Specialists often find on shelvs books they wud never hav orderd, but ar glad to by after examination. Experience proves it profitabl for a dealer to arranje his books so each person may find what he is interested in without examining entire stok.

Offis files A great file of papers is like a library in miniature. Experience the world over proves that while alfabetic and numeric sistems ar invaluabl for many purposes, complete usefulness demands close clasing as material grows. The best plan is to combine simplicity of numeric and utility of clast as in this Decimal Clasification and Relativ Index uzed by most libraries. The simplest posibl printed index of 43,000 heds tels instantly by what number to mark or to find any paper. Insurance is markt 368. This means: clas 3, Sociolojy; division 6, Associations and institutions; section 8, Insurance. Fire insurance is 1st subdivision, so every paper about fire insurance is markt 368.1 and goes in the drawer in numeric order, where it can instantly be found thru the printed Index.

54 years use in a score of cuntries has proved this numeric sistem, with

its Relativ Index, a marvelus laborsaver. Clasification is a necesity if all material on any givn subject is to be redily found. The labor of making one's own clasification is uzualy prohibitiv, if wel dun. By adopting the skeme in jeneral use by libraries this labor is saved and numbers ar in harmony with those of thousands of other catalogs and indexes in which the same number has the same meaning; for, as pointed out at a recent international congress, these numbers ar the only international languaj of perfectly definit meaning amung all civilized nations; and also cheapest and quickest in application.

A successful man is uzualy a clasifyer and chartmaker. This applys as much to modern business as to syence or libraries. Hyer education differs from elementary in studying not mere facts, but their *relations to all other facts*. Alex. Bain wizely said 'to lern to clasify is in itself an education'. The man of much business or affairs must study every problem in its manifold relations; i.e. must clasify and make charts of his results. Without these he is like a sailor in stranje waters, sooner or later shiprekt unless he uzes charts to find safe channels as wel as to avoid roks and shoals. A larj business or work unclasifyd or uncharted is not a worthy organization but mere material from which a clever brain may construct one. It differs in efficiency from the ideal as a mob of men differs from a wel disciplind army. Piles of brik and mortar ar not a templ any more than heaps of typ ar Shakspere's works, tho if 'clasifyd' and set, each in ryt relation to the rest, the transformation is bro't about.

Scrapbooks The plan has proved the best for keeping newspaper clippings. Uze manila sheets of uniform size (we find 20x25cm best) Write clas number of subject in uzual place on paje, and mount clippings on sheets as in a common scrapbook. These sheets ar arranjed numericly like a clast card catalog, sheets of each clas being further arranjed, when desirabl, under alfabetic subheds. When one sheet is ful, insert another at the exact place. Thus perfect clasification is kept up without blank sheets, and at smallest outlay of money and trubl. Scraps thus mounted ar shelvd either in manila pamflet cases or in patent binders, or ar kept in vertical files.

Index rerums These ar best made on standard P size (7.5x12.5cm) cards or slips. Lyt weight catalog card stok is best for private indexes, etc. It costs only ⅔ as much as hevy bristol, takes only ⅔ room, and handls eazily.

Where durability and convenience of handling ar les important than cheapness uze common hevy writing paper. Novises often greatly di-

minish usefulness of the card sistem by uzing ordinary machine-cut cards or slips varying in hyt so much as to make quik and accurate manipulation imposibl. Extreme variation to be tolerated is 1 mm or $\frac{1}{25}$ inch. This wil be understood by placing a 7.4cm card between two 7.5cm cards. In rapid turning, fingers make a brij across taller cards and mis the lower one entirely. Cards must be accurately cut or they lose half their value and in many cases necesitate recopying material at a cost 10-fold greater than to hav thrown away imperfectly cut cards or slips at the outset.

Clas number is writn in upper left corner, any alfabetic subject hed follows at ryt, and notes fil card below. Cards ar then filed in order of clas numbers, the cards of each clas being further arranjed like scrap sheets, according to any alfabetic subheds.

Paper the size of scrap sheets, 20x25cm, arranjed and stored the same way may be uzed insted of cards. This has the advantaj of a ful letter paje in syt at once, and holds over 5 times as much as card. While the sistem can be applyd to slips or sheets of any size, there ar literaly hundreds of accessories and conveniences exactly adapted to these 2 sizes, which ar uzed much more than all others combined; so it is folly to begin on another size, and lose the advantajes of this uniformity. If intermediate sizes must be had, the best ar Billet 10x15cm, Note 12.5x20cm, and Ms 15x25cm. Often uzers of sum other size finaly find it profitabl to chanje to either P, 7.5x12.5, or to L, 20x25cm, even at cost of rewriting many notes.

After 50 years use of P size, countless millions of cards ar in catalogs and indexes in scores of cuntries, so it wud be quite imposibl to chanje from 7.5x12.5cm. But recent study and experiments hav shown that sheet or room proportions ar most pleazing in ratio of 1 to square root of 2, or about 5 to 7, i.e. ratio of the side of an equal-side triangl to its hypotenuse. An immense practical advantaj is that this is the only ratio where continuus halving givs always the same ideal proportion. This results in markt economy in cutting sizes from larj standard sheets. The favorit letter sheet is 19x27 cm. This fits most vertical and other files. We now uze it insted of 20x25 and 15x25. Half this size is a pleazing small quarto, 13.5x19, and its quarter is a very convenient pocket size, 9.5x13.5cm. These replace our old Note and Billet sizes.

Note books ar best in loos-leaf form. A much poorer method is to take a bound blank book, and assyn clas numbers in order, giving about the space it is tho't each wil require, and, when pajes so assynd ar ful, note at bottom where rest of the material may be found. This has all objec-

tions of old fixt location as compared to relativ, and wil hardly be adopted by any person who has ever seen loos-leaf simplicity and economy.

Scores of devices for convenient handling and storing of these slips and sheets and of pamflets ar manufactured. The ful descriptiv and ilustrated catalogs of Library Bureau giv details.

Topical indexes Clas numbers ar uzed to index books red. Simpl numbers take the place of a series of words, and results can be handld, arranjed and found much quicker. Such entries may be kept separate or combined with index rerums.

Advantajes for making topical indexes of colected works, periodicals, transactions etc. wil be evident to every indexer or librarian. These consolidated indexes may be arranjed together with the card catalog of the books, or by themselvs, as seems best in each case.

These ar only a few of the sistem's varid applications. Enuf hav been mentiond to show its wide adaptability to wants of librarian, student and business man.

This brief account has probably faild to meet sum objections which may be raizd and could eazily be anserd.

Tho much elaborated and in sum few points alterd, the essential caracter of the plan has remaind unchanjed from the first. Revision and expansion constantly in progress involv many new interrelations. As extensiv advance testing of new skemes is not always posibl, practical applications ar sure to develop unnotist faults. Clasifyers ar therefore askt to uze new tables criticaly and report defects of any kind, with proposed remedies and any needed subdivisions, also any heds needed for the Index. All such criticizms ar a decided help and favor.

Aknowlejments

The labor on Clasification and Index has been wholy beyond appreciation of any who hav never attempted a similar task.

In his varid reading, correspondence and conversation on the subject, the author has doutless recievd many sugjestions and gaind ideas which it is now imposibl for him specificly to aknowlej. The *Nuovo sistema di catalogo bibliografico generale* of Natale Battezzati, of Milan, adopted by the Italian publishers in 1871, tho he copid nothing from it, more

than any other singl sistem stimulated his study of the problem. The plan of the St Louis Public School Library and that of the Apprentices' Library of New York, which in sum respects resembld his own, wer not seen til all essential features wer decided on, tho not givn to the public. In filling the 9 clases of the skeme, the inverted Baconian arranjement of the St Louis Library was followd. The author has no wish to claim orijinal invention for any part of his sistem where another has been before him, and wud gladly make specific aknowlejment of every aid and sugjestion wer it in his power. Tho at its start a litl book, it came not forth except by grievus labor.

Much valuabl aid has been renderd by specialists, who hav assisted greatly in developing tables. Amung these ar many wel-known skolars, and to all most cordial aknowlejment is made. Without such assistance, the present development cud not hav been attaind, for many minds wer necesary to supply teknical and special lerning absolutely essential in filling minute heds. Indeed, in many subjects the author's share has been limited to modification necesary for teknical adjustment to his skeme, of material prepared by specialists. To many prominent librarians we ar indetted for valuabl sugjestions and appreciativ criticizm. While these frends ar in no way responsibl for any remaining imperfections, they shud hav credit for many improvements made in these 54 years of revision, during the 1st 3 of which the skeme was kept in manuscript, that its many details myt be subjected to actual tryal, and modifyd where improvement was found practicabl.

We ar under deep obligation to Institut International de Bibliographie for its great volume of valuabl work, covering almost the whole ranje of subjects, and also for its advice and criticizm during progress of our own expansions. To Dr C W Andrews, John Crerar Librarian, Chicago, and to American Library Association clasification committee, of which for past 10 years he has been chairman, we ar greatly indetted for interest and advice.

W S Biscoe From 1st publication to the present, the most extended and valued assistance has cum from my colej clasmate, associate and frend, Walter Stanley Biscoe, my 1st assistant in Amherst College Library, in charj of which he succeeded me, resyning to accept again in 1883 the place next me in Columbia College Library, and again resyning in 1889 to becum librarian in charj of clasification and catalogs in New York State Library. This book is witness to the rare unselfishness with

which he has givn time taken from rest and recreation to this work, in which he shared my interest and faith.

May Seymour Except a year in charj of clasification in the Osterhout Library she was with me 34 years, from her entrance to the 1st Library School clas in 1887 til her deth, June 14, 1921. At New York State Library, clasification was her department til she was made director's assistant. For 32 years every item of work on new editions past thru her hands. For each of editions 4–10 she did all editorial and much constructiv work, secured expert cooperation, cald attention to faults or omissions, and sought the best availabl compromize where doctors disagreed, devoting to this vast labor rare skolarly industry and a loyalty for which no words of thanks can be adequate. She shared my faith in its immense usefulness, did the hardest work, and deservs the gratitude of all who profit by this invaluabl laborsaver. I often askt that her name appear on the title-paje of the book to which she gave so much, but she persistently refuzed.

Her place as editor was taken by one of her own choosing, Dorcas Fellows, who more than anyone else had workt closely with Mis Seymour for 25 years, and who wil giv future editions the benefit of cumulativ experience in which she so larjly shared. D C uzers ar congratulated that Mis Seymour's position is held by the one whom she herself chose as best adapted to carry on her work. For 5 years past her hedquarters hav been in New York State Library at Albany, which has long been regarded by many as D C's library home, but recent developments in relations of American Library Association, Library of Congress and Decimal Clasification hav resulted in an invitation from L C to D C to make its home henceforth at that Library, where, most appropriately, D C's servis to American libraries, which is the chief factor in its work, wil be coordinated with undertakings previusly instald by the national library, extending stil further the latter's alredy great servises to the libraries of the cuntry at larj.

Future of D C

Mis Seymour had a stedily growing wish to make D C a permanent force for education, by greatly improving its ful, short and outline editions, and by printing cheap special editions (indext) for many prominent divisions; e.g. education, medicin, enjineering, agriculture. As a

memorial to her, all copyryts and control of all editions hav been givn to Lake Placid Club Education Foundation, in establishing which she had been warmly and activly interested, and which was charterd by the University of the State of New York, Jan. 26, 1922, with these objects:

'as an educational institution, to restore to helth and educational efficiency teachers, librarians and other educators of moderate means, who hav becum incapacitated by overwork; to establish, maintain and aid skools, libraries or other educational institutions, specialy at Lake Placid; and to institute, organize or foster other movements to advance public welfare thru education, by means of the Foundation pres, conferences, forums, addresses, gyded reading, and similar ajencies'.

To this Foundation was at once givn all voting stok and surplus of Lake Placid Co. which owns the 10,000 akers and 391 bildings of Lake Placid Club, thus assuring permanent financial support, which has alredy been further increast by gifts and bequests from interested frends. Under Foundation auspices future editions of D C wil be publisht, on absolute condition that entire reciets abuv necesary expenses be uzed forever solely for improving D C and extending its usefulness, thereby preventing posibility that the work shud ever be made a source of either individual or institution profit. A committee on D C, consisting of the most interested Foundation trustees, in consultation with committees of American Library Association and Institut International de Bibliographie, wil insure observance of the abuv condition.

D C has becum an international laborsaver. It therefore justly belongs to its uzers as a whole. All who contribute to the stedy improvement of future editions may kno that they ar helping to make stil more useful a sistem which is so greatly helping stedily increasing thousands scatterd all over the civilized world.

MELVIL DEWEY

LAKE PLACID CLUB N Y
Dec. 10, 1926

Previus editions hav been dated Amherst College Library, June 10, 1876; Columbia College Library, Aug. 10, 1885, and Aug. 30, 1888; New York State Library, Dec. 25, 1890; Lake Placid Club, Ap. 10, 1911, Ap. 10, 1913, Oct. 1, 1915, Aug. 11, 1919, and Aug. 31, 1922.

Summaries

Summaries

The first summary gives the ten classes, the second the hundred divisions, the third the sections. In the second summary are included, so far as space permits, those topics which are by indention coordinate with divisions, but which are based on numbers not ending in 0, *e.g.*,

440 French, Provençal, Catalan

The tables show that 449 Provençal language and 449.9 Catalan language are coordinate with 440 French language.

Likewise, in the third summary are included, so far as space permits, those topics which are by indention coordinate with sections, but which are based on numbers of more than three digits, *e.g.*,

387 Marine & air transportation
943 Germany & central Europe

The tables show 387.7 air transportation coordinate with 387 marine transportation; 943.6 Austria, 943.7 Czechoslovakia, 943.8 Poland coordinate with 943 Germany.

First Summary: Classes

000 General works

100 Philosophy

200 Religion

300 Social sciences

400 Language

500 Pure science

600 Technology

700 The arts

800 Literature

900 History

Second Summary: Divisions

000 General works
- 010 Bibliography
- 020 Library science
- 030 General encyclopedias
- 040 General collected essays
- 050 General periodicals
- 060 General societies
- 070 Newspaper journalism
- 080 Collected works
- 090 Manuscripts & rare books

100 Philosophy
- 110 Metaphysics
- 120 Metaphysical theories
- 130 Branches of psychology
- 140 Philosophical topics
- 150 General psychology
- 160 Logic
- 170 Ethics
- 180 Ancient & medieval
- 190 Modern philosophy

200 Religion
- 210 Natural theology
- 220 Bible
- 230 Doctrinal theology
- 240 Devotional & practical
- 250 Pastoral theology
- 260 Christian church
- 270 Christian church history
- 280 Christian churches & sects
- 290 Other religions

300 Social sciences
- 310 Statistics
- 320 Political science
- 330 Economics
- 340 Law
- 350 Public administration
- 360 Social welfare
- 370 Education
- 380 Public services & utilities
- 390 Customs & folklore

400 Language
- 410 Comparative linguistics
- 420 English & Anglo-Saxon
- 430 Germanic languages
- 440 French, Provençal, Catalan
- 450 Italian, Rumanian
- 460 Spanish, Portuguese
- 470 Latin & other Italic
- 480 Classical & modern Greek
- 490 Other languages

500 Pure science
- 510 Mathematics
- 520 Astronomy
- 530 Physics
- 540 Chemistry & allied sciences
- 550 Earth sciences
- 560 Paleontology
- 570 Anthropology & biology
- 580 Botanical sciences
- 590 Zoological sciences

600 Technology
- 610 Medical sciences
- 620 Engineering
- 630 Agriculture
- 640 Home economics
- 650 Business
- 660 Chemical technology
- 670 Manufactures
- 680 Other manufactures
- 690 Building construction

700 The arts
- 710 Landscape & civic art
- 720 Architecture
- 730 Sculpture
- 740 Drawing & decorative arts
- 750 Painting
- 760 Prints & print making
- 770 Photography
- 780 Music
- 790 Recreation

800 Literature
- 810 American literature in English
- 820 English and Old English
- 830 Germanic literatures
- 840 French, Provençal, Catalan
- 850 Italian, Rumanian
- 860 Spanish, Portuguese
- 870 Latin & other Italic literatures
- 880 Classical & modern Greek
- 890 Other literatures

900 History
- 910 Geography, travels, description
- 920 Biography
- 930 Ancient history
- 940 Europe
- 950 Asia
- 960 Africa
- 970 North America
- 980 South America
- 990 Other parts of world

Third Summary: Sections

General works

000 General works
- 001 Knowledge, learning
- 002 The book
- 003
- 004
- 005
- 006 Information & communication
- 007 Research in general
- 008
- 009

010 Bibliography
- 011 Universal & general
- 012 Individual persons
- 013 Specific classes of writers
- 014 Anonymous & pseudonymous
- 015 National bibliographies
- 016 Subject bibliographies
- 017 Classified catalogs
- 018 Author catalogs
- 019 Dictionary catalogs

020 Library science
- 021 Establishment & purpose
- 022 Buildings
- 023 Government & personnel
- 024 Regulations for use of libraries
- 025 Management & operation
- 026 Special libraries
- 027 General libraries
- 028 Reading & reading guidance
- 029 Literary methods & labor savers

030 General encyclopedias
- 031 American encyclopedias
- 032 English encyclopedias
- 033 German encyclopedias
- 034 French encyclopedias
- 035 Italian encyclopedias
- 036 Spanish encyclopedias
- 037 Russian encyclopedias
- 038 Scandinavian encyclopedias
- 039 Other encyclopedias

040 General collected essays
- 041 American essays
- 042 English essays
- 043 German essays
- 044 French essays
- 045 Italian essays
- 046 Spanish essays
- 047 Russian essays
- 048 Scandinavian essays
- 049 Other languages

050 General periodicals
- 051 American periodicals
- 052 English periodicals
- 053 German periodicals
- 054 French periodicals
- 055 Italian periodicals
- 056 Spanish periodicals
- 057 Russian periodicals
- 058 Scandinavian periodicals
- 059 Periodicals in other languages

060 General societies
- 061 In Canada & United States
- 062 In England & Wales
- 063 In Germany
- 064 In France
- 065 In Italy
- 066 In Spain & Portugal
- 067 In USSR & Finland
- 068 Other general societies
- 069 Museums

070 Newspaper journalism
- 071 Canada & United States
- 072 England & Wales
- 073 Germany
- 074 France
- 075 Italy
- 076 Spain & Portugal
- 077 USSR & Finland
- 078 Scandinavia
- 079 Other countries

080 Collected works
- 081 Individual authors
- 082 Several authors
- 083
- 084
- 085
- 086
- 087
- 088
- 089

090 Manuscripts & rare books
- 091 Manuscripts
- 092 Block books
- 093 Incunabula
- 094 Rare printing
- 095 Rare binding
- 096 Rare illustrations or materials
- 097 Bookplates
- 098 Works remarkable for content
- 099 Curiosa and eccentric books

Philosophy

100 Philosophy
- 101 Value & use
- 102 Handbooks & outlines
- 103 Dictionaries & encyclopedias
- 104 Essays & lectures
- 105 Periodicals
- 106 Organizations & societies
- 107 Study & teaching
- 108 Collections
- 109 History

110 Metaphysics
- 111 Ontology
- 112 Methodology
- 113 Cosmology
- 114 Space
- 115 Time & duration
- 116 Motion & change
- 117 Matter
- 118 Force & energy
- 119 Quantity

120 Metaphysical theories
- 121 Epistemology
- 122 Cause & effect
- 123 Freedom & necessity
- 124 Teleology
- 125 Finite & infinite
- 126 Consciousness & personality
- 127 Unconscious & subconscious
- 128 The soul
- 129 Origin & destiny

130 Branches of psychology
- 131 Physiological psychology
- 132 Abnormal psychology
- 133 Occult sciences
- 134 Hypnotism
- 135 Sleep, dreams, somnambulism
- 136 Differential psychology
- 137 Psychology of personality
- 138 Physiognomy
- 139 Phrenology

140 Philosophical topics
- 141 Idealism & related topics
- 142 Critical philosophy
- 143 Intuitionism
- 144 Humanism & related topics
- 145 Sensationalism
- 146 Naturalism & related topics
- 147 Pantheism & related topics
- 148 Liberalism & related topics
- 149 Other philosophical topics

150 General psychology
- 151 Intelligence & aptitudes
- 152 Sensation & perception
- 153 Cognition
- 154 Memory & learning
- 155 Imagination
- 156 Intuition
- 157 Emotions
- 158 Conation, movement, instinct
- 159 Volition & motivation

160 Logic
- 161 Induction
- 162 Deduction
- 163 Logic based on faith
- 164 Symbolism & mathematical logic
- 165 Fallacies & sources of error
- 166 Syllogism
- 167 Hypothesis
- 168 Argument & persuasion
- 169 Analogy

170 Ethics
- 171 Ethical theories
- 172 Political
- 173 Family ethics
- 174 Occupations
- 175 Recreation
- 176 Sex
- 177 Social relations
- 178 Temperance & intemperance
- 179 Other ethical topics

180 Ancient & medieval
- 181 Oriental philosophy
- 182 Pre-Socratic Greek philosophy
- 183 Sophistic & Socratic philosophy
- 184 Platonic philosophy
- 185 Aristotelian philosophy
- 186 Skepticism & Neoplatonism
- 187 Epicurean philosophy
- 188 Stoic philosophy
- 189 Medieval Western philosophy

190 Modern philosophy
- 191 United States & Canadian
- 192 British
- 193 German & Austrian
- 194 French
- 195 Italian
- 196 Spanish & Portuguese
- 197 Russian & Finnish
- 198 Scandinavian
- 199 Other modern philosophies

Religion

200 Religion
- 201 Philosophy & theories
- 202 Handbooks & outlines
- 203 Dictionaries & encyclopedias
- 204 Essays & lectures
- 205 Periodicals
- 206 Organizations & societies
- 207 Study & teaching
- 208 Collections
- 209 History

210 Natural theology
- 211 Knowledge of God
- 212 Pantheism
- 213 Creation of universe & earth
- 214 Theodicy
- 215 Religion & science
- 216 Good & evil
- 217 Worship
- 218 Immortality
- 219 Analogy

220 Bible
- 221 Old Testament
- 222 Historical books
- 223 Poetic books
- 224 Prophetic books
- 225 New Testament
- 226 Gospels & Acts
- 227 Epistles
- 228 Revelation (Apocalypse)
- 229 Apocrypha & deuterocanonical

230 Doctrinal theology
- 231 God
- 232 Christology
- 233 Man
- 234 Salvation
- 235 Saints, angels, devils
- 236 Eschatology
- 237 Future state
- 238 Christian creeds
- 239 Apologetics

240 Devotional & practical
- 241 Moral theology
- 242 Meditations & contemplations
- 243 Evangelistic writings
- 244
- 245 Hymnology
- 246 Christian symbolism
- 247 Sacred furniture & vestments
- 248 Personal religion
- 249 Family worship

250 Pastoral theology
- 251 Preaching (Homiletics)
- 252 Sermons
- 253 Pastor
- 254 Church & parish administration
- 255
- 256
- 257
- 258 Parish welfare work
- 259 Other parish activities

260 Christian church
- 261 Christian social theology
- 262 Government & organization
- 263 Sabbath & Sunday
- 264 Ritual & liturgy
- 265 Sacraments & other rituals
- 266 Missions
- 267 Religious associations
- 268 Religious education
- 269 Public spiritual renewal

270 Christian church history
- 271 Religious orders
- 272 Persecutions
- 273 Heresies
- 274 In Europe
- 275 In Asia
- 276 In Africa
- 277 In North America
- 278 In South America
- 279 In other parts of world

280 Christian churches & sects
- 281 Primitive & Oriental churches
- 282 Roman Catholic Church
- 283 Anglican churches
- 284 Protestantism
- 285 Presbyterian & other
- 286 Baptist churches
- 287 Methodist churches
- 288 Unitarian Church
- 289 Other Christian sects

290 Other religions
- 291 Comparative religion
- 292 Greek & Roman
- 293 Teutonic & Norse
- 294 Brahmanism & related
- 295 Zoroastrianism & related
- 296 Judaism
- 297 Islam & Bahaism
- 298
- 299 Other religions

Social sciences

300 Social sciences
- 301 Sociology
- 302 Handbooks & outlines
- 303 Dictionaries & encyclopedias
- 304 Essays & lectures
- 305 Periodicals
- 306 Organizations & societies
- 307 Study & teaching
- 308 Collections
- 309 History, social planning

310 Statistics
- 311 Theory & methodology
- 312 Demography
- 313
- 314 Europe
- 315 Asia
- 316 Africa
- 317 North America
- 318 South America
- 319 Other parts of world

320 Political science
- 321 Forms of state
- 322 State & church
- 323 State & individuals
- 324 Suffrage & elections
- 325 Migration & colonization
- 326 Slavery
- 327 Foreign relations
- 328 Legislation
- 329 Political parties

330 Economics
- 331 Labor economics
- 332 Financial economics
- 333 Land economics
- 334 Cooperation & cooperatives
- 335 Economic ideologies
- 336 Public finance
- 337 Tariff policy
- 338 Production economics
- 339 Income & wealth

340 Law
- 341 International law
- 342 Constitutional law & history
- 343 Criminal law
- 344 Martial law
- 345 United States statutes & cases
- 346 British statutes & cases
- 347 Law treatises
- 348 Canon law (Ecclesiastical law)
- 349 Foreign law

350 Public administration
- 351 Central governments
- 352 Local governments
- 353 United States governments
- 354 Other countries
- 355 Elements of warfare
- 356 Infantry
- 357 Cavalry & mounted services
- 358 Other arms & services
- 359 Naval forces

360 Social welfare
- 361 Social work & agencies
- 362 Services to special groups
- 363 Political societies
- 364 Criminology & correction
- 365 Penology
- 366 Associations
- 367 Social clubs
- 368 Insurance
- 369 Other associations

370 Education
- 371 Teaching, school organization
- 372 Elementary education
- 373 Secondary education
- 374 Adult education
- 375 Curriculum
- 376 Education of women
- 377 Religious & moral education
- 378 Higher education
- 379 Education & the state

380 Public services & utilities
- 381 Internal commerce
- 382 International commerce
- 383 Postal communication
- 384 Telecommunication
- 385 Railroad transportation
- 386 Inland waterway transportation
- 387 Marine & air transportation
- 388 Highway & urban transportation
- 389 Metrology & standardization

390 Customs & folklore
- 391 Costume
- 392 Customs of life cycle
- 393 Treatment of the dead
- 394 Public & social customs
- 395 Etiquette
- 396 Woman
- 397 Gypsies
- 398 Folklore
- 399 Customs of war

Language

400 Language
- 401 Philosophy & theory
- 402 Handbooks & outlines
- 403 Dictionaries & encyclopedias
- 404 Essays & lectures
- 405 Periodicals
- 406 Organizations & societies
- 407 Study & teaching
- 408 Collections, dialectology
- 409 History & local treatment

410 Comparative linguistics
- 411 Written language
- 412 Etymology
- 413 Lexicography
- 414 Sounds of language
- 415 Grammar
- 416 Prosody
- 417 Inscriptions & paleography
- 418 Texts
- 419 Nonverbal communication

420 English
- 421 Written & spoken elements
- 422 Etymology
- 423 Dictionaries & lexicography
- 424 Synonyms, antonyms, homonyms
- 425 Grammar
- 426 Prosody
- 427 Early & nonliterary forms
- 428 Textbooks for learning English

429 Old English (Anglo-Saxon)

430 German
- 431 Written & spoken elements
- 432 Etymology
- 433 Dictionaries & lexicography
- 434 Synonyms, antonyms, homonyms
- 435 Grammar
- 436 Prosody
- 437 Early & nonliterary forms
- 438 Textbooks for learning German

439 Other Germanic

440 French
- 441 Written & spoken elements
- 442 Etymology
- 443 Dictionaries & lexicography
- 444 Synonyms, antonyms, homonyms
- 445 Grammar
- 446 Prosody
- 447 Early & nonliterary forms
- 448 Textbooks for learning French

449 Provençal & Catalan

450 Italian
- 451 Written & spoken elements
- 452 Etymology
- 453 Dictionaries & lexicography
- 454 Synonyms, antonyms, homonyms
- 455 Grammar
- 456 Prosody
- 457 Early & nonliterary forms
- 458 Textbooks for learning Italian

459 Rumanian

460 Spanish
- 461 Written & spoken elements
- 462 Etymology
- 463 Dictionaries & lexicography
- 464 Synonyms, antonyms, homonyms
- 465 Grammar
- 466 Prosody
- 467 Early & nonliterary forms
- 468 Textbooks for learning Spanish

469 Portuguese & Galician

470 Latin
- 471 Written & spoken elements
- 472 Etymology
- 473 Dictionaries & lexicography
- 474 Synonyms, antonyms, homonyms
- 475 Grammar
- 476 Prosody
- 477 Historic & nonliterary forms
- 478 Textbooks for learning Latin

479 Other Italic

480 Classical Greek
- 481 Written & spoken elements
- 482 Etymology
- 483 Dictionaries & lexicography
- 484 Synonyms, antonyms, homonyms
- 485 Grammar
- 486 Prosody
- 487 Historic & nonliterary forms
- 488 Textbooks for learning Greek

489 Modern Greek

490 Other languages
- 491 Other Indo-European languages
- 492 Semitic languages
- 493 Hamitic languages
- 494 Finno-Ugric, Turkic, other
- 495 Languages of East Asia
- 496 African languages
- 497 North American Indian
- 498 South American Indian
- 499 Austronesian & other

Pure science

500 Pure science
- 501 Philosophy & theory
- 502 Handbooks & outlines
- 503 Dictionaries & encyclopedias
- 504 Essays & lectures
- 505 Periodicals
- 506 Organizations & societies
- 507 Study & teaching
- 508 Collections
- 509 History & local treatment

510 Mathematics
- 511 Arithmetic
- 512 Algebra
- 513 Geometries
- 514 Trigonometry
- 515 Descriptive geometry
- 516 Analytic geometry
- 517 Calculus
- 518
- 519 Probabilities

520 Astronomy & allied sciences
- 521 Theoretical astronomy
- 522 Practical & spherical
- 523 Descriptive & astrophysics
- 524
- 525 Earth (Astronomical geography)
- 526 Mathematical geography
- 527 Celestial navigation
- 528 Ephemerides
- 529 Chronology

530 Physics
- 531 Mechanics of solids
- 532 Mechanics of fluids
- 533 Mechanics of gases
- 534 Sound
- 535 Optics
- 536 Heat
- 537 Electricity & electronics
- 538 Magnetism
- 539 Modern physics

540 Chemistry
- 541 Physical & theoretical
- 542 Chemical laboratories
- 543 Analytic chemistry
- 544 Qualitative analysis
- 545 Quantitative analysis
- 546 Inorganic chemistry
- 547 Organic chemistry

548 Crystallography

549 Mineralogy

550 Earth sciences
- 551 Geophysics & related subjects
- 552 Petrology
- 553 Economic geology
- 554 Geology of Europe
- 555 Geology of Asia
- 556 Geology of Africa
- 557 Geology of North America
- 558 Geology of South America
- 559 Geology of other parts of world

560 Paleontology
- 561 Paleobotany
- 562 Invertebrate paleozoology
- 563 Simple forms
- 564 Mollusca & molluscoidea
- 565 Other fossil invertebrates
- 566 Vertebrate paleozoology
- 567 Anamnia
- 568 Sauropsida
- 569 Mammalia

570 Anthropology & biology
- 571 Prehistoric archeology
- 572 Anthropology
- 573 Physical anthropology
- 574 Biology
- 575 Organic evolution
- 576 Microbiology
- 577 Philosophy of biology
- 578 Microscopes & microscopy
- 579 Collection & preservation

580 Botanical sciences
- 581 Botany
- 582 Spermatophyta
- 583 Dicotyledones
- 584 Monocotyledones
- 585 Gymnospermae
- 586 Cryptogamia
- 587 Pteridophyta
- 588 Bryophyta
- 589 Thallophyta

590 Zoological sciences
- 591 Zoology
- 592 Invertebrates
- 593 Simple forms
- 594 Mollusca & molluscoidea
- 595 Other invertebrates
- 596 Vertebrates
- 597 Anamnia
- 598 Reptiles & birds
- 599 Mammalia

Technology

600 Technology
- 601 Philosophy & theory
- 602 Handbooks & outlines
- 603 Dictionaries & encyclopedias
- 604 Essays & lectures
- 605 Periodicals
- 606 Organizations & societies
- 607 Technical education & research
- 608 Collections
- 609 History & local treatment

610 Medical sciences
- 611 Human anatomy
- 612 Human physiology
- 613 Hygiene
- 614 Public aspects
- 615 Therapeutics & pharmacology
- 616 Medicine
- 617 Surgery
- 618 Other medical specialties
- 619 Comparative medicine

620 Engineering
- 621 Mechanical engineering
- 622 Mining & mining engineering
- 623 Military & naval engineering
- 624 Civil engineering
- 625 Railroad & road engineering
- 626
- 627 Hydraulic engineering
- 628 Sanitary & municipal
- 629 Other branches of engineering

630 Agriculture
- 631 Farm & farmstead
- 632 Plant injuries, diseases, pests
- 633 Field crops
- 634 Fruit culture & forestry
- 635 Garden crops
- 636 Livestock & domestic animals
- 637 Dairy industry
- 638 Useful invertebrates
- 639 Hunting & fishing industries

640 Home economics
- 641 Food
- 642 Dining & food service
- 643 Home planning
- 644 Home utilities
- 645 Home furnishing
- 646 Clothing & personal appearance
- 647 Household management
- 648 Household sanitation
- 649 Child care & home nursing

650 Business
- 651 Office management
- 652 Writing
- 653 Shorthand
- 654
- 655 Printing & publishing
- 656
- 657 Accounting
- 658 Industrial management
- 659 Other topics in business

660 Chemical technology
- 661 Industrial chemicals
- 662 Explosives & fuels
- 663 Beverages
- 664 Food technology
- 665 Oils, fats, waxes, gases
- 666 Ceramic & allied industries
- 667 Cleaning & dyeing
- 668 Other organic products

669 Metallurgy

670 Manufactures
- 671 Metal manufactures
- 672 Iron & steel manufactures
- 673 Other metal manufactures
- 674 Lumber industry
- 675 Leather & fur industries
- 676 Pulp & paper
- 677 Textile & fiber manufactures
- 678 Rubber & rubberlike materials
- 679 Miscellaneous products

680 Other manufactures
- 681 Precision apparatus
- 682 Small forge work
- 683 Hardware
- 684 Furnishings
- 685 Leather goods
- 686
- 687 Apparel manufacture
- 688 Small articles
- 689

690 Building construction
- 691 Materials
- 692 Business practices
- 693 Systems
- 694 Wood construction
- 695 Roofing & roofing materials
- 696 Plumbing & pipe fitting
- 697 Heating, ventilating, cooling
- 698 Detail finishing
- 699

The arts

700 The arts
701 Philosophic aspects
702 Handbooks & outlines
703 Dictionaries & encyclopedias
704 Essays & lectures
705 Periodicals
706 Organizations & societies
707 Study & teaching
708 Galleries, museums, collections
709 History of art

710 Landscape & civic art
711 Area planning
712 Landscape architecture
713 Landscaping roads
714 Water features
715 Woody plants
716 Herbaceous plants
717 Structures
718 Planning cemeteries
719 Natural landscapes

720 Architecture
721 Architectural construction
722 Ancient architecture
723 Medieval architecture
724 Renaissance & modern
725 Public buildings
726 Ecclesiastical buildings
727 Educational buildings
728 Residential buildings
729 Design & decoration

730 Sculpture
731 Materials & techniques
732 Ancient & primitive sculpture
733 Classical sculpture
734 Medieval sculpture
735 Renaissance & modern sculpture
736 Carvings & carving techniques
737 Numismatics
738 Ceramic arts
739 Art metalwork

740 Drawing & decorative arts
741 Freehand drawing
742 Perspective
743 Specific subjects
744 Technical drawing
745 Decorative art & design
746 Textile handicrafts & waxwork
747 Interior decoration
748 Glassware & stained glass
749 Furniture & accessories

750 Painting
751 Painting materials & methods
752 Color theory & practice
753 Epic paintings
754 Genre paintings
755 Religious paintings
756 Historical paintings
757 Figure paintings
758 Other subjects; collections
759 History of painting

760 Prints & print making
761 Relief processes
762
763 Lithographic processes
764 Chromolithography
765 Metal engraving
766 Mezzotinting & aquatinting
767 Etching & dry point work
768
769 Collections of prints

770 Photography
771 Equipment & supplies
772 Metallic salt processes
773 Pigment processes
774
775
776
777
778 Specific fields of photography
779 Collections of photographs

780 Music
781 Theory & technique of music
782 Dramatic music
783 Sacred music
784 Vocal music
785 Instrumental ensemble
786 Keyboard instruments
787 String instruments
788 Wind instruments
789 Percussion & mechanical

790 Recreation
791 Public entertainment
792 Theater
793 Indoor games & amusements
794 Indoor games of skill
795 Games of chance
796 Athletic & outdoor sports
797 Aquatic sports
798 Equestrian sports
799 Fishing, hunting, shooting

Literature

800 Literature
801 Philosophy & theory
802 Handbooks & outlines
803 Dictionaries & encyclopedias
804 Essays & lectures
805 Periodicals
806 Organizations & societies
807 Study & teaching
808 Literary composition
809 History & criticism

810 American literature
811 American poetry
812 American drama
813 American fiction
814 American essays
815 American oratory
816 American letters
817 American satire & humor
818 American miscellany
819

820 English literature
821 English poetry
822 English drama
823 English fiction
824 English essays
825 English oratory
826 English letters
827 English satire & humor
828 English miscellany

829 Old English literature

830 German literature
831 German poetry
832 German drama
833 German fiction
834 German essays
835 German oratory
836 German letters
837 German satire & humor
838 German miscellany

839 Other Germanic

840 French literature
841 French poetry
842 French drama
843 French fiction
844 French essays
845 French oratory
846 French letters
847 French satire & humor
848 French miscellany

849 Provençal & Catalan

850 Italian literature
851 Italian poetry
852 Italian drama
853 Italian fiction
854 Italian essays
855 Italian oratory
856 Italian letters
857 Italian satire & humor
858 Italian miscellany

859 Rumanian

860 Spanish literature
861 Spanish poetry
862 Spanish drama
863 Spanish fiction
864 Spanish essays
865 Spanish oratory
866 Spanish letters
867 Spanish satire & humor
868 Spanish miscellany

869 Portuguese & Galician

870 Latin literature
871 Latin poetry
872 Dramatic poetry
873 Epic poetry
874 Lyric poetry
875 Latin oratory
876 Latin letters
877 Latin satire & humor
878 Latin miscellany

879 Medieval & modern Latin

880 Greek literature
881 Greek poetry
882 Dramatic poetry
883 Epic poetry
884 Lyric poetry
885 Greek oratory
886 Greek letters
887 Greek satire & humor
888 Greek miscellany

889 Byzantine & Hellenic

890 Other literatures
891 Other Indo-European
892 Semitic literatures
893 Hamitic literatures
894 Finno-Ugric, Turkic, other
895 East & Southeast Asian
896 African literatures
897 North American Indian
898 South American Indian
899 Austronesian & other

History

900 History
- 901 Philosophy, civilization
- 902 Handbooks & outlines
- 903 Dictionaries & encyclopedias
- 904 Essays & lectures
- 905 Periodicals
- 906 Organizations & societies
- 907 Study & teaching
- 908 Collections
- 909 Medieval & modern world

910 Geography, travels
- 911 Historical geography
- 912 Atlases & maps
- 913 Antiquities
- 914 Geography of Europe
- 915 Geography of Asia
- 916 Geography of Africa
- 917 Geography of North America
- 918 Geography of South America
- 919 Geography of other places

920 Biography
- 921 Philosophers
- 922 Religious leaders
- 923 Persons in social sciences
- 924 Philologists
- 925 Scientists
- 926 Persons in technology
- 927 Persons in arts & recreation
- 928 Persons in literature
- 929 Genealogy & heraldry

930 Ancient history
- 931 China
- 932 Egypt
- 933 Judea
- 934 India
- 935 Mesopotamian & other empires
- 936 Ancient European tribes
- 937 Rome
- 938 Greece
- 939 Other Mediterranean

940 Europe
- 941 Scotland & Ireland
- 942 England
- 943 Germany & central Europe
- 944 France
- 945 Italy
- 946 Spain & Portugal
- 947 USSR & adjacent areas
- 948 Scandinavia
- 949 Other areas of Europe

950 Asia
- 951 China & Korea
- 952 Japan & adjacent areas
- 953 Arabian Peninsula
- 954 Subcontinent of India
- 955 Iran (Persia)
- 956 Near East (Middle East)
- 957 Siberia
- 958 Central Asia
- 959 Southeast Asia

960 Africa
- 961 North Africa
- 962 Egypt & Sudan
- 963 Ethiopia (Abyssinia)
- 964 Morocco
- 965 Algeria
- 966 West Africa
- 967 Central (Equatorial) Africa
- 968 South Africa
- 969 South Indian Ocean islands

970 North America
- 971 Canada
- 972 Mexico & Caribbean
- 973 United States
- 974 Northeastern states
- 975 Southeastern states
- 976 South central states
- 977 North central states
- 978 Western states
- 979 Far western states & Alaska

980 South America
- 981 Brazil
- 982 Argentina
- 983 Chile
- 984 Bolivia
- 985 Peru
- 986 Colombia, Panama, Ecuador
- 987 Venezuela
- 988 Guiana
- 989 Paraguay & Uruguay

990 Pacific Ocean islands
- 991 Indonesia & Philippine Islands
- 992 Sunda Islands
- 993 New Zealand & Melanesia
- 994 Australia
- 995 New Guinea (Papua)
- 996 Polynesia, Micronesia, Hawaii

997 Atlantic Ocean islands

998 Arctic Regions

999 Antarctic Regions

Form Divisions

The use of form divisions is described in the *Editor's Introduction*. These divisions are not separately indext, but are included in the relative index, *e.g.*, under Theory, following various relations, "*see also specific subjects* —01"

01 Philosophy and theory

Including psychology

012 Classification

Divisions of the subject and their interrelations

For library classification, see 025.4

013 Value and usefulness

014 Terminology

Including nomenclature, etymology, systems of scientific and popular terms

For dictionaries, see form division 03

014 8 Systems of notation

Including symbols, abbreviations

014 9 Techniques of writing

015 Theories based on sciences

Divide like 500, e.g., theories based on mathematics 015 1

016 Miscellaneous theories

To be used also for bibliography and indexes by those libraries preferring to class bibliographies with their respective subjects, rather than together subdivided by subject, e.g., bibliographies of chemistry 540.16 instead of 016.54

017 Systems of units and measures

Including methods of measurement

018 Scientific and technical methods

Including methodology

For experimental methods, see form division 072

02 Handbooks and outlines

Works treating the subject as a whole, briefly, in a systematic way

Including syllabuses, manuals, digests

024 Books for special classes of persons

026 Laws and regulations [*formerly* †000 37]

026 3–026 9 Laws of specific countries or places

Divide like 930–999, e.g., laws and regulations in Vermont 026 743

027 Patents [*formerly* †000 38]

028 Technique

03 Dictionaries and encyclopedias

Including concordances, vocabularies, glossaries

For systems of terminology, see form division 014

04 Essays and lectures

05 Periodicals

058 Annuals

Including directories

For lists of members of a specific organization, see form division 06 *and its subdivisions*

059 Almanacs

Including calendars of events

06 Organizations and societies

Including history, reports, charters, lists of members

061 Government organizations

International, national, state, local

061 1 International government organizations

Including organizations the delegates to which are appointed by the member governments

061 3–061 9 Government organizations of specific places

Divide like 930–999, e.g., government organizations of Minnesota 061 776

062 Nongovernment organizations

Divide like form division 061, e.g., nongovernment organizations in United States 062 73

063 Congresses and conferences

Divide like form division 061, e.g., international conferences 063 1

For conferences of societies which have permanent organizations, see form division 062

065 Commercial establishments

For commercial publications, see form division 085; *management of specific businesses and industries,* 658.9

069 Persons in relation to the subject

Persons interested in the subject, studying it, occupied with it as a vocation or an avocation; their character, condition, duties, activities

Including professional ethics

For economic aspects of specific occupations and professions, see 331.7; *biography,* 920

07 Study and teaching

071 Schools

Including courses of study, methods of teaching the subject in schools

071 1 Colleges and universities

Divide like 930–999, e.g., universities in England 071 142

071 2 Secondary schools

Divide like 930–999, e.g., secondary schools in California 071 279 4

[†071 3] Elementary schools

Class in 372.3–372.8

071 4 Correspondence courses

071 5 Extension work

Including institutes, workshops

072 Research and experiment

Including laboratories, experiment stations, laboratory manuals

074 Museums and exhibits

Divide like 069.1–069.7, e.g., museum equipment 074 3

075 Collecting

Including collecting as a hobby

076 Problems and questions

Including solutions, answers, exercise books, examination questions

078 **Equipment for study, teaching, use**

Including instruments, apparatus, teaching aids

079 **Competitions**

Including prizes, awards

08 Collections and polygraphy

081 **Collected works of a single author**

Including criticism and appraisal of a person's work

082 **Collections of works by several authors**

082 2 Collections of extracts, quotations, abstracts

083 **Tables and formulas**

Including statistical tables [*formerly also* †000 31], blank forms, tables of mathematical formulas, numerical tables, conversion tables, reckoners, tables of results

083 8 Lists and inventories

Including catalogs of articles

For commercial catalogs, see form division 085

084 **Audio-visual aids**

Including portfolios, albums of illustrations, charts, designs

For collections of illustrative material on a specific subject in a specific medium, see the medium, e.g., collections of engravings on a specific subject 769.4, *collections of photographs* 779

084 3 Slides

084 5 Filmstrips

084 6 Motion-picture films

Including sound motion pictures

084 7 Phonorecords

Including disc, tape, wire recordings

085 **Commercial publications**

Including prospectuses, price lists, commercial catalogs

086 **Models and modelmaking**

088 **Miscellany**

Including curiosa, anecdotes; frauds

088 7 Trade-marks

089 **Artificial collections**

Including scrapbooks

09 History and local treatment

090 1 Ancient and primitive history to ca. 500

Comprehensive works

For ancient history in a specific country, see form divisions 093–099

090 2 Medieval history, ca. 500–1500

090 3 Modern history, ca. 1500–

090 4 20th century history

091 **Zones and physical regions**

For Frigid Zones, see form division 099 8; *zones or physical regions in specific places, form divisions* 094–099

091 2 Temperate Zones

091 3 Torrid Zone (Tropics)

091 4 Mountainous regions

091 5 Desert regions

092 **Biography**

Including case histories

To be used only by those libraries preferring to class biographies with the subject fields of the respective biographees, rather than together subdivided by subject, e.g., biographies of chemists 540.92 instead of 925.4

Under 092, arrange individual biographies alphabetically by biographee, using A1 for collective biographies

093–099 **History and local treatment in specific countries or places**

Divide like 930–999, e.g., history in England 094 2

For comprehensive works on ancient history, see form division 090 1

Tables

Symbols and Devices Used in Tables

Coordination and subordination are always shown by indention and type face, and usually also by length of number.

A number in [square brackets] is no longer in force or is no longer in force with the meaning indicated.

A dagger † preceding a number means that the number was used with the sense indicated in the 14th edition.

An asterisk * preceding a number means that the number was used with the sense indicated in the 15th edition.

General Works

000 General works

001 Knowledge, learning, scholarship

Including intellectual cooperation

Class research in general [*formerly* *001] in 007

002 The book

Value and influence of the book

Including comprehensive works on "the book" in general; history and making of books, book arts [*all formerly* *655.4]

For printing, publishing, bookselling, see 655; *reading and reading guidance,* 028

003

004

005

006 Information and communication theories

Including cybernetics

For memory and learning, see 154; *communication services,* 383–384; *linguistics,* 400; *social control,* 301.152; *nonverbal communication,* 419; *animal communication,* 591.59; *automatic control engineering,* 629.8; *computing machines,* 510.78; *information storage and retrieval,* 010.78; *automation in production,* 658.561

007 Research in general [*formerly* *001]

For research in a specific field, see the subject, e.g., mathematical research 510.72; *social organization and institutions,* 301.4

.9 Competitions

Including prizes, awards

008

009

010 Bibliographic science and technique

Including book collecting, bibliomania, bibliographic control and documentation

For book rarities, see 090; *library acquisitions,* 025.2; *bibliographies of children's books,* 028.52; *library instruments and apparatus,* 025.078

.78 Information storage and retrieval

Comprehensive works

For machines used in information storage and retrieval, see 510.78; *storage and retrieval systems in business,* 651.5

011 Universal and general bibliographies

Bibliographies not limited to any specific subject, time, or place

Class general library and sales catalogs [*formerly* *011] in 018–019

For general bibliographies arranged by subject, see 016

012 Bibliographies and catalogs of individual persons

Bibliographies of works by or about a person

Arrange alphabetically by name of person

For bibliographies of persons clearly limited to a specific subject, see the subject, e.g., bibliography of Wagner 016.782 1

013 Bibliographies and catalogs of specific classes of writers

Bibliographies of works by specific classes of writers, e.g., alumni of a college, members of a religious organization

Divide like 000–899, e.g., writings of members of American Library Association 013.020 622

For bibliographies of a special class of writers on a specific subject, see the subject, e.g., historical works by Jesuits 016.9; *of theses by students in a specific college or university, the school, e.g., theses from Columbia University* 378.747 1

.9 Writings of foreign residents in a specific country

Divide like 930–999 by country of adoption, e.g., foreign authors in France 013.944

Divide further under each country with 0 like 930–999 for country of origin, e.g., American authors in France 013.944 073

014 Bibliographies and catalogs of anonymous and pseudonymous works

Divide like 030, e.g., English anonymous works 014.2

For bibliographies of anonymous and pseudonymous works on a specific subject, see 016

015 National bibliographies and catalogs

Bibliographies of works publisht in a specific place: country, city, publishing house

Including publishers' catalogs, lists and indexes of government publications, histories of publications in a place covering writings in all subjects as well as in belles-lettres

Divide like 940–999, e.g., bibliographies of books publisht in Belgium 015.493

For bibliographies of works about a specific place, see 016, *e.g., works about Belgium* 016.949 3; *of works publisht in a specific place on a specific subject, the subject, e.g., works publisht in Belgium on mathematics* 016.51; *general library and sales catalogs,* 017–019; *literary histories of a place covering belles-lettres only or primarily, the* 800's

016 Subject bibliographies

Including bibliographies arranged by subject; bibliographies on a single subject, e.g., works about music [*formerly* *781.97] 016.78

Divide like 000–999, e.g., bibliographies on mathematics 016.51; with the exception of bibliographies of music itself 781.97

If preferred, class bibliographies on a specific subject with the subject, e.g., bibliographies on mathematics 510.16

Class general classified catalogs [*formerly* *016] in 017

017–019 Library and sales catalogs

Catalogs of collections too general to be clast in 012–016

Including union catalogs

017 Classified catalogs [*formerly* *016]

Including author and subject catalogs bound together

For dictionary catalogs, see 019; *catalogs of a specific subject,* 016

.1 Catalogs of general libraries

For catalogs of private and family libraries, see 017.2

.2 Catalogs of private and family libraries

Including catalogs of private libraries which have been merged into general libraries

.3 Auction catalogs

.4 Booksellers' catalogs

For auction catalogs, see 017.3

018 Author catalogs [*formerly* *011]

Including catalogs arranged by publication date, accession date

Divide like 017, e.g., auction catalogs arranged by authors 018.3

019 Dictionary catalogs [*formerly* *011]

Including alphabetic subject catalogs

Divide like 017, e.g., dictionary catalogs of college libraries 019.1

For catalogs of books on a specific subject, see 016

020 Library science

Including libraries, librarianship

If preferred, class a specific aspect of library science with the aspect, e.g., accounting for libraries 657.834 (instead of 025.11), wages of librarians 331.281 02 (instead of 023.8), library buildings 727.8 (instead of 022.3)

[.26] Laws and regulations

Class in 021.89

.6 Societies, associations, clubs, conferences

Including "Friends of the library"

For library departments or commissions, see 021.82; *"Friends" of a specific library, the library, e.g., Friends of the Knox College Library* 027.777 349; *associations devoted to a specific kind of librarianship, the subject, e.g., of medical librarians* 026.61

.622 National associations

.623 State and regional associations

.624 Local clubs

.711 Library schools

For courses of instruction in specific types of schools, see 020.716–020.717

.713 Training and apprentice classes

Including in-service training

.716 Courses in colleges and universities

.717 Courses in normal and high schools

021 Library establishment and purpose

Including comprehensive works on libraries and museums

Use 021.001–021.009 for form divisions

For museums, see 069; *relations with museums,* 021.3

021.1 Libraries as storage centers

Including central or regional depositories of materials; cooperative storage [*formerly* *022.4]

For bibliographical centers, see 025.35

.2 Libraries as educational force

Role of libraries in education of children and adults thru planned, purposeful reading

For adult education, see 374; *adult reader service,* 025.54; *service to children and young adults,* 027.62; *college and university libraries,* 027.7; *school libraries,* 027.82; *reading and reading guidance,* 028

.3 Libraries and other institutions

Relations with other educational institutions, e.g., schools, museums

Including relations with teachers, pupils

For libraries owned and administered by schools, see 027.82

.4 Library service to groups thru nonbook mediums

Including study clubs, reading and discussion groups, lectures, institutes, television and radio broadcasts, plays, music, films, exhibitions

For adult education clubs, see 374.2; *social activities in libraries,* 021.5

.5 Libraries as source of recreational reading

Including social activities

.6 Library extension and cooperation

For libraries and the state, see 021.8

.62 Units of service

Including branches [*formerly* *027.42]; county and regional libraries; library stations; school deposits

Class bookmobiles [*formerly* *021.62] in 021.65

For administration of county and regional libraries, see 027.42; *a specific branch library, the library, e.g., Donnell Library Center of New York Public Library* 027.474 71

.63 Centralization

Grouping of smaller libraries into systems

.64 Coordination and cooperation between libraries

Comprehensive works

For cooperation in a specific activity, see the activity, e.g., cooperative cataloging 025.35

.65 Traveling libraries

Including bookmobiles [*formerly* *021.62], direct mail loans

021.7 **Library publicity**

Including use of press, radio, television; lobbying to gain and maintain interest and support

For "Friends of the library," see 020.6

.8 **Libraries and the state**

Relations with government jurisdiction higher than that by or for which library is administered

.81 Government supervision

.82 Library commissions

For commission reports on public libraries, see 027.4; *special work of a specific commission, the subject, e.g., New York State Commission on School Libraries* 027.82; *commissions as boards of trustees of a specific library, e.g., Detroit Library Commission,* 023.3

.83 Government aid

Including grants of money from higher jurisdictions; local subsidies

.84 Gifts of books

Including public documents, copyright deposits

For gift work in libraries, see 025.26

.85 Exchanges of publications

Exchanges by states or central authorities, local or foreign, e.g., United States Book Exchange

For exchange work in libraries, see 025.26

.86 Privileges and immunities

Including remitted duties, free importation, free or reduced postage

.88 State or local hindrances

Including politics

.89 Library legislation

Comprehensive works

For laws on a specific subject, see the subject, e.g., law concerning library commissions 021.82

.894–.899 Legislation in specific countries or places

Divide like 940–999, e.g., library legislation in France 021.894 4

021.9 **Library support**

Including appropriations, endowments, taxation, other methods of raising money

For aid from higher jurisdiction, see 021.83; *library finances,* 025.11

.93 Gifts of money or books

Including CARE book program

For gifts from higher jurisdiction, see 021.84

022 Library buildings

For library quarters in schools, see 371.622

.1 **Location and site**

Including surveys with reference to field of work, e.g., accessibility to population served; provision for growth

.2 **Building materials and protection of library**

Including insurance

.3 **Plans for library buildings [*formerly* *727.8]**

Including detail drawings, design, construction, general description of library buildings

.31 Library designs and plans by kind of library

Divide like 027, e.g., plans of college libraries 022.317

For plans of a specific library, see 022.33

.33 Library designs and plans by country

Including plans of specific libraries

Divide like 930–999, e.g., plans for Public Library of Cincinnati 022.337 717 8

.4 **Library storage and shelving**

Class storage buildings, cooperative storage [*formerly* *022.4] in 021.1

For book arrangement and preservation, see 025.8

.42 Shelving cases [*formerly also* †022.44] and shelves [*formerly also* †022.45]

Including wall cases, alcoves, galleries, fixt or movable shelves, shelf supports

.43 Stacks

Including stack rooms, arrangement of cases, aisles, flooring, floor load

[†022.44–†.45] Cases and shelves

Class in 022.42

[†.46–†.47] Closed cases, and cases and shelves for large books lying flat

Class in 022.48

.48 Special cases

Including cases and shelves for large books [*formerly* †022.46], closed cases [*formerly* †022.47], cases for maps, engravings, photographs, films, slides

.5 General reading rooms

Including comprehensive works on reading rooms, study rooms

For reading rooms for special material, see 022.63

.6 Administrative and special rooms

Including rooms for special collections, instruction rooms, recreation rooms

.61 Rooms for trustees or outside organizations

.63 Rooms for special material

Divide like 025.17, e.g., newspaper rooms 022.633

.7 Lighting

Including natural lighting, windows, skylights, artificial lights and fixtures; lighting of stacks

.8 Heating, ventilation, air conditioning

.9 Furniture, fixtures, equipment

Including chairs, tables, desks, files, bulletin boards, exhibition furniture

.94 Carriers and communication systems

Including book trucks, book lifts, pneumatic tubes, mechanical carriers

.95 Elevators

.96 Floor coverings

023 Library government and personnel

For library management and operation, see 025; *government of a specific library or kind of library,* 026–027

.1 Constitutions and bylaws for governing boards

Including charters, local ordinances

023.2 Appointment and tenure of office

Including examination, certification, promotion under federal, state, local civil service

.3 Governing boards

Including trustees, regents, library committees

.4 Executives

Place in library government

Including chief librarians, directors, department heads

For titles and duties of executives in hierarchy of positions, see 023.71–023.72

.5 Staff

For directories of the staff of a specific library, see the library, e.g., of Philadelphia Free Library 027.474 811

.51 Qualifications

Including personality and character [*formerly* †023.52], mental and natural ability [*formerly* †023.53], physique and health [*formerly* †023.54]

[†.52–†.54] Personality, character, mental and natural ability, physique, health

Class in 023.51

.55 Staff meetings

.6 Hours of service

Including daily schedules, holidays, vacations

.7 Titles and job descriptions

Including duties of positions

Use 023.700 1–023.700 9 for form divisions

.71 Executives and directors

Including chief or principal librarian

.72 Department, division, section heads

.73 Public-service professional staff

Including librarians of special subjects; reference, adult service, children's librarians; assistants [*formerly* †023.74]

.74 Nonpublic-service professional staff

Including catalogers, classifiers, acquisitions librarians

Class professional assistants in public service [*formerly* †023.74] in 023.73

023.75 Subprofessional assistants

Including student assistants, apprentices, volunteers

.76 Clerical staff

.77 Trades, mechanical, and building staff

Including bookbinders, electricians, carpenters, painters, machine operators

For janitorial staff, see 023.79

.78 Pages, messengers, deck or stack attendants

.79 Janitorial staff

Including janitors, watchmen, elevator operators, cleaners

.8 Classification and pay plans

Including pension and retirement plans, job classification

Divide like 023.7, e.g., salaries of catalogers 023.84

.9 Staff manuals

Including staff rules, codes

For ethics of librarianship, see 020.69; *manuals of a specific library, the library, e.g., of Enoch Pratt Free Library* 027.475 26

024 Regulations for use of libraries

.1 Readers' qualifications

Including age, residence, references, registration

.2 Fees or free use

Including membership fees, nonresident fees

.3 Hours of opening

.4 Days of opening or closing

.5 Reading room use

Including access to catalogs, access to shelves, use of reference books

.6 Home use

Including loans, fines, renewals, reservations, restricted borrowing

.68 Interlibrary loans

.7 Special privileges

Including rental books

.8 Mutilation, losses, abuses

025 Library management and operation

Librarians' part in supervising, acquiring, organizing, utilizing, preserving books for use

Including administration and supervision of various departments of libraries

For administration, management, general procedure manuals of specific libraries and types of libraries, see 026–027

SUMMARY

025.1	**Executive and general management**
.2	**Acquisition**
.3	**Cataloging**
.4	**Classification**
.5	**Service to readers**
.6	**Circulation service**
.7	**Bookbinding and book repair**
.8	**Book arrangement and preservation**
.9	**Janitorial and maintenance service**

.078 Instruments and apparatus

Including library applications of puncht card systems

For use in a specific type of library work, see the type, e.g., puncht card systems in circulation work 025.6

.1 Executive and general management

.11 Finances

Including endowments, gifts, appropriations, fees, assessments, accounts, payrolls, expenses

For government aid from higher jurisdictions, see 021.83; *library support,* 021.9; *salaries and wages,* 023.8

.12 Printing and publications

Including forms, catalogs, bulletins, reports

For a specific publication, see the subject, e.g., catalogs 017–019

.129 Duplication processes in the library

Including microphotography; printing by stencil, offset, letterpress; photostating, other processes for duplicating library materials

For machines and mechanical processes, see 652.4

.15 Correspondence

Including stationery, dictation machines, typewriters, letter files

025.17 Treatment of special materials

Comprehensive works on arrangement, care, use

For special work of a specific department, see the department, e.g., cataloging of incunabula 025.341

.171 Manuscripts, archival material, rarities

Including treatment of material in archival depositories

.172 Pamphlets

.173 Serials and documents

Including periodicals, newspapers, magazines, annual reports; national, state, local documents

.174 Broadsides

.175 Clippings

.176 Maps and charts

Including atlases, globes

.177 Audio-visual materials

Including prints, engravings, picture collections, slides, films

.178 Music

Including scores, phonorecords

.179 Other special materials

Including microreproductions, museum material

[†.18] Administration of individual libraries

Class in 026–027

.2 Acquisition

For book collecting, see 010; *lists and aids to selection and buying,* 011–019, 028

.21 Book selection process

Including principles of duplication, exclusion, censorship, weeding; cooperation; specialization

For lists of "best books," see 016; *selection for children,* 028.5

.22 Methods of acquisition

Including sources, e.g., jobber, book store, publisher, subscription; prices, discounts; relations to antiquarian book trade; auctions

Class order work in 025.23, exchange and gift work in 025.26, special materials in 025.29, accessioning in 025.24, preparation for shelves in 025.25 [*all formerly* *025.22]

.23 Ordering and receiving [*formerly* *025.22]

025.24 Accessioning [*formerly* *025.22]

.25 Ownership marks and physical preparation for shelves [*formerly* *025.22]

.26 Exchange and gift work [*formerly* *025.22]

Including duplicates, deposits

For exchanges by state or central authorities, see 021.85

.29 Acquisition of special materials [*formerly* *025.22]

Divide like 025.17, e.g., acquisition of phonograph records 025.298

.3 Cataloging

For use of library catalogs, see 028.7; *catalogs themselves,* 017–019

.32 Cataloging rules

For cataloging rules for special materials, see 025.34

.33 Subject headings

Divide like 000–999, e.g., subject headings in science 025.335

.34 Cataloging of special materials

Divide like 025.17, e.g., cataloging of maps 025.346

.35 Cooperative cataloging

Including organization and preparation of union catalogs, bibliographical centers

.37 Filing

.4 Classification

Including principles, systems, notation

For philosophic classification of knowledge, see 112

.43 Classification schedules

.46 Classification of special subjects

Including schedules for special subjects

Divide like 000–999, e.g., classification of music 025.467 8

.5 Service to readers

Comprehensive works

For service to a specific class of readers, see the class, e.g., service to children and young adults 027.62; *regulations for library use,* 024

.52 Reference service

Including administration of reference libraries [*formerly* †027.424 3], reference function of libraries

For use of books as sources of information, see 028.7

025.54 Adult reader service

General service to adults for self-development, recreation thru reading

For reader guidance, see 028.8

.6 Circulation service

Including administration of circulation work, charging systems, equipment, interlibrary loan

For regulations for home use, see 024.6; *for interlibrary loans,* 024.68

.7 Bookbinding and book repair

Including mending, cleaning, oiling; preparation for binding; operation of bindery within library organization; comprehensive works on conservation, preservation of books, manuscripts, other library materials

For methods of preventing damage or wear, see 025.84; *bookbinding industry,* 655.7

.8 Book arrangement and preservation

Including shelf lists, book numbers; fixt location

For library storage and shelving, see 022.4

.82 Inventory

.84 Preservation

Including prevention of injuries; damage by heat, insects, wear and tear

.9 Janitorial and maintenance service

Including care, cleaning, safety, maintenance of order

For buildings and fittings, see 022

026 Special libraries

Comprehensive and miscellaneous works

Including administration of specific libraries [*formerly* †025.18]; special collections in general libraries; histories, reports, statistics, bulletins, handbooks, circulars by or about specific libraries

Use 026.001–026.009 for form divisions

Divide like 000–999, e.g., medical libraries 026.61

For specific activities, functions, features of special libraries or of a specific special library, see the subject, e.g., treatment of pamphlets in law libraries 025.172; *catalogs of a specific special library, the subject, e.g., of a chess library* 016.794 1

027 General libraries

Comprehensive and miscellaneous works on libraries not limited to a specific field

Including administration of specific libraries [*formerly* †025.18]; histories, reports, statistics, bulletins, handbooks, circulars by or about specific libraries

Use 027.001–027.008 for form divisions

For specific activities, functions, features of general libraries or of a specific general library, see the subject, e.g., cataloging in Harvard College Library 025.3; *catalogs of a specific general library,* 017–019

.03–.09 History and local treatment

Divide like 930–999, e.g., libraries in France 027.044

For a specific library, see the library, e.g., Boston Public Library 027.474 46; *a specific kind of library, the kind, e.g., college libraries in Massachusetts* 027.774 4

.1 Private and family libraries

Including libraries which have been merged into public libraries

Divide like 930–999, e.g., private collections in San Francisco 027.179 461

.2 Proprietary, society, club, athenaeum libraries

Limited to semiprivate libraries requiring an election to membership for admission

Divide like 930–999, e.g., Boston Athenaeum Library 027.274 46

For society libraries merged into public libraries, see 027.4

.3 Subscription and rental libraries

Including circulating libraries

Divide like 930–999, e.g., rental libraries in Denver 027.378 883 1

.4 Public libraries

Including urban, town, village, school district libraries

For branch libraries, see 021.62; *national and state libraries,* 027.5; *library extension,* 021.6

.42 County libraries

Including regional libraries

Class branch libraries [*formerly* *027.42] in 021.62

[†.424 3] Reference libraries

Class in 025.52

.43–.49 Public libraries in specific places

Divide like 930–999, e.g., Cleveland Public Library 027.477 132

027.5 **Government libraries**

Including national, international, state libraries

Divide like 930–999, e.g., Library of Congress 027.575 3, United Nations Library 027.574 71

For government agency libraries, see 027.65

.6 **Libraries for special groups**

Including service of general libraries to special groups

For libraries on special subjects, see 026

.62 Libraries for children and young adults

Including work with children and young adults in public libraries

For school libraries, see 027.8

.625 Children's libraries

Including instruction to children in use of books and libraries

Class young adults' libraries [*formerly* †027.625] in 027.626

For children's reading, see 028.5

.625 1 Storytelling in libraries

Comprehensive works

For storytelling in schools, see 372.214

.626 Young adults' libraries [*formerly* †027.625]

.63 Libraries for foreign-born and minority groups

.64 Libraries for industrial workers

Including labor union libraries

.644 Marine and ship libraries

Including merchant marine libraries

For warship and government navy yard libraries, see 027.65

.65 Government agency libraries

Including army military post and camp libraries, warship and navy yard libraries, police and fire department libraries, United States Information Service libraries in foreign countries

For government department libraries devoted to a specific subject, see 026, *e.g., United States Department of Agriculture Library* 026.63

027.66 Welfare institution libraries

Including library service for the handicapt

.662 Hospital libraries

Libraries for patients

Including libraries for patients in sanitariums, homes for the aged; comprehensive works on libraries for patients and staff

For medical libraries in hospitals, see 026.61

.663 Libraries for the blind

.665 Prison libraries

.67 Religious organization libraries

Sectarian or denominational libraries not limited as to subject, e.g., in monasteries, Salvation Army

For religious libraries, see 026.2; *church school libraries,* 027.83

.7 **College and university libraries**

Including junior college libraries, libraries of learned societies

Divide like 930–999, e.g., Bodleian Library 027.742 57

.8 **School and church school libraries**

For children's libraries, see 027.625; *children's reading,* 028.5; *library quarters in schools,* 371.622

.82 School libraries [*formerly also* †371.64]

.822 Types of school libraries

.822 2 Elementary school libraries

Including kindergarten

.822 3 Secondary school libraries

.823–.829 School libraries in specific countries

Divide like 930–999, e.g., elementary school libraries in Michigan 027.827 74

.83 Church school libraries

Including parish, parochial libraries

028 **Reading and reading guidance**

Including lists of books, collections of book reviews not limited to any one subject, designed as aids in selecting individual reading

For teaching of reading, see 372.41; *self-education for adults,* 374.1; *abstracting,* 029.4

.074 Book displays

028.1 **Book reviewing**

.3 **Reading courses**

Including discussions and lists of books for individual reading; Great Books study lists

Class Great Books study program [*formerly* *028.3] in 374.22

For remedial reading in elementary education, see 372.413; *remedial reading other than in elementary education,* 428.4; *bibliographies of best books,* 016

.5 **Children's books**

Including children as authors

.52 Bibliographies and lists of children's books

Including lists for elementary and high school reading [*formerly also* †371.643]

.7 **Use of books and libraries as sources of information**

Including use of reference books, catalogs

For use of reference books on a specific subject, see the subject, e.g., reference books in music 780

.8 **Reader guidance**

Including reader's advisory service

.9 **Reading habits and tastes of the community**

029 Literary methods and labor savers

.1 **Improved methods of learning**

Including techniques of reference, standard sizes, use of colors, card systems; cooperative methods

For abbreviations and shorthand, see 653; *mnemonics,* 154.1; *book classification,* 025.4; *adult education,* 374; *methods of study,* 371.3

.2 **Literary laborsaving tools and devices**

Including appliances and equipment used to provide short cuts in literary and educational work

For office equipment and methods, see 651; *arrangement of books and pamphlets,* 025.8; *audio-visual aids and devices,* 371.33

.3 **Clippings, scrapbooks, files**

For records and files in business, see 651.5

.4 **Abstracting and note taking**

.5 **Indexing**

029.6 **Authorship techniques**

Preparation of manuscript or copy in acceptable form for publication or use

Including the "business" of writing, how to write for profit [*both formerly* *808.06]; editing and editorial work; literary plagiarism; comprehensive works on plagiarism; comprehensive works on authorship technique and composition

For literary composition, see 808; *proofreading,* 655.255; *journalism,* 070; *preparation of theses,* 378.242; *script writing for radio,* 791.442; *for television,* 791.452; *for motion pictures,* 791.432; *manuscript typewriting,* 652.323; *plagiarism in any other field, the subject, e.g., musical plagiarism* 781.61

030 General encyclopedias

Including curiosities, questions and answers, quizzes

For encyclopedias devoted to a specific subject, see the subject, e.g., encyclopedias of social sciences 303; *puzzles,* 793.73

031 American encyclopedias

Encyclopedias in English language, originating in North America

032 English encyclopedias

Encyclopedias in English language, originating outside North America, e.g., Encyclopædia Britannica

033 German encyclopedias

Divide like 430, except 439.5–439.83, e.g., Dutch encyclopedias 033.931

For Scandinavian encyclopedias, see 038

034 French encyclopedias

Divide like 440, e.g., Catalan encyclopedias 034.99

035 Italian encyclopedias

Divide like 450, e.g., Rumanian encyclopedias 035.9

036 Spanish encyclopedias

Including encyclopedias written in Spanish but originating in Latin America

Divide like 460, e.g., Portuguese encyclopedias 036.9

037 Russian encyclopedias

.8 **Other Slavic encyclopedias**

Divide like 491.8, e.g., Polish encyclopedias 037.85

.9 **Ukrainian encyclopedias**

038 Scandinavian encyclopedias

Divide like 439.6–439.83, e.g., Norwegian encyclopedias 038.82

039 Encyclopedias in other languages

Divide like 420–429, 470–499, except as provided above, e.g., modern Greek encyclopedias 039.89

040 General collected essays

Collections of essays, addresses, lectures, by one or more authors, too general to go with a specific subject; collections of nonliterary essays

For collections of literary essays, see the 800's, *e.g., French literary essays* 844; *collections of essays on a specific subject, the subject, e.g., essays on religion* 204

041 General collected American essays

Essays in English language by North American writers

042 General collected English essays

Essays in English language by writers outside North America

043 General collected essays in German

Divide like 033

044 General collected essays in French

Divide like 034

045 General collected essays in Italian

Divide like 035

046 General collected essays in Spanish

Divide like 036

047 General collected essays in Russian

Divide like 037

048 General collected essays in Scandinavian languages

Divide like 038

049 General collected essays in other languages

Divide like 039

050 General periodicals

Including works about periodicals and their use, general indexes to periodicals, individual periodicals

Divide by language as below; if preferred, arrange periodicals alphabetically under 050, using A1 for comprehensive works about periodicals and Z9 for general indexes to periodicals

Class indexes to and works about a specific periodical with the periodical

For periodicals on a specific subject, see the subject, e.g., scientific periodicals 505; *journalism,* 070

051 General American periodicals

Periodicals in English language publisht in North America

052 General English periodicals

Periodicals in English language publisht outside North America

053 General German periodicals

Divide like 033

054 General French periodicals

Divide like 034

055 General Italian periodicals

Divide like 035

056 General Spanish periodicals

Divide like 036

057 General Russian periodicals

Divide like 037

058 General Scandinavian periodicals

Divide like 038

059 General periodicals in other languages

Divide like 039

060 General societies

Learned societies, academies, foundations, associations, conferences, congresses whose activity is not limited to a specific field, e.g., UNESCO, American Philosophical Society

Including comprehensive works on learned societies whose activities are limited to specific fields

Divide by place as below; if preferred, arrange individual societies alphabetically under 060, using A1 for comprehensive works

For societies which have a specific purpose, field, or subject, see the subject, e.g., American Historical Association 973.062; *fraternal orders and secret societies,* 366

061 General societies in Canada and United States

Including comprehensive works on general societies in North America

For general societies in Mexico, Central America, West Indies, see 068.72

.1 General societies in Canada

.3–.9 General societies in United States

Divide like 973–979, e.g., Philosophical Society of Texas 061.64

062 General societies in England and Wales

Including comprehensive works on societies in Great Britain and Ireland

For general societies in Scotland, see 068.41; *in Ireland,* 068.415

063 General societies in Germany

Divide like 943 for societies in countries whose history classes in 943, e.g., societies in Poland 063.8

064 General societies in France

065 General societies in Italy

066 General societies in Spain

.9 General societies in Portugal

067 General societies in Union of Soviet Socialist Republics (Russia)

.1 General societies in Finland

068 Other general societies

Divide like 930–999, except as provided above, e.g., societies in Norway 068.481

069 Museums

Including school museums [*formerly* †371.65]; museums specializing in more than one field

For art galleries and museums, see 708; *museums in any other specific field, the subject, e.g., science museums* 507.4

.1 Educational functions of museums

Including museum work with children, adult education

.13 Circulation of museum objects, collections, exhibits

.14 Circulation of slides, films, projectors

Including written lectures accompanying slides, sale and exchange of slides and films

.15 Museum instruction

Including information bureaus, lectures, story hours, study clubs, field instruction

.16 Music in museums

.2 Museum buildings [*formerly* *727.6]

Comprehensive works

Including location, site, materials, protection, remodeling; service facilities, special rooms, management

For works on a specific museum building, see the museum, e.g., London Museum 069.094 21; *museum architecture,* 727.6

.3 Museum equipment

Including furnishings, supplies

.31 Exhibit cases

.32 Exhibit apparatus and techniques

Including lighting, temperature control

.4 Collection and preparation of museum specimens

Including protection and preservation

.41 Preparation for removal from field

Including modeling, molding, casting, coloring

.42 Construction of models

Including models of caves, animals, plants

.43 Construction of groups

Including composition, layout, field work

069.44 Expeditions

Including equipment, supplies, personnel transportation, regional information, protection and packing of materials

[†.45–†.49] Collection and treatment of special materials

Class with the subject in 500–999, using form division 074 4, e.g., collection and treatment of geologic materials 550.744

.5 Administration of museum collections and exhibits

.51 Acquisition and disposal

Including policy, manner of selection and disposal, terms of gift or bequest, purchases, sales, dealers, prices, terms of loan, exchanges

.52 Registration and recording

Including accessioning, cataloging, indexing, listing

.53 Exhibit methods

For exhibit catalogs of a specific museum, see the museum, e.g., of Los Angeles County Museum 069.097 949 4

.54 Specific museum material

Including data concerning museum objects themselves, whether exhibited or in reserve; thefts, forgeries

Divide like 000–999, e.g., antiquities as museum objects 069.549 13

.55 Study collections

Including scope, arrangement, housing

.56 Lending collections

Including scope, arrangement, housing

.57 Collections and materials held for preservation

Including photographs, negatives, slides, films, maps, broadsides

.58 Library

For administration of libraries on special subjects, see 026

.6 Museum administration

Including organization, personnel, finance, office methods

.7 Museum publications and publishing

For publications on a specific subject, see the subject, e.g., on prehistoric art 571.7; *general publications of a specific museum, the museum, e.g., reports of Detroit Institute of Arts* 708.174 34

070 Newspaper journalism

Including periodical journalism; business of managing, editing, writing for periodicals and newspapers

Use 070.01–070.04 for form divisions

For periodicals, see 050; *school journalism,* 371.805; *individual newspapers,* 071–079

.1 The press

Including theory, importance, scope; relation to sociology, political economy, literature; comprehensive works on printed publications

.11 Ethics of the press

Including morals [*formerly* †179.1], standards, influence, responsibility

.13 Press law

Including laws governing the press, censorship of the press, civil libel and slander; comprehensive works on libel and slander

Class liberty of the press [*formerly* †070.13] in 323.445; legal control of the press [*formerly* *070.13] in 351.751

For criminal libel, see 364.15; *seditious libel,* 364.13; *law of criminal libel,* 343.5; *of seditious libel,* 343.3; *ethics of slander,* 177.3; *censorship of books in libraries,* 025.21; *public control of press in maintenance of order and security,* 351.751

.2 Ownership and control

Including names, location; newspaper syndicates, chains

For news syndicates and syndicated news, see 070.431

.3 Business management of newspapers and periodicals

For printing, see 655; *advertising,* 659.1

.32 Publishing policies

Including size, frequency, time of issue

For printing newspapers and periodicals, see 655.314

.33 Circulation

Including distribution, sale

.34 Cost of production

Including building and equipment, supplies, labor

070.4 Editorial management of newspapers and periodicals

.41 Journalistic editing

Including editing rules, make-up, style books, newspaper diction, copyreading, headline writing

Class news and news writing in 070.431, radio news writing in 070.46 [*both formerly* *070.41]

For preparation of manuscripts for publication, see 029.6; *literary authorship,* 808; *editorials and editorial writing,* 070.432

.42 Editorial staff

Including reporters, correspondents

.43 Editorial departments

.431 News and news writing [*formerly* *070.41]

Including sources and channels of news, e.g., telegraph, radio, news bureaus and syndicates, interviewing; reporting

For radio and television news writing, see 070.46; *syndicates of newspapers,* 070.2

.432 Editorials and editorial writing

Interpretative journalism

.44 Special subjects, subject departments, editors

Including columns, pages, sections on special subjects

.443 Financial

Including stocks, business, shipping

.445 Household, home, women, children

Including cooking, fashions, care of children, clubs and society, games, puzzles

.446 Recreation and sports

.447 Art, music, drama

.448 Literary

Including poetry, fiction

.449 Other departments

Including religion, education, science, humor

.46 Radio and television journalism [*formerly* *070.41]

.47 Special editions

Including Sunday edition, special supplements

070.48 Special kinds of newspapers and periodicals

Comprehensive works on journalism for special kinds of journals

For journals of a specific subject, see the subject, e.g., mathematics journals 510.5; *individual journals not limited to a specific subject,* 051–059, 071–079; *school journalism,* 371.805

.482 Religious journalism

.484 Foreign language journalism

Newspapers and periodicals in languages foreign to country where publisht

.486 Professional and technical journalism

Including commercial, business journalism, employees' magazines, house organs

.49 Pictorial journalism

Periodicals and newspapers which present fact, fiction, opinion by means of pictures and running commentary

Including tabloids

For newsreel photography, see 778.538 07; *individual newspapers,* 071–079; *individual magazines,* 051–059

.9 History of newspapers and journalism

071–079 Newspapers

Works about individual newspapers; the newspapers themselves; history of newspapers by place

Divide by place of publication as below; if preferred, arrange individual newspapers alphabetically without classification

071 Newspapers publisht in Canada and United States

Including comprehensive works on newspapers in North America

For newspapers publisht in Mexico, Central America, West Indies, see 079.72

.1 Newspapers publisht in Canada

.3–.9 Newspapers publisht in United States

Divide like 973–979, e.g., New York Times 071.471

072 Newspapers publisht in England and Wales

For newspapers publisht in Scotland, see 079.41; *in Ireland,* 079.415

073 Newspapers publisht in Germany

Divide like 943 for newspapers publisht in countries whose history classes in 943, e.g., newspapers publisht in Austria 073.6

074 **Newspapers publisht in France**

075 **Newspapers publisht in Italy**

076 **Newspapers publisht in Spain**

.9 **Newspapers publisht in Portugal**

077 **Newspapers publisht in Union of Soviet Socialist Republics (Russia)**

.1 **Newspapers publisht in Finland**

078 **Newspapers publisht in Scandinavia**

Divide like 948, e.g., newspapers publisht in Sweden 078.5

079 **Newspapers publisht in other countries**

Divide like 930–999, except as provided above, e.g., newspapers publisht in Cuba 079.729 1

080 **Collected works**

Collections of works on different subjects brought together in a single work, collection, set, or series

For collections on a specific subject, see the subject, e.g., collected works on education 370.8; *collected literary works, the* 800's; *general collected essays,* 040

081 **Collected works of individual authors**

Complete or collected works too general to go with a specific subject

082 **Collected works of several authors**

Collections of works too general to go with a specific subject

.2 **Miscellanies and extracts**

Including "gift book" or "keepsake" type of collections

For literary keepsakes, see the 800's

083

084

085

086

087

088

089

090 **Manuscripts and rare books**

Bibliographical or literary history of rare books and manuscripts; description and criticism of books with special characteristics making them rare or valuable, e.g., script, binding, illustration

Class rare books and manuscripts with their respective subjects, except when interest or value is more as rare book or manuscript than as contribution to specific subject

For bibliography, see 010; *printing and publishing,* 655

091 **Manuscripts**

For illuminated manuscripts, see 096; *paleography,* 417

.5 **Autographs**

.6 **Printed works with manuscript notes in hand of celebrated writers**

For works with manuscript notes by the author, see 091.5

092 **Block books**

093 **Incunabula**

Books printed before 1501

Including colophons

For invention and history of printing, see 655.1

094 **Rare printing**

Books of great rarity printed after 1500

Including typographic masterpieces, e.g., Elzevirs, Caxtons; small editions, privately printed books, unique copies, deluxe editions

.4 **First editions**

095 **Rare binding**

Including noted binders, embroidered and jeweled bindings, curious bindings, fine tooling, coats of arms

For bookbinding, see 655.7

096 **Rare illustrations or materials**

Including illuminated books, manuscripts; printing on vellum, silk; in gold, silver

For book illustration, see 741.64; *technique of illumination,* 745.67

097 **Bookplates**

Including marks of ownership or of origin, e.g., monograms, seals, coats of arms

098 Various works remarkable for the nature of their content

Including bibliographies and lists

.1 Prohibited books

Including condemned, censored, obscene books

.11 Prohibited by religious authorities

Including books considered contrary to church faith, tradition, or discipline

.12 Prohibited by civil authorities

Including books considered contrary to or subversive of morality, government, social peace; seditious, satirical, libelous books

.3 Lost or imaginary books

Including literary forgeries and mystifications, hoaxes

.5 Books with key

Livres à clef

099 Curiosa and eccentric books

Including microphotographic, microscopic, miniature editions, dwarf books

Philosophy

100 Philosophy

For philosophy of a specific subject, see the subject, e.g., philosophy of science 501

101 Value and use of philosophy

Class esthetics [*formerly* *101] in 111.85

102 Handbooks and outlines

103 Dictionaries and encyclopedias

104 Essays and lectures

For works by individual philosophers, see 180–199

105 Periodicals

106 Organizations and societies

107 Study and teaching

108 Collections

For works by individual philosophers, see 180–199

109 History

Comprehensive works

For history of ancient, medieval, Oriental philosophy, see 180; *of modern philosophy,* 190; *of specific philosophical topics,* 140

110 Metaphysics

Science of existence, cause, purpose

For metaphysical theories not provided for here, see 120

111 Ontology

Nature of being or reality

For cause and effect, see 122; *infinite and finite,* 125

.1 Existentialism

.8 Transcendental properties of being

.82 Unity

.83 Truth

For truth in social ethics, see 177.3

111.84 Goodness and evil

For aspects in natural theology, see 216; *ethics,* 170; *Manicheism,* 273.23; *optimism,* 149.5; *pessimism,* 149.6

.85 Beauty

Including comprehensive works on esthetics [*formerly* *101]

For esthetics of a specific subject, see the subject, e.g., esthetics of the arts 701.17, *literary esthetics* 801.9

112 Methodology

Philosophic classification of knowledge

For methodology of a specific subject, see the subject, e.g., methodology of technology 601.8; *classification of books,* 025.4

113 Cosmology

Philosophic theory of nature and the universe

Including cosmogony [*formerly* *523.1]

For physical universe, see 523.1; *creation in natural theology,* 213; *Genesis,* 222.11; *creation in religions other than Christianity and Judaism,* 290; *teleology,* 124

114 Space

For space time, see 115.4; *space perception,* 152.752; *space in astronomy,* 523.1

115 Time and duration

Relation of time and motion

Including eternity

For motion, see 116; *quantity,* 119; *chronology,* 529; *time perception,* 152.753; *eternity in natural theology,* 218; *in Christian theology,* 237.1; *in other theologies,* 290

.4 Space time

Philosophic implications of theories of relativity

For relativity theory in physics, see 530.11

116 Motion and change

For relation of time and motion, see 115; *perception of movement,* 152.754; *kinematics,* 531.1

117 Matter

For physical theory of matter, see 530.1; *chemical structure of matter,* 541.2; *nature of living matter,* 577

118 Force and energy

For conservation of energy, see 531.6

119 Quantity

For mathematics, see 510

120 Other metaphysical theories

121 Epistemology

Theory of knowledge

Including origin, sources, limits, validity

.5 Doubt and denial

For agnosticism, see 149.72; *as a Christian heresy,* 273.8; *in natural theology,* 211.7

.6 Belief and certitude

.7 Faith

For faith in Christian theology, see 234.2; *faith as basis for logic,* 163

.8 Worth and theory of values

122 Cause and effect

Including chance versus cause

For final cause, see 124

123 Freedom and necessity

Including determinism and indeterminism

For freedom of will in psychology, see 159.1; *freedom in Christian theology,* 233.7; *predestination in Christian theology,* 234.9; *freedom and predestination in other theologies,* 290; *liberty of the individual,* 323.44

.3 Chance

For chance versus cause, see 122

124 Teleology

Including theory of purpose, final cause

For cause and effect, see 122

125 Finite and infinite

The conditioned and the unconditioned

126 Consciousness and personality

For psychology of personality, see 137; *psychology of consciousness,* 153.7; *Christian doctrine of personality,* 233; *doctrine of personality in other religions,* 290

127 The unconscious and the subconscious

For psychology of the unconscious and the subconscious, see 153.8

128 The soul [*formerly* *233.5]

The unique nature of man philosophically considered

Including the mind, both animal and human

For the soul in natural theology, see 218; *in Christian theology,* 233.5; *future state in Christian theology,* 237; *soul and future state in other theologies,* 290; *general psychology,* 150; *comparative psychology,* 151.3

.3 Nature of man

For anthropology, see 572–573; *man as member of animal kingdom,* 599.9

.5 Nature of life and death

For nature of living matter, see 577

129 Origin and destiny of the soul [*formerly* *218]

For Christian doctrine of salvation, see 234; *doctrine of salvation in other religions,* 290

.4 Incarnation and reincarnation

For incarnation in Christology, see 232.1; *in other religions,* 290

.6 Immortality

For immortality in natural theology, see 218; *in Christian theology,* 237.2; *in other theologies,* 290

130 Branches of psychology and pseudopsychology

For general psychology, see 150; *social psychology,* 301.15; *educational psychology,* 370.15

.1 Theories of mind and body

For modern psychological theories, see 150.1

131 Physiological psychology

Former heading: Psychosomatics

Comprehensive works on relationship of bodily functions to mental processes

For sensation and perception, see 152; *emotions,* 157; *movement and movement response,* 158.3

[†.1] Anatomy of nervous system

Class in 611.8

[†.2] Physiology of nervous system

Class in 612.8

131.3 Mental hygiene

Measures to preserve mental health and prevent mental illness

Class clinical psychology [*formerly* *131.3] in 132.075

For treatment of psychoneuroses, see 616.85; *of psychoses,* 616.89

.32 Factors promoting mental health

Class New Thought [*formerly* *131.32] in 289.9

.322 Therapeutic counseling (Psychotherapy)

Techniques used in improving the mental health of individuals

For psychoanalysis, see 131.34; *specific methods of treating mental illness,* 616.891; *pastoral counseling,* 253.5

[†.324] New Thought

Class in 289.9

.329 Mental health community services

Including administration of national and local programs

Divide like 940–999, e.g., mental health programs in New York State 131.329 747

.33 Factors adverse to mental health

.332 Social factors adverse to mental health

Including effect of war on mental health

For psychological aspects of war neuroses, see 132.15; *treatment of war neuroses,* 616.852 1

.333 Planned attacks on mental health

Including "brainwashing," thought control, deliberate mental harassment

[†.334] Action of poisons on nervous system

Class in 613.8

.335 Effect of disease on mental health

Including effect of disablement on mental health

For vocational rehabilitation, see 371.91

.336 Effect of fatigue on mental health

.337 Effect of anxiety on mental health

For psychological aspects of anxiety neuroses, see 132.15; *treatment of anxiety neuroses,* 616.852 2

131.34 **Psychoanalysis**

Diagnosis and treatment of psychoses and psychoneuroses by bringing into awareness the causes of emotional conflicts, and reorganizing unfavorable behavior patterns

For treatment of a specific mental disease, see the disease, e.g., hysteria 616.852; *psychoanalytic interpretation of dreams,* 135.383

.341 Theoretic concepts of psychoanalysis

Including explanation of terms peculiar to psychoanalysis, e.g., id, ego, superego, complexes, conflicts, sublimation, transference

.342 Psychoanalytic procedures

Methods and techniques of managing psychoanalytic treatment

.346 Psychoanalytic schools or systems

.346 2 Freudian psychoanalytic system

.346 3 Adlerian psychoanalytic system

.346 4 Jungian psychoanalytic system

.346 7 Neo-Freudian psychoanalytic systems

.346 9 Other psychoanalytic systems

.348 Applications of psychoanalysis

Comprehensive works

For a specific application of psychoanalysis, see the subject, e.g., psychoanalytic interpretation of Hamlet 822.3

132 Abnormal psychology

For hypnotism, see 134; *criminal psychology,* 364.34; *mental factors as causes of crime,* 364.24

.075 Clinical psychology (Psychodiagnosis) [*formerly* *131.3]

Psychological methods of appraising and correcting adjustment problems of individuals

For personality tests, see 137.8; *psychological tests,* 151.2; *psychoanalysis,* 131.34

.1 Mental illness

Psychological aspects of the mentally ill

For treatment of mental diseases, see 616.85–616.898 3; *service to the mentally ill,* 362.2

.13 Organic psychoses

Comprehensive works

For psychological aspects of a specific organic psychosis, see the subject, e.g., senile dementia 132.198 3

132.14 Chronic fatigue and depressions (Asthenic reactions)

Including "neurasthenia"

Class functional psychoses [*formerly* †132.14] in 132.19

.15 Psychoneuroses

Psychological aspects of hysteria, anxiety neuroses, obsessive-compulsive neuroses, phobias, war neuroses, catalepsy [*formerly* †132.4], ecstasy [*formerly* †132.5]

For asthenic reactions, see 132.14; *melancholia, hypochondriasis,* 132.195; *character neuroses,* 132.6–132.75; *psychopathic personality,* 132.6

.151 Chorea

.153 Epilepsy

.155 Aphasias

[†.161] Alcoholism

Class in 132.72

.19 Functional psychoses [*formerly* †132.14]

.192 General paresis (Neurosyphilis)

[†.193] Pathologic intoxication, delirium tremens, Korsakow's psychosis, alcoholic hallucinosis

Class in 132.72

.195 Manic-depressive psychoses

Including psychological aspects of depressive psychoses, e.g., hypochondriasis, melancholia [*both formerly* †132.3]

.195 7 Involutional psychoses

.197 Paranoia and paranoid conditions

.198 Schizophrenia and senile dementias

[†.198 12] Alcoholic dementia

Class in 132.72

.198 2 Schizophrenia (Dementia praecox)

.198 3 Senile dementias

Including psychological aspects of psychoses with cerebral arteriosclerosis

.2 Mental deficiency

Comprehensive works on feeblemindedness and arrested mental development

For psychology of mentally retarded children, see 136.766; *education of the mentally retarded,* 371.92; *service to the mentally defective,* 362.3

[†132.22] Psychopathic personality

Class in 132.6

.24 Degrees and clinical types of feeblemindedness

.242 2 Idiots

For mongolism, see 132.243 2; *cretinism,* 132.244 2

.242 3 Imbeciles

.242 4 Morons

.242 5 Borderline feeblemindedness

.243 2 Mongolism

.243 3 Hydrocephalus

.244 2 Cretinism (Congenital myxedemism)

[†.3] Hypochondriasis and melancholia

Class in 132.195

[†.4] Catalepsy

Class in 132.15

[†.5] Ecstasy

Class in 132.15

.6 Antisocial compulsions (Character neuroses)

Persistent abnormality of character and social conduct

Including psychopathic personality [*formerly* †132.22]

.62 Kleptomania

.63 Psychopathic defrauders

.64 Pyromania

.65 Homicidal and suicidal compulsions

.72 Dipsomania (Alcoholism) [*formerly also* †132.161]

Including psychological aspects of pathological intoxication, delirium tremens, Korsakow's psychosis, alcoholic hallucinosis [*all formerly* †132.193]; alcoholic dementia [*formerly* †132.198 12], alcoholic polyneuritis

.73 Drug addiction

.74 Psychopathic lying

.75 Sexual deviations

For sex deviates in society, see 301.424

.8 Amnesias

Psychopathic loss of memory [*formerly also* †154.7]

For normal forgetting, see 154.5

133 Occult sciences [*formerly also* †149.3]

.07 Parapsychology (Psychical research)

Comprehensive works on investigations of obscure, unexplained mental or spiritual phenomena

For research on a specific phenomenon, see the subject, e.g., research on extrasensory perception 133.81

.1 Apparitions (Ghosts)

For haunted places; see 398.32

.2 Hallucinations

For hypnotic hallucinations, see 134.52; *errors of perception,* 152.73

.3 Divination

.322 Crystal gazing

.323 Divining rods [*formerly also* †622.12]

.324 Fortunetelling

Including fortunetelling with cards, reading coffee grounds and tea leaves

For crystal gazing, see 133.322; *palmistry,* 133.6; *divinatory graphology,* 137.72; *fortunetelling by dreams,* 135.382

.333 Geomancy

.335 Numerology

For astrology, see 133.5

.4 Witchcraft

Including sorcery, necromancy, demonology, voodooism

.5 Astrology

Including horoscopes, zodiacal signs

.6 Palmistry

Including chiromancy

.7 Charlatanry

.8 Telepathy

Including clairvoyance, clairaudience, mind reading, thought transference

.81 Research on extrasensory perception

133.9 **Spiritualism**

For spiritualism as a religious movement, see 289.9; *as a philosophical topic,* 141

.91 Mediumship

Development and practice of mediumship

Including psychic experiences of individual mediums

For a specific phenomenon of spiritualism, see the subject, e.g., levitation 133.92; *hypnotic trance phenomena,* 134.52

.92 Physical phenomena of spiritualism

Including table-tipping, rapping, levitation, dematerialization of objects, ectoplasm

.93 Psychic phenomena of spiritualism

Including ouija board messages, automatic writing, automatic utterances

[†.94] Faith healing

Class in 615.852

134 Hypnotism [*formerly also* †612.821 71]

.2 **Induction of hypnosis**

Including means and methods of inducing hypnotic state

.5 **Hypnotic phenomena**

.52 Hypnotic trance phenomena

Including hypnotic delusions, hallucinations, anesthesia, catalepsy, heightened recall, age regression

.53 Posthypnotic phenomena

Including posthypnotic compulsions, hypnotic amnesia

.6 **Autohypnotism**

.8 **Applications of hypnotism**

Comprehensive works

For a specific application of hypnotism, see the subject, e.g., hypnotism as a factor in crime 364.24

135 Sleep, dreams, somnambulism

.2 **Sleep**

Comprehensive works

Including psychological aspects of sleep, sleep patterns

For physiological aspects of sleep, see 612.821 7

.26 Sleep privation

135.27 Sleep abnormalities

Including psychological aspects of insomnia

For treatment of insomnia, see 616.849

.3 **Dreams**

Comprehensive works

For physiological aspects of dreams, see 612.821 7

.32 Classification of dreams

.322 Dreams related to direct stimuli

Including dreams due to physical and mental stimuli

.323 Other types of dreams

Including nightmares, night terrors, prophetic dreams, recurrent dreams

.37 Daydreams

Autistic thinking, reveries

.38 Interpretation of dreams

.382 Popular interpretation of dreams

Including dream books [*formerly also* †398.7], fortunetelling by dreams

.383 Scientific interpretation of dreams

Including psychoanalytic interpretation of dreams

.5 **Somnambulism**

.6 **Sleep talking**

136 Differential psychology

Psychology of group and individual differences

Including genetic psychology

.1 **Psychology of the sexes**

For the sexes in society, see 301.424

.11 Sex differences

.15 Psychology of women

For psychology of girls, see 136.775

.16 Psychology of men

For psychology of boys, see 136.77

.17 Sex and personality

136.2 **Environmental psychology**

Influence of physical and social factors on behavior of individuals

For social psychology, see 301.15

.3 **Evolutional psychology**

Influence of heredity on personal characteristics

.4 **Ethnopsychology and national psychology**

.41 Psychology of primitive man

Including psychology of prehistoric man

.45 Psychology of race differences

Including race differences in behavior, intellect, performance, attitudes, temperaments

.48 Ethnopsychology

Psychology of ethnic groups not confined to specific countries or areas

Divide like 420–499, e.g., psychology of Latin races 136.487

.49 National psychology

Divide like 930–999, e.g., psychology of Italians 136.494 5

.5 **Developmental psychology**

.52 Psychology of adult maturity

.53 Psychology of the aged

.7 Child psychology

Study of psychology of children from birth to adulthood

Class physical development of child [*formerly* *136.7] in 612.65

For educational psychology, see 370.15; *child care and management,* 649.1; *pediatrics,* 618.92

.702 Study methods

Including laboratory methods

.708 Case histories of children

Including observations, records, albums of individual children

[†*.71] Physical development of child; infant psychology

Class physical development of child [*formerly* †136.71] in 612.65; infant psychology [*formerly* *136.71] in 136.735 2

.72 Intellectual development of child

For psychological tests and measurements, see 151.2

136.73 Personality traits of children

Including factors affecting personality of children

For psychology of boys, see 136.77; *of girls,* 136.775

.732 Environmental factors

.733 Hereditary factors

.734 Racial factors

Including psychological aspects of child as member of a minority group

.735 Developmental factors

Child psychology by age groups

.735 2 Infant psychology [*formerly* *136.71]

Psychology of children from birth to two years of age

.735 3 Childhood psychology

.735 32 Psychology of preschool children

Psychology of children from three to five years of age

.735 33 Psychology of grade school children

Psychology of children from six to eleven years of age

.735 4 Psychology of adolescence

Psychology of youth from twelve to twenty years of age

.74 Attitudes and beliefs of children

Divide like 000–999, e.g., attitudes of children about religion 136.742

[†.75] Delineation of children

Class children in art in 704.942 5; in literature in 809.93

.76 Psychology of exceptional children

For education of exceptional children, see 371.9

.761 Psychology of physically handicapt children

Including psychology of blind children, deaf-mutes, blind deaf-mutes, crippled and deformed children, chronically ill children

.762 Psychology of mentally disturbed children

Including conduct and personality problems of children

.763 Psychology of delinquent children

.764 Psychology of wildings

136.765 Psychology of gifted children
Including psychology of precocious children

.766 Psychology of mentally retarded children

.767 Psychology of institutionalized children
Including psychology of orphans, foundlings, abandoned children

.769 Psychology of other exceptional children
Including psychology of adopted children, foster children

.77 Psychology of boys
Class gangs [*formerly* †136.77] in 301.158
For psychology of men, see 136.16

.775 Psychology of girls
For psychology of women, see 136.15

.79 Childhood in various countries and times

.791 Childhood in primitive cultures
Comprehensive works
For childhood in a specific country, see 136.793–136.799

.793–.799 Childhood in specific countries
Divide like 930–999, e.g., childhood in Samoa 136.799 613

137 Psychology of personality
For metaphysical aspects of personality, see 126

.3 Personality determinants
Including personality traits
For personality traits of children, see 136.73

.31 Biological and physical determinants of personality

.32 Acquired determinants of personality
Including moral and religious determinants of personality
For social determinants of personality, see 137.33; *mental determinants,* 137.35

.33 Social determinants of personality

.35 Mental determinants of personality

.38 Other determinants of personality
Including special talents and abilities affecting personality

137.4 Types of personality (Psychological typology)

.42 Classical classifications of personality
Including Hippocrates' theory of temperaments

.45 Modern classifications of personality
Including personality classification schemes of Jung, James, Stern, Rorschach, Kretschmer, Sheldon

.5 Methods of developing personality

.7 Graphology
Handwriting analysis
For handwriting analysis in crime investigation, see 364.122

.72 Divinatory graphology
Fortunetelling by means of handwriting analysis

.75 Diagnostic graphology
Analysis of handwriting to determine course of mental illness, temperaments, traits

.8 Personality appraisals and tests
For psychological tests, see 151.2

.82 Inventories and questionnaires

.84 Projective techniques

.842 Rorschach personality tests

.843 Thematic apperception tests

138 Physiognomy
Determination of character from analysis of features

139 Phrenology
Determination of mental capacity from skull structure

140 Philosophical topics [*formerly* *180–*199]
Including philosophical systems and doctrines
For history of philosophy, see 109; *in a specific country,* 180–199; *works of a specific philosopher associated with a topic, system, or doctrine,* 180–199

141 Idealism and related topics
Including spiritualism, panpsychism, subjectivism, voluntarism, Platonism, Neoplatonism
For spiritualism as an occult science, see 133.9

.3 Transcendentalism

141.4 **Individualism**

For individual rights and protection, see 323.4

.5 **Personalism**

.6 **Romanticism**

For romanticism in a specific subject, see the subject, e.g., romanticism in literature 809.91

142 Critical philosophy

Including criticism, neocriticism

.3 **Kantianism and Neo-Kantianism**

.7 **Phenomenalism**

Including phenomenology

143 Intuitionism

Including Bergsonism

For mysticism, see 149.3; *intuition in psychology,* 156

144 Humanism and related topics

For religious humanism, see 211.6; *behavioristic psychology,* 150.194 3

.2 **Empiricism**

.3 **Pragmatism**

.5 **Instrumentalism**

.6 **Utilitarianism**

145 Sensationalism

146 Naturalism and related topics

Including dynamism, energism, transformism

For realism, see 149.2

.3 **Materialism**

Including comprehensive works on dialectical materialism

For dialectical materialism as philosophy of communism, see 335.411

.4 **Positivism**

Including Comtism

.5 **Atomism**

For molecular, atomic, nuclear physics, see 539; *chemical structure of matter,* 541.2

146.6 **Mechanism**

Including neomechanism

.7 **Evolutionism**

For organic evolution, see 575

147 Pantheism and related topics

Including panentheism, animism, vitalism, parallelism, occasionalism

For religious pantheism, see 212; *gnostic philosophy,* 189.1

.3 **Monism**

.4 **Pluralism**

Including dualism

For theories of mind and body in psychology, see 130.1

148 Liberalism and related topics

Including eclecticism, syncretism, traditionalism, dogmatism

149 Other philosophical topics

.1 **Nominalism**

Including conceptualism

.2 **Realism**

Including neorealism, critical realism, scholasticism

.3 **Mysticism**

Comprehensive works

Including anthroposophy, esoteric philosophy

Class occultism in 133, theosophy in 212.5 [*both formerly* †149.3]

For mysticism as Christian heresy, see 273.2; *in comparative religion,* 291.14; *medieval mysticism,* 189.5; *yoga philosophy,* 181.45; *intuitionism,* 143

.5 **Optimism**

Including meliorism

For ethical theories, see 171; *good and evil,* 111.84; *aspects in natural theology,* 216

.6 **Pessimism**

For ethical theories, see 171; *good and evil,* 111.84; *aspects in natural theology,* 216

149.7 **Rationalism and related topics**

Including intellectualism, innatism, nativism, sophisticism

.72 Agnosticism

For agnostic heresy, see 273.8; *agnosticism in natural theology,* 211.7

.73 Modern skepticism

For ancient skepticism, see 186; *atheism,* 211.8

.8 **Nihilism**

Including fatalism

For economic aspects of nihilism, see 335.83; *fatalism in natural theology,* 214; *existentialism,* 111.1

.9 **Other topics**

.94 Semantic philosophy

Including general semantics

For linguistic aspects of semantics, see 412

150 General psychology

Study of human behavior

For branches of psychology and pseudopsychology, see 130

.1 **Modern psychological theories**

For theories of mind and body, see 130.1

.13 Applied psychology

Comprehensive works

For a specific application of psychology, see the subject, e.g., educational psychology 370.15

.18 Psychological methodology

Non-laboratory methods of psychological investigation

Including subjective methods [*formerly also* †150.725 2], description of observations, field studies

For experimental psychology, see 150.72

.19 Psychological systems (Psychological schools)

.192 Subjective psychologies

For psychoanalytic schools, see 131.346; *depth psychology,* 153.8

.192 1 Rational psychology

150.192 2 Faculty psychology

Preseventeenth century doctrines of mental faculties or powers

.192 4 Gestalt psychology

For perception and attention, see 152.7

.192 5 Structural psychology (Existential psychology)

.193 Functional psychologies

.193 2 Dynamic psychologies

For motivation, see 159.4; *psychoanalysis,* 131.34

.193 3 Purposive (Hormic) psychologies

.194 Objective psychologies

.194 3 Behavioristic psychologies

.194 4 Reflexology (Associationism)

For conditioned reflexes, see 158.423

.7 **Study and teaching**

.72 Experimental psychology

.722 Psychological laboratories

Including equipment, apparatus

.725 Psychological laboratory methods

Class subjective methods [*formerly* †150.725 2] in 150.18

For non-laboratory methods of psychological investigation, see 150.18

.725 3 Statistical methods and experimental design

For interpretation of test results, see 151.26

151 Intelligence [*formerly also* †612.821 3] and aptitudes

For intellectual development of children, see 136.72

.1 **Genius**

Comprehensive works

For psychology of gifted children, see 136.765; *education of gifted children,* 371.95

.2 **Psychological tests**

For educational tests and measurements, see 371.26; *personality tests,* 137.8

151.22 Types of psychological tests

.222 General intelligence tests

Including individual and group tests, both verbal and nonverbal, e.g., Stanford-Binet tests, Yerkes point scale, Otis group tests, Thurstone tests, Army alpha tests, Army beta tests

Arrange alphabetically, using A1 for comprehensive works

.223 Aptitude tests

Special ability tests, e.g., music, manual dexterity, linguistics, mathematics

Including individual and group tests, both verbal and nonverbal

Arrange alphabetically, using A1 for comprehensive works

.25 Construction and administration of psychological tests

.26 Interpretation of test results

Including scoring methods, establishing norms, graphic presentation of results, validity and reliability

.28 Use of psychological tests

Comprehensive works

For a specific use of psychological tests, see the subject, e.g., tests for selecting employees 658.311

.29 Factors affecting intelligence

Environmental and hereditary factors

Including effect of disease on intelligence [*formerly* †612.821 5]

.3 Comparative psychology (Animal psychology) [*formerly also* †612.821 31]

Comprehensive works

For animal ecology, see 591.5; *physiological psychology,* 131

152 Sensation and perception [*formerly also* *612.8, †612.821 8]

For physiology of the sense organs, see 612.84–612.88; physiological *psychology,* 131

.1 Visual sensation and perception [*formerly also* †612.843 3–†612.843 7]

Psychological optics

Including binocular phenomena [*formerly also* †612.846 2], color vision, visual acuity, visual space perception, visual illusions, afterimages

[†152.11] Fibrous tunics of eye

Class in 612.841

[†.12] Uvea

Class in 612.842

[†.13] Optic nerve and retina

Class in 612.843

[†.14] Eyeball

Class in 612.844

[†.15] Functional disorders of vision

Class in 617.755

[†.16] Movements of eye

Class in 612.846

[†.17] Eyelids and tear ducts

Class in 612.847

.18 Tests of visual perception [*formerly also* †612.848]

.2 Auditory sensation and perception [*formerly also* †612.858 7–†612.858 76]

Including threshold and intelligibility of sounds (musical psychology), binaural audition, sound localization, auditory acuity

For psychology of music, see 781.15

[†.21] External ear

Class in 612.851

[†.24–†.27] Middle ear

Class in 612.854

.28 Tests of auditory perception [*formerly also* †612.858 78]

Class internal ear [*formerly* †152.28] in 612.858

.3 Olfactory sensation and perception [*formerly also* †612.867]

Including olfactory acuity, fusion of odors

For relationship of taste and smell, see 152.4

[†.31] Olfactory organs

Class in 612.86

.37 Tests of olfactory perception [*formerly also* †612.867 8]

152.4 **Gustatory sensation and perception**

Including gustatory acuity, fusion of tastes, relationship of taste and smell

[†.41] Gustatory organs

Class in 612.87

.47 Tests of gustatory perception

.5 **Cutaneous sensation and perception [*formerly also* †612.882–†612.884]**

Including sensation and perception of temperature, pressure, pain; fusion of tactile perceptions, tactile acuity

[†.51] Anatomy and physiology of tactile organs

Class anatomy of tactile organs in 611.88; physiology in 612.88

.57 Tests of cutaneous perception

.6 **Proprioceptive sensations and perceptions [*formerly also* †612.885]**

Including kinesthetic, vestibular, orientational [*formerly also* †612.886 1], hunger, and thirst sensations and perceptions

[†.61] Anatomy and physiology of proprioceptive organs

Class anatomy of proprioceptive organs in 611.88; physiology in 612.88

.67 Tests of proprioceptive perceptions

.7 **Perception and attention**

.72 Elements of perception

For perception thru a specific sense, see the subject, e.g., visual perception 152.1

.723 Attention [*formerly also* †612.821 2]

.724 Apperception

.725 Preperception

.73 Errors of perception

Normal illusions [*formerly also* †612.821 89]

For a specific sensory illusion, see the subject, e.g., visual illusions 152.1

.75 Types of perception

.752 Space perception

For visual space perception, see 152.1; *sound localization,* 152.2

152.753 Time and rhythm perception

.754 Perception of movement

.77 Synesthesia

Concomitant sensation and perception

.8 **Psychophysics [*formerly also* †612.821 88]**

Methods of measuring sensation and perception

For experimental psychology, see 150.72; *psychological tests,* 151.2

.83 Reaction-time studies [*formerly also* †612.821 1]

153 Cognition

.1 **Concepts and concept formation**

.2 **Association of ideas [*formerly also* †612.821 2]**

For memory and learning, see 154

.3 **Abstraction**

.4 **Reflection**

.5 **Judgment**

.6 **Reasoning**

For logic, see 160

.65 Symbol use and secondary meaning

Including language and thought, imageless thought

.66 Results of reasoning

Including knowledge of reality, belief, values, meaning

For epistemology, see 121

.7 **Consciousness**

For metaphysical aspects of consciousness, see 126

.8 **Depth psychology**

Including psychological aspects of the unconscious, coconscious, subconscious, preconscious

For metaphysical aspects of the unconscious and the subconscious, see 127; *psychoanalysis,* 131.34

154 Memory [*formerly also* †612.821 2] and learning

For association of ideas, see 153.2

.1 **Mnemonics**

Memory aids

154.3 **Memory processes**
.32 Retention
.33 Recall and reproduction
.34 Recognition
.4 **Learning**
Including methods, types of learning
For motor learning, see 158.433; *classroom learning,* 370.15
.44 Factors in learning
.46 Learning curves
.47 Transfer of learning
.5 **Normal forgetting**
For amnesias, see 132.8
.53 Forgetting curves
[†.7] **Loss of memory**
Class in 132.8
.8 **Measurements of retention**

155 **Imagination [*formerly also* †612.821 2]**
.2 **Imagery**
.3 **Creative imagination**

156 **Intuition**

157 **Emotions [*formerly also* †612.821 3]**
.1 **Emotional states**
Including sentiments, moods, anxiety
.2 **Expression of emotions**
Including physiological changes and overt behavior accompanying emotions
.3 **Varieties of emotions**
Including primitive or uncontrolled emotions [*formerly* †157.4]
Arrange alphabetically by name of the emotion, using A1 for comprehensive works
[†.4] **Primitive emotions (Uncontrolled emotions)**
Class in 157.3

157.5 **Feeling and feeling tone**
Former heading: Properties of sensibility
Including sensibility [*formerly also* †612.821 3]

158 **Conation, movement, instinct**
.1 **Conation and feeling**
[†.2] **Physiology of movement**
Class in 612.7
.3 **Movement and movement response**
.4 Automatic movements
.42 Innate movements
.422 Tropisms
.423 Reflexes [*formerly also* †612.821 6]
Including conditioned reflexes
For reflexology, see 150.194 4
.424 Instincts [*formerly also* †612.821 3]
.43 Habits [*formerly also* †612.821 34]
.432 Laws of habit
.433 Motor learning
.434 Habit formation
.435 Handedness
Including laterality
.5 Voluntary movements
.7 **Work and fatigue**
For industrial fatigue, see 331.824; *muscular metabolism,* 612.744
.72 Work-fatigue curves
.73 Factors in work efficiency
.74 Elements in fatigue
.78 Methods of measuring work and fatigue
.8 **Special motor functions**
Psychological aspects of locomotion, expressive movements, vocal and graphic expressions
For physiological aspects of motor functions, see 612.7; *handedness,* 158.435

159 Volition and motivation

.1 Freedom of will

Including choice, decision, deliberation

For metaphysical aspects of freedom, see 123; *Christian doctrine of freedom,* 233.7

.2 Volition (Will [*formerly also* †612.821 34])

Including voluntary action

For voluntary movements, see 158.5

.3 Adaptability

.4 Motivation (Drives [*formerly also* †612.821 34])

Including biological, secondary, social drives as motives

160 Logic

Science of reasoning processes

Including problem solving, dialectics

For the psychology of reasoning, see 153.6; *epistemology,* 121; *methodology,* 112

161 Induction

For statistical methods, see 311.2; *hypothesis,* 167; *analogy,* 169

162 Deduction

For syllogism, see 166

163 Logic based on faith

For faith in Christian theology, see 234.2; *faith as a basis for knowledge,* 121.7

164 Symbolic and mathematical logic

Including terms, concepts

For statistical methods, see 311.2; *mathematics,* 510

165 Fallacies and sources of error

166 Syllogism

167 Hypothesis

168 Argument and persuasion

For debating, see 808.53

169 Analogy

For analogy in natural theology, see 219

170 Ethics

Science of moral values of human life

Including moral science, moral philosophy, conduct of life

For ethical education, see 377.2; *social institutions and relationships,* 301.4; *manners and customs,* 390; *moral theology,* 241

[.1] Ethical theories

Class in 171

171 Ethical theories

Theories of the basis of morality; moral systems

For Kantianism, see 142.3

.1 Authoritarian ethical theories

Including comprehensive works on Christian ethics [*formerly* *241]

For rules of Christian conduct, see 241; *conscience,* 171.6

.2 Intuition and moral sense

For intuitionism, see 143; *conscience,* 171.6

.3 Perfectionism

Self-realization or fulfillment of personality

.4 Pleasure theories

Including happiness, hedonism

For egoism, see 171.9; *utilitarianism,* 171.5; *Epicurean philosophy,* 187

.5 Utilitarianism

For success, see 174

.6 Conscience

Including conflict of duties

For intuition and moral sense, see 171.2

.7 Evolutionary ethics

Development of ethical conduct thru evolution and education

.8 Altruism

.9 Egoism

172–179 Practical ethics

172 Political ethics [*formerly* *177]

Ethical aspects only

.1 Ethics of citizenship

Duties of citizen to community, state, nation with respect to defense, obedience to law, payment of taxes, civic and political activity

Including ethics of revolution, civil war

For patriotism, see 320.158; *political aspects of duties and obligations of citizens,* 323.65; *political struggles,* 323.2

.2 Ethics of public officials

Duties of officials with respect to security, material welfare, administration of justice, education, freedom of citizens

Including corruption, graft

.3 State's duty to church

Ethical basis for state's support and protection of church

Including liberty of conscience

For church and civil government, see 261.7; *state and church,* 322; *persecutions,* 272

.4 International relations

Including ethical foreign policies, national policies, duties of nation-states; ethics of war and peace, disarmament, espionage

For international law, see 341; *world peace,* 341.1; *foreign relations,* 327

173 Family [*formerly* *177]

Ethical aspects only

Including marriage, separation, divorce; responsibilities of parents for children and home life

For social problems of the family, see 301.42; *family customs,* 392.3; *family law,* 301.420 26; *home care of the child,* 649.1

174 Occupations

Comprehensive works on ethical aspects only

Including morals of working class [*formerly also* †331.84], ethical works on "how to be successful"; integrity

Class ethics of a specific profession or business [*formerly* †174.1–†174.4] with the profession or business, e.g., medical ethics 610.694

For success in business, see 650.19

174.6 Gambling

Ethics of gambling in business, of gambling as a business, of lotteries

For ethics of games of chance, see 175.5; *of betting,* 175.9; *gambling at games of chance,* 795; *lotteries,* 332.68

175 Recreation [*formerly* *177]

Ethical aspects only

Including sportsmanship, fair play

For amusements and recreations, see 790

.1 Public shows

Including ethics of radio and television programs, motion pictures, circuses

.2 Theater and opera

.3 Dancing

.4 Games of skill

.5 Games of chance

Including card, dice, roulette games

For ethics of gambling business, see 174.6; *of betting,* 175.9

.6 Prize fighting and animal fighting

Including boxing, wrestling, bullfights, cockfights

For cruelty to animals, see 179.3

.7 Racing

Including horse racing, boat racing, dog racing

For cruelty to animals, see 179.3

.8 Recreational reading

Ethical aspects only

For prohibited books, see 098.1; *salacious literature,* 176.8

.83 Comics

For influence and value, see 741.501 3

.9 Betting

For ethics of gambling business, see 174.6; *of games of chance,* 175.5; *gambling at games of chance,* 795; *at horse racing,* 798.48

176 Sex [*formerly* *177]

Ethical aspects only

Including chastity, celibacy, continence, adultery

For celibacy of the clergy, see 253.2; *the sexes in society,* 301.424

.5 Prostitution

For sociological aspects of prostitution, see 301.424 3

.7 Salacious art

Including pictorial obscenity

.8 Salacious literature

For ethics of recreational reading, see 175.8; *prohibited books,* 098.1

177 Social relations

Ethical aspects only

Class political ethics in 172, family ethics in 173, ethics of recreation in 175, sex ethics in 176, ethics of temperance in 178 [*all formerly* *177]

.1 Courtesy

Including politeness, hospitality

For etiquette, see 395

.2 Conversation

Including gossip, scandal

For art of conversation, see 808.5

.3 Slander

Including truth, flattery, prejudice, antipathy, lying

.4 Personal appearance

Including exposure of person, display of dress, luxury

For sex ethics, see 176

.5 Caste and segregation

Including class feeling, rank, snobbery

For protection of individual rights, see 323.4

.6 Friendship and courtship

For sociology of courtship, see 301.425; *customs of courtship,* 392.4

.7 Philanthropy

Including benevolence, kindness, humanity

For charity as Christian love, see 179.9

178 Temperance and intemperance [*formerly* *177]

Ethical aspects only

.1 Use of intoxicating liquors

Including beer drinking, medicinal use; abstinence, social drinking [*formerly* †178.2–†178.3]; intoxicated persons [*formerly* †178.6]

For treatment of alcoholism, see 616.861; *effect of alcohol on health,* 613.8; *psychological aspects of alcoholism,* 132.72; *drinking customs,* 394.1; *institutions for alcoholics,* 362.196 861

[†.2–†.3] Abstinence, social drinking

Class in 178.1

[†.4] Liquor traffic

Class inspection and control of alcoholic beverages in 614.34; economic aspects of liquor industry in 338.476 63

.5 Prohibition

Including discussion of legal aspects of Prohibition Act and its repeal

For liquor laws, see 614.34; *bootlegging as a crime,* 364.133

[†.6] Intoxicated persons

Class in 178.1

.7 Tobacco

.8 Narcotics

Including opium, cocaine, marijuana, heroin

For medicinal use of narcotics, see 615.782; *treatment of drug addiction,* 616.863

.9 Other forms of intemperance

Including gluttony, greediness

For treatment of obesity, see 616.398

179 Other ethical topics

Ethical aspects only

For conduct of life, see 170

[†.1] Morals of the press

Class in 070.11

.2 Cruelty

Comprehensive works on cruelty to children and animals

Including humane societies

For welfare services to children, see 362.7

179.3 Cruelty to animals

For ethics of animal fighting, see 175.6; *of animal racing,* 175.7

.4 Vivisection

For vivisection laws, see 614.22

.5 Oaths

Profanity, blasphemy, obscenity in speech

.6 Bravery

Including heroism, courage, valor, cowardice

.7 Respect for human life

Including ethical aspects of suicide, dueling

For euthanasia, see 610.694 4

.8 Human vices, faults, failings

Including pride, covetousness, envy, anger, sloth, jealousy, avarice, hate, cheating

For intemperance, see 178

.9 Human virtues

Including humility, liberality, gentleness, patience, diligence, charity, self-control, toleration, honesty, modesty

For altruism, see 171.8; *benevolence,* 177.7

180 Ancient and medieval philosophy

Including criticism and writings of individual philosophers

Class philosophic systems [*formerly* *180] in 140

For comprehensive history of philosophy, see 109; *literary works of individual philosophers, the* 800's; *a specific nonphilosophic work of an individual philosopher, the subject, e.g., Plato's Republic* 321.07; *discussion of philosophic topics, doctrines, systems,* 140; *modern Western philosophy,* 190; *non-Christian religions,* 290

181 Oriental philosophy

Including modern Oriental philosophy

.1 Far Eastern philosophy

.11 Chinese philosophy

.12 Japanese philosophy

.16 Indonesian philosophy

.17 Philippine philosophy

.19 Southeast Asian philosophy

Divide like 959, e.g., Thai philosophy 181.193

181.2 Egyptian philosophy

.3 Jewish philosophy

Class cabala [*formerly* †*181.3] in 296.16

.4 Indian philosophy

.41 Sankhya philosophy

.42 Mimamsa philosophy

.43 Nyaya philosophy

.44 Vaisheshika philosophy

.45 Yoga philosophy

For Yoga as a religious way of life, see 294.54

.452 Patanjali

.48 Vedanta philosophy

.482 Sankaracharya

.5 Persian philosophy

Including Sufism

.6 Chaldean philosophy

.7 Sabean philosophy

.8 Phoenician philosophy

.9 Other Oriental philosophy

Divide like 939, e.g., Arabic philosophy [*formerly* †*189.3] 181.947

182–188 Ancient Western philosophy

182 Pre-Socratic Greek philosophy

Including comprehensive works on Greek philosophy

For later Greek philosophy, see 183–186

.1 Ionic philosophy

.2 Pythagorean philosophy

.3 Eleatic philosophy

.4 Heraclitean philosophy

.5 Empedoclean philosophy

.7 Democritean philosophy

.8 Anaxagorean philosophy

183 **Sophistic and Socratic philosophy**

.1 **Sophistic philosophy**

.2 **Socratic philosophy**

.4 **Cynic philosophy**

.5 **Cyrenaic philosophy**

.6 **Megaric philosophy**

.7 **Elian and Eretrian philosophy**

184 **Platonic philosophy**

For Platonism as a system, see 141

185 **Aristotelian philosophy**

186 **Ancient skepticism and Neoplatonism**

For modern skepticism, see 149.73

.1 **Pyrrhonism**

.2 **New Academy**

.3 **Eclecticism**

.4 **Neoplatonism**

Including Alexandrian philosophy

For apologetics against Neoplatonists, see 239.4; *Neoplatonism as a system,* 141

187 **Epicurean philosophy**

Including comprehensive works on Roman philosophy

For other Roman philosophies, see 186, 188

188 **Stoic philosophy**

189 **Medieval Western philosophy**

Including early Christian philosophy

.1 **Gnostic philosophy**

For Gnostic heresies, see 273.1

.2 **Patristic philosophy**

[†*.3] **Arabic philosophy**

Class in 181.947

.4 **Medieval scholasticism**

For modern scholasticism, see 149.2

189.5 **Medieval mysticism**

For modern mysticism, see 149.3; *mysticism in comparative religion,* 291.14; *mystic heresy,* 273.2

190 **Modern Western philosophy**

Including criticism and writings of individual philosophers; comprehensive works on Western philosophy

Under each number, arrange individual philosophers alphabetically, using A1 for comprehensive works

Class philosophic systems [*formerly* *190] in 140

For comprehensive history of philosophy, see 109; *literary works of individual philosophers, the* 800's; *a specific nonphilosophic work of an individual philosopher, the subject, e.g., Bertrand Russell's Essay on the foundations of geometry* 513.01; *discussion of philosophic topics, doctrines, systems,* 140; *ancient and medieval Western philosophy,* 180

191 **United States and Canadian philosophy**

192 **British philosophy**

English, Scottish, Irish, Welsh philosophy

For Canadian philosophy, see 191; *philosophy of other parts of British Empire,* 199

193 **German and Austrian philosophy**

194 **French philosophy**

195 **Italian philosophy**

196 **Spanish philosophy**

.9 **Portuguese philosophy**

197 **Russian philosophy**

.1 **Finnish philosophy**

198 **Scandinavian philosophy**

.1 **Norwegian philosophy**

.5 **Swedish philosophy**

.9 **Danish philosophy**

199 **Other modern philosophies**

Divide like 940–999, except for Western philosophies provided for in 191–198 and for Oriental philosophies in 181, e.g., Polish philosophy 199.438, Mexican philosophy 199.72

Religion

200 Religion

Including Christian religion

For other religions, see 290

201–209 Form divisions

Use for Christian religion where applicable, also for comprehensive works on religions with emphasis on Christianity

201 Philosophy and theories

.6 Psychology of religion

For pastoral counseling, see 253.5

202 Handbooks and outlines

203 Dictionaries and encyclopedias

204 Essays and lectures

For sermons, see 252

205 Periodicals

206 Organizations and societies

Including Bible societies

For Christian religious associations, e.g., Salvation Army, see 267; *missionary societies,* 266; *religious orders,* 271; *Christian churches,* 280; *institutions in other religions,* 290

207 Study and teaching

Including theological seminaries, training schools

Divide like 940–999, e.g., Oberlin Graduate School of Theology 207.771 23

For religious education in Sunday schools, Bible schools, see 268; *religious and moral education,* 377

208 Collections

209 History of religion

Works limited to or emphasizing Christian religion

For history of Christian church, see 270; *histories of Christian denominations,* 280; *of other religions,* 290; *history of religions giving equal or minor emphasis to Christianity,* 290

210 Natural theology

Religious belief attained thru philosophical speculation or reasoning without supernatural revelation

Including evidence of divine purpose in nature

Class theodicy in 214, good and evil in 216, worship in 217 [*all formerly* *210]

For Christian theology, see 230; *theology in comparative religion,* 291.2; *in specific religions other than Christianity,* 290

211 Theories concerning knowledge of God

Concepts based on reason

For concepts based on revelation, see the specific theology, e.g., Christian 231

.3 Theism

For Christian apologetics, see 239; *in other religions,* 290

.4 Rationalism

.44 Free thought

.5 Deism

For Christian apologetics against deism, see 239.5

.6 Religious humanism

Including secularism, humanitarianism

For philosophical humanism, see 144

.7 Agnosticism

Including skepticism

For philosophical agnosticism, see 149.72; *agnostic heresy,* 273.8; *Christian apologetics against agnosticism,* 239.7

.8 Atheism

212 Pantheism

For pantheism as philosophic concept, see 147; *Gnostic heresies,* 273.1; *Rosicrucians,* 366.4; *anthroposophy,* 149.3

.5 Theosophy [*formerly also* †149.3]

Including theosophical societies [*formerly* *294.58]

For mystic heresy, see 273.2; *incarnation in philosophy,* 129.4

213 Creation of universe and earth

Including religious theories reconciling creation by fiat and creation by evolutionary growth and change

For Genesis, see 222.11; *creation in religions other than Christianity and Judaism,* 290; *philosophical aspects of cosmology and cosmogony,* 113; *astronomical aspects,* 523.1; *geology,* 550; *religion and science,* 215

.5 Creation of life

Including religious theories reconciling creation of life and mankind by fiat and development thru evolutionary growth and change

For paleontology, see 560; *organic evolution,* 575; *man in Christian theology,* 233; *in other theologies,* 290

214 Theodicy [*formerly* *210]

Vindication of God's justice in permitting evil

Including providence, fatalism

For divine providence in Christian theology, see 231.5; *in other theologies,* 290; *Christian view of theodicy,* 231.8

215 Religion and science

Including antagonism, reconciliation

For creation, see 213; *Christian apologetics against science,* 239.8

216 Good and evil [*formerly* *210]

For goodness and evil as properties of being, see 111.84; *theodicy,* 214; *ethics,* 170; *sin in Christian theology,* 233.2; *in other theologies,* 290; *pessimism,* 149.6

217 Worship [*formerly* *210]

Including prayer

For Christian family devotions, see 249; *Christian public worship,* 264; *prayer in personal Christianity,* 248.3; *worship in other religions,* 290

218 Immortality

Including conceptions of life after death, eternity

For metaphysical concept of the soul, see 128; *future state in Christian doctrine,* 237; *in other religious doctrines,* 290

219 Analogy

Religious principles reached by analogies or correspondences

220–289 Christian religion

220 Bible

Use 220.01–220.02, 220.04–220.09 for form divisions

For Old Testament, see 221–224; *New Testament,* 225–228; *Apocrypha,* 229

.1 Bible origins

.12 Canon

Including Bible as Holy Scripture

.13 Inspiration

.14 Authorship

.15 Prophetic message

Word of God spoken by his prophets

.2 Concordances and indexes

.3 Dictionaries and encyclopedias

.4 Original texts and early versions

Codices and translations

Including textual criticism

For translations into modern languages, see 220.5; *comprehensive works on Dead Sea Scrolls,* 221.4; *a specific part of Dead Sea Scrolls, the subject, e.g., Isaiah* 224.1

.42 Chaldean texts

.43 Syriac texts

.44 Hebrew texts

.45 Samaritan texts

.46 Other Semitic texts

Including Ethiopic, Arabic texts

.47 Latin texts

Including Itala, Vulgate

.48 Greek texts

Including Septuagint

.49 Other early versions

Including Armenian, Coptic, Gothic texts

220.5 **Modern versions of Bible**

Translations into modern languages, using original and early versions as sources, e.g., King James (Authorized) version, Luther translation

Including textual criticism, history of modern versions

For translations of specific early versions, see 220.4

.51 Polyglot Bibles

.52–.599 Modern versions by language

Divide like 420–499, e.g., Bible in German 220.53

.6 **Hermeneutics (Exegesis)**

Explanation and interpretation of meaning of Scriptures, their symbolism and typology

Including value and use of Bible

For interpretations limited to a specific subject, see the subject, e.g., salvation 234

.7 **Commentaries**

Including annotated editions

.8 **Special subjects treated in Bible**

Divide like 000–999, e.g., natural science in Bible 220.85

.88 Bible as literature

.9 **Biblical geography and history**

Including chronology

.91 Geography and description of Bible lands in Bible times

For geography of Palestine, see 915.694

.92 Biographies of Biblical characters

Collective biography only

For scriptural biography of Old Testament, see 221.92; *of New Testament,* 225.92; *life of Jesus Christ,* 232.9

.93 Biblical archeology

.95 History based upon Bible

Including Bible stories retold

For ancient Judea, see 933

221 Old Testament

Divide like 220, e.g., commentaries on Old Testament 221.7

For Judaic religion, see 296

.4 **Original texts and early versions**

Including comprehensive works on Dead Sea Scrolls

For a specific part of Dead Sea Scrolls, see the subject, e.g., Isaiah 224.1

.92 **Biography**

Arrange alphabetically by name of biographee, using A1 for collective biography

---

222–224 Individual parts and books of Old Testament

Where applicable, add 0 and divide like 220, e.g., Song of Solomon as literature 223.908 8

For subdivisions for Psalms, see 223.2–223.6

222 **Historical books**

.1 Pentateuch (Torah)

.11 Genesis

.12 Exodus

For Ten Commandments, see 222.16

.13 Leviticus

.14 Numbers

.15 Deuteronomy

For Ten Commandments, see 222.16

.16 Ten Commandments (Decalog)

.2 Joshua (Douay version: Josue)

.3 Judges

.35 Ruth

.4 Samuel

.43 Samuel 1 (Douay version: Kings 1)

.44 Samuel 2 (Douay version: Kings 2)

.5 Kings

.53 Kings 1 (Douay version: Kings 3)

.54 Kings 2 (Douay version: Kings 4)

222.6 Chronicles (Douay version: Paralipomena)
.63 Chronicles 1 (Douay version: Paralipomenon 1)
.64 Chronicles 2 (Douay version: Paralipomenon 2)
.7 Ezra (Douay version: Esdras 1)
.8 Nehemiah (Douay version: Esdras 2, or Nehemias)
For deuterocanonical book of Tobit (Tobias), see 229.2; of Judith, 229.24
.9 Esther
For deuterocanonical part of Esther, see 229.27

223 Poetic books
.1 Job
.2 Psalms
Including single Psalms
Class authorship and chronology in 223.3, special groups in 223.4 [*both formerly* *223.2]
.3 Authorship and chronology [*formerly* *223.2]
.4 Special groups [*formerly* *223.2]
Including Messianic, vesper Psalms, hallel
.5 Liturgical use
Including metrical versions
For Anglican Psalter, see 264.03; hymnology, 245
.6 Commentaries on Psalms
.7 Proverbs
.8 Ecclesiastes
.9 Song of Solomon (Douay version: Canticle of Canticles)
For deuterocanonical book of Wisdom of Solomon, see 229.3; of Ecclesiasticus, 229.4

224 Prophetic books
.1 Isaiah (Douay version: Isaias)
.2 Jeremiah (Douay version: Jeremias)
.3 Lamentations
For deuterocanonical book of Baruch, see 229.5
.4 Ezekiel (Douay version: Ezechiel)
.5 Daniel

224.6 Hosea (Douay version: Osee)
.7 Joel
.8 Amos
.9 Other minor prophets
Including comprehensive works on minor prophets
For Hosea, see 224.6; Joel, 224.7; Amos, 224.8
.91 Obadiah (Douay version: Abdias)
.92 Jonah (Douay version: Jonas)
.93 Micah (Douay version: Micheas)
.94 Nahum
.95 Habakkuk (Douay version: Habacuc)
.96 Zephaniah (Douay version: Sophonias)
.97 Haggai (Douay version: Aggeus)
.98 Zechariah (Douay version: Zacharias)
.99 Malachi (Douay version: Malachias)
For deuterocanonical books of Maccabees 1–2, see 229.7

225 New Testament
Divide like 220, e.g., New Testament in German 225.53
.92 Biography
Arrange alphabetically by name of biographee, using A1 for collective biography

---

226–228 Individual parts and books of New Testament
Where applicable, add 0 and divide like 220, e.g., commentary on Revelation 228.07

226 Gospels and Acts
.1 Harmonies
.2 Matthew
For Lord's Prayer, see 226.9
.3 Mark
.4 Luke
.5 John
.6 Acts of Apostles
.7 Miracles

226.8 Parables

.9 Lord's Prayer

227 Epistles

.1 Romans

.2 Corinthians 1

.3 Corinthians 2

.4 Galatians

.5 Ephesians

.6 Philippians

.7 Colossians

.8 Other Pauline epistles

.81 Thessalonians 1

.82 Thessalonians 2

.83 Timothy 1

.84 Timothy 2

.85 Titus

.86 Philemon

.87 Hebrews

.9 Catholic epistles

.91 James

.92 Peter 1

.93 Peter 2

.94 John 1

.95 John 2

.96 John 3

.97 Jude

228 Revelation (Douay version: Apocalypse)

229 Apocrypha and deuterocanonical books

Including pseudepigrapha

Where applicable, add 0 to individual parts and books and divide like 220, e.g., commentary on Judith 229.240 7

.1 Esdras 1 and 2 (Douay version: Esdras 3 and 4)

.2 Tobit (Douay version: Tobias)

.24 Judith

.27 Esther

.3 Wisdom of Solomon (Douay version: Wisdom)

.4 Ecclesiasticus

.5 Baruch, Epistle of Jeremy, Song of the three children

.6 Susanna, Bel and the dragon, Prayer of Manasses

.7 Maccabees 1, 2, 3, 4

.8 Pseudo gospels

For Jesus Christ's words not contained in the Gospels, see 232.98

.9 Other pseudepigrapha

Including pseudepigrapha of Old and New Testaments

.91 Old Testament

.911 Historical books

.912 Poetic books

Including Odes of Solomon

.913 Prophetic books

Including Jewish apocalypses; Book of Enoch; Assumption of Moses; Vision of Isaiah; Apocalypse of Elias, or Elijah

.914 Testaments

Including Testament of the twelve patriarchs

.915 Other books by or about the prophets

.92 Pseudepigrapha of Acts of Apostles

.93 Pseudepigrapha of epistles

.94 Pseudepigrapha of New Testament apocalypses

.95 Other recently discovered pseudepigrapha

.951 Sayings of Jesus

For Jesus Christ's words not contained in the Gospels, see 232.98

230 Doctrinal theology (Christian dogma)

Use 230.01–230.09 for form divisions

Divide like 280, e.g., Baptist theology 230.6

If preferred, divide further by adding 0 under each denomination and dividing like 231–237, e.g., Presbyterian view of salvation 230.504. Denominational libraries may prefer to class doctrines of other denominations here, while classing doctrines of their own denomination in 231–237

For natural theology, see 210; *heresies,* 273; *doctrinal sermons,* 252.3; *theology of other religions,* 290

231–237 Doctrines on specific subjects

Including doctrines held by a specific denomination, e.g., Presbyterian view of salvation 234

231 Doctrines relating to God

Including Trinity, the Godhead

For God in natural theology, see 211

.1 God the Father, Creator [*formerly* *231.3]

.2 God the Son, Redeemer [*formerly* *231.3]

For Christology, see 232

.3 God the Holy Ghost (Holy Spirit), Giver of Life, Sanctifier

Class God the Father in 231.1, God the Son in 231.2 [*both formerly* *231.3]

.4 Divine attributes

Including omniscience, omnipresence, omnipotence

.5 Divine providence

For providence in natural theology, see 214

.6 Divine love and wisdom

.7 Divine law

Including Kingdom of God, sovereignty of God

For church law, see 348; *church discipline,* 262.9

.73 Miracles

Including miraculous places, objects, cures; stigmata

For miracles in New Testament, see 226.7

.74 Revelation

Vision and appearing of God; disclosure to men of divine purpose, superhuman knowledge

For Book of Revelation, see 228

231.8 Theodicy

Vindication of God's justice and goodness in permitting existence of evil and suffering

For theodicy in natural theology, see 214

232 Christology

For God the Son, see 231.2

.1 Incarnation and Messianic Christology

Class virgin birth [*formerly* *232.1] in 232.921

For incarnation in philosophy, see 129.4

.12 Messianic prophecies

For eschatology, see 236

.2 Logos (Word of God)

.3 Atonement

.4 Sacrifice

.5 Resurrection

Doctrinal aspects

For resurrection and appearances of Jesus Christ, see 232.97

.6 Second coming

.7 Judgment

For last judgment in eschatology, see 236.9

.8 Divinity of Jesus Christ

Including dual nature of Jesus Christ's divinity and humanity

.9 Life of Jesus Christ

Including teaching, works, influence

For pseudepigraphal sayings of Jesus Christ, see 229.951; *biographies of New Testament characters,* 225.92

.91 Annunciation

.92 Infancy

.921 Nativity

Including virgin birth [*formerly* *232.1]

For incarnation, see 232.1

.922 Adoration of the shepherds

.923 Three wise men (Magi)

.924 Circumcision

232.925 Massacre of innocents
.926 Flight into Egypt
.927 Childhood in Nazareth
.928 Presentation in the temple
.929 Jesus Christ among the doctors
.93 Holy family
.931 Mary, mother of Jesus Christ
Including Mariology
For Annunciation, see 232.91
.931 2 Immaculate Conception of Mary
.931 3 Virginity
.931 4 Assumption (Ascent to heaven)
.931 5 Sanctity and virtues
.931 6 Spiritual powers of Mary
.931 7 Sanctuaries and shrines
Including Lourdes, Fatima, Guadalupe
For miracles, see 231.73
.931 8 Veneration
Including special prayers, hymns, acts of devotion, e.g., novenas
.931 9 Apocryphal narratives of Mary
Including legends
.932 Joseph
Including sanctity, virtues, veneration, shrines
.933 Parents of Mary (Joachim and Anne)
Including sanctity, virtues, veneration, shrines
.94 John the Baptist, forerunner of Jesus Christ
Doctrinal aspects
For biography of John the Baptist, see 225.92
.95 Public life of Jesus Christ
Including baptism, temptation, calling of apostles
For miracles of Jesus Christ, see 226.7; *parables,* 226.8
.954 Teachings
.956 Transfiguration

232.957 Last Supper
For Lord's Supper as a sacrament, see 265.3
.958 Last words
Seven last words on the cross
For Crucifixion, see 232.963
.96 Passion of Jesus Christ
.961 Betrayal by Judas
.962 Trial and condemnation
.963 Crucifixion and death
.964 Burial
.966 Relics of Passion
.967 Descent into hell
.97 Resurrection, appearances, ascension
For doctrinal aspects, see 232.5
.98 Agrapha
Jesus Christ's words not contained in the Gospels
.99 Legendary accounts of Jesus Christ
Class poetry, drama, fiction [*formerly* *232.99, †232.991–†232.993] in the 800's

233 Man

Including doctrines on moral and spiritual heredity, personality, natural and spiritual body
For religion and science, see 215; *theodicy,* 231.8

.1 Creation of man
For creation of mankind in natural theology, see 213.5
.14 Fall of man
Including nature of original sin
.2 Sin
For original sin, see 233.14
.21 Mortal and venial sin
.22 Sins against the Holy Ghost
.4 Accountability

233.5 **The soul**

Nature of man's soul

Class metaphysical concept of the soul [*formerly* *233.5] in 128

For origin and destiny of the soul, see 129

.7 **Freedom of man**

Freedom to choose between good and evil

For predestination and free will, see 234.9; *religious liberty,* 261.72

234 Doctrines relating to salvation (Soteriology)

.1 **Grace**

Including actual and sanctifying grace, merit, innate virtues, gifts of the Holy Ghost

.16 Sacraments

To be used only by libraries wishing to class works on sacraments with those on grace

Divide like 265, e.g., baptism 234.161

For liturgy of sacraments, see 264

.2 **Faith**

Confidence in reality of that which cannot be proved

For authority of the church, see 262.8

.3 **Redemption**

.4 **Regeneration**

.5 **Repentance**

.6 **Obedience**

.7 **Justification**

.8 **Sanctification**

.9 **Predestination and free will**

For freedom of man, see 233.7; *metaphysical theories of freedom and necessity,* 123; *will in psychology,* 159

235 Doctrines relating to saints, angels, devils

.2 **Saints**

Including sanctity, virtues, veneration, shrines, relics

For miracles, see 231.73; *persecutions,* 272; *biographies of saints,* 922.22

235.24 Canonization

Including beatification

.3 **Angels**

Including archangels, seraphim, cherubim

.4 **Devils**

Including demons, evil spirits in Christian theology

For comprehensive works on demons and evil spirits, see 291.216; *witchcraft,* 133.4

.47 Satan

.48 Antichrist

236 Eschatology

Doctrines on end of present order on earth and establishment of that of eternity

.1 **Death**

.3 **Millennium**

.4 **Intermediate state**

Probation after death

For future state, see 237

.5 Purgatory

.6 Limbo patrum

Abode of souls of the just who died before the coming of Jesus Christ

.7 Limbo infantum

Abode of souls of unbaptized infants

.8 **Resurrection of the dead**

.9 **Last judgment**

For judgment in Christology, see 232.7

237 Future state (Life after death)

Eternal reward and punishment

For intermediate state, see 236.4

.1 Eternity

.2 Immortality

For immortality in natural theology, see 218

.3 Annihilationism (Conditional immortality)

237.4 Heaven

.5 Hell

238 Christian creeds and confessions of faith

Including covenants, catechisms

For a specific Christian doctrine, see the subject, e.g., Incarnation 232.1

.1 Early Christian creeds

.11 Apostles' Creed

.14 Nicene and post-Nicene creeds of Western Church

.142 Nicene Creed

Including Constantinopolitan Creed

.144 Athanasian Creed

.19 Eastern Orthodox creeds

Including Confession of Gennadius II, Answers of Jeremiah II, Confession of Metrophanes, Orthodox Confession of Peter Mogila, Confession of Dositheus

.2 Later Roman Catholic creeds and confessions of faith

Including Creed of Pius IV (Council of Trent)

.3–.9 Other Christian creeds and confessions of faith

Divide like 283–289, e.g., Augsburg Confession 238.41

239 Apologetics

Exposition of Christian doctrines refuting alleged errors in other systems

Including polemics, methods of apologetics

Use 239.001–239.009 for form divisions

For exposition of Christian doctrine, see 230; controversies over a specific Christian doctrine, the doctrine, e.g., divinity of Jesus Christ 232.8; polemic writings of adherents of one Christian denomination against another, the denomination attackt, e.g., Protestant polemics against Roman Catholic Church 282

.1 In apostolic times

Class apologetics against Jews in 239.2, against pagans in 239.3, against Neoplatonists in 239.4 [*all formerly* *239.1]

.2 Against Jews [*formerly* *239.1]

For apologetics against Judaism since apostolic times, see 296

.3 Against pagans and heathens [*formerly* *239.1]

239.4 Against Neoplatonists [*formerly* *239.1]

.5 Against deists

For deism in natural theology, see 211.5

.6 Against the Encyclopedists

.7 Against rationalists and agnostics

For agnostic heresy, see 273.8; agnosticism as a philosophy, 149.72; agnosticism in natural theology, 211.7

.8 Against scientists and materialists

For religion and science, see 215

.9 Against other denials

Including communists

Class apologetics against Moslems in 297, against Buddhists in 294.3 [*both formerly* *239.9]

For Christian apologetics against adherents of another religion, see the religion, e.g., against Hindus 294.5

240 Devotional and practical theology

Practice of Christian religion

241 Moral theology

Christian's duty to do and to avoid

Including Christian virtues, codes of Christian conduct

Class Christian ethics [*formerly* *241] in 171.1

For conscience, see 171.6; personal religion, 248; catechisms, 238; application of Christian virtues to personal living, 248.4; sin, 233.2; Ten Commandments, 222.16

242–245 Aids to devotional and practical religion

242 Meditations and contemplations

Meditations general in subject matter

Including devotional sermons [*formerly* †252.4, *252], value of contemplation

For pastoral counseling, see 253.5; personal religion, 248; meditations limited to a specific subject, the subject, e.g., meditations on immortality 237.2

.1 Imitatio Christi (Thomas à Kempis)

.2 Daily devotions

242.3 **Meditations for religious occasions**

Class retreats [*formerly* *242.3] in 269.6

For life of Jesus Christ, see 232.9; *accounts of a specific religious occasion, the occasion, e.g., birth of Jesus Christ* 232.921

.33 Christmas

Including Advent

.34 Lent

.35 Holy Week

Including Palm Sunday, Maundy (Holy) Thursday, Good Friday

.36 Easter

.4 **Readings of consolation**

Including readings for times of illness, troubles, death

For parish welfare work, see 258; *ministry to the sick and dying,* 265.8

.6 **Meditations for special classes of persons**

Including clergy, young people, men, women, students, soldiers, the sick

243 Evangelistic writings [*formerly* *269]

Works designed to convert readers, promote repentance

Including evangelistic sermons

For public revivals, see 269; *pastoral evangelism,* 253.7

[†*244] Religious stories, allegories, satires

Class in the 800's

245 Hymnology

Hymns without music

Divide like 420–499, e.g., collections of hymns in English 245.2

Class religious poetry [*formerly* †*245] in the 800's

For hymns with music, see 783.9; *metrical versions of Psalms,* 223.5

246–247 Art and artifacts in religious services

246 Christian symbolism

Use and symbolism of art and decoration in religious services and buildings

Including symbolic objects, attitude of Christian church toward art

For religion in art, see 704.948; *early Christian art,* 709.02; *religious architecture,* 726; *symbolism of other religions,* 290

.1 **Byzantine and Gothic symbolism**

.2 **Primitive church art**

.4 **Protestantism and religious art**

.5 **Emblematic and cryptographic art**

Including catacomb symbols

.6 **Liturgic symbolism**

Including altar, colors, lights

For ornaments, see 247.9

.7 **Religious use of music and rhythmic arts**

For sacred music, see 783

247 Sacred furniture and vestments

Religious aspects and use only

Including ornaments, decorative features

.1 **Church furniture**

Including font, baptistery, lectern, pulpit

For fixt and built-in ecclesiastical furniture, see 729.9

.4 **Illumination and stained glass**

Including mosaics, enamels

For stained glass in art, see 748.5

.5 **Fresco and religious painting**

For religious paintings, see 755

.6 **Bishops' insignia**

Including pallium, miter, crosier, ring

.7 **Vestments and altar cloths**

For textile handicrafts, see 746; *manufacture of vestments,* 687.15

247.8 **Eucharistic vessels**

Including chalice, ciborium, monstrance

For design and creation of vessels in precious metals, see 739.228 2

.9 **Ecclesiastical emblems**

Including banners, thuribles, incense

For bishops' insignia, see 247.6

.92 Cross and crucifix

248–249 Practice of religion in personal and family life

248 Personal religion

Comprehensive works

Including asceticism, religious pilgrimages

For meditation, see 242; *psychology of religion,* 201.6; *salvation,* 234; *moral theology,* 241; *public worship,* 264; *pilgrimages to a specific place, the place, e.g., to Bethlehem* 915.694

.2 **Mystical experience**

For mysticism in comparative religion, see 291.14; *in philosophy,* 149.3

.3 **Private prayer**

For family prayer, see 249; *comprehensive works on prayer,* 264.1

.37 Collections of private prayers

.4 **Christian life**

Including Christian characteristics, qualities, application of Christian virtues to personal living

For ethics, see 170; *Christian virtues,* 241

.8 **Personal religion for special classes of persons**

Including clergy, young people, men, women, students, soldiers, the sick

249 Family worship

Including religious life of the family, grace at table, family prayers

250 Pastoral theology

Functions of Christian clergyman as religious leader in the parish

Including participation of laymen in church work

For church services, see 264; *missions,* 266; *religious education,* 268; *comprehensive works on Christian church and pastoral theology,* 260

251 Preaching (Homiletics)

Preparation and delivery of effective sermons

For public worship, see 264; *sermons,* 252

.027 Sermon outlines

.082 2 Homiletic illustrations

252 Sermons

Collections and single sermons not limited to a specific subject

Use 252.001–252.007, 252.009 for form divisions

Divide 252.01–252.09 like 281–289, e.g., Episcopalian sermons 252.03

Class devotional sermons [*formerly* *252] in 242

For sermons on a specific subject, see the subject, e.g., sermons on family devotions 249; *evangelistic sermons,* 243

.1 **Pastoral sermons**

Including sermons for baptisms, weddings, funerals

For memorial, biographical sermons, see 252.9

.2 **Controversial and polemic sermons**

.3 **Doctrinal and dogmatic sermons**

.4 **Practical sermons**

Class devotional sermons [*formerly* †252.4] in 242

.5 **Sermons for young people**

.53 Children's sermons

.55 Academic sermons

Including chapel, convocation, commencement sermons

.6 **Sermons for public occasions**

Including church year sermons

.61 Christmas

Including Advent

.62 Lent

Including Holy Week

252.63 Easter

.67 Other religious holidays and fast days

Including Thanksgiving Day

.68 Political occasions

Including election sermons

.7 Consecration, ordination, installation sermons

.9 Historical and biographical sermons

Including obituary, memorial sermons

For funeral sermons not biographical, see 252.1

253 Pastor

Including life, everyday duties of minister, priest, elder, rector, preacher

For clergy in church polity or hierarchy, see 262.14

.2 Pastoral life

Including qualifications, family life, celibacy

For theological seminaries, see 207

.5 Pastoral counseling

For parish welfare work, see 258

.7 Personal evangelism

Ways and means of converting individuals

Including personal evangelism by laymen

For evangelistic writings, see 243; *revivals,* 269.2

254 Church and parish administration

Including program planning and financing, membership, budget and expenditures, records and office methods, buildings, equipment

For ecclesiastical organization, see 262

.2 Urban church work

.24 Rural church work

.3 Radio and television in religious work

.4 Public relations

Including church publicity

.8 Church finance

Including methods of raising money, tithing, gifts, bequests; clerical salaries, pensions; church fairs, bazaars

[†255] Brotherhoods and sisterhoods

Class in 271

[†256] Societies for parish work

Class in 267

[†257] Parish educational work

Class in 268

258 Parish welfare work

Including work by pastor and his church for the sick, afflicted of community

For pastoral counseling, see 253.5; *social welfare,* 360

259 Other parish activities

Including church entertainments, recreational facilities, church work with groups, e.g., children, soldiers, students, young people, adults

For religious education, see 268; *religion in the family,* 249

260 Christian church

Institutions, services, observances, disciplines, work of church

Including comprehensive works on Christian church and pastoral theology

For pastoral theology, see 250

261 Christian social theology

Christianity's influence on and attitude toward secular matters

For moral theology, see 241; *social sciences,* 300; *church history,* 270

.5 Christianity and growth of knowledge

.6 Christianity and world order

For ethics of international relations, see 172.4

.63 Christianity and war

Including attitude of church toward peace, pacifism, conscientious objectors

For peace plans and movements, see 341.1

.7 Christianity and civil government

Attitude of church toward and effect on national and local political activities

Including attitude toward political ideologies

For political theories on church and state, see 322; *ethical duty of state to church,* 172.3

261.72 Church and religious freedom [*formerly* *261.73]

.73 Theocracy (Supremacy of church over civil government)

Class religious freedom [*formerly* *261.73] in 261.72

.75 Church and modernism

Attitude of church toward adaptation of religious dogma to conclusions of modern scientific findings

.8 Christianity and socioeconomic problems

.83 Church and social problems

Including attitude of church toward and effect on race relations, family problems

For marriage and family, see 301.42; *religious life of the family,* 249; *ethics of the family,* 173; *pastoral counseling,* 253.5

.85 Church and the economic order

Including attitude of church toward and effect on labor relations, business, capitalism

For Christian socialism, see 335.7

262 Church government and organization

Including government and organization of specific denominations

For local church and parish administration, see 254; *canon law,* 348; *church and ministerial authority,* 262.8; *comprehensive works on a specific denomination or church, the denomination, e.g., Unitarian Church* 288

.1 Governing leaders

.11 Apostolic succession

.12 Episcopacy

Including bishops, archbishops

.13 Papacy

For encyclicals and other papal documents, see 262.82

.131 Papal infallibility

.132 Temporal power of the pope

Including extranationality of pope

.135 Election of the pope

Including college of cardinals

.136 Curia Romana

Congregations, tribunals, offices constituting the central government of Roman Catholic Church

262.14 Clergy

Including priests, ministers, pastors, rectors, elders, vicars, curates

.15 Deacons

Including deaconesses

.16 Orders

Grades and ranks of Christian ministry

For religious congregations and orders, see 271; *sacrament of holy orders,* 265.4; *ordination sermons,* 252.7

.17 Orders in episcopal system of church government

.18 Orders in presbyterian system of church government

.19 Orders in congregational system of church government

.2 Parish

Including denominational regulations for congregations and parishes

For administration within the local parish, see 254

.3 Church systems governed by episcopacy

Including sees, dioceses, cathedral systems

.4 Church systems governed by election

Including synods, presbyteries, congregations

.5 General or ecumenical councils

For period of ecumenical councils in church history, see 270.2; *ecumenical movement,* 280.1

.6 Canons and decrees

.8 Church and ministerial authority

For governing leaders of church, see 262.1; *canon law,* 348

.82 Encyclicals and other papal documents

Including papal bulls, decrees

For papal documents on a specific subject, see the subject, e.g., Catholic missions 266.2; *acts of the Holy See as sources of canon law,* 348.12

.9 Church discipline

Class church law [*formerly* *262.9] in 348

263 Sabbath and Sunday

.1 Biblical Sabbath

.2 Christian observance of seventh day

For Jewish observance of the Sabbath, see 296.41

.3 Christian Sunday

.4 Sunday observance

Including work, amusements, opening libraries and museums [*all formerly* †263.5–†263.7]

[†.5–†.7] Work, amusements, opening libraries and museums

Class in 263.4

.8 Sunday laws

264 Ritual and liturgy of public worship

Code of conduct of divine service and religious ceremonies

Including prayer books

Use 264.001–264.009 for form divisions

Class Sunday school services [*formerly* *264] in 268.7

For liturgical music, see 783.2

.01 Services of primitive and Oriental churches

Divide like 281, e.g., Eastern Orthodox services 264.019

Divide specific churches like 264.03, e.g., liturgy of creed of Greek Orthodox Church 264.019 7

.02 Roman Catholic services

Including Mass, breviaries, missals

Divide like 264.03, e.g., vesper services 264.024

.03 Anglican services

Including Protestant Episcopal services

.031 Calendar, festivals, fasts

.032 Lectionary and rubrics

.033 Morning prayer and litany

.034 Evening prayer and vespers

.035 Sacraments, ordinances, services

Ritual and liturgy only

For comprehensive works on sacraments, see 265

.036 Collects, epistles, gospels

264.037 Ordinal, articles, creeds

.038 Psalter

For Psalms, see 223.2; *hymnology,* 245

.039 History of successive prayer books

.04–.09 Services of other specific denominations

Divide like 284–289, e.g., Methodist Episcopal services 284.076

Divide specific denominations, but not groups of denominations, like 264.03, e.g., Methodist Episcopal Psalter 264.076 8

.1 Public prayer

Including comprehensive works on public and private prayer

For public prayer in specific denominational services, see 264.01–264.09; *private prayer,* 248.3; *family prayer,* 249

.13 Collections of public prayers

.2 Music in public worship

For sacred music, see 783

.3 Scripture readings

.4 Responsive readings

.5 Creeds in public worship

Including confessions of faith

For specific creeds, see 238; *liturgy of creeds in specific denominations,* 264.01–264.09

.6 Sermons, exhortations, instructions

For preaching, see 251; *sermons,* 252

.7 Prayer meetings

.9 Sacramentals

Consecrated objects other than the Eucharist

For sacraments, see 265

265 Sacraments

Comprehensive works

For alternative provision for sacraments, see 234.16; *liturgy and ritual of sacraments in a specific denomination, the subject, e.g., ritual of Episcopal sacraments* 264.035

.1 Baptism

.2 Confirmation

265.3 **Eucharist**

Including Holy Communion, Lord's Supper, transubstantiation

For Last Supper, see 232.957; *viaticum,* 265.7

.4 **Holy orders**

For orders in church government, see 262.16; *ordination sermons,* 252.7

.5 **Matrimony**

.6 **Penance**

.61 Contrition

Including examination of conscience, prayers preparatory to confession

.62 Confession

.63 Satisfaction

Penitential prayers and acts for the remission of sin

.64 Absolution

.65 Censures

Including excommunication, suspension, interdiction, withholding absolution

.66 Indulgences

.7 **Extreme unction**

Including viaticum

.8 **Ministry to the sick and dying**

For pastoral counseling, see 253.5; *extreme unction,* 265.7

.82 **Religious ceremonies for the sick**

For faith healing, see 615.852

.85 **Religious ceremonies for the dead**

For disposal of the dead, see 614.6

.9 **Consecration and dedication**

For consecration and dedication sermons, see 252.7; *sacramentals,* 264.9

266 **Missions**

Including missionary societies

For nondenominational missions and comprehensive works on missions in a specific place, see church history of the place, e.g., missions in China 275.1; *missionary schools,* 377.6

.021 Missionary stories

Accounts of missionary work, usually in narrative form, for children

For stories of missions by a specific church, see 266.1–266.9

.022 Home missions

Comprehensive works

For home missions by a specific church, see 266.1–266.9

.023 Foreign missions

Comprehensive works

For foreign missions by a specific church, see 266.1–266.9

.025 Medical missions

Comprehensive works

For medical missions by a specific church, see 266.1–266.9

.1–.9 **Missions of specific denominations**

Home, foreign, medical missions

Including missionary stories

Divide like 281–289, e.g., Anglican missions 266.3, Congregational missions in China 266.585 1

267 **Christian religious associations**

Organizations with high degree of membership participation

Including societies for parish work [*formerly* †256]

For Bible and tract societies, see 206; *missionary societies,* 266; *religious orders,* 271; *church and parish administration,* 254

.1 **Religious societies of both men and women**

.15 Salvation Army

.18 Denominational societies

Divide like 280, e.g., Baptist Adult Union 267.186

.2 **Religious societies of men**

For Young Men's Christian Associations, see 267.3

.21 17th century and earlier

267.22 18th century

.23 19th century and later

Interdenominational and nondenominational only

.24 19th century and later denominational societies

Divide like 280, e.g., Roman Catholic societies 267.242

.3 Young Men's Christian Associations

For Young Men's Hebrew Associations, see 296.67

.31 Program

Including objectives

.32 Buildings

Including location, plans, furniture

For architecture, see 726.9

.33 Organization

Including financial administration

.34 Staff

Including duties, qualifications, training; general secretary, physical director, assistants

.35 Departments

Including religious, educational, physical, boys' departments

.36 Work among special classes

Including service to travelers, foreign and racial groups, migrants

.39 History and reports

Divide like 940–999, e.g., history of Young Men's Christian Associations in Mexico 267.397 2

.4 Religious societies of women

For Young Women's Christian Associations, see 267.5

.44 Denominational societies

Divide like 280, e.g., Episcopalian women's societies 267.443

.5 Young Women's Christian Associations

Divide like 267.3, e.g., Young Women's Christian Associations' officers 267.54

For Young Women's Hebrew Associations, see 296.67

267.6 Religious societies of young people

.61 Interdenominational and nondenominational societies

.613 Young People's Society of Christian Endeavor

.62 Denominational societies

Divide like 280, e.g., Methodist Young People's Society 267.627

.7 Religious societies of boys

For Young Men's Christian Associations, see 267.3

.8 Religious societies of girls

For Young Women's Christian Associations, see 267.5

268 Religious education

Religious instruction in Sunday schools, church schools, vacation Bible schools

Including parish religious educational work [*formerly* †257]

For religious and Bible instruction in public and nonsectarian private schools, see 377.1

.1 Administration

Including establishment, financial administration, publicity

.2 Buildings and equipment

.3 Personnel

Including superintendents, teachers, committees

.4 Organization

.43 Teaching departments

Including methods and materials for specific age groups [*formerly* *268.61]

For teaching methods, see 268.6

.432 Children's division (Ages 1–12)

Including cradle roll; beginners', primary, junior departments

.433 Young people's division (Ages 13–24)

Including intermediate, senior departments

.434 Adult division

Including men's, women's departments

.435 Home departments

Including shut-ins, invalids

268.5 **Records and rules**

Including attendance, promotion, prizes, decorations, honor rolls

.6 **Materials and methods of instruction**

Including curriculums

.61 Lesson systems

Textbooks for Sunday school use

Including International Sunday school lessons

Class methods and materials for a specific age group [*formerly* *268.61] in subdivisions of 268.43

For methods of using textbooks, see 268.62

.62 Textbook method

.63 Lecture method

.635 Visual instruction

Including slides, motion pictures, charts, maps

.67 Dramatic interpretation of Biblical events

.68 Manual work

Including notebook, geography, illustrative, decorative, museum work

.7 **Sunday school services [*formerly* *264]**

Including order of service, music, rallies, anniversaries, special days and festivals

.8 **Sunday schools of various denominations**

Divide like 280, e.g., Presbyterian Sunday schools 268.85

269 Public spiritual renewal

Including evangelistic work outside the regular work of pastor and his church

Class evangelistic writings [*formerly* *269] in 243

For personal religion, see 248; *personal evangelism,* 253.7; *evangelistic music,* 783.7

.2 **Revivals and camp meetings**

Including history and methods of conducting revivals

.6 **Retreats [*formerly* *242.3]**

For meditations and contemplations, see 242

270 Christian church history

Use 270.01–270.08 for form divisions

Class persecutions of Christians in 272, heresies in 273 [*both formerly* *270.1–*270.8]

For history of specific Christian denominations, sects, or groups, see 280; *collected works of early theological writers,* 281.1–281.4

[.09] History of Christian church in specific countries

Class in 274–279

.1 **Apostolic period to 325**

Jesus Christ to Constantine

.2 **Period of ecumenical councils, 325–787**

Including First, Second Councils of Nice; First, Second, Third Councils of Constantinople; First Council of Ephesus; Council of Chalcedon

.3 **Struggle between papacy and empire, 787–1054**

Class period of Hildebrand [*formerly* *270.3] in 270.4

.38 Great schism, 1054

.4 **Period of Hildebrand, 1054–1200 [*formerly* *270.3]**

Including religious aspects of crusades

For history of crusades, see 940.18

.5 **Late Middle Ages to Renaissance, 1200–1517**

Including Innocent III, papal schism, Avignon, nominalism versus realism, medieval dissent

.6 **Reformation and Counter Reformation, 1517–1648**

For Reformation in specific countries, see 274–279; *Protestantism,* 284

.7 **Peace of Westphalia to French Revolution, 1648–1789**

.8 **Modern church, 1789–**

271 Religious congregations and orders

Including Catholic and Protestant brotherhoods and sisterhoods [*formerly also* †255], monasticism, monastic foundations, monasteries

For architecture of monastic buildings, see 726.7

.069 The religious (monastic) life

.069 2 Vocation for religious life

271.069 8 Monastic rules

Comprehensive works

Including vows of poverty, chastity, obedience

For sacrament of holy orders, see 265.4; *rules of a specific order, the order, e.g., rules of Society of Jesus* 271.5

.069 9 Costume (Habit)

271.1–271.79 Roman Catholic congregations and orders of men

For non-Roman Catholic congregations and orders of men, see 271.8; *congregations and orders of women,* 271.9

.1 Benedictines

Including Celestines, Cluniacs

.12 Cistercians (Bernardines)

.125 Trappists

.13 Olivetans

.2 Dominicans (Friars Preachers, Black Friars)

.3 Franciscans (Gray Friars)

Including Conventuals, Observants, Recollects, Alcantarines

.36 Capuchins

.4 Augustinians

Including Augustinian Recollects

.5 Jesuits (Society of Jesus)

.6 Passionists and Redemptorists [*both formerly* *271.7]

.7 Other Roman Catholic congregations and orders of men

Class Passionists and Redemptorists [*both formerly* *271.7] in 271.6

.71 Carthusians

.73 Carmelites (White Friars)

.75 Sulpicians

.76 Oblates

.77 Lazarists

271.78 Christian Brothers (Brothers of the Christian Schools)

.79 Congregations and orders not otherwise provided for

Arrange alphabetically by order

.8 Non-Roman Catholic congregations and orders of men

For Roman Catholic congregations and orders of men, see 271.1–271.7; *non-Roman Catholic congregations and orders of women,* 271.98

.9 Congregations and orders of women

Including sisterhoods, convents, nunneries

271.91–271.979 Roman Catholic congregations and orders of women

.91 Sisters of Charity

Including Sisters of Charity of Saint Vincent de Paul

.92 Sisters of Mercy

.93 Sacred Heart orders

.94 Sisters of Bon Secours

.95 Little Sisters of the Poor

.96 Contemplative and cloistered nuns

For a specific contemplative or cloistered order, see the order, e.g., Carmelites 271.971

.97 Other Roman Catholic congregations and orders of women

.971 Carmelites (Order of Saint Theresa)

.972 Dominicans

.973 Franciscans (Poor Clares)

.974 Ursulines

.975 Visitation orders

.976 Saint Joseph orders

.977 Presentation orders

.979 Congregations and orders not otherwise provided for

Arrange alphabetically by order

271.98 Non-Roman Catholic congregations and orders of women

Including Protestant orders, deaconesses [*both formerly* †271.99]

For Roman Catholic congregations and orders of women, see 271.91–271.979

[†.99] Other Protestant orders, deaconesses

Class in 271.98

272 Persecutions [*formerly* *270.1–*270.8, *274–*279]

For comprehensive works on specific sects, see 280

.1 **Persecutions of Apostolic Church by imperial Rome, 1st–4th century**

.2 **Persecutions by Inquisition**

.3 **Persecutions of Waldenses and Albigenses, 11th–12th century**

For Waldenses and Albigenses as Protestant sects, see 284.4

.4 **Persecutions of Huguenots**

For Huguenots as Protestant sect, see 284.5

.5 **Persecutions of Molinists and Quietists**

For Molinist heresies, see 273.7

.6 **Persecutions of Anglican reformers by Mary I**

.7 **Persecutions by Elizabeth I**

Including persecutions of Roman Church by Anglicans

.8 **Persecutions of Quakers, Baptists, witches**

Including persecutions by Puritans

.9 **Other persecutions**

273 Heresies [*formerly* *270.1–*270.8, *274–*279]

For history of specific doctrines, see 230

.1 **Gnostic heresies**

For Gnostic philosophy, see 189.1

.2 **Third century heresies**

Including mystic heresy

For medieval mysticism, see 189.5; *asceticism,* 248; *comprehensive works on mysticism,* 149.3

.23 Manicheism

.25 Parsee dualism

273.3 **Sabellian heresy**

.4 **Arian heresy**

.5 **Pelagian heresy**

.6 **Antinomian heresy**

.7 **Molinist, Jansenist, Pietist heresies**

For Jansenists as Protestant sect, see 284.84

.8 **Agnostic heresy**

For agnostic philosophy, see 149.72; *agnosticism in natural theology,* 211.7; *Christian apologetics against agnostics,* 239.7

.9 **Minor heresies**

274–279 Christian church history in specific countries

Divide like 940–999, e.g., church history of Minnesota 277.76

Class persecutions in 272, heresies in 273 [*both formerly* *274–*279]

For history of specific denominations of churches, see 280

274 **History of Christian church in Europe**

275 **History of Christian church in Asia**

276 **History of Christian church in Africa**

277 **History of Christian church in North America**

278 **History of Christian church in South America**

279 **History of Christian church in Pacific and Atlantic islands, in Polar Regions**

280 Christian churches and sects

Comprehensive works on history, doctrine, homiletics, institutions, missions, services

Including church unity

For doctrines, sermons, institutions, missions, services of a specific church or sect, see the subject, e.g., doctrines of Baptist churches 230.6

.1 **Ecumenical movement**

Harmonious relations between Christian churches and denominations

For organization of ecumenical councils, see 262.5; *history of early ecumenical councils,* 270.2

281 Primitive and Oriental churches

For early religious history, see 270.1–270.3

.1 Apostolic Church to time of great schism, 1054

Including works of apostolic and church fathers

Class Primitive Apostolic Church [*formerly* *281.1] in 281.2

For persecutions of Apostolic Church, see 272.1

.2 Primitive Apostolic Church to end of 1st century [*formerly* *281.1]

.3 Ante-Nicene church, 100–325

.4 Post-Nicene church, 325–1054

.5 Oriental churches

For Eastern Orthodox churches, see 281.9

.6 Monophysite churches

Including Eutychian

.62 Armenian

.63 Jacobite

.7 Coptic and Abyssinian Churches

.8 Nestorian Church

.9 Eastern Orthodox churches

Including Holy Orthodox Church

Divide like 940–999, e.g., Greek Orthodox Church in New York City 281.974 71

For history of great schism, see 270.38

282 Roman Catholic Church

Divide like 940–999, e.g., Roman Catholic Church in Germany 282.43

For persecutions of Roman Church by Anglicans, see 272.7

283 Anglican churches

Including Church of England, Protestant Episcopal Church

Divide like 940–999, e.g., Protestant Episcopal Church in United States 283.73

For persecutions of Anglican reformers, see 272.6

284 Protestantism

Including comprehensive works on Protestant sects

For Reformation and subsequent movements, see 270.6–270.8; *specific Protestant churches,* 283–289

.094–.099 Protestantism in specific countries

Divide like 940–999, e.g., history of Protestantism in United States 284.097 3

.1 Lutheran churches

Divide like 940–999, e.g., Lutheran Church in Missouri 284.177 8

For Scandinavian Lutheran churches, see 284.7

.2 Calvinistic churches

Comprehensive works

Including Reformed churches in Europe

Divide like 940–999, e.g., Calvinism in Scotland 284.241

Class Arminians and Remonstrants [*both formerly* *284.2] in 284.9

For Huguenots, see 284.5; *Presbyterian churches,* 285; *Calvinistic Baptists,* 286.1; *Reformed churches in America,* 285.7

.3 Hussites

Including Anabaptists

For Moravians, see 284.6

.4 Albigenses and Waldenses

For persecutions of Albigenses and Waldenses, see 272.3

.5 Huguenots

For persecutions of Huguenots, see 272.4

.6 Moravians

Divide like 940–999, e.g., Moravian Church in Germany 284.643

For Hussites, see 284.3

.7 Scandinavian Lutheran churches

Including churches derived from Scandinavian Lutheran churches

Divide like 940–999, e.g., Scandinavian Lutheran Church in Iowa 284.777 7

For other Lutheran churches, see 284.1

284.8 **Modern schisms in Catholic Church**

Including Old Catholic, Gallican schismatics, Constitutional Church, Little Church of France

.84 Jansenists

For Jansenist heresy, see 273.7

.9 **Arminianism and Remonstrants [*both formerly* *284.2]**

285 Presbyterian churches

.1 **Presbyterian Church in the United States of America**

The denomination of this name, wherever located

Including Presbyterian Church in the United States; United Presbyterian Church in the United States of America (formed 1958 by merger of Presbyterian Church in the United States of America and United Presbyterian Church of North America)

Divide like 940–999, e.g., Presbyterian Church in the United States of America in California 285.179 4

.2 **Presbyterian churches in British Commonwealth**

Divide like 940–999, e.g., Presbyterian Church in Canada 285.271

.3 **Cumberland Presbyterian Church**

Divide like 940–999, e.g., Cumberland Presbyterian Church in Kentucky 285.376 9

.4 **United Presbyterian Church**

Divide like 940–999, e.g., United Presbyterian Church in Pennsylvania 285.474 8

.5 **Reformed Presbyterian Church in North America**

Divide like 940–999, e.g., Reformed Presbyterian Church in Pennsylvania 285.574 8

.6 **Other Presbyterian sects**

.7 **Reformed churches in America**

Including Christian Reformed Church, Reformed Church in America, Evangelical and Reformed Church (merged 1957 into United Church of Christ)

Divide like 940–999, e.g., Reformed churches in Ohio 285.777 1

For United Church of Christ, see 285.8; *Reformed churches in Europe,* 284.2

285.8 **United Church of Christ**

Formed by union, 1931, of the Congregational Church and the Christian Church as Congregational Christian Churches; joined 1957 by Evangelical and Reformed Church to become United Church of Christ

Including Congregational Church, Congregational Christian Churches

Divide like 940–999, e.g., Congregational Church in Michigan 285.877 4

For Christian Church, see 286.6; *Evangelical and Reformed Church,* 285.7

.9 **Puritanism**

For Congregational Church, see 285.8

286 Baptist churches

Including other immersionist sects

For persecutions of Baptists, see 272.8

.1 **Calvinistic Baptists**

Including American Baptist Convention, Southern Baptist Convention

Divide like 940–999, e.g., Baptists in England 286.142

.2 **Freewill Baptists**

.3 **Seventh-Day Baptists**

For Seventh-Day Adventists, see 286.7

.4 **Old School Baptists**

Including Primitive, Antimission, Hard Shell Baptists

.5 **Other Baptist sects**

Including Dunkers, Church of the Brethren [*both formerly* *289.92]

.6 **Disciples of Christ (Campbellite or Christian)**

Including Christian Church (merged, 1931, with Congregational Church to form Congregational Christian Churches)

Divide like 940–999, e.g., Disciples of Christ in Indiana 296.677 2

For Congregational Christian Churches, see 285.8

.7 **Adventists**

Including Seventh-Day Adventists, Church of God (Adventist)

Divide like 940–999, e.g., Adventists in Washington, D.C. 286.775 3

For Seventh-Day Baptists, see 286.3

287 Methodist churches

.1 Wesleyan Methodist Church

Divide like 940–999, e.g., Wesleyan Methodist Church in Illinois 287.177 3

.4 Primitive Methodist Church

Divide like 940–999, e.g., Primitive Methodist Church in England 287.442

.6 The Methodist Church

Methodist Church in America

Including Methodist Episcopal Church, Methodist Episcopal Church South, Methodist Protestant Church (since 1939)

Divide like 940–999, e.g., Methodist Episcopal Church in Massachusetts 287.674 4

For Methodist Protestant Church, 1830–1939, see 287.7

.7 Methodist Protestant Church, 1830–1939

Merged 1939 with Methodist Episcopal Church and Methodist Episcopal Church South to form The Methodist Church

For The Methodist Church, see 287.6

.8 African Methodist churches

Including African Methodist Episcopal Church, Colored Methodist Episcopal Church, African Methodist Episcopal Zion Church

Divide like 940–999, e.g., African Methodist Episcopal Church in New York City 287.874 71

.9 United Church of Canada

Formed 1925 by union of Methodist Church (Canada), Union of Congregational Churches of Canada, and most of Presbyterian Church in Canada

For Congregational Church in Canada, see 285.871; *Presbyterian Church,* 285.271

.97 Other Methodist sects

Including Free Methodist Church of North America, Congregational Methodist Church

288 Unitarian Church

Including Socinianism, Anti-Trinitarianism

Divide like 940–999, e.g., Unitarian Church in United States 288.73

289 Other Christian sects

.1 Universalist Church

Divide like 940–999, e.g., Universalist Church in Connecticut 289.174 6

.2 [Unassigned]

This number will remain permanently unassigned. Libraries specializing in literature of a particular sect not otherwise provided for may use this number

.3 Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-Day Saints (Mormons)

Divide like 940–999, e.g., Latter-Day Saints Church in Illinois 289.377 3

.4 Church of the New Jerusalem (Swedenborgianism)

Divide like 940–999, e.g., Church of the New Jerusalem in England 289.442

.5 Church of Christ, Scientist

Divide like 940–999, e.g., Christian Science churches in Oregon 389.579 5

.6 Society of Friends (Quakers)

Including Hicksites

Divide like 940–999, e.g., Society of Friends in New Jersey 289.674 9

For persecutions of Quakers, see 272.8

.7 Mennonites

Including Amish, Church of God in Christ

Divide like 940–999, e.g., Conservative Amish Mennonite Church in Pennsylvania 289.774 8

.8 Shakers

United Society of True Believers in Christ's Second Appearing

.9 Sects not otherwise provided for

Including New Thought [*formerly* †131.324, *131.32]

Arrange alphabetically by denomination or sect

[*.92] Church of the Brethren, Dunkers

Class in 286.5

290 Other religions

Including comprehensive works on non-Christian religions and comparative mythology, on comparative religion giving an equal or minor emphasis to Christianity

For Christian religion, see 200–209, 220–289; *natural theology,* 210

[.13] Classification of religions

Class in 291.14

291 Comparative religion and mythology

For topics limited to a specific religion, see the religion, e.g., sacred places in Greek mythology 292.35; *folklore,* 398

SUMMARY

291.1	**Relationships and attitudes of religions**
.2	**Religious doctrines and dogmas**
.3	**Forms of worship**
.4	**Religious life, asceticism, devotion**
.5	**Morals, ideals, duties**
.6	**Religious organization and leaders**
.7	**Activities inspired by religious motives**
.8	**Sources of religion**
.9	**Sects**

.1 Relationships and attitudes of religions

.12 Religious emotions

Including awe, veneration, submission, confidence, love

For psychology of emotions, see 157

.13 Comparative mythology

Including the myth; its constituent elements, growth, changes in form

.14 Classification of religions

Including monotheistic, polytheistic, mystic

.17 Religions in relation to science, art, morals

For antagonism, reconciliation of religion and science, see 215; *authoritarian ethical theories,* 171.1

.18 Superstition in relation to religions

For superstition in folklore, see 398.3; *occult sciences,* 133

.2 Religious doctrines and dogmas

Including doctrinal theology

For non-Christian religious law, see 348.9

291.21 Objects of worship and veneration

.211 Divinities

Gods, goddesses, other deities and their functions

Including animism, spiritism, fetishism, totemism, polydemonism

.212 Nature

Worship of sun, water, fire, trees, other natural phenomena

Including nature myths, phallicism

.213 Human beings

Including ancestor worship, worship of the dead, monarch worship

.214 Pure spirit

Including personified abstractions

.215 Angels and good spirits

Servants and messengers of divinity

.216 Demons and evil spirits

Including comprehensive works on demonology

For demonology in occult sciences, see 133.4

.217 Strife among gods, and between gods and men

.218 Idols

Worship of images of divinities

.22 Doctrines on man and his soul

Including doctrines on sin, salvation, conscience, repentance, atonement

.23 Eschatology

Including doctrines on death, resurrection, immortality, other worlds, heaven, purgatory, rewards, punishments, reincarnation

.3 Forms of worship

Including religious practices, liturgy, prayer

.32 Divination

Including omens, oracles, prophecies

For divination in occult sciences, see 133.3

.33 Evocation of spirits

Including witchcraft

For witchcraft in occult sciences, see 133.4

291.34 Offerings, sacrifices, penances

.35 Sacred places

Including holy buildings, altars, temples, shrines, pagodas, grottoes

.36 Sacred times

Including liturgic year, religious calendar, religious festivals

.37 Religious symbolism

Including emblems

.38 Religious rites and ceremonies

Including public fasts, pilgrimages, processions

.4 Religious life, asceticism, devotion

.5 Morals, ideals, duties

For ethics, see 170

.6 Religious organization and leaders

For biographies of religious leaders, see 922.9

.61 Representatives of divinity

Priests, saviors, deliverers, messiahs

Including ministers of worship

For prophets, see 291.63; *sacred writers,* 291.64

.62 Men endowed with supernatural power

Including thaumaturgists, sorcerers, magicians, exorcists, charlatans

For occult sciences, see 133

.63 Divinely inspired men

Including prophets

.64 Interpreters of divinity

Including sacred writers, founders of religions, religious reformers

.65 Organization and institutions

Including associations, orders, parties, congregations

.7 Activities inspired by religious motives

Including religious wars, home and foreign missions, religious education, fanaticism

.8 Sources of religion

.82 Sacred books

291.83 Oral traditions

.84 Ecclesiastic decisions

For church law, see 348

.9 Sects

Including reform movements

292 Greek and Roman religion and mythology

Divide 292.2–292.9 like 291.2–291.9, e.g., idolatry in classical worship 292.218

293 Teutonic and Norse religion and mythology

Divide 293.2–293.9 like 291.2–291.9, e.g., Ragnarok 293.23

294 Brahmanism and religions deriving from it

For other Indic religions, see 299.11; *Sanskrit literature,* 891.2; *ethics of caste,* 177.5

.1 Vedic religion

Including the Vedas

.2 Pre-Buddhist Brahmanism

.3 Buddhism

Including Christian apologetics against Buddhism [*formerly* *239.9]

Divide 294.300 2–294.300 8 like 291.2–291.8, e.g., austerity in Buddhism 294.300 4

.31 Theravada (Southern) Buddhism

Hinayana Buddhism

Followed by Southeast Asians, e.g., of Burma, Vietnam, Thailand, Ceylon

Divide 294.312–294.318 like 291.2–291.8, e.g., holy city of Pagan 294.313 5

.32 Mahayana (Northern) Buddhism

Followed in China, Japan, Korea, Mongolia, Tibet

Including Lamaism

Divide 294.322–294.329 like 291.2–291.9, e.g., Zen Buddhism 294.329

.4 Jainism

Divide 294.42–294.49 like 291.2–291.9, e.g., World Jain Mission 294.47

294.5 Hinduism

Divide 294.52–294.54, 294.56–294.57 like 291.2–291.4, 291.6–291.7, e.g., Yoga 294.54

For Yoga philosophy, see 181.45

.55 Sects and reforms of Hinduism

.551 Sivaism

Including Shakti, Shaktas of the Left Hand

.552 Brahmoism

Including Brahmo-Somaj and Arya Somaj

.553 Sikhism

.554 Vishnuism

.555 Ramakrishna movement

Known outside India as Vedanta Society

[*.58] Theosophy

Class in 212.5

.59 Sources of Hinduism

Divide like 291.8, e.g., sacred books 294.592

For the Vedas, see 294.1

.598 Morals, ideals, duties

295 Zoroastrianism and related religions

Including Mazdaism, Mithraism, Parseeism

Divide 295.2–295.9 like 291.2–291.9, e.g., Zoroaster 295.64

For other Iranic religions, see 299.15

296 Judaism

Religion of the Jews

For history and archeology based on Bible, see 221.9; *Jewish minority groups,* 301.452; *history of Jews in a specific country other than Palestine (Israel),* 325.256 93; *ancient Judea,* 933; *Zionism, history of modern Palestine and Israel,* 956.94; *comprehensive works on history of Jews since their dispersion,* 956.93

SUMMARY

296.1	**Sources of Judaism**
.3	**Judaic doctrinal theology**
.4	**Public services, rites, traditions**
.6	**Religious institutions and activities**
.7	**Devotional theology**
.8	**Sects and movements**

.1 Sources of Judaism

Including religious texts, rabbinical writings

For Hebrew versions of the Bible, see 221.44; *Holy Scriptures,* 221–224

.12 Talmud

Including Mishnah, Gemara

.14 Midrash

Including Halakah, Haggada

.16 Cabala [*formerly* †*181.3]

Including Zohar

.3 Judaic doctrinal theology

.31 Doctrines on God

.32 Doctrines on man and his soul

Including doctrines on sin, salvation, conscience, repentance, atonement

.33 Eschatology

Including doctrines on death, resurrection, immortality

.38 Moral and social theology

Codes of conduct concerning religious and secular matters

Class Jewish law [*formerly* *296.38] in 348.96

296.4 **Public services, rites, traditions**

Including liturgy, hymns, prayers, responsive readings, symbolism, ceremonies; comprehensive works on worship and prayer

For dietary laws, see 296.73; *private prayer and family worship,* 296.7

.41 The Sabbath

.42 Sermons

Including homiletics

.43 Festivals and holy days

Including fasts

Class prayers for other specific occasions in 296.44, prayers at daily devotions in 296.72, private prayer in 296.7 [*all formerly* *296.43]

For the Sabbath, see 296.41; *Jewish calendar,* 529.326

.431 Rosh Hashanah (New Year)

.432 Yom Kippur (Day of Atonement)

.433 Sukkoth (Feast of Tabernacles)

.435 Hanukkah (Feast of the Dedication)

.436 Purim (Feast of Lots)

.437 Pesach (Passover)

Including Seder service

.438 Shabuoth (Feast of Weeks, Pentecost)

For confirmation, see 296.443

.439 Minor festivals and fasts

Including Tishah b'Ab, Lag b'Omer

.44 Rites and customs for specific occasions

Including prayers for specific occasions [*formerly* *296.43]

.442 Special rites for male Jew

.442 2 Berith milah (Circumcision)

.442 3 Pidyon haben (Redemption of first-born male)

.442 4 Bar mitzvah

.443 Confirmation

For Shabuoth, see 296.438

296.444 Marriage and divorce rites and traditions

Including huppah (canopy), ketubah (marriage contract), get (bill of divorcement)

.445 Burial and mourning rites

Including taharah (ritual bathing of corpse), tachrichin (shroud), hesped (eulogy), shivah (seven days of mourning), Kaddish (special prayer for dead), matzevah (memorial stone)

.6 **Religious institutions and activities**

Including polity, individual societies

.61 Rabbi

Including rabbi's life, duties of his office

.65 Synagogue

Including administration of synagogue activities

For public services, rites, traditions, see 296.4

.67 Jewish organizations

Including Young Men's Hebrew Associations, Young Women's Hebrew Associations

.68 Jewish religious education

Including Sunday schools, afternoon weekday schools, religious education in Jewish parochial schools

.7 **Devotional theology**

Including private prayer [*formerly* *296.43], family worship

For moral theology, see 296.38; *public services, rites, traditions,* 296.4

.72 Daily devotions

Including morning, afternoon, evening prayers [*all formerly* *296.43]; blessings at meals

.73 Observance of dietary laws

Including laws of kashrut

For Jewish cookery, see 641.567

296.8 **Sects and movements**

.81 Ancient sects and movements

Including Karaites, Pharisees, Sadducees, Essenes, Samaritans, Hellenistic movement

.82 Medieval sects and movements

.83 Modern sects and movements

.832 Orthodox Judaism

.833 Mystical Judaism

Including modern Hasidism

.834 Reform movements

Including Conservative Judaism, Reform Judaism

297 Islam

Including Christian apologetics against Islam [*formerly* *239.9]

Divide 297.2–297.7 like 291.2–291.7, e.g., propagation of the faith 297.7

.1 **Sources**

Divide like 291.8, e.g., Koran 297.12

.8 **Sects**

Including Sunnites, Shiites, Twelvers, Seveners, Ismailis, Ahmadiya

.89 **Bahai faith**

Including Babism

298

299 Religions not otherwise provided for

Divide like 490, e.g., Druidism 299.16

.51 Religions of Chinese origin

.512 Confucianism

Divide 299.512 2–299.512 9 like 291.2–291.9, e.g., ethics in Confucianism 299.512 5

.514 Taoism

Divide 299.514 2–299.514 9 like 291.2–291.9, e.g., Taoist forms of worship 299.514 3

Social Sciences

300 Social sciences

Comprehensive works on the sciences which deal with human life in relation to society

For history, see 900; *geography,* 910; *psychology,* 130, 150; *anthropology,* 572–573; *public health,* 614

.1 **Philosophy and theory of the social sciences [*formerly* †301]**

For other form divisions, see 302–309

301 Sociology

Study of human relations and the processes of group life

Use 301.01–301.09 for form divisions

Class philosophy and theory of the social sciences [*formerly* †301] in 300.1

For form divisions of the social sciences, see 300.1, 302–309; *customs,* 390; *anthropology,* 572–573; *social planning,* 309.2; *political science,* 320; *economics,* 330; *social welfare,* 360

[*.12] **Socialization and personality**

Class in 301.15

.15 **Social psychology**

Mental and emotional behavior of individuals as members of groups

Including socialization and personality [*formerly* *301.12]

For environmental psychology, see 136.2

.151 Collective behavior

Behavior of groups arising from unity of attitudes, feelings, motivations

Including comprehensive works on organized and unorganized collective behavior

For a specific form of organized behavior, see the subject, e.g., marriage customs 392.5; *unorganized forms of collective behavior,* 301.158; *social organization and institutions,* 301.4

301.152 Social control

Means or processes by which society secures conformity from its individuals or groups

Including coercive control, persuasive control, group dynamics, social conventions, mores, usages; comprehensive works on informal and formal methods of societal control

Class public opinion [*formerly* *301.152] in 301.154

For a specific formal control, see the subject, e.g., regulation of transportation 385; *controls within a specific group, the group, e.g., controls in labor groups* 331.88–331.89; *folkways and popular beliefs,* 390; *freedom of speech,* 323.443; *law,* 340

.152 2 Group morale

Including group loyalty

For political loyalty, patriotism, see 320.158

.152 3 Propaganda

Including indoctrination, publicity, insignia, satire used to enforce conformity; rumor and popular delusions [*formerly* *301.158]

For psychological warfare, see 355.343

.153 Social movements

Concerted action to bring about desired change in social order and in existing institutions

Including general social movements, e.g., labor movement, youth movement; specific social movements, e.g., reform movements, revolutionary movements; expressive movements, e.g., fashion movements; social engineering

For a specific reform movement, see the subject, e.g., emancipation movement 326

[†.153 2–†.153 4] Conflict, compromise, assimilation

Class in 301.23

[†.153 5] Social progress, group socialization

Class in 301.245

[†.153 6] Disintegration, maladjustment, reversion, decadence

Class in 301.246

301.154 Public opinion [*formerly* *301.152]

Including public opinion polls; comprehensive works on public opinion and propaganda

For publicity and public relations in business, see 659.111; *market research and analysis,* 658.83; *propaganda,* 301.152 3

.155 Leadership

Including traditional, bureaucratic, charismatic types of leadership; relationships between leaders and followers; personality and prestige of leaders; authority, power

For leadership in a specific field, see the field, e.g., church leadership 250; *gangs,* 301.158; *social groups,* 301.4

.158 Elementary collective groupings and their behavior

Including organization and behavior of the public, crowds, mobs, cliques; rioting, panic behavior; gangs [*formerly also* †136.77]

Class rumor and popular delusions [*formerly* *301.158] in 301.152 3

For gangs of criminals and delinquents, see 364.363, 364.364, 364.374; *revolutions and riots,* 323.2; *financial panics,* 338.54; *family as an institution,* 301.42; *social groups and institutions,* 301.4

.158 3 Public meetings and committee work

Including assemblies, audiences, associations; their organization and function

For social club meetings, see 367; *parliamentary law,* 328.1; *a specific kind of meeting, committee, or association, the group, e.g., congressional legislative committee work* 328.36, *art associations* 706

[†.158 4] Youth groups

Class in 301.431

.2 Culture

Totality of man's habits, traditions, techniques, values, beliefs, and all other activities developt in human association

Including cultural traits, culture patterns, social heritage; comprehensive works on material and nonmaterial culture

For history of civilization and culture, see 901.9; *cultural anthropology,* 572; *ethnopsychology,* 136.48; *national characteristics and culture of a country, the country, e.g., French culture* 914.4; *customs and folklore,* 390

301.23 Cultural processes

The continuous transition of social phenomena from one condition to another

Including conflict, interference, opposition, compromise, accommodation, assimilation [*all formerly* †301.153 2–†301.153 4]; contact, competition, cooperation, differentiation, acculturation

.24 Social change

Processes by which social structure is modified either constructively or destructively

For social planning, see 309.2

.243 Means of social change

Including effects of invention, discovery, technology, mass communication on culture; comprehensive works on automation

For a specific use of automation, see the subject, e.g., in production 658.561; *automatic control engineering,* 629.8

.245 Social progress [*formerly* †301.153 5]

Including group socialization, cyclic change

For individual socialization, see 301.15

.246 Disintegration [*formerly* †301.153 6, *formerly also* *301.46]

Including maladjustment, reversion, decadence, degeneration, social pathology

For a specific kind of social disintegration, see the subject, e.g., juvenile delinquency 364.36

.3 Human ecology

Detailed analysis of the process and organization of relations involved in adjustment to environment

Including ecological processes of concentration, centralization, specialization, invasion, succession, decentralization

For demography, see 312; *anthropogeography,* 572.9; *migration,* 325; *social psychology,* 301.15

301.32 Population

Scientific study of the total people

Including Malthusian theory [*formerly* †312.1]; population policies, density, growth, decline, movement; comprehensive works on analyses and studies of populations representing quality and content, on statistics and description of population

Class eugenics in 613.94, sterilization in 613.942 [*both formerly* *301.323]

For vital statistics and census tables, see 312; *birth control,* 613.943; *genetics,* 575.1

.329 Population by country

Divide like 930–999, e.g., population studies of France 301.329 44

.34 Community organization

Including areal distribution, location and expansion of settlements, patterns of growth

For social planning, see 309.2; *city and town planning,* 711.4

.35 Rural sociology

Groups and institutions in rural environment

Including comprehensive works on rural society

For rural life, see 630.1; *relations of rural communities to the state,* 323.354; *local government,* 352; *farm management,* 631

.36 Urban sociology

Groups and institutions in urban environment

Including metropolitan areas [*formerly* *301.37], urbanized areas, urban-rural areas, megalopolis; city growth; comprehensive works on the sociology of cities

For the planned community, see 309.26; *zoning,* 711.5; *relations of urban communities to the state,* 323.352; *municipal government,* 352

.362 Suburban sociology

Groups and institutions in suburban environment

Including satellite communities; comprehensive works on the sociology of suburban areas

For relations of suburban communities to the state, see 323.353

301.37 Sociology of regions or areas

Including geographical, political, economic, ecological areas; underdevelopt areas

Class metropolitan areas [*formerly* *301.37] in 301.36

For regional planning, see 309.24; *a specific activity on a regional basis, the subject, e.g., slum clearance* 711.59

.4 Social organization and institutions

Including comprehensive works on sociology of political, economic, religious institutions

For anthropology, see 572; *educational sociology,* 370.193; *political institutions,* 320; *governmental institutions,* 350; *economic institutions,* 330; *religious institutions,* 250–290

.42 Family [*formerly* †392]

Structure and functions

Including comprehensive works on marriage and family relationships

For family ethics, see 173; *family customs,* 392.3; *matriarchy and patriarchy,* 321.1

.422 Forms of marriage

Including monogamy, polygamy; marriage taboos and prohibitions; civil marriage, mixt marriage, miscegenation

For marriage customs, see 392.5

.423 Family and social change

Including changes in family status, man's and woman's role in family; effects upon family of urbanization, mobility, technology, war

.423 3 Industrialization and the family

Including effects of factory system, of employment of women outside the home; career women

For woman in the home, see 396.6; *careers for women,* 396.5; *employment of women,* 331.4

.424 The sexes in society

Including celibacy, deviations in sex life, e.g., premarital relations, adultery, homosexuality

For sexual ethics, see 176; *woman,* 396; *sex customs,* 392.6; *psychological aspects of sexual perversions,* 132.75

.424 3 Prostitution

Including regulation, associated social problems

For white slave traffic, see 364.153; *venereal disease control,* 614.547; *ethical aspects of prostitution,* 176.5

301.425 Courtship

Including selection of mate, falling in love, engagements

For courting customs, see 392.4; *ethics of courtship,* 177.6; *eugenics,* 613.94

.426 Husband-wife relationship

Including preparation for marriage, elements of successful marriage, marriage and family counseling, planned parenthood

For birth control, see 613.943; *family customs,* 392.3; *premarital examination,* 614.17

.427 Parent-child relationship

Including social factors in development of the child; parenthood and parental responsibilities, responsibilities of child to parents

For child care in the home, see 649.1; *child psychology,* 136.7; *child welfare,* 362.7; *social gerontology,* 301.435

.428 Family disorganization and dissolution

Including family crises and adjustments, e.g., bereavement; separation, divorce, remarriage

For family counseling, see 301.426; *family welfare services,* 362.8

.43 Special groups

Including pressure groups

For lobbying, see 328.368; *trade unions,* 331.88; *associations and institutions in a specific field, the subject, e.g., art associations* 706; *patriotic societies,* 369.1–369.2; *fraternal orders,* 366; *elementary groupings,* 301.158

.431 Adolescent and youth groups [*formerly* †301.158 4]

For young people's societies, see 369.4; *religious societies,* 267; *psychology of adolescence,* 136.735 4; *aid to children and youth,* 362.7; *youth movement,* 301.153

.435 Old age groups

Including social gerontology, social aspects of retirement; comprehensive works on gerontology

For geriatrics, see 618.97; *aid to aged,* 362.6; *old age social insurance,* 368.43; *physical gerontology,* 612.67; *age and employment,* 331.113

301.44 Social stratification and social status

Including class and caste systems, socioeconomic groups, class structure

For state and social classes, see 323.3; *migration and colonization,* 325; *class hatreds as factor in crime,* 364.256

301.441–301.446 Criteria of class distinction

.441 Classes determined by wealth, property, income

.442 Classes determined by family or kinship

.443 Classes determined by location and duration of residence

.444 Classes determined by occupation

.445 Classes determined by education

.446 Classes determined by religion

.45 Social problems of ethnic groups and minorities

Including nomads [*formerly* †*397]; prejudice, social discrimination, segregation

For anthropology, see 572–573; *political problems of minorities,* 323.1; *immigrants and emigrants,* 325; *discrimination in a specific situation, the subject, e.g., racial segregation in schools* 371.97; *racial conflicts as factor in crime,* 364.256

.451 Racial groups

Including Negroes, Indians in United States

.452 Socio-religious groups

Groups which are distinct from the majority because of social practices or religious beliefs

[*.46] Social disorganization

Class in 301.246

302–309 Form divisions of the social sciences

For philosophy and theory of the social sciences, see 300.1; *form divisions of sociology,* 301.01–301.09

302 Handbooks and outlines of the social sciences

303 Dictionaries and encyclopedias of the social sciences

304 Essays and lectures on the social sciences

305 Periodicals of the social sciences

306 Organizations and societies of the social sciences

307 Study and teaching of the social sciences

308 Collections on the social sciences

309 History of the social sciences

309.1 Social surveys

Divide like 940–999, e.g., social surveys of Detroit 309.177 434

For social history, see 940–999; *social science research,* 307.2

.2 Social planning

Effort to direct social change thru a coordinated program of control

Including comprehensive works on social and economic planning

For planning in a specific field, see the subject, e.g., economic planning 338.9; *social security,* 368.4; *conservation of national resources,* 339.49; *planning of physical facilities,* 711

.22 International planning and coordination

Including comprehensive works on technical assistance

Class international planning of physical facilities [*formerly* *309.22] in 711.2

For technical assistance in a specific field, see the subject, e.g., in bridge building 624.2; *international economic assistance,* 338.91; *international cooperation,* 341; *international relations,* 327

.23 National planning

Class national planning of physical facilities [*formerly* *309.23] in 711.2

.24 Regional planning

Class regional planning of physical facilities [*formerly* *309.24] in 711.3

.25 State planning

Including county planning

Class state planning of physical facilities [*formerly* *309.25] in 711.3

.26 City planning

Including urban and town planning, the planned community

For city maps, see 912

310 Statistics

For statistics of a specific subject other than population, see the subject, e.g., railroad transportation statistics 385.1

.6 Organizations and societies

Class government organizations [*formerly* *310.61] in 311.3; private statistical bureaus [*formerly* *310.62] in 311.4

311 The statistical method (Statistical theory)

Science of analysis and presentation of quantitative or qualitative data secured thru enumeration or experiment

For statistical mathematics, see 519.9

.2 Preparation of statistics

Including methods, techniques, procedures

Class statistical mathematics [*formerly* *311.2] in 519.9

.21 Statistical sampling

Including reliability and validity of samples

For mathematical aspects of sampling and quality control, see 519.93

.212 Random sampling

.214 Quality control

Including relative sampling

For quality control in production, see 658.562

.22 Collection of data

Including preparation of questionnaires, field work, enumeration

.23 Statistical analysis

Including determination and interpretation of statistical constants

.24 Tabulation of data

Including arrangement, layout, construction of tables and series

For graphic presentation of data, see 311.26

.25 Statistical coefficients and ratios

Including index numbers [*formerly* †311.26], skewness, correlation

.26 Graphic presentation of statistical data

Including preparation of statistical charts, graphs, nomograms

Class index numbers [*formerly* †311.26] in 311.25

For tabulation of data, see 311.24

311.3 Government statistical organizations [*formerly* *310.61]

Including international organizations

.39 By country

Divide like 930–999, e.g., United States Bureau of the Census 311.397 3

.4 Private statistical bureaus [*formerly* *310.62]

312 Demography

Statistical study of populations

Including vital statistics [*formerly also* †614.1], censuses

For registration and certification of births, deaths, morbidity, see 614.1; *mortality and survival tables,* 368.3

.1 Birth statistics

Divide like 930–999, e.g., birth rate in Australia 312.194

Class Malthusian theory [*formerly* †312.1] in 301.32

.2 Death statistics

.209 Death statistics in specific countries

Divide like 930–999, e.g., death rate in England 312.209 42

.22 Statistics on maternal deaths in childbirth

.23 Infant mortality statistics

Divide like 930–999, e.g., infant mortality rate in France 312.234 4

.24 Statistics on stillbirths

.26 Statistics on causes of death by disease

Divide like 616, e.g., pulmonary tuberculosis death rate 312.262 46

.27 Statistics on accidental deaths

Including deaths by accidental electrocution, drowning, burns, falls, poisoning

.272 Deaths by home accidents

.273 Deaths by industrial accidents

.274 Deaths by traffic accidents

Including statistics on deaths in automobile, airplane, train, streetcar accidents

.275 Deaths by recreational accidents

312.276 Deaths by violence

.3 **Morbidity statistics**

Statistics on incidence of specific diseases

Divide like 616, e.g., statistics on incidence of measles 312.391 5

For epidemiology, see 614.49

.4 **Accident statistics**

Statistics on incidence of accidents

Divide like 312.27, e.g., incidence of traffic accidents 312.44

.5 **Marriage and divorce statistics**

.6 **Somatological statistics**

Including tables of correlation between height and weight, comparison of somatological features of various racial groups

For criminal anthropometry, see 364.125

.8 **Statistics on population mobility**

For comprehensive works on population growth and decline, see 301.32

.9 **Statistics on specific population characteristics**

Including statistics of population by age, sex, nationality, race, religion, education

For comprehensive works on composition of population, see 301.32

313

314–319 General statistics of specific countries

Divide like 940–999, e.g., general statistics of New York State 317.47

For statistics applied to a specific subject, see the subject, e.g., population statistics of New York State 312.097 47

314 **General statistics of Europe**

315 **General statistics of Asia**

316 **General statistics of Africa**

317 **General statistics of North America**

318 **General statistics of South America**

319 **General statistics of Pacific and Atlantic islands, of Polar Regions**

320 Political science

For political history, see 900; *public administration,* 350; *law,* 340; *constitutional law and history,* 342

.1 **Political theory**

Including origin of the state

.12 Nation and territory

Including distribution of peoples, ethnical unity; size, position, geographical unity of territory; frontiers and boundaries, acquisition and loss of territory, geopolitics

For demography, see 312; *migration and colonization,* 325

.15 Nature of the state

Including juridic, political, social, evolutionary theories

.157 Sovereignty

Supreme authority of state

Including force, authority, independence, balance of power, autonomy; centralization and decentralization of power [*formerly* *321.02]

For international law, see 341

.158 Unity

Including nationalism [*formerly* *321.8], allegiance, loyalty, patriotism

For group unity, see 301.15; *duties of citizenship,* 323.65; *ethics of citizenship,* 172.1

.9 **History of political science**

Class civics, comparative government [*both formerly* *320.9] in 342

321 Forms of state

Use 321.001–321.009 for form divisions

For administration of government, see 350; *constitutional law,* 342

.01 Simple unitary sovereign state

Class representative government in 321.8; executive, legislative, judicial relationships in 350; separation of powers in a specific state with the state, e.g., in national government of United States 353.02 [*all formerly* *321.01]

321.02 Mixt state

State consisting of two or more authorities, each with governmental jurisdiction of its own

Class centralization and decentralization of power [*formerly* *321.02] in 320.157

.021 Federal state

Organization of state where individual commonwealths yield their sovereignty in certain matters such as foreign relations

Including federation, admission of new commonwealths, doctrine of states' rights; comprehensive works on unitary versus federal states

For unitary state, see 321.01; *states' rights in United States constitutional history,* 342.73

.022 Confederation of states

Alliance of states forming a loose federation, possessing a limited international authority

Including imperial federation; regional, world-wide political organization of sovereign states

For international organizations and international cooperation, see 341; *internationalism,* 321.041; *imperialism,* 321.03

.025 Semisovereign and dependent states

.026 Mediatized states

.027 Protected states and territories

Including spheres of influence [*formerly* *325.3]; mandates, trusteeships as forms of state [*both formerly* *325.31], protectorates

For colonial government, see 325.31

.028 Vassal states

.03 Empire and imperialism

For colonization, see 325.3

.04 World state (World government)

Including cosmopolitism

.041 Internationalism

Including internationalism as an attitude

For peace plans, see 341.1; *nationalism,* 320.158; *international organization and administration,* 341.11

321.07 Ideal state

Including utopias

For utopian socialism, see 335.1

.09 Change of form of state

Including change by revolution, coup d'état [*both formerly* *323.2]

For political struggles, see 323.2

.1 Patriarchy, matriarchy, family

For anthropological studies of primitive organizations, see 572; *the family as a social institution,* 301.42

.2 Tribal state

Including clans, hordes, primitive village communities

.3 Feudalism

.4 Democracy

Absolute or pure democracy

For representative government, see 321.8

.5 Aristocracy

Including oligarchy

.6 Absolutism

.61 Absolute monarchy

.62 Dictatorship

Including despotism, Caesarism

For modern dictatorship, see 321.64

.64 Modern dictatorship

Including comprehensive works on totalitarianism (totalitarian dictatorship)

For collectivistic economic systems, see 335

.642 Communist-type dictatorship [*formerly* *321.84]

Including communist state; dictatorship of the proletariat, of the "Left"

.644 Fascist-type dictatorship [*formerly* *321.85]

Including fascist state, corporative state, National Socialist state (Nazi state), Falangist state; dictatorship of the "Right"

.646 Syndicalism

Dictatorship by labor organizations

321.7 **Constitutional or limited monarchy**

Including democratic state under constitutional monarchy

.8 **Republic**

Including comprehensive works on representative government [*formerly* *321.01], on delegated powers, on modern democracy

Class nationalism [*formerly* *321.8] in 320.158

For representative government under constitutional monarchy, see 321.7

[*.84] **Communist state**

Class in 321.642

[*.85] **Fascist state**

Class in 321.644

.9 **Anarchism as political system**

For anarchism as economic system, see 335.83

322 State and church

Comprehensive works

Including relative functions of church and state; political theories of their relationship; control and influence of one upon the other; union and separation, conflict, anticlericalism

For state's ethical duty to church, see 172.3; *Christianity and the political order,* 261.7

323 Relations of state to individuals or groups

For political parties, see 329; *crimes against state,* 364.13

.1 **Civil government in relation to ethnic groups and minorities**

Political problems based on social and cultural interests of minorities, national and racial groups

Divide like 930–999, e.g., problems of race relationships in Australia 323.194

For international migration and colonization, see 325; *public policy toward aliens,* 325.1; *sociological aspects of ethnic and minority groups,* 301.45; *nationalism,* 320.158; *racial conflicts as factor in crime,* 364.256

323.2 **Political struggles**

Including revolutions, revolts, riots, subversive activities

Class revolution, coup d'état as change of form of state [*both formerly* *323.2] in 321.09

For international law of civil war, see 341.39; *crimes against state,* 364.13; *martial law,* 344

.3 **State and social classes**

Including orders, estates; problems involving recognition of rights of classes within the state

For social stratification and social status, see 301.44

.31 Nobility and aristocracy

.32 Middle class

Including bourgeoisie

.33 Laboring classes

Including proletariat, peasantry

.34 Serfs

Including serfdom [*formerly also* †326.3, *formerly* *326]

For slavery, see 326

.35 **Communities and the state**

For sociology of community organization, see 301.34; *local government of communities,* 352

.352 Urban communities

For urban sociology, see 301.36

.353 Suburban communities

For suburban sociology, see 301.362

.354 Rural communities

For rural sociology, see 301.35; *rural life,* 630.1

.4 **Individual rights and protection**

Including natural rights, legal immunities of individuals; constitutional guarantees; comprehensive works on civil liberties, on censorship

For ethics of caste and segregation, see 177.5; *a specific liberty, the subject, e.g., freedom of teaching* 378.121; *a specific type of censorship, the subject, e.g., censorship of books in libraries* 025.21; *individualism,* 141.4

.41 Equality of individuals and races

323.42 Equality before the law

Including justice for individuals

.44 Liberty

Including freedom of movement, action, information, religion, conscience, drama, art

Class academic freedom [*formerly* *323.44] in 378.121

.443 Freedom of speech

Including freedom of speech in radio, television, motion pictures

[†.444] Academic freedom

Class in 378.121

.445 Freedom of the press [*formerly also* †070.13]

For law of libel and slander, see 070.13

.46 Right of property ownership

.47 Right of assembly and association

.48 Right of petition

.49 Limitation and suspension of individual rights and guarantees

Including limitation in times of martial law and state of siege

.6 Citizenship

Including citizenship in federal, other mixt states

For civics and studies of government in specific countries, see 342

.61 Citizenship and naturalization laws

Including international laws [*formerly* *341.51]

Divide like 930–999, e.g., citizenship laws of Brazil 323.618 1

.62 Naturalization

Including procedures for becoming a citizen; requirements, declaration of intention, oath of renunciation and allegiance

.63 Aliens and citizenship

Including dual citizenship

.64 Loss and restoration of citizenship

Including expatriation, repatriation, statelessness

For repatriation of displaced persons, see 325.21; *repatriation of prisoners of war,* 341.33

323.65 Duties and obligations of citizens

Comprehensive works

For ethics of citizenship, see 172.1; *a specific duty or obligation, the subject, e.g., military service* 355.223

.67 Rights and privileges of citizenship

Including rights and protection extended to aliens

For civil rights of citizens, see 323.4; *regulation and control of aliens,* 325.1

.673 Passports and visas

In times of peace, emergency, war

For diplomatic privileges and immunities, see 341.7; *consular service,* 341.8

324 Suffrage and elections

For public opinion polls, see 301.154; *initiative and referendum,* 328.26

.093 Suffrage and elections in ancient countries

Divide like 930, e.g., suffrage in ancient Greece 324.093 8

For suffrage and elections in modern countries, see 324.4–324.9

.1 Suffrage

Including qualifications for voting, e.g., age, sex, citizenship, residence, property, mental and moral competency, education, poll tax; voting rights of special classes, e.g., soldiers, students

For woman suffrage, see 324.3; *absentee voting,* 324.24

.2 Elections

.21 Electoral systems

Including short ballot [*formerly* *324.25], universal suffrage, limited suffrage, plural vote, compulsory voting

.22 Basis of representation

Including functional, minority, proportional representation

For legislative bodies and basis of representation, see 328.334

.23 Nomination of candidates

Including party conferences, caucus, direct primary, platform, selection of delegates to national political conventions

324.24 Voting procedure

Including registration; hours, polls, judges, clerks, secret ballot, certification of votes; voting place, absentee voting; voting procedure for electoral college

.25 Ballot

Including party ballot, Australian system; voting machines

Class short ballot [*formerly* *324.25] in 324.21

For manufacture of voting machines, see 681.147

.26 Count of ballot

Including results, announcement of vote

.27 Corruption and electoral frauds

Including bribery, false registration, fraud in voting and counting, errors in counting, contested elections

For party politics, see 329; *contested seats in legislative bodies,* 328.335; *crimes against state,* 364.13

.273 Election contributions and expenditures

Including limitations on expenditures, restrictions on contributions, political assessments

.3 Woman suffrage

.4–.9 Suffrage and elections in modern countries

Divide like 940–999, e.g., suffrage and elections in India 324.54

For suffrage and elections in ancient countries, see 324.093

325 Migration and colonization

For demography, see 312; *population policies,* 301.32

.1 Immigration

Including administration of immigration service; policies of restriction, exclusion, selection of immigrants; migration within a country; causes, effects of migration, immigration, emigration

For immigration to specific countries, see 325.4–325.9; *rights of aliens,* 323.67; *relations between state and minority groups within a country,* 323.1; *migratory workers,* 331.67; *immigration as factor in crime,* 364.256

.2 Emigration

Including emigrants, emigration policy relating to country of origin

For immigrants in specific countries, see 325.4–325.9; *emigrants from specific countries,* 325.23–325.29

325.21 Promotion and assistance

Including displaced persons, political refugees, repatriation

For World War I refugees, see 940.315 9; *World War II refugees,* 940.531 59; *welfare aid to refugees,* 361.53

.23–.29 Emigration from specific countries

Including emigration policies

Divide by country of origin like 930–999, e.g., Chinese emigrants 325.251; divide further after 09 by country of settlement, e.g., Negroes in United States 325.267 097 3

For immigrants in specific countries irrespective of origin, see 325.4–325.9; *sociological aspects of minority groups,* 301.45; *relation of state to minority groups,* 323.1

.3 Colonization

Including occupation and permanent settlement, relations between mother country and colonies

Class spheres of influence [*formerly* *325.3] in 321.027

For dependent states, see 321.025–321.028; *political history of empires and of specific colonies,* 930–999

.31 Colonial government and international controls

Including colonial policies and administration, military government of colonies, mandates, trusteeship control of nonself-governing territories

Class mandates, trusteeships as forms of state [*both formerly* *325.31] in 321.027

For government of a specific colony, see the colony, e.g., government of Goa 354.547 99

.33–.39 Colonization by specific countries

Divide like 930–999 by nation controlling colonies, e.g., British colonies 325.342

.4–.9 Colonization in and immigration to a specific country

Divide like 940–999, e.g., colonization of Alaska 325.798

For source of immigration, see 325.2; *of colonization,* 325.3

326 Slavery

Including emancipation

Class serfdom [*formerly* *326] in 323.34

For slavery as a cause of United States Civil War, see 973.711 1; *socioeconomic problems of Negro,* 301.451; *education of freedmen,* 371.974

.1 Slave trade

.2 Coolies and contract slaves

For immigrant workers, see 331.62; *contract labor,* 331.54

[†.3] Serfs and serfdom

Class in 323.34

.4 Antislavery documents

Including periodicals, societies [*both formerly* †326.5–†326.6]

[†.5–†.6] Antislavery periodicals and societies

Class in 326.4

.7 Proslavery documents

.9 History of slavery

Divide like 930–999, e.g., slavery in the United States 326.973

.92 Lives of slaves

Arrange alphabetically by name of biographee, using A1 for collections

If preferred, class in 920–928, e.g., biography of Booker T. Washington 923.773

327 Foreign relations

Comprehensive works on international law and foreign relations

Including diplomatic history [*formerly* *930–*999], foreign policy, boundary disputes, diplomatic missions

For international law, see 341; *diplomatic history of a specific war, the war, e.g., diplomatic history of World War I* 940.32; *foreign relations concerning a specific subject, the subject, e.g., passports* 323.673; *conduct of diplomacy,* 341.7

.1 Cold war activities

Comprehensive works

Including diplomatic spies and espionage

For psychological warfare, see 355.343; *espionage as a crime,* 364.13; *cold war activities between two countries or groups of countries,* 327.3–327.9

327.3–.9 International relations of specific countries

Divide like 930–999, e.g., British foreign policy 327.42

For international relations between two countries, add 0 and divide further like 930–999, e.g., foreign relations between England and France 327.420 44

In determining the sequence of notation for two countries, give priority to the local country, e.g., relations between United States and Great Britain 327.730 42 in a United States library, 327.420 73 in a British library; for international relations between two foreign countries, follow the numerical sequence of 930–999, e.g., international relations between France and England 327.420 44, between Japan and France 327.440 52

For geopolitics, see 320.12; *exterritoriality,* 341.7

328 Legislation

For law, see 340

.1 Parliamentary law

Including rules of order for business meetings

.2 Legislative function

Including uniform laws, codification process

.25 Legislative powers

Including juridic, executive, implied powers; restrictions and checks on legislation

.26 Direct legislation

Including initiative and referendum

.3 Legislative bodies

Legislative branch of government

Including upper and lower house

For session laws, see 345, 346, 349; *legislative bodies of specific countries,* 328.4–328.9

.33 Membership

Including eligibility, election of members, ex officio members

.333 Compensation

Including salaries, per diem payment, mileage, traveling expenses, pensions

.334 Representation

Including representation of states, territories, colonies, dependencies; of classes, e.g., landowners, Irish and Scottish peers; election districts; apportionment; gerrymandering

328.335 Methods of appointment

Including election, appointment by government or crown, hereditary right, direct vote, vacancies, resignations, contested seats

For contested elections, see 324.27

.34 Prerogatives and powers

For legislative control over public administration, see 351.96

.341 Power over revenue and appropriation

.343 Power to investigate or punish members

.344 Power of expulsion

.345 Power over nonmembers of legislature

Including power to imprison citizens; comprehensive works on power of investigation

For power of investigation of public officials, see 351.98; *of impeachment,* 351.99

.346 Treaty-making power

.347 Privileges of legislators

Including franking privilege, postage and stationery, railroad passes, free distribution of books and pamphlets

.348 Immunities of legislators

Including immunity from arrest

For diplomatic immunity, see 341.7

.349 Restrictions on legislators

Including instructions by electors, direct mandate by the people

.35 Sessions

Including method, frequency, length, adjournment, executive session, special sessions, extra sessions

328.36 Internal organization and discipline

Including suspension, investigation, impeachment of members; appointment and election of officers; organization of committees, subcommittees, commissions; party officers and committees; party discipline

For parliamentary law, see 328.1; *investigations of public officials,* 351.98; *impeachment of public officials,* 351.99; *of president,* 353.03

.367 Bribery and illegal practices

.368 Lobbying

.37 Legislative procedure

Including legislative manuals, legislative reference service; inquiries and investigations, recommendations from executive

.373 Bills

Including drafting, introduction of bills

.374 Action by legislature before passage

Including readings, committee work on bills, party caucuses, logrolling

.375 Final passage

Including work of rules committee, steering committee, vote by voice, roll call or ballot, required majority, passing over veto, pocket veto

.376 Special bills

Including financial bills, omnibus riders

.377 Resolutions

Including joint resolutions

.378 Local and private legislation

.379 Procedure in special cases

Including impeachment procedures

For impeachment of legislators, see 328.36; *of president,* 353.03; *of public officials,* 351.99

.39 Forms of legislative bodies

Including unicameral and bicameral legislature

328.4–.9 **Legislative bodies of specific countries**

Divide like 940–999, e.g., British Parliament 328.42, German Bundesrat [*formerly* †354.430 32] 328.43

Divide further by 01 journals, 02 debates, 03 abstracts, 04 documents, 05 rules, 08 legislative manuals, 09 history (for United States and states thereof omit 0), e.g., history of British Parliament 328.420 9, history of United States Congress 328.739, documents of Ohio State Legislature 328.771 4

329 United States political parties

Including organization, campaign methods, functions, party politics; practical politics

For elections, see 324; *nomination of candidates,* 324.23; *political history,* 900; *political parties of countries other than United States,* 329.9

.01 Presidential campaign literature of all parties

Arrange by campaign year

.02 Political machines

Including party bosses, leaders

.1 **Federalist Party**

.2 **Anti-Federalist Party**

.3 **Democratic Party**

Including Republican-Democratic or Jeffersonian Republican Party

.4 **Whig Party**

.5 **American (Know-Nothing) Party**

.6 **Republican Party**

Including liberal Republican movements, e.g., Progressive Party of 1912

.8 **Other United States parties**

Including Prohibition, Greenback, Woman Suffrage, People's (Populist), Socialist, Labor, Communist Parties

Class political societies [*formerly* *329.8] in 363

.9 Political parties of other countries

Divide like 940–999, e.g., Progressive Conservative Party in Canada 329.971

330 Economics

Science of production, evaluation, distribution, consumption of wealth

.1 **Economic theory**

For business cycles, see 338.54

.109 History of economic thought

Divide like 930–999, e.g., development of economic doctrines in England 330.109 42

.15 Schools of capitalist theory

For socialism and collectivism, see 335; *cooperation,* 334

.151 Mercantilism

Including cameralism

.152 Physiocracy

.153 Classicism

Including laissez faire, free private enterprise, individualism, utilitarianism, neoclassicism (Cambridge school)

For a specific theory of classicists, see the subject, e.g., Malthus on population 301.32; *mathematical school,* 330.182

.154 Historical school

.155 Universalism

Including romantic and institutional schools

.156 Keynesian economics (The New Economics school)

.16 Theories of value

.162 Marginal utility theory (Austrian school)

.17 Theory of property

Comprehensive works

For socialist and collectivist economic systems, see 335

.18 Economic methods

Including econometrics

.182 Mathematical economics

For neoclassicism, see 330.153

.19 Relations to other subjects

Divide like 000–999, e.g., economic effects of war 330.193 55

330.9 **Economic history and conditions**

Including economic geography [*formerly* *911.3], commercial geography [*formerly also* †380.9, *formerly* *911.3]

Divide like 930–999, e.g., economic conditions in Italy 330.945

331 Labor economics

For management, see 658; *public administration,* 350

SUMMARY

331.01	Philosophical aspects of labor
.026	Labor laws and regulations
.1	Industrial relations (Labor-management relations)
.2	Wages and earnings
.3	Labor by critical age groups
.4	Employed women
.5	Compulsory labor
.59	Work by physically handicapt
.6	Labor of minority and other special groups
.7	Economic aspects of specific occupations and professions
.8	Industrial sociology
.9	Other labor problems

.01 Philosophical aspects of labor

Including right to work [*formerly* †331.9], freedom and dignity of work, satisfactions and nonwage rewards

.026 Labor laws and regulations

Divide like 930–999, e.g., labor legislation in United States 331.026 73

For laws and regulations on a specific aspect of labor economics, see the subject, e.g., wage laws and regulations 331.26

.026 1 International regulations of labor [*formerly* †331.9]

.1 Industrial relations (Labor-management relations)

.11 Employment

Including labor force; comprehensive works on employment and unemployment

For unemployment, see 331.13; *employment in specific occupations,* 331.7

.112 Labor market

Including labor demand [*formerly* *331.115], labor supply

For employment agencies, see 331.115

331.113 Discrimination in employment

Consideration of workers on basis other than job qualifications

Including discrimination on basis of sex, race, national origin, religion, age

For special classes of workers, see 331.3–331.6; *employment practices,* 658.31

.114 Qualifications of workers

Including physical, mental, educational, experience qualifications

For testing prospective employees, see 658.311

.115 Employment services

Including employment agencies [*formerly* *658.311], labor exchanges

Class selection of personnel [*formerly* †331.115] in 658.311; labor demand [*formerly* *331.115] in 331.112

For placement services of educational institutions, see 371.427; *employment agencies for teachers,* 371.145

.116 Collective bargaining [*formerly* *331.891]

Negotiation and settlement of terms of employment between employers and organized workers

For a specific aspect of collective bargaining, see the subject, e.g., wages 331.2

.12 Labor stability

[†.123–†.125] In-service management of personnel

Class in 658.312

.126 Labor turnover

Including causes, costs, statistical studies

.127 Labor mobility

Transfer of workers to other regions

.13 Unemployment

Causes, economic effects, distribution; incidence of cyclical, seasonal, partial, technological unemployment

For business cycles, see 338.54; *termination of service,* 658.313; *unemployment as factor in crime,* 364.26

331.137 Unemployment prevention and relief

Including work relief [*formerly* †331.61], union benefit plans, dismissal wages, unemployment benefits

For unemployment insurance, see 368.44; *guaranteed-wage plans,* 331.23

.137 8 Unemployment in specific occupations

If preferred, instead of systematic arrangement in 331.137 81–331.137 898, arrange alphabetically by industry or occupation, e.g., unemployment of miners 331.137 8 M5

.137 81 In professions, service and minor industries

Including industries not provided for in 331.137 82–331.137 898

Divide like 000–999, e.g., unemployment of commercial artists 331.137 817 416

.137 82–.137 898 In major industries

Divide like 620–698, e.g., unemployment of miners 331.137 822

For unemployment in other industries, see 331.137 81

.137 9 Unemployment by country

Divide like 940–999, e.g., unemployment in Mexico 331.137 972

.138 Re-employment

[†.14] Personnel management and administration

Class in 658.3

.15 Labor-management conciliation practices [*formerly* *331.899]

Settlement of labor-management differences thru discussions, deliberations, recommendations of third party

For labor disputes, see 331.89; *employer-employee relationships,* 658.315; *collective bargaining,* 331.116; *labor courts,* 331.16

.152 Labor-management committees

Including industrial democracy

Class employee representation in management [*formerly* †331.152] in 658.315 2

.154 Mediation [*formerly* *331.899]

Effecting settlement of labor-management differences thru a third party whose recommendations are not compulsory

331.155 Arbitration [*formerly* *331.899]

Effecting settlement of labor-management differences thru a third party whose recommendations are compulsory

Including voluntary arbitration, compulsory arbitration

.16 Labor courts

.18 Industrial relations by industry

If preferred, instead of systematic arrangement in 331.181–331.189 8, arrange alphabetically by industry or occupation, e.g., labor-management relations in transportation industries 331.18 T7

.181 By professions, service and minor industries

Including industries not provided for in 331.182–331.189 8

Divide like 000–999, e.g., labor-management relations in railroad transportation services 331.181 385

.182–.189 8 By major industries

Divide like 620–698, e.g., labor-management relations in mining industries 331.182 2

For industrial relations in other industries, see 331.181

.19 Industrial relations by country

Divide like 940–999, e.g., industrial relations in Mexico 331.197 2

.2 Wages and earnings

Including salaries, fees, gratuities; comprehensive works on wages and hours

For wage and salary administration, see 658.32; *tipping customs,* 395.2; *hours and work periods,* 331.81; *wages of workers in critical age groups,* 331.3; *of employed women,* 331.42

[.209] Wages and earnings in specific countries

Class in 331.29

.21 Wage theories

Including fixing wage rates

For compensation plans, see 658.322

.215 Adequacy of wages

Standard of living in relation to wages and earnings

.22 Wage scales

Including sliding wage scales, progressive wages

Class guaranteed-wage plans [*formerly* *331.22] in 331.23

331.23 Guaranteed-wage plans [*formerly* *331.22]

[†.24] Profit sharing

Class in 658.324

.25 Other forms of compensation

For aid to aged, see 362.6

.252 Industrial pension systems

For administration of retirement and disablement compensation, see 658.325; *insurance,* 368

[†.253] Group insurance

Class in 368

[†.254] Life insurance

Class in 368.3

[†.254 4] Social insurance

Class in 368.4

.255 Fringe benefits

[†.256] Institutions for aged

Class in 362.61

.26 Wage laws and regulations

.261 Wage laws and regulations by country

Divide like 940–999, e.g., Canadian wage laws 331.261 71

[†.27] Professional remuneration

Class in 331.281

.28 Wages in specific occupations

If preferred, instead of systematic arrangement in 331.281–331.289 8, arrange alphabetically by industry or occupation, e.g., wages for photographers 331.28 P5

.281 In professions [*formerly* †331.27], service and minor industries

Including industries not provided for in 331.282–331.289 8

Divide like 000–999, e.g., wages for photographers 331.281 77

For salaries of librarians, see 023.8; *of teachers,* 371.16

.282–.289 8 In major industries

Divide like 620–698, e.g., wages for domestic workers [*formerly also* †647.6] 331.284 7

For wages in other industries, see 331.281

331.29 Wages in specific countries

Divide like 930–999, e.g., wages in Mexico 331.297 2

For wage laws and regulations in specific countries, see 331.261

331.3–331.6 Special classes of workers

For discrimination in employment, see 331.113

.3 Labor by critical age groups

Including wages

.31 Child labor

.34 Youth labor

Including cooperative school and work programs

.38 Child and youth labor in specific occupations

If preferred, instead of systematic arrangement in 331.381–331.389 8, arrange alphabetically by industry or occupation, e.g., child labor in textile mills 331.38 T2

.381 In professions, service and minor industries

Including industries not provided for in 331.382–331.389 8

Divide like 000–999, e.g., child actors 331.381 792

.382–.389 8 In major industries

Divide like 620–698, e.g., child labor in textile mills 331.387 7

For child and youth labor in other industries, see 331.381

.39 Employed middle aged and aged

.4 Employed women

Including self-employed women; comprehensive works on working women and children

For child labor, see 331.31; *youth labor,* 331.34

.42 Wages

Including equal wage rates for men and women

.43 Employed married women

331.48 Women employed in specific occupations

If preferred, instead of systematic arrangement in 331.481–331.489 8, arrange alphabetically by industry or occupation, e.g., women social workers 331.48 S6

.481 In professions, service and minor industries

Including industries not provided for in 331.482–331.489 8

Divide like 000–999, e.g., women social workers 331.481 361

.482–.489 8 In major industries

Divide like 620–698, e.g., women in aircraft factories 331.482 913 3

For women employed in other industries, see 331.481

.5 Compulsory labor

Forst labor and its economic effects

.51 Convict labor

Economic aspects of labor in prisons and reformatories [*formerly* †331.52]

Including regulation of competition between free and prison labor

For administration of prison labor, see 365.65

[†.52] Reformatories

Class in 331.51

.54 Contract labor

[†.55] Apprentice labor

Class in 331.86

.57 Drafted labor

Including emergency labor [*formerly* †331.64], compulsory labor in wartime

.58 Slave labor

Including slave labor camps

For drafted labor, see 331.57

.59 Work by physically handicapt

.6 Labor of minority and other special groups

For work by physically handicapt, see 331.59

[†.61] Work relief

Class in 331.137

331.62 Immigrant workers

Divide by place of origin like 930–999, e.g., Asian immigrant workers 331.625

.63 American Negro workers [*formerly* †331.98]

[†.64] Emergency labor

Class in 331.57

.66 Sharecroppers

For American Negro workers, see 331.63

.67 Casual-migratory workers [*formerly* †331.796]

.68 Jewish workers [*formerly* †331.98]

.69 Indigenous groups

Native and half-caste workers under nonindigenous domination

Divide like 940–999, e.g., colored workers in Union of South Africa 331.696 8

.7 Economic aspects of specific occupations and professions

Comprehensive works on employment, hours, wages and earnings, economic advantages in specific professions and industries

For unemployment in specific occupations, see 331.137 8; *wages and earnings in specific occupations,* 331.28; *hours in specific occupations,* 331.818

.71 Professional workers

Comprehensive works

For workers in a specific profession, see 331.761

.76 Workers in specific occupations

If preferred, instead of systematic arrangement in 331.761–331.769 8, arrange alphabetically by industry or occupation, e.g., electrical engineers 331.76 E5

.761 In professions, service and minor industries

Including industries not provided for in 331.762–331.769 8

Divide like 000–999, e.g., photographers 331.761 77

.762–.769 8 In major industries

Divide like 620–698, e.g., electrical engineers 331.762 13

For workers in other industries, see 331.761

331.79 Special occupational groups

Including unskilled workers

For sharecroppers, see 331.66; *casual-migratory workers,* 331.67; *professional workers,* 331.71

.794 Craftsmen

Comprehensive works

For craftsmen in a specific occupation, see 331.761–331.769 8

.795 Public employees

Comprehensive works

For public employees in a specific profession, service, or industry, see 331.761–331.769 8

[†.796] Casual-migratory workers

Class in 331.67

.8 Industrial sociology

For counseling services, see 658.382

.81 Hours and work periods

Including length of working day and week, rest periods, shift systems, night work, overtime, leaves of absence

For work schedules, see 658.381

.818 Hours and work periods by occupations

If preferred, instead of systematic arrangement in 331.818 1–331.818 98, arrange alphabetically by industry or occupation, e.g., work hours in nursing 331.818 N8

.818 1 By professions, service and minor industries

Including industries not provided for in 331.818 2–331.818 98

Divide like 000–999, e.g., work hours in nursing 331.818 161 073

.818 2–.818 98 By major industries

Divide like 620–698, e.g., work hours in automobile manufacturing industry 331.818 292

For hours and work periods in other industries, see 331.818 1

.819 Hours and work periods in specific countries

Divide like 930–999, e.g., hours and work periods in United States 331.819 73

331.82 Industrial hygiene [*formerly also* †613.61–†613.66, *614.85]

Including working conditions, plant conveniences, medical supervision, factory inspection

.822 Industrial diseases

Causes, incidence, prevention

For treatment of a specific disease, see 616–617

.823 Industrial accidents

Causes, incidence, safety measures [*formerly* †*614.85]

Including accidents and safety measures in specific industries

For mine accidents, see 622.8

.824 Industrial fatigue

For fatigue studies in relation to production, see 658.544

.825 Employers' liability (Workmen's compensation)

For industrial accident and health insurance, see 368.41

.827 Industrial sanitation

.83 Health, welfare, recreation facilities

Employee facilities provided by employees, employers, unions

Including employees' welfare and recreational associations

For health and safety programs, see 658.382; *standard of living in relation to wages,* 331.215

[†.831] Cost of living

Class cost and standard of living in 339.42

[†.832] Consumer cooperatives

Class in 334.5

.833 Housing

Comprehensive works

Including low-cost housing

For housing and health, see 613.5; *planning residential areas,* 711.58; *slum clearance,* 711.59; *domestic architecture,* 728; *cooperative housing,* 334.1; *rent control,* 333.63

[†.834] Food

Class in 641

[†331.835] Restaurants and cafeterias

Class in 647.95

[†.836] Clothing

Class in 646

[†.84] Morals and amusements

Class morals in 174; amusements in 790.19

.85 Workers' supplementary education

Educational programs provided by unions, employers' and employees' organizations

Class social settlement work in 361.43, adult education in 374 [*both formerly* †331.85]

.86 Training and apprenticeship

Including apprentice labor [*formerly also* †331.55], apprenticeship and journeymen programs of specific trades

For vocational education, see 371.426; *technical education,* 607; *training foremen,* 658.386; *education in a specific field, the subject, e.g., electrical engineering* 621.307; *workers' supplementary education,* 331.85

.868 Industrial rehabilitation [*formerly* *371.91]

For education of physically handicapt, see 371.91; *labor of physically handicapt,* 331.59

.87 Division of labor

Specialization in work, interrelationship of specialized enterprises

.88 Labor organizations (Labor unions)

For industrial relations, see 331.1; *collective bargaining,* 331.116; *employees' welfare and recreational associations,* 331.83; *guild systems,* 338.64

.880 49 Collections

Divide like form division 08, e.g., collected writings of a single author on unions 331.880 491

.880 8 Union racketeering and gangsterism

.880 9 History of labor movement

Divide like 940–999, e.g., labor unions in England 331.880 942

.880 91 International unions

331.881 Labor unions by occupations

If preferred, instead of systematic arrangement in 331.881 1–331.881 98, arrange alphabetically by industry or occupation, e.g., garmentworkers' unions 331.881 G1

.881 1 By professions, service and minor industries

Including industrial and craft unions not provided for in 331.881 2–331.881 98

Divide like 000–999, e.g., teachers' unions 331.881 137

For a professional organization, see the specific subject, e.g., American Medical Association 610.627 3

.881 2–.881 98 By major industries

Divide like 620–698, e.g., garmentworkers' unions 331.881 87

For other industrial and craft unions, see 331.881 1

.883 Company unions

.886 Subversive labor organizations

Including Industrial Workers of the World (IWW), communist infiltration in labor organizations

For communism, see 335.43; *syndicalism,* 335.82; *labor racketeering and gangsterism,* 331.880 8

.889 Union shops

Including open- versus closed-shop policies

.89 Labor disputes

Including retaliatory measures by employers and employees in attempting to settle labor-management differences

For collective bargaining, see 331.116; *labor-management conciliation practices,* 331.15; *labor disputes as factor in crime,* 364.26

[†*.891] Picketing and collective bargaining

Class picketing [*formerly* †331.891] in 331.892; collective bargaining [*formerly* *331.891] in 331.116

.892 Strikes

Including picketing [*formerly* †331.891]; organized, sympathetic, outlaw strikes; strike benefits for strikers

For sit-down strikes, see 331.893

331.892 8 Strikes by occupations

If preferred, instead of systematic arrangement in 331.892 81–331.892 898, arrange alphabetically by industry or occupation, e.g., strikes in mining industries 331.892 8 M6

.892 81 By professions, service and minor industries

Including industrial strikes not provided for in 331.892 82–331.892 898

Divide like 000–999, e.g., actors' strikes 331.892 817 92

.892 82–.892 898 By major industries

Divide like 620–698, e.g., strikes in mining industries 331.892 822

For strikes in other industries, see 331.892 81

.892 9 Strikes in specific countries

Divide like 930–999, e.g., strikes in Canada 331.892 971

.893 Other retaliatory measures by employees

Including sabotage, boycotting, sit-down strikes, injunctions, political action

For labor courts, see 331.16

.894 Retaliatory measures by employers

Lockouts [*formerly* †331.895], strikebreaking [*formerly* †331.896], blacklisting, whitelisting, injunctions, political action

Including employers' strike benefits [*formerly* †331.897]

[†.895–†.897] Lockouts, strikebreaking, benefits

Class in 331.894

.898 Government intervention in strikes

[*.899] Mediation, arbitration, conciliation

Class conciliation in 331.15; mediation in 331.154; arbitration in 331.155

.9 Other labor problems

Class right to work in 331.01, international regulations of labor in 331.026 1 [*both formerly* †331.9]

[†.98] Special types of workers

Class American Negro workers in 331.63; Jewish workers in 331.68

332 Financial economics

Comprehensive works

Including private finance

For public finance, see 336; *insurance finance,* 368.015; *household finance,* 647.1

SUMMARY

332.1	**Banks and banking**
.2	**Savings banks**
.27	**Safe-deposit companies**
.3	**Credit and loan institutions**
.4–.5	**Money**
.6	**Investment finance**
.7	**Credit (Private credit)**
.8	**Interest and discount**
.9	**Counterfeiting, forgery, alteration**

.1 Banks and banking

Class commercial credit [*formerly* *332.1] in 332.742

For cooperative banking, see 334.2

.11 Central banks

Government and private central banks

Including Federal Reserve banks, banks of issue, national banks in countries other than the United States

For federally chartered ("national") banks in the United States, see 332.12

.12 Commercial banks

Including federally chartered ("national") banks in the United States, joint-stock banks, checking accounts

For savings banks, see 332.2; *commercial credit,* 332.742

.13 Private banks (Partnership banks)

.14 Trust functions

Including settlement of estates, administration of trusts and guardianships, performance of personal and corporate agencies

Class investment banking [*formerly* †332.14] in 332.66

.15 International banking

Including Bank for International Settlements, Export-Import Bank of Washington, International Bank for Reconstruction and Development

For International Monetary Fund, see 322.43

332.16 Multiple banking

Including branch banking, banking syndicates, bank mergers

.17 Banking practices

Organization, administration, operation, functions

Including interbank lending [*formerly* *332.36], reserves

Class deposit insurance [*formerly* †332.17] in 368.85

For trust functions, see 332.14; *international banking,* 332.15; *savings departments of commercial banks,* 332.24; *safe-deposit services,* 332.27; *loans,* 332.7; *discounts,* 332.84

.2 Savings banks

Including mutual and stock savings banks

For deposit insurance, see 368.85; *savings and loan associations,* 332.32

.21 Government savings banks

.22 Postal savings banks

.23 School savings banks

.24 Savings departments of commercial banks

Including special savings departments, e.g., Christmas clubs

.27 Safe-deposit companies

Including bank safe-deposit services

.3 Credit and loan institutions

Including mortgage banks

Class cooperative credit institutions [*formerly* *332.3] in 334.2

For investment finance, see 332.6; *comprehensive works on credit and credit institutions,* 332.7; *credit bureaus,* 658.88

.31 Agricultural credit and loan institutions

Including land banks

Class agricultural credit [*formerly* *332.31] in 332.71

For agricultural cooperative banks, see 334.2; *mortgages,* 332.77

[†.313–†.316] Personal loan institutions

Class in 332.35

332.32 Building and loan associations

Including private and government-sponsored savings and loan associations

Class real-estate credit [*formerly* *332.32] in 332.72

[†.33] Government pawnshops

Class in 332.34

.34 Pawnshops

Including government pawnshops [*formerly* †332.33]

.35 Personal loan institutions [*formerly* †332.313–†332.316]

Including sales finance companies, Morris Plan banks, personal finance companies

Class personal loans in 332.743, credit unions in 334.2 [*both formerly* *332.35]

For consumer credit, see 658.883

[*.36] Interbank lending

Class in 332.17

.4 Money

For counterfeiting, see 332.9

.401 Monetary theories

Including quantity theory, circulation and velocity theory, equation of exchange theory

[†*.409] Monetary history

Class in 332.49

.41 Legal tender

Including characteristics and properties of lawful exchange mediums

For a specific type of legal tender, see the subject, e.g., paper money 332.53

.413 Value fluctuations

Relationship of monetary values and prices

Including appreciation, depreciation of money values

For price determination, see 338.52

.414 Volume fluctuations

Including deflation, inflation

For financial depressions and booms, see 338.54

[†.418–†.419] Coinage metals, specie

Class in 332.46

332.42 Monetary standards

Comprehensive works

Including metallic standards

For nonmetallic standards, see 332.56; *monetary system of a specific country,* 332.49

.422 Monometallism (Single standard)

Including gold coin, bullion, exchange standards

.423 Bimetallism (Double standard)

Including symmetallic standard

.43 International agreements

Including international monetary congresses [*formerly* †332.44], international monetary standards, International Monetary Fund

For rates of exchange, see 332.45

[†.44] Monetary congresses

Class in 332.43

.45 Foreign exchange

Including rates of exchange, arbitrage, pegging, exchange control, exchange equalization accounts

For international banking, see 332.15; *international securities operations,* 332.65; *international commerce,* 382

.46 Mints and mint practices

Including coinage metals [*formerly* †332.418], specie [*formerly also* †332.419], commodity money

For design of coins, see 737.4

[†.47] Coinage laws

Class in 332.49

.49 Monetary history [*formerly* †*332.409]

Including coinage laws [*formerly* †332.47], policies, systems of specific countries

Divide like 930–999, e.g., monetary history of the United States 332.497 3

.5 Nonmetallic money

Including representative money, credit (fiduciary) money

.52 Fiat money

Including occupation money, emergency money

For money substitutes, see 332.54

332.53 Paper money

Bank and government currency notes for general circulation as money

For other negotiable instruments, see 332.77

.54 Money substitutes

Including token money

.55 Barter instruments

Commodities used as basis of exchange

.56 Nonmetallic monetary standards

Including compensated monetary standards, managed currency, social credit money, index number standards

.6 Investment finance

.61 Securities exchanges

Organization and administration of stock exchanges, commodity exchanges, stock exchange clearing houses

For operation and regulation of exchanges, see 332.64

.62 Stockbrokers

For other kinds of brokers, see the specific subject, e.g., real-estate brokers 333.33

.63 Securities

Including stock certificates, bonds

For government securities, see 336.31; *securities as credit instruments,* 332.77

.64 Procedures in exchange of securities

Including regulation

Class financial panics [*formerly* †332.64] in 338.54

For organization and administration of exchanges, see 332.61

.645 Speculation

.65 International exchange operations

.66 Investment banking [*formerly* †332.14]

Including public issue, underwriting, purchase and resale of new issues of transferable securities

.67 Investment practices and techniques

Including manuals, investment services, forecasting, formula plans

For securities, see 332.63

332.68 Private lotteries

Including lottery tables, lists of drawings, lotteries as savings institutions

For government lotteries, see 336.1; *lotteries as games of chance,* 795; *ethics of gambling,* 174.6

.7 Credit (Private credit)

Including theory and forms of credit; comprehensive works on credit and credit institutions

For credit institutions, see 332.3; *securities,* 332.63; *credit bureaus,* 658.88; *public credit and borrowing,* 336.3

.71 Agricultural credit [*formerly* *332.31]

Loans for promoting agricultural operations

For agricultural credit institutions, see 332.31; *real-estate credit,* 332.72; *mortgages as credit instruments,* 332.77

.72 Real-estate credit [*formerly* *332.32]

Including mortgage loans

For mortgages as credit instruments, see 332.77; *building and loan associations,* 332.32

.74 Other types of credit

.742 Commercial [*formerly* *332.1] and industrial credit

For investment banking, see 332.66; *mercantile credit,* 658.882; *commercial banks,* 332.12

.743 Personal loans [*formerly* *332.35]

Including chattel mortgages

For personal loan institutions, see 332.35; *consumer credit,* 658.883

.75 Credit collapse and restrictions

Including bankruptcy

.76 Deposit transfer instruments

Including checks, money orders [*both formerly* *332.77]; postal money orders [*formerly* †383.3]

.77 Other negotiable instruments (Credit instruments)

Including commercial paper, promissory notes, drafts, letters of credit; comprehensive works on negotiable instruments

Class checks, money orders [*both formerly* *332.77] in 332.76

For mortgage loans, see 332.72

.78 Clearing houses

For stock exchange clearing houses, see 332.61

332.8 Interest and discount

.82 Legal interest

Including interest rates, interest as income

For revenue from interest on public loans, see 336.1; *interest tables,* 511.808 3

.83 Usury

.84 Discount

Including rediscount

For discounts as amount deducted from a bill for prompt payment or quantity purchase, see the specific subject, e.g., in retail credit and collections 658.88

.9 Counterfeiting, forgery, alteration

Including currency, securities, credit instrument forgeries

For criminal aspects of counterfeiting, see 364.133; *of forgery and alteration,* 364.163

333 Land economics

History, laws, policies, acquisition, disposal, utilization of land and land resources

For economic geology, see 553; *agriculture,* 630

SUMMARY

333.1	Public land (Public domain)
.2	Common land
.3	Private land
.4	Absentee ownership of land
.5–.6	Economic rent
.7–.8	Economics of specific types of land
.9	Economics of other natural resources

.1 Public land (Public domain)

Land over which government exercises sole right of control

For sale of public lands, see 336.12; *utilization policies of specific types of public lands,* 333.7; *government-owned and -controlled farms,* 338.12

.13 Expropriation [*formerly also* †336.18]

Including eminent domain

.14 Nationalization (Agrarian socialism)

333.16 Free disposal and land grants [*formerly* †336.13]

Including land grants for exploitation, homesteading

For land grants for a specific purpose, see the subject, e.g., for education 379.12

.2 Common land

Land over which each member of an association exercises equal rights of control

For cooperative housing, see 334.1; *agrarian socialism,* 333.14

.3 Private land

Land over which owner (individual or corporation) exercises right of control

For utilization policies of specific types of private lands, see 333.7

.32 Types of private ownership (Land tenure)

For absentee ownership, see 333.4

.322 Feudal tenure

.323 Individual ownership (Alodium)

Including occupying ownership

.324 Corporation ownership

For cooperation, see 334

.33 Real-estate business

Financial management of real property

For mortgage loans, see 332.72

.332 Valuation of real estate

Including appraisal of land and buildings, price determination

For assessment for tax purposes, see 336.222

.333 Sale and transfer of real estate

Including repossession, commissions

For deeds and titles, see 333.34

.334 Renting real estate (Rental properties)

Including leases

For economic rent, see 333.5

333.335–333.339 Types of real estate

Including appraisal, sale, transfer, rental

333.335 Agricultural real estate

Including farm lands

.336 Industrial real estate

.337 Urban real estate

For land subdivision and development, see 333.38

.339 Other types of real estate

Including undevelopt lands

.34 Deeds and titles

Including registration

.35 Inheritance of real estate

For inheritance tax, see 336.276; *inheritance laws,* 347.65

.38 Land subdivision and development

For urban real estate, see 333.337

.4 Absentee ownership of land

.5 Economic rent

Theoretic payment for use of land in terms of relative productivity of the land

Including Ricardian theory of rent

Class urban rent [*formerly* *333.5] in 333.6

For renting real estate as a function of real-estate business, see 333.334

.53 Tenancy

For relations between landlord and tenant, see 333.54

.54 Landlordism

Relations between landlord and tenant

.55 Agricultural rent

.6 Urban rent [*formerly* *333.5]

.62 Ground rent

Rent of land for building and industrial development

.63 Building rent

Rent of offices, dwellings

Including rent control

333.7 Economics of specific types of land

Ownership, rights, economic importance; policies of utilization, settlement, control

Including public and private lands, marginal and submarginal lands

.72 Conservation of land resources

Conservation policies

Class conservation of national resources [*formerly* *333.72] in 339.49

For conservation policies about a specific type of land, see the subject, e.g., mineral lands 333.8; *conservation practices, the specific subject, e.g., flood control engineering* 627.4

.73 Wasteland economics

Including arid and semiarid lands

.74 Pasture and grazing land economics

For common lands, see 333.2

[†.75] Forest economics

Class in 634.92

.76 Agricultural land economics

For agriculture, see 630; *pasture lands,* 333.74; *forest economics,* 634.92

.77 Urban land economics

For housing, see 331.833; *city planning,* 711.4

.78 Recreational land economics

Including parks, playgrounds, wildlife refuges

For game and fishing laws and regulations, see 799.026; *planning for preservation of public parks and natural monuments,* 719.32; *of wildlife reserves,* 719.36

.8 Mineral land economics

Including conservation of specific mineral resources

For mining, see 622; *mineral deposits,* 553

333.9 Economics of other natural resources

Ownership, rights, economic importance; policies of utilization, conservation, control

.91 Water economics

For planning for preservation of water-supply reserves, see 719.33

.912 Industrial and domestic water supply

Water for consumption

Including urban water supply, potable water

.913 Irrigation waters

.914 Water for power

.915 Navigable waters

.917 Shorelands

Including littoral rights, riparian rights

.918 Submerged lands

Including tidelands

.92 Air economics

334 Cooperation and cooperatives

Nonprofit business organizations jointly owned and operated by voluntary groups for their own benefit

.1 Cooperative building associations

Including cooperative housing

For building and loan associations, see 332.32; *real-estate business,* 333.33

.2 Cooperative banking

Including cooperative credit institutions [*formerly* *332.3], credit unions [*formerly* *332.35]

[†.3] Cooperative insurance

Class in 368

[†.4] Cooperative housekeeping

Class in 647.9

.5 Consumers' cooperatives [*formerly also* †331.832]

Distributive cooperation

Including Rochdale principles

334.6 Producers' cooperatives

Including marketing cooperatives [*formerly also* †380.125], cooperative factories, cooperatives for securing supplies and machinery for production

.68 Producers' cooperatives in specific industries [*formerly* *338.1–*338.4]

If preferred, instead of systematic arrangement in 334.681–334.689 8, arrange alphabetically by industry or occupation, e.g., agricultural producers' cooperatives 334.68 A4

.681 In professions, service and minor industries

Including industries not provided for in 334.682–334.689 8

Divide like 000–999, e.g., producers' cooperatives for photographic equipment 334.681 771

.682–.689 8 In major industries

Divide like 620–698, e.g., agricultural producers' cooperatives [*formerly* †630.62] 334.683

For producers' cooperatives in other industries, see 334.681; *government-owned and -controlled farms,* 338.12

.7 Benefit societies

Including friendly, mutual-aid, benevolent, provident organizations

For fraternal orders, see 366; *fraternal insurance,* 368.363

[†.8] Burial societies

Class in 368.362

335 Economic ideologies

Integrated assertions, theories, aims of socioeconomic reform movements

Including socialist and collectivist economic systems

For schools of capitalist theory, see 330.15; *forms of capitalist economic organization,* 338.6–338.8; *cooperation,* 334; *totalitarian political systems,* 321.64; *political parties,* 329; *history of a specific socialist or communist country, the country, e.g., Union of Soviet Socialist Republics* 947

.1 Utopian and humanitarian socialism

Voluntary associations for reformation and improvement of society

Including pre-Marxian socialism

For socialist communities, see 335.9

.12 English utopian socialism

Including Owenism

335.14 Fabian socialism (Fabianism)

Establishment of socialist state thru evolution without class struggle

Including Fabian Society

For state socialism and social democracy, see 335.5

.15 Guild socialism

State ownership of industries, and monopolistic control and management of each industry by a union or guild

For syndicalism, see 335.82

.2 French utopian socialism

Including Babouvism, Icarianism, Saint-Simonism

For Fourierism, see 335.3; *syndicalism,* 335.82

.3 Fourierism and American utopianism

Including Phalansterianism

.4 Marxian socialism and communism

Government or community ownership and control of all wealth

.41 Basic concepts of Marxian socialism and communism

For Communist manifesto of Marx and Engels, see 335.42; *of Third International,* 335.44

.411 Philosophic foundations

Including dialectical materialism, historical materialism, Marx's materialism and theory of knowledge, theory of class struggle, labor theory of value

For comprehensive works on dialectical materialism, see 146.3

.413 Basic aims

Including dictatorship of the proletariat, world revolution, internationalism, classless society

.42 Marxian socialism (Scientific socialism)

Including Communist manifesto of Marx and Engels, international workers' associations, e.g., First International, Second International, Vienna International

For Communist manifesto of Third International, see 335.44

335.43 Communism (Revolutionary socialism)

Comprehensive works

Including Leninism, Stalinism

For communist international associations, see 335.44; *basic concepts,* 335.41

.432 Propagation methods

Including infiltration techniques

For communist infiltration in labor organizations, see 331.886

.437 Comparative studies

Comparison of communism with capitalism, cooperation, other forms of socialism

.438 Communism in relation to other subjects

Divide like 000–999, e.g., communism and religion 335.438 2

.44 Communist international organizations

Including Communist manifesto of Third International, Comintern, Cominform

For Communist manifesto of Marx and Engels, see 335.42

.5 State socialism [*formerly* †335.63, *335.6] and social democracy

Moderate degree of socialism thru nationalization of key industries or government regulation of industry to curb monopolies

Including socialism of the chair [*formerly* †335.62, *335.6], gradualism, revisionism, evolutionary socialism

For Fabian socialism, see 335.14; *agrarian socialism,* 333.14

.6 Nationalist socialism

Government control of labor and production, but retention of private property

Including fascism, Nazism, Falangism

Class state socialism, socialism of the chair [*both formerly* *335.6] in 335.5

[†.62–†.63] State socialism, socialism of the chair

Class in 335.5

.7 Christian socialism

Cooperative welfare movement based on religious convictions

Including Catholic socialism

For Christian church and the economic order, see 261.85

335.8 Other economic movements

.82 Syndicalism

Ownership and control of production by organizations of workers

For guild socialism, see 335.15

.83 Anarchism

Collective ownership by cooperating groups

Including abolition of coercive government and private property; nihilism

For anarchism as political system, see 321.9

.9 Socialist communities

Divide like 930–999, e.g., Brook Farm community 335.974 46

For common land, see 333.2; *Owenism,* 335.12; *Fourierism,* 335.3

336 Public finance

Comprehensive works on financial transactions of national and state governments and government units

Class local government finance in 352.1, financial activities of governments in 351.71 [*both formerly* *336]

For financial administration of governments, see 351.71; *fiscal policy,* 351.72; *banks and banking,* 332.1; *money,* 332.4–332.5; *government accounting systems,* 657.835

SUMMARY

336.09	**History of public finance**
.1	**Nontax revenues (Commercial and voluntary revenues)**
.2	**Taxation (Compulsory revenues)**
.3	**Public credit and borrowing**
.39	**Public expenditure**
.4–.9	**Public finance of specific countries**

.09 History of public finance

Class public finance of international organizations [*formerly* *336.09] in 341.11

For history of public finance in a specific modern country, see 336.4–336.9

.093 Public finance of ancient countries

Divide like 930, e.g., public finance of ancient Rome 336.093 7

336.1–336.294 Public revenues

336.1 Nontax revenues (Commercial and voluntary revenues)

Including income from state domain and properties, gifts, fines, lotteries, investments; disposal of surpluses

For fees, see 336.273; *licenses,* 336.274

.11 Income from rents and franchises

.12 Sale of government property

Including sale of land, buildings, equipment, supplies, surplus and enemy property for revenue purposes

For public land policies, see 333.1

[†.13] Land grants

Class in 333.16

[†.14] Grants for specific purposes

Class with the subject, e.g., land grants for railroads 385.133

.18 Inter- and intragovernmental revenues

Class expropriation of land [*formerly* †336.18] in 333.13

.182 Revenue from reparations

Including interest on war loans

For reparations for a specific war, see the war, e.g., World War I 940.314 22

.185 Grants received from other government units

Including moneys received from higher units, e.g., money received by a state from the federal government; technical assistance funds

For grants-in-aid as public expenditures, see 336.39

.188 International grants

For international economic planning, see 338.91

.19 Revenue from government services, industries, monopolies

For revenue stamps, see 336.272; *fees,* 336.273; *licenses,* 336.274; *organization of government corporations,* 338.74; *monopolies in economic organization,* 338.82

336.2 Taxation (Compulsory revenues)

For taxation as a business expense, see 658.171; *exemption from taxation, the specific subject, e.g., as aid to public education* 379.12

.21 Direct taxes

Comprehensive works

For a specific direct tax, see the tax, e.g., inheritance tax 336.276

.22 Real property tax

Taxes on real estate, land, buildings, fixt improvements

Including urban, suburban, rural real property

.222 Administration

Including surveys, assessments, valuation

For valuation for price determination, see 333.332

.226 Single tax

Including unearned increment tax

.23 Personal property tax

.24 Income tax

Comprehensive works on taxes on income from wages, salaries, rents, domestic and foreign investments, inheritance, estate, gifts

Including collection methods, income tax of residents and nonresidents

For inheritance, estate, gift taxes, see 336.276

.242 Personal income tax

.243 Corporation taxes [*formerly also* *336.274]

Including income tax, surplus and excess profits taxes

.249 Income tax evasion

For criminal aspects of income tax evasion, see 364.133

.25 Other direct taxes

Including poll tax, capital levy

For poll tax as qualification for voting, see 324.1

336.26 Customs duties

Including export, import, transit taxes

For tariff policy, see 337; *international trade,* 382

.262 Administration

Including regulations, collection

.265 Schedules

.266 Duties on specific commodities

Divide like 000–999, e.g., duties on paintings 336.266 75

.268 Smuggling, fraud, evasion

For criminal aspects, see 364.133

.27 Other taxes

For local taxes, see 352.13

..271 Indirect taxes

Including evasion by fraud, bootlegging

For customs duties, see 336.26; *criminal aspects of evasion,* 364.133

.271 1 Excise taxes

Including sumptuary taxes, luxury taxes [*both formerly* †336.271 3]

.271 3 General sales taxes

Including use taxes, turnover and transaction taxes

Class sumptuary taxes, luxury taxes [*both formerly* †336.271 3] in 336.271 1

For taxes on specific commodities and services, see 336.278

.272 Stamp taxes

Including revenue stamps

For taxes on specific commodities, see 336.278

.273 Revenue from fees

Class licenses [*formerly* *336.273] in 336.274

For performance of a specific service for which fees are collected, see the subject, e.g., notaries 347.96

.274 Revenue from licenses [*formerly* *336.273]

Class comprehensive works on corporation taxes [*formerly* *336.274] in 336.243

336.276 Estate, inheritance, and gift taxes

For taxation of income from inheritance and gifts, see 336.24

.278 Taxes on specific commodities and services

Divide like 000–999, e.g., taxes on theater tickets 336.278 792

For customs duties on specific commodities, see 336.266; *revenue from fees for services,* 336.273

[†.279] Taxes for specific purposes

Class with the purpose, e.g., for libraries 021.9

[†*.28] Local taxes

Class in 352.13

.29 Tax theory and principles

Including comprehensive works on rates, effects on the economy

For a specific tax rate, see the tax, e.g., real property tax 336.22; *a specific effect, the subject, e.g., redistribution of personal income* 339.41

.292 Tax administration

Including surveys, assessments, valuation, collection

For administration of a specific tax, see the tax, e.g., income tax 336.24

.294 Incidence of taxation

Including distribution of taxes, double taxation, exemptions, evasions, intergovernmental problems

For incidence of a specific tax, see the tax, e.g., income tax 336.24

.3 Public credit and borrowing

For private credit, see 332.7

.31 Funded debts

Interest-bearing long-term government securities and bonds

Including credit bonds

For flotation of loans, see 336.344; *public issue as investments,* 332.66

.32 Unfunded debts (Floating debts)

Short-term securities usually held in treasury bills

For fiat money, see 332.52

[†.33] Sinking fund, amortization

Class in 336.363

336.34 Public debt

Theory, character, bases, burden and economic effect of public borrowing

.343 Public debt by sources and borrowing units

.343 2 State debt

For local debts, see 352.14

.343 3 National debt

.343 5 International debt

Comprehensive works

Including indemnities, financial assistance, government loans floated in a foreign market

For interest on reparations, see 336.182; *foreign loans as investments,* 332.66; *reparations for a specific war, the war, e.g., World War I* 940.314 22; *international financial assistance for a specific purpose, the subject, e.g., for public health* 614

.344 Flotation of loans

Including compulsory and voluntary loans, subscriptions, allotments, marketability

.346 Control and limitation of public indebtedness

.36 Liquidation of public debts

.363 Repayment and redemption

Including sinking funds, amortization [*both formerly* †336.33]

.368 Repudiation and abrogation

Including public insolvency

.39 Public expenditure

Including character, principles, classification, justification, economic aspects, grants-in-aid

Class government accounting [*formerly* *336.39] in 351.72

For administrative aspects, see 351.71

[*.395] Budget and appropriations

Class in 351.72; in a specific country in 336.4–336.9; works on appropriations, where financial interest is secondary, with the subject, e.g., appropriations hearings for United States Department of the Interior 353.3

336.4–.9 Public finance of specific countries

Comprehensive works

Including budget, appropriations [*both formerly* *336.395]

Divide like 940–999, e.g., public finance of Portugal 336.469

For public finance of ancient countries, see 336.093; *a specific aspect of public finance, the subject, e.g., public securities* 336.31

337 Tariff policy

Governmental control of international trade for economic, political, strategic, social welfare purposes

For customs administration and schedules, see 336.26; *conduct of international trade,* 382; *economic policy,* 338.9

.1 Free trade (No tariff)

For tariff exemptions, see 337.8

.2 Tariff for revenue (Fiscal tariff)

.3 Protective and prohibitive tariff

Control of foreign trade thru export and import duties, licenses, restrictions, embargoes

Including tariff systems, customs reprisals

For protection of specific commodities, see 337.5; *of raw materials,* 337.6; *of literary and art works,* 337.7

.4 Subsidies and drawbacks

Including export bounties, import rebates

.5 Protection of specific commodities

Divide like 000–999, e.g., protection of agricultural products 337.563

For protection of raw materials, see 337.6; *of literary and art works,* 337.7; *customs duties on specific commodities,* 336.266

.6 Protection of raw materials

Comprehensive works

For protection of specific commodities, see 337.5

.7 Protection of literary and art works

For copyright, see 655.6

337.8 **Tariff exemptions of dutiable commodities**

For free trade, see 337.1

.82 Personal and institutional exemptions

Duty exemptions on goods imported for educational purposes; customs privileges for foreign service personnel and tourists

[†.87] Free ports and zones

Class in 387.13

.88 Exemptions on relief supplies

.9 Other aspects of tariff policy

Including reciprocal trade agreements, most-favored-nation clause, customs unions, multination agreements, preferential tariff, open-door policy

.91 Trade agreements by specific countries

Divide like 930–999, e.g., trade treaties of United States 337.917 3

For trade treaties between two countries, add 0 and divide further like 930–999, e.g., trade treaties between England and France 337.914 204 4

In determining the sequence of notation for two countries, give priority to the local country, e.g., treaties between United States and Great Britain 337.917 304 2 in a United States library, 337.914 207 3 in a British library; for treaties between two foreign countries, follow the numerical sequence of 930–999, e.g., trade treaties between France and England 337.914 204 4, between Japan and France 337.914 405 2

.92 Colonial trade policies

Divide like 930–999, e.g., British colonial trade policies 337.924 2

For trade policies between a mother country and one of its colonies, protectorates, or trusts, add 0 and divide further like 930–999, giving priority in notation to the mother country, e.g., trade agreements between England and Kenya 337.924 206 762

338 Industrial economics and production economics

Utilization of land, labor, capital and management to create goods and services

For labor economics, see 331; *land economics,* 333; *income and wealth,* 339; *management,* 658; *engineering and manufacturing processes,* 620–698

SUMMARY

338.01 Theories of production economics
.1 Agricultural economics
.2 Mineral industries
.3 Other primary industries
.4 Secondary industries
.5 Prices and production
.6 Systems of production
.7 Organization of production
.8 Large-scale production and combination
.9 Economic planning

.01 Theories of production economics

.016 Laws of production economics

Including laws of diminishing returns, marginal utility, comparative advantage

.018 Methodology in production economics

.018 2 Diversification versus specialization

For division of labor, see 331.87

.018 3 Economics of change

Conversion of agricultural to industrial economy, of production of one commodity or group of commodities to another

.018 5 Cooperation versus competition

For producers' cooperatives, see 334.6

.018 6 Control of production

Including control by government, by laws of supply and demand

For comprehensive works on supply and demand, see 380.11; *control of consumption,* 339.47; *government control of specific industries,* 338.1–338.4; *of prices,* 338.526

.019 History of production theory

Divide like 940–999, e.g., German theories of production 338.019 43

338.1–338.4 Industrial economics

Production; valuation [*formerly also* †338.527], marketing of goods and services

Including production statistics, government control of production; comprehensive reports of and about specific firms and enterprises

Class producers' cooperatives in specific industries [*formerly* *338.1–*338.4] in 334.68

For comprehensive works on prices, see 338.5; *on marketing,* 658.8; *on statistics,* 310; *on government control,* 338.9; *producers' cooperatives,* 334.6; *credit,* 332.7; *organization of specific industries,* 338.76; *technical and process reports of a specific firm or enterprise, the subject, e.g., of a firm manufacturing cameras* 681.130 65; *public utilities and services,* 380

338.1 Agricultural industries

For farm management, see 631; *economics of procest food industry,* 338.476 64; *economics of machinery in agricultural industries,* 338.456 3

.12 Government-owned and -controlled farms

Including collectivist, socialist, state farms

Divide like 940–999, e.g., Soviet farms 338.124 7

For agricultural producers' cooperatives, see 334.683

.13 Agricultural prices

Comprehensive works

Including government price supports and subsidies

For prices of a specific agricultural product, see 338.17

.14 Agricultural markets and marketing programs

Comprehensive works

For marketing a specific agricultural product, see 338.17; *local marketing of farm products,* 631.18

.15 Maladjustments in agricultural production

Including surpluses and shortages of agricultural products

For food supply in a specific country, see 338.194–338.199 9; *business cycles,* 338.54

338.17 Specific agricultural products

Including production, prices, marketing

Divide like 633–638, e.g., economics of rice production 338.173 18

For food supply in a specific country, see 338.194–338.199 9; *economics of fishing and hunting industries,* 338.3

.19 Food supply

For economics of a specific agricultural product, see 338.17

.194–.199 9 Food supply in specific countries

Divide like 940–999, e.g., food supply in India 338.195 4

.2 Mineral industries

For economics of machinery in mineral industries, see 338.456

.27 Specific mineral products

Divide like 553, e.g., economics of petroleum extraction 338.272 82

Class economics of glass manufacture [*formerly* *338.27] in 338.476 661

.3 Other primary industries

Including hunting, fishing industries

For economics of machinery in these industries, see 338.456

.37 Other specific primary products

.372 Hunting and fishing products

Divide like 593–599, e.g., economics of whaling industry 338.372 95

[†.377] Water power

Class in 338.476 212

[*.39] Engineering industries

Class engineering industries in 338.4; public utilities in 380

.4 Secondary industries

Industries which obtain their raw materials from primary industries or other secondary industries

Including engineering [*formerly* *338.39], manufacturing, professional and service industries

For maladjustments in secondary industries, see 338.542

338.45 Machinery in industry

Machines and automation in relation to production, prices, marketing

Including machinery in primary industries

For socioeconomic effects of automation, see 301.243; *automation as a production method,* 658.561; *use of machinery in engineering and manufacturing,* 620–698

.456 Machinery in specific industries

If preferred, instead of systematic arrangement in 338.456 1–338.456 98, arrange machinery in specific industries alphabetically by industry or occupation, e.g., machinery in mining 338.45 M4

.456 1 Machinery in professions, service and minor industries

Including industries not provided for in 338.456 2–338.456 98

Divide like 000–999, e.g., machinery in translation services 338.456 141

.456 2–.456 98 Machinery in major industries

Divide like 620–698, e.g., machinery in mining 338.456 22

For machinery in other industries, see 338.456 1

.47 Specific secondary products

Divide like 000–999, e.g., economics of liquor industry [*formerly* †178.4] 338.476 63, of glass manufacture [*formerly* *338.27] 338.476 661, of water power [*formerly* †338.377] 338.476 212, of motor vehicles [*formerly* †629.213 8] 338.476 292

If preferred, arrange specific secondary products alphabetically by product, e.g., economics of motor vehicle industry 338.47 M7

.5 Prices and production

Including price trends, history of prices

For prices of specific goods and services, see 338.1–338.4

.52 Price determination

Price theories and systems

Including price spread and stabilization, interrelationship of prices

.522 In competitive free markets

Prices based on cost of production, supply and demand, and overhead costs

338.523 In monopolistic markets

Prices based on intraindustry agreements

Including price leadership

.526 By governmental control

Including price control legislation

For rationing, see 339.47; *rent control,* 333.63

[†.527] Prices of specific goods and services

Class in 338.1–338.4

.528 Price levels

Including price statistics, index numbers, Fisher's ideal index, price movements

[†.53] Business cycles

Class in 338.54

.54 Business cycles [*formerly also* †338.53, †380.124]

Irregular alternations of business activity from prosperity to depression

Including business crises [*formerly* †338.55]; panics [*formerly* †338.56]; financial panics [*formerly* †332.64]; depressions, recessions [*both formerly* †338.57]; booms [*formerly* †338.58]; periods of prosperity

.542 Causes of business cycles

Including economic maladjustments in production in secondary industries

For maladjustments in agricultural production, see 338.15

.544 Business forecasting [*formerly* †380.123]

For theories of production, see 338.01

[†.55–†.58] Crises, panics, depressions, recessions, booms

Class in 338.54

338.6–338.8 Production economics

For theories of production, see 338.01; *producers' cooperatives,* 334.6; *collectivism,* 335; *production management,* 658.5; *engineering and manufacturing processes,* 620–698

.6 Systems of production

For production methods, see 658.561; *organization of production,* 338.7

338.63 Cottage industries

Detailing major steps of manufacture for performance at home by family unit on piecework basis

Including specific cottage industries

.64 Small industries

Comprehensive works

Including handicraft industries, trades, modern guilds

For production economics of a specific industry, see 338.76; *of cottage industries,* 338.63

[†.646 2–†.646 99] Specific small industries

Class in 338.76

.65 Large industries (Factory systems)

Comprehensive works

Including house systems, sweatshop systems

For organization and structure of large-scale production, see 338.8; *production economics of a specific industry,* 338.76

.7 Organization of production

Structure of industrial organizations

For production management, see 658.5; *forms of ownership,* 658.114

.72 Entrepreneurships

Comprehensive works

For entrepreneurship in a specific industry, see 338.76

.73 Unincorporated companies and partnerships

Comprehensive works

For companies and partnerships in a specific industry, see 338.76

.74 Corporations

Comprehensive works

Including government corporations [*formerly* †380.16]

For city as a corporation, see 352.003; *corporations in a specific industry,* 338.76; *structure of large-scale production,* 338.8

338.76 Organization of specific industries

Including small industries [*formerly* †338.646 4–†338.646 99], entrepreneurships, partnerships, companies, corporations

If preferred, instead of systematic arrangement in 338.761–338.769 8, arrange organization of specific industries alphabetically by industry, e.g., organization of rubber manufacturing corporations 338.76 R8

For monopolies in specific industries, see 338.826

.761 Of professions, service and minor industries

Including industries not provided for in 338.762–338.769 8

Divide like 000–999, e.g., organization of law corporations 338.761 34

.762–.769 8 Of major industries

Divide like 620–698, e.g., organization of rubber manufacturing corporations 338.767 8

For organization of other specific industries, see 338.761

.8 Large-scale production and combination

Structure of organization for large-scale production and methods of combining individual organizations for effective production

Including advantages, disadvantages, government regulation

For forms of ownership, see 658.114; *intercorporate relationships to control management,* 658.16

.82 Monopolies

For price determination in monopolistic markets, see 338.523

.826 Monopolies in specific industries

If preferred, instead of systematic arrangement in 338.826 1–338.826 98, arrange monopolies in specific industries alphabetically by industry, e.g., monopolies in telephone communication service 338.826 T2

.826 1 In professions, service and minor industries

Including industries not provided for in 338.826 2–338.826 98

Divide like 000–999, e.g., monopolies in telephone communication service 338.826 138 46

.826 2–.826 98 In major industries

Divide like 620–698, e.g., monopolies in diamond mining 338.826 223 82

For monopolies in other specific industries, see 338.826 1

338.83 Mergers

Class cartels [*formerly* †338.83] in 338.88

.85 Trusts

.86 Holding companies

.88 International combinations

Including cartels [*formerly* †338.83]

.9 Economic planning

Efforts to direct economic improvement thru coordinated programs of control

Including control and regulation of industry by government [*formerly* †380.16], subsidies, grants

For social planning, see 309.2; *relations of state to individuals or groups,* 323; *government control of production of specific commodities,* 338.1–338.4; *of monopolies,* 338.82; *public utilities,* 380.16; *planning of physical facilities,* 711

.91 International economic planning

Including economic assistance, foreign aid

Divide like 940–999, e.g., foreign aid policies of United States 338.917 3

For economic assistance of one country to another, add 0 and divide further like 940–999, giving priority in notation to the donor country, e.g., American economic assistance to Japan 338.917 305 2

For international technical assistance, see 309.22

.93–.99 Local economic planning

Divide like 930–999, e.g., nationalization of British industries 338.942

339 Income and wealth

Distribution and consumption of capital goods and consumer goods

Including comprehensive works on national resources

For land resources, see 333; *a specific resource, the subject, e.g., petroleum* 553.282; *production and distribution of goods and services,* 338

[†*.1] Underconsumption

Class in 339.46

.2 Distribution and accounting of wealth [*formerly* *339.3]

Including social accounting, national accounting, economic budget

Class distribution of personal income [*formerly* †339.2] in 339.41

For wages and salaries, see 331.2; *economic rent,* 333.5; *interest,* 332.8

.23 Input-output accounts (Interindustry accounts)

Accounts and analysis of goods and services provided by each industry for all other industries and consuming units

.26 Flow-of-funds accounting

.3 National income accounting

Including gross national product or expenditure accounting, income and capital valuation, statistics of national wealth

Divide like 930–999, e.g., national wealth of Peru 339.385

Class distribution of national income and wealth [*formerly* *339.3] in 339.2

For consumption, see 339.4; *public finance,* 336

339.4 Consumption and conservation of wealth

Comprehensive works on use of national resources

For industrial uses of goods and services, see 338.1–338.4; *marketing,* 658.8

.41 Personal income

Including principles of measurement and distribution [*formerly* †339.2] of income by occupation, age, amount

.42 Cost of living [*formerly also* †331.831]

Expenditures at various income levels

Including budget studies by income level, occupation, degree of urbanization

For standards of living in relation to wages, see 331.215; *household accounts,* 647.1

.420 7 Consumer education

For consumer education in a specific field, see the subject, e.g., buying for the home 647.1

.43 Deferred consumption (Savings)

Including principles of measurement and estimates of savings for various income levels

For saving and investment, see 332.67

.46 Underconsumption [*formerly also* †*339.1]

Economic aspects of poverty, hoarding

For deferred consumption, see 339.43; *welfare work with the poor,* 362.5; *social security,* 368.4; *poverty as factor in crime,* 364.26

.47 Control of consumption

Personal, social, government restrictions

Including rationing

For food and drug control, see 614.3

.48 Consumption of specific commodities

Divide like 000–999, e.g., agricultural consumption 339.486 3

.49 Conservation of national resources [*formerly* *333.72]

Divide like 930–999, e.g., conservation of American national resources 339.497 3

For conservation of land resources, see 333.72; *planned economy,* 338.91

340 Law

Use 340.03–340.06 for form divisions

For law of a specific subject not provided for in 340–349, see the subject, e.g., marriage law 301.420 26

.09 History [*formerly* *340.9] and local treatment

.1 Philosophy and theory

Including law of nature (natural law)

.3 Legal antiquities

Including torture, trial by ordeal, trial by duel, benefit of clergy

.4 Trial by jury

.5 Comparative legislation

.6 Medical jurisprudence (Forensic medicine)

Including expert medical testimony [*formerly* †614.23], forensic psychiatry, coroner's inquest

Class medical privilege [*formerly* *340.6] in 614.2

For state control of medicine, see 614.2; *criminal investigation,* 364.12; *autopsies,* 616.075 9

.9 Legal anecdotes

Class history [*formerly* *340.9] in 340.09

341 International law (Law of nations)

Comprehensive works on international laws which govern public relations between independent states, private relations between their citizens, in peace and war

Including jurisdiction on land, sea, and air; international cooperation of states

For international law relating to a specific subject, see the subject, e.g., sovereignty of nations 320.157; *ethics of international relations,* 172.4; *foreign relations,* 327

.1 Peace plans and movements

Comprehensive works on world peace

For pacific settlement of disputes, see 341.6; *foreign policy of specific countries,* 327.3–327.9; *ethics of peace,* 172.4

341.11 International associations of sovereign states

Organizations general in character or dedicated to establishment and maintenance of peace

Including public financing of international organizations [*formerly* *336.09]; comprehensive works on organization and administration of public and private international associations, conferences, congresses, conventions

For international organizations devoted to a specific subject, see the subject, e.g., International Bank for Reconstruction and Development 332.15

.12 League of Nations

Divide like 341.13, e.g., League of Nations charter 341.122

.13 United Nations

Including comprehensive works on United Nations agencies

For an agency devoted to a specific subject, see the subject, e.g., International Civil Aviation Organization 387.706 11, *UNESCO* 060

.132 Charter

.133 General Assembly

Including general committees

.135 Security Council and its committees

.137 Secretariat

Including executive office, departments, personnel

.139 Relationships of governments and regions to United Nations

Divide like 940–999, e.g., Canada and the United Nations 341.139 71

.18 Regional international organizations

Divide like 940–999, e.g., Organization of American States 341.187

For Pan-Americanism, see 327.7

341.2 Treaties

Including treaty making, texts of treaties

Divide like 930–999, e.g., treaties of Great Britain 341.242

For treaties between two countries, add 0 and divide further like 930–999, e.g., treaties between Great Britain and Portugal 341.242 046 9

In determining the sequence of notation for two countries, give priority to the local country, e.g., treaties between United States and Great Britain 341.273 042 in a United States library, 341.242 073 in a British library; for treaties between two foreign countries, follow the numerical sequence of 930–999, e.g., treaties between France and Great Britain 341.242 044, between Japan and France 341.244 052

For treaties relating to a specific subject, see the subject, e.g., postal convention 383.4; *treaties signed at termination of a war, history of the war, e.g., Treaty of Ghent* 973.521; *diplomacy and diplomatic service,* 341.7; *international relations,* 327

.3 Law of war

For war crimes, see 341.4; *martial law,* 344; *military science,* 355

.31 Belligerency and belligerents

Including commencement, conduct, termination of war; reprisals, spies, atrocities, amnesty, blockade, invasion, right of asylum for belligerents; rights of civilians, noncombatants, sick and wounded combatants

For pacific blockade, see 341.65; *naval blockade tactics,* 359.4; *protection of civilians,* 355.232 2

.32 Belligerent occupation

Including administration of occupied territories, military government, military trials by occupying forces, exploitation of enemy resources and property, booty

For disposal of enemy property, see 336.12

.33 Prisoners of war

Including repatriation and exchange of prisoners, internment of belligerents by neutral nations

For work of Red Cross with prisoners, see 361.53; *political prisoners,* 365.4; *military prisoners,* 355.12

.35 Neutrality and neutrals

Including commerce of neutral nations, contraband of war, right of visit and search, armed neutrality, nonintervention

341.36 Law of maritime warfare

Including privateering, prizes of war, prize courts, submarine warfare, letters of marque

For rights of search, see 341.35; *science of naval warfare,* 359; *privateering in United States Revolution,* 973.35

.37 Law of air warfare

Including aerial attack on cultural objects, open cities

For science of air warfare, see 358.4

.39 Civil war and international law

Relation of other nations to nation undergoing civil war

.4 Crimes against law of nations

Including genocide; extraterritorial crime; punishment of criminals; war crimes

For piracy, see 364.13

.41 Trials of war criminals

Including Nuremberg trials

For military trials by occupying forces, see 341.32

.49 International criminal law

Including jurisdiction, procedure, extradition, immunity

For criminal trials, see 343.1; *exterritoriality,* 341.7

.5 Special topics of international law

For a specific subject of international law not provided for here, see the subject, e.g., genocide 341.4

[*.51] Nationality and citizenship

Class in 323.61

.57 International commercial and maritime law

Including freedom of the seas, open seas, collisions at sea, shipwreck

For commercial and maritime law of a specific subject, see the subject, e.g., international air rights 387.7; *commerce of neutral nations,* 341.35; *domestic commercial and maritime law,* 347.7; *law of maritime warfare,* 341.36

.59 Private international law

Comprehensive works on conflicts of laws of different countries affecting private interests applicable to persons

Including regulation of jurisdictions

For a specific subject of private international law, see the subject, e.g., bankruptcy 332.75

341.6 Pacific settlement of disputes

Including negotiation, good offices, conciliation and commissions of inquiry, outlawry of war

For world peace, see 341.1; *settlement of a specific dispute, the subject, e.g., of Oregon boundary dispute* 973.61

.63 International arbitration and mediation

Including judicial settlement; courts of international arbitration, e.g., Hague Permanent Court of Arbitration

For prize courts, see 341.36

.65 Compulsive measures short of war

Including sanctions, pacific blockade, embargo, economic boycott, intervention, international police

For embargo in international trade, see 337.3

.67 Reduction and limitation of armaments

Including disarmament, demilitarization

For demobilization, see 355.2

.672 International control of nuclear weapons

.674 Limitation of chemical warfare weapons

.675 Limitation of biological warfare weapons

.7 Diplomacy and diplomatic service

Conduct of official relations between governments as controlled by international law and custom

Including capitulations, exterritoriality, diplomatic privileges and immunities, foreign service, protocol

For world politics, see 909; *accounts of international relations of a particular country,* 327.3–327.9; *diplomatic history of a specific war or other event, the war or event, e.g., United States diplomatic relations in Civil War* 973.72; *treaties,* 341.2

.8 Consular service [*formerly also* †382.2]

342 Constitutional law and history

Comprehensive works on fundamental law of states

Including civics, comparative government [*both formerly* *320.9]

Divide like 930–999, e.g., Constitution of France 342.44

Divide further by 01 texts, 02 constitutional conventions, 03 systems and commentaries, 04 essays and lectures, 08 collections, 09 history (for United States omit 0), e.g., history of British Constitution 342.420 9, United States Constitutional Convention 342.732

For theory of form of state, see 321; *organization and management of executive branch,* 350; *of legislative branch,* 328; *of judicial branch,* 347.9; *a specific subject in constitutional law, the subject, e.g., electoral systems* 324.21

343 Criminal law

For comprehensive works on criminology and criminal law, see 364; *penology,* 365; *martial law,* 344; *international criminal law,* 341.49

.09 History and local treatment

Divide like 930–999, e.g., criminal law of Great Britain 343.094 2

Divide further by 01 penal codes; 02 reports; 03 criminal procedure, trials, evidence; 04 handbooks and outlines (for United States omit 0); e.g., criminal procedure in Great Britain 342.094 203, criminal code in United States 343.097 31

.1 Criminal procedure, trials, evidence

Comprehensive works

Including cross-examination, trial practice, instructions to juries, bail

For trials of a specific kind of crime, see the kind, e.g., of murder 343.52; *expert medical testimony,* 340.6; *criminal investigation,* 364.12; *trial by jury,* 340.4; *criminal courts,* 347.9; *correctional courts,* 364.5

.2 Punishments

Comprehensive works

For military discipline, see 355.133; *imprisonment,* 365; *school discipline,* 371.54; *punishment of a specific crime, the crime, e.g., of arson* 343.6

.23 Capital punishment

.25 Corporal punishment

343.3–.7 Law of specific crimes and offenses

Including procedure, trials, evidence, punishments

Divide like 364.13–364.17, e.g., laws on homicide 343.52

For comprehensive works on crimes and offenses, see 364.1

344 Martial law [*formerly* *355.9]

Military authority to carry on government functions in times of war or emergency

Including military courts

Class administrative law [*formerly* *344] in 350

For military discipline and law, see 355.133

[*.1–*.2] Administrative tribunals and procedure

Class in 351.95

345–346 United States and British statutes and cases

If preferred, class United States and British statutes and cases with those of other countries in 349, e.g., United States Code 349.730 2, revised statutes of Canada 349.710 2, British reports 349.420 4

345 United States statutes and cases

For treatises on a specific subject, see the subject, e.g., law of contract 347.4, *school law* 379.14

.1 Session laws and statutes at large

.11 Statutes of United States federal government

.12 Statutes of states

Arrange alphabetically by state, using A1 for comprehensive works, e.g., statutes of Kansas 345.12 K1

.2 Codes and revised statutes

Divide like 345.1

.3 Law digests

Divide like 345.1

345.4 Reports

Including Supreme Court reports, Attorney General's opinions

.41 Circuit and district court reports

.415 Reporter services for regions and groups of states

.42 Reports of states

Arrange alphabetically by state, using A1 for comprehensive works, e.g., reports of California 345.42 C1

.5 Digests of cases

Divide like 345.1

346 British statutes and cases

Including United Kingdom, all parts of Commonwealth of Nations

Divide like 345, e.g., revised statutes of Canada 346.2

For treatises on a specific subject, see the subject, e.g., law of contract 347.4, *school law* 379.14

347 Law treatises

Treatises on law of United States, Commonwealth of Nations, other countries [*formerly* subdivision †07 under †349.41–†349.99], Roman law [*formerly* †349.377]

Including comprehensive works on common law

For statutes and cases of United States, see 345; *of Commonwealth of Nations,* 346; *of other countries,* 349; *a specific kind of common law, the subject, e.g., criminal law* 343

347.1–347.8 Law treatises by topic

If preferred, arrange alphabetically by topic

For law of a specific subject not provided for here, see the subject, e.g., wage laws 331.26

.1 Law of persons

Including natural and artificial persons, e.g., corporations as juristic person; minors; legal capacity

For law of organization of business corporations, see 658.1; *individual rights and protection,* 323.4

347.2 Law of real property

Land and what is erected or growing upon or affixt to it

Including comprehensive works on law of real and personal property

For inheritance and succession, see 347.65; *mortgages,* 332.72; *real-estate business,* 333.33; *law of personal property,* 347.3

.3 Law of personal property

Including personal and real chattels, movables

For chattel mortgages, see 332.743

.4 Law of contract and quasi contract

.42 Law of sale

Including comprehensive works on sales contracts, e.g., cash sales, sales on approval

For a specific kind of sale, see the subject, e.g., bankruptcy sale 332.75

.5 Law of tort, negligence, damage

Comprehensive works on private or civil wrong or injury independent of a contract

For a specific action in tort, see the subject, e.g., libel and slander 070.13; *criminal law,* 343

.6 Domestic relations law

Including family law, community property, illegitimacy

For marriage and divorce law, see 301.420 26; *adoption law,* 362.73; *family ethics,* 173

.65 Probate law and practice

Including inheritance and succession, wills and testaments, estate planning, guardianship, orphans' courts

For trust functions of banks, see 332.14

.7 Commercial (Business) law

Comprehensive works

Including agency law

For commercial law of a specific subject, see the subject, e.g., law of organization of corporations 658.1

.75 Maritime law

Comprehensive works

For maritime law of a specific subject, see the subject, e.g., maritime transport laws 387.51; *international law of the sea,* 341.57

347.8 Equity (Chancery)

Including courts of equity and chancery

.9 Judicial system

Organization and management

Including legal advertising; procedure, trials, court rules; comprehensive works on civil, criminal, and administrative courts, procedure, trials

For criminal procedure and trials, see 343.1; *correctional courts,* 364.5; *administrative courts, tribunals, procedure,* 351.95; *organization and administrative management of United States Department of Justice,* 353.5; *of departments of justice of states of United States,* 353.9; *of departments of justice of other countries,* 354; *trial by jury,* 340.4; *individual rights and protection,* 323.4

.91 Civil trials

Including cross-examination, trial practice, instructions to juries, bail

.92 Pleading

Including briefs, arguments, declarations

.93 Legal forms

For legal advertising, see 347.9

.94 Evidence (Proof)

Including testimony [*formerly also* †519.3], circumstantial evidence, affidavits, depositions, documentary evidence

For criminal evidence, see 343.1; *expert medical testimony,* 340.6

.95 Legal remedies

Including civil and judicial remedies, appellate procedure

.96 Local and auxiliary legal officers

Including justices of the peace, sheriffs, notaries public

For administration of local police departments, see 352.2

.97 Organization of courts

Comprehensive works

Class jurisdiction of central government courts in 347.98, history of central government courts in 347.99 [*both formerly* *347.97]

For courts of international arbitration, see 341.63; *organization of a specific kind of court, the court, e.g., juvenile court* 364.52; *court systems of specific countries,* 347.993–347.999

347.972 Organization of court systems of central governments

Including supreme courts

.973 Organization of state and provincial court systems [*formerly* *347.98]

.974 Organization of local court systems [*formerly* *347.99]

.98 Jurisdiction of courts

Comprehensive works

Including jurisdiction of central government courts [*formerly* *347.97], of local courts [*formerly* *347.99], of state courts

Class organization of state and provincial courts in 347.973, history of state and provincial courts in 347.99 [*both formerly* *347.98]

For jurisdiction of a specific kind of court, see the court, e.g., juvenile court jurisdiction 364.52; *court systems of specific countries,* 347.993–347.999

.99 History of courts

Comprehensive works

Including history of central government courts [*formerly* *947.97], of state and provincial courts [*formerly* *947.98], of local courts

Class organization of local courts in 347.974, jurisdiction of local courts in 347.98 [*both formerly* *347.99]

For history of a specific kind of court, see the court, e.g., of administrative courts 351.95

.993–.999 History of courts and court systems in specific countries

Including organization and jurisdiction; specific courts

Divide like 930–999, e.g., courts of France 347.994 4, Supreme Court of United States 347.997 3

348 Canon law (Ecclesiastical law) [*formerly* *262.9]

For church government and organization, see 262; *church discipline,* 262.9

348.1–348.2 Roman Catholic canon law

.1 Sources of canon law

Including all acts of councils, synods, popes

.12 Acts of the Holy See

Including pontifical decrees, apostolic letters, briefs and bulls, encyclicals

348.15 Miscellaneous collections of canons and decretals

Including Corpus juris canonici

.19 Other sources

.2 Codex juris canonici (1917)

.8 Canon law of other Christian churches

Divide like 280, e.g., Anglican ecclesiastical law 348.83

.9 Canon law of other religions

Divide like 290, e.g., Jewish law [*formerly* *296.38] 348.96

349 Foreign law

.3 Ancient law

Divide like 930, e.g., law of ancient Egypt 349.32

.37 Ancient Roman law

.371 Pre-Justinian law

Including the Twelve Tables

.372 Justinian Code (Corpus juris civilis)

For Institutes and Code, see 349.374; *Digest,* 349.375; *Novels,* 349.376

.374 Institutes and Code

.374 2 Code (Codex)

.374 4 Institutes (Institutiones)

.375 Digest (Digesta, Pandectae)

.376 Novels (Novellae constitutiones)

[†.377] Special topics

Class in 347

.4–.99 Statutes and cases of countries other than United States and Commonwealth of Nations

Including, if preferred, statutes and cases of United States and Commonwealth of Nations

Divide like 940–999, e.g., French statutes and cases 349.44

Add 0 and divide each country further like 345, e.g., French code 349.440 2

Class treatises on law of these countries [*formerly* subdivision †07 under †347.41–†347.99] in 347

350 Public administration

Organization and administrative management of executive branch of governments

Including relationship among executive, legislative, judicial branches [*formerly* *321.01]; administrative law [*formerly* *344]

For legislative branch, see 328; *judicial branch,* 347.9; *political science,* 320; *constitutional law,* 342; *business administration,* 658; *ethics of public officials,* 172.2; *a specific subject of public administrative action, the subject, e.g., foreign relations* 327

351 Administration of central governments

Comprehensive works

Including administration of governments of commonwealths under federal state

For administration of United States federal government, see 353; *of United States state governments,* 353.9; *of foreign central governments,* 354; *of local governments,* 352; *military science,* 355–359

SUMMARY

351.1 Public service organization
.2 Lists of officials and employees
.3 Civil service examinations
.4 Tenure of office
.5 Government pensions
.6 Civil service reform
.7–.8 Organization of specific administrative activities of governments
.9 Control over public administration

.1 Public service organization

Including civil service employees; bureaucracy

.12 Job classification [*formerly* *351.2]

Including job analysis [*formerly* *351.2], salaries [*formerly* *351.5], classified pay plans, wage incentives, deductions

.13 Selection of personnel [*formerly* *351.3]

Including requirements and qualifications, recruitment, veterans' preference

For civil service examinations, see 351.3

.14 Placement of personnel [*formerly* *351.3]

Including promotion and transfer [*both formerly* *351.5], service standards and evaluation, performance rating

.15 Training of personnel [*formerly* *351.3]

Including in-service training, internship, apprenticeship

351.16 Conditions of employment [*formerly* *351.5]

Including days and hours of work, holidays, vacations, leaves of absence, sick leave; employee rights, duties, restrictions, political activities

.17 Employee relations

Including employee representation, suggestion systems, employee organizations, employee morale, right of appeal, hearings

.18 Separation from public service [*formerly* *351.5]

Including layoff, abolition of position, resignation, reinstatement, discharge

For pensions, see 351.5; *tenure of office,* 351.4

.2 Lists of officials and employees

Including registers

Class job analysis and classification for public service [*formerly* *351.2] in 351.12

.3 Civil service examinations

Including examinations for national, federal, state, local services, on all subjects

Divide like 000–999, e.g., examinations for accountants 351.365 7

Class selection, placement, training of personnel for public service [*all formerly* *351.3] in 351.13–351.15

.4 Tenure of office

Including discipline, loyalty investigations of employees

For separation from public service, see 351.18; *impeachment of public officials,* 351.99

.5 Government pensions

Class promotion, transfer in 351.14; salaries in 351.12; conditions of employment in 351.16; separation in 351.18 [*all formerly* *351.5]

.52 Civil service pensions

Including national, federal, state, local employees' pensions

.54 Military pensions

Including veterans' pensions, soldiers' bonuses

For war risk life insurance, see 368.364; *other veterans' benefits,* 355.115

351.6 Civil service reform

Including spoils system, patronage

.7 Organization of specific administrative activities of governments

For a specific subject of administrative activity, see the subject, e.g., education 370

.71 Financial activities of governments [*formerly* *336]

For public finance, see 336

.711 Government contracts

Including letting and renegotiation of contracts, war contracts

For industrial mobilization, see 355.24

.712 Government purchasing

For eminent domain, see 333.13; *military purchasing,* 355.8

.713 Government property

Including management of public buildings

For income from state domain and properties, see 336.1

.72 Government budgeting [*formerly* *336.395] and accounting [*formerly* *336.39]

For budgets and appropriations of a specific department, bureau, or office, see the subject, e.g., United States Department of the Interior budget 353.3; *public accounting,* 657.6

.74 Organization and administrative management of police services [*formerly* *364]

Including comprehensive works on national, state, local, private police services

Class criminal investigation [*formerly* †351.74] in 364.12

For local police, see 352.2; *military police,* 355.133; *international police,* 341.65; *a specific subject of police activity, the subject, e.g., highway traffic control* 388.312

.742 National police

Including secret service

.743 State police

Including state highway patrols

351.744 Private police

Including private detectives, industrial police

.75 Public order and security

Including comprehensive works on maintenance of and infringements upon public order and security

For a specific infringement, see the subject, e.g., subversive activities 364.13

.751 Press [*formerly* *070.13]

Legal control of the press, enforcement of censorship of press

For freedom of the press, see 323.445

.753 Weapons

Including regulations regarding possession and use of firearms

.76 Vice control

Including comprehensive works on regulation of liquor traffic, drug traffic, games of chance, betting, prostitution, immoral practices; vagrancy, begging

For regulation of a specific vice, see the subject, e.g., administration of drug control 614.35

.77 Sanitary control

Including comprehensive works on regulation of public health and sanitation

For local public health boards, see 352.4; *public health,* 614; *sanitary engineering,* 628; *a specific field of sanitation, the subject, e.g., sanitation of school buildings* 371.626

.78 Accidents

Including comprehensive works on building regulations and inspection, protection from fire and other accidents

For regulation of a specific subject, see the subject, e.g., fire regulations 614.84

.79 Organization and administrative management of other police services

.791 Policing waterways

Including port, river police

351.792 United States Coast Guard

Comprehensive works

Including Coast Guard in time of peace [*formerly* *359.97]

For Coast Guard in time of war, see 359.97

.8 Organization and administrative management of public welfare activities

Including comprehensive works on government administration and regulation of public works, means of communication, trade and industry, labor, charity, education, worship

For local public works, see 352.5; *management of public buildings,* 351.713; *promotion of a special kind of welfare, the subject, e.g., disaster relief* 361.5

.9 Control over public administration

Including administrative supervision and disciplinary power

.94 Judicial control

.95 Administrative tribunals [*formerly* *344.1] and courts

Comprehensive works

Including administrative procedure [*formerly* *344.2]

For administrative tribunals having jurisdiction over a specific subject, see the subject, e.g., public transportation commissions 385

.96 Legislative control

.98 Investigations

Comprehensive works on investigations of public officials

For a specific investigation, see the subject, e.g., loyalty of government employees 351.4

.99 Impeachments

Comprehensive works on impeachment of public officials

For impeachment of legislators, see 328.36; *of United States president,* 353.03

352 Administration of local governments

Including counties, cities, boroughs, villages, metropolitan areas

Use 352.000 1–352.000 8 for form divisions

352.001–352.008 General questions of local administration

For government of a specific local jurisdiction, or of local jurisdictions in a specific area, see 352.03–352.09

352.001 Growth and importance of cities

.002 Local governments and state control

.003 City as juristic person, as corporation

For law of corporations, see 347.1

.004 Local elections

.005 Local civil service

For civil service examinations, see 351.3

.008 Forms of administration

Including commission, manager, council-manager systems

.03–.09 General administration of local governments by place

Including specific governments

Divide like 930–999, e.g., municipal government in United States 352.073, government of Boston 352.074 46

If preferred, arrange cities alphabetically under countries or states, using A1 for comprehensive works, e.g., government of Boston 352.074 4 B7

.1 Local government finance [*formerly* *336]

Including financial administration, finance department

For public ownership of land, see 333.1; *government ownership of public utilities,* 380.166 2

.12 Budgets

.13 Revenue and taxation [*formerly* †*336.28]

For a specific tax, see the tax, e.g., poll tax 336.25

.132 Revenues from other sources

Including service charges, fees, fines, gifts

.14 Borrowing and debts

Including bonds, short-term borrowing, debt limitation, sinking funds, default, war loans

.15 Expenditures

Including cost of government, subsidies, bounties

352.16 Purchasing

Including centralized purchasing

.17 Accounting and auditing

352.2–352.9 Departments of local government

Organization and administrative management

For a specific substantive function of a local government department, see the subject, e.g., crime investigation 364.12; *finance department,* 352.1

.2 Local police department

.23 Police officers

Including policemen, policewomen, sheriffs, constables

.3 Local fire department

.4 Local public health department

Including boards of health, sanitary commissions

.5 Local public works

Including government ownership of public works and buildings

.6 Water and sewage works

Including water districts

.7 Streets, highways, bridges, parks

Including park districts, community centers

.8 Local license bureaus

Including licensing practices; franchises

For licensing of a specific item, see the subject, e.g., automobile licenses 629.213 4

.9 Other departments

Including coroners

353 United States federal government

Organization and administrative management of executive branch

Including comprehensive works on federal and state governments

Use 353.001–353.009 for form divisions

For state governments, see 353.9; *legislative branch,* 328.73; *judicial branch,* 347.9; *constitutional law and history,* 342.73; *governments of other countries,* 354; *a specific substantive function of the federal government, the subject, e.g., postal service* 383.497 3

.01 Administrative centralization

.02 Separation of powers [*formerly* *321.01]

353.03 Presidency

Including vice-presidency

.032 Powers and duties

Including legislative, treaty-making, military, supervisory, veto power

.034 Term of office

Including third term

.035 Presidential messages

Including collected writings of presidents relating to official duties

Class collections of unofficial writings, of official and unofficial writings of a president in the narrowest number which will include their whole scope, e.g., papers covering the social sciences 308.1

For official or unofficial writings on a specific subject, see the subject, e.g., United States educational system 370.973

.04 Departments

Comprehensive works

For specific departments, see 353.1–353.8

.05 Cabinet

.09 Independent agencies

Comprehensive works on agencies responsible directly to the President, rather than to a cabinet member

For a specific agency, see the subject, e.g., Civil Service Commission 351.106 173

353.1–353.8 Executive departments

For a specific bureau or office, see the subject of its functional activities, e.g., Children's Bureau 362.706 173

.1 Department of State

.2 Department of the Treasury

.3 Department of the Interior

.4 Post Office Department

.5 Department of Justice

For courts, see 347.9

353.6 Department of Defense

Including Department of the Army; comprehensive works on Departments of the Army, Navy, and Air Force

Class Department of the Navy in 353.7, Department of the Air Force in 358.4 [*both formerly* *353.6]

.7 Department of the Navy [*formerly* *353.6]

.8 Other departments

.81 Department of Agriculture

.82 Department of Commerce

.83 Department of Labor

.84 Department of Health, Education and Welfare

.9 United States state governments

Organization and administrative management of executive branches

Divide 353.974–353.979 like 974–979, e.g., government of New York State 353.974 7; further subdivide for each state like 353.01–353.8, e.g., Judiciary Department of New York State 353.974 75

For regimental histories, see 355–359

.92 Interstate relations

Including interstate agreements, cooperation, disputes

For interstate relations on a specific subject, see the subject, e.g., parole 364.62

354 Central governments in countries other than United States

Organization and administrative management of executive branches

Including commonwealth governments under federal states, e.g., government of state of South Australia

Divide like 930–999, e.g., executive branch of government of France 354.44

Under each country, divide further like 353.01–353.09, e.g., president of France 354.440 3. Under each country divide 06 like 353.1–353.8, e.g., Ministère des Finances of France 354.440 62. Exceptions for England and Germany are given below

.42 Central government of United Kingdom

.420 4 Privy Council

354.43 Central government of Germany

[†.430 32] Bundesrat

Class in 328.43

[†.430 34] Ministry

Class in 354.430 5

.430 5 Ministry [*formerly* †354.430 34]

355–359 Military science

Including histories of military units covering more than one war

For history of units limited to a specific war, see the war, e.g., regimental histories of the United States in World War I 940.412 73; *history of a specific war, campaign, or battle, the subject, e.g., campaigns of World War I* 940.42–940.43

355 Elements of warfare

Including military organization and administration, military policy, services which supply and maintain combat units, mutual defense assistance; comprehensive works on land forces, on land, sea, and air forces

For a specific branch of the armed forces, see the branch, e.g., infantry 356, *naval forces* 359; *organization and administrative management of United States Department of Defense,* 353.6; *of Department of the Navy,* 353.7; *of ministries or departments of war, defense, navy of other countries,* 354; *of air force ministries or departments of United States and other countries,* 358.4; *law of war,* 341.3; *martial law,* 344; *war customs,* 399; *ethics of war and peace,* 172.4; *military engineering,* 623

SUMMARY

355.1 Military life
.2 Military resources, recruitment, mobilization
.3 Organization of military forces
.4 Tactics and strategy
.5 Training maneuvers and exercises
.6 Central military administration and maintenance
.7 Military installations
.8 Military equipment, supplies, matériel
.9 Other elements and services

355.1 Military life

Class enlisted personnel in 355.338, officers in 355.33 [*both formerly* *355.1]

.11 Service periods and their termination

Including length of service

.112 Promotion

For military rewards, see 355.134

.113 Inactive periods

Including leaves, furloughs, reserve status, sick leaves, status during captivity or internment

.114 Termination of military service

Including retirement, resignation, discharge, reinstatement, desertion

.115 Veterans

Including rights and benefits of veterans and their dependents, opportunities and special provisions for military personnel returning to civilian life

For military pensions, see 351.54; *old soldiers' and sailors' homes,* 362.61

.115 2 Veterans' education and training benefits

.115 4 Veterans' employment

Including rehiring, re-employment

For veterans' preference in civil service, see 351.13

.115 6 Disabled veterans

Including rehabilitation for civilian life

For veterans' hospitals, see 362.11

.12 Living conditions and customs in peace and war

Including prisoners of war

.123 Servicemen's morale

.125 Servicemen's recreation

Including entertainment

For organization and administration of recreational services, see 355.346

355.13 Military discipline, honor, remuneration

Including military ethics, etiquette, duels

For etiquette of uniforms, see 355.14

.133 Military discipline and law [*formerly* *355.9]

Including military authority and obedience, military police, enforcement of military law, justice, punishments

For martial law and military courts, see 344; *judge advocate general's department,* 355.6

.133 2 Courts-martial and courts of inquiry

Including general, special, summary courts-martial; military tribunals, trials for military offenses

.133 4 Military offenses

Including insubordination, pillage, mutiny

For desertion, see 355.114

.134 Military rewards and privileges

Including salutes, honorary insignia, decorations, medals, badges, orders; gifts, special privileges, special bonuses

For promotions, see 355.112; *etiquette of uniforms,* 355.14

.135 Remuneration

Including allowances

For military pensions, see 351.54; *methods and records of pay,* 355.64

.14 Uniforms

Comprehensive works on military uniforms

Including etiquette of uniforms, regulations, uniforms as costumes

For procurement, issue, use of uniforms, see 355.81; *administration of clothing department,* 355.66; *honorary insignia,* 355.134

.15 Colors and standards

Including flags, color guards in military use

For flags in heraldry, see 929.9

.16 Military celebrations

Including commemorations, anniversaries, jubilees

For celebrations relating to a specific war, see the war, e.g., celebrations of American Revolution 973.36

.17 Military ceremonials

Including funerals

355.2 Military resources, recruitment, mobilization

Value, availability, mobilization of peacetime resources for use in war or national defense

Including demobilization

For administration after being taken over by military authorities, see 355.6

.21 Economic preparedness

Readiness of resources for mobilization

Including sabotage of military resources

Class conscription of wealth and property, military tax [*both formerly* †355.21] in 355.26

.22 Military manpower

.223 Recruitment and enlistment

Including conscription, drafting, commissioning, examinations for acceptance, foreign enlistments

.224 Conscientious objectors

.225 Compulsory military service

Including universal military training and service

.23 Mobilization of civilian manpower

Including allocation of workers to essential industry, civilian morale, duties of civilians, internment of civilians and enemy aliens

For military prisons, see 355.71

.232 Civil defense

Protection of civilian life and property from enemy attack

Including organization, administration of civil defense agencies; civil defense volunteers and employees

For engineering aspects, see 623.3; *national defense by military,* 355.45; *disaster preparedness and relief,* 361.5

.232 1 Civil defense training

Including programs and courses in civil defense operations

For maneuvers involving civilian population, see 355.58

355.232 2 Protection of civilian population

Including protection from air raids, bombing, fire; from atomic, biological, chemical warfare; from subversive activities; blackouts, evacuation

For survival instructions, see 613.69; *preventive measures against radioactive fallout,* 614.715; *detection of aircraft,* 355.232 6

.232 3 Protection of property

Including compensation for damages

For war risk insurance, see 368.14

.232 6 Detection of aircraft

Including warning systems; volunteer organizations, e.g., United States Ground Observer Corps

For protection of civilian population from air raids, see 355.232 2; *description and identification of military aircraft,* 623.74; *of civil aircraft,* 629.133 34

.24 Mobilization of raw materials

.26 Mobilization of industrial resources

Including conscription of wealth and property, military tax [*both formerly* †355.21]; defense industries, priorities, allocation of materials, commercial mobilization

.27 Mobilization of transportation and communication facilities

For military transportation engineering, see 623.6; *military communication engineering,* 623.73

.28 Military requisitions

Including application of emergency powers, calls to arms, commandeering of property, establishment of military zones

For requisition of a specific resource, see the subject, e.g., raw materials 355.24

.3 Organization of military forces

Including personnel

For central military administration and maintenance, see 355.6

355.31 Military units and organization

Organization for administrative purposes

Including armies, corps, divisions, regiments, smaller units; special units and formations, e.g., foreign legion, parade and inspection units

For grouping of units according to field of service, see 355.35; *a specific branch of the armed forces, the branch, e.g., infantry* 356

.33 Military hierarchy

Including officers [*formerly* *355.1], line and staff functions; comprehensive works on classification and rank or grade of personnel

For personnel performing a specific function, see the function, e.g., personnel in special services 355.34

.331 General command

Comprehensive works on command of large or small units

Including leadership and command of troops

For psychology of leadership, see 301.155

.338 Enlisted personnel [*formerly* *355.1]

.34 Special services

Work in the armed forces not strictly military

Including administrative services, supply services [*both formerly* *355.36]; public information services [*formerly* *355.9]

Class signal and communications services [*formerly* †355.34] in 358.24

.343 Intelligence services

Including psychological warfare services [*formerly* *355.42], counterintelligence, military mapping and cryptanalysis functions, espionage, counterespionage

For comprehensive works on cryptanalysis, see 652.8; *military cryptography,* 358.24; *diplomatic espionage,* 327.1

.345 Medical services [*formerly* *356.92]

Including dental, veterinary, nursing services

For military hygiene, see 613.67; *military hospitals,* 355.72; *military medicine,* 616.980 23

.346 Recreational services

Including bands, libraries

For recreational life of servicemen, see 355.125; *military post and warship libraries,* 027.65

355.347 Religious services

Including chaplains

.348 Women's services

.35 Major combat units

Armies groupt according to field of service

Including home guards, frontier troops, colonial armies, expeditionary forces

Class reserves [*formerly* †355.351] in 355.37

.356 Allied forces

United forces of coalitions or alliances

.357 International forces

Troops from several countries under unified command acting by supernational authorization

[*.36] Service elements

Class administrative, supply troops in 355.34, technical troops in 358.3

.37 Reserves [*formerly* †355.351]

.4 Tactics and strategy

Plans for attack and defense; plans of battle

For practice maneuvers, see 355.5

.41 Logistics and field service

Movement and supply of troops

.411 March tactics

Tactics of troops on the move

Including night marches, forst marches, mechanized movement

.412 Encampment tactics

Including making and moving of camp, guard duty, outposts

.413 Military reconnaissance

Including scouting, patrols

For aerial reconnaissance, see 358.45

.415 General tactical services

Other tactics in support of battle tactics

Including establishment and maintenance of lines of communication, maintenance of supply service

For military engineering aspects, see 623.6–623.7

355.42 Tactics

Offensive and defensive tactics in battle

Including tactical deception and camouflage

Class psychological warfare in 355.343, strategic deception and camouflage in 355.43 [*all formerly* *355.42]

.422 Battle tactics

Including debarkation and landing maneuvers, skirmishing, counterattacks, retreats

For training maneuvers, see 355.5

.423 Influence of terrain on operations

Including tactics in forests, mountains, jungles, deserts; along rivers

.424 Use of various auxiliary means

Including military use of dogs, pigeons, balloons in communication

For barrage balloons, see 623.744

.425 Guerrilla warfare

Including Indian fighting

For guerrillas, see 356.15

.426 Street fighting

Including riot duty, house-to-house fighting

.43 Strategy

General plan of war or campaign, deployment of forces

Including strategic deception and camouflage [*both formerly* *355.42], strategic intelligence, combined strategy of offensive and defensive operations, evaluation of forces and influence of morale

For tactical deception and camouflage, see 355.42

.44 Siege warfare

.45 National defense

Including fortified defensive positions and zones, defense of industrial areas, frontiers, coasts, military occupation by troops

For military engineering aspects, see 623.1–623.3; *civil defense,* 355.232; *military government,* 341.32; *coast defense by navy,* 359.4

355.47 Military geography

Geographic works written from military point of view; works on strategic conditions in particular theaters of operation

Divide like 930–999, e.g., military geography of United States 355.477 3

For military topography, see 623.71

.48 Technical analyses of military events

Including analyses of specific wars, campaigns, battles; imaginary wars and battles

For history of a specific war, campaign, or battle, see the subject, e.g., campaigns of World War I 940.42–940.43

.5 Training maneuvers and exercises

Including drills, military practice and games

For training maneuvers and exercises of a specific branch of the service, see the branch, e.g., infantry maneuvers 356.18

.52 Grand maneuvers

Including war games with two armies

.54 Basic training of units

Including tactical exercises for recruits, bayonet practice, target practice, self-defense for military purposes, maneuvers not limited to any one branch of the service

For combat sports, see 796.8

[†.541] Foot maneuvers

Class in 356.18

[†.542] Mounted and motorized maneuvers

Class mounted and motorized infantry maneuvers in 356.18, cavalry maneuvers in 357.18

[†.543] Artillery maneuvers

Class in 358.1

.544 Camp and fortification operations

Including camp making, temporary fortifications, batteries, obstacles, demolition and repair; field kitchens

For military engineers, see 358.2; *special technical services,* 358.3

.55 Officers' maneuvers and exercises

Including theoretical problems, map and chart maneuvers

355.58 Maneuvers involving civil population

Including warning and intelligence service, rescue maneuvers

For civil defense training, see 355.232 1; *combat sports,* 796.8; *United States Ground Observer Corps,* 355.232 6

.6 Central military administration and maintenance

Including caring for animals; judge advocate general's department

For organization of forces, see 355.3; *military procurement,* 355.8; *military law,* 355.133

.61 General administration

Including adjutant's department, civilian employees, record keeping, filing systems, general correspondence, issuance of orders

.62 Execution of administrative measures

Including execution of contracts, accounting, finance

.63 Control and supervision

Including inspection service

.64 Paymaster's department

Including administration of pay, allowances, pensions

For government administration of military pensions, see 351.54; *military pay systems,* 355.135

.65 Subsistence department

Including administration of food supply service

For food supplies, see 355.81

.66 Clothing and equipment department

For description of clothing, see 355.81; *comprehensive works on uniforms,* 355.14

.67 Lodging administration

Including provision and maintenance of quarters

For quarters for personnel, see 355.71

.69 Other administrative services

Including graves registration service

355.7 Military installations

Organization and administration of permanent and quasi-permanent establishments

For military construction services, see 358.3; *military transportation engineering,* 623.6; *architecture of military buildings,* 725.18

.71 Quarters for personnel

Including barracks, camps, post exchanges, canteens, military prisons

For living conditions, see 355.12; *prisons and camps for prisoners of war,* 365.45

.72 Medical installations

Including hospitals, sanitariums

For veterans' hospitals, see 362.11; *medical services,* 355.345

.73 Artillery installations

Including arsenals [*formerly* †623.47], ordnance factories and depots, target ranges, artillery schools

For engineering aspects of ordnance, see 623.4; *artillery units,* 358.1

.74 Engineering installations

Including depots and testing grounds for engineering materials

For army engineers, see 358.2; *military engineering,* 623

.75 Supply depots and installations

Including provisions, forage, clothing, equipment

.8 Military equipment, supplies, matériel

Including military stores, procurement, issue, maintenance, quartermaster corps

For logistics, see 355.41; *central military administration and maintenance,* 355.6

.81 Clothing and camp equipment

Including food [*formerly* *355.88], cooking utensils

Class side arms [*formerly* *355.81] in 355.82

.82 Ordnance

Including ammunition [*formerly* *355.88], side arms [*formerly* *355.81]

Class trucks [*formerly* *355.82] in 355.83

For design, construction, repair of ordnance, see 623.4; *arsenals,* 355.73

355.83 Transportation equipment

Including trucks [*formerly* *355.82], gasoline [*formerly* *355.88], troop trains, wagon trains, sled and pack trains, troop ships, transport planes, military vehicles; packing and shipment of goods

For military transportation engineering, see 623.6

[*.88] Supplies

Class food in 355.81, ammunition in 355.82, gasoline in 355.83

.9 Other elements and services

Class military law in 355.133, martial law in 344, public relations in 355.34 [*all formerly* *355.9]

For international law of war, see 341.3; *military prisons,* 355.71; *military government of colonies,* 325.31

356 Infantry

Including personnel

For marine corps, see 359.96

.1 Infantry units

.11 Motorized and mounted infantry

Including motorcycle, mechanized infantry

For mechanized cavalry, see 357.5

.15 Irregular troops

Including self-organized infantry, guerrillas, brigand troops

For guerrilla warfare, see 355.425

.16 Special formations of infantry units

Including light infantry, sharpshooters, machine gunners, grenadiers

.164 Ski troops

Including mountain troops

.166 Airborne infantry [*formerly* *356.6]

Including paratroops

.18 Infantry maneuvers [*formerly also* †355.541–†355.542], tactics, equipment

.182 Drill regulations and guides

Including infantry manual of arms, marching guides

356.184 Small arms practice

Including firing, musketry

For ordnance, see 623.4; *gunnery,* 623.5; *gunsmithing,* 683.4

.186 Infantry equipment

Including clothing, arms

.2 Infantry staff officers and specialized personnel

For special technical services, see 358.3

.3 Administrative staff and auxiliary services

[*.4] Artillery

Class in 358.1

[*.5] Armored force

Class in 358.18

[*.6] Airborne force

Class in 356.166

[*.7] Communications

Class in 358.24

[*.92] Medical services

Class medical services in 355.345, military hygiene in 613.67, military medicine in 616.980 23

[*.93] Chemical warfare

Class chemical warfare services in 358.34, biological warfare services in 358.38

[*.94] Engineers

Class in 358.2

[*.95] Transportation

Class in 358.25

357 Cavalry and mounted services

Including personnel

For mounted infantry, see 356.11

357.1 Cavalry units

Including heavy, reserve, light cavalry; colonial, volunteer, irregular cavalry

For mechanized cavalry, see 357.5; *remount and training services,* 357.2

.18 Maneuvers [*formerly also* †355.542], tactics, equipment

Including cavalry manual of arms

.2 Remount and training services

Including remount manual, training cavalry mounts, remount depots, breeding and care of cavalry mounts, horsemanship

For horsemanship as a sport, see 798.2

.5 Mechanized cavalry

Including bicycle, motorcycle, automobile cavalry

For motorized infantry, see 356.11; *tanks, armored cars,* 358.18

358 Other arms and services

Including personnel, organization, equipment, tactics

[*.01–*.09] Air force functions and organization

Class in 358.41

.1 Artillery [*formerly* *356.4]

Comprehensive works on all types of artillery units

Including maneuvers [*formerly also* †355.543]

For antitank artillery, see 358.18

.12 Field artillery

.13 Antiaircraft artillery

.14 Motorized artillery

.16 Coast artillery

.18 Armored force [*formerly* *356.5]

Including tanks, antitank artillery

For mechanized cavalry, see 357.5

358.2 **Military engineers [*formerly* *356.94]**

Including sappers; pioneers; bridge, railroad, mining, torpedo troops

For depots and testing grounds, see 355.74; *military engineering,* 623; *naval engineers,* 359.982

.24 Communications services [*formerly also* †355.34, *formerly* *356.7]

Including military telegraph codes, military cryptography, signals and signaling

For military communication engineering, see 623.73; *military cryptanalysis,* 355.343

.25 Transportation services [*formerly* *356.95]

For air transportation services, see 358.44

.3 **Special technical services**

Services connected with construction of military buildings, manufacture of war matériel, munitions, powder; with camouflage

Including technical troops [*formerly* *355.36]

For military engineering, see 623; *military installations,* 355.7; *tactical camouflage,* 355.42; *strategic camouflage,* 355.43

.34 Chemical warfare services [*formerly* *356.93]

Including flame throwing

Class biological warfare services [*formerly* †358.345] in 358.38

.38 Biological warfare services [*formerly* †358.345, *356.93]

.39 Nuclear warfare services

Including use of atomic weapons other than explosives

For atomic bombing, see 358.42; *artillery,* 358.1

.4 **Air forces and services**

Including organization and administrative management of air force ministries or departments of United States [*formerly* *353.6] and other countries; air staffs and major commands; air combat and service forces; air warfare by army, navy [*formerly* *359.93], or air forces; air bases

For air navigation, see 629.132 51; *piloting of airplanes,* 629.132 52; *design and construction of aircraft,* 629.133

358.41 Air force functions and organization [*formerly* *358.01–*358.09]

Divide like 355 where applicable

For functions and organization of a specific command, see the command, e.g., strategy of bomber command 358.42

.418 Air force equipment, supplies, matériel

Including matériel commands, air service commands [*both formerly* *358.9]

.42 Air force bombing

Including functions of bombers, e.g., attack bomber, dive bomber; method of bombing, e.g., mass bombing, precision bombing; kind of bombing, e.g., incendiary bombing, atomic bombing; bomber commands

For ordnance, see 623.4

.43 Air force fighting

Aerial battles between or among opposing aircraft

Including pursuit aviation, fighter commands

.44 Air force transportation

Air transportation for all military agencies and services

.45 Aerial reconnaissance

Including air weather commands [*formerly* *358.9], strategic and tactical reconnaissance, weather reconnaissance

.46 Communications services

Including communication commands [*formerly* *358.9]

[*.9] Technical air services

Class weather commands in 358.45; air service commands, matériel commands in 358.418; communication commands in 358.46

359 Naval forces

Including naval science

Divide like 355 where applicable. Representative subdivisions are given below

For organization and administrative management of United States Department of the Navy, see 353.7; *of navy ministries or departments of other countries,* 354; *naval engineering,* 623.8; *naval history of a specific war, campaign, or battle, the subject, e.g., naval history of World War I* 940.45

.1 Naval life

.133 Naval law [*formerly* *359.6]

For naval judge advocate general, see 359.6

.2 Recruitment and requisition for naval forces

.3 Organization of naval forces

.31 Naval units

Including fleets, squadrons, flotillas, crews, divisions, gun crews

.32 Special types of ships

Including submarines, destroyers, warships, aircraft carriers

For building of military ships, see 623.825

.34 Special services

Including medical, dental, and nursing services [*all formerly* *359.98]; administrative and supply services [*both formerly* *359.36]

.35 Navies

[*.36] Service elements

Class administrative, supply units in 359.34; technical units in 359.98

.4 Naval tactics and strategy

Including naval warfare, fleet action, submarine warfare, mine warfare, raiding and blockading, coast defense [*all formerly* *359.9]; landing operations

For naval air warfare, see 358.4; *seamanship,* 623.88

.5 Training maneuvers and exercises

Including naval target practice [*formerly* †623.554]

359.6 Naval administration

Class naval law [*formerly* *359.6] in 359.133

.7 Naval installations

.8 Naval equipment, supplies, matériel

.9 Other services

Class naval warfare [*formerly* *359.9] in 359.4

[*.93] Naval air warfare

Class in 358.4

.96 Marine corps

Including amphibious warfare

.97 Coast guards

Class United States Coast Guard in peacetime [*formerly* *359.97] in 351.792

For coast defense, see 359.4

.98 Technical services

Including technical units [*formerly* *359.36], military underwater demolition teams, communication services

Class medical, dental, nursing services in 359.34; naval hygiene in 613.68 [*all formerly* *359.98]

For naval air services, see 358.4

.981 Naval artillery

For naval ordnance, see 623.4

.982 Naval engineers

Including naval construction battalions

For naval engineering, see 623.8

360 Social welfare

Including private and public services

For sociology, see 301; *social pathology,* 301.246

.9 History of social welfare [*formerly* *362.9]

361 Social work and social agencies

Comprehensive works

Including charities, philanthropy

For social work and social agencies dealing with specific classes of persons, see 362; *social ethics,* 177; *ethics of philanthropy,* 177.7

[.09] History of social work and social agencies

Class in 361.9

[†.1] Medical aid

Class in 362.1

.2 Social welfare planning

Class aid according to place where given [*formerly* †361.2] in 362

.3 Social casework

Method of helping people thru social service and personal counseling to make adjustments to life problems

Class aid according to person receiving [*formerly* †361.3] in 362

.4 Social group work

Social adjustment of individuals promoted by participation in voluntary groups and with assistance of group leader

Class aid according to kind [*formerly* †361.4] in 362

.43 Work of settlement houses [*formerly* †331.85]

Including neighborhood centers

.5 Disaster relief

Including preparedness, rescue work

.506 Red Cross services

Comprehensive works

For a specific kind of Red Cross service, see the subject, e.g., flood relief 361.52, *nurses' aides* 610.73

.51 Earthquake relief

.52 Flood relief

361.53 War relief

Including relief of displaced persons, refugees, prisoners of war

For refugees of a specific war, see the war, e.g., World War II refugees 940.531 59; *civil defense against enemy attack,* 355.232

.54 Relief from epidemics and pandemics

.55 Famine relief

.56 Relief from fires

Including relief from explosions

.57 Storm relief

Including snowstorms, rainstorms, windstorms

.6 Public welfare work by government agencies

Including administrative and statistical reports

For a specific welfare service, see the service, e.g., old age pensions 362.6

.7 Private welfare work

Including administrative and statistical reports of individual welfare agencies, e.g., Travelers' Aid Society

For cooperative agencies, see 361.8; *parish welfare work,* 258

.73 Welfare fund raising

Including charitable bazaars, drives, donations, subscriptions

For church bazaars, see 254.8

.8 Cooperative welfare agencies

Agencies which collect funds thru drives and distribute them to private welfare organizations

Including social service exchanges, community chests, united charities

.9 History and development of social work and social agencies

For history and development of welfare services, see 362.9

362 Welfare services to special groups of persons [*formerly also* †361.3]

Including aid according to place where given [*formerly* †361.2], aid according to kind [*formerly* †361.4]

For welfare services to industrial workers, see 331.83; *architecture of health and welfare buildings,* 725.5; *household management,* 647.965

[.09] History of welfare services

Class in 362.9

.1 Welfare services to physically ill

Including medical aid [*formerly* †361.1] and welfare work; medical records librarians

For sickness insurance, see 368.42; *medical sciences,* 610

.11 Services of general hospitals and allied institutions

Comprehensive works

Including infirmaries, contagious wards, veterans' hospitals

For military hospitals, see 355.72; *naval hospitals,* 359.72; *children's hospitals,* 362.78; *nurses and nursing,* 610.73; *public health nursing,* 610.734; *ambulance service,* 362.18; *hospitals for specific diseases,* 362.19; *maternity hospitals,* 362.15

.110 9 General hospitals in specific places

Including specific hospitals

Divide like 930–999, e.g., hospitals in San Francisco 362.110 979 461

.12 Services of dispensaries and clinics

Including outpatient care; medical centers

.13 Services of bath establishments and sanitariums for incurables

For health resorts, see 613.12; *soldiers' and sailors' homes,* 362.61; *services of sanitariums for specific diseases,* 362.19

.14 Services to medical cases treated at home

For home nursing, see 649.8; *public health nursing,* 610.734

.15 Services of maternity hospitals

Including maternity and infant welfare, homes for unmarried mothers, prenatal and postnatal care

For obstetrics, see 618.2; *pediatrics,* 618.92; *children's hospitals,* 362.78; *maternal and child welfare,* 362.7

362.16 Services of convalescent, nursing, rest homes

For institutions for aged, see 362.61

.18 Ambulance service [*formerly also* †614.881–†614.883]

For military ambulance service, see 355.345

.19 Services of hospitals and allied institutions for specific diseases

Including sanitariums, veterans' hospitals

Except as provided otherwise in 362.1–362.43, divide 362.196–362.198 like 616–618, e.g., sanitariums for patients suffering from cancer 362.196 994, orthopedic hospitals [*formerly* *362.43] 362.197 3

.2 Welfare services to mentally ill

Including psychiatric social work; hospitals and allied institutions

For treatment of mentally ill, see 616.8; *mental hygiene,* 131.3

.209 Welfare services to mentally ill in specific places

Including specific hospitals

Divide like 930–999, e.g., mental hospitals in Washington, D.C. 362.209 753

.3 Welfare services to mentally retarded

Including hospitals and allied institutions

For education of mentally retarded, see 371.92

.4 Welfare services to physically handicapt and disabled

Including service to spastics

For education and vocational rehabilitation of physically handicapt, see 371.91; *employment of physically handicapt,* 331.59; *disabled veterans,* 355.115 6; *hospitals and allied institutions for specific diseases and disablements,* 362.19

.41 Services to blind

Including partially sighted

For education of blind, see 371.911

.42 Services to deaf

Including deaf mutes, hard of hearing

For education of deaf and hard of hearing, see 371.912

.43 Services to crippled

Including treatment of paralytics, paraplegics, amputees

Class orthopedic hospitals [*formerly* *362.43] in 362.197 3

For services to crippled children, see 362.78

362.5 Welfare services to needy

Aid in form of money, food and other necessities

Including aid to tramps, beggars, paupers, transients, unemployables

For economic aspects of poverty, see 339.46; *unemployment relief,* 331.137; *unemployment insurance,* 368.44; *public employment services,* 331.115; *services to needy children,* 362.7; *to needy aged,* 362.6

.58 Legal aid

.6 Welfare services to aged

Including widows' pensions; aid to survivors, dependents, infirm; old-age assistance

Class mothers' pensions in 362.71, orphans' pensions in 362.73 [*both formerly* †362.625]

For old-age and survivors' insurance, see 368.43; *industrial pension plans,* 331.252; *geriatrics,* 618.97; *age discrimination in employment,* 331.113; *social gerontology,* 301.435

.61 Institutions for aged [*formerly also* †331.256], survivors, dependents

Including soldiers' and sailors' homes

For home care of aged and infirm, see 649.8; *nursing homes,* 362.16

.7 Welfare services to children and youth

Including services to infants; child welfare

For family welfare, see 362.8; *child labor,* 331.31; *young people's societies,* 369.4; *child care in the home,* 649.1; *prevention of cruelty to children,* 179.2; *sociology of youth groups,* 301.431

.71 Services to mothers

Including mothers' pensions [*formerly* †362.625], day nurseries

.72 Services to illegitimate children

Including foundlings

For law of illegitimacy, see 347.6

.73 Services to orphans and abandoned children

Including orphans' pensions [*formerly* †362.625], placement service, foster care, adoption

For law of guardianship, orphans' courts, see 347.65

362.74 Services of child guidance clinics

Comprehensive works

Including treatment and study of neglected and maladjusted children, social adjustment of children

For child psychology, see 136.7; *child care in the home,* 649.1; *vocational guidance,* 371.425

.745 Junior republics [*formerly* †364.722]

Including Boys' Town

For school city, school republic, see 371.59; *correctional institutions for juveniles,* 364.72

.78 Services of children's hospitals and institutions

Including services to sick and crippled children, summer camps for needy children

For maternity and infant welfare, see 362.15; *hospitals for specific diseases,* 362.19

.8 Family welfare services

Including family casework

For child welfare, see 362.7

.9 History and development of welfare services

Divide like 930–999, e.g., welfare services of New Zealand 362.993 1

Class history of social welfare [*formerly* *362.9] in 360.9

363 Political societies [*formerly* *329.8]

For political parties, see 329

.9 Political societies in specific places

Divide like 930–999, e.g., Ku-Klux Klan [*formerly* *366.6] 363.973, Tammany 363.974 71

364 Criminology and correctional institutions

Including comprehensive works on criminology and criminal law

Class organization and management of police services [*formerly* *364] in 351.74

For criminal law, see 343; *criminal courts,* 347.9; *police administration,* 351.74; *local police departments,* 352.2; *administration of vice control,* 351.76; *penology,* 365

SUMMARY

364.1 Crime
.2 Causes of crime and delinquency
.3 Criminal classes
.4 Crime prevention
.5 Correctional courts
.6 Corrective and reformative methods
.7 Correctional institutions and reformatories
.8 Discharged convicts and delinquents
.9 History of criminology

[.09] History of criminology

Class in 364.9

.1 Crime [*formerly* †364.2]

Comprehensive works

Including studies, investigations, popular accounts of crimes and criminals

Class adult criminals [*formerly* *364.1] in 364.37

For causes of crime, see 364.2; *criminal classes,* 364.3; *crime prevention,* 364.4; *social maladjustment,* 301.246; *detective and crime fiction, the* 800's

.12 Criminal investigation and identification [*formerly* †351.74]

Including collection and interpretation of criminal evidence; crime detection methods, e.g., chemical analysis, forensic ballistics, photography and microphotography, wire tapping

For medical jurisprudence, see 340.6; *law of evidence,* 347.94; *law of criminal evidence,* 343.1; *law enforcement,* 364.44

.122 Criminal identification by handwriting analysis

.123 Lie detection

Including lie detectors

For ethics of lying, see 177.3; *psychopathic lying,* 132.74

364.125 Fingerprint identification of criminals

Including criminal anthropometry [*formerly* †364.334]

For comprehensive works on fingerprinting and civilian identification, see 573.6; *fingerprinting of prisoners,* 365.642

364.13–364.172 Types of crimes and offenses

Comprehensive works on each type

Including criminals and offenders by type of crime [*both formerly* †364.38]

For military offenses, see 355.133 4; *law of specific crimes and offenses,* 343.3–343.72; *crimes against law of nations,* 341.4; *criminal classes,* 364.3

.13 Crimes and offenses against the state

Including piracy, treason, espionage, sabotage, conspiracy, seditious libel, subversive activities as a crime, public graft, bribery of officials and voters, illegal voting; offenses against public health and safety, against government and public administration, against postal laws

For corrupt election practices, see 324.27; *political revolutions,* 323.2; *international criminal law,* 341.49; *law of maritime warfare,* 341.36; *corruption of legislators,* 328.367; *military intelligence services,* 355.343; *loyalty investigations of public employees,* 351.4

.133 Offenses against revenue

Including counterfeiting, smuggling, bootlegging, tax evasion

.134 Offenses against justice

Including lynching [*formerly* *364.14], contempt of court

.14 Crimes and offenses against public order

Including rioting, unlawful assemblies, disorderly conduct; outlaws, brigands, illegal organizations, e.g., Mafia

Class lynching [*formerly* *364.14] in 364.134

For racketeering, see 364.163

.15 Crimes and offenses against the person

Including robbery [*formerly* *364.16], suicide, assault and battery, criminal abortion, criminal libel

.152 Homicide

Including murder, manslaughter, infanticide, assassination

364.153 Sex crimes and offenses

Including rape, seduction, prostitution, adultery, fornication

For crimes and offenses against public morals, see 364.17

.154 Kidnaping

Including abduction

.16 Crimes and offenses against property

Including arson

Class robbery [*formerly* *364.16] in 364.15

.162 Theft

Including burglary, larceny, stealing

For robbery, see 364.15

.163 Frauds

Including forgery, embezzlement, extortion, blackmail, racketeering, swindling

For detection of frauds in accounts, see 657.64; *art frauds,* 708.054; *frauds of museum materials,* 069.54

.17 Crimes and offenses against public morals

Including obscenity, pornography

For ethics of salacious art and literature, see 176.7–176.8; *sex crimes,* 364.153; *freedom of the press,* 323.445; *prohibited books,* 098.1

.172 Gambling

Including gambling at races, lotteries, games of chance

For lotteries as investments, see 332.68; *systems of gambling, betting,* 795.01; *ethics of gambling,* 174.6

.2 Causes of crime and delinquency

Including physical environment and heredity as factors in crime

Class comprehensive works on crime [*formerly* †364.2] in 364.1; adult offenders [*formerly* *364.2] in 364.37

.24 Physical and mental factors in crime

Qualities and characteristics of individual as causes of crime

Including physical abnormalities; factors of age, sex, health, mental superiority and inferiority, mental deficiency, emotional instability

Class criminal anthropology in 364.33, criminal psychology in 364.34 [*both formerly* *364.24]

For antisocial compulsions, see 132.6; *sex crimes,* 364.153

364.25 Social factors and crime

Including social progress and social environment as causes of crime

For law enforcement, see 364.44; *social work and social agencies,* 361; *social disorganization,* 301.246

.254 Cultural factors and crime

Including influence of theater, motion pictures, art, literature, comic books, radio, television

For problems caused by illiteracy, see 379.2

.255 Leisure and recreation factors in crime

Including influence of amusement and public parks, public dance halls, poolrooms, bars, cabarets, automobiles

.256 Social conflicts as factors in crime

Including individual social maladjustments; immigration, class hatreds, racial conflicts, feuds, vendettas

.26 Economic factors and crime

Including industry, labor, capital, employment, unemployment, strikes, standards and cost of living, poverty as causes of crime

.3 Criminal classes

Persons who have committed crimes and been apprehended

For criminals and offenders by type of crime, see 364.13–364.172

.32 The criminal type

Including recidivists, repeaters, habitual and professional criminals, occasional criminals, single offenders

.33 Criminal anthropology [*formerly* *364.24]

[†.334] Criminal anthropometry

Class in 364.125

.34 Criminal psychology [*formerly* *364.24]

Comprehensive works

For abnormal mental factors as causes of crime, see 364.24; *antisocial compulsions,* 132.6; *psychology of a specific type of criminal, the type, e.g., of arsonists* 364.16

.35 Predelinquents and predelinquency

Including potential, near or quasi-delinquents

364.36 Juvenile delinquents and delinquency

Including incorrigibility of juveniles

For juvenile courts, see 364.52; *parole,* 364.62; *probation,* 364.63; *correctional institutions for juveniles,* 364.72; *truants and truancy,* 371.52; *education of juvenile delinquents,* 371.93; *influence of art, literature, entertainment mediums on crime,* 364.254

.360 9 Juvenile delinquency in specific countries

Divide like 930–999, e.g., juvenile delinquency in New York City 364.360 974 71

.363 Boys

Including gangs of boys

.364 Girls

Including gangs of girls

.37 Adult offenders [*formerly* *364.1–*364.2]

Including men, women

.374 Groups of offenders

For offenses of illegal organizations, e.g., Mafia, see 364.14

[†.38] Offenders by type of crime committed

Class in 364.13–364.172

.4 Crime prevention

Including special measures to control or influence economic and social institutions and conditions; rational treatment of offenders, cooperation of public

For services of child guidance clinics, see 362.74

.42 Control of population

Including use of eugenic practices, e.g., birth control, sterilization; control of immigration and emigration; segregation

.44 Law enforcement

Including use of government, legislation, community, home, church, school to aid in crime prevention

For criminal law, see 343; *criminal investigation,* 364.12

.46 Preventive police work

364.5 Correctional courts

Including functions, powers, jurisdiction, administration, practice and procedure, records, results, reforms

For criminal courts, see 347.9; *criminal trials,* 343.1; *corrective and reformative methods,* 364.6

.52 Juvenile courts

For juvenile delinquents, see 364.36

.53 Domestic relations courts

Including family courts

.6 Corrective and reformative methods

Including clemency, commutation of sentence; methods for adult and juvenile offenders

For correctional courts, see 364.5; *correctional institutions and reformatories,* 364.7; *penology,* 365

.62 Parole

Including indeterminate sentence

.63 Probation

Including suspended sentence, reprieve

.64 Pardon

Including amnesty

.7 Correctional institutions and reformatories

Including institutions for adults, houses of correction

For penal institutions, see 365

.72 Institutions for juveniles

Including industrial and training schools, colonies, truant schools

Class junior republics [*formerly* †364.722] in 362.745

For truants and truancy, see 371.52; *juvenile delinquents,* 364.36; *education of juvenile delinquents,* 371.93; *school city,* 371.59

.75 Reformatory plant

Including grounds, buildings, equipment

For reformatory architecture, see 725.6; *reformatory housekeeping,* 647.966

.76 Reformatory administration

Including organization and management; treatment of inmates, reformatory labor, welfare and educational work with inmates

364.8 **Discharged convicts and delinquents**

Including postprison care

For release from prison, see 365.647

.9 **History of criminology**

Divide like 930–999, e.g., criminology in France 364.944

365 Penology

Including prison reform

For criminology, see 364; *punishments for crime,* 343.2; *correctional institutions,* 364.7

[.09] History of penology

Class in 365.9

.2 **Prison systems**

Including congregate system, solitary or separate confinement (Pennsylvania) system, silent (Auburn) system, progressive or intermediate stage (Irish or Crofton) system

For prison buildings, see 365.5; *treatment of prisoners,* 365.64

.3 **Kinds of penal institutions**

Including prisons, penitentiaries, jails, detention homes, workhouses, penal farms and colonies, road camps, concentration camps

For prison labor, see 365.65

.4 **Prisons for special classes of offenders**

Including prisons for juveniles, women, mentally ill, political prisoners, debtors

For military prisons, see 355.71

.45 For prisoners of war

Including combatants, noncombatants, civilians

.5 **Prison plant**

Including grounds, buildings, equipment

For prison architecture, see 725.6; *prison housekeeping,* 647.966

.6 **Prison administration**

.63 Prison organization

Including personnel, management, finance

For prison housekeeping, see 647.966

365.64 Prisoners and their treatment

.642 Reception and classification

Including registration, photographing, fingerprinting, assignment

For prisons for special classes of offenders, see 365.4; *criminal anthropometry,* 364.125

.643 Discipline

Including rules and regulations, prison routine, rights of convicts, permissible articles, restrictions, privileges; merit systems

.644 Punishments of refractory prisoners

Including deprivations, loss of privileges, confinement, corporal punishments

.647 Release and discharge

For discharged convicts and postprison care, see 364.8

.65 Prison labor (Convict labor)

Including employment of inmates; systems, e.g., lease system, use of chain gangs, contract system

For economic aspects of prison labor, see 331.51

.66 Prison welfare work

Including educational work, schools, religious and character training, health, recreation

For prison libraries, see 027.665

.9 **History and local treatment**

Including specific prisons

Divide like 930–999, e.g., prisons in England 365.942

366 Associations

Social groups specifically organized with common purpose or interest

Including secret societies, fraternal orders

For societies in a specific subject, see the subject, e.g., art associations 706; general learned societies, 060; student secret societies, 371.85; orders of knighthood, e.g., Knights of Malta, 929.71; religious orders, 271; cooperative societies, 334; hereditary, military, patriotic societies, 369; young people's societies, 369.4; social clubs, 367

.1 Masons

.109 History and local treatment

Divide like 940–999, e.g., Freemasonry in Ohio 366.097 71

.17 Order of DeMolay

.18 Women in Masonry

Including Order of the Eastern Star

.2 Knights of Pythias

.3 Independent Order of Odd Fellows

Including Daughters of the Rebekah

.4 Rosicrucians

.5 Benevolent and Protective Order of Elks

[*.6] Ku-Klux Klan

Class in 363.973

.9 Associations in specific countries

Divide like 930–999, e.g., fraternal orders in Canada 366.971

367 Social clubs

For parliamentary law, see 328.1

.9 Social clubs in specific countries

Divide like 930–999, e.g., The Philadelphia Club 367.974 811

368 Insurance

Including cooperative insurance [*formerly* †334.3], group insurance [*formerly also* †331.253], compulsory insurance

For benefit societies, see 334.7

SUMMARY

368.01	**Theory of insurance**
.1	**Fire insurance**
.2	**Transportation insurance**
.3	**Life insurance**
.38	**Voluntary accident and health insurance**
.4	**Social insurance**
.5	**Casualty insurance**
.6	**Glass insurance**
.7	**Boiler and machinery insurance**
.8	**Insurance against financial losses**
.9	**History and local treatment**

.01 Theory of insurance

Including actuarial science, theory of probabilities, law of large numbers, risks, hazards

For statistical method, see 311; mathematical probability, 519

.011 Rates and rate making

Including classification of risks, cooperative rate making organizations

.012 Underwriting

Including reinsurance [*formerly* †368.86], drafting of policies and forms, contracts, estimation and selection of risks

.013 Marketing

Including sales techniques, buyers' interest

.014 Claims and benefits

Adjustment of claims, settlement of losses

.014 5 Fraudulent claims

Including insurance frauds

368.015 Finance

Including reserve funds and investments of insurance companies

For investment finance, see 332.6; *insurance accounting,* 657.836

[.026] Laws and regulations

Class in 368.91

[.09] History and local treatment

Class in 368.9

368.1–368.8 Specific kinds of insurance

Including government control and regulation

Add 0 and divide each kind like 368.01–368.015, e.g., fire insurance hazards 368.101, settlement of inland marine insurance losses 368.230 14

.1 Fire insurance

Including consequential losses, e.g., business interruption (use and occupancy), extra expense, rents and rental values

For fire prevention laws and regulations, see 614.84; *fireproof construction,* 693.82

.12 Allied fire insurance lines

Including riot and civil commotion insurance, extended coverage

.122 Disaster insurance

Including hail, wind, rain, lightning, earthquake insurance

For casualty insurance, see 368.5; *crop insurance,* 368.123

.123 Crop insurance [*formerly* †368.5]

Comprehensive works

For insurance of crops against natural disasters, see 368.122

.14 War risk insurance

Comprehensive works

Including war damage compensation

For war risk life insurance, see 368.364

368.2 Transportation insurance

For insured mail, see 383.182

.22 Ocean marine insurance

Including hull and cargo insurance

For maritime transport, see 387.5; *maritime law,* 347.75; *salvage operations,* 627.7

.23 Inland marine insurance

Insurance of domestic shipments by land and water

Including insurance on instrumentalities of transportation, e.g., bridges, tunnels, airports, piers; personal property floater risks

.3 Life insurance [*formerly also* †331.254]

Including mortality and survival tables

Divide 368.301 like 368.01, e.g., life insurance rates [*formerly* †368.31] 368.301 1

.301 6 Lapsation, persistence, termination

For adjustment of claims, see 368.301 4

[†.31] Rates

Class in 368.301 1

.36 Special fields of life insurance

Including child insurance [*formerly* †368.46], marriage endowment insurance [*formerly* †368.47]; business, savings bank, group, nonmedical life insurance; substandard risks

For business interruption insurance, see 368.8

.362 Industrial life insurance

Insurance issued in small amounts with premiums usually collected weekly or monthly

Including burial insurance [*formerly* †368.45], burial societies [*formerly* †334.8]

.363 Fraternal insurance

Including mutual benefit and assessment insurance

For benefit societies, see 334.7; *fraternal orders,* 366

.364 War risk life and accident insurance

Including National Service Life Insurance

For war damage compensation, see 368.14

368.37 Annuities

Including group annuities, pension trust funds

For old-age and survivors' insurance, see 368.43; *mothers' pensions,* 362.71; *industrial pension plans,* 331.252; *government pensions,* 351.5

.38 Voluntary accident and health insurance

For cost of medical care, see 614.253; *social insurance,* 368.4

.382 Prepaid medical care

Including group hospitalization

.4 Social insurance [*formerly also* †331.254 4]

Insurance for prevention and alleviation of poverty, sponsored by government

Including social security programs

For welfare services to the needy, see 362.5

.409 Social insurance in specific countries

Divide like 940–999, e.g., social insurance in New Zealand 368.409 931

.41 Industrial accident and disease insurance

Including employers' liability insurance, workmen's compensation insurance

For comprehensive works on workmen's compensation and employers' liability, see 331.825; *unemployment insurance,* 368.44; *voluntary accident and health insurance,* 368.38; *sickness insurance,* 368.42

.42 Sickness insurance

For cost of medical care, see 614.253; *industrial accident and disease insurance,* 368.41; *voluntary accident and health insurance,* 368.38

.424 Maternity insurance

.43 Old-age and survivors' insurance

For welfare services to aged, see 362.6; *geriatrics,* 618.97; *annuities,* 368.37; *mothers' pensions,* 362.71; *industrial pension plans,* 331.252; *government pensions,* 351.5

368.44 Unemployment insurance

[†.45] Burial insurance

Class in 368.362

[†.46] Child insurance

Class in 368.36

[†.47] Marriage endowment insurance

Class in 368.36

.5 Casualty insurance

Class crop insurance [*formerly* †368.5] in 368.123

.56 Miscellaneous casualty lines

Including owners', landlords', tenants' liability; contractual liability, elevator insurance; personal liability, e.g., bicycle or dog liability; livestock loss or damage

Class glass insurance in 368.6; boiler and machinery insurance, power-plant insurance in 368.7 [*all formerly* *368.56]

.57 Liability insurance

Comprehensive works on insurance against loss due to liability for personal injury or property damage imposed by law

For a specific kind of liability insurance, see the subject, e.g., employers' liability 368.41, *glass insurance* 368.6

.572 Automobile liability insurance [*formerly also* †629.213 63]

Including financial responsibility laws; comprehensive works on automobile insurance

For motor vehicle laws and regulations, see 629.213; *a specific kind of automobile insurance, the subject, e.g., fire insurance* 368.1

.576 Aviation insurance

Including aircraft hulls, aircraft liability, aircraft personal accident insurance

For air cargo insurance, see 368.2

368.6 Glass insurance [*formerly* *368.56]

Including neon signs, fluorescent signs and lamps

.7 Boiler and machinery insurance [*formerly* *368.56]

Including power-plant, power interruption insurance

.8 Insurance against financial losses

Including business, business interruption, strike insurance

For business life insurance, see 368.36; *insurance against business interruption due to fire,* 368.1

[†.81] Specific losses

Class fidelity bonds in 368.83, surety bonds in 368.84, mortgage insurance in 368.85, credit insurance in 368.87, title insurance in 368.88

.82 Burglary insurance

Including insurance against robbery, theft

.83 Fidelity bonds [*formerly* †368.81]

Guarantee against loss to employers because of dishonesty of employees

.84 Surety bonds [*formerly* †368.81]

Guarantee against loss due to failure to perform an obligation, or fulfill a contract

.85 Other guarantees

Including mortgage insurance [*formerly* †368.81], bank deposit insurance [*formerly* †332.17], investment guarantees

For credit insurance, see 368.87; *title insurance,* 368.88

[†.86] Reinsurance

Class in 368.012

.87 Credit insurance [*formerly* †368.81]

Insurance of creditor against loss due to debtor's insolvency

.88 Title insurance [*formerly* †368.81]

368.9 History and local treatment

.91 Government control and regulation

Including legislation [*formerly* *368.93]

For control and regulation in specific countries, see 368.94–368.99; *of a specific insurance, the kind, e.g., of fire insurance* 368.1; *government-sponsored insurance,* 368.4

[*.93] Legislation

Class in 368.91, 368.94–368.99

.94–.99 Insurance in specific countries

Including legislation [*formerly* *368.93], control, regulation

Divide like 940–999, e.g., insurance in New York State 368.974 7

369 Other associations

For fraternal orders, see 366; *orders of knighthood,* 929.71

.1 Hereditary, military, patriotic societies of United States

.11 General societies

Including military and naval orders; Medal of Honor Legion; Military Order of Foreign Wars of the United States

.12 Colonial societies

Including Society of Colonial Wars; Colonial Dames; Mayflower Descendants

.13 Revolutionary societies

Including Society of the Cincinnati; Sons of the American Revolution

.135 Daughters of the American Revolution

.14 Societies commemorating events of 1789–1861

.15 Union Civil War societies

Including Grand Army of the Republic, Society of the Army of the Cumberland

.16 Auxiliary Union societies of Civil War

.17 Confederate Civil War societies

Including United Confederate Veterans, United Daughters of the Confederacy

369.18 Spanish-American War societies

.186 World War I and II societies

.186 1 American Legion

.2 Hereditary, military, patriotic societies of other countries

.21 International hereditary, military, patriotic societies

.23–.29 Hereditary, military, patriotic societies of specific countries

Divide like 930–999, e.g., military orders of France 369.244

.4 Young people's societies

For young people's religious societies, see 267.6; *4-H Clubs,* 630.627 3

.42 Boys' societies

.43 Boy Scouts

.46 Girls' societies

.463 Girl Scouts

.47 Camp Fire Girls of America

370 Education

.1 Theory of education

Including philosophy of education, of liberal education

.109 History of educational theory

Divide like 930–999, e.g., theory of education in France 370.109 44

.15 Educational psychology

.19 Special aspects

.193 Educational sociology

Sociology applied to the solution of fundamental educational problems

Including community and school relations

For teacher and the community, see 371.104

.194 Fundamental education

Educational improvement of people in the economically less advanst regions of the world, and of underprivileged groups in industrialized countries

For illiteracy, see 379.2

.196 Intercultural education

Education for international understanding

For exchange of students, see 371.39; *educational exchanges in higher education,* 378.35

.58 Annuals, directories, catalogs

For annuals on a specific subject, see the subject, e.g., kindergarten annuals 372.210 58; *annuals of a specific school, the school, e.g., Harvard alumni directory* 378.744 4

.7 Study of education

Including training of teachers, administrators, supervisors, superintendents

For teachers colleges, see 370.73

.71 Teachers' meetings

.72 Teachers' conferences, institutes, workshops

For research in education, see 370.78

370.73 Teachers colleges

Institutions primarily for teacher education

Divide like 940–999, e.g., Teachers College, Columbia University 370.737 471

.732 Courses and programs

.732 6 Education for teaching in special grades of schools

.732 62 Elementary schools

.732 63 Secondary schools

.732 64 Colleges and universities

.733 Practice teaching

Including practice, model, demonstration schools

.75 Training classes

Courses attacht to schools not conducted primarily for education of teachers

Including courses in high schools and liberal arts colleges

.76 Education of school administrators

.78 Educational research

371 Teaching, school organization, administration

Comprehensive works on teaching, organization, administration in elementary, secondary, higher education

For teaching and administration in a specific kind or level of school, see the subject, e.g., in elementary schools 372

SUMMARY

371.1 Teaching and administrative personnel
.2 School organization and administration
.3 Methods of instruction and study
.4 Systems of education
.5 School discipline and classroom control
.6 School plant and equipment
.7 School health
.8 Student life
.9 Education of special classes

.1 Teaching and administrative personnel

Including duties, responsibilities, morale, loyalty oath, social status

For freedom of teaching in higher education, see 378.121

.103 Relations to parents

Including parent-teacher associations

371.104 Relations to community

Including teachers in politics, public status, teacher and civil liberties

.11 Qualifications

.12 Need of training

Including in-service training, kind and amount of education

For organization and methods in education of teachers, see 370.7

.13 Certification

Including examinations, rating

.14 Appointment and organization of teaching staff

Including supply and demand, placement, dismissal, turnover, resignation, mobility

.142 Appointment

Including contracts, tenure, transfer, exchange

.145 Employment agencies for teachers

.147 Organization of teaching staff

For supervisors as governmental officers, state and county superintendents, see 379.15; *college and university faculty,* 378.12; *school organization and administration,* 371.2

.147 2 Principals and superintendents

Including supervisors, headmasters

.147 3 Teachers

Including instructors, professors, masters

.16 Salary and compensation

Including wage scales, bonuses, merit increments, promotions, vacations, sabbatical leaves

.17 Retirement

Including pensions, annuities, retirement funds

For pensions, annuities as part of life insurance business, see 368.37

371.2 **School organization and administration**

Administration by school officers and staff

Including statistics, publicity

For supervision and control of school system by national, state, or local government, see 379.15; *organization of teaching staff,* 371.147

.21 Admission

Including enrollment, standards, requirements for admission

.211 Primary school and kindergarten standards

.212 Intermediate school admission standards

.213 Secondary school admission standards

Including junior high school standards

.214 College admission standards

.22 Tuition

Including student aid, scholarships, fees

For student aid and scholarships in higher education, see 378.3; *nonresident tuition in public supported schools,* 379.13

.23 School year

Including school terms, vacations, holidays, summer and vacation schools

Class part-time sessions [*formerly* *371.23] in 371.24

.24 School schedules

Including part-time sessions [*formerly* *371.23], full-time sessions, double shift; hours, recesses

.25 School organization by classes and grades

Including size of groups, methods of grouping students, ungraded classes, provision for individual differences by special classes or groups

For individual instruction, see 371.394; *child psychology,* 136.7; *teaching of exceptional students,* 371.9

.26 Educational tests and measurements

Including marking and credit systems

For specific psychological tests, see 151.22

.27 Examinations

For examination questions on a specific subject, see the subject, e.g., astronomy 520.76

371.28 Promotion

Including demotion, retardation

For student failures, see 371.291 3

.29 Other topics

.291 Ending student connection, leaving school, transfers

For probation, expulsion, see 371.56

.291 2 Graduation and commencement

.291 3 Student failures

Including dropping out of students

.3 **Methods of instruction and study**

Comprehensive works on methods and techniques at all levels

For comprehensive works on methods of teaching at a specific level, see the level, e.g., methods in secondary schools 373; *methods of teaching a specific subject at elementary level,* 372.3–372.8; *methods of teaching at higher levels, the subject, e.g., mathematics* 510.7

.32 Textbooks

Including recitations, assignments, homework, based on textbooks; discussion of use of textbooks and desirable qualities of textbooks in general

For selection of textbooks for public schools, see 379.156; *textbooks on a specific subject at elementary school level,* 372.3–372.8; *textbooks on a specific subject at higher levels, the subject, e.g., algebra* 512

.33 Audio-visual teaching aids and methods

Including lectures

.332 Assemblies and opening exercises

Including home room activities, dramatization as method of teaching

For school plays, see 371.895; *student assemblies,* 371.89

.333 Auditory aids

Including use of radio, phonograph, sound recorder

For use of radio in adult education, see 374.26

371.335 Visual aids

Including use of motion pictures, television, maps, charts, blackboards

.335 2 Pictures in education

.335 23 Motion pictures in education

Including sound motion pictures

For motion pictures in adult education, see 374.27

.335 8 Television in education

For television in adult education, see 374.27

.36 Project method of teaching

Including "progressive" or creative teaching

Class supervised study [*formerly* *371.36] in 371.394

.365 Special day programs in schools

For celebration of holidays, see 394.26

.37 Seminar method

.38 Laboratory method

.39 Other procedures and methods

Including international schools, exchange of students

For exchange of teachers, see 371.142; *exchange of college and university professors,* 378.12

.393 Educational trips, excursions, visits

Including school camping

.394 Individual development

Including instruction by regular teacher or tutor, at home or at school; Batavia system, Dalton, Winnetka, Pueblo plans; supervised study [*formerly* *371.36], remedial teaching, acceleration in education

For private instruction, see 373.1

.4 Systems of education

Including monitorial system

.42 Vocational education and guidance

Comprehensive works on educational and vocational guidance

For placement services, see 371.427

.422 Personnel guidance

Including student personnel work and counseling

For student behavior, see 371.81

371.425 Vocational guidance

Including works on "how to get a job," choice of vocation even tho not under school direction

.426 Vocational education and manual training

Education and training in various occupations

Including organization, administration, teaching techniques of vocational education, manual training

For industrial rehabilitation, see 331.868; *vocational rehabilitation of physically handicapt,* 371.91

.426 8 Special subjects

Comprehensive works on vocational training at elementary and higher levels

Class training in a specific subject at the elementary level in 372.3–372.8, e.g., elementary manual training 372.5; training in a specific subject at secondary and higher levels with the subject, e.g., high school training in printing 655.071 2

If preferred, class here training in specific subjects, dividing 371.426 82–371.426 89 like 620–699, and, for subjects not thus provided for, using 371.426 81 divided like 000–999, e.g., training in printing 371.426 855, in library work 371.426 810 2

.426 9 History of vocational education

Divide like 930–999, e.g., vocational training in the United States 371.426 973

.427 Placement services of educational institutions

Including service for alumni

For student aid in colleges, see 378.36; *placement of teachers,* 371.14

.5 School discipline and classroom control

For military discipline, see 355.133

.52 Attendance

Including truancy, tardiness, absences

Class compulsory education [*formerly* *371.52] in 379.23

For truant schools, see 364.72

.53 Rewards

Including competitions, prizes, literary contests

For debates, see 374.24; *interscholastic athletics,* 371.75

371.54 Punishments

.55 Physical punishment

.56 Other punishments

Including expulsion, probation

.59 Student government

Including student self-government, participation in school management, school city

For junior republics, see 362.745; *honor systems,* 371.81

.6 School plant and equipment

Including surveys of needs, planning building programs for schools of all levels; use of school as community center

.61 School grounds and sites

Including playgrounds, athletic fields

.62 Buildings and equipment

Including standards, regulations, operation, maintenance

Class laboratory equipment and supplies [*formerly* *371.62] in 371.66

For school architecture, see 727

.621 Study, lecture, assembly rooms

.622 Libraries and museums in schools

For library buildings, see 022; *museums,* 069; *school libraries,* 027.82

.623 School laboratories, observatories, machine shops

For laboratory equipment and supplies, see 371.66

.624 Gymnasiums and swimming pools

For apparatus, equipment, supplies, see 371.67

.625 Other special rooms or buildings

Including dormitories, clubs, infirmaries, cafeterias

For school meals, see 371.716

.626 Sanitation

Including lavatories

For sanitary inspection, see 371.71

371.627 Lighting and use of color

[†.627 8] Fireproofing

Class in 693.82

.628 Heating and ventilation

.629 Accessories

Including elevators, telephone

.63 School furniture and decoration

[†.64] School libraries: character and functions

Class in 027.82

[†.643] School reading lists

Class in 028.52

[†.65] School museums: character and functions

Class in 069

.66 Laboratory equipment and supplies [*formerly* *371.62]

Including scientific apparatus

.67 Other apparatus, equipment, supplies

.7 School health

Including comprehensive works on physical and health education

For safety measures in public health, see 614.8

.71 Health service and safety of students

Including sanitary conditions and inspection, epidemics and immunization programs, mental hygiene, fire drills

.712 Medical inspection

Including clinics, school nurses, physical examinations

.716 School meals

Including supervision of lunchroom and planned meals

For management of lunchrooms, see 642.58; *school cafeterias,* 371.625

[†.718] Open-air schools

Class in 371.917

.72 Care of students' eyes

Including eye examinations; sight saving classes [*formerly* *371.911]

For education of the blind, see 371.911

371.73 Physical education in schools

Including physical fitness testing, military drill

.732 Physical education in specific levels of schools

.732 2 Elementary schools

.732 3 Secondary schools

.732 4 Colleges

.74 Intramural athletics and games

For athletics and sports not connected with school activities, see 796; *coaching athletics and sports,* 796.077

.75 Interscholastic athletics and games

.76 Health education in schools

Comprehensive works on instruction in personal and community health, first aid, home nursing; sex education

For personal hygiene, see 613; *a specific subject included in health education programs, the subject, e.g., sex instruction* 612.600 7

.8 Student life

Activities outside the classroom in schools of all types and levels

Including student etiquette

.805 School journalism

Including organization and production of school papers, yearbooks, student handbooks

For student publications of a specific school, see the school, e.g., Princeton University yearbook 378.749 67; *teaching of journalism,* 070.7

.81 Student attitudes and behavior

Including student ethics, honor systems

.83 Student organizations

.84 Student organizations in specific fields

Divide like 000–999, e.g., literary societies 371.848

.85 Secret and Greek-letter societies

.852 Honorary societies

.854 Secret societies in specific fields

Divide like 000–999, e.g., secret medical societies 371.854 61

.855 Men's societies and fraternities

For secret societies in specific fields, see 371.854

371.856 Women's societies and sororities

For secret societies in specific fields, see 371.854

.857 High school secret and Greek-letter societies

.86 Student society houses, premises, rooms

Including fraternity houses

.87 Student housing

Including management of dormitories

.89 Other student activities

Including student assemblies, banquets, dances, pep meetings, class days, cheer leading

.895 School plays and pageants

Divide by language like 400, e.g., German plays 371.895 3

For drama and creative drama as a teaching aid, see 371.332; *pageants,* 791.62

.898 School colors and cheers

.9 Education of special classes

For institutions and services for special classes, see 362, 364; *psychology of exceptional children,* 136.76

.91 Physically handicapt

Including home, hospital, special school instruction, vocational rehabilitation

Class industrial rehabilitation [*formerly* *371.91] in 331.868

For employment of physically handicapt, see 331.59; *rehabilitation of disabled veterans,* 355.115 6

.911 Blind and partially sighted

Including instruction in Braille and other systems of reading

Class sight saving classes [*formerly* *371.911] in 371.72

For Braille printing, see 655.38; *talking books,* 789.912

.912 Deaf and hard of hearing

Including training in speech and lip reading for deaf, finger alphabet

[*.914] Speech defectives

Class in 371.927

.916 Crippled

371.917 Delicate or debilitated

Including education of persons with handicaps due to physical diseases; open-air schools [*formerly* †371.718]

.92 Mentally handicapt

Including education for the mentally retarded

.927 Speech defectives [*formerly* *371.914]

Correction of speech defects, e.g., stuttering

For treatment of speech disorders, see 616.855

.93 Delinquents

Including "problem children"

For educational work in prisons, see 365.66

.95 Gifted children

.96 Students exceptional because of class distinction

Including education of princes, nobility, working class

.97 Students exceptional because of race

Including racial minorities who require special educational facilities or create special problems; segregation, integration

For education of a specific group, see the group, e.g., education of Negroes in schools 371.974

.974 American Negroes

For Negro colleges, see 378

.975 American Indians

.976 Orientals

.98 Students exceptional because of national origin or socioreligious affiliation

Including education of bilingual students

.983–.989 Students of specific national origin

Divide like 930–999, e.g., education of Mexicans in California 371.987 2

372 Elementary education

Including principles, administration, curriculum, methods in public and private elementary schools

.2 Elementary school organization

.21 Kindergartens and nursery schools

.214 Storytelling

For storytelling in libraries, see 027.625 1

.215 Songs and games

.216 Nursery schools [*formerly* †372.241 2]

For day nurseries, see 362.7; *child study,* 136.7

.218 Kindergartens

Including influence of kindergartens [*formerly* †372.22]

[†.22] Influence of kindergartens

Class in 372.218

.24 Elementary grades

Including education from preschool thru intermediate grades

.241 Primary grades

Grades 1, 2, 3

[†.241 2] Nursery schools

Class in 372.216

.242 Intermediate grades

Grades 4, 5, 6; upper grades 7, 8 where these do not constitute junior high schools

For junior high schools, see 373.23

372.3–372.8 Elementary school subjects

.3 Science and nature study

.4 Reading and spelling

Including methods of teaching oral and silent reading of native languages

.41 Reading

.412 Primers and first readers

For third- and fourth-grade readers, see the language, e.g., fourth-grade English reader 428.6; *readers for upper levels, the* 800's

372.413 Diagnostic and remedial reading

For diagnostic and remedial reading for other than elementary school students, see 428.4

.415 Phonetics and speech

.42 Spelling

.5 Creative arts

Including drama for elementary grades

.51 Handwriting and lettering

Including penmanship

.52 Drawing and design

Including finger painting

.53 Modeling

Including modeling with clay, soap

.54 Sewing

.55 Elementary basketry, weaving, braiding

Including paper work

.6 Language arts

Oral and written expression

Including vocabulary building, art of conversation, dramatics, public speaking, conduct of meetings, letter writing, creative composition, formal aspects of grammar, punctuation, capitalization

.7 Elementary arithmetic

For short cuts and rapid calculations, see 511.201 8

.74 Diagnostic and remedial arithmetic

.8 Other studies

Studies not provided for in 372.3–372.7

Divide like 000–999, e.g., social studies 372.83

.9 History of elementary education

Including history, catalogs of specific public and private elementary schools

Divide like 930–999, e.g., elementary education in England 372.942

373 Secondary education

Including principles, administration, curriculum, methods in high, junior high, preparatory schools; private instruction

.1 Private education

Instruction by tutor, governess, coach, usually given in the home

For individual instruction in schools, see 371.394

.2 Types of secondary schools

For a specific school, see 373.3–373.9

.22 Day schools and boarding schools

.23 Types as to organization

Including 4-, 6-year high schools, junior and senior high schools

.24 Types as to curriculum

Including academic, classical, vocational high schools

For a specific subject in the curriculum, see the subject, e.g., secondary education in mathematics 510.712

.3–.9 History of secondary education

Including history, catalogs of specific public and private secondary schools

Divide like 930–999, e.g., Boston Latin School 373.744 6

374 Adult education

Including adult education for foreign-born and native adults; adult education for workers [*formerly also* †331.85]

For a specific kind of adult education, see the kind, e.g., vocational education 371.426; *agricultural extension,* 630.717; *college and university extension,* 378.13

[.09] History

Class in 374.9

.1 Self-education for adults

Including directed and undirected home reading, private study

For reading and reading guidance, see 028; *remedial reading,* 428.4

.2 Group study and education

.22 Reading and discussion groups

Including Great Books study programs [*formerly* *028.3]

For courses of reading, see 028.3

374.24 Group discussion

Including panels, symposiums, round tables, forums, debates; training for leadership of discussion groups

For debating technique, see 808.53

.26 Use of radio in adult education

Including educational programs of local, state, college, university stations

For use of radio as an aid in teaching, see 371.333

.27 Use of motion pictures and television in adult education

Including use of documentary films; informational films of business, advertising firms; public relations films; film forums

For use of motion pictures as an aid in teaching, see 371.335 23; *television as an aid,* 371.335 8

.28 Community centers as educational centers

For community centers as recreational centers, see 790.68; *use of school as community center,* 371.6

.4 Correspondence instruction and schools

Divide like 940–999, e.g., International Correspondence Schools, Scranton, Pennsylvania 374.474 837

.8 Continuation schools [*formerly* *374.91]

Including institutes, workshops

Divide like 930–999, e.g., continuation schools in England 374.842

For veterans' education and training benefits, see 355.115 2

.9 History of adult education

Divide like 940–999, e.g., adult education in Wisconsin 374.977 5

[*.91] Schools, centers, institutes, workshops

Class in 374.8

375 Curriculum

Principles and methods of curriculum construction

For curriculum of a specific level of school, see the level, e.g., curriculum for elementary grades 372.24

.009 Courses of institutions in specific countries

Divide like 930–999, e.g., curriculum in New Jersey schools 375.009 749

375.01–.9 Curriculums and courses of study in specific subjects

Comprehensive works on curriculums and courses in a specific subject for all levels of schools

Divide like 010–999, e.g., place of science in the curriculum 375.5

For curriculums and courses in a specific subject at elementary school level, see 372.3–372.8; *courses at higher levels, the subject, e.g., physics* 530.7

376 Education of women [*formerly also* †396.4]

Including private and public elementary and secondary education for girls; coeducation

.5 Convent education

.8 Colleges for women

Divide like 930–999, e.g., Bryn Mawr College 376.874 812

.9 History of education of women

Divide like 930–999, e.g., education of women in France 376.944

377 Religious and moral education

Comprehensive works

Including interrelation of church, state, education; problems and activities peculiar to sectarian schools

For place of religion in the curriculum, see 375.2; *a specific denominational school, the level of school, e.g., Select Friends School, Philadelphia* 373.748 11; *theological seminaries,* 207; *educational activities of Christian church,* 268; *of other religious groups,* 290

.1 Religious and Bible instruction in public and nonsectarian private schools

For religious instruction in Sunday schools, church schools, see 268

.2 Ethical education

Ethical training without religious teaching

Including moral and character education

For place of ethics in curriculum, see 375.17; *study of ethics,* 170.7

.3 Monastic schools

Including abbey schools

For convent education of girls, see 376.5; *religious orders,* 271

.4 Diocesan schools

Including cathedral schools

377.5 **Parochial schools**

.6 **Missionary schools**

Establishment and conduct of schools as part of mission work

For missions, see 266

.8 **Christian church and education**

Problems, programs, evaluation of church schools

Divide like 280, e.g., Association of Catholic Colleges of the United States 377.827 3

For a specific denominational school, see the level of school, e.g., Saint John's University, Shanghai 378.511 3

.9 **Other religions and education**

Divide like 290, e.g., relation of Islam to education 377.97

378 Higher education

Comprehensive works

Including junior colleges

For student life, see 371.8; *higher education for women,* 376.8; *college entrance requirements,* 371.214

.1 **Organization and administration**

Including public relations, finance, management

.11 Administrative officers

Functions and duties of president, dean, registrar, controller, board of trustees

.113 Officers in charge of personnel and student affairs

For personnel guidance, see 371.422

.12 Faculty

Including exchange of professors

For problems of teaching personnel, e.g., pension, salary, tenure, teaching load, see 371.1

.121 Freedom of teaching

Including academic freedom [*formerly also* †323.444, *323.44]

For loyalty oath, see 371.1

.13 University extension

Including academic and professional programs and courses offered on or off campus, lecture series, services of lecture groups, alumni education

378.14 College year

Including summer vacation instruction, all-year sessions, four-quarter system

.15 Types or levels of higher education

Comprehensive works on types of schools by size, location, or grade, e.g., large or small, city or country

For a specific institution of higher learning, see the institution, e.g., Vermont Junior College 378.743 4

.154 Senior colleges and junior colleges

.155 Undergraduate and graduate departments

.2 **Academic degrees, costumes, insignia**

Including requirements for degrees, e.g., subjects, residence, examinations, dissertations; honors

.24 Degrees

.242 Thesis requirements

Including preparation of theses

.3 **Aid to students and endowment of research**

.32 Research endowments

Including organizations and institutions responsible for endowments or prizes, e.g., Carnegie Corporation, Nobel Foundation

For a specific award or prize, see the subject, e.g., Nobel peace prize 341.1

.33 Fellowships

.34 Scholarships

Including traveling scholarships, Rhodes scholarships

378.35 Educational exchanges

Including Fulbright scholarships and awards

For exchange of students, see 371.39

.36 Student aid

Including loan funds, student aid associations, college employment bureaus

For placement service for alumni, see 371.427; *federal aid to veterans,* 355.115 2

.4–.98 Higher education in specific countries or institutions

Divide like 940–998, e.g., English universities 378.42

If preferred, arrange colleges and universities of each continent and of United States alphabetically, using A1 for general works, e.g., European universities 378.4 A1, McGill University, Montreal 378.7 M2, United States universities 378.73 A1, Princeton University 378.73 P9

A special table for arrangement of school and college publications may be found at end of volume 2

For women's colleges, see 376.8

.99 Professional and technical education in institutions of higher learning

Comprehensive works only

For a special subject, see the subject, e.g., medical schools 610.711

379 Education and the state

.1 Public-school system

.11 Financial administration of public education

.12 Federal and state aid to public education

Including exemption from taxation, allocation of funds, subsidies, land grants

.13 Local support of public education

Including taxation, endowments, nonresident tuition, bond issues

379.14 School laws and regulations

Including laws relating to both public and private schools

Divide like 930–999, e.g., school laws of Ohio 379.147 71

.15 Supervision and control of public education

Including setting of standards, accrediting, centralization and decentralization, school surveys

For school organization and administration, see 371.2

.151 National supervision and control

.152 State supervision and control

Including activities of state boards of education, state superintendents

.153 Local supervision and control

Including elected or appointed county, city, district boards of education; trustees; supplies, free textbooks

For duties and responsibilities of administrative personnel, see 371.1

.156 Control of textbooks used in public education

State or local regulations of selection, publication, provision, price of textbooks

For use of textbooks in instruction, see 371.32; *free textbooks,* 379.153

.16 Public institutions of higher learning

Discussion of tax-supported colleges and universities

For a specific institution, see the institution, e.g., University of Michigan 378.774 35

379.17 Public secondary and elementary education

Including discussions of theory, functions of tax-supported secondary and elementary education

For a specific institution, see the level of school, e.g., Wilmington, Delaware, High School 373.751 2

.173 Public education in rural areas

.175 Centralization of public education facilities

Including consolidated schools, transportation of students

.2 Illiteracy

Including problems caused by illiteracy; surveys, statistics, control of illiteracy

For fundamental education, see 370.194

.23 Compulsory education [*formerly* *371.52]

For truancy, see 371.52

.3 Public and private schools

Tax-supported education as contrasted with private and parochial education

For private instruction, see 373.1; parochial schools, 377.5

.4–.9 History of public education

Including reports of commissions, boards

Divide like 940–999, e.g., public education in Wyoming 379.787

For history of education, see 370.9; history of a specific type or level of education, the type or level, e.g., history of adult education movement 374.9; history of elementary education in United States, 372.973

380 Public services; public utilities [*formerly* *338.39]

Administration, regulation, finance, facilities, services

For economics of a specific public commodity, see the subject, e.g., water supply 338.476 281; its management, the subject, e.g., management of a water-supply corporation 658.926 281; social welfare services, 360

.1 Theoretic and legal aspects

.11 Supply and demand of public services and utilities

For supply and demand as a factor in production, see 338.018 6; in price determination, 338.522

.12 Commercial arbitration

Class marketing channels [*formerly* †380.12] in 658.84

[†.122] Market research and analysis

Class in 658.83

[†.123] Business forecasting

Class in 338.544

[†.124] Business cycles

Class in 338.54

[†.125] Cooperative marketing

Class in 334.6

.16 Administration and regulation of public utilities

Class control and regulation of industry by government in 338.9, comprehensive works on government corporations in 338.74 [*both formerly* †380.16]

For administration and regulation of a specific public utility, see the subject, e.g., railroad transportation 385.1

.166 Ownership of public utilities [*formerly also* †380.167]

.166 2 By government

For government corporations, see 338.74

.166 3 By private enterprise

.166 4 Jointly by government and private enterprise

[†.167] Ownership of public utilities

Class in 380.166

.168 Legal privileges of public utilities

Including right of eminent domain, franchise grants, licenses, other concessions

380.169 Obligations of public utilities

Including equal services, facilities, rates; protective measures

.9 History of public services and utilities

Divide like 930–999, e.g., history of public utilities in United States 380.973

Class commercial history [*formerly* †*380.9] in 382.09; commercial geography [*formerly* †380.9] in 330.9

381–382 Commerce

Exchange of goods and services

For transportation, see 385–388; *marketing,* 658.8; *production economics,* 338.6–338.8

381 Internal commerce (Domestic trade)

Domestic trade practices, interstate commerce

Including trade regulations, barriers, records, statistics

For United States Interstate Commerce Commission, see 385; *income and wealth,* 339; *import trade,* 382.5

382 International commerce (World trade)

Conduct of trade between countries; between mother countries and their colonies, protectorates, trusts

Including foreign-trade practices, commercial policy, trade records and statistics, balance of trade; comprehensive works on commerce

For trade agreements, see 337.91; *internal commerce,* 381

.09 History of commerce [*formerly* †*380.9]

[†.2] Consular service

Class in 341.8

.3 Maladjustments in world trade

Including trade during wartime

.5 Import trade

For domestic trade, see 381

.6 Export trade

383–384 Communication services

For cybernetics, see 006; *linguistics,* 400; *nonverbal communication,* 419; *cryptography,* 652.8; *the press,* 070.1

383 Postal communication

Comprehensive works

For administration of United States Post Office Department, see 353.4; *post office departments of other governments,* 354; *offenses against postal laws,* 364.13

.1 Postal services

.12 Postal rates and classification

Including franking privileges

.122 First-class mail

.123 Second-class mail

.124 Third-class mail

.125 Fourth-class mail (Parcel post)

.14 Mail-transportation services

.142 Ocean-mail service

.143 Railway-mail service

.144 Air-mail service

.145 Local transportation

Collection and delivery of mail

Including pneumatic dispatch [*formerly* †654.8], rural delivery

.148 Star routes

.18 Other services

For money orders, see 332.76; *postal savings,* 332.22

.182 Insured- and registered-mail services

.183 Special-delivery services

.184 Collect-on-delivery services

383.2 **Postage stamps**

Including postal cards, stampt envelopes

.22 Philately

Study, collecting, collections of stamps

.222 Counterfeit stamps

Including identification

.223 Commemorative stamps

Including stamps commemorating historic events, coronations, royal marriages

.224 Stamps on specific subjects

Stamps with designs of flowers, animals, portraits, ships, airplanes, maps

For commemorative stamps, see 383.223

.229 Stamps of specific countries

Divide like 940–999, e.g., collections of United States stamps 383.229 73

[†.3] **Money orders**

Class in 332.76

.4 **Postal systems and conventions**

Including international mail systems and conventions

.49 National postal systems and conventions

Divide like 930–999, e.g., postal system of England 383.494 2

384 Telecommunication [*formerly also* †654]

Administration, regulation, finance, facilities, services of electric and electronic communication organizations

Including comprehensive works on communication, on mass communication

For social impact of mass communication, see 301.243; *electric and electronic communication engineering,* 621.38; *postal communication,* 383

.1 **Wire telegraphy [*formerly also* †654.1–†654.4]**

Including comprehensive works on telegraphic communication

For submarine cable telegraphy, see 384.4; *radiotelegraphy,* 384.52

[†.101 6] Government control and ownership

Class in 384.12

384.12 Administration and regulation

Including government control and ownership [*formerly* †384.101 6], laws and regulations, statistics

Divide like 940–999, e.g., laws and regulations on telegraphic communication in United States 384.127 3

For history of telegraphic communication, see 384.109

.13 Financial regulations

Rates, subsidies, taxation

.14 Services

Including telegrams, day letters, night letters

For rates, see 384.13

.15 Facilities

Including communication centers and stations, teleprinters, teletypewriters, facsimile apparatus, stock tickers

.4 **Submarine cable telegraphy [*formerly also* †654.5]**

Administration, regulation, finance, services, facilities

.5 **Wireless communication**

[†.501 6] Government control and ownership

Class government control and ownership of radiotelegraphy in 384.522; of radiotelephony in 384.532; of radiobroadcasting in 384.542

.52 Radiotelegraphy

Divide like 384.1, e.g., government control and ownership [*formerly* †384.501 6] 384.522, radiograms 384.524

.53 Radiotelephony

Divide like 384.1, e.g., government control and ownership [*formerly* †384.501 6] 384.532, radio telephone rates 384.533

.54 Radiobroadcasting

Divide like 384.1, e.g., radio-frequency allocation [*formerly* †384.501 6] 384.542

.55 Television communication

384.6 **Wire telephony [*formerly also* †654.6]**

Including comprehensive works on telephonic communication, telephonic and telegraphic communication

Divide like 384.1, e.g., government control and ownership [*formerly* †384.601 6] 384.62, long-distance service 384.64

For radiotelephony, see 384.53; *wire telegraphy,* 384.1; *radiotelegraphy,* 384.52

[†.601 6] Government control and ownership

Class in 384.62

.7 **Alarms and warnings [*formerly* †654.7]**

Including fire-alarm systems; air-raid, hurricane, flood warning systems

.9 **Other signaling devices [*formerly* †654.9]**

Including codes of visual signaling

For cryptography, see 652.8

385–388 Transportation services [*formerly also* †656]

Conveyance of persons and goods

For transportation insurance, see 368.2; *architecture of transportation terminals,* 725.3; *transportation systems in city planning,* 711.7; *engineering and construction aspects,* 624–629

385 Railroad transportation

Including transportation on standard railroads; comprehensive works on transportation, reports of United States Interstate Commerce Commission and public service commissions

For mail-transportation services, see 383.14; *a specific system of transportation, the subject, e.g., marine transportation* 387

.012 Comparative studies of transportation systems

Including relation of one system to other means of transportation [*formerly* †385.12, †386.12, †386.212, †386.312, †386.412, †386.512, †387.512]; competition between transportation systems

[†.016] Government control and ownership of railroads

Class in 385.1

385.1 **Administration and regulation of railroads**

Including government ownership and control [*formerly* †385.016], laws and regulations, statistics

Divide like 940–999, e.g., nationalization of British railroads 385.142

Class services [*formerly* *385.1] in 385.2

For history of railroad transportation, see 385.09

[†.12] Relation to other means of transport

Class in 385.012

.13 Financial regulations

.132 Rates

For services, see 385.2

.132 2 Passenger and baggage rates

Including rates for Pullman accommodations

.132 3 Express rates

.132 4 Freight rates

.132 6 Warehousing and storage rates

.133 Subsidies

Including land grants to railroads

.135 Taxation

.2 **Services [*formerly* *385.1]**

Time schedules, routes

.22 Passenger services

Including baggage, Pullman, dining car services

.23 Express services

.24 Freight services

.26 Warehousing and storage services

.3 **Facilities**

Stations, terminals, railroad yards

Including platforms, sidings

For services, see 385.2

.5 **Light railway transportation**

Including monorailway transportation [*formerly* †385.65]; narrow-gauge, industrial, light standard-gauge railway transportation

385.6 **Inclined and mountain railway transportation**

Including funicular, rack, cable railway systems

[†.63] **Elevated railways**

Class in 388.44

[†.64] **Subways**

Class in 388.42

[†.65] **Monorailways**

Class in 385.5

.7 **Railway combined with other transportation systems**

.72 Unitized cargo systems

Comprehensive works

Including trailers-on-flatcars, piggyback transportation, palletized cargo systems

For container-ship operations, see 387.544

.77 Ship railway transportation

Railways transporting vessels overland between bodies of water

.9 Pipeline transportation

For pipeline transportation operations of a specific commodity, see the subject, e.g., pipeline transportation of petroleum 665.54

386 Inland waterway transportation

For comprehensive works on water transportation, see 387

[†.12] Relation to other means of transport

Class in 385.012

.2 **Management and carriers**

[†.201 6] Government ownership and control

Class in 386.21

.21 Administration and regulation

Including government ownership and control [*formerly* †386.201 6], laws and regulations, statistics

[†.212] Relation to other means of transport

Class in 385.012

386.213 Financial regulations

Including rates, tolls, subsidies, taxation

.22 Ships for inland waterways

Description, history, rating, tonnage, classification

Including ships for transportation on lakes, rivers, canals

Divide like 623.82, e.g., tugboat transportation on lakes 386.223 2

For comprehensive works on ships, see 387.2; *ferry transportation,* 386.6

.24 Services

Including time schedules, routes for passengers and cargo

For inland ports, see 386.8

.3 **River transportation**

Administration, regulation, finance, services

Including transportation on canalized rivers

For ships, see 386.22; *ferry transportation,* 386.6; *inland ports,* 386.8

[†.312] Relation to other means of transport

Class in 385.012

.4 **Canal transportation**

Administration, regulation, finance, services

For ships for inland waterways, see 386.22; *ocean-going ships,* 387.2; *inland ports,* 386.8; *seaports,* 387.1

[†.412] Relation to other means of transport

Class in 385.012

.42 Interoceanic ship canals

Class specific interoceanic ship canals [*formerly* †386.42] other than Suez Canal and American interoceanic ship canals in 386.45

For intracoastal canal systems, see 386.46–386.48

.43 Suez Canal

.44 American interoceanic ship canals

.444 Panama Canal

.445 Nicaragua Canal

.447 Tehuantepec Canal

386.45 Other interoceanic ship canals [*formerly* †386.42]

Including canals connecting major bays or other parts of one ocean

Divide like 930–999, e.g., transportation on Kiel Canal 386.454 351

.46 Noninteroceanic canals

Including transportation on inland canals, intracoastal canal systems; canals connecting parts of a given ocean

For canals connecting major bays or other parts of one ocean, see 386.45

.47 Noninteroceanic ship canals

Including Cape Cod Canal, Welland Canal, Houston Ship Canal

.48 Barge canals

Including New York State Barge Canal, Albert Canal, Dismal Swamp Canal

.5 Lake transportation

Administration, regulation, finance, services

For ships, see 386.22; *ferry transportation,* 386.6; *inland ports,* 386.8

[†.512] Relation to other means of transport

Class in 385.012

.6 Ferry transportation

Including passenger, vehicular, freight, train ferries

.8 Inland ports

For comprehensive works on ports, see 387.1

387 Marine transportation (Ocean transportation)

Including comprehensive works on water transportation

For inland waterway transportation, see 386

.1 Seaports

Including comprehensive works on ports

For inland ports, see 386.8

[†.101 6] Government control and ownership

Class in 387.11

387.11 Port administration and regulations

Government control and ownership [*formerly* †387.101 6], financial regulations, statistics

For specific seaports, see 387.129

.12 Types of seaports

Including bay, estuary, combination, roadstead ports

.129 Specific seaports

Divide like 930–999, e.g., Port of New York 387.129 747 1

.13 Free ports and harbors [*formerly also* †337.87]

.2 Ocean-going ships

Description, history, rating, tonnage, classification

Including lists of vessels; comprehensive works on ships

Divide like 623.82, e.g., cargo ships 387.245

For ships for inland waterways, see 386.22; *maritime transport,* 387.5

.5 Merchant marine (Maritime transport)

For maritime law, see 347.75

[†.501 6] Government control and ownership

Class in 387.51

.51 Administration and regulation

Including government ownership and control [*formerly* †387.501 6], maritime laws and regulations, shipping policies, statistics

Class shipping [*formerly* *387.51] in 387.54

[†.512] Relation to other means of transport

Class in 385.012

.513 Financial regulations

Including rates, tolls, subsidies, taxation

.52 Seaways (Trade lanes)

Including international trade routes

.522 Intercoastal routes

Including transoceanic routes, main trade lines used in international commerce

For international commerce, see 382

.523 Auxiliary routes

Including irregular routes, tramp routes

387.524 Coastwise routes

Routes used for coastal domestic commerce

For transportation on intracoastal canals, see 386.46–386.48

.54 Services

Including shipping [*formerly* *387.51], time schedules, loading and unloading operations, cargo handling

.542 Passenger services

Including baggage, passenger accommodations

.544 Freight services

Including container-ship operations

For comprehensive works on unitized cargo systems, see 385.72

.55 Marine salvage business

Comprehensive works

Class salvage operations [*formerly* *387.55] in 627.7

.7 Air transportation

[†.701 6] Government control and ownership

Class in 387.71

.71 Administration and regulation

Including government control and ownership [*formerly* †387.701 6], laws and regulations, statistics

Divide like 940–999, e.g., air transport laws and regulations in United States 387.717 3

For history of air transportation, see 387.709

.72 Airways [*formerly also* †629.132 53]

Commercial air routes

Including route accessories, e.g., beacons, markers

.73 Facilities

.733 Airplanes

Divide like 629.133 3, e.g., helicopter transportation 387.733 5

.736 Airports and landing fields

Including runways, terminal buildings, hangars, control towers, warehouses

387.74 Services

Including time schedules

.742 Passenger services

Including baggage, services of air-line hostesses

.744 Freight services

388 Highway and urban transportation

Including interurban transportation

.1 Roads and highways

Including international highways, superhighways, toll roads, vehicular bridges and tunnels

For highway traffic control, see 388.312

.3 Vehicular transportation

Including automobile transportation

.31 Administration and regulation

Including laws and regulations, government control and ownership, statistics

.312 Traffic regulations [*formerly also* †629.213 43]

Including highway traffic control [*formerly* *625.79], elimination of traffic congestion, traffic control devices

For prevention of highway accidents, see 614.862

.313 Financial regulations

Including rates, subsidies, taxation

For taxation and registration of individual automobiles, see 629.213 4

.32 Services

Including time schedules, routes

.322 Passenger transportation

Including taxicab and motorbus services

.324 Freight transportation

Including trucking services

.33 Facilities

Including terminals, parking areas

388.4 **Local transit**

Including rapid transit systems

For taxicab and motorbus services, see 388.322

.42 Underground railways (Subways) [*formerly* †385.64]

.44 Elevated railways [*formerly* †385.63]

.46 Street railways

Including streetcars, trolley buses

389 Metrology and standardization

.1 **Weights and measures (Mass and dimension)**

.102 6 Laws and regulations

Including specifications and tolerances for weighing and weighing devices

.15 Systems of weights and measures

Including conversion tables

.152 Metric system

Meter, kilogram, liter system

.153 Imperial system (British system)

Yard, pound, gallon system

.159 Other systems

Including proposals for new systems

.16 Standards of weights and measures

Including measurement, measuring instruments

For theory of physical measurement, see 530.8

.6 **Standardization**

Comprehensive works

Including standards for interchangeability

For tests of materials, see 620.112; *standardization in production management,* 658.516; *of a specific product, the product, e.g., gasolines* 665.538 2; *of weights and measures,* 389.16

390 Customs and folklore

Including habits, conventions that have become traditional

For social mores, see 301.152; *cultural anthropology,* 572; *ethics,* 170; *social history of a specific country,* 940–999, *e.g., of Portgual* 946.9; *comprehensive works on history of civilization and culture,* 901.9; *civilization and culture of a specific country,* 914–919, *e.g., of Portugal* 914.69

.9 **History of customs and folklore**

Comprehensive works

Class customs of a specific area [*formerly* *390.9] in 914–919

For a specific custom in a specific area, see the custom, e.g., marriage in Japan 392.5

391 Costume

Social and historic aspects

Including care of person, hairdressing, wigs, beards, tattooing

For management of clothing and personal appearance, see 646; *stage costuming,* 792.026; *ethics of personal appearance,* 177.4

.09 History of costume

Including fashion movements, dress reform

Divide like 930–999, e.g., costume in Europe 391.094

.1 **Costumes of men**

.2 **Costumes of women**

.3 **Costumes of children**

.4 **Costume accessories**

Including hats, shoes, underwear, gloves, fans

.45 Buttons and button collecting

392 Customs of life cycle

Class burial customs [*formerly* *392] in 393; sociology of the family [*formerly* †392] in 301.42

For rites of a specific religion, see the religion, e.g., Christian rites 265, *Moslem marriage rites* 297.38; *family ethics,* 173; *war customs,* 399

.1 **Birth customs**

Including christening customs, circumcision

.2 **Sacrifice and exposure**

392.3 **Family and home customs**

Including kinship customs, totems and totemism

For family ethics, see 173; *structure and functions of family,* 301.42

.4 **Courting customs**

Including engagement customs, bundling, kissing customs

For sociological aspects of courtship, see 301.425; *ethics of courtship,* 177.6

.5 **Marriage customs**

Including bridal, wedding, honeymoon customs

For marriage and divorce laws, see 301.420 26; *marriage counseling,* 301.426; *premarital examination,* 614.17; *wedding etiquette,* 395.22

.6 **Sex customs**

Including concubinage

For psychology of the sexes, see 136.1; *sexual ethics,* 176; *sex instruction,* 612.600 7

393 Treatment of the dead [*formerly* *392]

Comprehensive works

For public health aspects, see 614.6

.1 **Earth burial customs**

For cemeteries, see 718; *mortuary buildings,* 726.8

.2 **Cremation customs**

For cremating techniques, see 614.62

.3 **Embalming customs**

Including mummies

For embalming techniques, see 614.64

.4 **Exposure of the dead**

.9 **Mourning customs**

Including wakes, suttees

For mourning etiquette, see 395.23

394 Public and social customs

.1 **Eating and drinking customs**

Including feasting, toasting customs, use of tobacco

394.2 **Public festivals**

Including origin of celebration; anniversaries

For public entertainment, see 791; *processions,* 394.5

.25 Carnivals

Including Mardi gras celebrations

For technique of Mardi gras celebrations, see 791.6

.26 Holidays

Including types of holidays, e.g., patriotic, seasonal, religious

.268 Special days

Plans and programs for celebration of specific holidays, e.g., Memorial Day [*formerly also* †973.768], Christmas, New Year, Queen's Birthday

Arrange alphabetically by name of holiday

Including days which are not legal holidays, but are similarly observed

For special day programs in schools, see 371.365; *folklore of festival days,* 398.33; *celebrations, anniversaries, commemorations of a specific historical event, the event, e.g., Independence Day* 973.313

.269 National holiday customs

Divide like 930–999, e.g., Mexican holidays 394.269 72

.3 **Public games and dances**

Origin and history of specific games and dances, e.g., Maypole dance

For folk dances, see 793.31; *recreation,* 790

.4 **Ceremonial customs and official ceremonies**

Including coronations, inaugurations, jubilees, state visits

.5 **Pageantry customs**

Including processions, parades

For technique and texts of pageants and Mardi gras celebrations, see 791.6; *carnivals,* 394.25

.6 **Fairs**

Including country and county fairs

For industrial fairs, see 606.4; *church bazaars,* 254.8; *public fêtes,* 791.6; *agricultural fairs,* 630.74

.7 **Chivalry**

Including jousts [*formerly also* †791.7], tournaments

For age of chivalry, see 940.17

394.8 **Dueling customs**

Including suicide customs

For trial by duel, see 340.3; *military duels,* 355.13; *ethics of dueling,* 179.7

395 Etiquette

Codes of social and formal conduct

For social ethics, see 177; *military etiquette,* 355.13; *diplomatic etiquette,* 341.7; *business etiquette,* 650.69

.1 **Special groups**

Including etiquette for children, young adults

.2 **Special occasions**

Including etiquette of tipping

.22 Wedding etiquette

Including engagements, showers

.23 Mourning etiquette

.3 **Hospitality**

Including duties of host and hostess, table manners

For entertaining, see 642.4; *hotel management,* 647.94; *eating customs,* 394.1

.4 **Social letter writing etiquette**

For business correspondence, see 651.75; *art of letter writing,* 808.6

396 Woman

Comprehensive works

Including feminism

For woman's relation to or participation in a specific activity, see the subject, e.g., woman suffrage 324.3

.1 **Emancipation of women**

.2 **Legal status of women**

Including property rights of women

.5 **Careers for women**

Comprehensive works only

For employment of women, see 331.4; *careers in a specific field, the subject, e.g., women as teachers* 371.1

.6 **Woman in the home**

396.9 **Woman in history, politics, war**

Including Amazons

For Women's Army Corps, see 355.348; *woman suffrage,* 324.3

397 Gypsies

Class Romany language in 491.49, Romany literature in 891.49 [*both formerly* †397]; nomads [*formerly* †*397] in 301.45

398 Folklore

For comparative mythology, see 291.13; *cultural anthropology,* 572; *folk songs,* 784.4

.2 **Legends**

Including tales of animals, birds; tall tales, e.g., Paul Bunyan

For animal lore, see 591.508; *plant lore,* 581.508

.21 Folk tales and fables

Including traditional fairy tales; if desired for juvenile collections, include also modern fairy tales with personal authors

If preferred for juvenile collections, class both traditional and modern fairy tales with fiction, or arrange under a letter classification, e.g., jF

For modern fairy tales by personal authors, see the 800's

.22 Legendary heroes

Narratives based on tradition with or without factual foundation

Including Arthur, Charlemagne, Cid, Faust, Robin Hood, Jesse James, Captain Kidd

For modern literary works based on lives of legendary heroes, see the 800's

.23 Legendary places

Including legends of imaginary places, geographical myths

Class haunted places [*formerly* *398.23] in 398.32

.3 **Traditional beliefs, customs, superstitions**

Including popular beliefs and practices relating to fire, magic, curses, charms, dreams, predictions, numbers, signs, emblems; local customs

For occultism, see 133

.32 Haunted places [*formerly* *398.23]

Including tales of cemeteries, caves, ancient ruins, haunted houses

398.33 Folklore of festival days and seasons of the year

For celebration of holidays, see 394.26

.4 **Supernatural beings**

Including fairies, elves, ogres, monsters, mythical animals

For fairy tales, see 398.21

.5 **Chapbooks [*formerly* *655.4]**

For book illustration, see 741.64; *woodcuts,* 761.2

.6 **Riddles**

Comprehensive works

Including history, folklore

For riddles and conundrums as recreation, see 793.735

[†.7] **Dream books**

Class in 135.382

.8 **Folklore in rhymes and games**

Including collections of popular ballads, nursery rhymes, game verses (counting out rhymes), street cries and songs

For music of folk songs, see 784.4, *of children's songs,* 784.624; *anthologies of nonsense verse,* 808.81

.9 **Proverbs**

399 Customs of war

Including arms, armor

For gunsmithing, see 683.4; *ornamentation of armor,* 739.7

Language

400 Language

Divide specific languages (but not groups of languages) like 420, e.g., Portuguese grammar 469.5. See exception under 427.01

For literature, see 800; *comparative works on Indo-European languages,* 410

401 Philosophy and theory

Including origin of language, sociology of language

402 Handbooks and outlines

403 Dictionaries and encyclopedias

Limited to philology and linguistics

For polyglot dictionaries, see 413

404 Essays and lectures

405 Periodicals

406 Organizations and societies

407 Study and teaching

Comprehensive works on the teaching of languages

For teaching a specific language, see the language, e.g., teaching Spanish 460.7

408 Collections

.7 **Dialectology**

.9 **Universal and artificial languages**

For simplified forms of a language, see the language, e.g., Basic English 428.25

.91 **Volapük**

.92 **Esperanto**

.93 **Interlingua**

409 History and local treatment

Including linguistic atlases

Divide like 930–999, e.g., languages of Asia 409.5

For distribution of peoples by language, see 572.8; *history of a specific language or group of languages, the subject, e.g., of English language* 420.9

410 Comparative linguistics

Including translating

For comparative works on a specific language group or subgroup, see the group, e.g., Semitic languages 492, *Romance languages* 479.1

411 Written language

Including alphabets, transliteration, phonetic transcription of languages; alphabets used in more than one language, e.g., Roman alphabet

Class pronunciation (orthoepy [*formerly* †411.5, *411]) in 414

For the alphabet used in a specific language, see the language, e.g., French alphabet 441.1; *writing,* 652; *hieroglyphics,* 419.25

412 Etymology (Derivation)

Including semantics in its linguistic aspect

For general semantics, see 149.94

413 Lexicography

Including polyglot dictionaries

414 Sounds of language

Including phonology, phonetics, phonemics, pronunciation (orthoepy [*formerly* †411.5, *411])

For phonetic transcription of languages, see 411; *physiology of speech,* 612.78

415 Grammar

Including morphology, syntax

416 Prosody [*formerly* *808.1]

For art of poetry, see 808.1

417 Inscriptions and paleography

Including diplomatics

418 Texts

Including linguistic sources, e.g., specimen verses; polyglot phrase books

419 Nonverbal communication

Communication otherwise than by words or letters of an alphabet

Including gestures, facial expressions, smoke signals, drumbeats, whistles, flags, use of colored and positioned lights

For a specific use of nonverbal communication, see the use, e.g., alarms and warnings 384.7; *codes of visual signaling,* 384.9

.1 Sign language

For communication for deaf-mutes, see 371.912

.2 Picture language

Including warning and information signs

.25 Hieroglyphics

For Egyptian hieroglyphics, see 493.111

420 English

.76 Problems and questions

Including examination papers [*formerly* †428.9]

421 Written and spoken elements

.1 Alphabet

Including vowels, diphthongs, aspirates [*all formerly* †421.2]; consonants [*formerly* †421.3]

[†.2–†.3] Vowels, diphthongs, aspirates, consonants

Class in 421.1

.4 Orthography

For spellers, see 428.1; *spelling in elementary education,* 372.42

.42 Spelling reform

Including phonetic spelling

.5 Sounds

Including pronunciation, phonetics, phonology, orthoepy

Class accent [*formerly* *421.5] in 421.6

.6 Accent [*formerly* *421.5]

.7 Inscriptions and paleography

.8 Abbreviations

.9 Punctuation

Including capitalization

422 Etymology (Derivation)

Including semantics in its linguistic aspect

For general semantics, see 149.94

.2 Prefixes and suffixes

.4 Foreign elements

.5 Derivation of noun forms

.6 Derivation of adjectival forms

.7 Derivation of pronominal forms

.8 Derivation of verbal forms

.9 Derivation of particles

423 Dictionaries and lexicography

Class bilingual dictionaries with the language likely to be less known to users of the individual library, adding, from 420–499, the number for the better known language, e.g., French-English dictionaries 443.2, French-Russian dictionaries 491.734

.1 Idioms

For lists of terms and phrases used in learning the language, see 428.3

424 Synonyms, antonyms, homonyms

425 Grammar

Descriptive and historical grammar

For textbooks for learning English, see 428; *grammar in elementary education,* 372.6

.1 Morphology and inflection

.2 Syntax

Class order of words in 425.3, parts of speech in 425.5–425.9 [*both formerly* *425.2]

.3 Order of words and clauses [*formerly* *425.2]

.4 Specific kinds of sentences

.5 Nouns [*formerly* *425.2]

.6 Adjectives and articles [*both formerly* *425.2]

.7 Pronouns [*formerly* *425.2]

425.8 Verbs [*formerly* *425.2]

.9 Particles [*formerly* *425.2]

Including adverbs, conjunctions, interjections

426 Prosody [*formerly* *808.1]

427 Early and nonliterary forms of the language

For history of English language, see 420.9

[†.01] Old English (Anglo-Saxon) to 1100

Class in 429. This is an exception to general rule stated under 400; use —701 for earliest form of other languages

.02 Middle English, 1100–1500

.09 Modern slang

Words and phrases used by particular classes of society; coined expressions of an ephemeral character and of picturesque or exaggerated meaning

.1–.8 Dialects in England

Local, usually nonliterary, forms of the language

Divide like 942.1–942.8, e.g., Cockney dialect 427.1

.9 Other dialects

Divide like 940–999, e.g., Australian English 427.994

428 Textbooks for learning the language

Works other than those intended for use in elementary schools

.1 Spellers

For elementary school spellers, see 372.42; *orthography,* 421.4

.2 Elementary composition

Works on formation of sentences, paragraphs, verses, as distinguisht from literary composition

For elementary school composition, see 372.6; *literary composition (rhetoric),* 808

.24 Language textbooks for those whose native language is not English

Divide by language of those for whom intended like 430–499, e.g., English textbooks for Spaniards 428.246

.25 Modifications of the language

Including Basic English

428.3 **Use of words**

Including errors of speech, vulgarisms, vocabulary building, lists of words and phrases for learning the language

For slang, see 427.09

.4 **Remedial reading other than elementary**

Including comprehensive works on remedial reading

For elementary remedial reading, see 372.413

[†.5] **Adult education readers**

Class in 428.6

.6 **Elementary readers**

Readers for use in third and fourth grades too elementary to be literature

Including adult education readers [*formerly* †428.5], readers made up of selections [*formerly* †428.7]

For primers, first readers, sets of readers beginning with primers or first readers, see 372.412; *readers for use in higher grades, the* 800's; *readers in a specific subject field, the subject, e.g., German scientific readers* 508

.64 Readers for those whose native language is not English

[†.7] **Selections**

Class in 428.6

[†.9] **Examination papers**

Class in 420.76

429 **Old English (Anglo-Saxon) [*formerly also* †427.01]**

430 **German**

431 **Written and spoken elements**

Divide like 421

432 **Etymology (Derivation)**

Divide like 422

433 **Dictionaries and lexicography**

Divide like 423

434 **Synonyms, antonyms, homonyms**

435 **Grammar**

Divide like 425

436 **Prosody [*formerly* *808.1]**

437 **Early and nonliterary forms of the language**

.01 Old High German to 1100

.02 Middle High German, 1100–1500

.1–.6 **Dialects in Germany and Austria**

Divide like 943.1–943.6, e.g., Bavarian dialect 437.3

For Low German dialects, see 439.4

.9 **Other dialects**

Divide like 940–999, e.g., Swiss German 437.949 4

Class Yiddish [*formerly* *437.9] in 492.49

438 **Textbooks for learning the language**

Divide like 428

439 **Other Germanic languages**

Including comprehensive works on Germanic languages

.1 **Western Germanic languages**

.2 **Frisian**

Class Old Saxon [*formerly* †439.2] in 439.4

.3 **Netherlands languages**

.31 Dutch

.32 Flemish

.36 Afrikaans

.4 **Low German (Plattdeutsch)**

Including Old Saxon [*formerly* †439.2], Middle and Modern Low German, and their dialects

.5 **Scandinavian languages**

.6 **Old Norse (Old Icelandic)**

.69 **Modern Icelandic**

.699 **Faroese**

.7 **Swedish**

439.8 **Danish and Norwegian languages**

.81 Danish

.82 Norwegian (Rigsmaal)

Class Landsmaal [*formerly* †*439.82] in 439.83

.83 Landsmaal [*formerly* †*439.82]

.9 Gothic

440 French

441 Written and spoken elements

Divide like 421

442 Etymology (Derivation)

Divide like 422

443 Dictionaries and lexicography

Divide like 423

444 Synonyms, antonyms, homonyms

445 Grammar

Divide like 425

446 Prosody [*formerly* *808.1]

447 Early and nonliterary forms of the language

.01 Old French to 1400

.02 Middle French, 1400–1600

.1–.8 Dialects in France

Divide like 944.1–944.8, e.g., Languedoc 447.8

For Franco-Provençal dialects, see 449

.9 Other dialects

Divide like 940–999, e.g., Canadian French 447.971 4

448 Textbooks for learning the language

Divide like 428

449 Provençal

Including Franco-Provençal dialects

.9 Catalan

450 Italian

451 Written and spoken elements

Divide like 421

452 Etymology (Derivation)

Divide like 422

453 Dictionaries and lexicography

Divide like 423

454 Synonyms, antonyms, homonyms

455 Grammar

Divide like 425

456 Prosody [*formerly* *808.1]

457 Early and nonliterary forms of the language

.01 Old Italian to 1300

.02 Middle Italian, 1300–1600

.1–.9 Dialects in Italy

Divide like 945.1–945.9, e.g., Neapolitan dialect 457.7

.99 Other dialects

Divide like 940–999, e.g., Swiss Italian 457.994 94

458 Textbooks for learning the language

Divide like 428

459 Rumanian

.9 Rhaeto-Romance languages

Including Romansh, Friulian, Ladin

460 Spanish

461 Written and spoken elements

Divide like 421

462 Etymology (Derivation)

Divide like 422

463 Dictionaries and lexicography

Divide like 423

464 Synonyms, antonyms, homonyms

465 Grammar

Divide like 425

466 Prosody [*formerly* *808.1]

467 Early and nonliterary forms of the language

.01 Old Spanish to 1100

.02 Middle Spanish, 1100–1600

.1–.8 Dialects in Spain

Divide like 946.1–946.8, e.g., Andalusian dialect 467.8

For Basque language, see 499.92

.9 Other dialects

Divide like 940–999, e.g., Argentine Spanish 467.982

468 Textbooks for learning the language

Divide like 428

469 Portuguese

.7 Early and nonliterary forms of the language

.71–.79 Dialects in Portugal

Divide like 946.91–946.99, e.g., Madeiran dialect 469.78

.798 Brazilian Portuguese

Divide like 420

.799 Other Portuguese dialects

Divide like 940–999, e.g., Portuguese dialect in Angola 469.799 673

.9 Galician (Gallegan)

470 Latin

For comprehensive works on Latin and Greek, see 489.1; *other Italic languages,* 479.9

471 Written and spoken elements

Divide like 421

472 Etymology (Derivation)

Divide like 422

473 Dictionaries and lexicography

Divide like 423

474 Synonyms, antonyms, homonyms

475 Grammar

Divide like 425

476 Prosody [*formerly* *808.1]

477 Historic and nonliterary forms of the language

.01 Old Latin to 80 B.C.

.03 Postclassical Latin

Including language of church fathers

For medieval and modern Latin, see 479.3

[*.05] Vulgar Latin

Class in 477.1

.1 Vulgar Latin [*formerly* *477.05]

478 Textbooks for learning the language

Divide like 428

479 Languages derived from Latin

.1 Romance languages

Comprehensive works

For a specific Romance language, see the language, e.g., French language 440

.3 Medieval and modern Latin

Divide like 420

.9 Other Italic languages

Including Oscan, Umbrian

For Etruscan language, see 499.94

480 Greek

For comprehensive works on Latin and Greek, see 489.1

481 Written and spoken elements

Divide like 421

482 Etymology (Derivation)

Divide like 422

483 Dictionaries and lexicography

Divide like 423

484 Synonyms, antonyms, homonyms

485 Grammar

Divide like 425

486 Prosody [*formerly* *808.1]

487 Historic and nonliterary forms of the language

For Modern Greek, see 489.3

.02 Hellenistic Greek, 300 B.C.–600 A.D.

[*.03–*.04] Biblical Greek

Class in 487.3

.05 Byzantine Greek, 600–1500

.2–.9 Greek dialects

Divide like 932–939, e.g., Macedonian Greek 487.81, Biblical (New Testament, Septuagint) Greek [*formerly* *487.03–*487.04] 487.3

488 Textbooks for learning the language

Divide like 428

489 Classical languages; Modern Greek

Including comprehensive works on Hellenic group

.1 Classical languages

Comprehensive works on Latin and Greek languages

For Latin, see 470; *Greek,* 480

.3 Modern Greek

490 Other languages

Including comprehensive works on Oriental languages

491 Other Indo-European languages

Including comprehensive works on Indo-European languages

For a specific group or language, see the subject, e.g., Germanic languages 439

SUMMARY

491.1–.4	Indic languages
.5	Iranian and Armenian languages
.6	Celtic languages
.7	Russian
.79	Ukrainian (Ruthenian)
.799	Belorussian (White Russian)
.8	Other Slavic languages
.9	Baltic languages
.99	Other Indo-European languages

.1 Indic languages

Including Indo-Iranian languages

.2 Sanskrit

.27 Sanskrit dialect (Primary Prakrits)

.29 Other Old Indic languages

Including Vedic

.3 Middle Indic languages

Including comprehensive works on Prakrit languages

For primary Prakrits, see 491.27; *tertiary Prakrits,* 491.4

.370 1 Pali

.4 Modern Indic languages (Tertiary Prakrits)

.41 Sindhi

.42 Panjabi

.43 Hindustani

Including literary forms Hindi, Urdu

491.44 Bengali

.45 Oriya

.46 Marathi

.47 Gujarati

.48 Singhalese

.49 Other modern Indic languages

Including Romany (Gypsy [*formerly* †397]), Assamese

Arrange alphabetically by language

.5 Iranian and Armenian languages

Including Old Persian, Avestan, Pahlavi, Parsi, Ossetic, Kurdish, Pashto (Pushtu)

.54 Armenian

.55 Modern Persian

.59 Other Iranian languages

Including Baluchi, Pamir languages

.6 Celtic languages

Including Scottish Gaelic, Cornish, Breton

.62 Irish

.66 Welsh

[†.69] Basque

Class in 499.92

.7 Russian

Class comprehensive works on Slavic languages [*formerly* *491.7] in 491.8

.770 1 Old Russian, 1100–1550

.770 2 Middle Russian, 1550–1750

.79 Ukrainian (Ruthenian)

.799 Belorussian (White Russian)

491.8 Other Slavic languages

Including comprehensive works on Slavic languages [*formerly* *491.7], Balto-Slavic languages, Modern (Russian) Church Slavic

.81 Bulgarian

.817 01 Old Church Slavic

.819 Macedonian

For Macedonian Greek, see 487.81

.82 Serbo-Croatian

Including works on Serbian

.83 Croatian

.84 Slovenian

.85 Polish

.86 Czech (Bohemian)

.87 Slovak

Including Moravian

.88 Sorbian (Wendish)

.89 Polabian

.9 Baltic languages

For Balto-Slavic languages, see 491.8

.91 Old Prussian

.92 Lithuanian

.93 Latvian (Lettish)

.99 Other Indo-European languages

Including Hittite, Tokharian, Thraco-Phrygian languages, Illyrian languages

.991 Albanian

492 Semitic languages

Including Hamito-Semitic languages

.1 Aramaic languages

.19 Akkadian (Assyro-Babylonian)

.2 West Aramaic languages

For Samaritan, see 492.5

.29 Biblical Aramaic (Chaldean)

492.3 East Aramaic languages

.39 Syriac

.4 Hebrew

.49 Yiddish [*formerly* *437.9]

Including comprehensive works on Jewish languages other than Hebrew

.499 Other Jewish languages

Divide like 420–499, e.g., Ladino (Judeo-Spanish) 492.499 6

.5 Samaritan

.6 Phoenician (Punic, Carthaginian)

.69 Ugaritic

.7 Arabic

.8 Ethiopic languages

Including Geez, Amharic

For Hamitic Ethiopian languages, see 493.5

.9 South Arabic and other languages related to Arabic

Including Himyaritic: Minean, Sabean; Mahri-Sokotri

493 Hamitic languages

For Hamito-Semitic languages, see 492

.1 Old Egyptian

.2 Coptic

.3 Libyan-Berber languages

Including Kabyle, Tamashek (Tuareg)

.5 Cushitic (Hamitic Ethiopian) languages

Including Somali, Galla

494 Finno-Ugric, Turkic, other linguistic groups

.1 Tungusic languages

Including Manchu

.2 Mongolic languages

Including Kalmuk, Khalkha, Buryat

.3 Turkic languages

Including Yakut, Uigur, Kirghiz

.35 Turkish proper

494.4 Samoyed languages

Including Yurak (Nenets), Ostyak-Samoyed (Selkup)

For Ugro-Ostyak, see 494.5

.5 Finno-Ugric languages

Including Cheremiss (Mari), Mordvin, Permian, Ziryen (Komi), Votyak (Udmurt), Ugro-Ostyak

.511 Hungarian (Magyar)

.54 Western Finnish languages

.541 Finnish

.545 Estonian

.55 Lappish

.6 Paleo-Siberian and Ainu languages

Including Chukchi, Koryak, Gilyak

[†.7] Caucasian languages

Class in 499.96 [*formerly* (Notes and Decisions, Second Series, No. 26, Oct. 1948) †494.7]

.8 Dravidian languages

Class Caucasian languages [*formerly* *494.8] in 499.96

.811 Tamil

.812 Malayalam

.813 Telugu

.814 Kanarese (Kannada)

.815 Tulu

.816 Kodagu

.821 Kota

.822 Toda

.823 Gondi

.824 Khond (Kandh)

.826 Kurukh (Orâon)

495 Languages of East and Southeast Asia

Including Andaman, Burushaski, Karen, Lolo, Miao

.1 Chinese

.4 Tibetan

495.5 **Himalayan and Assamese dialects**

For Assamese language, see 491.49

.6 **Japanese**

.7 **Korean**

.8 **Burmese**

.91 **Siamese**

Including comprehensive works on Thai languages

.92 **Annamese languages**

Including Annamese, Muong

.93 **Mon-Khmer languages**

Including Mon, Khmer (Cambodian)

.95 **Munda languages**

Including Mundari, Santali

496 African languages

Including Hausa

For Semitic languages, see 492; *Hamitic languages,* 493

.1 **Hottentot languages**

Class Bushman languages [*formerly* *496.1] in 496.2

.2 **Bushman languages [*formerly* *496.1]**

.3 **Bantu languages**

Including Swahili, Zulu

.4 **Negro dialects**

Including Ewe, Kanuri, Mende

.5 Dialects of Sudan

Including Negro-Hamito-Semitic dialects, e.g., Fulah

497 North American Indian languages

Based on Trager, G. L. "A Bibliographic Classification for Linguistics and Languages." *Studies in Linguistics,* v. 3 (1945)

.1 **Eskimo**

Including Aleutian

.2 **Na-Dene**

Including Tlingit, Athabascan (Chipewyan, Apachean, Navaho)

497.3 **Algonkian-Mosan**

Including Delaware, Ojibway, Cree, Nootka

.4 **Macro-Penutian**

Including Coos, Tsimshian, Mixe, Hopi, Ute, Aztec, Maya, Quiche, Chinook

.5 **Hokan-Siouan**

Including Yukian, Huron, Cherokee, Choctaw, Creek

.6 **Macro-Otomanguean**

Including Poploca, Manguean, Mixtec, Zapotec

.7 **Tarascan**

.8 **Miskito-Matagalpan**

Including unclassified languages of Mexico and Central America, e.g., Cuitlatec, Olmec

498 South American Indian languages

Including Kechua, Tupi, Guarani

499 Austronesian

.1 **Papuan languages**

.2 **Malayan (Indonesian) languages**

.211 Tagalog

.221 Malay proper

.222 Javanese

.4 **Polynesian languages**

Including Hawaiian

.5 **Melanesian and Micronesian languages**

.6 **Australian aboriginal languages**

.9 Other languages

.92 **Basque [*formerly* †491.69]**

.93 **Elamite**

.94 **Etruscan**

.95 **Sumerian**

.96 **Caucasian languages [*formerly* (Notes and Decisions, Second Series, No. 26, Oct. 1948) †494.7, *494.8]**

Including Chechen, Circassian, Kartvelian, Georgian, Svanetian, Mingrelian, Laz

Pure Science

500 Pure science

Class manufacture of scientific measuring instruments [*formerly* *500–*599] in 681.2

For applied science, see 600

.83 Formulas, tables, statistics

.84 Audio-visual aids

.86 Models and modelmaking

For a specific scientific model, see the subject, e.g., models of organic compounds 547.086

501 Philosophy and theory

Including foundations of science

502 Handbooks and outlines

503 Dictionaries and encyclopedias

504 Essays and lectures

505 Periodicals

506 Organizations and societies

507 Study and teaching

508 Collections

.3 General scientific travels and surveys

For expeditions limited to a specific scientific field, see the subject, e.g., general geological expeditions 550.72, *geological expeditions to Japan* 555.2

.4–.9 General scientific travels in specific countries

Divide like 940–999, e.g., scientific expeditions to Antarctica 508.99

509 History and local treatment

Divide like 930–999, e.g., history of science in Germany 509.43

510 Mathematics

For mathematical recreations, see 793.74; *business mathematics,* 511.8

.2 Handbooks and outlines

Class collections [*formerly* †510.2] in 510.8

.7 Study and teaching

.78 Computation instruments and machines

Comprehensive works on mechanical, electromechanical, and electronic calculating devices

Class manufacture of computation instruments and machines [*formerly* *510.78] in 681.141–681.144

For a specific use of computation instruments and machines, see the subject, e.g., calculating machines in offices 651.264

.782 Analogue machines

.782 3 Slide rules and planimeters

.782 4 Differential analyzers

Electromechanical and electronic machines used only in the solution of systems of differential equations

.783 Digital machines

For abacus, see 511.207 8

.783 2 Adding and calculating machines

Manually-operated mechanical and electromechanical machines

.783 4 Automatic (Electronic) digital computers

Including UNIVAC, RAYDAC, BINAC, puncht card computing machines

.8 Collections [*formerly* †510.2]

.83 Mathematical tables

Including logarithm tables, tables of roots and powers

For tables applying to a specific branch of mathematics, see the subject, e.g., geometry tables 513.083, *algebra tables* 512.9

511 Arithmetic

[.076] Arithmetic problems

Class in 511.9

[.083] Arithmetic tables

Class in 511.9

.1 Numeration systems

Including decimal, duodecimal, dyadic systems of arithmetic

.2 Fundamental arithmetic operations

Class theory of numbers [*formerly* *511.2] in 512.81

.201 8 Short cuts and rapid calculations

.207 6 Algorisms (Algorithms)

For algorisms for a specific process, see the subject, e.g., extraction of square roots 511.7

.207 8 Abacus

.22 Addition and subtraction

.23 Multiplication and division

.3 Prime numbers and factoring

Including greatest common divisor, lowest common multiple

For theory of primes, see 512.814

.4 Fractions and decimal fractions

For continued fractions, repeated decimals, see 517.21

[†.5] Permutations and combinations

Class in 512.5

.6 Proportion [*formerly also* †512.6] and ratio

Class progressions [*formerly* †511.6] in 512.6

.61 Magic squares [*formerly also* †793.74]

For permutations and combinations, see 512.5

.7 Involution and evolution

Determination of squares and cubes, extraction of square roots and cube roots

For exponents and logarithms, see 512.7; *tables of roots and powers,* 510.83

511.8 Business mathematics

Including mensuration, mercantile rules, calculation of interest

For accounting, see 657

.808 3 Tables

Including interest tables

.9 Arithmetic problems and tables

For tables of roots and powers, see 510.83

512 Algebra

For algebraic geometry, see 516.5; *algebraic functions,* 517.83

[.076] Algebra problems

Class in 512.9

[.083] Algebra tables

Class in 512.9

.1 Algebraic postulates

Former heading: Systems of algebra

.2 Algebraic equations and imaginary quantities

.21 Algebraic equations [*formerly also* †512.3]

Including solutions of linear and quadratic simultaneous equations, binomial and polynomial equations

For indeterminate equations, see 512.23; *reciprocal equations,* 512.26; *determinants,* 512.83

.22 Approximate computations

Former heading: Higher numeric equations

.23 Indeterminate equations (Diophantine equations)

Including diophantine analysis

.24 Imaginary quantities

Including theory of imaginary roots

.26 Reciprocal equations

Equations which are unchanged if the unknown is replaced by its reciprocal

[†.3] Algebraic equations, maxima and minima

Class algebraic equations in 512.21; maxima and minima in 517.27

[†.4] Series, continued fractions, binomial theorem, Taylor's theorem

Class in 517.21

512.5 Combinatory analysis

Including permutations and combinations [*formerly* †511.5], distribution

For magic squares, see 511.61; *probabilities,* 519.1

.6 Progressions [*formerly also* †511.6]

Including simple arithmetic and geometric progressions

Class proportion [*formerly* †512.6] in 511.6

For series, see 517.21

.7 Exponents and logarithms

Former heading: Involution and evolution

Including theorems of exponents and logarithms; zero, negative, and fractional exponents; calculations of values of powers and roots by means of logarithms

For logarithm tables, see 510.83

.8 Abstract algebra

.81 Theory of numbers [*formerly* *511.2]

Including development of number systems [*formerly* *517.1]

.812 Divisibility

Including theory of measure [*formerly* *517.1], factorization, linear congruences

For diophantine analysis, see 512.23

.813 Fermat's theorem

Including higher congruences, forms, residues, partitions

.814 Theory of primes

.815 Algebraic fields

Including rings, ring ideals [*both formerly* *512.89]

For theory of groups, see 512.86

.816 Complex multiplication

.817 Transfinite numbers [*formerly* *517.1]

Including aggregates, assemblages, Cantor's theory

.82 Theory of equations

Class complex variables [*formerly* †512.82] in 517.8

.83 Determinants

Including ordinary, symmetrical, numerical, infinite, polydimensional determinants

.84 Symmetrical functions of roots

512.85 Elimination discriminants

Class quaternion algebra in 512.893, vector algebra in 512.895 [*both formerly* *512.85]

.86 Theory of groups

Including abstract, substitution, linear, continuous, Abelian groups; transformations, substitutions

For geometric transformations, see 516.55; *algebraic fields,* 512.815; *calculus of operations,* 517.7

.865 Lattice theory [*formerly* *512.89]

.87 Theory of forms (Quantics)

Including algebraic forms, modular theory

.88 Invariant theory

Including binary, ternary, n-ary, orthogonal invariants

.89 Universal algebra

Class lattice theory in 512.865; rings, ring ideals in 512.815 [*all formerly* *512.89]

For kinematic geometry, see 516.8

.893 Quaternion algebra [*formerly* *512.85]

.894 Space analysis (Ausdehnungslehre)

.895 Vector algebra [*formerly* *512.85]

.896 Matrices and tensor algebra

.897 Linear algebras

For linear and dynamic programming, see 519.92

.9 Algebra problems and tables

For logarithm tables, see 510.83

513–516 Geometry

513 Elementary Euclidean geometry

[.076] Geometry problems

Class in 513.9

.083 Geometry tables

.1 Elementary plane geometry

Including curves [*formerly* †513.2]

[†.2] Curves

Class in 513.1

513.3 **Elementary solid geometry**

Including curved surfaces [*formerly* †513.4]

[†.4] Curved surfaces

Class in 513.3

.5 **Modern geometry (Post-Euclidean geometry)**

Including advanst plane and solid geometry

For Cartesian geometry, see 516

.6 **Denumerative geometry**

Determination of the number of specific configurations fulfilling a sufficient number of conditions

[†.7] **Infinitesimal and kinematic geometry**

Class infinitesimal geometry in 516.7; kinematic geometry in 516.8

.8 **Non-Euclidean geometries**

.81 **Absolute geometry of one, two, and three dimensions**

.82 **n-Dimensional geometries**

Including fourth dimension geometry, hyperspace geometry; Hilbert space [*formerly* *517.1]

.83 **Geometric topology (Analysis situs)**

.84 **Lobachevskian geometry**

Including geometries of Bolyai, Gauss

.85 **Riemannian geometry**

.9 **Geometry problems**

.92 **Famous problems**

Including circle squaring, trisection of angles, duplication of cubes

.94 **Porisms**

514 **Trigonometry**

[.076] Trigonometry problems

Class in 514.9

.083 Trigonometry tables

.5 **Plane trigonometry**

514.6 **Spherical trigonometry**

Including solution of spherical triangles [*formerly* †514.7]

[†.7] Solution of spherical triangles

Class in 514.6

.9 **Trigonometry problems**

515 **Descriptive geometry**

For mechanical drawing, see 744.422

.1 **Orthogonal projection on two planes**

.2 **Isometric and other one-plane projections**

.3 **Oblique projections**

.4 **Conical projections**

.5 **Spherical projections**

For map projections, see 526.8

.6 **Perspective**

For perspective in drawing, see 742

.7 **Shades and shadows**

For shades and shadows in mechanical drawing, see 744.43; *in freehand drawing,* 741.4

.8 **Stereotomy**

Class stereotomy in masonry in 693.1, in sculpture in 731.463, in carpentry in 694, in stairbuilding in 694.8 [*all formerly* †515.81–†515.83]

516 **Analytic geometry (Cartesian geometry, Coordinate geometry)**

[.076] Analytic geometry problems

Class in 516.9

.083 Analytic geometry tables

.1 **Straight lines and coordinate axes**

.2 **Curves in Cartesian form**

Including conics (circles, ellipses, hyperbolas, parabolas), higher plane curves

.3 **Planes and lines in space with Cartesian forms**

.4 **Surfaces in Cartesian form**

Including spheres, quadrics, ellipsoids, hyperboloids, paraboloids, higher surfaces

516.5 **Modern algebraic geometry**

Including systems of coordinates, abridged and symbolic notations, conics, quadrics, higher planes and surfaces, space curves

For conics in Cartesian form, see 516.2; *quadrics in Cartesian form,* 516.4

.55 Geometric transformations

Former heading: Poles and polars

Including quadratic, Cremona, birational, isogonal transformations; reciprocation, inversions, correlation methods

For theory of groups, see 512.86

.56 Harmonic and anharmonic properties

.57 Projective geometry

Spatial relations, ideas, and properties unaltered by projective transformations

.6 **Line geometry**

Including systems of curves, surfaces, rays

.66 Modular geometry

.7 **Differential geometry (Infinitesimal geometry [*formerly* †513.7])**

.74 Projective differential geometry

.8 **Kinematic geometry [*formerly also* †513.7]**

Calculus of direction and position

.82 Quaternions

For quaternion algebra, see 512.893

.83 Vector and tensor analysis

For vector algebra, see 512.895; *tensor algebra,* 512.896

.9 **Analytic geometry problems**

517 Calculus

For analytical mechanics, see 531.017

[.076] Calculus problems

Class in 517.9; differential calculus problems in 517.29; integral calculus problems in 517.39

.083 Calculus tables

For integral calculus tables, see 517.39

517.1 **Infinitesimal calculus**

Comprehensive works on differential and integral calculus

Class theory of functions of real variables in 517.52, development of number systems in 512.81, theory of point sets in 517.521, functional analysis in 517.5, Hilbert space in 513.82, transfinite numbers in 512.817, theory of measure in 512.812 [*all formerly* *517.1]

For differential calculus, see 517.2; *integral calculus,* 517.3

.2 **Differential calculus [*formerly* *517.3]**

Class summability methods in 517.31, orthogonal expansions in 517.35, Fourier series in 517.355 [*all formerly* *517.2]

.21 Series [*formerly also* †512.4]

Indicated sum of the terms of a sequence

Including continued fractions, binomial theorem, Taylor's theorem (Maclaurin's series) [*all formerly* †512.4]; finite, infinite, binomial, reciprocal, factorial, divergent series; repeated decimals

For simple arithmetic and geometric progressions, see 512.6

.22 Indeterminate forms

.27 Variation of function values

Including maxima and minima [*formerly also* †512.3]

.28 Differential forms and invariants

Including Jacobian, Hessian, Pfaffian forms

.29 Differential calculus problems

.3 **Integral calculus**

Class differential calculus [*formerly* *517.3] in 517.2

.31 Methods of integration

Including summability methods [*formerly* *517.2]

.32 Definite integrals

Including gamma functions [*formerly* *518.1], Euler functions

.33 Rectifications

.34 Multiple integrals

Including theorems of Green and Stoke

.35 Orthogonal expansions [*formerly* *517.2]

.352 Spherical harmonics

Including Legendre's functions [*formerly* *518.2], Laplace's functions

517.353 Cylindrical harmonics

Including Bessel's functions [*formerly* *518.3]

.354 Ellipsoidal harmonics

Including Lamé's functions

.355 Fourier series [*formerly* *517.2]

.36 Elliptic [*formerly* *518.4] and hyperelliptic functions

Including Abelian, theta, modular, multiply periodic functions

.37 Integral equations

Including integral differential equations

.38 Differential equations

For differential forms and invariants, see 517.28

.382 Ordinary differential equations

Including linear and nonlinear differential equations

.383 Partial differential equations

Including partial differential equations of the first and higher orders

.39 Integral calculus problems and tables

517.4–517.8 Branches and applications of calculus

For calculus of direction and position, see 516.8

.4 Calculus of variations

.5 Calculus of functions (Functional analysis [*formerly* *517.1])

Including functional equations; special functions [*formerly* *518]

For a specific function, see the subject, e.g., gamma functions 517.32

.52 Functions of real variables [*formerly* *517.1]

For functions of complex variables, see 517.8

.521 Theory of point sets [*formerly* *517.1]

Including Moore's general analysis

.6 Calculus of finite differences

Including interpolations, extrapolations; numerical analysis

517.7 Calculus of operations

Including transformations

For geometric transformations, see 516.55; *theory of groups,* 512.86; *algebraic fields,* 512.815

.8 Functions of complex variables [*formerly also* †512.82]

For functions of real variables, see 517.52; *elliptic and hyperelliptic functions,* 517.36

.81 Riemann surfaces

Including Riemann-zeta functions [*formerly* *518.5]

.83 Algebraic functions

.85 Automorphic and polyhedral functions

.88 Hypergeometric functions

.9 Calculus problems

[*518] Special functions

Class in 517.5

[*.1] Gamma functions

Class in 517.32

[*.2] Legendre's functions

Class in 517.352

[*.3] Bessel's functions

Class in 517.353

[*.4] Elliptic functions

Class in 517.36

[*.5] Riemann-zeta functions

Class in 517.81

519 Probabilities and statistical mathematics

For gambling and betting systems, chances of winning, see 795.01

.1 Probabilities

Including mathematical expectation [*formerly also* †519.2], prediction [*formerly also* †519.4]

[†.2] Mathematical expectation

Class in 519.1

[†.3] Testimony

Class in 347.94

[†.4] Mathematical predictions

Class in 519.1

.6 Theory of errors

.7 Information theory

Mathematical treatment of information transmission

.8 Treatment of data

Including application of methods of least squares, theory of closest approximation

Class programming [*formerly* *519.8] in 519.92

.9 Statistical mathematics [*formerly also* *311.2]

For statistics, see 310

.92 Programming [*formerly also* *519.8]

Including linear and dynamic programming, mathematical treatment of design of experiments

.93 Mathematical theory of sampling

Including theory of quality control

520 Astronomy and allied sciences

520.1–525.7 Astronomy

.1 Ancient and medieval astronomy

Including natural astrology

For modern astrology, see 133.5

.7 Study and teaching of astronomy

[.72] Observatories

Class in 522.1

.78 Astronomical instruments

Comprehensive works

For specific astronomical instruments, see 522.2–522.6

.9 History of astronomical knowledge

521 Theoretical astronomy

Including celestial motions

For motions of an individual celestial body, see the body, e.g., motion of Mars 523.43

.1 Celestial mechanics

Including celestial dynamics

.11 Laws of planetary equilibrium and motion

.12 Law of universal gravitation and motion [*formerly also* †531.51]

For gravity, see 531.5

.13 Problems of three and *n* bodies

.2 Astronomical coordinates

Comprehensive works

Including horizon, equator, galactic systems of coordinates

For ecliptic (celestial) coordinates, see 522.71; *geographic coordinates,* 526.6

.3 Orbits

Including Kepler's problem

For orbit of an individual celestial body, see the body, e.g., orbit of Mars 523.43

.4 Perturbations

.5 Theory of planets

521.6 **Satellites**

Including theory of satellites

For moon, see 523.3; *artificial satellites,* 629.138 82

.63 Satellites of Mars

.65 Satellites of Jupiter

.66 Satellites of Saturn

.67 Satellites of Uranus

.68 Satellites of Neptune

.7 **Theory of comets**

.8 **Theory of eclipses, transits, occultations**

.9 **Precession and nutation**

For corrections in precession, see 522.95; *in nutation,* 522.96

522 Practical and spherical astronomy

SUMMARY

522.1 Observatories
.2 Telescopes
.3 Meridional instruments
.4 Extrameridional instruments
.5 Auxiliary instruments
.6 Observational techniques
.7 Spherical astronomy
.9 Corrections

522.1–522.67 Practical astronomy

For spherical astronomy, see 522.7

.1 **Observatories**

.19 History, reports, serial publications of observatories

Divide like 930–999, e.g., history of United States Naval Observatory in Washington, D.C. 522.197 53

.2 **Telescopes**

For zenith telescopes, see 522.43; *equatorial telescopes,* 522.46

.21 Reflecting telescopes

.22 Refracting telescopes

.23 Eyepiece and accessories

.24 Object glass

Including lens, mirror

522.25 Mountings

.252 Altazimuth mountings

.26 Equatorial mountings

.27 Transit mountings

.29 Famous telescopes

Divide like 930–999, e.g., Hale 200-inch telescope at Palomar Observatory, California 522.297 949 8

.3 **Meridional instruments**

For transit mountings, see 522.27; *zenith telescopes,* 522.43

.4 **Extrameridional instruments**

.41 Sextants, quadrants, reflecting circles, astrolabes

.43 Zenith telescopes

.46 Equatorial telescopes

.5 **Auxiliary instruments**

.51 Sidereal clocks and chronometers

.52 Chronographs

.53 Micrometers

.54 Personal equation machines

For correction of personal equation, see 522.97

.56 Instruments for solar observation

.562 Spectroheliographs and photoheliographs

.563 Coronagraphs

.58 Heliostats

.6 **Observational techniques**

.62 Astronomical photometry

.622 Photographic photometry

.623 Photoelectric photometry

.63 Astronomical photography

For photographic photometry, see 522.622

.65 Astronomical polarimetry

.67 Astronomical spectroscopy

For spectroscopy of a specific celestial body, see the body, e.g., lunar spectroscopy 523.37

522.7 **Spherical astronomy**

For application of spherical astronomy to geodesy, see 526.6

.71 Celestial sphere and coordinates

Including correction and reduction of observations

For galactic system of coordinates, see 521.2

.75 Interpolation

.76 Meridian lines and variations of compass

.78 Use of globes, planispheres, astronomical models

.9 Corrections

.91 Correction of parallax

.92 Correction of astronomical refraction

.94 Correction of aberration

.95 Correction of precession

For theory of precession, see 521.9

.96 Correction of nutation

For theory of nutation, see 521.9

.97 Correction of personal equation

.98 Correction of instrumental errors

523 Descriptive astronomy and astrophysics

Including popular astronomy

SUMMARY

523.01	**Astrophysics**
.1	**Physical universe**
.2	**Solar system**
.3	**Moon**
.4	**Planets**
.5	**Meteors**
.6	**Comets**
.7	**Sun**
.8	**Stars**
.9	**Transits and occultations**

.01 Astrophysics

.016 Radio astronomy

523.1 **Physical universe**

Including astronomical aspects of cosmology and cosmogony

Class metaphysical aspects of cosmogony [*formerly* *523.1] in 113

.11 Structure of universe

.112 Extragalactic systems

.113 Galactic system (Milky Way)

.113 5 Interstellar material and galactic nebulas

.12 Nebular hypothesis

.13 Plurality of worlds

.14 Glacial cosmogony

Former heading: Space and its temperature

.18 Expanding universe

Including theories of Einstein, de Sitter, Eddington, Lemaître

.19 Destruction of universe

.2 Solar system

.24 Motion of solar system in space

.28 Planetariums (Orreries)

.29 Zodiac

.3 Moon

For occultations, see 523.99

.31 Constants and dimensions of moon

Including size, mass, distance, parallax

.32 Phases of moon

Including sources of lunar heat, light, radiation

.33 Orbit and motions of moon

Including sidereal month, perigee and apogee, librations

For lunar tables, see 523.39

.34 Selenography

Science of physical features of moon

.35 Theories of lunar atmosphere

.36 Lunar climatology

Including lunar temperature

For sources of lunar heat and light, see 523.32; *theories of lunar atmosphere,* 523.35

523.37 Lunar spectroscopy
.38 Lunar eclipses
.39 Charts and photographs of moon
Including lunar observations, tables

.4 Planets
Including distance, motions, orbits, physical condition, planetary spectroscopy
For satellites, see 521.6; *earth,* 525; *theory of planets,* 521.5
.41 Mercury and intramercurial planets
.42 Venus
.43 Mars
.44 Minor planets (Asteroids, planetoids)
.45 Jupiter
.46 Saturn
.47 Uranus
.48 Neptune
.482 Pluto
.49 Charts and photographs of planets
Including planetary observations, tables

.5 Meteors
Class aurora [*formerly* *523.5] in 538.768
.51 Meteorites [*formerly also* †552.6]
.53 Meteoric showers and radiant points
.57 Spectroscopy of meteors
.59 Zodiacal light and counterglow
Class aurora [*formerly* †523.59] in 538.768
For astronomical twilight, see 525.7

.6 Comets
.63 Orbits of comets
.64 Famous comets
.66 Physical constitution of comets
.67 Spectroscopy of comets

523.69 Charts and photographs of comets
Including observations, tables of comets

.7 Sun
.71 Solar constants and dimensions
Including size, mass, diameter
For rotation, see 523.73
.72 Solar heat, light, radiation
For atmospheric temperature, see 551.525
.73 Apparent motion and rotation of sun
For tables of the sun, see 525.38
.74 Sunspots and faculae
For climatology and weather, see 551.59
.75 Solar prominences, chromosphere, corona
.76 Internal constitution of sun
.77 Spectroscopy of sun and of solar eclipses
.78 Solar eclipses
.79 Charts and photographs of sun
Including solar observations
Class tables of the sun [*formerly* †523.79] in 525.38

.8 Stars
For Milky Way, see 523.113; *celestial navigation,* 527; *sun,* 523.7
.81 Stellar parallax and distance
.82 Stellar temperature, luminosity, color
.822 Magnitudes
.83 Proper motion and radial velocity of stars
.84 Double, multiple, variable stars
.841 Visual binaries
.842 Spectroscopic binaries
.843 Astrometric binaries
.844 Variable stars
.844 2 Intrinsic variables
.844 25 Cepheids
Including cluster-type variables

523.844 26 Long-period variables
.844 4 Eclipsing variables
.844 6 Novae and supernovae
.85 Clusters
.852 Open clusters
Including moving clusters
.855 Globular clusters
.86 Physical constitution of stars
.87 Stellar spectroscopy
.89 Constellation and star names
Including maps
.890 8 Star catalogs
.9 Transits and occultations
For theory of transits and occultations, see 521.8
.91 Transits of Mercury
.92 Transits of Venus
Including methods of observation (Delisle's, Halley's methods) and methods of recording (photographic method) [*formerly* †523.93–†523.95]
[†.93–†.95] Methods of observation and recording
Class in 523.92
.96 Transits of Venus to 1874
Including transits of 1761, 1769, 1874
.97 Transit of 1882
.99 Occultations

524

525 Earth (Astronomical geography)

For geodesy, see 526.1

.1 Terrestrial constants and dimensions
Including size, mass, diameter, density, figure, position, parallax
.2 Terrestrial heat, light, radiation
Comprehensive works
For atmospheric thermal conditions, see 551.52; *atmospheric optics,* 551.565; *internal heat of earth,* 551.12

525.3 Orbit and motions of earth
.35 Rotation of earth
Including apparent rising and setting of sun
.36 Foucault's pendulum
.38 Tables of the sun [*formerly also* †523.79]
[†.4] Geographic coordinates
Class in 526.6
.5 Seasons
For climatology and weather, see 551.59
.6 Tides
.69 Tide tables
For tide tables as aids to navigation, see 623.894
.7 Astronomical twilight
Including twilight tables
For comprehensive works on twilight, see 551.565

526 Mathematical geography

.1 Geodesy
Determination of size, shape, figure of earth
For isostasy, see 551.12; *geodetic surveying,* 526.3; *geodetic and positional astronomy,* 526.6; *gravity determinations,* 526.7
[†.2] Base measurement
Class in 526.33
.3 Geodetic surveying
Surveys of large areas in which curvature of the earth is considered in measurement and computation
For plane surveying, see 526.91; *hydrographic surveying,* 526.99
.31 Reconnaissance
Preliminary geodetic surveys
.32 Bench marks
Divide like 940–999, e.g., bench marks in Alaska 526.327 98

526.33 Triangulation

Including base [*formerly* †526.2] and precise traverse measurements, angle measurements; triangulation computation and adjustment [*formerly* †526.4–†526.5]

.36 Leveling

Class barometric leveling [*formerly* *526.36] in 526.37

For bench marks, see 526.32

.362 Spirit leveling

Including differential and precise spirit leveling

.37 Barometric leveling

Including general questions of mean sea level [*formerly* *526.36]

.38 Trigonometric leveling (Geodetic refraction)

Including observations, calculations, adjustments of zenith distances

[†.4–†.5] Triangulation computation and adjustment

Class in 526.33

.6 Geodetic and positional astronomy

Application of spherical astronomy to geodesy

Including determination of geographic coordinates [*formerly also* †525.4], geographic position

For chronology, see 529; *celestial navigation,* 527

.61 Geodetic (Geographic, topographic) latitude determinations

For astronomic latitude, see 527.1

.62 Geodetic (Geographic, topographic) longitude determinations

For astronomic longitude, see 527.2

.63 Geodetic azimuth determinations

.64 Variations in measurement of geographic position

.7 Gravity determinations (Physical geodesy)

526.8 Cartography

Map projection [*formerly also* †744.428], map making

For maps, see 912; *military topography,* 623.71; *topographic surveying,* 526.98

.88 Map reading

Including scales, symbols

.89 Map reproduction

.9 Surveying

Determination of shape and area of any part of the earth's surface by measurement, triangulation, plotting, leveling, computation

For geodetic surveying, see 526.3; *triangulation,* 526.33; *leveling,* 526.36

.91 Plane surveying

Surveys of relatively small areas in which curvature of the earth is disregarded in measurement and computation

Including instruments, methods

.92 Boundary surveying (Land surveys)

[†.94] Measurement of altitudes

Class in 526.98

.98 Topographic surveying

Measurement of altitudes [*formerly* †526.94, †551.53] and depressions within a region

.982 Aerial surveying (Photogrammetry [*formerly* †778.38])

Including methods, instruments

For military photogrammetry, see 623.72

.99 Hydrographic surveying

Class surveying for a specific purpose [*formerly* †526.99] with the subject, e.g., railroad surveying 625.11

For snow surveys, see 551.573 5

527 Celestial navigation [*formerly also* *629.125]

Determination of geographic position and direction from observation of celestial bodies

Including nautical astronomy

For sea navigation, see 623.89; *air navigation,* 629.132 51; *sextants,* 522.41

.1 Astronomical latitude

527.2 **Astronomical longitude**

[†.3] **Finding time**

Class in 529.7

.4 **Lines of position**

Including Sumner lines, determination of fix

.5 **Determination of course**

.53 Rhumb line course

.55 Great circle course

528 Ephemerides and nautical almanacs

For tables of a specific celestial body, see the body, e.g., lunar tables 523.39

.1 **American ephemerides and nautical almanacs**

.2 **English ephemerides and nautical almanacs**

.3 **German ephemerides and nautical almanacs**

.4 **French ephemerides and nautical almanacs**

.5 **Italian ephemerides and nautical almanacs**

.6 **Spanish ephemerides and nautical almanacs**

.7 **Slavic ephemerides and nautical almanacs**

.8 **Other ephemerides and nautical almanacs**

.9 **Ephemeris making**

529 Chronology

.1 **Sidereal and solar day**

Including apparent and mean time, equation of time, causes of inequality

For divisions of the day, see 529.75

.2 **Intervals of time**

Including kinds of years, months, weeks, days

529.3 **Calendars**

.32 Ancient and non-Christian calendars

.326 Jewish calendar

.327 Moslem calendar

.4 Christian calendars

.42 Julian calendar

.43 Gregorian calendar

.44 Church chronology

Determination of religious feast and fast days

.5 Calendar reform

.7 **Astronomical horology**

Methods of finding time [*formerly also* †527.3]

For construction and repair of time-measuring instruments, see 681.11

.75 Time systems and standards

Including divisions of day

.78 Instruments for measuring time

Including dials, hourglasses, clocks, watches

For zenith telescopes, see 522.43; *sextants,* 522.41; *sidereal clocks and chronometers,* 522.51

530 Physics

.1 Principles and theories of physics

Class gravity [*formerly* *530.1] in 531.5

For principles of conservation, see 531.6; *theory of wave motion,* 531.33

.101 Philosophy and logic of physics

.11 Relativity

.12 Quantum and wave mechanics

Including matrix mechanics and quantum theory

For quantum theory of light, see 535.15

.13 Kinetic theory and statistical mechanics [*formerly also* *536.1]

For kinetic theory of liquids, see 532.51; *of gases,* 533.7; *of heat,* 536.1

.15 Mathematical physics

For dimensional analysis, see 530.8; *mathematical mechanics,* 531.01

.785 Precision instruments used in physics

.8 Physical units and dimensions

Including theory of physical measurements, dimensional analysis

---

531–533 Mechanics

For mechanical engineering, see 621

531 Mechanics of solids (Mechanics of rigid bodies)

Including comprehensive works on mechanics

For mechanics of liquids, see 532.1; *of gases,* 533

.01 Mathematical mechanics

.017 Analytical mechanics

Comprehensive works

For a specific aspect of analytical mechanics, see the subject, e.g., dynamics of a particle 531.36

[.076] Problems and questions on mechanics

Class in 531.9

[.083] Tables on mechanics

Class in 531.9

531.1 Kinematics [*formerly* *531.2]

Geometry of motion; motions considered apart from causes

Including linear and relative motion, centripetal acceleration, vector quantities, radial and transverse acceleration in a plane

.2 Statics of rigid bodies

Static, translational and rotational equilibrium

Including resolution of forces, stable and unstable equilibrium

Class dynamics of rigid bodies in 531.3, kinematics in 531.1 [*both formerly* *531.2]

.23 Moments of inertia

.25 Graphic statics

Representation of magnitude, direction, position of forces by straight lines and determination of unknown quantities by mechanical measurement

.26 Statics of a particle

.3 Dynamics of rigid bodies [*formerly* *531.2]

Former heading: Dynamics, kinetics

Forces and their effect on the motion of rigid bodies

Including Newton's laws of motion; translational and rotational motion

For force of friction, see 531.4; *gravity,* 531.5

.31 Trajectories

Former heading: Rectilinear motion

.32 Simple harmonic motions

Free and forst harmonic vibrations, dampt oscillations

Including simple pendulum motion

For pendulum in gravity studies, see 531.5

.33 Wave motions

Including theory of wave motion

For wave motions in liquids, see 532.59; *cavitation in air,* 533.62

.34 Motion of symmetrical rigid bodies

Rotation of symmetrical bodies, e.g., gyroscope, spinning top

For a specific use of gyroscope, see the subject, e.g., directional gyros 629.135 2

.35 Centrifugal and centripetal forces

531.36 Dynamics of a particle

Including Brownian movements

.38 Dynamics of elastic bodies

Strain and stress relationships, Hooke's law; elasticity [*formerly* †539.3]

Including stretching, bending, compression, torsion

.381 Elastic moduli

Including Young's modulus, Poisson's ratio, bulk modulus, shear modulus or modulus of rigidity; methods of measuring moduli

.382 Impact and deformation

Including coefficient of restitution, elastic limit, yield point

.383 Vibratory movements

.4 Force of friction

Static, sliding and rolling friction

Including laws of friction

.5 Gravity [*formerly* *530.1]

Including laws of falling bodies and their illustrations, e.g., pendulum, projectiles, freely falling objects

For simple pendulum motion, see 531.32

[†.51] Law of universal gravitation

Class in 521.12

.54 Specific gravity of solids

Including density, mass, specific gravity measurements, specific gravity of specific solids

.6 Principles of conservation

Including law of conservation of energy

.7 Other properties of solids [*formerly* †*539.2, †541.31]

Including adhesion, cohesion, porosity

For elasticity, see 531.38; *expansion and contraction of solids,* 536.414; *propagation of sound waves in solids,* 534.22; *heat transmission in solids,* 536.2; *specific heat of solids,* 536.63; *electrical conductivity,* 537.62

.8 Simple machines

Former heading: Machines, transmission of force

Including lever, wheel and axle, cord and pulley, tootht wheel, inclined plane, wedge, screw

.9 Tables, problems, questions

532 Mechanics of fluids

Former heading: Liquids, hydrostatics, hydraulics

Comprehensive works on mechanics of gases and liquids

For mechanics of gases, see 533; *hydraulic engineering,* 627; *hydraulic power engineering,* 621.2

[.076] Problems and questions

Class in 532.9

[.083] Tables

Class in 532.9

.1 Mechanics of liquids (Hydromechanics)

Including properties of liquids [*formerly also* †541.32]

Class pressure [*formerly* †532.1] in 532.2

For hydrostatics, see 532.2; *hydrodynamics,* 532.5

.2 Hydrostatics

Equilibrium and transmission of pressure [*formerly* †532.1] in liquids

Class buoyancy [*formerly* *532.2] in 532.3

.3 Buoyancy [*formerly* *532.2]

Including Archimedes' and Pascal's principles, stability of floating bodies

.4 Density measurements of liquids

Including specific gravity measurements, e.g., hydrometry

.5 Hydrodynamics

Liquids in motion

.51 Theories of liquid flow

Including kinetic theory of liquids

532.52–532.6 Liquid flow variations

.52 Flow thru orifices and nozzles

Including rate of discharge, pressure-velocity relationships

.53 Flow over weirs and spillways

Including gravitational problems, gravity model tests

.54 Flow thru pipes and tubes

.55 Flow thru bends and irregular enclosures

532.56 Variable pressure

Including turbulent flow

.57 Velocity of liquid flow

Including "hydrometry" in the sense of flow measurement

.58 Viscosity of liquids

Former heading: Impulse and resistance

.59 Waves and wave motion

.595 Vortex rings [*formerly* †539.1] and vortex motion

Including cavitation in liquids

.6 Capillarity of liquids

Including surface tension; absorption [*formerly* †532.7]

For surface tension of solutions, see 541.341; *Brownian movements,* 531.36

.7 Diffusion and permeability of liquids

Osmosis of liquids

Class absorption [*formerly* †532.7] in 532.6

.8 Applications

Comprehensive works

For a specific application of mechanics of fluids, see the subject, e.g., hydraulic pressing machinery 621.98

.9 Tables, problems, questions

533 Mechanics of gases

Former heading: Gases, pneumatics

For natural and manufactured gas technology, see 665.7; *industrial gases,* 665.8; *gas analysis,* 545.7

[.076] Problems and questions

Class in 533.9

[.083] Tables

Class in 533.9

.1 Properties of gases [*formerly also* †541.33]

For propagation of sound waves in gases, see 534.24

.12 Equilibrium properties of gases

Class compressibility in 533.2, vapor pressure in 536.44 [*both formerly* *533.12]

For pressure, volume, and temperature relationships, see 536.41

533.13 Viscosity and diffusion of gases

.14 Absorption and adsorption of gases

.2 Elasticity and compressibility [*formerly* *533.12] of gases

For liquefaction of gases, see 536.56

[†.3] Atmosphere

Class in 551.51

[†.4] Barometry

Class in 551.54

.5 Vacuum and vacuum production

Including use of air pumps in the production of vacuum; rarefaction of gases [*formerly* †542.77]; production of high vacuum

For comprehensive works on applications of vacuum technique, see 621.55; *a specific application, the subject, e.g., high-vacuum tubes* 621.381 51

.6 Aeromechanics

Equilibrium and motion of air

For aeronautics, see 629.13

.61 Aerostatics

Equilibrium of gaseous fluids and of solid materials suspended in them

.62 Aerodynamics

Motion of air and forces acting on bodies in motion thru air or on fixt bodies in a current of air

Including cavitation in air

.7 Kinetic theory of gases

.8 Applications

Comprehensive works

For a specific application of mechanics of gases, see the subject, e.g., pumps 621.64

.9 Tables, problems, questions

534 Sound

Including acoustics

[.076] Problems and questions

Class in 534.9

[.083] Tables

Class in 534.9

534.1 Generation of sound waves

Vibrations of rods, plates, tuning forks [*formerly* †534.3], wires, membranes

Including theories of sound generation

For generation of ultrasonic waves, see 534.5; *superposition of vibrations,* 534.59

.14 Vibrations in air columns

Including resonance

.16 Subsonic vibrations

Frequencies lower than 15 cycles per second

.2 Propagation of sound waves

Including velocity, reflection, refraction, directionality, diffraction, interference, absorption of sound waves

.22 Propagation of sound waves in solids

.23 Propagation of sound waves in liquids

Including underwater acoustics

.24 Propagation of sound waves in gases

For resonance, see 534.14

.3 Sound characteristics

Pitch, intensity and quality of sound waves

Including Doppler effect, physical characteristics of musical sound

Class tuning forks [*formerly* †534.3] in 534.1

For musical acoustics, see 781.22

.35 Dissonance

Including noise characteristics

.4 Analysis of sound waves

Including sound frequency analysis, measurement of frequency and intensity of sound waves, use of resonators

534.5 Ultrasonic vibrations

Including generation of sound waves above the audible range, their use in determining properties of matter

For engineering properties of materials, see 620.11

.59 Superposition principles

Including superposition of vibrations, addition of traveling waves to form standing waves

.6 Graphic and optical representations of sound waves

[†.7] Physiology of ear and larynx

Class physiology of the ear in 612.85; of the larynx in 612.78

.8 Applications

Comprehensive works

For a specific application of acoustics, see the subject, e.g., aids to navigation 623.894

.9 Tables, problems, questions

535 Optics

Including visible and invisible light radiation

For atmospheric optics, see 551.565; *photographic optics,* 770.15; *physiological optics,* 612.84; *psychological optics,* 152.1

.072 Experimental optical techniques [*formerly* *535.89]

[.076] Problems and questions

Class in 535.9

[.083] Tables

Class in 535.9

.1 Theories of light

.12 Corpuscular theory of light

.13 Wave theory of light

.14 Electromagnetic theory of light

.15 Quantum theory of light

.2 Physical optics

Optical phenomena based on the wave theory of light

For dispersion, interference and diffraction, see 535.4; *polarized light,* 535.5

.22 Photometry

Measurement of intensity of light

535.24 Velocity of light

Including methods of measurement

.3 **Geometrical optics and luminescence**

.32 Reflection and refraction

Including light absorption, refractive and reflective mediums, image formation

For selective absorption and reflection, see 535.6; *double refraction,* 535.5; *dispersion,* 535.4

.33 Principles of optical instruments

Including design of optical instruments

For a specific optical instrument, see the subject, e.g., telescopes 522.2

.35 Luminescence [*formerly* *535.65]

Including fluorescence and phosphorescence

For fluorescent lighting, see 621.327 3; *incandescence,* 536.45

.4 **Dispersion, interference and diffraction of light**

For physics of color, see 535.6

.5 **Polarized light**

Including double refraction, optical rotation; use of polariscope [*formerly* *535.8] for study of light

.6 **Physics of color**

Including selective absorption and reflection of light

Class physiological optics [*formerly* *535.6] in 612.84

For pigments, see 751.2; *color symbolism,* 752; *color perception,* 152.1; *dispersion,* 535.4; *visual spectroscopy,* 535.843

[*.65] **Luminescence**

Class in 535.35

[*.66] **X rays**

Class in 537.535

[†.7] **Physiological optics**

Class in 612.84

535.8 **Applications**

Comprehensive works

Class polariscope in 535.5, manufacture of optical instruments in 681.4 [*both formerly* *535.8]

For a specific application of optics, see the subject, e.g., lighthouses 627.9

.84 Spectroscopy

Techniques for studying light emitted by physical objects by means of the spectroscope and methods of measuring intensity and frequency of spectrum lines

Including emission and absorption spectroscopy

For a specific application of spectroscopy, see the subject, e.g., in chemical analysis 544.6; *X-ray and gamma-ray spectroscopy,* 537.535 2; *mass spectroscopy,* 539.744

.842 Infrared spectroscopy

.843 Visual (Chromatic) spectroscopy

.844 Ultraviolet spectroscopy

.845 Vacuum ultraviolet spectroscopy

.846 Raman spectroscopy

Spectroscopic examination of scattered monochromatic radiation

Including Tyndall and Raleigh scattering, Raman effect

[*.89] **Experimental optical techniques**

Class in 535.072

.9 **Tables, problems, questions**

536 **Heat**

For heating systems, see 697; *thermochemistry,* 541.36

[.076] Problems and questions

Class in 536.9

[.083] Tables

Class in 536.9

.1 **Theories of heat**

Including kinetic theory of heat

Class laws of thermodynamics in 536.71, statistical mechanics in 530.13 [*both formerly* *536.1]

536.2 **Heat transmission**

Including transmission in solids, liquids and gases; thermal diffusivity; heat transfer; diathermancy [*formerly* †536.35]

Class heat radiation [*formerly* *536.2] in 536.33

For heat refraction, see 536.32

.23 Heat conduction

.25 Heat convection

.3 **Effect of matter on heat and heat radiation**

.31 Heat reflection

.32 Heat refraction

.33 Heat radiation [*formerly* *536.2]

For heat conduction, see 536.23; *heat convection,* 536.25; *incandescence,* 536.45

.34 Heat absorption

[†.35] Diathermancy

Class in 536.2

.4 **Effects of heat on matter**

Including change of state

Class thermodynamic properties of matter [*formerly* *536.4] in 536.7

For phase rule and equilibrium, see 541.363; *liquefaction of gases by means of pressure and low temperature,* 536.56

.41 Thermal expansion and contraction

Including such equilibrium properties as pressure, volume and temperature relationships

.412 Expansion and contraction of gases

Including explosion [*formerly* *536.57]

For liquefaction of gases, see 536.56; *explosives,* 662.2

.413 Expansion and contraction of liquids

.414 Expansion and contraction of solids

.42 Fusion and solidification [*formerly* †*536.43]

Former heading: Liquefaction

Including freezing or melting points, latent heat of fusion

[†*.43] Solidification

Class in 536.42

536.44 Vaporization and condensation

Including vapor pressure [*formerly* *533.12], evaporation of liquids, boiling and boiling points, heat of vaporization, saturated vapors

.445 Sublimation

Evaporation of solids, condensation of gases to solids without liquefaction

.45 Incandescence

For luminescence, see 535.35

[†.46] Combustion

Class in 541.36

.5 **Temperature**

Including temperature measurement

.51 Thermometry

Measurement of temperature with mercury and other liquid thermometers

.52 Pyrometry

Measurement of temperatures over 500° C. [*formerly* *536.57] with optical pyrometers, radiation pyrometers, thermocouples

.53 Electrical resistance thermometry

.56 Cryogenics

Production of temperatures below −182° C.

Including liquefaction of gases [*formerly* †542.79], absolute temperature, properties of matter at extremely low temperatures

For superconductivity, see 537.623; *low temperature chemistry,* 541.368

[*.57] High temperatures

Class measurement of temperatures over 500° C. in 536.52; combustion in 541.36; explosion in 536.412

.6 **Calorimetry [*formerly also* *541.36]**

Measurement of heat quantities

Including thermal capacity

For heat of fusion, see 536.42; *heat of vaporization,* 536.44; *thermochemistry,* 541.36

.63 Specific heats of solids and liquids

Including specific heat of specific solids and liquids

536.65 Specific heats of gases and vapors

Including specific heat of specific gases and vapors

.7 **Thermodynamics**

Mathematical and physical relations between mechanical work and heat energy; transformation of heat into mechanical energy, and mechanical energy into heat

Including thermodynamic properties of matter [*formerly* †536.4]

For chemical thermodynamics, see 541.369; *engineering thermodynamics,* 621.01; *calorimetry,* 536.6

.71 Laws of thermodynamics [*formerly* *536.1]

Including the three laws of thermodynamics, Joule's law, Maxwell's four thermodynamic formulas, Carnot cycle

.73 Entropy

Measurement of unavailable energy in a thermodynamic system

.8 **Applications**

Comprehensive works

For a specific application of heat, see the subject, e.g., steam power engineering 621.1

.9 **Tables, problems, questions**

537 Electricity and electronics

Class magnetism [*formerly* *537] in 538

[.076] Problems and questions

Class in 537.9

[.083] Tables

Class in 537.9

.1 **Theories of electricity and magnetism [*formerly* †538.1]**

Including electromagnetic theory

Class electron optics [*formerly* *537.1] in 537.56

For electromagnetic theory of light, see 535.14

.12 Electromagnetic fields and waves

Including theories of microwaves, wave guides

537.2 **Electricity**

For electrodynamics, see 537.6; *electrical engineering,* 621.3

.21 Electrostatics

Including triboelectricity

.212 Electric charge and distribution [*formerly* †537.22]

Including potentials

[†*.22] Conductivity, dielectrics

Class conductivity [*formerly* †*537.22] in 537.62; dielectrics [*formerly* *537.22] in 537.24; distribution [*formerly* †537.22] in 537.212

.23 Electrostatic generators

.24 Dielectrics [*formerly* †537.5, *537.22]

For dielectric phenomena in chemistry, see 541.377

.242 Capacitors (Condensers)

.243 Electric dipole moments

.244 Pyroelectricity and piezoelectricity [*formerly* *537.55]

For pyroelectric and piezoelectric properties of crystals, see 548.85

.245 Electrocapillarity

.246 Electrostriction

[†.25] Electrometers

Class in 621.374 3

[*.3] Magnetic properties of matter

Class in 538

[†.4] Atmospheric electricity

Class in 551.56

.5 **Electronics**

Emission, behavior and effects of electrons in gas and vacuum tubes, photoelectric cells and similar mediums

Class dielectrics [*formerly* †537.5] in 537.24

For electronic engineering, see 621.381; *electrons,* 539.721 1; *semiconductors,* 537.622

[†.51] Coils

Class in 537.64

537.52 Disruptive discharge

Luminous discharge (electric spark) produced by the disruptive passage of high-voltage electricity thru gases [*formerly* *537.53] or vapors at atmospheric pressure

Including electric arc

For ionization of gases, see 537.532; *a specific application of electric arc, the subject, e.g., electric arc lighting* 621.325

.53 Electric discharge thru rarefied gases

Including electric discharge thru high-vacuum tubes

Class disruptive passage of high-voltage electricity thru gases [*formerly* *537.53] in 537.52

.532 Ionization of gases

Including electron ballistics

.533 Thermionic emission

.535 X rays [*formerly* *535.66]

For particle detection, see 539.77; *electrons,* 539.721 1

.535 2 X-ray spectroscopy

Including X-ray diffraction, gamma-ray spectroscopy

For a specific application of X-ray spectroscopy, see the subject, e.g., in chemical analysis 545.83; *Raman spectroscopy,* 535.846; *gamma particles,* 539.752 4

.54 Photoelectric effects

Including photoelectric and selenium cells

[*.55] Piezoelectric effects

Class piezoelectricity in 537.244; piezoelectric properties of crystals in 548.85

.56 Electron [*formerly* *537.1] and ion optics

Focusing and deflecting streams of charged particles by means of electrostatic and magnetic lenses and fields

.6 Electrodynamics

Electric currents

For electrostatics, see 537.21; *electrical engineering,* 621.3

.61 Theory of direct currents

For direct-current engineering, see 621.319 12

537.62 Conductivity [*formerly* †*.537.22] and resistance

For dielectrics, see 537.24

.622 Semiconductivity

Including semiconductors

.623 Superconductivity

.624 Thermal effects of currents

For thermoelectricity, see 537.65

.63 Theory of alternating currents

For alternating-current engineering, see 621.319 13

.64 Electric induction and induction coils [*formerly* †537.51]

Including mutual- and self-induction

For magnetic induction, see 538.2; *transformers,* 621.314

.65 Thermoelectricity

Electricity produced by direct action of heat

For thermal effects of currents, see 537.624

[†.7] Electric measurements

Class in 621.37

.8 Applications

Comprehensive works

For a specific application of electricity, electronics, see the subject, e.g., telephony 621.385

.9 Tables, problems, questions

538 Magnetism [*formerly* *537]

Including magnets; magnetic properties of matter [*formerly* *537.3]

[.076] Problems and questions

Class in 538.9

[.083] Tables

Class in 538.9

[†.1] Theories of magnetism

Class in 537.1

.2 Magnetic induction

For electric induction, see 537.64

538.3 Electromagnetic phenomena

For electromagnetic theory, see 537.1; *electromagnetic fields and waves,* 537.12

.4 Diamagnetism

.7 Geomagnetism [*formerly* *551.16] and allied phenomena

For atmospheric electricity, see 551.56

.72 Permanent magnetic field of earth

Magnetism of earth's crust and interior

Including its secular change

.74 Transient magnetism of earth

Including diurnal variations, magnetic storms and pulsations, sunspot effects, other magnetic disturbances

.748 Earth currents

Electricity of earth's crust

Including conductivity of earth, generation of currents in the ground and in bodies of water

.76 Allied phenomena of overhead activation

.767 Ionosphere

Including Kennelly-Heaviside (E) layer and Appleton (F) layer

For comprehensive works on upper atmosphere, see 551.514

.768 Luminous manifestations

Including aurora polaris, nonpolar aurora [*both formerly* †523.59, *523.5]

For twilights, see 551.565; *zodiacal light and counterglow,* 523.59

.78 Magnetic surveys

Divide like 940–999, e.g., magnetic surveys in Europe 538.784

.79 Magnetic observations at fixt stations

Including magnetic observatory findings

Divide like 940–999, e.g., magnetic observations at University of Alaska station 538.797 98

538.8 Applications

Comprehensive works

For a specific application of magnetism, see the subject, e.g., magnetic separation of ores 622.77

.9 Tables, problems, questions

539 Modern physics

Molecular, atomic, nuclear physics

For electronics, see 537.5

[.076] Problems and questions

Class in 539.9

[.083] Tables

Class in 539.9

.1 Physical structure of matter

Including interpretation of structure thru spectroscopy

Class vortex rings [*formerly* †539.1] in 532.595

For chemical structure of matter, see 541.2; *nuclear structure,* 539.74

.12 Molecular structure

For relationship of crystal structure and molecular structure, see 541.22

.14 Atomic structure [*formerly* *539.8]

For Dalton's atomic theory, see 541.24

[†*.2] Properties of solids

Class in 531.7

[†.3] Elasticity

Class in 531.38

[†.4] Strength of materials

Class in 620.11

[†.5] Engineering properties of materials

Class malleability, ductility in 620.112 9; hardness in 620.112 6

539.7 Nuclear physics

For nuclear power engineering, see 621.48

.72 Fundamental radiations

Class alpha particles in 539.752 2, beta particles in 539.752 3, gamma particles in 539.752 4 [*all formerly* *539.72]

.721 Fundamental particles (Subatomic phenomena)

.721 1 Electrons

.721 2 Protons

.721 3 Neutrons

.721 4 Positrons

.721 5 Neutrinos

.721 6 Mesons

.721 7 Photons

.722 Penetrating radiation

Including comprehensive works on X rays, gamma and cosmic rays

For X rays, see 537.535; *radioactivity,* 539.752

.722 3 Cosmic rays

Including comprehensive works on cosmic rays and mesons

For mesons, see 539.721 6

.73 Particle acceleration

.732 Acceleration in high-voltage accelerators

Including voltage multipliers, Van de Graaff electrostatic generators

.733 Acceleration in resonance accelerators

Including linear accelerators, cyclotrons

.734 Acceleration in induction accelerators

Including betatrons

.735 Acceleration in synchronous accelerators

Including synchrocyclotrons, synchrotrons

539.74 Nuclear structure

Including interpretation of structure by means of spectroscopy, structure of isotopes

For comprehensive works on isotopes, see 541.38

.744 Mass spectroscopy

For mass spectrographic methods in chemical analysis, see 545.33

.75 Nuclear reactions (Transmutations)

For radiochemistry, see 541.38

.752 Radioactivity (Natural transmutations)

For penetrating radiation, see 539.722

.752 2 Alpha particles [*formerly* *539.72]

.752 3 Beta particles [*formerly* *539.72]

.752 4 Gamma particles [*formerly* *539.72]

For gamma-ray spectroscopy, see 537.535 2

.753 Artificial transmutations

Transmutations thru bombardment of elements with high-speed particles

.76 Nuclear fission ("Atomic energy")

For a specific application of nuclear fission, see the subject, e.g., nuclear power engineering 621.48

.764 Thermonuclear fusion

For a specific application of thermonuclear fusion, see the subject, e.g., H bombs 623.451 19

.77 Particle detection

.772 Detection in ionization chambers

.773 Detection in proportional counters

.774 Detection in Geiger-Müller counters

.775 Detection in scintillation counters

.776 Detection in crystal conduction counters

.777 Detection in Wilson cloud chambers

.778 Photographic detection

[*.8] Atomic structure

Class in 539.14

.9 Tables, problems, questions

540 Chemistry

For a specific application of chemistry, see the subject, e.g., chemical technology 660

.1 Early theories

Including alchemy, phlogiston theory, philosopher's stone

[.72] Chemical laboratories

Class in 542

[.78] Chemical apparatus and equipment

Class in 542

541 Physical and theoretical chemistry

Comprehensive works on systematic application of physical concepts and methods to chemical systems

Including physical inorganic chemistry

For physical organic chemistry, see 547.1; *physics,* 530

.2 Chemical structure of matter

Including relationship of structure to chemical properties of matter, laws of chemical combinations

For physical structure of matter, see 539.1; *chemical reactions,* 541.3; *stereochemistry,* 541.6; *isomers, chelates, polymers,* 541.7

.22 Molecules

Chemical combination of two or more like or unlike atoms

Including relationship of molecular and crystal structure

For chemical crystallography, see 548.3

[*.23] Radiation chemistry, isotopes, tracer chemistry

Class in 541.38

.24 Atoms

Dalton's atomic theory; the chemical atom, i.e., the smallest part of an element remaining unchanged during chemical reaction

Including indestructibility and indivisibility of atom by chemical means

For nuclear fission, see 539.76; *chemical bonds,* 541.396

541.25 Molecular and atomic weights

Including atomic numbers

For periodic law, see 541.901; *quantum chemistry,* 541.383; *cryoscopic and ebullioscopic methods for determining molecular weights,* 541.341 5

.3 Chemical reactions

Physical interpretation of chemical reactions

[†.31] Solids

Class in 531.7

[†.32] Liquids

Class in 532.1

[†.33] Gases

Class in 533.1

.34 Theory of solutions [*formerly* *541.37]

Including principles of solubility, solvents, solutes, ideal solutions

For electrolytic solutions, see 541.372

.341 Properties of solutions [*formerly* *541.374]

Including viscosity, surface tension, diffusion, conductivity, density, optical properties, e.g., refractivity and optical rotation (polarimetry)

For conductivity of electrolytes, see 541.372

.341 5 Colligative properties of solutions [*formerly* *541.373]

Freezing-point depression, boiling-point elevation, vapor-pressure lowering, osmotic pressure

Including cryoscopic and ebullioscopic methods for determining molecular weights

541.343–541.347 Types of solutions

For electrolytic solutions, see 541.372

541.343 Saturated and supersaturated solutions

.345 Colloidal solutions (Colloid chemistry) [*formerly* *541.375]

Emulsions, gels, aerosols, smokes

Including adsorption and adhesion of colloidal particles

.345 3 Surface phenomena (Surface chemistry) [*formerly* *541.375]

Including capillarity, interfacial tensions, films, electric double layers

For surface tension, see 541.341

.347 Nonelectrolytic solutions [*formerly* *541.373]

.35 Photochemistry

Chemical actions due to light

Including artificial photosynthesis

For materials used in photography, see 771.5; *photosynthesis in plants,* 581.133 42

.36 Thermochemistry and chemical thermodynamics

Relations of heat and chemical action

Including combustion [*formerly* †536.46, †541.39, *536.57]

Class calorimetry [*formerly* *541.36] in 536.6

.362 Exothermic and endothermic reactions

Enthalpies of reactions, e.g., heats of neutralization, formation, dilution, combustion, solution; heat capacities; latent heat

Including thermic reactions of specific inorganic substances

.363 Phase changes

Including phase rule and equilibrium, phase diagrams, triple point, eutectic mixtures

.364 Thermal dissociation

For electrolytic dissociation, see 541.372

.368 Low-temperature chemistry

For cryogenics, see 536.56

.369 Chemical thermodynamics

For kinetics and mechanism of chemical reactions, see 541.39

541.37 Electrochemistry

Class theory of solutions [*formerly* *541.37] in 541.34

.372 Electrolytic solutions

Including ionic equilibriums [*formerly* *541.373], electrolytic dissociation, ionization, electrode phenomena, conductivity

For thermal dissociation, see 541.364

[*.373] Colligative properties of solutions and nonelectrolytic solutions

Class colligative properties of solutions in 541.341 5; ionic equilibriums in 541.372; nonelectrolytic solutions in 541.347

[*.374] Properties of solutions

Class in 541.341

[*.375] Colloid chemistry and surface phenomena

Class colloid chemistry in 541.345; surface phenomena in 541.345 3

.376 Electrical polarization

For electrode phenomena, see 541.372

.377 Dielectric phenomena

Including dielectric constants, dipole moments [*both formerly* *541.8]

.378 Magnetochemistry

.38 Radiochemistry (Radiation chemistry) [*formerly* *541.23]

Nuclear constitution and its relation to properties of matter

Including radioactive and stable isotopes, isobars, artificial elements

For chemistry of radioactive elements, see 546.42; *nuclear reactions,* 539.75

.383 Quantum chemistry

Application of quantum, wave, and statistical mechanics to chemical systems

Including quantum numbers and energy levels

.388 Applications of radiochemistry

Comprehensive works on use of isotopes

Including radiocarbon dating, tracer techniques

For a specific application, see the subject, e.g., in medicine 615.842 4

541.39 Kinetics and mechanism of chemical reactions

Class combustion [*formerly* †541.39] in 541.36

.392 Chemical equilibriums

Including law of mass action, kinetic theories of equilibriums

.393 Order of reaction

Including chain reactions, reversible and irreversible reactions, homogeneous and heterogeneous reactions, dissociations

For thermal dissociation, see 541.364; *electrolytic dissociation,* 541.372

.394 Reaction kinetics

Velocity of chemical reactions

.395 Catalysis

Acceleration and retardation of chemical reactions by means of catalysts

.396 Chemical bonds

Including affinity, valence, bond energies, interatomic forces

For bond distances and angles, see 541.6

[†.4] **Various types of compounds**

Class chemistry of salts in 546.34; of bases in 546.32; of acids in 546.24; of alloys in 546.3

[†.5] **Molecular compounds**

Class in 546.343

.6 **Stereochemistry**

Space or configurative chemistry

Including stereoisomerism, bond distances and angles, steric hindrance

.7 **Isomers, chelates, polymers**

Former heading: Allotropy

Including tautomerism, racemization, mutarotation

[*.8] **Dipole moments and dielectric constants**

Class in 541.377

541.9 **Other topics in physical chemistry**

.901 Periodic law

Including periodic system and tables

.901 5 Stoichiometry

542 Chemical laboratories, apparatus, equipment

Including general operation and manipulation of equipment

.1 **Chemical laboratories**

Description, design, installation

For architecture of chemical laboratories, see 727.554

.2 **Laboratory receptacles and accessory equipment**

Including beakers, flasks, retorts, test tubes, funnels, crucibles, supports, stoppers, tubing

For calibrated vessels, see 542.3; *distilling apparatus,* 542.4; *gas apparatus,* 542.7

.3 **Measuring apparatus**

Including weights and balances; calibrated vessels; graduated pipettes, burettes, cylinders

.4 **Heating and distilling apparatus**

Including burners; laboratory furnaces; indirect heating apparatus, e.g., baths

.5 **Blowpipes**

For blowpipe analysis, see 544.3

.6 **Filters and filtration**

Including dializers, manipulation of residues

.7 **Gas apparatus**

Including apparatus for producing, collecting, washing, dissolving, storing, measuring, rarefying, compressing, liquefying, solidifying gases

[†.77] Rarefaction of gases

Class in 533.5

[†.79] Gas liquefaction and solidification

Class in 536.56

.8 **Electrical apparatus**

.9 **Other apparatus**

543–545 Chemical analysis

Including inorganic chemical analysis

For organic chemical analysis, see 547.3; *identification of a specific element, the element, e.g., identification of boron* 546.671

543 Analytic chemistry

Comprehensive works on qualitative and quantitative analysis of organic and inorganic substances

For qualitative analysis, see 544; *quantitative analysis,* 545; *organic analysis,* 547.3; *industrial testing and analysis, the subject, e.g., coal* 662.622

.01 Reagent chemicals [*formerly* †544.11]

Including lists, specifications, tests, standards, and preparation of reagent chemicals, selective reagents, indicators, and test papers

.1 Chemical analysis of food and drink

For food inspection, see 614.31; *inspection of beverages,* 614.34

.2 Chemical analysis of dairy products

Including chemical analysis of milk, butter, cheese, other milk products

For inspection of dairy products, see 614.32; *testing a specific dairy product, the product, e.g., testing milk* 637.127

.3 Chemical analysis of water constituents

Including determination of decaying vegetable and animal matter in water, and its inorganic constituents, e.g., oxides and salts

For water purification, see 628.16; *water pollution,* 628.168

.4 Chemical analysis of cosmetics and perfumes

Class chemical analysis of drugs and medicinals [*formerly* †*543.4] in 615.190 15

.5 Chemical analysis of poisons

Including chemical analysis of pesticides, insecticides, fungicides

543.6 Chemical analysis of rocks and ores

Comprehensive works

Including blowpipe analysis of rocks and ores

For chemical analysis of mineral ores, see 549.13; *of metallic ores,* 669.92; *of soils,* 631.42

544 Qualitative analysis

Systematic macro and semiquantitative methods and procedures by which the constituents of a substance are detected and identified

For determination of the amount of a constituent in a substance, see 545; *qualitative organic chemistry,* 547.34

.1 Wet analysis

Systematic detection of substances by means of reagents in solution

[†.11] Reagent chemicals

Class in 543.01

.12 Detection of cations

Detection of metallic ions or basic radicals

Including detection of ammonium radical

.13 Detection of anions

Detection of acidic components

.2 Dry methods

Analysis using heat

For spectrochemical analysis, see 544.6; *blowpipe analysis,* 544.3

.3 Systematic blowpipe analysis [*formerly also* †545.4]

Comprehensive works on the detection and identification of metallic elements and acid radicals in minerals, alloys, and inorganic materials by flame test, bead test, and reactions on charcoal and plaster of Paris with the aid of the blowpipe

For blowpipe tests of rocks and ores, see 543.6; *of mineral ores,* 549.13; *of metallic ores,* 669.92

.4 Qualitative gas analysis

.5 Diffusion analysis

Including ultrafiltration methods (dialysis)

544.6 Spectrochemical analysis (Spectroscopic analysis) [*formerly* *545.4]

Analysis by comparison of the spectrum of unknown substances with spectra of known substances

Including qualitative and quantitative methods

For blowpipe analysis, see 544.3; *measurement of the intensity and frequency of spectrum lines,* 535.84

[†.7] Polariscopic analysis

Class in 545.816

.8 Micro and semimicro methods of analysis

Including qualitative and quantitative methods

.82 Microscopical analysis

Methods using compound, electron and ultramicroscopes for analytical purposes

.83 Microchemical analysis

Qualitative and quantitative analysis of small amounts of substances

Including small-scale adaptations of existing macro methods of analysis (semimicro analysis)

.84 Spot tests

Including paper chromatography

.9 Other methods of qualitative analysis

Class electroanalysis [*formerly* †544.9] in 545.3

.92 Chromatographic analysis [*formerly* *545.8]

Including capillary analysis

For paper chromatography, see 544.84

545 Quantitative analysis

Determination of the amount of a constituent in a substance thru chemical means

For detection and identification of constituents in a substance, see 544; *quantitative organic chemistry,* 547.35; *quantitative methods in spectrochemical analysis,* 544.6; *in micro and semimicro methods of analysis,* 544.8

.1 Gravimetric analysis

Determination of the composition of a substance by weighing its constituents directly or indirectly

545.2 Volumetric analysis [*formerly also* †545.6]

Former heading: Wet method

Determination of elements and compounds in a substance by titration with standard solutions

.22 Neutralization methods (Alkalimetry and acidimetry)

Titration with acids or bases using an indicator

.23 Oxidation-reduction methods (Oxidimetry and iodometry)

Titration with oxidizing or reducing agents, and determining the end-point by change of color

.24 Precipitation methods

Titration with reagents that cause precipitation

.3 Electroanalysis [*formerly also* †544.9]

Including electrometric titration

.311 Conductometric methods

Former heading: Constant current analysis

Including conductometric titration

.312 Potentiometric methods

Former heading: Constant voltage analysis

Including potentiometric titration

.32 Polarographic methods

Analysis based on current-voltage curves obtained in electrolysis with a slowly dropping mercury cathode (polarimetric titration)

.33 Mass spectrographic methods [*formerly* *545.8]

.4 Thermogravimetric analysis

Former heading: Dry methods

Class blowpipe analysis in 544.3, cupellation in 669.92 [*both formerly* †545.4]; spectroscopic analysis in 544.6 [*formerly* *545.4]

.5 General titrimetric methods

For volumetric analysis, see 545.2; *electrometric titration,* 545.3

[†.6] Volumetric analysis

Class in 545.2

545.7 Gas analysis

Comprehensive works

For qualitative gas analysis, see 544.4; *natural and manufactured gas technology,* 665.7

.8 Other methods of quantitative analysis

Class chromatographic analysis in 544.92; mass spectrographic methods in 545.33 [*both formerly* *545.8]

.81 Optical methods

For spectroscopic analysis, see 544.6

.812 Photometric analysis

Including colorimetric, nephelometric, turbidimetric, fluorophotometric methods

.813 Refractometric and interferometric analysis

.816 Polarimetric analysis (Polariscopic analysis) [*formerly also* †544.7]

.82 Radioactive tracer techniques

.83 Diffraction methods

Including electron, X-ray diffraction methods

[†.9] Synthesis

Class inorganic synthesis in 546.15; organic synthesis in 547.2

546–547 Inorganic and organic chemistry

These schedules are completely new, prepared with little reference to earlier editions and assigning new meanings to many numbers. Such numbers are italicized. Relocations of topics from subdivisions of 546–547 in earlier editions are not indicated, altho relocations from other numbers are shown in the usual way

An obsolescent schedule for 546–547, based on earlier editions, and accompanied by a table of concordance for 546 showing provision for the chemical elements in editions 14, 15, 16, is provided at end of volume 2

546 Inorganic chemistry

Preparations, properties, structure of elements and their inorganic compounds

For inorganic chemical analysis, see 543–545; *inorganic physical chemistry,* 541

SUMMARY

546.1 Inorganic reactions
.15 Inorganic synthesis
.2 Hydrogen
.3–.6 Metals
.32 Alkalis
.34 Salts
.38 Alkali metals (Group 1A)
.39 Alkaline earth metals (Group 2A)
.4 Rare-earth elements (Group 3A)
.51 Titanium group (Group 4A)
.52 Vanadium group (Group 5A)
.53 Chromium group (Group 6A)
.54 Manganese group (Group 7A)
.6 Transitional elements (Group 8)
.65 Copper group (Group 1B)
.66 Zinc group (Group 2B)
.67 Boron group (Group 3B)
.68 Carbon group (Group 4B)
.7 Nonmetals
.71 Nitrogen group (Group 5B)
.72 Oxygen group (Group 6B)
.73 Halogens (Group 7B)
.75 Rare gases (Group 0)
.8 Periods of periodic table

546.1 Inorganic reactions

Including oxidation, reduction, catalysis, hydrolysis

.15 Inorganic synthesis [*formerly* †545.9]

Preparation of inorganic compounds

.2 Hydrogen

Including nascent hydrogen, deuterium (heavy hydrogen), tritium

.22 Water

Including deuterium oxide (heavy water), tritium oxide

.24 Acids [*formerly* †541.4]

Comprehensive works

For a specific acid, see the negative element, e.g., hydrochloric acid 546.732

546.3 **Metals**

Comprehensive works on metals and their compounds

Including alloys [*formerly* †541.4]

For a specific metal, see the metal, e.g., iron 546.621

.32 Alkalis

Comprehensive works on bases [*formerly* †541.4]

For a specific base, see the metallic (positive) element, e.g., sodium hydroxide 546.382

.34 Salts [*formerly* †541.4]

Comprehensive works

For a specific salt, see the metallic (positive) element, e.g., sodium chloride 546.382; *organic salts,* 547.45

.342 Simple salts

Including neutral, acidulous, alkaline, amphoteric, binary salts

.343 Double salts (Molecular compounds) [*formerly* †541.5]

Salts formed by union of two simple salts, e.g., alums

.345 Complex salts

Double salts which do not form their component simple salts on solution, e.g., potassium ferrocyanide

---

546.38–546.756 Group 1A–Group 0 of periodic table

Including specific elements and their compounds

For hydrogen, see 546.2; *periods of periodic table,* 546.8

.38 Alkali metals (Group 1A)

.381 Lithium

.382 Sodium (Natrium)

.383 Potassium (Kalium)

.384 Rubidium

.385 Cesium

.386 Francium

.39 Alkaline earth metals (Group 2A)

.391 Beryllium (Glucinum)

.392 Magnesium

546.393 Calcium

.394 Strontium

.395 Barium

.396 Radium

.4 Rare-earth elements (Group 3A)

.401 Scandium

.403 Yttrium

.41 Lanthanide series

.411 Lanthanum

.412 Cerium

.413 Praseodymium

Including didymium

.413 5 Neodymium

.414 Promethium (Illinium)

.415 Samarium

.415 5 Europium

.416 Gadolinium

.416 5 Terbium

.417 Dysprosium

.417 5 Holmium

.418 Erbium

.418 5 Thulium

.419 Ytterbium

.419 5 Lutetium (Cassiopeium, Lutecium)

.42 Actinide series

Including comprehensive works on radioactive elements

For radium, see 546.396; *radon,* 546.756; *polonium,* 546.728; *isotopes,* 541.38

.421 Actinium

.422 Thorium

.424 Protactinium (Protoactinium)

.43 Uranium

.432 Neptunium

546.434 Plutonium
.44 Americium
.442 Curium
.444 Berkelium
.448 Californium
.449 Nobelium
.51 Titanium group (Group 4A)
.512 Titanium
.513 Zirconium
.514 Hafnium (Celtium)
.52 Vanadium group (Group 5A)
.522 Vanadium
.524 Columbium (Niobium)
.526 Tantalum
.53 Chromium group (Group 6A)
.532 Chromium
.534 Molybdenum
.536 Tungsten (Wolfram)
.54 Manganese group (Group 7A)
.541 Manganese
.543 Technetium
.545 Rhenium
.6 Transitional elements (Group 8)
.62 Iron series
.621 Iron (Ferrum)
.623 Cobalt
.625 Nickel
.63 Ruthenium series
.632 Ruthenium
.634 Rhodium
.636 Palladium
.64 Osmium series
.641 Osmium

546.643 Iridium
.645 Platinum
.65 Copper group (Group 1B)
.652 Copper
.654 Silver (Argentum)
.656 Gold (Aurum)
.66 Zinc group (Group 2B)
.661 Zinc
.662 Cadmium
.663 Mercury (Hydrargyrum)
.67 Boron group (Group 3B)
.671 Boron
.673 Aluminum
.675 Gallium
.677 Indium
.678 Thallium
.68 Carbon group (Group 4B)
.681 Carbon
For organic chemistry, see 547
.683 Silicon
For aliphatic silicon compounds, see 547.48; *aromatic silicon compounds,* 547.68
.684 Germanium
.686 Tin (Stannum)
.688 Lead (Plumbum)

.7 Nonmetals
Comprehensive works
For a specific nonmetal, see the subject, e.g., carbon 546.681

.71 Nitrogen group (Group 5B)
.711 Nitrogen
For aliphatic nitrogen compounds, see 547.44; *aromatic nitrogen compounds,* 547.64

546.712 Phosphorus

For aliphatic phosphorus compounds, see 547.47; *aromatic phosphorus compounds,* 547.67

.715 Arsenic

.716 Antimony (Stibium)

.718 Bismuth

.72 Oxygen group (Group 6B)

.721 Oxygen

Including ozone, heavy oxygen

.723 Sulfur

For aliphatic sulfur compounds, see 547.46; *aromatic sulfur compounds,* 547.66

.724 Selenium

.726 Tellurium

.728 Polonium

.73 Halogens (Group 7B)

.731 Fluorine

.732 Chlorine

.733 Bromine

.734 Iodine

.735 Astatine

.75 Rare gases (Group 0)

.751 Helium

.752 Neon

.753 Argon

.754 Krypton

.755 Xenon

.756 Radon (Niton)

546.8 Periods of periodic table

Bohr's arrangement of elements according to atomic number

For Group 1A–Group 0 of periodic table, see 546.38–546.756

.81 Period 1

Comprehensive works on hydrogen and helium

For hydrogen, see 546.2; *helium,* 546.751

.82 Period 2

Comprehensive works on lithium, beryllium, boron, carbon, nitrogen, oxygen, fluorine, neon

For a specific element, see the element, e.g., fluorine 546.731

.83 Period 3

Comprehensive works on sodium, magnesium, aluminum, silicon, phosphorus, sulfur, chlorine, argon

For a specific element, see the element, e.g., silicon 546.683

.84 Period 4

Comprehensive works on potassium, calcium, scandium, titanium, vanadium, chromium, manganese, iron, cobalt, nickel, copper, zinc, gallium, germanium, arsenic, selenium, bromine, krypton

For a specific element, see the element, e.g., cobalt 546.623

.85 Period 5

Comprehensive works on rubidium, strontium, yttrium, zirconium, niobium, molybdenum, technetium, ruthenium, rhodium, palladium, silver, cadmium, indium, tin, antimony, tellurium, iodine, xenon

For a specific element, see the element, e.g., zirconium 546.513

.86 Period 6

Comprehensive works on cesium, barium, lanthanide series, hafnium, tantalum, tungsten, rhenium, osmium, iridium, platinum, gold, mercury, thallium, lead, bismuth, polonium, astatine, radon

For a specific element, see the element, e.g., cerium 546.412

.87 Period 7

Comprehensive works on francium, radium, actinide series

For a specific element, see the element, e.g., uranium 546.43

547 Organic chemistry

Chemistry of carbon compounds

Including preparation, reaction, analysis, properties of organic compounds

For inorganic compounds of carbon, see 546.681; *biochemistry,* 574.192

SUMMARY

547.1	Physical organic chemistry
.2	Organic synthesis and reactions
.3	Organic analysis
.4	Aliphatic compounds
.5	Alicyclic and heterocyclic compounds
.6	Aromatic compounds
.7	Chemistry of natural products
.8	Other organic substances

.1 Physical organic chemistry

Application of physical methods and concepts to organic systems

Divide like 541, e.g., electrochemistry of organic compounds 547.137

.2 Organic synthesis [*formerly* †545.9] and reactions

Including named reactions, reactions with specific reagents, unit processes

.21 Alkylation and arylation

Including aromatization; Friedel-Craft, Würtz-Fittig, Wittig reactions

.22 Halogenation

.225 Hydrolysis and hydration

Including saponification

.23 Oxidation and reduction

Including hydrogenation, dehydrogenation, peroxidation, quinonization

.24 Esterification

.25 Amination

Including diazotization and coupling of diazo compounds

.26 Nitration and nitrosation

.27 Sulfonation

547.28 Polymerization and condensation

.29 Other processes

Including fermentation processes

.3 Organic analysis

.301 Organic reagents

Including lists, specifications, tests and standards of reagent chemicals used in organic chemistry

.34 Qualitative organic analysis

Including macroanalysis and semiquantitative analysis

Divide like 544, e.g., microscopic analysis of organic compounds 547.348 2

.35 Quantitative organic analysis

Including gravimetric and volumetric organic analysis

Divide like 545, e.g., electrochemical analysis of organic compounds 547.353

.4 Aliphatic compounds

Open-chain hydrocarbons and their derivatives

For terpenes, see 547.71; *aromatic compounds,* 547.6

.41 Aliphatic hydrocarbons

.411 Paraffin hydrocarbons

Saturated hydrocarbons; alkanes

For derivatives of paraffin hydrocarbons, see 547.42–547.48

.412 Olefin hydrocarbons

Unsaturated hydrocarbons containing double-bonded carbon atoms; alkenes

Including diolefins

For derivatives of olefin hydrocarbons, see 547.42–547.48

.413 Acetylene hydrocarbons

Unsaturated hydrocarbons containing triple-bonded carbon atoms; alkynes

For derivatives of acetylene hydrocarbons, see 547.42–547.48

547.42–547.48 Aliphatic hydrocarbon derivatives

547.42 Aliphatic halogen derivatives

Alkyl halides, polyhalogenated aliphatic hydrocarbons

For halogenated aldehydes, halogenated ketones, see 547.436; *acid halides, halogen acids,* 547.437

.43 Aliphatic oxygen derivatives

.431 Aliphatic alcohols

Monohydric, dihydric, trihydric, polyhydric alcohols

For sugar chemistry, see 547.781

.435 Aliphatic ethers

.436 Aliphatic aldehydes and ketones

Including hydroxy aldehydes and ketones, halogenated aldehydes and ketones

For sugar chemistry, see 547.781

.437 Aliphatic acids

Carboxylic acids, acid halides, acid anhydrides; halogen acids, amino acids, hydroxy acids; acid amides

Including comprehensive works on acyl compounds, e.g., acids and esters

For amino acids related to proteins, see 547.75; *aliphatic esters,* 547.438

.438 Aliphatic esters

Including amides, imides, fats, oils, waxes, lactones, lactams, ester plasticizers

For organic salts, see 547.45

.44 Aliphatic nitrogen compounds

.441 Aliphatic nitro and nitroso compounds

For nitro and nitroso dyes, see 547.862

.442 Aliphatic amines

Primary, secondary, tertiary aliphatic amines

Including hydrazines, azines, imines; aliphatic diazo and diazonium salts; alkylammonium salts

.443 Aliphatic azo compounds

For azo dyes, see 547.863

.444 Aliphatic nitriles and isonitriles

Cyanides, isocyanides, cyanogens

547.45 Aliphatic metallic compounds

Organic salts, chelates, arsenicals, Grignards

.46 Aliphatic sulfur compounds

For inorganic compounds of sulfur, see 546.723; *compounds containing hetero sulfur atoms,* 547.594

.461 Aliphatic sulfides

Including polysulfides, thioethers, sulfonium bases

.463 Aliphatic thioalcohols (Mercaptans)

.464 Aliphatic thioacids

.465 Aliphatic sulfones

Including sulfoxides, alkyl sulfites, thioaldehydes, thioketones

.466 Aliphatic sulfinic acids

.467 Aliphatic sulfonic acids

Including sulfonyl chlorides, sulfonamides, sulfamic acids, alkyl sulfates

.47 Aliphatic phosphorus compounds

Divide like 547.46, e.g., phosphinic acid 547.476

For inorganic compounds of phosphorus, see 546.712

.48 Aliphatic silicon compounds

Divide like 547.46, e.g., silicones 547.485

For inorganic compounds of silicon, see 546.683

.5 Alicyclic and heterocyclic compounds

.51–.58 Alicyclic compounds

Nonaromatic compounds with ring structure

Divide like 547.41–547.48, e.g., cycloparaffins 547.511

.59 Heterocyclic compounds

Cyclic compounds containing other than carbon atoms in the ring

.592 Compounds containing hetero oxygen atoms

Including furans, pyrans, oxazoles

.593 Compounds containing hetero nitrogen atoms

Including pyrroles, porphyrins, chlorophylls, pyridines, pyrazoles, imidazoles, diazines

547.594 Compounds containing hetero sulfur atoms

Including thiophenes, thiazoles

.595 Mixt heterocyclic compounds

Heterocyclic compounds containing two or more hetero atoms

.596 Compounds with condenst hetero rings

Including quinolines, purines, nucleic acids, adenosine triphosphate

.6 Aromatic compounds

Divide like 547.42–547.48, e.g., benzoic acid 547.637

For aliphatic compounds, see 547.4

.61 Aromatic hydrocarbons

.611 Benzene hydrocarbons

Including alkyl derivatives of benzene

.613 Noncondenst polyphenyl hydrocarbons

Including diphenyl hydrocarbons

.615 Naphthalene hydrocarbons

Including alkyl and aryl derivatives of naphthalene

.616 Anthracene hydrocarbons

Including alkyl and aryl derivatives of anthracene, phenanthrene

.632 Phenols

Including monohydric hydroxy aromatics

.633 Polyhydroxy aromatics

Including dihydroxy and trihydroxy aromatics; catechols, resorcinols, hydroquinones

.7 Chemistry of natural products

Including chemistry of substances derived from natural products

For pharmacology, see 615.1–615.39; *biochemistry,* 574.192; *rubber chemistry,* 547.842

.71 Terpenes and essential oils

Including chemistry of monoterpenes, polyterpenes; aliphatic, aromatic, heterocyclic terpenes and their derivatives; camphors

For aliphatic compounds other than terpenes, see 547.4; *aromatic compounds,* 547.6; *heterocyclic compounds,* 547.59

547.72 Alkaloids

Chemistry of basic, nitrogenous plant products having strong physiological activity

Including nicotine, quinine, strychnine, cocaine, caffeine, atropine

.73 Steroids

Including chemistry of sterols (cholesterol, ergosterol); bile acids (cholic acid, desoxycholic acid); sex hormones (estrone, progesterone, testosterone, androsterone); auxins

.74 Vitamins

Including chemistry of vitamin A, B complex (thiamin, riboflavin, pantothenic acid, nicotinic acid, pyridoxin, inositol, p-aminobenzoic acid), C (ascorbic acid), D, E, H (biotin), K, M (folic acid)

For vitamins in the body, see 612.399

.75 Proteins

Including chemistry of polypeptides, amino acids

For amino acids not related to proteins, see 547.437

.752 Simple proteins

Proteins yielding only alpha-amino acids on hydrolysis

Including albumins, globulins, histones

.754 Conjugated proteins

Including nucleoproteins, phosphoproteins, hemoglobins, chromoproteins

.756 Derived proteins

Including peptones, peptides

.758 Enzymes

Chemistry of proteins which have strong catalytic properties

Including trypsin, pepsin, coenzyme A, dehydrogenases, hexokinase, phosphorylases, amylases

.76 Antibiotics

Including chemistry of penicillins, aureomycin, chloromycin, streptomycin, bacitracin, tyrothricin

547.78 Carbohydrates

.781 Sugar chemistry

Including glycosides

For manufacture of sugar, see 664.1

.781 3 Monosaccharides

Including glucose, fructose, levulose, dextrose, gallactose

.781 5 Oligosaccharides

Including disaccharides (sucrose, maltose, lactose, cellobiose); trisaccharides (raffinose)

.782 Polysaccharides

Including starches, inulin, glycogen, cellulose, cotton derivatives, pentosans, dextrans, pectin

.783 Tannins

.8 Other organic substances

Including synthetics of economic importance

For chemistry of natural products, see 547.7

.82 Coal-tar chemistry

Comprehensive works

For chemistry of a specific compound derived from coal tar, see the subject, e.g., benzene 547.611

.83 Petroleum chemistry

Comprehensive works

For chemistry of a specific compound derived from petroleum, see the subject, e.g., paraffin hydrocarbons 547.411

.84 High polymers

.842 Rubber

Chemistry of high polymers with strong elastic quality

Including natural and synthetic rubber

For manufacture of rubber and rubber goods, see 678

547.843 Plastics

Chemistry of high polymers of great tensile strength and flexibility, but lacking elasticity of rubber

For manufacture of plastics, see 668.4

.843 4 Resins

Chemistry of substances similar to plastics but of lower molecular weight

.85 Synthetic fibers

Chemistry of fibers produced from homogeneous solutions or melts

For manufacture of synthetic textiles, see 677.46–677.47

.86 Dyes and related colored compounds

For commercial dyes and dyeing, see 667.2

.862 Nitro and nitroso dyes

Including naphthol green B

For aliphatic nitro and nitroso compounds, see 547.441; *aromatic nitro and nitroso compounds,* 547.641

.863 Azo dyes

Including Congo red, fast scarlet G, Bismarck brown R, direct black W

For aliphatic azo compounds, see 547.443; *aromatic azo compounds,* 547.643

.864 Triphenylmethane dyes

Including malachite green series, rosanaline series

.865 Phthalein dyes

Including phenolphthaleins, sulfonaphalines, fluorescein

.866 Quinoidal dyes

Including quinone dyes, naphthoquinones, anthraquinones, alizarines

.867 Indigoid dyes

Including indigo, thioindigo

.868 Miscellaneous heterocyclic dyes

Including acridines, azines, thiazines, oxazines

548 Crystallography

For physical chemistry, see 541; *mineralogy,* 549; *metallography,* 669.95; *relationship of crystal structure to molecular structure,* 541.22; *crystal structure of a specific element, compound, or mineral, the subject, e.g., crystal structure of sulfur* 546.723

.1 Geometrical crystallography

Study of the external structure of crystals, and the shape and arrangement of the faces

Including fundamental systems of crystallography, e.g., isometric, tetragonal, orthorhombic, monoclinic, triclinic, hexagonal, and trigonal systems

For internal structure of crystals, see 548.81

.3 Chemical crystallography

Study of relationship between crystal structure and chemical composition

Including isomorphism and polymorphism

Class cleavage [*formerly* †548.3] in 548.84

For relationship of molecular and chemical structure, see 541.22

.5 Crystallization

Formation and growth of crystals and crystalline bodies

.7 Mathematical crystallography

Goniometric measurements and calculations

.8 Physical crystallography

.81 Structural crystallography

Study of the internal crystal structure, and space-lattice patterns within crystals

For external structure of crystals, see 548.1

.83 X-ray crystallography

Study of crystal structure by X-ray diffraction

Including Bragg, Laue, Hull crystallograms

.84 Mechanical properties of crystals

Including elasticity, tensile strength, cohesion; cleavage [*formerly* †548.3]; hardness, fracture, specific gravity, fusibility

.85 Electrical, thermal, and magnetic properties of crystals

Including dielectric, pyroelectric, piezoelectric properties [*formerly* *537.55]; conductivity

548.9 Optical crystallography

Optical properties of crystals

Including isotropic and anisotropic crystals, crystal refractivity and reflectivity

549 Mineralogy

Occurrence, description, and classification of naturally occurring elements and compounds formed by inorganic reactions

Including fossilized organic substances

For crystallography, see 548; *ore deposits,* 553.1; *petrology,* 552

.1 Determinative mineralogy

For tests of specific minerals, see 549.2–549.8

.12 Physical mineralogy

Including mechanical properties of minerals, e.g., cleavage, parting, fractures, hardness, tenacity, specific gravity; optical properties, e.g., luster, color, streak, iridescence, luminescence, fluorescence, refractivity; electrical and magnetic properties, e.g., pyroelectric and piezoelectric phenomena

.13 Chemical mineralogy

Chemical composition, properties, tests, and analysis of minerals and mineral ores

Including blowpipe analysis, microchemical reactions, etch tests

For assaying and analysis of metallic ores, see 669.92

549.2–549.8 Descriptive mineralogy

Occurrence, distribution, description of individual mineral species

Including chemical, physical, and crystallographic properties and tests

.2 Native elements

Metals, e.g., gold, silver, platinum; semimetals, e.g., arsenic, antimony, bismuth; nonmetals, e.g., diamonds, graphite, sulfur, selenium, tellurium

549.3 Sulfides and sulfo salts

.32 Sulfides

Sulfides, selenides, tellurides, and antimonides

Including galena, stannite, cinnabar, stibnite, bismuthinite, pyrite, calaverite, smaltite

.35 Sulfo salts

Minerals containing metals and semimetals combined with sulfur

Including enargite, polybasite, stephanite, proustite, pyrargyrite, tetrahedrite, jamesonite

.4 Halides

Minerals in which metals are combined with halogens, e.g., fluorine, chlorine, bromine, iodine

Including halite, cryolite, fluorite, sylvite, cerargyrite, atacamite, carnallite

.5 Oxides

For silica, see 549.6

.52 Anhydrous oxides

Including cuprite, zincite, corundum, hematite, ilmenite, spinel, chromite, chrysoberyl, cassiterite, rutile, pyrolusite, columbite

.53 Hydrous oxides

Including diaspore, goethite, manganite, limonite, bauxite, brucite, psilomelane

.6 Silica and silicates

Including quartz, opal, feldspar, leucite, zeolite, talc, serpentine, mica, amphibole, pyroxene, spodumene, zircon, topaz, garnet, sillimanite, beryl, olivine

549.7 Minerals containing other oxygen compounds

.72 Phosphates, vanadates, arsenates

Including monazite, triphylite, apatite, vanadinite, lazulite, scorodite, turquoise, vivianite, erythrite

Class nitrates [*formerly* †549.72] in 549.73

.73 Nitrates [*formerly* †549.72] and borates

Including soda niter, saltpeter, boracite, borax, kernite, ulexite, colemanite

.74 Tungstates, molybdates, uranates

Including wolframite, scheelite, wulfenite, uraninite (pitchblende)

Class chromates [*formerly* †549.74] in 549.75

.75 Chromates [*formerly* †549.74] and sulfates

Including anhydrous sulfates and chromates, e.g., glauberite, barite, celestite, anglesite, anhydrite, crocoite; hydrous sulfates [*formerly* †549.76] and chromates, e.g., antlerite, polyhalite, gypsum, epsomite, chalcanthite, alunite

[†.76] Hydrous sulfates

Class in 549.75

.78 Carbonates

Including calcite, dolomite, magnesite, siderite, rhodochrosite, smithsonite, aragonite, witherite, strontianite, cerussite, malachite, azurite

.8 Organic minerals

Including amber, asphaltum, lignite, coal

For diamonds and graphite, see 549.2

.9 Geographic distribution of minerals

Divide like 940–999, e.g., mineral deposits of Canada 549.971

For regional geology, see 554–559; *geographic distribution of geologic materials of economic importance,* 553.09

550 Earth sciences

Study of all earth materials, forces, processes

Including geology

For astronomical geography, see 525; *geography,* 910; *mineralogy,* 549; *paleontology,* 560

.1 Philosophy and theories of geology

Including geologic time

551 Geophysics

SUMMARY

551.1	**Gross structure of earth**
.2	**Plutonic phenomena**
.3	**Geologic agents and work**
.4	**Geomorphology and physical geography**
.5	**Meteorology and climatology**
.7	**Historical geology (Stratigraphy)**
.8	**Structural geology (Tectonophysics)**
.9	**Geochemistry**

.1 Gross structure of earth

.11 Structure of interior of the earth

.12 Conditions within the earth [*formerly* *551.15]

Including internal heat, isostasy

.13 Structure of the earth's crust

.14 Physical properties of the earth's crust

Including thermal conductivity of surface components

For earth currents, see 538.748

[*.15] Conditions within the earth

Class in 551.12

[*.16] Geomagnetism

Class in 538.7

.2 Plutonic phenomena

.21 Volcanology

Study of volcanic phenomena, vulcanism

Including craters, cones, eruptions

For volcanic earthquakes, see 551.22

551.22 Seismology

Study of earthquake phenomena

Including plutonic and volcanic earthquakes

.23 Hot springs and geysers

.3 Geologic agents [*formerly* †551.9] and work

Including degradation (erosion), aggradation (deposition, sedimentation), weathering (rock decay [*formerly* †552.7])

.31 Glaciology

Ice accumulation and ice action in the earth's surface

For frost action, see 551.38

.312 Glaciers

Including nourishment, advance, recession, oscillation of glaciers

For icebergs, see 551.342

.313 Glaciation and glacial action

Erosion and scouring of the surface of the earth, and deposition of debris by the movement of glaciers and ice masses

Including ice fields, ice streams, cirques, drumlins, kettles, kames, roches moutonnées

For Glacial epoch, see 551.792

.32 Moraines

.33 Other glacier-transported materials

Including till, glacial drift, outwashes

.34 Ice in the sea

.342 Icebergs

Including shelf ice, growlers

.343 Sea ice (Frozen sea water)

551.35 Geologic work of water [*formerly also* †551.92]

Gradation by running, subterranean, and rain waters

Including segregation and concretion [*both formerly also* †551.98], landslides, mudflows

For hot springs and geysers, see 551.23; *caves,* 551.44

.36 Geologic work of waves

Including coastal changes

.37 Geologic work of wind [*formerly also* †551.93]

Including wind erosion and transport, dune formation and migration

.38 Frost action [*formerly* †551.91]

Rock fragmentation thru freezing of water in crevices

Including nivation, frost action in soils

.384 Permafrost phenomena

Including stone polygons, patterned soil, hummocks

.4 Geomorphology and physical geography

Description, origin, development of topographic features

.41 Continents

Including continental shelves

.42 Islands

Including atolls, coral reefs [*both formerly* †551.96]

.43 Orology

Study of mountains

Including mountain ranges, plateaus, valleys

.44 Speleology

Study of caves, caverns, grottoes, karst holes

.45 Plains

Including deserts and prairies [*both formerly* †551.58], steppes, tundra, pampas

For desert mountain ranges, plateaus, valleys, see 551.43

551.46–551.49 Hydrography

551.46 Oceanography

Including comprehensive works on tides

For marine biology, see 574.92; *ocean currents,* 551.47; *astronomical aspects of tides,* 525.6; *ice in the sea,* 551.34

.460 1 Composition and properties of sea water

Including salinity, density, temperature distribution, color, transparency

.460 8 Submarine topography

Geology of the ocean floor

.461 Atlantic Ocean

Including North Sea, Baltic Sea, English Channel, Bay of Biscay

.462 Mediterranean Sea

Including Black Sea

.463 Gulf of Mexico and Caribbean Sea

.464 Southern Atlantic Ocean

Including Gulf of Guinea

.465 Pacific Ocean

Including South China Sea, East China Sea, Yellow Sea, Sea of Japan, Bering Sea

.466 Eastern Pacific Ocean

Including American western coastal waters

.467 Indian Ocean

Including Arabian Sea, Bay of Bengal, Persian Gulf, Red Sea

.468 Arctic Ocean

Including Baffin Bay, Davis Strait, Hudson Bay, Hudson Strait

.469 Antarctic Ocean

Southern waters of Atlantic, Pacific, Indian Oceans

.47 Ocean currents

Divide like 551.46, e.g., Gulf Stream 551.471

551.48 Inland waters (Limnology)

For marine biology, see 574.92

.482 Lakes

Including ponds, lagoons

.483 Rivers and streams

.484 Waterfalls

.49 Hydrology

Ground and superficial surface waters

Including springs, wells, flood waters, runoff

For hot springs and geysers, see 551.23; *water-supply engineering,* 628.1; *precipitation,* 551.573

.5 Meteorology and climatology

For meteorology in aeronautics, see 629.132 4; *medical climatology and meteorology,* 616.988

.51 Structure and mechanics of atmosphere [*formerly* †533.3]

.513 Troposphere

Layer of air next to the earth

.514 Upper atmosphere

Comprehensive works

For ionosphere, see 538.767

.518 Atmospheric circulation

Including planetary and terrestrial winds, e.g., doldrums, horse latitudes, trade winds, prevailing westerlies, polar easterlies; continental winds, e.g., monsoons; land, sea, mountain, valley breezes, e.g., foehns, chinooks; local winds, e.g., sirocco, bora

For storms, see 551.55

.52 Atmospheric thermal conditions

.522 Atmospheric thermodynamics

.525 Atmospheric temperature

Including isotherms, temperature measurement, seasonal temperature changes, frost lines

551.527 Insolation and radiation

Atmospheric absorption of heat, atmospheric cooling, radiation, heat transmission of atmosphere

[†.53] Hypsometry

Class in 526.98

.54 Atmospheric pressure

Including barometry [*formerly* †533.4], isobars, pressure gradients

.55 Storms

For winds, see 551.518; *magnetic storms,* 538.74

.552 Hurricanes and typhoons

.553 Tornadoes (Twisters)

.554 Thunderstorms

For lightning, see 551.56

.559 Other storms

Including dust storms, waterspouts

.56 Atmospheric electricity [*formerly* †537.4]

Including lightning, St. Elmo's fire, electrical conductivity of atmosphere

For geomagnetism, see 538.7

.565 Atmospheric optics

Including halos, mirages, rainbows, twilights, night skies

For astronomical twilight, see 525.7

.57 Atmospheric moisture

Including hygrometry, psychrometry

.572 Condensation and evaporation

Including hoarfrost, dew [*both formerly* *551.573], atmospheric nucleation

.572 4 Clouds

Including fogs, mists

For artificial precipitation, see 551.573 8

.572 8 Droughts

551.573 Precipitation

Class hoarfrost, dew [*both formerly* *551.573] in 551.572

For condensation and evaporation, see 551.572

.573 3 Rain and rainfall

Including cloudbursts

For flood waters and runoff, see 551.49

.573 5 Snow and snowfall

Including hail, graupel, sleet, snow cover, snow surveys

.573 8 Artificial precipitation

Including cloud seeding

For weather control, see 551.593

[†.58] Prairies, forests, deserts

Class prairies and deserts in 551.45; forests in 634.94

.59 Climatology and weather

For seasons, see 525.5; *paleoclimatology,* 551.509 01

.591 Weather forecasting

.592 Microclimatology

Climatology of small areas

.593 Weather control

Artificial methods of modifying weather

For artificial precipitation, see 551.573 8

.594 Weather belts

.594 2 Tropical belts

No cool season; mean temperature of coldest month above 64.4°F

.594 3 Subtropical belts

Arid or semiarid climate; mean temperature above 68°F for 4–11 months, 50°–68°F for 1–8 months

.594 4 Temperate belts

Rainy climates with mild, short winters; mean temperature of coldest month 26.6°–64.4°F

.594 5 Cold belts

Rainy climates with long, severe winters, much snow precipitation, frozen ground for several months; mean temperature of coldest month below 26.6°F

551.594 6 Polar belts

No warm season; mean temperature of warmest month below 50°F

[†.6] **Metamorphism**

Class in 552.4

.7 Historical geology (Stratigraphy)

Study of chronological arrangement and succession of rock strata

For stratigraphic paleontology, see 560.17

.71 Archeozoic (Lower Precambrian) era

Keewatin and Timiskaming periods

.715 Proterozoic (Upper Precambrian) era

Huronian and Keeweenawan periods

.72 Paleozoic era

.724 Cambrian period

Beginning of the age of invertebrates

.726 Ordovician period

.73 Silurian period

Including Lower, Middle, and Upper Silurian epochs

.74 Devonian period

Age of fishes

.75 Carboniferous period

Age of amphibians

.751 Mississippian (Lower Carboniferous) period

.752 Pennsylvanian (Upper Carboniferous) period

.756 Permian period

.76 Mesozoic era

Age of reptiles

.763 Triassic period

.766 Jurassic period

.77 Cretaceous period

551.78 **Cenozoic era**

Age of mammals

Class Quaternary period [*formerly* *551.78] in 551.79

.781 Tertiary period

Including Paleocene, Eocene, Oligocene epochs; Miocene, and Pliocene epochs [*formerly* †551.782–†551.783]

[†.782–†.783] Miocene and Pliocene epochs

Class in 551.781

.79 Quaternary period [*formerly* *551.78]

[†.791] Recent (Postglacial) epoch

Class in 551.793

.792 Pleistocene (Glacial) epoch

Ice age

For glaciology, see 551.31

.793 Recent (Postglacial) epoch [*formerly* †551.791]

.8 **Structural geology (Tectonophysics)**

Form and position of rocks

For petrology, see 552

.81 **Stratifications**

[†.82] **Curvatures and contortions**

Class in 551.87

.84 **Joints and cleavages**

.85 Dips and outcrops

Including strikes

.86 **Synclines and antisynclines**

.87 **Faults and folds**

Including curvatures, contortions [*both formerly* †551.82]

For synclines and antisynclines, see 551.86

.88 **Veins and dikes**

Including necks, bosses, laccoliths, sills

551.9 **Geochemistry**

Comprehensive works

Class geologic agents [*formerly* †551.9] in 551.3

For a specific aspect of geochemistry, see the subject, e.g., vulcanism 551.21

[†.91] **Frost action**

Class in 551.38

[†.92] **Geologic work of water**

Class in 551.35

[†.93] **Geologic work of wind**

Class in 551.37

[†.96] **Coral reefs**

Class in 551.42

[†.98] **Segregation and concretion**

Class in 551.35

552 **Petrology**

Origin, occurrence, constitution, classification of rocks

For mineralogy, see 549

.1 **Igneous rocks**

Rocks formed by cooling and solidification of magma

.2 Volcanic rocks

Fine-grained igneous rocks

Including lavas, pumice, felsites, basalt, obsidian, rhyolite, andesite, tuff, volcanic ashes and tufa

.3 Plutonic rocks

Coarse-grained igneous rocks

Including granites, syenites [*both formerly also* †552.41]; porphyries, gabbros, dolerites, diorites, norites, peridotites

552.4 **Metamorphic rocks**

Igneous and sedimentary rocks changed thru temperature, pressure, and chemical action without disintegration (metamorphism [*formerly* †551.6])

Including gneisses, schists, slates, quartzites, serpentines, chrysolitic rocks, crystalline limestones (marble)

For weathering (sometimes called metamorphism), see 551.3

[†.41] Granites and syenites

Class in 552.3

.5 **Sedimentary rocks**

Rocks formed thru mechanical accumulation and chemical deposition of rock fragments

Including sandstones, shales, gypsum, limestones, dolomites, oölites, greensands and their components, e.g., sand, clay, silt, glauconite, diatomaceous earth, salt

[†.6] **Meteorites**

Class in 523.51

[†.7] **Decay of rocks**

Class in 551.3

.8 **Microscopic petrography**

Study of rocks in thin sections

Including examination of fragmental rocks

553 Economic geology

Occurrence, origin, distribution of geologic materials of economic importance

Including mining prospectuses

Class prospecting [*formerly* *553] in 622.1

For mining engineering, see 622

SUMMARY

553.1	**Ore deposits**
.2	**Coal deposits**
.27	**Mineral pitch deposits**
.28	**Oil and gas geology**
.29	**Fossil gums and resins**
.3–.4	**Metallic ore deposits**
.5	**Building stone deposits**
.6	**Earthy material deposits**
.7	**Mineral water deposits**
.8	**Gem deposits**

553.1 **Ore deposits**

Formation, structure, classification of ores

Including placer deposits, mineral veins, pegmatite dikes

.2 **Coal deposits**

.21 Peat deposits

Including peat coal

.22 Lignite deposits

Including brown coal, jet deposits

.23 Cannel coal deposits

Including bituminous shale deposits

.24 Bituminous coal deposits

Including semibituminous coal deposits

.25 Anthracite coal deposits

Including graphitic anthracite coal deposits

.26 Graphite deposits

Plumbago and black lead deposits

.27 **Mineral pitch deposits**

Including asphalt, bitumen, ozocerite, ceresin, natural paraffin deposits

.28 **Oil and gas geology**

Origin, migration, accumulation, and underground distribution

For oil and gas prospecting, see 622.182 8; *their extraction,* 622.338

.282 Petroleum geology

For petroleum technology, see 665.5

.285 Natural gas geology

Including helium in natural gases

For gas technology, see 665.7

.29 **Fossil gums and resins**

553.3 Metallic ore deposits

.35 Ferrous ore deposits

Including hematite, magnetite, goethite, siderite

For soft hematite deposits, see 553.66

.4 Nonferrous ore deposits

.41 Deposits of precious metal ores

.413 Gold ores

.42 Silver ores

.422 Platinum ores [*formerly* †553.49]

.43 Copper ores

.44 Lead ores

.45 Zinc, tin, mercury ores

.452 Zinc ores

.453 Tin ores

.454 Mercury ores

.46 Ores of ferro-alloy metals

Including molybdenum, tungsten, titanium, vanadium, tantalum, niobium ores [*all formerly* †553.49]; chromium, manganese ores

For nickel and cobalt ores, see 553.48

.47 Antimony, arsenic, bismuth [*formerly* †553.49] ores

.48 Nickel and cobalt ores

.49 Other metallic ores

Class platinum ores in 553.422; molybdenum, tungsten, titanium, niobium ores in 553.46; bismuth ores in 553.47 [*all formerly* †553.49]

.492 Aluminum ores

For emery and corundum deposits, see 553.65

.493 Fissionable ores

Including uranium, radium, thorium ores

.499 Minor metallic ores

Including hafnium, germanium, zirconium, gallium, indium, selenium, tellurium, beryllium ores

553.5 Building stone deposits

Including sculptors' stones, ornamental stones

For gem deposits, see 553.8

.51 Marble and limestone deposits

For alabaster deposits, see 553.635; *mineral lime deposits,* 553.68; *verd antique marble deposits,* 553.55

.52 Granite and syenite deposits

For feldspar deposits, see 553.69

.53 Sandstone deposits

Clastic rocks composed essentially of quartz

Including bluestones, flagstones

For sand and gravel deposits, see 553.62

.54 Slate deposits

.55 Serpentine and soapstone deposits

Including onyx, verd antique marble, travertine

For talc and chrysolite serpentine deposits, see 553.67

.6 Earthy material deposits

.61 Industrial clay deposits

Including kaolin, bentonite, fuller's earth, diaspore clay

.62 Sand and gravel deposits

Including sand and gravel for building and paving materials, sands for chemical uses

.63 Industrial salts deposits

For mineral water deposits, see 553.7

.632 Rock salt deposits (Sodium chloride deposits)

553.633 Deposits of borax and other borates

Including boric acid deposits

.635 Gypsum deposits

Including alabaster

.64 Deposits of mineral fertilizers

Including nitrates, potash, phosphates, apatite

Class guano [*formerly* †553.64] in 631.86

For sulfur deposits, see 553.668; *gypsum deposits,* 553.635; *lime deposits,* 553.68

.65 Deposits of abrasive materials

Including emery, corundum, pumice, garnet, flint, carbonado, industrial diamonds, tripoli

For gem deposits, see 553.8; *sand deposits,* 553.62

.66 Deposits of pigment materials

Including barite (heavy spar), ochers, umber, sienna, soft hematite, limonite, rutile

For hematite deposits, see 553.35

.668 Sulfur deposits

.67 Deposits of refractory materials

Including asbestos (chrysolite serpentine, anthophyllite, crocidolite), mica, vermiculite, talc

For soapstone deposits, see 553.55

.68 Deposits of cementing materials

Including mineral cements and limes, chalks, calcites, marl

For gypsum deposits, see 553.635

.69 Other earthy economic mineral deposits

Including feldspar, diatomaceous earth (kieselguhr)

553.7 Mineral water deposits

Including deposits of sodium carbonate (soda ash), sodium bicarbonate, trona, sodium sulfate, other brine-occurring minerals

.8 Gem deposits

Including precious and semiprecious minerals used for ornaments

.82 Diamond deposits

For deposits of industrial diamonds, see 553.65

.84 Ruby and sapphire deposits

.86 Emerald deposits

554–559 Regional geology

Comprehensive works

Divide like 940–999, e.g., geology of United States 557.3

For a specific geological aspect of a region, see the subject, e.g., economic geology of Great Britain 553.094 2

554 Geology of Europe

555 Geology of Asia

556 Geology of Africa

557 Geology of North America

558 Geology of South America

559 Geology of Pacific and Atlantic islands, of Polar Regions

560 Paleontology

Including comprehensive works on paleozoology, paleontological anatomy [*formerly* †611.016]

For a specific animal fossil or group of animal fossils, see 562–569; *paleobotany,* 561; *paleoclimatology,* 551.509 01

.17 Stratigraphic paleontology

Including stratigraphic paleobotany and paleozoology

For a specific fossil or group of fossils, see 561–569; *stratigraphic paleontology in a specific country,* 560.94–560.99, *e.g., Mesozoic fossils in Great Britain* 560.942; *historical geology,* 551.7

.171 Archeozoic and Proterozoic paleontology

.172 Paleozoic paleontology

Including fossils of Cambrian, Ordovician, Silurian, Devonian, Carboniferous, Permian periods

.176 Mesozoic paleontology

Including fossils of Triassic, Jurassic, Cretaceous periods

.178 Cenozoic paleontology

Including fossils of Tertiary and Quaternary periods

.9 Geographic paleontology

Including geographic paleozoology

For geographic paleobotany, see 561.19

.92 Marine paleontology

For a specific marine fossil or group of fossils, see the subject, e.g., Algae 561.93; *bivalves* 564.1

.94–.99 Geographic paleontology by country

Divide like 940–999, e.g., fossils of Great Britain 560.942

561 Paleobotany

For stratigraphic paleobotany, see 560.17

[.09] Geographic paleobotany

Class in 561.19

.1 Paleobotanical elements

.13 Fossil pollen and spores

561.14 Fossil fruit and seeds

.19 Geographic paleobotany

Divide like 940–999, e.g., fossil plants of Greenland 561.199 82

561.2–561.9 Taxonomic paleobotany

.2 Fossil Spermatophyta (Fossil seed plants)

Including comprehensive works on Angiospermae [*formerly* *561.3]

For Dicotyledones, see 561.3; *Monocotyledones,* 561.4; *Gymnospermae,* 561.5

.21 Trees

Including petrified wood

For trees of a specific group, see the group, e.g., ginkgo trees 561.57

.3 Dicotyledones

Class Angiospermae [*formerly* *561.3] in 561.2

.4 Monocotyledones

.45 Palmaceae (Palms)

.49 Gramineae (Grasses)

.5 Gymnospermae (Naked-seed plants)

.51 Gnetales

.52 Coniferales (Conifers)

Including Taxaceae, Podocarpaceae, Araucariaceae, Cephalotaxaceae, Pinaceae, Taxodiaceae, Cupressaceae

.55 Cordaitales

Including Pityeae (Callixylon), Cordaiteae, Poroxyleae

.57 Ginkgoales (Ginkgo trees)

.59 Cycadophyta

.591 Cycadales (True cycads)

561.592 Cycadeoidales

Former heading: Bennettitales

Including Williamsoniaceae, Cycadeoidaceae

.595 Pteridospermae (Seed ferns)

Including Medullosaceae, Lyginodendraceae [*both formerly* †561.596 6–†561.596 7], Calamopityaceae

[†.596 6–†.596 7] Medullosaceae and Lyginodendraceae

Class in 561.595

.597 Fernlike fossils of uncertain taxonomic position

Including Archaeopteris [*formerly* †561.598 1], Megalopteris, Glossopteris, Mariopteris, Alliopteris, Taeniopteris, Neuropteris, Odontopteris, Cyclopteris, Linopteris, Callipteris, Alethopteris, Pecopteris, Sphenopteris, Rhacopteris

[†.598 1] Archaeopteris

Class in 561.597

.6 Fossil Cryptogamia (Fossil seedless plants)

For Pteridophyta, see 561.7; *Bryophyta,* 561.8; *Thallophyta,* 561.9

.7 Pteridophyta

.71 Isoetales

.72 Sphenopsida (Scouring rushes)

Including Equisetales, Calamitales, Sphenophyllales, Pseudoborniales, Hyeniales

.73 Filicineae (Ferns)

Including Filicales, Marattiales, Ophioglossales, Coenopteridales

.74 Psilopsida

Including Psilotales, Psilophytales

.79 Lycopsida (Lycopods)

Comprehensive works

Including Pleuromeiales, Lepidodendrales, Selaginellales, Lycopodiales

For Isoetales, see 561.71

.8 Bryophyta (Moss plants)

[†.84] Characeae

Class in 561.93

561.9 Thallophyta

.92 Mycophyta (Fungi)

.93 Algae

Including Characeae [*formerly* †561.84], other kinds of Algae [*formerly* †561.94–†561.98]

[†.94–†.98] Other kinds of Algae

Class in 561.93

562–569 Paleozoology

For taxonomic zoology, see 592–599

562 Invertebrate paleozoology

563 Protozoa

.1 Plasmodroma

Including Foraminifera, Radiolaria

[†.3] Coelenterata

Class in 563.5

.4 Porifera (Sponges)

Including Calcispongiae, Hyalospongiae, Desmospongiae

.47 Archaeocyatha

Cambrian fossils with characteristics of sponges and corals

.5 Metazoa

Including Coelenterata (Cnidaria) [*formerly also* †563.3], Enterozoa, Radiata

Class Anthozoa [*formerly* *563.5] in 563.6; Graptolitoidea [*formerly* *563.5] in 563.7

.6 Anthozoa (Corals) [*formerly* *563.5]

.7 Hydrozoa

Including Graptolitoidea [*formerly* *563.5], Hydroida, Trachylina, Milleporina, Stylasterina, Siphonophora

.73 Scyphozoa

Including Lucernariidea, Charybdeidea, Corona, Semaeostomea, Rhizastomea

563.78 Stromatoporoidea

.9 Echinodermata

Including Cystoidea, Blastoidea

.91 Crinoidea

Including Camerata, Adunata, Flexibilia, Inadunata, Articulata, Comatulida

.92 Asterozoa

Class starfish [*formerly* †563.92] in 563.93

.93 Asteroidea (Starfish) [*formerly* †563.92]

Including Phanerozonea, Spinulosa, Forcipulata

.94 Ophiuroidea

Including Aegophiurida, Lysophiurida, Ophiocystiida, Aganasterida, Phrynophiurida, Laemophiurida, Gnathophiurida, Chilophiurida

.95 Echinozoa

Including Bothriocidaroida, Cidaroida, Centrechinoida, Exocycloida, Perischoechinoida, Echinocystoida, Perichoechinoida

564 Mollusca and molluscoidea

.1 Pelecypoda (Bivalve mollusks)

Including Prionodesmacea, Anomalodesmacea, Teleodesmacea, Pantodonta

.19 Crepipoda (Chitons)

Polyplacopoda (Amphineura) [*formerly* †564.31]

Including Eoplacophora, Aplacophora, Mesoplacophora, Isoplacophora, Teleoplacophora

.2 Scaphopoda (Toothshells)

.3 Gastropoda

Snails, slugs, whelks

Divide like 594.3, e.g., fossil sea slugs (Pteropoda) [*formerly* †564.4] 564.35

[†.31] Amphineura

Class in 564.19

[†.4] Pteropoda

Class in 564.35

564.5 Cephalopoda

.51 Tetrabranchia

.52 Nautiloidea (Nautilus)

.53 Ammonitoidea

.55 Dibranchia

Including Vampyromorpha

.56 Octopoda

Including Belemnoidea

.58 Decapoda

.6 Molluscoidea

.7 Bryozoa

.8 Brachiopoda

Including Paleotremata

[†.9] Tunica

Class in 566

565 Other fossil invertebrates

.1 Wormlike fossil animals

Including Tardigrada [*formerly* †565.412, *565.4], Platyhelminthes, Nemertea, Nematoidea, Nematomorpha, Acanthocephala, Eucoelomata, Annelida, Phoronidea, Myzostoma, Aschelminthes

.2 Arthropoda

.3 Crustacea

Class Pycnogonida [*formerly* †565.315] in 565.394

Divide like 595.32–595.35, e.g., fossil barnacles 565.35

.36 Malacostraca

Including Nebaliacea, Rhinocarina, Ceratiocarina, Hymenocarina, Nahecarida

.37 Eumalacostraca

Including Amphipoda, Isopoda, Thermosbaenacea, Tanaidacea

565.38 Other Eumalacostraca
Including Cumacea, Stomatopoda, Mysidacea, Decapoda, Euphausiacea

.39 Chelicerata

.391 Merostomata
Including Eurypterida, Synxiphosura

.392 Xiphosura

.393 Trilobita

.394 Pycnogonida [*formerly* †565.315]

.4 Arachnida
Class Tardigrada [*formerly* *565.4] in 565.1

[†.412] Tardigrada (Water bears)
Class in 565.1

.49 Architarbi

.6 Progoneata
Former heading: Myriopoda
Divide like 595.6, e.g., fossil centipedes 565.62

.7 Insecta (Insects)

.71 Synaptera
Including Collembola, Protura, Entotrophi, Thysanura

.72 Orthoptera and related orders
Including Dermaptera, Blattariae, Phasmotodea, Mantodea

.73 Other related orders
Including Thysanoptera, Corrodentia, Odonata, Ephemeroptera, Plecoptera, Isoptera, Embioptera, Zoraptera

.74 Neuroptera and related orders
Including Megaloptera, Mecoptera, Trichoptera, Strepsiptera

.75 Hemiptera and related orders
Including Anoplura, Mallophaga, Homoptera, Heteroptera

.76 Coleoptera
Including Adephaga, Polyphaga, Elateroidea, Mordelloidea, Curculionoidea, Colydioidea

.77 Diptera
Including Orthorrhapha, Cyclorrhapha, Siphonaptera

565.78 Lepidoptera
Including Jugatae, Frenatae, Rhopalocera

.79 Hymenoptera

566 Vertebrate paleozoology (Fossil Chordata)
Including Tunicata [*formerly* †564.9], Acrania [*formerly* †567.1], Craniata

567 Anamnia (Fossil cyclostomes, fishes, amphibians)

[†.1] Acrania
Class in 566

.2 Agnatha
Including Cyclostomata (lampreys)

.3 Chondrichthyes (Sharks, rays, skates)
Including Elasmobranchii, Cladoselachii, Selachii, Hybodontoidea, Batoidea, Pleuracanthodii, Holocephali, Bradyodonti

.4 Actinopterygii (Ganoids)
Including Palaeoniscoidea, Subholostei, Semionotoidea, Pycnodontoidea, Aspidorhynchoidea, Pholidophoroidea
Class Teleostei [*formerly* *567.4] in 567.5

.5 Teleostei [*formerly* *567.4]
Including Isospondyli, Ostariophysi, Apodes, Heteromi, Mesichthyes, Acanthopterygii

.6 Amphibia
Including Labyrinthodontia, Lepospondyli

.7 Apoda

.8 Salientia
Including Eoanura, Proanura, Anura

.9 Urodela
Including Cryptobranchoidea, Amblystomoidea, Salamandriodea, Proteidea

568 **Sauropsida (Reptiles and birds)**

.1 Reptilia

.11 Lepidosauria

Including Eosuchia, Rhynchocephalia, Squamata, Lacertilia (lizards)

.12 Serpentes (Snakes)

.13 Anapsida

Including Cotylosauria, Chelonia

.14 Crocodilia

Including Protosuchia, Sebecosuchia, Mesosuchia, Eusuchia

.15 Ichthyopterygia

.16 Synaptosauria

Including Protorosauria, Sauropterygia

.17 Synapsida

Former heading: Anomodontia

Including Pelycosauria, Therapsida, Ictidosauria

.18 Pterosauri

Including Rhamphorhynchoidea, Pterodactyloidea

.19 Archosauria

Former heading: Dinosauria

Including Thecodontia, Saurischia, Ornithischia

For Crocodilia, see 568.14; *Pterosauri,* 568.18

.2 Aves (Birds)

.22 Archaeornithes

.23 Neornithes

Including Hesperornithiformes, Ichthyornithiformes

Class other orders of Neornithes [*formerly* *568.2] in 568.3–568.9

568.3–568.9 Other orders of Neornithes [*formerly* *568.2]

.3 Gruiformes and related orders

Including Charadriiformes [*formerly* †568.4], Phororhaci, Diatrymiformes, Ciconiiformes

568.4 Anseriformes and related orders

Including Procellariiformes, Pelecaniformes, Sphenisciformes, Gaviiformes, Colymbiformes

Class Charadriiformes [*formerly* †568.4] in 568.3

.5 Palaeognathae

Including Caenagnathiformes, Struthioniformes, Rheiformes, Casuariiformes, Dinornithiformes, Aepyornithiformes, Apterygiformes, Tinamiformes

.6 Galliformes and Columbiformes

.7 Psittaciformes and related orders

Including Piciformes, Trogoniformes, Cuculiformes

.8 Passeriformes and related orders

Including Coraciiformes, Apodiformes

.9 Falconiformes and related orders

Including Strigiformes, Caprimulgiformes

569 **Mammalia (Mammals)**

.1 Prototheria

Including Monotremata

.17 Allotheria

Including Multituberculata, Triconodonta

.18 Theria

Including Pantotheria, Symmetrodonta

.2 Metatheria

Including Marsupialia

.3 Eutheria

Including Unguiculata

.31 Edentata

Including Palaeanodonta, Xenarthra, Pholidota

.32 Glires

Including Lagomorpha, Rodentia

.33 Insectivora

.34 Dermoptera

.35 Tillodontia

569.36 Taeniodontia

.4 Chiroptera

Including Megachiroptera, Microchiroptera

.5 Cetacea

Including Archaeoceti, Odontoceti, Mysticeti

.55 Sirenia

Including Trichechiformes, Desmostyliformes

.6 Paenungulata

Including Pantodonta, Dinocerata, Pyrotheria, Proboscidea, Embrithopoda, Hyracoidea

For Sirenia, see 569.55

.7 Mesaxonia and Paraxonia

.72 Perissodactyla

Including Hippomorpha, Ceratomorpha

.73 Artiodactyla

Including Suiformes, Tylopoda, Ruminantia

.74 Carnivora

Including Creodonta, Fissipeda, Pinnipedia

.75 Protungulata

Including Condylarthra, Litopterna, Notoungulata, Astrapotheria, Tubulidentata

.8 Primates

Including Prosimii, Anthropoidea

Class man [*formerly* *569.8] in 569.9

.9 Hominidae (Man) [*formerly* *569.8]

570 Anthropological and biological sciences

For anthropology, see 572; *biology,* 574

571 Prehistoric archeology

Comprehensive works

Including relics of material, cultural, social life

For ancient history, see 930; *antiquities, prehistoric and historic archeology of a specific country,* 913; *American Indian archeological remains,* 970.1–970.6, 980.1–980.6; *comprehensive works on prehistoric and historic archeology,* 913

.1 Paleolithic or old stone age

Including chipt stone artifacts

For cave dwellings, see 571.8

.2 Neolithic or new stone age

Including polisht stone artifacts

.3 Copper and bronze age

.4 Iron age

.5 Other remains

Including basketry, textiles, pottery, glass, implements of wood and bone

.6 Prehistoric industries

.7 Prehistoric art

Including prehistoric art objects, ornaments, drawings

.72 Painting

Including rock paintings

.73 Sculpture

Including rock carvings, petroglyphs

.8 Prehistoric shelter

Including cave dwellings, pit dwellings, lake dwellings, tree dwellings

For pueblos, cliff dwellings of American Indians, see 970.657 18, 980.657 18

.9 Other prehistoric structures

Including mounds, kitchen middens, megaliths, monoliths, dolmens, cromlechs

For American Indian mounds in a specific place, see the place, e.g., mounds in Wisconsin 913.775

572 Anthropology

Including cultural anthropology; comprehensive works on cultural and physical anthropology

For culture and society, see 301.2; *ethnopsychology and national psychology,* 136.4; *physical anthropology,* 573; *history of civilization,* 901.9; *customs and folklore,* 390; *criminal anthropology,* 364.33

.4 Original home of man

Including Eden, Atlantis

.8 Linguistic anthropology

Division of peoples by language

Including Aryan, Slavic, other similar groups

Prefer 572.9 when geographic division is possible

Divide like 420–499, e.g., Semitic races 572.892

For philology, see 400; *anthropogeography,* 572.9

.9 Anthropogeography

Geographic distribution of races

Divide like 930–999, e.g., distribution of races in Asia 572.95

For physical anthropology, see 573; *linguistic anthropology,* 572.8; *sociological aspects of ethnic and minority groups,* 301.45; *migration,* 325; *human ecology,* 301.3

573 Physical anthropology

Including natural history of man, his origin, physical measurements, personal characteristics; anthropological anatomy [*formerly* †611.014]

.2 Origin of man [*formerly* *573.3]

For original home of man, see 572.4

.3 Antiquity of man

Including evolution of man

Class origin of man [*formerly* *573.3] in 573.2

.4 Influence of climate and surroundings

.6 Anthropometry

Including comprehensive works on fingerprints

Class craniology [*formerly* *573.6] in 573.7

For use of anthropometry in crime investigation, see 364.125; *fingerprinting of prisoners,* 365.642

.7 Craniology [*formerly* *573.6]

For phrenology, see 139

573.8 Abnormal dimensions

Including dwarfs, giants

For teratology, see 611.012

[†.9] Monstrosities

Class in 611.012

574 Biology

Science of life and living organisms

For anthropology, see 572; *botanical sciences,* 580; *zoological sciences,* 590; *conservation of wildlife,* 799; *wildlife refuges,* 338.78

SUMMARY

574.1	**Biophysiology**
.2	**Pathology**
.3	**Embryology**
.4	**Biomorphology**
.5	**Bioecology**
.6	**Economic biology**
.8	**Microscopic biology**
.9	**Natural history and biogeography**

.01 Biological theories

Class philosophy of biology [*formerly* *574.01] in 577

.028 Biological techniques [*formerly* *578]

Comprehensive works

For biomicroscopy, see 578.4; *slide preparation,* 578.6–578.9

.074 Natural history museums

Comprehensive works

For botanical exhibits, see 580.74; *zoological exhibits,* 590.74; *aquariums,* 574.920 74; *arrangement and preservation of specimens in museums,* 579.7–579.8

.1 Biophysiology [*formerly also* †612.014]

Vital processes and functions of all living organisms

For plant physiology, see 581.1; *animal physiology,* 591.1; *human physiology,* 612

.11 Circulation

.12 Respiration

.13 Nutrition and metabolism

Including postembryonic growth and development

For products of metabolism, see 574.192

574.14 Secretion and excretion

.16 Reproduction

For histogenesis, see 574.17; *genetics,* 575.1

574.162–574.165 Asexual reproduction

.162 Parthenogenesis

.163 Alternation of generations (Metagenesis)

.165 Vegetative generation

.166 Sexual reproduction

For alternation of generations, see 574.163

.166 2 Conjugation

.167 Hermaphroditism

.17 Histogenesis

Microscopic study of germ cells

For microscopic biology, see 574.8; *reproduction,* 574.16

.18 Response to stimuli

Including irritability [*formerly also* †576.4], tropisms, motion, locomotion

.19 Physics and chemistry of vital processes [*formerly also* †577.1]

.191 Biophysics

Comprehensive works on physics of vital processes

For physics of a specific function, see the function, e.g., circulation 574.11; *plant biophysics,* 581.191; *animal biophysics,* 591.191; *human biophysics,* 612.017

.192 Biochemistry

Including chemical constitution of living matter, products of metabolism

For metabolism, see 574.13; *plant biochemistry,* 581.192; *animal biochemistry,* 591.192; *human biochemistry,* 612.015

.193 Enzymes and antienzymes in vivo

.194 Hormones and vitamins in vivo

.196 Biosynthesis

574.2 Pathology

Including anomalies, malformations (teratology), deformations, diseased conditions of organisms

For plant pathology, see 581.2; *animal pathology,* 591.2; *human pathology,* 616.07

.3 Embryology

Formation and development of organisms

Including gametogenesis

For postembryonic development, see 574.13; *plant embryology,* 581.33; *animal embryology,* 591.33; *human embryology,* 612.64

.4 Biomorphology

Morphological comparison of plants with animals

Including descriptive anatomy [*formerly* †574.7] of organisms

For plant morphology, see 581.4; *animal morphology,* 591.4; *human anatomy,* 611

.5 Bioecology [*formerly* †575.3]

Interrelation of organisms to environment and to each other

For plant ecology, see 581.5; *animal ecology,* 591.5; *human ecology,* 301.3

.52 Adaptation to environment [*formerly* †575.4]

Including biological autecology, synecology, biogeochemistry

For biogeography, see 574.9

.53 Nutritive adaptations

Including food chains and cycles

.54 Biometeorology and bioclimatology

.55 Biological communities

Including consocies, associations, clans, colonies, mutualistic and antagonistic symbioses

.56 Reproductive adaptations

Adaptive breeding habits

.57 Protective adaptations

Including means of protection, attraction, self-preservation

.6 Economic biology

For economic botany, see 581.6; *economic zoology,* 591.6

[†.7] Descriptive anatomy

Class in 574.4

574.8 Microscopic biology

Study of structural parts of organisms with a microscope

For microbiology, see 576; *biomicroscopy,* 578.4; *microscopic botany,* 581.8; *microscopic zoology,* 591.8; *slide preparation,* 578.6

.82 Histology

Study of minute structure of tissues

For human histology, see 611.018

.87 Cytology [*formerly also* †576.3 and its subdivisions; †612.014 1–†612.014 3]

Study of cells

For germ cells, see 574.17; *human cytology,* 611.018 1

.872 Cell morphology

.873 Protoplasm [*formerly also* †*576.2]

.873 2 Nucleus

Including chromosomes, nucleolus, chromatin, linin network, nuclear membrane

.873 3 Plastids

Including chromoplasts, leucoplasts

.873 4 Cytoplasm

Including centrosomes, blepharoplasts, metaplasmic bodies

.874 Non-protoplasmic structure of cells

Including pigmentation, vacuoles, aleurone grains

.875 Cell membrane

.876 Cell physiology

.876 1 Cell nutrition and metabolism

.876 2 Cell division

.876 22 Direct cell division (Amitosis)

.876 23 Indirect cell division (Mitosis)

Including prophase, metaphase, anaphase, telophase stages of cell division

.876 4 Other cell functions

Including cell respiration, excretion

574.876 5 Cell degeneration

.876 6 Cell colonies [*formerly* †576.5]

.878 Comparative cytology

Comparison of plant cells with animal cells

.9 Natural history and biogeography

For phytogeography, see 581.9; *zoogeography,* 591.9; *anthropogeography,* 572.9

.909 Zonal and physiographic biology

For flora and fauna of Polar Regions, see 574.998

.909 2 Temperate-Zone biology

.909 3 Tropical biology

.909 4 Mountain-area biology

.909 5 Desert biology

.91 Insular biology

Divide like 940–999, e.g., flora and fauna of Madagascar 574.916 91

.92 Marine biology

Divide like 551.46, e.g., Caribbean Sea life 574.923

.920 74 Aquariums [*formerly* †*590.74]

.928 Polar marine biology

For flora and fauna of Polar Regions, see 574.998

.929 Fresh-water biology (Limnetic biology)

Divide like 940–999, e.g., flora and fauna of the Great Lakes 574.929 77

.93–.99 Natural history and biogeography by country

Divide like 930–999, e.g., plants and animals in Arizona 574.979 1

575 Organic evolution (Phylogeny)

Origin of species thru historic descent with modification

For evolution of man, see 573.3; *of plants,* 581.38; *of animals,* 591.38; *of a specific plant or animal, the taxonomic group, e.g., evolution of bony fish* 597.5; *paleontology,* 560

.016 Modern theories of evolution

.016 2 Darwinian and neo-Darwinian theories

Including natural selection, survival of the fittest [*both formerly also* †575.423]

575.016 3 Orthogenesis

Evolution along seemingly predetermined lines

[†.016 4] Weismann's theory

Class in 575.11

.016 5 Mutation theories

Theories on abrupt hereditary changes

Including theory of de Vries

For mutations, see 575.292; *artificial mutations,* 575.131

.016 6 Lamarckian and neo-Lamarckian theories

Including inheritance of acquired characteristics [*formerly also* †575.123], hereditary effects of use and disuse of organs

.1 Genetics

Study of heredity and variation

Class eugenics [*formerly* †575.1] in 613.94; variation [*formerly* *575.1] in 575.2

For plant genetics, see 581.15; *animal genetics,* 591.15

.11 Laws of heredity

Including laws of Weismann (chromosome theory) [*formerly* †575.016 4], Mendel, Galton

.12 Hereditary characteristics

Inheritance of similar and divergent characteristics

Including characteristics of genes, genotypes, phenotypes

[†.123] Inheritance of acquired characteristics

Class in 575.016 6

.13 Factors affecting heredity

For mutations, see 575.292

.131 Artificial mutations

Including inheritable effects of radiation on chromosomes and genes

For mutation theories, see 575.016 5

.132 Outbreeding

Effects of breeding unrelated members of a species

.133 Inbreeding

Effects of breeding closely related members of a species

575.134 Species interfertility

Including infertile hybrid offspring

[†.135] Xenia

Class in 581.151

[†.136] Telegony

Class in 591.15

.137 Atavism

Recurrence of characteristics of remote ancestors

[†.138] Cytological aspects

Class in 575.21

.2 Variation [*formerly* *575.1]

.21 Physiological aspects of variation

Including cytological [*formerly* †575.138] and embryological aspects

.22 Environmental aspects of variation

For effects of radiation, see 575.131

.28 Hybrids

.29 Abrupt deviations

.292 Mutations

Inheritable abrupt deviations

For mutation theories, see 575.016 5; *artificial mutations,* 575.131

.293 Sports

Noninheritable abrupt deviations

[†.3] Ecology

Class in 574.5

[†.4] Adaptation

Class in 574.52

[†.423] Natural selection and survival of the fittest

Class in 575.016 2

[†.5] Sexual selection

Class in 577.8

575.7 **Evolutionary cycles**

Including degeneration, extinction, regeneration of species

.9 **Origin and evolution of sexes**

576 Microbiology

Study of microscopic organisms

Class origin and beginnings of life [*formerly* †*576] in 577

For bacteriology, see 589.9; *mycology,* 589.2; *protozoology,* 593.1; *a specific application, the subject, e.g., medical microbiology* 616.01; *microscopic biology,* 574.8; *biomicroscopy,* 578.4

[†.1] **Abiogenesis**

Class in 577.01

[†*.2] **Protoplasm**

Class in 574.873

[†.3] **Cytology**

Class in 574.87

[†.4] **Irritability**

Class in 574.18

[†.5] **Cell colonies**

Class in 574.876 6

.6 **Rickettsiae [*formerly* *589.9] and viruses**

For pathogenic viruses and rickettsiae, see 616.019; *viral and rickettsial diseases, the subject, e.g., in man* 616.92

577 Philosophy of biology [*formerly* *574.01]

Including origin and beginnings of life [*formerly* †*576], nature of living substances, vitalism

For organic evolution, see 575

.01 Abiogenesis (Spontaneous generation) [*formerly* *576, †576.1, †581.161, †591.161]

[†.1] **Physics and chemistry of vital processes**

Class in 574.19

.2 **Comparison of living and nonliving substances**

577.3 **Comparison of vital and physical processes**

.4 **Conditions necessary for life**

.5 **Comparison of plants and animals**

For morphological comparison of plants with animals, see 574.4

.6 **Vital force**

.7 **Degeneration and death**

.8 **Sex in nature**

Including sexual selection [*formerly* †575.5]

For origin and evolution of sexes, see 575.9

578 Microscopes and microscopy

Comprehensive works

Class biological techniques [*formerly* *578] in 574.028

For a specific application of microscopy, see the subject, e.g., microscopic analysis in chemistry 544.82

.1 **Types of microscopes**

.12 Simple microscope

.13 Compound microscope

.14 Ultramicroscope

.15 Electron microscope

.4 **Biomicroscopy**

Use of microscope in biology

.46 Biological photomicrography

.6 **Slide preparation**

For slide preparation of plant tissues, see 578.8; *of animal tissues,* 578.9; *biopsies,* 616.075 83

.62 Fixation techniques

Including freezing-drying technique

578.63 Microtomes and microtomy

Including frozen section technique, section cutting

.64 Stain techniques

.65 Mounting techniques

.8 Slide preparation of plant tissues

Divide like 578.6, e.g., staining root hairs 578.84

.9 Slide preparation of animal tissues

Divide like 578.6, e.g., fixation of heart tissues 578.92

579 Collection and preservation of biological specimens

.1 Preparation and preservation of skeletons

.2 Preservation of biological specimens

Preservation in alcohol, formaldehyde and other preservatives

Including injections of preservatives [*formerly* †579.3]; embalming, mummification

For taxidermy, see 579.4; *preservation in museums,* 579.8; *preservation of skeletons,* 579.1

[†.3] Injections

Class in 579.2

.4 Taxidermy

Art of preparing, stuffing, mounting [*formerly* †579.5] skins of animals

[†.5] Mounting

Class in 579.4

579.6 Methods of collecting biological specimens

Including collecting equipment; transportation techniques

.7 Arrangement of specimens in museums

Including arrangement of habitat groups

For botanical exhibits, see 580.74; *zoological exhibits,* 590.74

.8 Preservation of specimens in museums

Including air conditioning; control of moths, other destructive animals

580 Botanical sciences

For paleobotany, see 561; *production of crops,* 633–635; *organic evolution,* 575

.74 Botanical exhibits

For arrangement of specimens in museums, see 579.7

.742 Herbariums

.744 Botanical gardens

581 Botany

For a specific aspect of an individual plant or group of plants, see the plant or group, e.g., formation of sunflower seeds 583.55; *taxonomic botany,* 582–589

SUMMARY

581.1 Plant physiology (Phytophysiology)
.2 Plant pathology (Phytopathology)
.3 Plant maturation
.4 Plant morphology
.5 Plant ecology
.6 Economic botany
.8 Microscopic botany
.9 Phytogeography

581.1 **Plant physiology (Phytophysiology)**

SUMMARY

581.11 Circulation in plants
.12 Respiration in plants
.129 Transpiration in plants
.13 Nutrition and metabolism in plants
.14 Secretion and excretion in plants
.15 Plant genetics
.16 Plant propagation
.17 Plant histogenesis
.179 Regenerative functions in plants
.18 Response of plants to stimuli
.19 Physics and chemistry of vital processes in plants

.11 Circulation in plants

Absorption and translocation of water in the xylem and solutes in the phloem

Including cytoplasmic and protoplasmic movements [*formerly* †581.186], capillarity, osmosis

.12 Respiration in plants

Exchange and translocation of gases in plants

Including catabolic processes of metabolism

.121 Aerobic respiration

.124 Intercellular respiration

.128 Anaerobic respiration

.129 Transpiration in plants

.13 Nutrition and metabolism in plants

For absorption and translocation of solutes in plants, see 581.11; *catabolic processes of metabolism,* 581.12; *deficiency diseases in plants,* 581.21

.132 Digestion in plants

.133 Food manufacture and storage in plants

Including assimilation and anabolic processes

[†.133 2] Assimilation by autotrophic plants

Class in 581.133 42

[†.133 3] Assimilation by heterotrophic plants

Class in 581.133 43

581.133 4 Methods of food manufacture in plants

.133 42 Photosynthesis

Manufacture of simple sugars thru carbon assimilation [*formerly* †581.133 52] by autotrophic plants [*formerly* †581.133 2] in the presence of light

Including starch synthesis

.133 43 Chemosynthesis

Manufacture of organic foods by heterotrophic plants [*formerly* †581.133 3] with energy derived from chemical reactions

For nitrifying bacteria, see 589.95

[†.133 44] Nitrification

Class in 589.95

.133 45 Protein synthesis

Manufacture of amino acids, proteins, and other nitrogenous substances by plants from nitrogen [*formerly* †581.133 53]

.133 46 Lipid synthesis

Manufacture of fats, oils, and waxes by plants from sugars

.133 5 Mineral metabolism in plants

[†.133 52] Carbon

Class in 581.133 42

[†.133 53] Nitrogen

Class in 581.133 45

.133 54 Macronutrient elements

Including metabolism of sulfur, phosphorus, iron, calcium, potassium, magnesium, sodium salts

.133 56 Micronutrient elements (Trace elements)

Including metabolism of manganese, copper, zinc, boron, molybdenum, aluminum, silicon, selenium compounds

.133 8 Food storage in plants

581.134–581.139 Results of nutrition

581.134 Growth processes in plants

For growth movements, see 581.183

.134 1 Growth factors

.134 15 Environmental factors

Including temperature, moisture, electricity, mechanical forces

.134 152 Meteorological factors

.134 153 Light

.134 2 Primary growth

Growth initiated at apical meristems

Including cell enlargement and division

.134 3 Secondary growth

Growth initiated at lateral meristems

Including lateral growth of stems, roots, leaves

.135 Development of plants

Postembryonic development of plants

For embryonic development of plants, see 581.33

.135 3 Periods of plant development

.135 35 Abscission

Shedding of leaves and other organs

.139 Longevity in plants

.14 Secretion and excretion in plants

For transpiration in plants, see 581.129; *plant biochemistry,* 581.192

.15 Plant genetics

Including heredity and variation in plants

.151 Physiological aspects of variation in plants

Including xenia [*formerly* †575.135], embryological and cytological aspects

.152 Environmental aspects of variation in plants

Including effects of radiation

For artificial mutations in plants, see 581.159 2

.158 Plant hybrids

581.159 Abrupt deviations in plants

.159 2 Plant mutations

Inheritable abrupt deviations

Including artificial mutations

.159 3 Plant sports

Noninheritable abrupt deviations

.16 Plant propagation

Divide like 574.16, e.g., vegetative generation in plants 581.165

[†.161] Abiogenesis

Class in 577.01

.17 Plant histogenesis

Microscopic study of plant germ cells

For microscopic botany, see 581.8; *plant propagation,* 581.16; *plant gametogenesis,* 581.32

.179 Regenerative functions in plants

.18 Response of plants to stimuli

Including plant behavior [*formerly also* †581.51]

For adaptation of plants to environment, see 581.52

.182 Hydration movements

Movements in nonliving plant tissues or organs resulting from hydration or dehydration of cell walls, e.g., splitting of pods, opening of capsules

.183 Growth movements

For mutations, see 581.185

.183 2 Tropisms

Including geotropism [*formerly* †612.014 477], thigmotropism [*formerly* †612.014 478], hydrotropism, chemotropism, aerotropism, heliotropism, thermotropism, stereotropism, traumatropism

.183 3 Nastic movements

Movements showing no definite directional relation to stimuli

Including epinastic [*formerly* †581.185 4], hyponastic [*formerly* †581.185 5], nyctinastic, photonastic, thermonastic movements

.184 Turgor movements

Movements caused by reversible changes in cell volume, e.g., wilting, opening and closing of stomates

581.185 Nutation and circumnutation

Movements caused by unequal rates of growth, e.g., twining

[†.185 4–†.185 5] Epinastic and hyponastic movements

Class in 581.183 3

[†.186] Cytoplasmic and protoplasmic movements

Class in 581.11

.19 Physics and chemistry of vital processes in plants

Divide like 574.19, e.g., biosynthesis in plants 581.196

For manufacture of food in plants, see 581.133

.2 Plant pathology (Phytopathology)

Plant diseases and their control

For diseases of agricultural crops, see 632; *of specific crops,* 633–635

.21 Deficiency diseases of plants

.22 Plant teratology

Including anomalies, deformations, atrophies, hypertrophies

.23 Parasitic diseases of plants

For galls, see 581.27

.232 Plant diseases due to parasitic plants

.232 2 Bacterial diseases of plants

[†.232 4] Smuts and bunts

Class in 581.232 6

[†.232 5] Rusts

Class in 581.232 6

.232 6 Fungus diseases of plants

Including plant diseases caused by smuts, bunts, rusts [*all formerly* †581.232 4–†581.232 5]

.233 Plant diseases due to parasitic animals

Including plant diseases caused by protozoans, worms, insects, other parasitic animals

.234 Viral and rickettsial diseases of plants

.24 Plant injuries

Including injuries due to frost, excessive heat, drought, other meteorological agents

581.27 Galls

.28 Methods of controlling plant disease

.3 Plant maturation

.32 Plant gametogenesis

Formation and maturation of sex cells in plants

For plant histogenesis, see 581.17

.33 Plant embryology

Embryonic development of plants

For postembryonic development of plants, see 581.135; *seeds,* 581.467

.332 Anatomy of embryonic parts of plants

Including anatomy of embryonic tissues and stems, cotyledons, plumules, radicles, endosperms, suspensors

.333 Germination processes

.334 Seedling stages

Including development of primary roots, stems, leaves

.36 Production and differentiation of sexes in plants

For gametogenesis in plants, see 581.32

.38 Evolution of plants

.4 Plant morphology

Comparative anatomy of plants

Including descriptive anatomy [*formerly* †581.7]

For plant histology, see 581.82; *plant cytology,* 581.87; *anatomy of embryonic parts of plants,* 581.332; *ecological anatomy of plants,* 581.522 5

.41 Circulatory organs

Including structure of fibrovascular bundles, xylem, phloem, cambium layer, veins

.42 Respiratory organs

Including structure of stomates, lenticels, guard cells, intercellular spaces

.43 Digestive organs

For leaves, see 581.497

.44 Secretory and excretory organs

For stomates and lenticels, see 581.42

581.46 Reproductory organs

.462 Reproductory organs of nonflowering plants

Structure of reproductory organs of bryophytes and pteridophytes

---

581.463–581.467 Reproductory organs of flowering plants

.463 Flowers

Including structure of calyx, corolla, corona, stamens, pistils, ovary, style, stigma, modified flower parts

.464 Fruit

.467 Seeds

For plant embryology, see 581.33

.47 Motor and integumentary organs

Including structure of epidermis, surface protuberances, e.g., thorns, tentacles

.49 Topographic anatomy

For flowers, see 581.463

.495 Stems

.497 Leaves and fronds

.498 Roots

.5 Plant ecology

Vegetative interrelation

For phytogeography, see 581.9; *plant behavior,* 581.18; *forest ecology,* 634.94

.508 Plant lore

For plants in folklore, see 398

[†.51] Plant behavior

Class in 581.18

581.52 Adaptation of plants to environment

Comprehensive works

For a specific adaptive feature, see the subject, e.g., nutritive adaptations 581.53

.522 Autecology of plants

.522 2 Environmental effects on plants

Including effects of soil, light, gases, liquids on plants

For effects of climate on plants, see 581.54; *formational ecology,* 581.526

.522 3 Effects of plants on environment

Including modification of soil and air, prevention of erosion

For soil fertility, see 631.45

.522 5 Ecological anatomy of plants

Adaptation of structure of plants to environment

.522 6 Dissemination of plants

Including dissemination by man, animals, physical factors, e.g., wind

.524 Synecology of plants

Associational ecology, mutual relationship of plants

Including invasion, succession, alternation of plants

.524 4 Zonation of plants

Including horizontal and vertical zonation

For adaptation of plants to fresh and salt water, see 581.526 3; *to prairie regions,* 581.526 4; *to arid and semiarid regions,* 581.526 5

.524 44 Climatic zonation of plants

.526 Formational ecology (Physiographic ecology)

Influence of physical factors of environment on plant distribution and species

For geographic distribution of plants, see 581.9; *of specific family or subfamily,* 582–589

.526 3 Hydric formations

Adaptation of hydrophytes in fresh and salt water, swamps, heaths, bogs, moors

For adaptation of plants in salt marshes, see 581.526 5; *marine botany,* 581.92

581.526 4 Mesic formations

Adaptation of mesophytes in regions of medium conditions of moisture, e.g., prairie regions

Including epiphytes, vines, lianas

[†.526 42] Forest formations

Class in 634.94

.526 5 Xeric formations

Adaptation of halophytes and xerophytes in salt marshes, alkaline soils, arid and semiarid regions, dunes, rocks

[†.527] Floral regions

Class in 581.9

.53 Nutritive adaptations of plants

.533 Nutritive specialization of plants

.533 3 Carnivorous and insectivorous plants

.533 4 Saprophytic plants

.54 Adaptation of plants to climatic conditions

Including seasonal adaptations

.55 Botanical communities

Including socies, consocies, clans, colonies, mutualistic and antagonistic symbioses

.56 Reproductive adaptations of plants

For dissemination of plants, see 581.522 6

.57 Protective adaptations of plants

Including means of protection, attraction, self-preservation

For formational ecology, see 581.526

.6 Economic botany

Plants beneficial and deleterious to man's needs

For cultivation of specific plants, see 633–635

.61 Beneficial plants

.63 Edible and medicinal plants

.632 Edible plants

581.634 Medical botany

For drugs of vegetable origin, see 615.3; *allergenic plants,* 581.67

.64 Industrial botany

Comprehensive works

For cultivation of a specific industrial plant, see the subject, e.g., fiber crops 633.5

.65 Deleterious plants

Class weeds [*formerly* †581.65] in 632.58

.67 Allergenic plants

Including poison ivy

.69 Poisonous plants

For poisons of vegetable origin, see 615.93

[†.7] Descriptive anatomy of plants

Class in 581.4

.8 Microscopic botany

Divide like 574.8, e.g., plant cytology 581.87

For slide preparation of plant tissues, see 578.8

.9 Phytogeography

Geographic distribution of plants

Including floral regions [*formerly* †581.527]

.909 Zonal and physiographic botany

Divide like 574.909, e.g., tropical plants 581.909 3

.91 Insular botany

Divide like 930–999, e.g., plants of Madagascar 581.916 91

.92 Marine botany

Divide like 551.46, e.g., plants of Caribbean Sea 581.923

.929 Fresh-water botany

Divide like 930–999, e.g., plants of Lake Pontchartrain 581.929 763 34

.93–.99 Plants in specific countries

Divide like 930–999, e.g., plants in Arizona 581.979 1

Class geographic distribution of trees [*formerly* *581.93–*581.99] in 582.160 9; of wild-flowering plants [*formerly* †*581.93–†*581.99] in 582.130 9; if preferred, class geographic distribution of wild-flowering plants here

582–589 Taxonomic botany

Concepts in the classification of botany are constantly changing, with a result that coordination and subordination of groups, which in earlier editions were shown more or less accurately by length of number, are completely upset. In this schedule coordination and subordination are shown by indention; length of number is of little significance

For outline of alternative scheme for taxonomic botany, see 582.2–582.9; *classification of plants,* 580.12; *paleobotany,* 561; *origin of species,* 575

582 Spermatophyta (Seed-bearing plants)

Comprehensive works

For Dicotyledones, see 583; *Monocotyledones,* 584; *Gymnospermae,* 585

.1 Nontaxonomic groups of seed-bearing plants

.12 Herbaceous plants

Seed plants without persistent woody tissue

For a specific class, order, or family of herbaceous plants, see 583–585; *growing condimental and sweet herbs,* 635.7; *herbaceous plants in landscape design,* 716

.13 Flowering plants

Comprehensive works

Including garden and wild flowers

For a specific class, order, or family of flowering plants, see 583–584; *flowering woody plants,* 582.15; *flower gardening,* 635.9

.130 9 Geographic distribution of wild-flowering plants [*formerly* †*581.93–†*581.99]

Divide like 930–999, e.g., wild flowers of Canada 582.130 971

If preferred, class in 581.9

.14 Other herbaceous plants

Including succulent, carpet, mat, cushion, bush herbals

582.15 Woody plants [*formerly* *582.16]

Including flowering woody plants

For comprehensive works on flowering plants, see 582.13; *a specific class, order, or family of woody plants,* 583–585

.16 Trees

Class woody plants [*formerly* *582.16] in 582.15

For forestry, see 634.9; *trees in landscape design,* 715.2

.160 9 Geographic distribution of trees [*formerly* *581.93–*581.99]

Divide like 930–999, e.g., trees of the United States 582.160 973

.17 Shrubs

For shrubs in landscape design, see 715.3

.18 Woody vines

For woody vines in landscape design, see 715.4

582.2–582.9 Alternative scheme for taxonomic botany

An alternative arrangement based on the Universal Decimal Classification, which follows other authorities, was printed in edition 14, p. 1893–1906. In the skeleton outline which follows, the corresponding numbers assigned in the present (edition 16) schedule are shown in the right-hand column

.21	**Cryptogamia**	**586**
.22	Thallophyta	589
.32	Bryophyta	588
.35	Pteridophyta	587
.4	**Spermatophyta**	**582**
.42	Gymnospermae	585
.5	Angiospermae	583–584
.52–.59	Monocotyledones	584
.61–.99	Dicotyledones	583

583–584 Angiospermae (Flowering plants)

Families listed under orders are based on Hutchinson, John. *The Families of Flowering Plants*. 1926–34

For comprehensive works on flowering plants, see 582.13

583 Dicotyledones (Dicotyledons)

If preferred, arrange Dicotyledones alphabetically by families, using A1 for comprehensive works, e.g., water lilies (Nymphaeaceae) 583 N9

.1 Archichlamydeae

Including comprehensive works on Polypetalae

For Apetalae, see 583.9

.11 Ranales

Including Ranunculaceae (crowfoot family), Cabombaceae, Ceratophyllaceae (hornwort family), Nymphaeaceae (water-lily family)

Class Lauraceae, Myristicaceae in 583.93 [*both formerly* *583.11]

.112 Dilleniales

Including Crossosomataceae [*formerly* †583.36], Dilleniaceae

[†.113] Calycanthaceae

Class in 583.3

.114 Magnoliales

Including Trochodendraceae, Cercidiphyllaceae [*both formerly* †583.119], Magnoliaceae (magnolia family), Winteraceae, Schizandraceae, Himantandraceae, Lactoridaceae

[†.114 6–†.114 8] Myristicaceae, Monimiaceae, Gomortegaceae

Class in 583.93

.115 Anonales

Including Anonaceae (custard-apple family), Eupomatiaceae

[†.116] Menispermaceae

Class in 583.117

583.117 Berberidales

Including Menispermaceae [*formerly* †583.116], Berberidaceae (barberry family), Circaeasteraceae, Lardizabalaceae, Sargentadoxaceae

[†.119] Trochodendraceae and Cercidiphyllaceae

Class in 583.114

.12 Rhoeadales

Including Papaveraceae (poppy family), Fumariaceae

Class Capparidaceae [*formerly* *583.12] in 583.13

.121 Sarraceniales

Including Droseraceae [*formerly* †583.393], Sarraceniaceae (pitcher-plant family)

[†.122 2] Moringaceae

Class in 583.13

.123 Cruciales

Including Cruciferae (mustard family)

.13 Capparidales

Including Capparidaceae [*formerly* *583.12], Moringaceae [*formerly* †583.122 2], Tovariaceae

Class Passiflorales in 583.45, Loasales in 583.453 [*both formerly* *583.13]

[†.133] Resedaceae

Class in 583.135

[†.134] Cistaceae

Class in 583.138

.135 Violales

Including Resedaceae (mignonette family) [*formerly* †583.133], Violaceae (violet family)

[†.136–†.137] Cochlospermaceae and Canellaceae

Class in 583.138

583.138 Bixales

Including Cochlospermaceae [*formerly* †583.136], Canellaceae (wild cinnamon family) [*formerly* †583.137], Samydaceae [*formerly* †583.451], Cistaceae [*formerly* †583.134], Flacourtiaceae [*formerly* †583.139], Bixaceae (arnotto family)

[†.139] Flacourtiaceae

Class in 583.138

[†.139 2] Stachyuraceae

Class in 583.394

.14 Polygalales

Including Trigoniaceae [*formerly* †583.215], Polygalaceae, Vochysiaceae (San Juan family)

.141 Pittosporales

Including Byblidaceae [*formerly* †583.392], Tremandraceae [*formerly* †583.142], Pittosporaceae (hedge laurel family)

[†.142] Tremandraceae

Class in 583.141

.15 Caryophyllales

Including Elatinaceae (waterwort family) [*formerly* †583.161], Molluginaceae [*formerly* †583.476], Ficoidaceae [*formerly* †583.475], Portulacaceae (purslane family), Caryophyllaceae (pink family)

[†.151] Frankeniaceae

Class in 583.158

[†.156 2] Basellaceae

Class in 583.91

.158 Tamaricales

Including Frankeniaceae [*formerly* †583.151], Fouquieraceae [*formerly* †583.762], Tamaricaceae (tamarisk family)

.16 Theales

Including Ochnaceae (red ironwood family) [*formerly* †583.245], Ancistrocladaceae [*formerly* †583.454], Dipterocarpaceae, Chlaenaceae, Theaceae (tea, camellia family), Medusagynaceae, Marcgraviaceae, Caryocaraceae, Actinidiaceae, Saurauiaceae

[†.161] Elatinaceae

Class in 583.15

[†583.162] Hypericaceae

Class in 583.163

.163 Guttiferales

Including Hypericaceae (St.-John's-wort family) [*formerly* †583.162], Eucryphiaceae [*formerly* †583.164], Quiinaceae [*formerly* †583.165], Guttiferae (balsam fig family)

[†.164–†.165] Eucryphiaceae and Quiinaceae

Class in 583.163

.17 Malvales

Including Malvaceae (mallow, cotton family)

[†.173–†.18] Bombacaceae and Sterculiaceae

Class in 583.19

.19 Tiliales

Including Sterculiaceae (coco family) [*formerly* †583.18], Bombacaceae (silk-cotton tree family) [*formerly* †583.173], Scytopetalaceae, Tiliaceae (linden family), Gonystylaceae

.21 Geraniales

Including Limnanthaceae (false-mermaid family) [*formerly* †583.294], Linaceae (flax family); Zygophyllaceae (lignum vitae family), Geraniaceae (geranium family), Oxalidaceae (wood-sorrel family), Tropaeolaceae (nasturtium family), Balsaminaceae (jewelweed family) [*all formerly* †583.221–†583.226]

[†.212–†.213] Erythroxylaceae and Humiriaceae

Class in 583.214

.214 Malpighiales

Including Humiriaceae [*formerly* †583.213], Erythroxylaceae [*formerly* †583.212], Malpighiaceae

[†.215] Trigoniaceae

Class in 583.14

[†.221–†.226] Zygophyllaceae, Geraniaceae, Oxalidaceae, Tropaeolaceae, Balsaminaceae

Class in 583.21

[†.23] Rutales

Class in 583.24

583.24 Rutales [*formerly* †583.23]

Including Rutaceae (rue family), Simarubaceae (ailanthus family), Burseraceae (torchwood family)

[†.242] Cneoraceae

Class in 583.27

[†.245] Ochnaceae

Class in 583.16

.25 Meliales

Including Meliaceae (mahogany family)

[†.252] Akaniaceae

Class in 583.28

[†.253] Callitrichiaceae

Class in 583.44

[†.255] Chailletiaceae

Class in 583.3

.26 Olacales

Including Opiliaceae [*formerly* †583.945], Olacaceae

.27 Celastrales

Including Empetraceae (crowberry family) [*formerly* †583.984], Cneoraceae [*formerly* †583.242], Pandaceae [*formerly* †583.985], Icacinaceae [*formerly* †583.289], Salvadoraceae [*formerly* †583.716], Stackhousiaceae, Celastraceae (staff-tree family), Corynocarpaceae, Cyrillaceae, Aquifoliaceae (holly family), Hippocrateaceae

[†.277] Staphyleaceae

Class in 583.28

.279 Rhamnales

Including Elaeagnaceae [*formerly* †583.935], Heteropyxidaceae [*formerly* †583.442], Ampelidaceae (grape family), Rhamnaceae (buckthorn family)

583.28 Sapindales

Including Akaniaceae [*formerly* †583.252], Sabiaceae [*formerly* †583.291], Staphyleaceae [*formerly* †583.277], Anacardiaceae (cashew, sumac family) [*formerly* †583.292], Connaraceae [*formerly* †583.311], Didiereaceae, Melianthaceae (honey plant family), Aceraceae (maple family), Sapindaceae (soapberry family)

[†.287 2] Greyianceae

Class in 583.397

[†.289] Icacinaceae

Class in 583.27

.29 Coriariales

Including Coriariaceae

[†.291–†.292] Sabiaceae and Anacardiaceae

Class in 583.28

[†.293] Buxaceae

Class in 583.394

[†.294] Limnanthaceae

Class in 583.21

.3 Rosales

Including Chailletiaceae [*formerly* †583.255], Calycanthaceae [*formerly* †583.113], Rosaceae (rose family)

[†.311] Connaraceae

Class in 583.28

.32 Leguminosae

Including Caesalpiniaceae (senna family), Mimosaceae (mimosa family), Papilionaceae (pea family)

[†.36] Crossosomataceae

Class in 583.112

583.38 Saxifragales

Including Crassulaceae [*formerly* †583.39], Cephalotaceae (Australian pitcher-plant family) [*formerly* †583.391], Saxifragaceae (saxifrage family)

[†.381] Escalloniaceae, Grossulariaceae, Hydrangeaceae

Class in 583.397

[†.39–†.391] Crassulaceae and Cephalotaceae

Class in 583.38

[†.392] Byblidaceae

Class in 583.141

[†.393] Droseraceae

Class in 583.121

.394 Hamamelidales

Including Bruniaceae [*formerly* †583.396], Stachyuraceae [*formerly* †583.139 2], Buxaceae [*formerly* †583.293], Platanaceae [*formerly* †583.971], Hamamelidaceae (witch-hazel family), Eucommiaceae, Myrothamnaceae

[†.395] Brunelliaceae

Class in 583.397

[†.396] Bruniaceae

Class in 583.394

.397 Cunoniales

Including Escalloniaceae, Grossulariaceae, Hydrangeaceae [*all formerly* †583.381]; Brunelliaceae [*formerly* †583.395], Greyiaceae [*formerly* †583.287 2], Cunoniaceae

.4 Myrtales

Including Myrtaceae (myrtle family), Lecythidaceae (Brazil-nut family), Melastomaceae (meadow-beauty family), Combretaceae (myrobalan family), Rhizophoraceae (mangrove family)

[†.412–†.413] Punicaceae and Hydrocaryaceae

Class in 583.44

[†.415–†.416] Nyssaceae and Alangiaceae

Class in 583.48

[†.417] Halorrhagaceae

Class in 583.44

583.44 Lythrales

Including Punicaceae (pomegranate family) [*formerly* †583.412], Oliniaceae [*formerly* †583.937], Hydrocaryaceae [*formerly* †583.413], Halorrhagaceae [*formerly* †583.417], Callitrichiaceae [*formerly* †583.253], Onagraceae, Lythraceae (loosestrife family), Crypteroniaceae, Sonneratiaceae

[†.442] Heteropyxidaceae

Class in 583.279

[†.447] Cynomorium

Class in 583.94

.45 Passiflores [*formerly* *583.13]

Including Malesherbiaceae, Passifloraceae (passionflower family), Achariaceae

[†.451] Samydaceae

Class in 583.138

.453 Loasales [*formerly* *583.13]

Including Turneraceae [*formerly* †583.455], Loasaceae

[†.454] Ancistrocladaceae

Class in 583.16

[†.455] Turneraceae

Class in 583.453

.46 Cucurbitales

Including Cucurbitaceae (gourd family) [*formerly* *583.57], Begoniaceae (begonia family), Datiscaceae (false hemp family), Caricaceae (papaya family)

.47 Cactales

Including Cactaceae (cactus family)

[†.475–†.476] Ficoidaceae and Molluginaceae

Class in 583.15

.48 Umbelliflorae

Including Cornaceae (dogwood family) [*formerly* †583.497], Alangiaceae [*formerly* †583.416], Nyssaceae (tupelo family) [*formerly* †583.415], Araliaceae (ginseng family) [*formerly* †583.491], Umbelliferae (carrot family)

[†.491–†.497] Araliaceae and Cornaceae

Class in 583.48

583.5 Metachlamydeae (Sympetalae)

[†*.51] Rubiales

Class in 583.52

[†.511] Caprifoliaceae

Class in 583.52

[†.513] Adoxaceae

Class in 583.53

.52 Rubiales [*formerly* †*583.51]

Including Caprifoliaceae (honeysuckle family) [*formerly* †583.511, *583.51], Rubiaceae (madder family) [*formerly* *583.51]

.53 Asterales

Including Adoxaceae [*formerly* †583.513], Dipsacaceae (teasel family) [*formerly* †583.541], Calyceraceae [*formerly* †583.546], Valerianaceae (valerian family)

[†.541] Dipsacaceae

Class in 583.53

[†.546] Calyceraceae

Class in 583.53

.55 Compositae (Composites)

Including chicory, lettuce, thistles, calendulas, groundsels, camomiles, everlasting flowers, asters, sneezeweed, ironweed, ragweed, sunflowers

.57 Campanales

Including Campanulaceae (bluebell, bellflower family) [*formerly* †583.59], Lobeliaceae (lobelia family) [*formerly* †583.591], Goodeniaceae [*formerly* †583.58], Stylidiaceae

Class Cucurbitaceae [*formerly* *583.57] in 583.46

[†.58] Goodeniaceae

Class in 583.57

[†.59–†.591] Campanulaceae and Lobeliaceae

Class in 583.57

583.6 Ericales

Including Clethraceae (white-alder family), Ericaceae (heath family), Vacciniaceae (huckleberry, wintergreen family), Epacridaceae, Monotropaceae (Indian-pipe family), Diapensiaceae (flowering-moss family), Lennoaceae

.67 Primulales

Including Primulaceae (primrose family), Plumbaginaceae (plumbago family)

.677 Myrsinales

Including Theophrastaceae [*formerly* †583.678], Myrsinaceae (marlberry family)

[†.678] Theophrastaceae

Class in 583.677

.68 Ebenales

Including Ebenaceae (ebony family), Sapotaceae (sapodilla family)

.686 Styracales

Including Styracaceae (storax family), Symplocaceae (sweetleaf family), Diclidantheraceae, Lissocarpaceae

.7 Gentianales

Including Gentianaceae (gentian, buck-bean family)

[†.71] Oleaceae

Class in 583.74

[†.716] Salvadoraceae

Class in 583.27

.72 Apocynales

Former heading: Gentianineae

Including Asclepiadaceae (milkweed family) [*formerly* †583.73], Apocynaceae (dogbane family)

[†.73] Asclepiadaceae

Class in 583.72

.74 Loganiales

Including Oleaceae (olive family) [*formerly* †583.71], Loganiaceae (Desfontaineaceae)

583.76 Polemoniales

Former heading: Tubiflorae

Including Polemoniaceae (phlox family), Hydrophyllaceae (waterleaf family)

[†.762] Fouquieraceae

Class in 583.158

.77 Boraginales

Including Boraginaceae (borage, forget-me-not family)

[†.78] Convolvulaceae

Class in 583.79

.79 Solanales

Including Convolvulaceae (morning-glory family) [*formerly* †583.78], Solanaceae (nightshade family)

.8 Personales

Including Scrophulariaceae (snapdragon family), Orobanchaceae, Lentibulariaceae (bladderwort family), Columelliaceae, Gesneriaceae (gloxinia, African violet, flame violet), Bignoniaceae (catalpa family), Pedaliaceae (pedalium, unicorn-plant family), Acanthaceae (acanthus family)

[†.823] Globulariaceae

Class in 583.87

.87 Lamiales

Including Globulariaceae (globe daisy family) [*formerly* †583.823], Myoporaceae, Selaginaceae, Phrymaceae (lopseed family)

.88 Verbenaceae (Vervain family)

.89 Labiatae (Mint family)

.899 Plantaginales

Including Plantaginaceae (plantain family)

583.9 Monochlamydeae (Apetalae)

.91 Chenopodiales

Former heading: Centrospermae

Including Basellaceae [*formerly* †583.156 2], Phytolaccaceae (pokeweed family), Cynocrambaceae (dog cabbage family), Chenopodiaceae (goosefoot family), Batidaceae, Amarantaceae (amaranth family)

[†.912] Illecebraceae

Class in 583.917

[†.915 3] Nyctaginaceae

Class in 583.933

.917 Polygonales

Including Illecebraceae [*formerly* †583.912], Polygonaceae (buckwheat family)

.92 Podostemonales

Including Podostemonaceae (riverweed family), Hydrostachyaceae

.922 Aristolochiales

Including Aristolochiaceae [*formerly* †583.924], Cytinaceae [*formerly* †583.923], Hydnoraceae, Nepenthaceae (Indian pitcher-plant family)

[†.923–†.924] Cytinaceae and Aristolochiaceae

Class in 583.922

.925 Piperales

Including Lacistemaceae [*formerly* †583.983], Piperaceae (pepper family), Saururaceae (lizard's-tail family), Chloranthaceae

.93 Laurales

Former heading: Daphnales

Including Monimiaceae [*formerly* †583.114 7], Lauraceae (laurel family) [*formerly* *583.11], Gomortegaceae [*formerly* †583.114 8], Myristicaceae [*formerly* †583.114 6, *583.11], Hernandiaceae

.932 Proteales

Including Proteaceae (honeyflower)

583.933 Thymelaeales

Including Geissolomataceae [*formerly* †583.936], Penaeaceae [*formerly* †583.934], Nyctaginaceae (four-o'clock family) [*formerly* †583.915 3], Thymelaeaceae

[†.934] Penaeaceae

Class in 583.933

[†.935] Elaeagnaceae

Class in 583.279

[†.936] Geissolomataceae

Class in 583.933

[†.937] Oliniaceae

Class in 583.44

.94 Santalales

Including Balanophoraceae (Cynomorium [*formerly* †583.447]), Octoknemataceae, Loranthaceae (mistletoe family), Santalaceae (sandalwood family), Grubbiaceae, Myzodendraceae

[†.945] Opiliaceae

Class in 583.26

.95 Euphorbiales

Including Euphorbiaceae (spurge family)

.96 Balanopsidales

Including Balanopsidaceae

.962 Urticales

Including Ulmaceae (elm family), Barbeyaceae, Moraceae (mulberry family), Scyphostegiaceae, Urticaceae (nettle family), Cannabinaceae

.97 Fagales

Including Betulaceae (birch family), Corylaceae, Fagaceae (beech, oak family)

[†.971] Platanaceae

Class in 583.394

.972 Leitneriales

Including Leitneriaceae (corkwood family)

.973 Juglandales

Including Juglandaceae (walnut family), Julianiaceae

583.974 Myricales

Including Myricaceae (bayberry family)

.975 Casuarinales

Including Casuarinaceae (beefwood family)

.98 Salicales

Including Salicaceae (willow family)

.982 Garryales

Including Garryaceae (feverbush)

[†.983] Lacistemaceae

Class in 583.925

[†.984–†.985] Empetraceae and Pandaceae

Class in 583.27

584 Monocotyledones (Monocotyledons)

If preferred, arrange Monocotyledones alphabetically by families, using A1 for comprehensive works, e.g., orchids (Orchidaceae) 584 O7

[†.11] Hydrocharitaceae

Class in 584.73

[†.12] Orchidales

Class in 584.15

.13 Burmanniales

Including Burmanniaceae, Thismiaceae, Corsiaceae

.15 Orchidales [*formerly also* †584.12]

Including Orchidaceae (orchid family)

.2 Haemodorales

Former heading: Epigynae

Including Philydraceae [*formerly* †584.35], Haemodoraceae (bloodwort family), Hypoxidaceae, Velloziaceae (tree lily family), Apostasiaceae, Taccaceae

.21 Zingiberales

Former heading: Scitaminales

Including Musaceae (banana family), Strelitziaceae, Lowiaceae, Zingiberaceae (ginger family), Cannaceae (canna family), Marantaceae (arrowroot family)

584.22 Bromeliales

Including Bromeliaceae (pineapple family) [*formerly* *584.3]

[†*.23] Liliales

Class in 584.32; Juncaceae in 584.45

.24 Iridales

Including Iridaceae (iris family)

.25 Amaryllidales

Including Amaryllidaceae (amaryllis family)

.27 Dioscoreales

Including Roxburghiaceae [*formerly* †584.31], Dioscoreaceae (yam family), Stenomeridaceae, Trichopodaceae

.3 Xyridales

Including Xyridaceae (yellow-eyed grass family), Rapateaceae

Class Bromeliaceae [*formerly* *584.3] in 584.22

[†.31] Roxburghiaceae

Class in 584.27

.32 Liliales [*formerly also* †*584.23]

Including Pontederiaceae, Cyanastraceae [*both formerly* †584.33–†584.34]; Smilacaceae (cat briers), Ruscaceae, Liliaceae (lily family), Tecophilaeaceae, Trilliaceae (trillium family)

[†.33–†.34] Pontederiaceae and Cyanastraceae

Class in 584.32

[†.35] Philydraceae

Class in 584.2

.37 Mayacaceae (Mayaca family)

.38 Commelinales

Comprehensive works

Including Flagellariaceae [*formerly* †584.41], Commelinaceae (spiderwort family)

For Mayacaceae, see 584.37

[†.391] Thurniaceae

Class in 584.45

[†.41] Flagellariaceae

Class in 584.38

584.42 Alstroemeriales

Including Alstroemeriaceae, Petermanniaceae, Philesiaceae

.43 Agavales

Including Xanthorrhoeaceae, Agavaceae

.45 Juncales

Including Juncaceae (rush family) [*formerly* *584.23], Thurniaceae [*formerly* †584.391], Centrolepidaceae [*formerly* †584.82], Restionaceae [*formerly* †584.83]

.5 Palmales

Including Palmae (palm family)

.61 Pandanales

Including Pandanaceae (hala family)

.612 Sparganiaceae (Bur-reed family)

.613 Typhales

Comprehensive works

Including Typhaceae (cattail family)

For Sparganiaceae, see 584.612

.62 Cyclanthales

Including Cyclanthaceae

.64 Arales

Including Araceae (arum family) [*formerly* †584.65], Lemnaceae (duckweed family) [*formerly* †584.68]

[†.65–†.68] Araceae (Arum family) and Lemnaceae (Duckweed family)

Class in 584.64

.71 Triuridales

Including Triuridaceae

.72 Najadales

Including Najadaceae (najas family) [*formerly* †584.741], Zannichelliaceae

.721 Alismatales

Including Scheuchzeriaceae [*formerly* †584.744], Alismataceae (water-plantain family), Petrosaviaceae

.73 Butomales

Including Hydrocharitaceae (frogbit family) [*formerly* †584.11], Butomaceae (water poppy family)

584.74 Potamogetonales

Including Potamogetonaceae (pondweed family), Ruppiaceae

[†.741] Najadaceae (Najas family)

Class in 584.72

.743 Aponogetonales

Including Aponogetonaceae (lattice-plant family), Zosteraceae

.744 Juncaginales

Including Juncaginaceae (arrow-grass family), Lilaeaceae, Posidoniaceae

Class Scheuchzeriaceae [*formerly* †584.744] in 584.721

[†*.8] Graminales

Class in 584.9

.81 Eriocaulales

Including Eriocaulaceae (pipewort family)

[†.82–†.83] Centrolepidaceae and Restionaceae

Class in 584.45

.84 Cyperales

Including Cyperaceae (sedge family)

.9 Graminales [*formerly also* †*584.8]

Including Gramineae (grass family)

.92 Panicoideae

Including Paniceae (millet grasses), Andropogoneae (sugar cane, Kaffir corn grasses), Maydeae (Indian corn grasses)

[†.923] Zoysieae

Class in 584.93

[†.927] Oryzeae

Class in 584.93

.93 Pooideae

Including Zoysieae [*formerly* †584.923], Oryzeae (rice grasses) [*formerly* †584.927], Bambuseae (bamboo family), Festuceae (fescue grasses), Phalarideae (canary grasses), Agrosteae (fodder grasses), Aveneae (oat grasses), Hordeeae (wheat, barley, rye grasses), Chlorideae (gamma grasses)

585 Gymnospermae (Naked-seed plants)

If preferred, arrange Gymnospermae alphabetically by families, using A1 for comprehensive works, e.g., spruce (Pinaceae) 585 P6

.1 Gnetales

Including Gnetaceae (gnetum family), Welwitschiaceae (welwitschia family), Ephedraceae (ephedra, Mormon tea family)

.2 Coniferales (Conifers)

Including Podocarpaceae (podocarp family), Phyllocladaceae (phyllocladus family), Taxaceae (yew family), Araucariaceae (araucaria family), Pinaceae (pine family), Taxodiaceae (bald cypress family), Cupressaceae (cypress family)

.7 Ginkgoales

Including Ginkgoaceae (maidenhair trees, ginkgo trees)

.9 Cycadales (Cycads)

Including Cycadaceae, Zamiaceae (sage palm family)

586 Cryptogamia (Seedless plants)

Comprehensive works

For Pteridophyta, see 587; *Bryophyta,* 588; *Thallophyta,* 589

587 Pteridophyta (Vascular cryptogams)

.1 Isoetales (Quillworts)

Including Isoetes

For comprehensive works on Lycopsida, see 587.9

.2 Sphenopsida

Including Equisetaceae (horsetail family)

.3 Filicineae

.31 Filicales (Ferns)

Including Osmundaceae (flowering fern family), Schizaeaceae (curly grass family), Gleicheniaceae (gleichenia family), Hymenophyllaceae (filmy fern family), Dicksoniaceae (Dicksonia family), Cyatheaceae (cyathea family), Polypodiaceae (polypody family), Marsiliaceae (water clover family), Salviniaceae (salvinia family)

.33 Eusporangiated ferns

Including Ophioglossales (adder's tongue, grape, rattlesnake ferns), Marattiales

.4 Psilopsida

Including Psilotales

587.9 Lycopsida (Club mosses)

Comprehensive works

Including Lycopodiales, Selaginellales

For Isoetales, see 587.1

588 Bryophyta

.1 Sphagnales

Including Sphagnaceae (peat and bog mosses)

.2 Musci (True mosses)

Comprehensive works

Including Bryales (common mosses), Andreaeales (black mosses)

For Sphagnales, see 588.1

.3 Hepaticae (Liverworts)

Including Ricciaceae, Marchantiaceae (great liverworts), Jungermanniaceae (scale mosses)

.32 Anthocerotales (Hornworts)

[†.4] Charales

Class in 589.47

589 Thallophyta

.1 Lichenes (Lichens)

Symbiotic associations of fungi and algae

For a specific fungus or alga, see the subject, e.g., Ascomycetes 589.23

.2 Eumycophyta (True fungi)

Former heading: Mycophyta

Including comprehensive works on mycology

For Lichenes, see 589.1

[†.21] Basidiomycetes

Class in 589.22

589.22 Basidiomycetes (Basidium fungi) [*formerly* †589.21]

.221 Lycoperdales (Puffballs and related fungi)

Former heading: Autobasidiomycetes

Including Hymenogastrales (false tubers), Nidulariales (bird's-nest fungi), Phallales (stinkhorn fungi)

.222 Agaricales (Mushrooms and related fungi)

Including Agaricaceae (gill fungi), Polyporaceae (pore fungi)

.225 Uredinales (Rust fungi)

.227 Ustilaginales (Smut fungi)

.23 Ascomycetes (Sac fungi)

Including Plectomycetes, Discomycetes, Pyrenomycetes

Common names: yeasts, Penicillium, mildews, cup fungi, black rot, ergot

For downy mildews, see 589.25

.24 Deuteromycetes (Imperfect fungi)

Including Moniliales (Hypomycetales), Sphaeropsidales, Melanconiales

.25 Phycomycetes (Algaelike fungi)

Comprehensive works on molds

Including Peronosporales (downy mildews)

For Saprolegniales, see 589.26; *Mucorales and other Phycomycetes,* 589.28

.26 Saprolegniales (Water molds)

.28 Mucorales and other Phycomycetes

Including Mucorineae (black mold), Entomorphthorales (fly fungi), Chytridiales (chytrids)

.29 Myxomycophyta (Slime molds)

Including Stemonitaceae, Arcyriaceae

.3 Algae (Phycology)

For Cyanophyta, see 589.8

.41 Rhodophyta (Red algae)

Including Bangioideae [*formerly* †589.42], Florideae (red seaweeds, sea mosses)

[†.42] Bangioideae

Class in 589.41

589.43 Pyrrophyta (Dinoflagellates) [*formerly* †589.973]

Including Desmomonadales, Prorocentrales, Gymnodiniales, Amphilothales, Kolkwitziellales, Dinophysiales, Peridiniales, Rhizodiniales, Dinococcales, Dinotrichales

.44 Euglenophyta [*formerly* †589.974, *589.97]

Euglenoids

Including Euglenaceae, Colaciaceae, Astasiaceae, Peranemaceae

.45 Phaeophyta (Brown algae)

Including Ectocarpales (kelps), Sphacelariales, Cutleriales, Tilopteridales, Chordariales, Sporochnales, Desmarestiales, Dictyosiphonales, Laminariales, Fucales (seaweeds, rockweeds)

.47 Chlorophyta (Green algae)

Including Conjugales [*formerly* †589.61], Charales [*formerly* †588.4], Volvocales, Chlorococcales, Ulotrichales, Siphonales, Cladophorales, Chaetophorales, Oedogoniales

.48 Chrysophyta (Golden algae)

Comprehensive works

Including Xanthophyceae (yellow-green algae), Chrysophyceae

For Bacillariophyceae, see 589.62

[†.61] Conjugales

Class in 589.47

.62 Bacillariophyceae (Diatoms)

Including Centrales, Pennales; comprehensive works on phytoplankton

For a specific phytoplankton, see the subject, e.g., Dinoflagellates 589.43

.7 Schizophyta (Fission plants)

Including comprehensive works on bacteria, yeasts, molds

For bacteria, see 589.9; *yeasts,* 589.23; *molds,* 589.25; *Cyanophyta,* 589.8

.8 Cyanophyta (Blue-green algae)

Including Chroococcaceae, Chamaesiphonaceae, Clastidiaceae, Stigonemataceae, Nostocaceae, Rivulariaceae, Scytonemataceae, Oscillatoriaceae

Common names: Myxophyceae, Schizophyceae, Cyanophyceae

589.9 Schizomycetes (Bacteriology)

Class Rickettsiae [*formerly* *589.9] in 576.6

For microbiology, see 576; *a specific application of bacteriology, the subject, e.g., medical bacteriology* 616.014

.92 Actinomycetales [*formerly* †589.953]

Including Mycobacteriaceae, Actinomycetaceae

.93 Chlamydobacteriales [*formerly* †589.953]

Including Chlamydobacteriaceae

.94 Caulobacteriales

Including Nevskiaceae, Gallionellaceae, Caulobacteriaceae, Pasteuriaceae

.95 Eubacteriales

Including Nitrobacteriaceae [*formerly also* †581.133 44], Rhizobiaceae, Pseudomonadaceae, Acetobacteriaceae, Azotobacteriaceae, Micrococcaceae, Neisseriaceae, Parvobacteriaceae, Lactobacteriaceae, Enterobacteriaceae, Bacteriaceae, Bacillaceae

[†.952] Thiobacteriales

Class in 589.96

[†.953] Eubacteriales

Class Actinomycetales in 589.92; Chlamydobacteriales in 589.93; Myxobacteriales in 589.98

.96 Thiobacteriales [*formerly* †589.952]

Including Rhodobacteriaceae, Beggiatoaceae, Achromatiaceae

[*.97] Euglenophyta

Class in 589.44

[†.973] Pyrrophyta (Dinoflagellates)

Class in 589.43

[†.974] Euglenophyta

Class in 589.44

.98 Myxobacteriales [*formerly* †589.953]

Including Archangiaceae, Sorangiaceae, Polyangiaceae, Myxococcaceae

.99 Spirochaetales

Including Spirochaetaceae

590 Zoological sciences

For paleozoology, see 560, 562–569; *animal husbandry,* 636–638; *animal psychology,* 151.3; *organic evolution,* 575

.74 Zoological exhibits

Class aquariums [*formerly* †*590.74] in 574.920 74

For arrangement of specimens in museums, see 579.7

.742 Zoological museums

.744 Zoological gardens

591 Zoology

For a specific aspect of an individual animal or group of animals, see the animal or group, e.g., hibernation of bears 599.744 4; *taxonomic zoology,* 592–599

SUMMARY

591.1	**Animal physiology (Zoophysiology)**
.2	**Animal pathology**
.3	**Animal maturation**
.4	**Animal morphology**
.5	**Animal ecology**
.6	**Economic zoology**
.8	**Microscopic zoology**
.9	**Zoogeography**

.1 Animal physiology (Zoophysiology)

Comparative physiology of animals

Divide like 574.1, e.g., reproduction in animals 591.16

Class veterinary physiology [*formerly* *591.1] in 636.089 2

For human physiology, see 612

.15 Animal genetics

Study of heredity and variation in animals

Including telegony [*formerly* †575.136]

Divide like 581.15, e.g., mutations in animals 591.159 2

For stock breeding, see 636.082

[†.161] Abiogenesis

Class in 577.01

591.17 Animal histogenesis [*formerly* *591.8]

Microscopic study of germ cells in animals

Class animal gametogenesis [*formerly* *591.17] in 591.32

For microscopic zoology, see 591.8; *animal reproduction,* 591.16

.2 Animal pathology

For veterinary medicine, see 636.089

.3 Animal maturation

.32 Animal gametogenesis [*formerly* *591.17]

Formation and maturation of sex cells in animals

For animal histogenesis, see 591.17

.33 Animal embryology

Comparative studies on early developmental stages

Including cleavage, formation of primary germ layers and cavities, establishment of embryonic axes and symmetry, development of coelomic cavities and organ systems, final development into functionally integrated organism

For postembryonic growth and development of animals, see 591.13

.34 Metamorphoses

Including complete and incomplete metamorphoses

.36 Production and differentiation of sexes in animals

For gametogenesis, see 591.32

.38 Evolution of animals

.4 Animal morphology

Comparative anatomy of animals

Including descriptive anatomy [*formerly* †591.7]

For microscopic zoology, see 591.8

.41 Circulatory organs

.42 Respiratory organs

.43 Digestive organs

591.44 Secretory and excretory organs

Including exocrine and endocrine glands of animals

.46 Reproductory organs

.47 Muscular, skeletal, integumentary organs

.48 Organs of nervous system

.49 Topographical anatomy

.5 Animal ecology

Interrelation of animals to environment and to each other

Including adaptation to environment, group behavior of animals

.508 Animal stories [*formerly the* *800's] and animal lore

For animals in folklore, see 398; *stories of a specific domesticated animal,* 636–638, *e.g., dogs in literature* 636.78; *stories of a specific wild animal, the animal, e.g., squirrels* 599.323 2

.51 Behavior patterns of animals in nature

Comprehensive works

For a specific behavior pattern, see the subject, e.g., hibernation 591.543; *comparative psychology,* 151.3

.52 Animal migrations

Including daily, seasonal and secular migrations; homings

.53 Nutritive adaptations of animals

Including food chains and cycles

.54 Adaptations of animals to meteorological factors

.542 Adaptations of animals to climatic conditions

Including adaptations of animals to storms, rain, drought

.543 Adaptations of animals to seasonal changes

Including hibernation [*formerly also* †612.58], estivation

.55 Zoological communities

Including animal aggregations, mutualistic and antagonistic symbioses

591.56 Reproductive adaptations of animals

Adaptive breeding habits of animals

.57 Protective adaptations of animals

Including means of protection, attraction, self-preservation

.59 Animal communication

.6 Economic zoology

Animals beneficial and deleterious to man's needs

For animal husbandry, see 636–638; *animals as injurious factors in crop production,* 632.6–632.7

.69 Poisonous animals

[†.7] Descriptive anatomy of animals

Class in 591.4

.8 Microscopic zoology

Including animal histology and cytology

Class histogenesis [*formerly* *591.8] in 591.17

For slide preparation of animal tissues, see 578.9

.9 Zoogeography

Geographic distribution of animals

For distribution of specific animals or groups of animals, see 592–599

.909 Zonal and physiographic zoology

Divide like 574.909, e.g., tropical animals 574.909 3

.91 Insular zoology

Divide like 930–999, e.g., animals of Madagascar 591.916 91

.92 Marine zoology

Divide like 551.46, e.g., Arctic Ocean animals 591.928

.929 Fresh-water zoology

Divide like 930–999, e.g., animal life in Great Lakes 591.929 77

.93–.99 Zoogeography in specific countries

Divide like 930–999, e.g., animals of Alaska 591.979 8

592–599 Taxonomic zoology

Concepts in the classification of zoology are constantly changing, with a result that coordination and subordination of groups, which in earlier editions were shown more or less accurately by length of number, are completely upset. In this schedule coordination and subordination are shown by indention; length of number is of little significance

For classification of animals, see 590.12; *paleozoology,* 562–569; *origin of species,* 575

SUMMARY

592	**Invertebrates**
593	**Protozoa**
.2	**Mesozoa**
.4	**Parazoa**
.5–.9	**Metazoa**
594	**Mollusca and molluscoidea**
595	**Other invertebrates**
.1	**Wormlike animals**
.2–.4	**Arthropoda**
.5	**Onychophora**
.6	**Progoneata**
.62	**Opisthogoneata**
.63	**Symphyla**
.64	**Pauropoda**
.7	**Insecta**
596	**Chordata (Vertebrates)**
.2	**Tunicata**
597	**Anamnia**
598	**Reptiles and birds**
.1	**Reptilia**
.2–.9	**Aves**
599	**Mammalia**

592 Invertebrates

Comprehensive works

For a specific group of invertebrates, see 593–595

593 Protozoa

For microbiology, see 576

.1 Plasmodroma

Including Mastigophora, Chysomonadina, Cryptomonadina, Phytomonadina, Euglenoidina, Chloromonadina, Dinoflagellata, Rhizomastigina, Protomonadina, Polymastigina, Hypermastigina

.11 Sarcodina

Including Rhizopoda

593.113 Proteomyxa

.115 Mycetozoa

Including Eumycetozoa, Sorophora

.117 Amoebina

.118 Testacea

.12 Foraminifera

.13 Actinopoda

Including Heliozoa

.14 Radiolaria

[†.15] Ciliata

Former heading: Infusoria

Class in 593.172

.17 Ciliophora

.172 Ciliata [*formerly also* †593.15]

Including Protociliata, Euciliata, Holotricha, Spirotricha, Chonotricha, Peritricha

.175 Suctoria

.19 Sporozoa

Including Telosporidia, Acnidosporidia, Cnidosporidia

.2 Mesozoa

Former heading: Radiates

[†.3] Coelenterata

Class in 593.5

.4 Parazoa

Including Porifera (sponges)

.42 Calcispongiae

Including Asconosa, Syconosa

.44 Hyalospongiae

Including Hexasterophora, Amphidiscophora

.46 Desmospongiae

Including Carnosa, Choristida, Epipolasida, Hadromerina, Poecilosclerina, Haplosclerina, Keratosa

593.5 **Metazoa**

Including Coelenterata (Cnidaria) [*formerly also* †593.3], Enterozoa, Radiata

For Mollusca, see 594; *Articulates,* 595; *Chordata,* 596–599

.6 Anthozoa

Including Alcyonaria, Ceriantharia, Antipitharia, Dodecacorallia

Common names: sea anemones, corals, sea fans, sea pens

.7 Hydrozoa

Including Hydroida, Trachylina, Milleporina, Stylasterina, Siphonophora

Common names: jellyfish [*formerly also* †593.8], hydras, medusas, hydroid polyps

.73 Scyphozoa

Former heading: Acalepha

Including Lucernariidea, Charybdeidea, Corona, Semaeostomeae, Rhizostomeae

.8 Ctenophorae

Including Tentaculata, Nuda

Common names: sea walnuts, comb jellies

Class jellyfish [*formerly* †593.8] in 593.7

.9 Echinodermata

.91 Pelmatozoa

Including Crinoidea (sea lilies)

.92 Asterozoa

Class starfish [*formerly* †593.92] in 593.93

.93 Asteroidea (Starfish) [*formerly* †593.92]

Former heading: Stelleridea

Including Phanerozonea, Spinulosa, Forcipulata

.94 Ophiuroidea

Including Phrynophiurida, Laemophiurida, Gnathophiurida, Chilophiurida

Common names: brittle stars, basket stars

593.95 Echinozoa

Including Echinoidea, Cidaroida, Centrechinoida, Exocycloida, Perischoechinoida, Echinocystoida, Perichoechinoida

Common names: sea urchins, sand dollars

.96 Holothurioidea (Sea cucumbers)

Including Dendrochirota [*formerly* †593.97], Apoda [*formerly* †593.98], Elasipoda, Aspidochirota, Molpadonia

[†.97] Dendrochirota

Former heading: Pedata

Class in 593.96

[†.98] Apoda

Class in 593.96

.99 Enteropneusta [*formerly* *596]

Including Balanoglossida

.992 Linguatula

594 **Mollusca and molluscoidea**

Mollusks and mollusklike animals

.1 Pelecypoda (Bivalve mollusks)

Former heading: Lamellibranchia

Including Prionodesmacea, Anomalodesmacea, Teleodesmacea

Common names: clams, mussels, oysters, shipworms

.19 Crepipoda (Chitons)

Polyplacophora (Amphineura) [*formerly* †594.31]

Including Eoplacophora, Aplacophora, Mesoplacophora, Isoplacophora, Teleoplacophora

.2 Scaphopoda (Toothshells)

.3 Gastropoda

Snails, slugs, whelks

[†.31] Amphineura

Class in 594.19

.32 Prosobranchia

Including Archaeogastropoda, Mesogastropoda, Neogastropoda

594.35 Opisthobranchia
Including Pteropoda [*formerly* †594.4], Sacoglossa
Common names: sea slugs, sea lemons, sea hares

.36 Acoela
Including Notaspidea, Nudibranchia

.37 Tectibranchia

.38 Pulmonata
Including Basommatophora, Stylommatophora

[†.4] Pteropoda
Class in 594.35

.5 Cephalopoda

.51 Tetrabranchia

.52 Nautiloidea (Nautilus)

.55 Dibranchia
Including Vampyromorpha

.56 Octopoda
Common names: octopuses, cuttlefish, squids, devilfish

.58 Decapoda

.6 Molluscoidea

.7 Bryozoa
Common names: sea mats, moss animals

.71 Gymnolaemata
Including Cyclostomata, Trepostomata, Cryptostomata, Ctenostoma

.72 Phylactolaemata

.73 Pterobranchia [*formerly* *596]

.8 Brachiopoda (Lamp shells)
Including Inarticulata, Articulata

[†.9] Tunicata
Class in 596.2

595 Other invertebrates
Former heading: Articulates

.1 Wormlike animals
Former heading: Vermes

.12 Platyhelminthes (Flatworms)

.121 Cestoidea
Including Cestodaria, Cestoda (tapeworms)

.122 Trematoda (Flukes)
Including Monogenea, Aspidogastrea, Digenea

.123 Turbellaria (Planarians)
Including Acoela, Rhabdocoela, Alloiocoela, Tricladida, Polycladida

.124 Nemertea
Including Anopla, Enopla

.13 Nematoidea (Roundworms)
Including Phasmidia, Aphasmidia

.131 Nematomorpha (Horsehair worms)
Including Gordididea, Nectonematoidea

.133 Acanthocephala
Including Eoacanthocephala, Metacanthocephala

.135 Eucoelomata
Including Chaetognatha, Entoprocta

.14 Annelida (Segmented worms)
For Myzostoma, see 595.178

.142 Archiannelida

.15 Hirudinea (Leeches)
Including Rhynchobdellida, Gnathobdellida, Pharyngobdellida

.16 Oligochaeta (Earthworms)
Including Plesiopora, Opisthopora, Prosopora

.17 Polychaeta
Including Errantia, Sedentaria, Aplacophora

.174 Gephyrea
Including Echiuroidea, Sipunculoidea, Priapuloidea

.176 Phoronidea

595.178 Myzostoma

.18 Aschelminthes

Including Tardigrada (water bears) [*formerly* †595.412, *595.4], Rotatoria (wheel animalcules), Gastrotricha, Echinodera

For Nematomorpha, see 595.131; *Nematoidea,* 595.13

.2 Arthropoda

Including Mandibulata

For Chelicerata, see 595.39; *Progoneata,* 595.6; *Insecta,* 595.7

.3 Crustacea

[†.315] Pycnogonida

Class in 595.394

.32 Branchiopoda

Including Anostraca, Notostraca, Conchostraca, Cladocera

.33 Ostracoda

Including Myodocopa, Cladocopa, Podocopa, Platycopa

.34 Copepoda

Including Eucopepoda, Branchiura

Common names: cyclops, fish lice

.35 Cirripedia (Barnacles)

Including Thoracica, Ascothoracica, Apoda, Rhizocephala

.36 Malacostraca

Including Leptostraca

.37 Eumalacostraca

Former heading: Arthrostraca

.371 Amphipoda

Including Gammaridea, Hyperiidea, Caprellidea, Ingolfiellidea

Common names: sand fleas, scuds

.372 Isopoda

Including Flabellifera, Valvifera, Asellota, Phreatoicidea, Epicaridea, Oniscoidea

Common names: sow bugs, wood lice

.373 Thermosbaenacea

.374 Tanaidacea

.381 Cumacea

595.382 Stomatopoda

Common names: sea mantles, glass crabs, mantis shrimps, squillas, sea onions

.383 Mysidacea (Opossum shrimps)

Former heading: Schizopoda

.384 Decapoda

.384 1 Macrura (Lobsters, crayfish)

.384 2 Brachyura (Crabs)

.384 3 Natantia (Shrimps)

.384 4 Anomura (Hermit crabs, king crabs)

.385 Euphausiacea

.39 Chelicerata

Former heading: Gigantostraca

.391 Merostomata

.392 Xiphosura (Horseshoe crabs)

.394 Pycnogonida [*formerly* †595.315, *595.4]

Including Colossendeomorpha, Nymphonomorpha, Ascorhynchomorpha, Pycnogonomorpha

Common name: sea spiders

.4 Arachnida

Class Tardigrada (water bears) [*formerly* †595.412, *595.4] in 595.18; Pycnogonida [*formerly* *595.4] in 595.394

.42 Acari (Mites, ticks)

Including Notostigmata, Holothyroidea, Parasitiformes, Trombidiformes, Sarcoptiformes, Tetrapodili

.43 Phalangida (Harvestmen, daddy longlegs)

.44 Araneida (True spiders)

.45 Palpigradi (Whip scorpions)

Former heading: Pedipalpi

.46 Scorpiones (Scorpions)

.47 Pseudoscorpiones (Fake scorpions)

.48 Solifugae (Weasel spiders)

.5 Onychophora

595.6 Progoneata

Former heading: Myriopoda

.61 Diplopoda (Millipedes)

Including Pselaphognatha, Chilognatha

.62 Opisthogoneata

Including Chilopoda (centipedes)

For Insecta, see 595.7

.63 Symphyla

.64 Pauropoda

.7 Insecta (Insects)

.71 Synaptera

Including Collembola (springtails), Protura, Entotrophi, Thysanura (bristletails)

595.72–595.79 Pterygota

.72 Orthoptera (Grasshoppers, crickets)

Including locusts, katydids

.721 Dermaptera (Earwigs)

.722 Blattariae (Cockroaches)

Former heading: Cursoria

.724 Phasmatodea (Walking sticks)

.725 Mantodea (Mantises)

.731 Thysanoptera (Thrips)

.732 Corrodentia (Book lice, bark lice)

.733 Odonata (Dragonflies, damselflies)

.734 Ephemeroptera (Mayflies)

.735 Plecoptera (Stoneflies)

Former heading: Perlidae

.736 Isoptera (Termites)

.737 Embioptera

.738 Zoraptera

595.74 Neuroptera (Lacewings)

Including snake flies, dobson flies

Class Anoplura in 595.751 2, Mallophaga in 595.751 4 [*both formerly* *595.74]

.742 Megaloptera (Ant lions)

.744 Mecoptera (Scorpion flies)

Former heading: Panorpidae

.745 Trichoptera (Caddis flies)

.746 Strepsiptera

.75 Hemiptera and related orders (Bugs)

.751 2 Anoplura (True lice) [*formerly* *595.74]

Former heading: Pediculidae

Siphunculata

.751 4 Mallophaga (Bird lice) [*formerly* *595.74]

.752 Homoptera

Aphids; cicadas, leaf hoppers, other Homoptera [*all formerly* †595.753]

[†.753] Cicadas, leaf hoppers, other Homoptera

Class in 595.752

.754 Heteroptera (True bugs)

.76 Coleoptera (Beetles)

.762 Adephaga

Including Caraboidea, Gyrinoidea, Cupoidea, Rhysodoidea

Common names: whirligigs, tiger beetles, water beetles

[†.763] Clavicornia

Class burying beetles, larder beetles in 595.764

.764 Polyphaga

Including Hydrophiloidea, Staphylinoidea, Cucujoidea, Cantharoidea, Dryopoidea, Dascylloidea, Histeroidea, Tenebrionoidea, Cerambycoidea, Scarabaeoidea

Common names: burying beetles, larder beetles [*both formerly* †595.763], leaf beetles [*formerly* †595.768], dung beetles, June beetles, rose chafers

For Adephaga, see 595.762

595.765 Elateroidea

Common names: wireworms, click beetles

[†.766] Ship-timber beetles, powder-post beetles

Class ship-timber beetles in 595.767; powder-post beetles in 595.769

.767 Mordelloidea

Common names: ship-timber beetles [*formerly* †595.766], blister beetles

.768 Curculionoidea (Weevils)

Class leaf beetles [*formerly* †595.768] in 595.764

.769 Colydioidea

Common names: powder-post beetles [*formerly* †595.766], ladybird beetles

.77 Diptera (Flies)

.771 Orthorrhapha

Former heading: Nematocera

Including midges, gnats, mosquitoes; crane, moth, horse, bee, robber flies

.774 Cyclorrhapha

Former heading: Pupipara

Including fruit, vinegar, house, blow, tachina, louse flies

.775 Siphonaptera (Fleas)

Former heading: Aphaniptera

.78 Lepidoptera

Including Jugatae, Frenatae (moths)

.789 Rhopalocera (Butterflies)

.79 Hymenoptera

.796 Formicidae (Ants)

.798 Vespidae (True wasps)

.799 Apidae (Bees)

596 Chordata (Vertebrates)

Including Acrania [*formerly* †597.1], Craniata

Class Enteropneusta in 593.99, Pterobranchia in 594.73 [*both formerly* *596]

596.2 Tunicata [*formerly* †594.9]

Including Ascidiacea, Larvacea, Thaliacea

Common names: sea squirts, sea grapes

597 Anamnia (Cyclostomes, fishes, amphibians)

Former heading: Pisces

.09 Geographic distribution of fish

For marine biology, see 574.92

.092 Geographic distribution of salt-water fish

Divide like 551.46, e.g., fish in the Gulf of Mexico 597.923

.093–.099 Geographic distribution of fresh-water fish

Divide like 930–999, e.g., fish in the Saint Lawrence River 597.971 4

[†.1] Acrania

Class in 596

.2 Agnatha

Former heading: Marsipobranchii

Including Cyclostomata (lampreys)

.3 Chondrichthyes

Including Elasmobranchii

.31 Selachii (Sharks)

Including Heterodontoidea, Notidanoidea, Galeoidea, Squaloidea

.35 Batoidea

Common names: skates, rays, torpedoes, guitarfishes, sawfishes

.38 Holocephali

Including Chimaerae

Common names: chimeras, elephant fishes, rat fishes

597.4–597.5 Osteichthyes

.4 Chondrostei (Ganoids)

Including Polypterini

.41 Holostei

Including Amioidea

Common names: bowfins, river dogfishes

597.44 Acipenseroidei

Common names: sturgeons, paddlefishes, spoonbills

.46 Crossopterygii (Lobe-finned fishes)

Including Coelacanthini

.47 Lepisosteidae (Gars)

Former heading: Euganoides

.48 Dipnoi (Lung fishes)

.5 Teleostei

Arrange alphabetically by orders, using A1 for comprehensive works, e.g., Acanthopterygii 597.5 A3

.6 Amphibia

.7 Apoda (Caecilians)

Former heading: Ophiomorpha

.8 Salientia

Including Anura (frogs, toads)

.9 Urodela

Including Cryptobranchoidea, Amblystomoidea, Salamandiodea, Proteidea

Common names: salamanders, newts, mud puppies

598–599 Amniota

598 Reptiles and birds

.1 Reptilia (Reptiles)

Including comprehensive works on herpetology

For Amphibia, see 597.6–597.9

598.11–598.12 Squamata

.11 Lacertilia (Lizards)

.12 Serpentes (Snakes)

.13 Chelonia (Turtles, tortoises)

Including Pleurodira, Cryptodira

.139 Rhynchocephalia (Tuataras)

.14 Crocodilia (Crocodiles, alligators)

598.2 Aves (Birds)

Divide like 591.1–591.8, e.g., bird migrations 598.252

Class specific groups of birds [*formerly* *598.2] in 598.3–598.99

.201 3 Bird protection

Comprehensive works

For protection of a specific species of birds, see the group, e.g., whooping cranes 598.3

.201 8 Collection and preservation of birds

.207 2 Ornithological research

Including birdbanding, census taking

.207 4 Aviaries

.29 Geographic distribution of birds

.291 Zonal and physiographic distribution of birds

Divide like 574.909, e.g., birds in tropical regions 598.291 3

.293–.299 Distribution of birds by country

Divide like 930–999, e.g., birds in United States 598.297 3

598.3–598.99 Specific groups of birds [*formerly* *598.2]

.3 Gruiformes

Former heading: Grallatores

Including Mesoenatides, Turnices, Grues, Heliornithes, Rhynocheti, Eurypygae, Cariamae, Otides

Common names: cranes, limpkins, rails, gallinules, coots

.33 Charadriiformes

Former heading: Limicolae

Including Charadrii, Lari, Alcae

Common names: gulls, skimmers, terns [*all formerly* †598.42]; puffins, auks, murres [*all formerly* †598.44]; jacanas, oyster catchers, plovers, turnstones, woodcock, snipe, sandpipers, curlews, avocets, stilts, phalaropes

.34 Ciconiiformes

Former heading: Herodiones

Including Ardeae, Balaenicipites, Ciconiae, Phoenicopteri

Common names: herons, bitterns, egrets, storks, ibises, spoonbills, flamingos

598.4 Anseriformes

Including Anhimae, Anseres

Common names: swans, geese, ducks, mergansers, screamers

.42 Procellariiformes

Former heading: Longipennes

Common names: albatrosses, shearwaters, fulmars, petrels

Class gulls, skimmers, terns [*all formerly* †598.42] in 598.33

.43 Pelecaniformes

Former heading: Steganopodes

Including Phaëthontes, Pelecani, Fregatae, Odontopteryges

Common names: tropic birds, pelicans, gannets, boobies, cormorants, darters, snakebirds, man-of-war birds

.44 Sphenisciformes (Penguins)

Former heading: Pygopodes

Class auks, puffins, murres [*all formerly* †598.44] in 598.33

.442 Gaviiformes (Loons)

.443 Colymbiformes (Grebes)

.5 Palaeognathae

Former heading: Cursores

.51 Struthioniformes (Ostriches)

.52 Rheiformes (Rheas)

.53 Casuariiformes (Cassowaries, emus)

.54 Apterygiformes (Kiwis)

.55 Tinamiformes (Tinamous)

.6 Galliformes

Former heading: Rasores

Including Galli, Opisthocomi

Common names: curassaws, guans, grouse, quails, pheasants, turkeys, domestic chickens

For sand grouse, see 598.65

.65 Columbiformes

Including Pterocletes, Columbae

Common names: sand grouse, pigeons, doves

For grouse, see 598.6

598.7 Psittaciformes

Former heading: Scansores

Common names: parrots, parakeets, macaws, lories

.72 Piciformes

Including Galbulae, Pici

Common names: jacamars, puffbirds, barbets, honey guides, toucans, woodpeckers, flickers, piculets

.73 Trogoniformes (Trogons)

.74 Cuculiformes

Including Musophagi, Cuculi

Common names: plantain eaters, cuckoos, roadrunners, anis

.8 Passeriformes (Passerine, perching birds)

Arrange alphabetically by families, using A1 for comprehensive works, e.g., robins (belonging to Turdidae family) 598.8 T8

.89 Coraciiformes

Former heading: Picariae

Including Alcedines, Meropes, Coracii, Bucerotes

Common names: kingfishers, rollers, todies, motmots, bee eaters, hoopoes, hornbills

.899 Apodiformes

Including Apodi, Trochili

Common names: swifts, hummingbirds

.9 Falconiformes (Birds of prey)

Former heading: Raptores

Including Cathartae, Falcones

Common names: hawks, falcons, buzzards, vultures, ospreys, eagles

.97 Strigiformes (Owls)

.99 Caprimulgiformes

Including Steatornithes, Caprimulgi

Common names: oilbirds, frogmouths, potoos, goatsuckers

599 Mammalia (Mammals)

.1 Prototheria

Including Monotremata

Common names: spiny anteaters [*formerly* *599.3], platypuses

For anteaters, see 599.31

.2 Metatheria

Including Marsupialia (poucht mammals)

Common names: opossums, opossum rats, kangaroos, marsupial mice, wallabies, bandicoots, phalangers, koalas, wombats

.3 Eutheria (Placentals)

Class spiny anteaters [*formerly* *599.3] in 599.1

.31 Edentata

Including Xenarthra, Pholidota

Common names: armadillos, anteaters, sloths, pangolins (scaly anteaters)

For spiny anteaters, see 599.1

.32 Glires

.322 Lagomorpha

Common names: pikas, hares, rabbits

.323 Rodentia (Rodents)

.323 2 Sciuromorpha

Common names: sewellels, squirrels, beavers

.323 3 Myomorpha

Common names: rats, mice

.323 4 Hystricomorpha

Common names: porcupines, guinea pigs, cavies, agoutis, chinchillas

.33 Insectivora

Common names: solenodons, moles, shrews, desmans, tenrees

.34 Dermoptera (Flying lemurs)

.4 Chiroptera (Bats)

Including Megachiroptera, Microchiroptera

599.5 Cetacea (Whales)

.51 Mysticeti

Common names: baleen whales, whalebone whales, finbacks, humpback whales

.53 Odontoceti (Tootht whales)

Common names: sperm whales, beakt whales, cowfish, narwhals, white whales, dolphins, porpoises

.55 Sirenia (Sea cows)

Including Trichechiformes

Common names: manatees, dugongs

.6 Paenungulata

Former heading: Subungulata

For Sirenia, see 599.55

.61 Proboscidea

Including Elephantoidea (elephants)

.62 Hyracoidea

Common names: conies, dassies, rock hyraxes, tree hyraxes

.7 Mesaxonia and Paraxonia (Hooft mammals)

Former heading: Ungulata

.72 Perissodactyla (Odd-toed hooft mammals)

.725 Equidae (Horses, asses, zebras)

.727 Tapiridae (Tapirs)

.728 Rhinocerotidae (Rhinoceroses)

.73 Artiodactyla (Even-toed hooft mammals)

.734 Suiformes

Common names: pigs, boars, wart hogs, babirussas, peccaries, hippopotamuses

.735 Ruminantia (Ruminants)

Including Tragulida, Pecora, Cervoidea, Bovoidea

Common names: chevrotains, mouse deer, giraffes, okapis, deer, moose, reindeer, caribou, elk, antelopes, cattle, oxen, buffaloes, bison, elands, bongos, kudus, gazelles, sheep, goats, musk oxen

[†.735 4] Tylopoda

Class in 599.736

599.736 Tylopoda [*formerly* †599.735 4]

Common names: camels, dromedaries, llamas, alpacas, vicuñas, guanacos

.74 Carnivora

.744 Fissipeda (Land carnivores)

.744 2 Feloidea

Former heading: Aeleuroidea, Herpestoidea

Including Viverridae, Proteles, Hyaenidae, Felidae

Common names: civets, mongooses, fossa, aardwolves, hyenas, cats

.744 4 Canoidea

Former heading: Arctoidea

Including Canidae, Procyonidae, Ursidae, Mustelidae

Common names: wolves, jackals, foxes, dogs, coyotes, raccoons, coatis, kinkajous, pandas, bears, weasels, minks, grisons, wolverines, badgers, skunks, otters

.745 Pinnipedia (Marine carnivores)

Class Otariidae in 599.746, Odobenidae in 599.747, Phocidae in 599.748 [*all formerly* *599.745]

.746 Otariidae [*formerly* *599.745]

Eared seals

Including fur seals, sea lions, sea bears

.747 Odobenidae [*formerly* *599.745]

Walruses

.748 Phocidae [*formerly* *599.745]

True seals

Including earless seals, elephant seals

.8 Primates

Class man [*formerly* *599.8] in 599.9

.81 Prosimii

Including Lemuriformes, Lorisiformes, Tarsiiformes

599.82 Anthropoidea

Including Cebidae, Callithricidae, Cercopithecidae

Common names: monkeys, marmosets, tamarins

Class gorillas, chimpanzees, orangutans, baboons [*all formerly* †599.82] in 599.884

599.88–599.9 Hominoidea

.88 Pongidae (Apes)

Former heading: Anthropomorpha

.882 Hylobatinae

Common names: gibbons, siamangs

.884 Ponginae

Common names: gorillas, chimpanzees, orangutans, baboons [*all formerly* †599.82]

.9 Hominidae (Man) [*formerly* *599.8]

For anthropology, see 572–573

Technology (Applied science)

600 Technology (Applied science)

For pure science, see 500; *prehistoric industries,* 571.6

.74 Technical museums

Including permanent exhibits

For fairs, expositions, temporary exhibits, see 606.4

.78 Technical apparatus and instrumentation

601 Philosophy and theory

602 Handbooks and outlines

603 Dictionaries and encyclopedias

604 Essays and lectures

605 Periodicals

606 Organizations and societies

.4 **Fairs and expositions**

Including temporary exhibits, competitions

For permanent exhibits, see 600.74

607 Technical education and research

.2 **Industrial research**

Including products research, technical laboratories

Divide like 940–999, e.g., industrial research in United States 607.273

.4–.9 **Technical education in specific countries**

Divide like 940–999, e.g., technical education in Germany 607.43

608 Collections

.7 **Patents and inventions**

Divide like 940–999, e.g., United States patents 608.773

609 History and local treatment

Divide like 930–999, e.g., history of technology in Germany 609.43

610 Medical sciences

For forensic medicine, see 340.6; *medical welfare work,* 362.1

.69 Medical professions

For nursing profession, see 610.73; *medical records librarians,* 362.1; *medical missionaries,* 266.025; *medical secretaries,* 651.024

.694 Medical ethics

.694 2 Codes of medical ethics

Including Hippocratic oath

.694 4 Euthanasia

.694 8 Other related codes

Including codes on medical advertising, fee splitting

For medical economics, see 614.25

.695 Professional personnel

For nurses, aides, attendants, see 610.73

.695 2 Physicians and surgeons

Including women as physicians and surgeons

For licensure and registration, see 614.24; *personnel in a specialized medical practice, the specialty, e.g., dentists* 617.606 9

.695 3 Medical technicians

For dental technicians, see 617.606 95

.696 Physician-patient relationships

.7 **Study and teaching of medicine**

[†*.72] Experimental medicine

Class in 619

610.73 Nursing profession

Including professional and practical nurses, aides, attendants

Divide by form divisions 01–09, e.g., history of nursing 610.730 9

For home nursing, see 649.8; *Army Nurse Corps,* 355.345; *Navy Nurse Corps,* 359.34

.732 Private duty nursing

.733 Institutional nursing

Including ward management

.734 Public health and community nursing

Including occupational health nursing (industrial nursing), visiting nurses

If preferred, class in 614.073

.736 Specialized nursing

If preferred, class with the specialty, e.g., pediatric nursing 618.920 73

.736 2 Pediatric nursing

.736 5 Geriatric nursing

.736 7 Surgical and gynecological nursing

.736 78 Obstetrical nursing

.736 8 Psychiatric nursing

.736 9 Communicable disease nursing

.74 Medical museums and exhibits

.76 Examinations for physicians and surgeons

Including state board examinations

.78 Medical appliances

Including instruments, apparatus, equipment

For special medical appliances, see the specialty, e.g., orthopedic appliances 617.307 8

.8 Collections on medicine

.9 History of medicine

Divide like 930–999, e.g., history of medicine in Sweden 610.948 5

611 Human anatomy

For human physiology, see 612; *comparative anatomy,* 591.4; *anatomy for artists,* 743.4

SUMMARY

611.01 Theoretic considerations
.1 Cardiovascular organs
.2 Respiratory organs
.3 Alimentary tract (Digestive organs)
.4 Lymphatic and glandular organs
.6 Urogenital organs
.7 Motor and integumentary organs
.8 Neuroanatomy
.9 Regional anatomy

.01 Theoretic considerations

Including value, definitions, classification, terminology

.012 Human teratology

Congenital anomalies [*formerly also* †617.31], deformities [*formerly also* †613.91], monstrosities [*formerly* †573.9]

Including coalescence of parts, extension of commissures, Siamese twins [*all formerly* †617.33–†617.35]

For pathology, see 616.07; *correction of deformities of skeletal system,* 617.3; *treatment of anomalies of a specific organ, the organ, e.g., heart anomalies* 616.12

.013 Anatomy of human embryo

Class human embryology [*formerly* †*611.013] in 612.64

[†.014] Anthropological anatomy

Class in 573

[†.016] Paleontological anatomy

Class in 560

.018 Human cytology and histology

Study of microscopic structure of human cells and tissues

.018 1 Human cytology [*formerly also* †612.014 1–†612.014 3]

Study of human cells and their components, e.g., protoplasm [*formerly also* †612.71]

611.018 2–611.018 8 Human histology

611.018 2 Connective tissues

Microscopic study of areolar, collagenous, elastic, reticular, adipose, pigmented cells, fibers, ground substances

.018 3 Cartilaginous tissues

Microscopic study of hyaline, elastic, fibrous cartilage

.018 4 Osseous tissues

Microscopic study of spongy and compact bone cells and tissues; red, yellow bone marrow (medulla); periosteum, endosteum

.018 5 Blood and lymph elements

Microscopic study of blood plasma, red corpuscles (erythrocytes), white corpuscles (leucocytes), platelets (thrombocytes); lymph plasma, lymphocytes

.018 6 Muscular tissues

Microscopic study of smooth (nonstriated, involuntary), skeletal (striated, voluntary), cardiac (striated, involuntary) muscle tissues

.018 7 Epithelial tissues

Microscopic study of simple squamous, columnar, stratified squamous epithelia; serous and mucous membranes

.018 8 Nerve tissues

Microscopic study of neurons, interstitial nerve tissues (neuroglia, neurilemma, satellite cells), meninges, sheaths

611.1–611.88 Gross anatomy by systems

.1 Cardiovascular organs

.11 Pericardium

.12 Heart

Including ventricles, auricles, endocardium, myocardium

For pericardium, see 611.11

611.13–611.15 Blood vessels

.13 Arteries

.14 Veins

.15 Capillaries

611.2 Respiratory organs

.21 Nose and nasal accessory sinuses

.22 Larynx

Including laryngeal cartilages, glottis, muscles of larynx

.23 Trachea and bronchi

.24 Lungs

.25 Pleura

.26 Diaphragm

.27 Mediastinum

.3 Alimentary tract (Digestive organs)

.31 Mouth

Including tongue, palates, salivary glands, lips, cheeks

.314 Teeth (Dental anatomy)

.32 Pharynx and esophagus

Including tonsils

.33 Stomach

Including pylorus

.34 Intestines

Including small intestines, duodenum, jejunum, ileum, cecum, vermiform appendix, large intestines, colon, sigmoid flexure

.35 Rectum and anus

Including rectal valves, perineum

.36 Liver and biliary tract

Including gall bladder

.37 Pancreas

Including islands of Langerhans

.38 Peritoneum

Including mesentery, omentum, coelum

.4 Lymphatic and glandular organs

.41 Spleen

.42 Lymphatic ducts

Including comprehensive works on lymphatic system

For lymphatic glands, see 611.46

611.43 Thymus gland

.44 Thyroid and parathyroid glands

.45 Adrenal glands

.46 Lymphatic glands

For lymphatic ducts, see 611.42

.49 Breasts [*formerly* †611.69]

Including mammary glands

.6 Urogenital organs

.61 Kidneys

Including ureter

.62 Bladder

Including urethra

For female urethra, see 611.67

.63 Male genital organs

Including testicles, vas deferens, seminal vesicles, prostate, scrotum, spermatic cord

.64 Penis

.65 Female genital organs

Including ovaries, Graafian follicles, corpus luteum, Fallopian tubes

.66 Uterus

Including cervix

.67 Vagina

Including hymen, vulva, female urethra, clitoris, vulvo-vaginal glands

[†.69] Breasts

Class in 611.49

.7 Motor and integumentary organs

.71 Osteology

.711 Vertebral column

611.712 Thoracic bones

Including ribs

For scapula, clavicle, see 611.717

.713 Sternum

.714 Skull

.715 Cranium

.716 Bones of face

.717 Bones of the upper extremity

Including scapula, clavicle, humerus, radius, ulna, phalanges of the hands, carpal, metacarpal bones

.718 Bones of the lower extremity

Including femur, patella, tibia, fibula, phalanges of the feet, tarsal, metatarsal bones

.718 1 Hipbone (Innominate bone)

.72 Articulations

Including ligaments, joints

For connective tissue, see 611.74

.73 Myology

Anatomy of muscles

.731 Dorsal muscles

.732 Muscles of the head

.733 Muscles of the neck

.734 Hyoid muscles

.735 Thoracic muscles

.736 Abdominal and coccygeal muscles

.737 Muscles of the upper extremity

Including muscles of the shoulders, arms, forearms, hands

.738 Muscles of the lower extremity

Including muscles of the hips, buttocks, thighs, legs, feet

.74 Connective tissue [*formerly* †611.76]

Including tendons, fasciae

611.75 Bursae

Including sheaths of tendons

[†.76] Connective tissue

Class in 611.74

.77 Integument

Including skin, glands of the skin, skin pigmentation

For bursae, see 611.75

.78 Hair and nails

.8 Neuroanatomy [*formerly also* †131.1]

.81 Brain

.82 Spinal cord

.83 Peripheral nerves

Including ganglions [*formerly* †611.89]; cranial, spinal, cervical, thoracic, lumbar, sacral, and coccygeal nerves

.839 Autonomic nerves

Including sympathetic and parasympathetic systems

611.84–611.88 Anatomy of sense organs

.84 Eye

.85 Ear

.86 Olfactory organs

.87 Gustatory organs

.88 Tactile organs [*formerly also* †152.51]

Including comprehensive works on proprioceptive organs [*formerly also* †152.61], sense organs

For anatomy of the eye, see 611.84; *of the ear,* 611.85; *of olfactory organs,* 611.86; *of gustatory organs,* 611.87

[†.89] Ganglions

Class in 611.83

.9 Regional anatomy

Including surgical and topographical anatomy

.91 Head

.92 Face

.93 Neck

611.94 Thorax

.95 Abdomen

.96 Pelvic and perineal region

For anatomy of hipbone, see 611.718 1

.97 Upper extremities

.98 Lower extremities

612 Human physiology

Functions of human body and its organs

For animal physiology, comparative physiology, see 591.1; *plant physiology,* 581.1; *physiological psychology,* 131; *pathological physiology,* 616.07

SUMMARY

612.01 Theoretic considerations
.1 Circulatory systems
.2 Respiratory system
.3 Nutrition
.4 Lymphatic and glandular systems
.5 Body temperature
.6 Reproductive system and developmental periods
.7 Motor and integumentary systems
.8 Nervous system

.01 Theoretic considerations

Including value, definitions, classification, terminology

[†.014] General physiology

Class in 574.1

[†.014 1–†.014 3] Cytology

Class cytology in 574.87; human cytology in 611.018 1

.014 4 Physiological effects of physical agents [*formerly* *612.017]

For physics of bodily functions, see 612.017; *physiological effects of heat and cold,* 612.59

.014 41 Physiological effects of barometric pressure [*formerly also* †612.27]

Including physiological aspects of caisson disease, altitude sickness

612.014 42 Electrophysiology

For electrotherapy, see 615.845; *electrophysiology of nerves,* 612.813

[†.014 43] Physiological effects of heat and cold

Class in 612.59

.014 44 Physiological effects of light

For phototherapy, see 615.831

.014 45 Physiological effects of sound vibration

[†.014 47] Geotropism and thigmotaxis

Class in 581.183 2

.014 48 Physiological effects of penetrating radiation

Including effects of X rays, cosmic rays, gamma rays

For radiotherapy, see 615.84

.015 Human biochemistry

Comprehensive works on composition of and chemical transformations occurring within human body

Divide by form divisions 01–09, e.g., experimental biochemistry 612.015 072

For biochemistry of a specific part of human body, see physiology of the part, e.g., chemical composition of blood 612.11; *biological products,* 615.328–615.39; *their chemistry,* 547.73–547.76; *pharmacodynamics,* 615.7; *metabolism,* 612.39; *animal biochemistry,* 591.192; *plant biochemistry,* 581.192

.015 1 Enzymes (Ferments) in human body

Comprehensive works

For action of enzymes in a specific part of human body, see physiology of the part, e.g., pepsin in the stomach 612.32

.015 2 Chemical composition of human body

[†.015 3] Metabolism

Class metabolism in 612.39; effect of temperature on metabolism in 612.59

.015 4 Pigments and pigmentation

Including melanin, bilirubin, porphyrin, carotenoids and similar substances in human body

612.017 Human biophysics

Comprehensive works on physics of bodily functions and physiological effects of physical agents

Class physiological effects of physical agents [*formerly* *612.017] in 612.014 4

For biophysics of a specific part of human body, see physiology of the part, e.g., principles of circulation 612.13; *physical medicine,* 615.8; *physiological effects of heat and cold,* 612.59

.018 Tissue and organ culture

For study of microscopic structure of tissues and cells, see 611.018

.07 Study and teaching of human physiology

.072 Experimental physiology

Including vivisection

For anatomy and vivisection laws, see 614.22

612.1–612.89 Physiology of specific systems and organs

Class pathology of specific systems and organs [*formerly* subdivisions of †612.1–†612.89] in 616–618

.1 **Circulatory systems**

Functions of cardiovascular and hemic systems

For lymphatic system, see 612.42; *circulation in a specific part of human body, the physiology of the part, e.g., pulmonary circulation* 612.215

.11 Blood

For spleen, see 612.41; *bone marrow,* 612.491; *microscopic study of blood elements,* 611.018 5; *blood analysis in diagnosis,* 616.075 61

.111 Red corpuscles

Biochemistry, biophysics of red corpuscles (erythrocytes)

Including counting red corpuscles

.112 White corpuscles

Biochemistry, biophysics of white corpuscles (leucocytes)

Including comprehensive works on counting techniques

For counting red corpuscles, see 612.111

612.115 Coagulation of blood

Including composition and properties of coagulation products, e.g., blood plasma, platelets, fibrin, fibrinoplastin, thrombin

.118 Properties of whole blood

.118 1 Physical properties

Including osmotic pressure, viscosity, cryoscopic methods of studying blood

.118 2 Biological properties

Including physiological aspects of immunity, antibodies

.12 Chemical properties

Including chemical components of blood, e.g., carbohydrates, lipoids, cholesterin, mineral salts, enzymes

.13 Principles of blood circulation

Including arterial, venous, and capillary circulation; rapidity of circulation [*formerly* †612.15]

.14 Blood pressure

Including systolic and diastolic pressure; pulse [*formerly* †612.16] and pulse rate, sphygmomanometry

For pulse and blood pressure in diagnosis, see 616.075

[†.15] Rapidity of circulation

Class in 612.13

[†.16] Pulse

Class in 612.14

.17 Heart

Including cardiac muscles

.171 Cardiac contractions

Including rhythmic contraction (systole) and dilation (diastole) of heart cavities, action of cardiac valves, methods of graphically recording cardiac movements

For blood pressure, see 612.14; *electrocardiography in diagnosing heart disease,* 616.120 75

.173 Cardiac metabolism

[†.174] Drugs affecting cardiovascular system

Class in 615.71

612.178 Innervation of heart

Nerve distribution and stimulation of heart

For vasomotors, see 612.18

[†.179] Prenatal circulation

Class in 612.64

.18 Vasomotors

Nerves causing dilation and constriction of blood vessels

Including vasoconstrictors, vasodilators

For innervation of heart, see 612.178

.2 Respiratory system

.21 Respiratory biophysics

Including respiratory movements, rhythm, sounds and similar phenomena

.215 Physiology of specific respiratory organs

Physiology of nose and pharynx, bronchi, trachea, pleura, lungs, pulmonary muscles

Including pulmonary circulation

.22 Respiratory biochemistry

Including gaseous exchange in the blood [*formerly* †612.23]

For tissue respiration, see 612.26

.23 Physiology of asphyxiation

Class gaseous exchange in the blood [*formerly* †612.23] in 612.22

For treatment of asphyxiation, see 617.18

.26 Tissue respiration

Including catabolic processes

[†.27] Physiological effects of barometric pressure

Class in 612.014 41

.28 Innervation of respiratory system

Nerve distribution and stimulation of respiratory apparatus

612.3 Nutrition

Sum total of processes of ingestion, digestion, assimilation of food to build and maintain tissue, and to release energy

For food values, see 641.1; *food in relation to health,* 613.2; *dietotherapy,* 615.854; *chemical analysis of food and drink,* 543.1; *food inspection,* 614.31

612.31–612.36 Physiology of digestive system

Biophysics, biochemistry, innervation of digestive tract

.31 Oral physiology

Including physiology of mouth, tonsils, tongue, esophagus

.311 Dental physiology

Including mastication

For dentistry, see 617.6

.313 Salivary digestion

[†.314] Venoms

Class in 615.942

.32 Gastric digestion

Physiology of stomach

.33 Intestinal digestion

Including physiology of small intestines, intestinal secretions

For digestion in large intestines, see 612.36; *absorption,* 612.38

.34 Pancreatic digestion

Physiology of pancreas and pancreatic secretions

.35 Biliary digestion

Physiology of liver, gall bladder, bile ducts, biliary secretions

.36 Physiology of large intestines

Including physiology of vermiform appendix, digestion in large intestines, defecation

.38 Absorption

Transfer of digested food from alimentary canal into blood stream

612.39 Metabolism [*formerly also* †612.015 3]

Assimilation of digested food into tissue (anabolism) and conversion into energy (catabolism)

For energy metabolism, see 612.57; *catabolic processes,* 612.26

.391 Physiology of hunger and thirst

For sensation and perception of hunger and thirst, see 152.6

.392 Mineral metabolism

[†.392 1] Carbonaceous foods

Class in 612.396

[†.392 2] Nitrogenous foods

Class in 612.398

.392 3 Water metabolism

.392 4 Metabolism of sulfur, phosphorus, iron

Including metabolism of trace elements

.392 6 Metabolism of other minerals

Including metabolism of sodium, potassium, calcium salts

[†.394] Food requirements for children

Class in 649.3

[†.395] Food requirements for adults

Class in 641.1

.396 Carbohydrate metabolism

Metabolism of carbonacous foods [*formerly also* †612.392 1]

.397 Fat and lipoid metabolism

.398 Protein metabolism

Metabolism of nitrogenous foods [*formerly also* †612.392 2]

.399 Vitamins in the body

For pharmacology of vitamins, see 615.328; *chemistry of vitamins in vitro,* 547.74; *vitamin therapy,* 615.854

612.4 **Lymphatic and glandular systems**

Biochemistry, biophysics, innervation of lymphatic, endocrine, and exocrine systems

Use 612.400 1–612.400 9 for form divisions

For glands of a specific system, see the system, e.g., mammary glands 612.664

.405 Hormones in the body

For endocrinotherapy, see 615.36; *chemistry of hormones in vitro,* 547.73

.41 Spleen

For red corpuscles, see 612.111; *bone marrow,* 612.491

.42 Lymphatic system

Including physiology of lymph, lymph glands

.43 Thymus gland

.44 Thyroid and parathyroid glands

.45 Adrenal glands

.46 Urinary system

.461 Chemical properties of urine

Including chemical composition, reactivity, analysis

For urinalysis in diagnosis, see 616.075 6

.463 Physiology of kidneys

Including formation and secretion of urine, renal circulation

For micturition, see 612.467

.467 Physiology of bladder, ureters, urethra

Including micturition

.467 3 Innervation of urinary system

.49 Other endocrine glands

.491 Bone marrow

For spleen, see 612.41; *red corpuscles,* 612.111

.492 Pituitary and pineal glands

612.5 **Body temperature**

Including heat production, radiation, regulation in the body

.55 Disturbances in heat regulation

Including physiological aspects of fevers

For treatment of fevers, see 616.9

.57 Energy metabolism

Including measurement of basal metabolism rate

For diagnosis, see 616.075

[†.58] Hibernating animals

Class in 591.543

.59 Physiological effects of heat and cold [*formerly also* †612.014 43]

Including physiological effects of temperature on metabolism [*formerly also* †612.015 35]

.591 Physiological effects of high temperatures

For thermotherapy, see 615.832; *tropical hygiene,* 613.113

.592 Physiological effects of low temperatures

For cryotherapy, see 615.832 9; *arctic hygiene,* 613.111

.6 **Reproductive system and developmental periods**

Biochemistry, biophysics, innervation of reproductive system and developmental periods

Use 612.600 1–612.600 9 for form divisions

.61 Male reproductive system

.62 Female reproductive system

.63 Pregnancy [*formerly also* †618.21, *618]

Including conception; parturition [*formerly also* †618.4]

Class birth control [*formerly* *612.63] in 613.943

For management of pregnancy, see 618.24; *embryology,* 612.64

.64 Human embryology [*formerly also* †*611.013]

Prenatal development

Including prenatal circulation [*formerly* †612.179]

.646 Development of embryo

Intra-uterine development from conception thru three months

612.647 Development of fetus

Intra-uterine development from end of embryonic period to birth

.648 Development of newborn (neonate)

First month of postfetal development

.65 Child development [*formerly also* †136.71, *136.7]

Development from infancy to puberty

For child psychology, see 136.7; *child care and management,* 649.1; *pediatrics,* 618.92

.66 Adult development

.661 Adolescent development

Including puberty

.662 Menstruation

.663 Period of mature development

Including period of fertility

.664 Lactation

Including physiology of mammary glands

.665 Climacteric development

Male and female climacteric changes

Including menopause

.67 Physical gerontology [*formerly* *618.97]

Physiology of aging

For social gerontology, see 301.435; *geriatrics,* 618.97

.68 Longevity factors

.7 Motor and integumentary systems

Biochemistry, biophysics, innervation of motor and integumentary systems; physiology of movement [*formerly also* †158.2]

For muscle reactivity to electrical stimulation, see 612.813

[†.71] Protoplasm

Class in 611.018 1

[†.72–†.73] Vibratile cilia, smooth muscles

Class in 612.74

612.74 Muscle physiology

Smooth [*formerly also* †612.73] and striated muscles

Including cilia [*formerly* †612.72]

For cardiac muscles, see 612.17

.741 Muscular contractions [*formerly also* †612.745]

Including muscular elasticity, tonus, irritability

.743 Innervation of muscles

.744 Chemistry of muscles

Including muscular metabolism, chemical composition of muscles

[†.745] Muscular contractions

Class in 612.741

.75 Physiology of bones, joints, connective tissues

.76 Human locomotion

Including physiology of exercise and rest

For rest and exercise in relation to health, see 613.7

.78 Voice and speech

Including physiology of larynx [*formerly also* †534.7], glottis, epiglottis

.79 Physiology of skin

.792 Secretion of skin glands

Including perspiration

.798 Innervation of skin

.799 Physiology of nails and hair

.8 Nervous system [*formerly also* †131.2]

Biochemistry and biophysics of nervous system

Including innervation principles

Class sensation [*formerly* *612.8] in 152 and its subdivisions

For physiological psychology, see 131

.81 Peripheral nervous system

Including comprehensive works on physiology of nerve fibers

For a specific peripheral nerve, see the part innervated, e.g., auditory nerve 612.85

.811 Types of peripheral nerves

.811 5 Motor nerves

612.811 6 Sensory nerves

.813 Electrophysiology of nerves [*formerly also* †612.816 1]

Including muscle reactivity

.816 Reactivity of nerves to stimulation

For electrophysiology of nerves, see 612.813

[†.816 1] Action of electricity

Class in 612.813

.819 Cranial nerves

.819 9 Spinal nerves

Including comprehensive works on cervical, thoracic, lumbar, and sacral nerves

.82 Central nervous system

For peripheral nervous system, see 612.81; *spinal cord,* 612.83

.821 Brain

For physiological psychology, see 131; *a specific part of brain, the part, e.g., cerebellum* 612.827

[†.821 1] Reaction time studies

Class in 152.83

[†.821 2] Attention, memory, association, imagination

Class attention in 152.723; memory in 154; association in 153.2; imagination in 155

[†.821 3] Instincts, intelligence, emotions, sensibility

Class instincts in 158.424; intelligence in 151; emotions in 157; sensibility in 157.5

[†.821 31] Comparative psychology

Class in 151.3

[†.821 34] Will, habits, drives

Class will in 159.2; habits in 158.43; drives in 159.4

[†.821 4] Action of poisons

Class in 613.8

[†.821 5] Effect of disease on intelligence

Class in 151.29

[†.821 6] Psychic reflexes

Class in 158.423

612.821 7 Sleep and dreams

Physiological aspects only

Including cerebral circulation, chemical changes during sleep phenomena

For psychological aspects of sleep and dreams, see 135

[†.821 71] Hypnotism

Class in 134

[†.821 8] Sensation and perception

Class in 152

[†.821 88] Psychophysics

Class in 152.8

[†.821 89] Sensory illusions

Class in 152.73

.822 Biochemistry and biophysics of nerve tissue

.824 Cerebral circulation

.825 Cerebrum

Including cerebral hemispheres, convolutions, cortex

For cerebral circulation, see 612.824; *cerebral commissures and peduncles,* 612.826

.825 2 Cerebral localization of motor functions

.825 5 Cerebral localization of sensory functions

.826 Brain stem

Including thalamus, cerebral commissures, geniculate bodies, corpora quadrigemina, cerebral peduncles, pons Variolii

For medulla oblongata, see 612.828

.827 Cerebellum

.828 Medulla oblongata

.83 Spinal cord

For spinal nerves, see 612.819 9

612.84–612.88 Physiology of sense organs

Biochemistry, biophysics, innervation of sense organs

.84 Physiological optics [*formerly also* †535.7, *535.6]

For psychological optics, see 152.1

612.841 Fibrous tunics of eye [*formerly also* †152.11]

Including physiology of cornea, conjunctiva, anterior chamber, sclera

.842 Uvea [*formerly also* †152.12]

Pigmentary layer of eye

Including physiology of iris, choroid, ciliary body

.843 Optic nerve and retina [*formerly also* †152.13]

[†.843 3–†.843 7] Visual sensation and perception (Psychological optics)

Class in 152.1

.844 Eyeball [*formerly also* †152.14]

Including physiology of crystalline lens, aqueous humor, vitreous humor

.846 Movements of eye [*formerly also* †152.16]

Ocular muscular mechanism

[†.846 2] Binocular phenomena

Class in 152.1

.847 Eyelids and tear ducts [*formerly also* †152.17]

Palpebral and lacrimal mechanism

[†.848] Tests of visual perception

Class in 152.18

.85 Physiological audition [*formerly also* †534.7]

.851 External ear (Pinna) [*formerly also* †152.21]

.854 Middle ear [*formerly also* †152.24–†152.27]

Including physiology of tympanic membrane, eustachian tube, ossicles [*all formerly* †612.855–†612.857]; mastoid processes

[†.855–†.857] Parts of middle ear

Class in 612.854

.858 Internal ear (Labyrinth) [*formerly also* †152.28]

Including physiology of semicircular canals, cochlea, basilar membrane, organ of Corti, acoustic nerve, endolymph

[†.858 7–†.858 76] Auditory sensation and perception

Class in 152.2

[†.858 78] Tests of auditory perception

Class in 152.28

612.86 Olfactory organs [*formerly also* †152.31]

[†.867] Olfactory sensation and perception

Class in 152.3

[†.867 8] Tests of olfactory sensation

Class in 152.37

.87 Gustatory organs [*formerly also* †152.41]

For gustatory sensation and perception, see 152.4

.88 Tactile and proprioceptive organs [*formerly also* †152.51, †152.61]

[†.882–†.884] Cutaneous sensation and perception

Class in 152.5

[†.885] Proprioceptive sensation and perception

Class in 152.6

[†.886 1] Orientational sensation and perception

Class in 152.6

.89 Autonomic nervous system

Including sympathetic and parasympathetic nervous systems

613 Hygiene [*formerly also* subdivisions of *616]

Health and its preservation

Including personal hygiene

For public health, see 614; *health education in schools,* 371.76

SUMMARY

613.1	**Environment and health**
.2	**Food and health**
.3	**Beverages and health**
.4	**Cleanliness and health**
.48	**Clothing and health**
.5	**Housing and health**
.6	**Hygiene under unusual conditions**
.7	**Rest and exercise**
.8	**Stimulants and narcotics in relation to health**
.9	**Hereditary factors and health**

613.1 Environment and health

For housing and health, see 613.5

.11 Climate and health

For seasonal changes and health, see 613.13; *temperature and health,* 613.18

.111 Arctic hygiene

.113 Tropical hygiene

.119 Acclimation

.12 Health resorts

Including spas, seashore and mountain resorts

.13 Seasonal changes and health

For temperature and health, see 613.18; *climate and health,* 613.11

.14 Humidity and health

.18 Temperature and health

Including effects of indoor temperatures and air conditioning on health

For humidity and health, see 613.14; *climate and health,* 613.11

.19 Air and light

.192 Fresh air and breathing

.193 Sun bathing

.194 Nudism

.2 Food and health

For food analysis, see 543.1; *digestion and metabolism of food,* 612.3; *food inspection,* 614.31; *food values,* 641.1; *cookery,* 641.5–641.8; *beverages and health,* 613.3

[†.22] Food for infants

Class in 649.3

[†.23] Dietotherapy

Class in 615.854

.24 Underweight and health

Including effects of fasting, famine, starvation

.25 Overweight and health

613.26 Vegetarianism and health

Including health aspects of fruits [*formerly* †613.27], nuts, vegetables, low-protein diets

[†.27] Fruits

Class in 613.26

.28 High-protein diets and health

Including health aspects of fish and shellfish [*both formerly* †613.29], meat, milk, egg diets

[†.29] Fish and shellfish

Class in 613.28

.3 Beverages and health

For analysis of beverages, see 543.1; *inspection of beverages,* 614.34; *alcoholic beverages and health,* 613.8

.31 Water and health

[†.33–†.34] Biological analysis of water

Class in 628.16

[†.35] Purification of water

Class in 628.16

.36 Iced beverages and health

.37 Hot beverages and health

Including hot tea, coffee, cocoa

.38 Carbonated beverages and health

Including mineralized waters

.4 Cleanliness and health

Including bathing

For hydrotherapy, see 615.853; *swimming pools and bathing beaches,* 614.796

.48 Clothing and health

.5 Housing and health

.6 Hygiene under unusual conditions

[†.61–†.66] Industrial hygiene

Class in 331.82

.67 Military hygiene [*formerly* *356.92]

For military medical services, see 355.345

613.68 Naval hygiene [*formerly* *359.98]

Including nonmilitary shipboard hygiene

For naval medical services, see 359.345

.69 Survival instructions

Survival after airplane accidents, shipwrecks, and similar disasters

Including survival in arctic, tropical, desert regions

For protection of civilians in time of war, see 355.232 2

.7 Rest and exercise

.71 Exercise and health

Class gymnastics [*formerly* †613.71] in 796.41

For physical education, athletics, sports in school, see 371.73–371.75; *medical gymnastics,* 615.824

.78 Correct posture

.79 Relaxation and health

Including rest and sleep as factors in maintaining health

.8 Stimulants and narcotics in relation to health [*formerly* *616.86]

Including effects of poisons on nervous system [*formerly* †131.334, †612.821 4]; effects of alcohol

For treatment of alcoholism, see 616.861; *of drug addiction,* 616.863; *ethical aspects,* 178

.9 Hereditary factors and health

For biological and physical determinants of personality, see 137.31; *influence of heredity on personal characteristics,* 136.3

[†.91] Congenital deformities

Class in 611.012

.92 Inherited mental disorders

For treatment of a specific mental disorder, see the subject, e.g., manic-depressive psychoses 616.895; *psychological aspects of a specific mental disorder, the subject, e.g., manic-depressive psychoses* 132.195

.93 Inherited diseases

For treatment of a specific disease, see the subject, e.g., strabismus 617.762; *inherited mental disorders,* 613.92

613.94 Eugenics [*formerly* *301.323, *formerly also* †575.1]

Safeguarding and improving human heritage thru judicious choice of mate and eugenic practices, e.g., sterilization, birth control

For use of eugenic practices to prevent crime, see 364.42

.942 Sterilization [*formerly* *301.323]

.943 Birth control [*formerly* *612.63]

Including natural (rhythm), chemical and mechanical methods of contraception

For planned parenthood, see 301.426; *physiology of reproductive system,* 612.6

614 Public health and other public aspects of medicine

For forensic medicine, see 340.6; *medical welfare work,* 362.1; *toxicology,* 615.9; *sanitary engineering,* 628; *local boards of health,* 352.4; *offenses against public health and safety,* 364.13

SUMMARY

614.1 Registration and certification
.2 State control of medicine
.3 Food and drug control
.4 Control of disease
.5 Control of specific diseases
.59 Control of noncommunicable diseases
.6 Disposal of the dead
.7 Sanitation and sanitary control
.8 Safety measures

.09 History of public health movement

Including public health legislation, reports, surveys

Divide like 940–999, e.g., public health in England 614.094 2

.1 Registration and certification

Class vital statistics [*formerly* †614.1] in 312

.11 Birth certification

.12 Death certification

.14 Reports on causes of death

For statistics on causes of death, see 312.26

.15 Morbidity reports

.17 Premarital examinations and certification

614.2 **State control of medicine**

Including medical laws, regulations, economic aspects; medical privilege [*formerly* *340.6]

Class control of patent medicines [*formerly* *614.2] in 614.35

For local boards of health, see 352.4

.22 Anatomy and vivisection laws

[†.23] Expert testimony

Class in 340.6

.24 Licensure and registration

Including licensing and registration of physicians, surgeons, dentists, pharmacists, nurses, and other medical specialists

For directories of physicians and surgeons, see 610.58; *state board examinations,* 610.76

.25 Medical economics

For prepaid medical care, see 368.382

.253 Economics of medical care

Cost of medical services to patient

.255 Economics of medical practice

Including fee schedules, collecting of accounts, physicians' income

For medical ethics, see 610.694

.26 Laws against quackery and malpractice

[†.27] Control of nostrums and patent medicines

Class in 614.35

.28 Control of sale of poisons and narcotics

Including regulations of manufacture, sale, use

For inspection of drugs, see 614.35

.3 **Food and drug control**

Control of adulterations and health hazards in commodities by means of legislation, inspection, standardization, certification

.31 Food and food products [*formerly also* †614.33]

Inspection of fresh and procest fruits, vegetables, meats, poultry, fish and shellfish

614.32 Milk and milk products

Inspection and certification of milk, cream, milk by-products, cheese and cheese foods, butter, oleomargarine

For chemical analysis of milk and milk products, see 543.2; *testing milk,* 637.127; *butter,* 637.22; *cheese,* 637.32

[†.33] Other articles of food

Class in 614.31

.34 Beverages

Inspection of alcoholic and nonalcoholic beverages

Including wines, beer, liquors [*formerly also* †178.4], fruit and vegetable juices, carbonated beverages, tea, coffee, chocolate, cocoa

.35 Drugs and cosmetics

Including control [*formerly* †614.27, *614.2] and inspection of patent medicines

.36 Tobacco and tobacco products

.37 Other commodities

Including inspection of pigments, paper, fabrics, toys

.4 **Control of disease**

For control of specific diseases, see 614.5

.42 Geographic distribution of disease (Medical geography)

Class medical climatology [*formerly* †614.42] in 616.988

.422 Distribution by zones and physical regions

Divide like 631.091, e.g., diseases in the tropics 614.422 3

.423–.429 Distribution by country

Divide like 930–999, e.g., diseases in India 614.425 4

.43 Disease carriers

Transmission of disease by animal carriers (vectors) and their control

For treatment of a specific disease transmitted by carriers, see the disease, e.g., malaria 616.936 2; *control of diseases transmitted by animals,* 614.56

.432 Insects as disease carriers

.432 2 Flies

.432 3 Mosquitoes

614.432 4 Lice and fleas

.432 9 Other insects

.433 Ticks and other arachnids as disease carriers

.434 Birds as disease carriers

.438 Rodents as disease carriers

.439 Other disease carriers

Including human carriers

.44 Preventive medicine

Public measures for preventing disease

For control of specific diseases, see 614.5

.45 Isolation

Prevention of spread of disease in homes, hospitals, schools, public places thru isolation

.46 Quarantine

Maritime, land, and air quarantine regulations

.47 Immunization

Public measures for preventing disease thru protective inoculation

[†.471–†.478] Immunization against specific diseases

Class in 614.5 and its subdivisions

.48 Disinfection

Including fumigation, sterilization

For disinfectants, see 615.77

.49 Epidemiology

History and control of epidemics

Divide like 930–999, e.g., epidemics in France 614.494 4

.5 Control of specific diseases [*formerly* *616 and its subdivisions]

Control of specific diseases thru immunization [*formerly* †614.471–†614.478], isolation, and other public health measures

---

614.511–614.566 Control of specific infectious diseases

For control of noncommunicable diseases, see 614.59

.511 Typhoid fever (Enteric fever)

.512 Diphtheria

614.514 Cholera

Asian, Indian, epidemic, malignant, pestilential cholera

[†.515] Cholera-infantum (Epidemic diarrhea)

Class in 614.517

.516 Dysentery

Amoebic and bacillary dysentery

.517 Epidemic diarrhea [*formerly also* †614.515]

.518 Influenzas

Including Spanish influenza, Asian "flu," other acute influenzalike diseases in epidemic form

.52 Exanthematous diseases

Diseases characterized by skin eruptions

.521 Smallpox (Variola)

Including alastrim

.522 Scarlet fever (Scarlatina)

.523 Measles (Rubeola [*formerly also* †614.524])

.524 German measles (Rubella, roetheln)

Class rubeola [*formerly* †614.524] in 614.523

.525 Chicken pox (Varicella)

.526 Typhus

.53 Malarial fevers

Including acute (intermittent and remittent), pernicious, chronic malarias

For control of mosquitoes, see 614.432 3

.54 Other communicable diseases

.541 Yellow fever

For control of mosquitoes, see 614.432 3

.542 Pulmonary tuberculosis

.543 Whooping cough (Pertussis)

.544 Mumps (Epidemic parotitis)

.545 Puerperal fever (Puerperal septicemia)

.546 Leprosy (Hansen's disease)

614.547 Venereal diseases

.547 2 Syphilis

.548 Gonorrhea

.549 Poliomyelitis

.55 Parasitic diseases

Divide like 616.96, e.g., control of shistosomiasis 614.553

For malarial fevers, see 614.53; *trichinosis,* 614.562; *amoebic dysentery,* 614.516

.56 Diseases transmitted by animals

For disease carriers, see 614.43; *malarial fevers,* 614.53; *yellow fever,* 614.541

.561 Anthrax (Charbon)

Woolsorters' disease, splenic fever, malignant and contagious anthrax

.562 Trichinosis

.563 Hydrophobia (Rabies)

.564 Glanders (Equinia)

Including farcy

.565 Undulant fever (Brucellosis)

.566 Psittacosis

.59 Control of noncommunicable diseases

Including public health aspects of degenerative diseases, cancer, diabetes mellitus

For mental hygiene, see 131.3

.6 Disposal of the dead

For manners and customs in treatment of the dead, see 393

.61 Interment and cemeteries

For mortuary architecture, see 726.8; *design and care of cemeteries,* 718

.62 Cremation and crematories

For mortuary architecture, see 726.8

.63 Transportation of the dead

Including importation

614.64 Embalming and undertaking

Including post-mortem plastic surgery

.68 Morgues

.7 Sanitation and sanitary control

For sanitary engineering, see 628

.71 Dangerous air pollution

Regulations for control of air pollution and contamination by fumes, smoke, gases [*formerly* †614.72], other industrial processes

Including smog

For nuisances, see 614.76

.715 Air contamination by radioactive substances

Including preventive measures against radioactive fallout

[†.72] Air pollution by noxious gases

Class in 614.71

[†.73–†.75] Air pollution by vegetable, animal trades; storage and handling of noxious and offensive materials

Class in 614.76

.76 Nuisances

Regulations for control of offensive odors from animal and vegetable trades [*both formerly* †614.73–†614.74], stables, sties, offal, cesspools, dead animals, garbage

Including storage and handling of noxious and offensive materials [*formerly* †614.75]

For sewage treatment and disposal, see 628.3; *municipal garbage treatment and disposal,* 628.445; *rural sewage and refuse disposal,* 628.74

.77 Water and soil pollution

[†.771] Soil analysis

Class in 631.42

.772 Water and water supply

Including public health aspects of fluoridation

For techniques and methods of water purification, see 628.166 3

614.776 Soil pollution and drainage

For agricultural drainage, see 631.6

.78 Noise control

[†.781] City planning

Class in 711.4

[†.782] Subways and elevated ways

Class in 711.75

[†.783] Parks

Class in 711.558

[†.784] Building laws and codes

Class in 692.9

.79 Public buildings and assembly places

Including premises, equipment, operations, operating personnel; sanitary laws and regulations

.791 Eating places

Including restaurants, lunchrooms, milk bars, ice-cream parlors

.792 Hotels

Including inns, motels, tourist houses, boarding houses

For hotel administration, see 647.94

.794 Public comfort stations

For engineering aspects of comfort stations, see 628.45

.796 Swimming pools and bathing beaches

For water safety, see 614.81

.797 Barber shops and beauty shops

For administration of beauty shops, see 646.72; *of barber shops,* 646.74

.799 Public carriers

For traffic safety, see 614.86

.8 Safety measures

Prevention of accidents and casualties

.81 Water safety

Safety measures at beaches, public pools

Including rescue, resuscitation of drowning victims

.82 Prevention of gas suffocation

614.83 Prevention of explosions

Laws and regulations on and inspection of manufacture, storage, transportation of explosives and combustible materials

.84 Fire prevention and protection

For fire departments, see 352.3; *engineering aspects of fire engines,* 621.68

.841 Fire prevention

.843 Fire extinction

.844 Extinction thru automatic sprinkling devices

.845 Extinction with chemical extinguishers

.846 Extinction with water

.847 Safety measures

Including laws and regulations on exits from public buildings [*formerly* †614.848], fire escapes, fire-resistant construction

For fire prevention, see 614.841

[†.848] Exits from public buildings

Class in 614.847

[†*.85] Industrial safety and hygiene

Class industrial hygiene in 331.82; industrial safety in 331.823; building laws and inspection in 692.9

.86 Traffic safety

.862 Highway safety

.863 Railway safety

Including safety regulations on streetcars

.864 Water travel safety

Including regulations concerning lifeboats, life preservers, communication equipment, harbor safety [*all formerly also* †614.865–†614.867]

[†.865–†.867] Harbor safety, lifeboats

Class in 614.864

.868 Rescue operations after shipwrecks

.869 Air travel safety

.87 Accidents and safety measures under other conditions

Comprehensive works only

Class accidents and safety measures under a specific set of conditions with the subject, e.g., ski safety 796.93

614.88 First aid

Nonprofessional emergency treatment to accident victims before regular medical or surgical care can be given

For rescue and resuscitation of victims of drowning, see 614.81

[†.881–†.883] Ambulance service

Class in 362.18

[†.9] Veterinary sanitation

Class in 636.089 4

615 Therapeutics and pharmacology

For a therapy applied to a specific disease, see the disease, e.g., fever therapy in syphilis 616.951 3

SUMMARY

615.1	Pharamcology
.2	Mineral drugs
.3	Organic drugs
.4	Practical pharmacy
.5	Therapeutics
.6	Methods of medication
.7	Pharmacodynamics
.8	Physical medicine
.85	Other therapies
.856	Quacks and quackery
.88	Patent medicine
.89	Folk medicine
.9	Toxicology

615.1–615.39 Pharmacology and pharmacy

For practical pharmacy, see 615.4; *toxicology,* 615.9; *patent medicines,* 615.88

.1 Pharmacology

Including materia medica

.11 Pharmacopoeias

Divide like 940–999, e.g., Farmacopea Chilena 615.118 3

.12 Dispensatories

Divide like 940–999, e.g., British pharmaceutical codex 615.124 2

.13 Formularies (Collected prescriptions)

Divide like 930–999, e.g., National Formulary (United States) 615.137 3

615.14 Posology

Including prescription writing, therapeutic and physiological incompatibilities

.19 Pharmaceutical chemistry

Manufacture and analysis of drugs

For manufacture, identification, assaying of specific drugs and biological products, see 615.2–615.39; *physiological and therapeutic action of drugs,* 615.7

.190 15 Chemical analysis of drugs [*formerly* †*543.4]

Including chemical analysis of medicinals

.190 18 Drug assay methods

.2 Mineral drugs

Manufacture, identification, assaying of synthetic inorganic drugs

Including naturally occurring mineral drugs; comprehensive works on synthetic drugs

Arrange specific mineral (inorganic) drugs alphabetically, using A1 for comprehensive works, e.g., calomel 615.2 C1

For synthetic organic drugs, see 615.31

.3 Organic drugs

Manufacture, identification, assaying

.32 Pharmacognosy

Drugs of vegetable [*formerly also* †615.33] and animal origin

Including crude drugs, alkaloids, herbals

Arrange specific drugs of vegetable and animal origin alphabetically except as provided for in 615.328–615.39, using A1 for comprehensive works, e.g., digitalis 615.32 D5

615.328–615.39 Biological products

Including synthetic biological products

.328 Vitamins

For fish and shark liver oils, see 615.34

.329 Antibiotics

[†.33] Other vegetable drugs

Class in 615.32

.34 Fish and shark liver oils

.35 Ferments (Enzymes)

Including pepsin, diastase, trypsin, chymotrypsin, papain

615.36 Organotherapy (Endocrinotherapy) [*formerly* *616.4]

Including endocrine drugs, hormones

.362 Thyroid and parathyroid extracts

Including synthetic thyroxin

.363 Anterior pituitary hormones

.364 Adrenal hormones

Including ACTH, cortisone, adrenalin

.365 Insulin

.366 Sex hormones

.367 Liver extracts

.369 Extracts and secretions of other organs

.37 Serum therapy (Immunotherapy) [*formerly* *616.97]

Treatment or prevention of diseases by injection of vaccines, toxins, antitoxins, specific serums

For allergies, anaphylaxis, see 616.97; *immunization as a public health measure,* 614.47; *in control of a specific disease, the disease, e.g., diphtheria* 614.512

.372 Vaccines

Including bacterins, sero-bacterins

.373 Toxins

Including toxoids

.375 Antitoxins

Including toxin-antitoxins, convalescent serums

.39 Human blood products

.4 Practical pharmacy

Preparation, e.g., filling prescriptions, and dispensing of drugs

.401 5 Pharmaceutical mathematics

.406 5 Economics of pharmacy

.42 Solutions and extracts

Including preparation of decoctions, infusions, tinctures, elixirs, syrups, glycerites, collodions

.43 Pills and powders

Including capsules, tablets, troches

615.45 Ointments and emulsions

.49 Other preparations

Including plasters, resins

615.5–615.895 Methods of treating diseases

For surgery, see 617; *organotherapy,* 615.36; *serum therapy,* 615.37

.5 Therapeutics

.53 Systems of medicine

.531 Allopathy

.532 Homeopathy

.533 Osteopathy [*formerly* †*615.82]

.534 Chiropractic [*formerly* †*615.82]

Including spondylotherapy

.535 Naturopathy [*formerly* *615.85]

.537 Eclectic medicine

Including botanic and Thomsonian medicine [*both formerly* †615.855, *615.85]

.54 Age and therapeutics

.542 Pediatric therapeutics

For pediatrics, see 618.92

.547 Geriatric therapeutics

For geriatrics, see 618.97

.6 Methods of medication

.61 Oral medication

.62 Rectal medication

Including enemas

.63 Parenteral medication

Including subcutaneous, intradermal, intramuscular, intravenous [*formerly* †615.65], intra-arterial injections

For blood and blood plasma transfusions, see 615.65

.64 Inhalatory medication

For anesthetics, see 615.781

615.65 Blood and blood plasma transfusions [*formerly* *616.151]

Class intravenous injections [*formerly* †615.65] in 615.63

.650 74 Blood and blood plasma banks [*formerly* *616.151]

.66 Medication thru serous and mucous membranes

.67 External medication

For hydrotherapy, see 615.853

.7 Pharmacodynamics

Physiological and therapeutic action of drugs

.71 Drugs affecting cardiovascular system [*formerly also* †612.174]

.711 Heart stimulants

.716 Heart depressants

.718 Drugs affecting blood and blood-forming organs

Including blood coagulants and anticoagulants

.72 Drugs affecting respiratory system

Including expectorants, errhines, cough remedies

.73 Drugs affecting digestive system

.731 Emetics

.732 Cathartics

Including laxatives, purgatives

.733 Anthelmintics

.734 Digestants

.735 Demulcents

.74 Drugs affecting secretion

For diuretics and antidiuretics, see 615.761

.75 Antipyretics (Febrifuges)

.76 Drugs affecting urogenital system

.761 Drugs affecting urinary system

Including diuretics, antidiuretics

.766 Drugs affecting reproductive system

.77 Drugs affecting the skin

Including astringents, counterirritants, emollients, deodorants, antiseptics, disinfectants

615.78 Drugs affecting nervous system

For antipyretics, see 615.75

.781 Anesthetics

For methods and techniques of administering surgical anesthetics, see 617.96

.782 Hypnotics

Including depressants [*formerly also* †615.786], narcotics, sedatives

.783 Analgesics

Including anodynes

.784 Antispasmodics

Including mydriatics

.785 Stimulants

[†.786] Depressants

Class in 615.782

.788 Tranquilizers

.8 Physical medicine

[†.811] Bloodletting, venesection, cupping

Class in 615.89

[†.812] Setons and issues

Class in 617.917 8

[†.813] Bandages and ligatures

Class bandages in 617.93; ligatures in 617.917 8

[†.814] Acupuncture

Class in 615.89

[†.815] Oxygen therapy

Class in 615.836

.82 Mechanotherapy

Including massage, vibration, exercise, rest

Class osteopathy in 615.533, chiropractic in 615.534 [*both formerly* †*615.82]

.824 Medical gymnastics

For exercise as a factor in maintaining health, see 613.71

615.83 Physical therapies

For hydrotherapy, see 615.853

.831 Phototherapy

.831 4 Heliotherapy

.831 5 Ultraviolet rays as therapy

For infrared rays as therapy, see 615.832 2

.831 9 Other phototherapies

Including therapeutic use of colored lights

.832 Thermotherapy

For diathermy, see 615.845 3

.832 2 Infrared rays as therapy

.832 5 Fever therapy

Including malarial fever therapy

.832 9 Cryotherapy (Hypothermia)

Therapeutic application of low temperatures

.834 Climatotherapy

.836 Aerotherapy

Including oxygen therapy [*formerly* †615.815], pneumatotherapy

.837 Music therapy

.84 Electrotherapy and radiotherapy

.842 Actinotherapy

For phototherapy, see 615.831

.842 2 X-ray therapy

.842 3 Radium therapy

.842 4 Radioactive isotope therapy

.845 Electrotherapy

.845 3 Diathermy (Thermopenetration)

.85 Other therapies

Class naturopathy in 615.535; botanic and Thomsonian medicine in 615.537 [*all formerly* *615.85]

.851 Mental therapies

For psychiatric therapies, see 616.891

.851 2 Suggestion therapy (Hypnotherapy)

615.851 5 Occupational therapy

Including recreational therapy

For vocational rehabilitation of physically handicapt, see 371.91

.852 Faith healing (Hierotherapy) [*formerly also* †133.94]

.853 Hydrotherapy

Including balneotherapy

.854 Dietotherapy [*formerly also* †613.23]

Including vitamin therapy [*formerly* *616.46]

[†.855] Botanic and Thomsonian medicine

Class in 615.537

.856 Quacks and quackery

Including Perkinism

.88 Patent medicines

For inspection of patent medicines, see 614.35

.89 Folk medicine

Including bloodletting, venesection, cupping [*all formerly* †615.811]; acupuncture [*formerly* †615.814]; leeching, and other primitive, ancient, and medieval practices

.895 Medical superstitions

.9 Toxicology

Source, chemical composition, physiological effects, tests, antidotes of poisons

For pharmacology, see 615.1; *control of sale of poisons,* 614.28

.902 4 Industrial toxicology

.907 5 Detection of poisons and poisoning

.91 Gaseous poisons

Including asphyxiating gases, lethal gases used in war

For chemical warfare services, see 358.34; *air pollution,* 614.71

.92 Mineral (Inorganic) poisons

For gaseous poisons, see 615.91

.921 Acidic poisons

615.922 Alkaline poisons

.923 Nonmetallic poisons

For acidic poisons, see 615.921

.924 Phosphorus

.925 Saline poisons

.926 Arsenical poisons

.927 Mercurial poisons

.928 Lead poisons

.929 Copper poisons

.93 Vegetable poisons

Comprehensive works

Class specific vegetable poisons [*formerly* †615.93] in 615.95

.94 Animal and food poisons

Composite, naturally occurring animal and food poisons

For a specific organic poison, e.g., formic acid, see 615.95

.942 Venoms [*formerly* †612.314]

Including snake, scorpion, spider, bee venoms

.944 Food poisons

Including botulism, ptomaines

.945 Naturally poisonous foods

Including mussels, toadstools, poisonous fish

.95 Organic poisons

Comprehensive works

Including neurotic poisons; cerebral, spinal, cerebrospinal, cerebrocardiac poisons [*all formerly* †615.96–†615.99]

Arrange alphabetically, using A1 for comprehensive works, e.g., aconite 615.95 A2

For vegetable poisons, see 615.93; *animal and food poisons,* 615.94

[†.96–†.99] Cerebral, spinal, cerebrospinal, cerebrocardiac poisons

Class in 615.95

616 Medicine

Comprehensive works on pathology, medical and surgical treatment of disease

Including clinical and internal medicine

Class hygiene in 613, control of specific diseases in 614.5 [*both formerly* *616 and its subdivisions]

For surgery, see 617; *gynecology and obstetrics,* 618; *other medical specialties,* 618.9

SUMMARY

616.01 Medical microbiology
.02 Medical manuals
.07 Pathology (Pathological physiology and anatomy)
.08 Psychosomatic medicine
.1 Diseases of cardiovascular system
.2 Diseases of respiratory system
.3 Diseases of digestive tract
.4 Diseases of blood-forming, lymphatic and endocrine systems
.5 Dermatology (Diseases of skin)
.6 Diseases of urogenital system
.7 Diseases of musculoskeletal system
.8 Diseases of nervous system
.9 Communicable and other diseases

.01 Medical microbiology

Pathogenic microorganisms

For bacteriological examination, see 616.075 81

.012 Nosology

Classification of disease

.014 Pathogenic bacteria

.015 Pathogenic fungi

.016 Pathogenic protozoa

.019 Other pathogenic microorganisms

Including pathogenic viruses, rickettsiae

.02 Medical manuals

.024 Domestic medicine

Treatment of minor ailments without direction of physician

For first aid, see 614.88

616.07 Pathology (Pathological physiology and anatomy)

Study of structural and functional changes caused by disease

For pathology of a specific part of human body, see treatment of the part, e.g., pathological changes in lungs 616.240 7; *surgical pathology,* 617.075 8; *physiological effects of physical agents,* 612.014 4; *teratology,* 611.012; *study and teaching of medicine,* 610.7

.072 Symptomatology

Manifestation of diseases

Including headaches, fevers, infections, necrosis (gangrene), atrophies, hypertrophies, edemas

For interpretation of symptoms, see 616.075; *symptoms of a specific disease and of diseases of a specific system or organ, the disease, e.g., coronary thrombosis* 616.123; *symptoms of neurological diseases,* 616.84

.075 Diagnoses

Interpretation of symptoms

Including prognosis; physical, clinical, differential diagnoses

---

616.075 6–616.075 9 Laboratory diagnosis

.075 6 Chemical diagnosis

.075 61 Blood analysis

For blood counts, see 612.112

.075 66 Urinalysis

.075 7 X-ray diagnosis (Roentgen diagnosis)

Including fluoroscopic examinations

Class microscopy in diagnosis [*formerly* †616.075 7] in 616.075 8

.075 8 Microscopy in diagnosis [*formerly* †616.075 7]

.075 81 Bacteriological examinations

.075 83 Biopsies

Microscopic study of lesions and tissue changes

Including pathological histology

For autopsies, see 616.075 9

.075 9 Autopsies (Post-mortem examinations)

616.08 Psychosomatic medicine

Comprehensive works

For treatment of a specific disease of psychosomatic origin, see the disease, e.g., gastric ulcers 616.334; *diseases of nervous system,* 616.8; *mental hygiene,* 131.3

.092 Case histories

616.1–616.998 Specific diseases

Including pathology [*formerly* subdivisions of †612.1–†612.89], treatment of diseases of specific systems and organs

Divide each number, where applicable, like 616.07–616.092, e.g., case histories on diabetes mellitus 616.460 92

.1 Diseases of cardiovascular system

.11 Diseases of cardiac membranes

Including pericarditis, endocarditis

.12 Diseases of heart

.122 Angina pectoris

.123 Coronary occlusion

Including coronary sclerosis, thrombosis, infarction

For arterial embolisms and thromboses, see 616.135; *venous embolisms and thromboses,* 616.145

.124 Myocarditis

.125 Valvular diseases

Including diseases of the mitral, tricuspid, pulmonary valves

.126 Degenerative heart diseases

Including arteriosclerotic heart disease

For arteriosclerosis, see 616.132; *coronary occlusion,* 616.123

.13 Diseases of arteries

.132 Arteriosclerosis

Including essential hypertension

For arteriosclerotic heart disease, see 616.126

.133 Arterial aneurysms [*formerly* †616.247]

For cerebral aneurysms, see 616.81

616.135 Arterial embolisms [*formerly* †616.247] and thromboses

For coronary occlusion, see 616.123; *venous embolisms and thromboses,* 616.145; *cerebral embolisms and thromboses,* 616.81

.14 Diseases of veins and capillaries

.142 Phlebitis

Including thrombophlebitis

.143 Varicose veins (Varix)

.145 Venous embolisms and thromboses

For coronary occlusion, see 616.123; *arterial embolisms and thromboses,* 616.135; *cerebral embolisms and thromboses,* 616.81

.148 Diseases of capillaries

Including telangiectasis, hyperpermeability

.15 Diseases of blood

Including anemias, hemophilia, agranulocytosis, mononucleosis

Arrange alphabetically by disease, using A1 for comprehensive works, e.g., pernicious anemia 616.15 P3

Class diseases of lymphatic system in 616.42, of spleen in 616.41 [*both formerly* *616.15]

If preferred, class leukemia in 616.994 018 5

[*.151] Blood transfusions

Class blood transfusions in 615.65; blood banks in 615.650 74

.2 Diseases of respiratory system

Use 616.200 1–616.200 9 for form divisions

Class scrofula [*formerly* *616.2] in 616.995 42

.201 Croup

For diphtheria, see 616.931 3

.202 Hay fever [*formerly* *616.97]

.203 Influenza

Including endemic and epidemic influenza, grippe

.204 Whooping cough (Pertussis)

616.205 Common cold (Coryza, rhinitis)

[†.206] Asphyxiation

Class in 617.18

.21 Otorhinolaryngology [*formerly* *617.8]

Including comprehensive works on diseases of eye, ear, nose, larynx

For otology, see 617.8; *ophthalmology,* 617.7

.212 Rhinology

Diseases of nose, nasopharynx, accessory sinuses

For common cold, see 616.205; *surgery of nose,* 617.523

.22 Laryngology

Diseases of larynx, glottis, vocal cords, epiglottis

For surgery of throat, see 617.53; *diseases of mouth and throat,* 616.31

.23 Diseases of trachea and bronchi

Including trachitis, bronchitis, bronchiectasis

For bronchopneumonia, see 616.241

.24 Diseases of lungs

.241 Pneumonias

Including lobar, broncho-, pleural, lipoid, virus pneumonias

For necropneumonia, see 616.245

.244 Pneumoconiosis

Including silicosis, cholicosis, pulmonary abscesses

.245 Necropneumonia

.246 Pulmonary tuberculosis

If preferred, class in 616.995 24

[†.247] Embolisms and aneurysms

Class arterial embolisms in 616.135; arterial aneurysms in 616.133

.248 Pulmonary emphysema

.25 Diseases of pleura

Including pleurisy

For pleural pneumonia, see 616.241

.27 Diseases of mediastinum

616.3 **Diseases of digestive tract**

.31 Diseases of mouth and throat

For laryngology, see 616.22; *dentistry,* 617.6; *diseases of pharynx,* 616.32

.312 Trench mouth (Vincent's angina)

.313 Mumps (Epidemic parotitis)

.314 Diseases of tonsils

Including quinsy, tonsillitis, abscest tonsils

.32 Diseases of pharynx and esophagus

.33 Diseases of stomach

.332 Functional disorders of stomach

Including dyspepsia [*formerly* †616.39], disorders of secretion, gastric indigestion

.333 Gastritis

.334 Gastric ulcers

.339 Other diseases of stomach

Including merycism, gastroenteritis, gastroptosis

.34 Diseases of intestines

Including diseases of duodenum, jejunum, appendix, ileum, colon, cecum

Class abdominal hernias [*formerly* †616.34] in 617.559

.342 Functional disorders of intestines

Including diarrhea, constipation, obstructions of intestines

.343 Ulcers

Comprehensive works

For gastric ulcers, see 616.334

.343 2 Peptic ulcers

.343 3 Duodenal ulcers

.343 4 Gastrojejunal ulcers

.344 Enteritis

Including ileitis, colitis, Crohn's disease, duodenitis, jejunitis

.35 Proctology

Diseases of rectum and anus

For surgery of rectum and anus, see 617.555

616.36 Diseases of biliary tract

.362 Diseases of liver

.362 3 Hepatitis

.362 4 Cirrhosis

.362 5 Hepatitic jaundice

.365 Diseases of gall bladder and bile ducts

Including gallstones

.37 Diseases of pancreas

For diabetes mellitus, see 616.46

.38 Diseases of peritoneum

Including diseases of omentum and mesentery

.39 Nutritional and metabolic diseases [*formerly* *616.46]

Including deficiency diseases (avitaminoses)

Class dyspepsia [*formerly* †616.39] in 616.332

For diseases of endocrine system, see 616.4

.392 Beriberi

.393 Pellagra

.394 Scurvy

.395 Rickets [*formerly* †616.996]

.396 Other deficiency diseases and states

Including emaciation, fatty degeneration

For multiple deficiency states, see 616.399

.398 Obesity

Including obesity of endocrine origin

.399 Other nutritional and metabolic diseases

Including gout [*formerly* †616.991], multiple deficiency states

.4 **Diseases of blood-forming, lymphatic, endocrine systems**

Class endocrinotherapy [*formerly* *616.4] in 615.36

.41 Diseases of blood-forming system

Including diseases of spleen [*formerly* *616.15], bone marrow

For anemias, see 616.15

616.42 Diseases of lymphatic system [*formerly* *616.15]

Including Hodgkin's disease

If preferred, class Hodgkin's disease in 616.994 46

616.43–616.48 Endocrinology

For ovarian dysfunctions, see 618.11; *testicular dysfunctions,* 616.68; *obesity,* 616.398

.43 Diseases of thymus gland

.44 Diseases of thyroid and parathyroid glands

.442 Goiter

Including simple, nontoxic and toxic nodular goiter

.443 Hyperthyroidism

.444 Hypothyroidism

Including myxedema, cretinism [*both formerly* †616.997]

.445 Hyperparathyroidism and hypoparathyroidism

Including parathyroid tetany

.45 Diseases of adrenal glands

Including hyperadrenalism, hypoadrenalism, Addison's disease

.46 Diseases of pancreatic internal secretion

Diseases of islands of Langerhans

Including diabetes mellitus [*formerly* †616.63], hypoglycemia

Class metabolic and nutritional diseases in 616.39 and its subdivisions, vitamin therapy in 615.854 [*all formerly* *616.46]

.47 Diseases of pituitary glands

Including acromegaly, gigantism, dwarfism, Simmonds' disease

.48 Other glandular diseases

Including hyperpinealism, polyglandular disorders

.49 Diseases of breast

Including diseases of male mammary glands

For diseases of female breast, see 618.19

616.5 Dermatology (Diseases of skin)

Diseases of integumentary system

Including diseases of nails, hair

For skin surgery, see 617.477

.51 Dermatitis

Class hives [*formerly* †616.51] in 616.97

.512 Rashes (Urticaria)

Including contact and chemical dermatitis, e.g., nettle rash

For allergies, see 616.97; *eruptive fevers,* 616.91

.52 Eczema (Herpes)

.522 Shingles (Herpes zoster)

.523 Boils and carbuncles (Furuncles)

.524 Impetigo

.526 Psoriasis

.53 Diseases of sebaceous glands

Including acne, blackheads, wens, seborrhea

For diseases of sweat glands, see 616.56

.54 Skin hypertrophies, scalp diseases, related disorders

.544 Skin hypertrophies

Including corns, callosities, warts (verrucae), kerotosis, ichthyosis, scleroderma, xeroderma

.545 Skin ulcerations

Including bedsores (decubitus)

.546 Diseases of scalp, hair and hair follicles

Including baldness (alopecia), hair whiteness (leucotrichia), excessive hairiness (hypertrichosis)

.547 Diseases of the nails

.55 Pigmentary changes

Including albinism, nevi, moles

.56 Diseases of sweat glands

Including heat rash, prickly heat, anhidrosis

For diseases of sebaceous glands, see 616.53

616.57 Parasitic skin diseases

Including ringworm, athlete's foot

.58 Skin diseases due to physical agents

Including chilblains, frostbite, chapping

For burns and scalds, see 617.11; *heat rash,* 616.56

.6 Diseases of urogenital system

Including comprehensive works on diseases of male and female reproductive systems

For gynecology, see 618.1

.61 Diseases of kidneys and ureters

.612 Bright's disease (Nephritis)

.613 Pyelitis

Including pyelocystitis, pyelonephritis

.62 Diseases of bladder and urethra

For diseases of male urethra, see 616.64

.622 Kidney stones (Urinary calculi)

Including renal and vesical calculi

.623 Cystitis

.624 Urethritis

.63 Urinary manifestations

Including enuresis

Class diabetes mellitus [*formerly* †616.63] in 616.46

For enuresis as symptom of neurological disorder, see 616.849

.633 Pyuria

.635 Uremia

616.64–616.699 Diseases of male genital organs

.64 Diseases of male urethra

.65 Diseases of prostate

.66 Diseases of penis

Including phimosis

.67 Diseases of scrotum

.68 Diseases of testicles and accessory organs

616.69 Functional disorders of male genital organs

.692 Impotence and sterility

For sterility in women, see 618.178

.693 Male climacteric disorders

For menopausal disorders, see 618.175

.699 Other functional disorders of male genital organs

Including spermatorrhea

.7 Diseases of musculoskeletal system

.71 Diseases of bones

For diseases of spine, see 616.73; *of bone marrow,* 616.41; *fractures,* 617.15; *rickets,* 616.395; *orthopedic surgery,* 617.3; *dentistry,* 617.6

.712 Osteitis

Including osteitis deformans, osteochronditis, periostitis

.715 Osteomyelitis

For surgical treatment of osteomyelitis, see 617.471

.72 Diseases of joints

Including hypertropic and rheumatoid arthritis

For gout, see 616.399; *muscular rheumatism,* 616.742

.73 Diseases of spine

.74 Diseases of muscles

.742 Muscular rheumatism [*formerly* †616.991]

For arthritis, see 616.72; *rheumatic fever,* 616.991; *gout,* 616.399

.743 Myositis

.744 Myasthenia gravis

.748 Progressive muscular dystrophy

.749 Other muscular atrophies

.75 Diseases of tendons and fasciae

.76 Diseases of bursae and sheaths of tendons

Including bursitis, synovitis

.77 Diseases of connective tissue (Collagen diseases)

616.8 **Diseases of nervous system**

Including organic and functional diseases

SUMMARY

616.81	**Cerebral vascular diseases**
.82	**Meningeal diseases**
.83	**Other organic diseases of central nervous system**
.84	**Symptoms of neurological diseases**
.85–.86	**Psychoneuroses**
.87	**Diseases of cranial and spinal nerves**
.88	**Diseases of autonomic system**
.89	**Psychiatry**

616.81–616.838 Organic diseases of central nervous system

For diseases of cranial and spinal nerves, see 616.87; *of autonomic nervous system,* 616.88; *symptoms of neurological diseases,* 616.84

.81 Cerebral vascular diseases

Cerebral hemorrhages, aneurysms, embolisms, thromboses

Including apoplexy

For psychoses with cerebral arteriosclerosis, see 616.898 3; *arterial embolisms and thromboses,* 616.135; *venous embolisms and thromboses,* 616.145

.82 Meningeal diseases

.83 Other organic diseases of central nervous system

For cerebral vascular diseases, see 616.81; *meningeal diseases,* 616.82; *chorea,* 616.851; *epilepsy,* 616.853; *senile dementia,* 616.898 3; *alcoholism,* 616.861; *drug addiction,* 616.863

.832 Encephalitis

.833 Parkinson's disease (Paralysis agitans)

.834 Multiple sclerosis

.835 Poliomyelitis

.836 Cerebral palsy

.837 Paraplegia

.838 Locomotor ataxia (Tabes dorsalis)

616.84 Symptoms of neurological diseases

Including symptoms of functional diseases

For cutaneous sensory disorders, see 616.856; *diagnosis of diseases of nervous system,* 616.807 5

.841 Dizziness (Vertigo)

Including essential vertigo, blurred vision

.842 Paralysis

Including Landry's paralysis

For Parkinson's disease, see 616.833; *paresthesia,* 616.856

.843 Chronic fatigue and depression (Asthenic reactions)

Including "neurasthenia"

.844 Spinal irritation

.845 Convulsions

.849 Other symptoms of neurological diseases

Including enuresis, pain, coma, reflex and sleep disturbances

For headaches, see 616.072

.85 Psychoneuroses

For psychoses, see 616.89

.851 Chorea

.852 Hysteria

Loss or lowering of function

For speech disorders, see 616.855

.852 1 War neuroses

Including shell shock, combat fatigue

.852 2 Obsessive-compulsive neuroses

Including phobias, anxiety neuroses

.852 3 Dissociative reactions

Including amnesias, fugues, multiple personalities

.853 Epilepsy

[†.854] Tetanus

Class in 616.931 8

616.855 Speech and language disorders

For education of speech defectives, see 371.927

.855 2 Neurological language disorders (Aphasias)

Diminution or loss of faculty of language in any of its forms due to cerebral lesions

Including agraphia, agnosia, apraxia

.855 4 Psychoneurotic speech disorders

Including stammering, stuttering

.856 Cutaneous sensory disorders

Including anesthesia, paresthesia, hypesthesia, hyperesthesia

.857 Migraine

.858 Psychopathic and immature personalities

.86 Psychoneuroses due to noxious agents

Class stimulants and narcotics in relation to health [*formerly* *616.86] in 613.8

.861 Dipsomania (Alcoholism) [*formerly* †616.893, †616.898 1]

Including pathological intoxication, delirium tremens, Korsakow's psychosis, alcoholic hallucinosis, alcoholic polyneuritis

For psychological aspects of alcoholism, see 132.72

.862 Metallic intoxication

Including neuritis, encephalopathy, myelopathy due to poisoning from lead, manganese, arsenic, thallium, barium and other metallic preparations

.863 Drug addictions

Including addictions to opiates, cocaine, marijuana, barbiturates, similar habit-forming drugs

For psychological aspects of drug addiction, see 132.73

.87 Diseases of cranial and spinal nerves

Neuritis and neuralgias

Including polyneuritis, sciatica, neuritis of peripheral nerves, trigeminal and glossopharyngeal neuralgias

For herpes zoster, see 616.522

.88 Diseases of autonomic system

Including diseases of sympathetic and parasympathetic nervous systems

616.89 Psychiatry

Functional diseases (psychoses) of nervous system

For psychoneuroses, see 616.85–616.86; *psychological aspects of psychoses,* 132.19; *puerperal psychoses,* 618.76

.891 Psychiatric therapies

Methods of treating mental illness

For psychosurgery, see 617.481; *mental therapies,* 615.851; *psychoanalysis,* 131.34; *therapeutic counseling,* 131.322; *music therapy,* 615.837; *hypnotism,* 134

.891 2 Shock therapy

Use of metrazol, electricity, insulin and similar agents in treating psychoses

.891 3 Physical therapy

Treatment of psychoses by physical means, e.g., hydrotherapy

For use of electricity in shock therapy, see 616.891 2

.891 5 Group therapy

Including psychodrama

.891 6 Bibliotherapy

Including educational therapy

.891 8 Chemotherapy

Use of rauwolfia, paraldehyde, chlorpromazine and similar medication in treating psychoses

For use of metrazol and insulin in shock therapy, see 616.891 2

.892 General paresis (Neurosyphilis)

[†.893] Alcoholism

Class in 616.861

.895 Manic-depressive psychoses

Including neurotic-depressive reactions, manic and circular types

.895 7 Involutional psychoses

.897 Paranoia and paranoid conditions

.898 Schizophrenia and senile dementias

[†.898 1] Alcoholism

Class in 616.861

616.898 2 Schizophrenia (Dementia praecox)

.898 3 Senile dementias

Including psychoses with cerebral arteriosclerosis

For cerebral vascular diseases, see 616.81

.9 Communicable and other diseases

Including fevers, infectious diseases

For communicable diseases affecting a specific part of the body, see diseases of the part, e.g., mumps 616.313

SUMMARY

616.91	**Eruptive fevers (Exanthemata)**
.92	**Bacterial, viral and rickettsial diseases**
.93	**Bacillary intoxications, enteric and protozoan infections**
.94	**Symptoms of toxemia**
.942	**Erysipelas**
.95	**Venereal and zoogenous diseases**
.96	**Parasitic diseases (Medical parasitology)**
.97	**Allergies and anaphylaxis**
.98	**Diseases due to physical and climatic conditions**
.99	**Other diseases**

.91 Eruptive fevers (Exanthemata)

For dengue fever, see 616.921; *typhus,* 616.922 2; *typhoid fever,* 616.927 2; *cerebrospinal meningitis,* 616.82; *glanders,* 616.954; *erysipelas,* 616.942; *diseases of skin,* 616.5

.912 Smallpox (Variola major)

.913 Attenuated forms of smallpox

Including human vaccinia ("cowpox"), parasmallpox (alastrim, amaas), Cuban itch, Kaffir milkpox

.914 Chickenpox (Varicella)

.915 Measles (Rubeola)

.916 German measles (Rubella)

.917 Scarlet fever (Scarlatina)

.92 Bacterial, viral and rickettsial diseases

.921 Dengue fever

616.922 Rickettsial infections

.922 2 Typhus group

Including classic epidemic (louse-borne) typhus, murine (flea-borne) typhus, Brill's disease

.922 3 Spotted-fever group

Including Rocky Mountain spotted fever; boutonneuse fever; tick bite fevers of South Africa, India, Russia; rickettsialpox

For tick-borne viral infections, see 616.924

.922 4 Scrub typhus (Tsutsugamushi disease)

Japanese river fever

.922 5 Q fever

.922 6 Other rickettsial infections

Including trench fever, Bullis fever, North Queensland tick typhus

.923 Pasteurella infections

.923 2 Plague

Including bubonic plague

.923 9 Tularemia

.924 Tick-borne viral infections

For rickettsial infections, see 616.922; *tularemia,* 616.923 9; *lymphocytic choriomeningitis,* 616.925

.924 2 Tick fever (Colorado tick fever)

American mountain fever, nonexanthematous tick fever

.924 4 Relapsing fevers

Including bacterial and spirochetal relapsing fevers

.925 Lymphocytic choriomeningitis

.927 Eberthella and salmonella infections

.927 2 Typhoid fever

.927 4 Paratyphoid fever

.927 9 Other salmonella infections

Including salmonella fever, salmonella gastroenteritis

.928 Yellow fever

616.93 Bacillary intoxications, enteric and protozoan infections

.931 Bacillary intoxications

.931 3 Diphtheria

.931 5 Botulism

.931 8 Lockjaw (Tetanus) [*formerly* †616.854, †617.27]

.932 Enteric infections

For typhoid fever, see 616.927 2

.932 2 Asian cholera

Pestilential cholera

.933 European cholera

Sporadic cholera

Including cholera morbus

[†.934] Cholera infantum

Class in 618.929 34

.935 Dysenteries

.935 3 Amoebic dysentery (Amoebiasis)

.935 5 Bacillary dysentery (Shigella infections)

.936 Protozoan infections

For amoebic dysentery, see 616.935 3

.936 2 Malarial fevers

Including blackwater fever

.936 3 Trypanosomiasis

Including Gambian and Rhodesian trypanosomiasis, Chagas' disease, African sleeping sickness

.936 4 Leishmaniasis

Including visceral leishmaniasis (kala-azar), cutaneous leishmaniasis (oriental sores), mucocutaneous leishmaniasis (forest yaws)

.94 Symptoms of toxemia

Including septicemia, pyemia, phagedena

.942 Erysipelas

.95 Venereal and zoogenous diseases

For tetanus, see 616.931 8; *tularemia,* 616.923 9; *parasitic diseases,* 616.96

616.951 Venereal diseases

.951 3 Syphilis

For neurosyphilis, see 616.892

.952 Gonorrhea

.952 3 Other venereal diseases

Including chancroid, lymphadenoma inguinale, lymphogranuloma venereum

.953 Rabies

.954 Glanders (Equinia)

.956 Anthrax (Charbon)

Woolsorters' disease, splenic fever

.957 Undulant fever (Brucellosis)

Malta fever, continued fever, Cyprus fever, Bruce's septicemia

.958 Psittacosis

Parrot fever

.96 Parasitic diseases (Medical parasitology)

For parasitic skin diseases, see 616.57

.961 Diseases due to animal parasites

For disease carriers, see 614.43; *protozoan infections,* 616.936; *amoebic dysentery,* 616.935 3; *zoogenous diseases,* 616.95

.962 Diseases due to endoparasites

Including human helminthology

.963 Diseases due to flukes (Trematoda)

Including schistosomiasis, bilharziasis, distomatosis

.964 Diseases due to tapeworms (Cestoda)

Including tapeworm infestations, hyatid diseases (echinococcosis)

.965 Diseases due to roundworms (Nematoda)

.965 2 Diseases due to filariae

Including filariasis, elephantiasis, wuchereriasis, onchocerciasis

.965 4 Diseases due to other nematodes

Including trichinosis, enterobiasis, ascariasis, hookworm infestations

616.968 Diseases due to ectoparasites (Medical entomology)

Comprehensive works

For a specific entomological disease, see the disease, e.g., Colorado tick fever 616.924 2

.969 Diseases due to fungi (Medical mycology)

For ringworm, athlete's foot, see 616.57

.97 Allergies and anaphylaxis

Including hives [*formerly* †616.51], urticaria, congestion of nasopharyngeal areas

Class immunology in 615.37, hay fever in 616.202 [*both formerly* *616.97]

.973 Contact allergies

.975 Food and drug allergies

.977 Physical allergies

Supersensitivity to physical agents, e.g., heat, sunlight, cold, humidity

.98 Diseases due to physical and climatic conditions

For accidental wounds and injuries, see 617.1

.980 2 Medical aspects of specialized services

.980 21 Aviation medicine [*formerly* †629.132 56]

For motion sickness, see 616.989.2; *altitude sickness,* 616.989 3; *otitis media,* 617.84

.980 22 Submarine medicine

For caisson disease, see 616.989 4; *drowning,* 617.18

.980 23 Military medicine [*formerly* *356.92]

For treatment of a specific disease, see the disease, e.g., war neuroses 616.852 1; *military medical services,* 355.345

.980 24 Naval medicine

For treatment of a specific disease, see the disease, e.g., seasickness 616.989 2

.988 Medical climatology [*formerly* †614.42] and meteorology

Divide like 631.091, e.g., tropical medicine 616.988 3

For medical geography, see 614.42

616.989 Diseases due to physical conditions

.989 2 Motion sickness

Including airsickness, seasickness, car sickness

.989 3 Altitude sickness

Including anoxemia, mountain sickness, alpine sickness

.989 4 Caisson disease

Including diver's palsy, decompression disease

.99 Other diseases

.991 Rheumatic fever

Class muscular rheumatism in 616.742, gout in 616.399 [*both formerly* †616.991]

For arthritis, see 616.72

.992 Neoplasms and neoplastic diseases

.993 Benign neoplasms

For benign neoplasms of a specific system or organ, see the system or organ, e.g., warts 616.544; *surgical treatment, surgery of the system or organ, e.g., surgical removal of skin tumors* 617.477

.994 Malignant neoplasms

Cancers, carcinomas, sarcomas

Including surgery

Divide like 611, e.g., cancer of the stomach 616.994 33

For leukemia, see 616.15; *Hodgkin's disease,* 616.42

.995 Tuberculosis

Divide like 611, e.g., tuberculosis of the bones 616.995 71; scrofula [*formerly* †616.996, *616.2] 616.995 42

For pulmonary tuberculosis, see 616.246

[†.996] Scrofula, rickets

Class scrofula in 616.995 42; rickets in 616.395

[†.997] Myxedema, cretinism

Class in 616.444

.998 Leprosy (Hansen's disease)

617 Surgery

Treatment of disease by manual and instrumental operations

For surgical gynecology, see 618.1; *obstetrical surgery,* 618.8; *cancer surgery,* 616.994

SUMMARY

617.1	**Accidental wounds and injuries**
.2	**Results of injuries**
.3	**Orthopedic surgery**
.4	**Surgical operations by systems**
.5	**Regional surgery**
.6	**Dentistry**
.7	**Ophthalmology**
.8	**Otology**
.9	**Techniques and other surgical specialities**

.075 Surgical diagnosis

Including physical examination of surgical patients

.075 8 Surgical pathology

Description of disorders requiring surgery

.1 Accidental wounds and injuries

For first-aid treatment of wounds and injuries, see 614.88; *military surgery,* 617.99

.11 Burns and scalds

For electrical burns, see 617.12; *radiation burns,* 617.124

.12 Injuries from electricity

Including electrical shock and burns, lightning stroke

.124 Injuries from radioactive substances

Including radiation burns

.13 Abrasions

Including bruises, contusions, crushing

.14 Lacerations and incisions

Including stabbing, cutting, puncture and infected wounds

.145 Gunshot wounds

.146 Removal of foreign bodies from wounds

.15 Fractures

Divide like 611.71, e.g., fracture of the femur 617.158

.16 Dislocations

617.17 Sprains and strains

.18 Asphyxiation [*formerly also* †616.206]

Choking, hanging, strangulation, suffocation, drowning

Including artificial respiration

.19 Blast injuries

.2 Results of injuries

Including infections, necrosis, fevers resulting from injuries

.21 Shock

Including traumatic and surgical shock

For first aid in shock treatment, see 614.88

[†.27] Tetanus

Class in 616.931 8

.3 Orthopedic surgery

Correction of deformities, surgical treatment of chronic diseases of skeletal system

For fractures, see 617.15; *surgery of motor and integumentary systems,* 617.47

.307 8 Orthopedic appliances [*formerly* †617.92]

[†.31] Congenital anomalies

Class in 611.012

[†.32] Harelip

Class in 617.953 1

[†.33–†.35] Coalescence of parts, extension of commissures, Siamese twins

Class in 611.012

[†.36] Supernumerary organs

Class supernumerary fingers in 617.397; supernumerary toes in 617.398

.37 Deformities

Surgical treatment of acquired and congenital deformities

For deformities caused by osteomyelitis, see 617.471

.371 Head and neck

.374 Chest

.375 Spine

617.376 Hip and pelvis

.39 Extremities

For amputations, see 617.57

.397 Upper extremities

Including surgical removal of supernumerary fingers [*formerly* †617.36]

.398 Lower extremities

Including surgical removal of supernumerary toes [*formerly* †617.36], orthopedic treatment of clubfeet, hallux valgus and varus, hammer toes

For chiropody, see 617.585

.4 Surgical operations by systems

.41 Cardiovascular system

.412 Heart

.413 Arteries

.414 Veins

[†.42] Respiratory system

Class in 617.54

.43 Digestive system

Comprehensive works only

For surgical treatment of a specific organ of the digestive tract, see the organ, e.g., surgery of stomach 617.553

.44 Endocrine glands

Comprehensive works only

For surgical treatment of a specific gland, see region in which gland is located, e.g., thyroid gland 617.539 5

.46 Urogenital system

Including comprehensive works on male and female systems

For surgical treatment of female genital tract, see 618.1

.461 Kidneys

Including suprarenal glands, ureters

.462 Bladder

Including urethra

.463 Male genital organs

617.47 Motor and integumentary systems

For amputations, see 617.57

.471 Bones

Including surgical treatment of deformities caused by osteomyelitis

.472 Joints

Including surgical treatment of shoulder joint, elbow, wrist, hip joint, knee, ankle

For surgical treatment of jaws, see 617.522

.473 Muscles

Including surgical treatment of deformities caused by poliomyelitis, cerebral palsy, muscular dystrophy

.474 Tendons

.475 Bursae

.477 Skin

Including surgical removal of skin tumors

For plastic surgery, see 617.95

.48 Nervous system (Neurosurgery)

.481 Brain

Including psychosurgery, topectomy

.482 Spinal cord

.483 Nerves

.5 Regional surgery

.51 Head and neck

Comprehensive works only

For surgery of neck, see 617.539

.514 Skull

Including trephining

For brain surgery, see 617.481; *skull fractures,* 617.154

.52 Face

For surgical treatment of eyes, see 617.7; *of ears,* 617.8; *plastic surgery,* 617.95

.522 Oral surgery [*formerly* *617.6]

Including surgical treatment of lips, palate, jaws

For dental surgery, see 617.64

617.523 Nose

.53 Throat

Including surgery of nose and throat

For surgery of nose, see 617.523

.532 Pharynx and tonsils

Including adenoidectomies

.533 Larynx, vocal cords, epiglottis, trachea

.539 Neck

.539 5 Thyroid and parathyroid glands

.54 Thorax

Including surgery of respiratory system [*formerly* †617.42], thoracic cavity

For surgery of heart, see 617.412; *of nose,* 617.523; *of throat,* 617.53

.542 Lungs

.543 Pleura

.544 Bronchi

.545 Mediastinum

.546 Thymus gland

.548 Esophagus

.549 Thoracic surface

Including surgery of male breast; comprehensive works on surgery of breast

For diseases of female breast, see 618.19; *cancer of breast,* 616.994 49

.55 Abdominal and pelvic [*formerly* †617.56] cavities

For surgical treatment of bladder, see 617.462; *of male genital organs,* 617.463; *of female genital organs,* 618.1

.551 Spleen

.553 Stomach

.554 Intestines

.554 1 Small intestines

Including duodenum, jejunum, ileum

.554 5 Cecum and vermiform appendix

617.554 7 Large intestines

.554 8 Colon

.555 Rectum and anus

.556 Biliary system

Including surgery of liver, gall bladder (gallstones), bile ducts

.557 Pancreas

.558 Peritoneum

Including mesentery, omentum, pleuroperitoneal cavity

.559 Abdominal hernias [*formerly* †616.34]

[†.56] Pelvic cavity

Class in 617.55

.57 Extremities

Including amputation [*formerly* †617.94], excisions, artificial limbs

For correction of deformities of extremities, see 617.39; *fractures,* 617.15

.577 Upper extremities

.58 Lower extremities

.585 Podiatry

Including care of feet, fitting corrective shoes

.6 Dentistry

Including general dental practice

Class oral surgery [*formerly* *617.6] in 617.522

.601 Oral hygiene and preventive dentistry

Including theories

.601 8 Dental asepsis and antisepsis

.606 95 Dental technicians

[†.61–†.62] Diseases of dental pulp, dentine, cementum

Class in 617.634

617.63 Dental diseases

Diseases of teeth and supporting structure and their medicinal treatment

For dental surgery, see 617.64

.632 Periodontics

Diseases of gums, tooth sockets

Including alveolar abscesses, pyorrhea, gingivitis, periodontitis

.634 Diseases of tooth tissues

Diseases of dental pulp [*formerly* †617.61], dentine, cementum [*both formerly* †617.62], enamel

Including dental caries

For preparation and treatment of cavities, see 617.67

.64 Dental surgery

.643 Orthodontics

Disorders of occlusion, dentition, and their treatment

.645 Pedodontics

Comprehensive works on dental surgery for children

For orthodontics, see 617.643

.66 Exodontics

Extraction of teeth

.67 Cavities

Preparation and treatment

.675 Fillings and inlays

Including amalgam, metallic, cement, porcelain, plastic fillings and inlays

.69 Prosthetic dentistry

Artificial teeth

Including full and partial dentures, crowns, fixt and removable bridges

.695 Dental materials

Including dental metallurgy and ceramics, impressions, casts

For materials used in fillings and inlays, see 617.675

617.7 Ophthalmology

Diseases of eyes, refractive errors, and their treatment

Class manufacture of spectacles in 681.411, of spectacle frames in 681.43 [*both formerly* *617.7]

.701 Preventive ophthalmology

Hygiene of eyes and theories of sight preservation

For orthoptics, see 617.762 2

.71 Ophthalmic pathology [*formerly also* †612.845] and surgery

Class diseases of conjunctiva [*formerly* †617.71] in 617.77

For pathology and surgery of a specific region of the eye, see the region, e.g., crystalline lens 617.742

.712 Blindness

Including amaurosis, amblyopia, partial blindness

.713 Ophthalmic wounds and injuries

.719 Diseases of cornea and sclera

Including corneal transplantation

.719 074 Eye banks

.72 Diseases of uvea

Including diseases of iris, choroid, ciliary body

.73 Diseases of retina and optic nerve

Including detachment of retina, retinitis, choked disc, papillitis

.74 Diseases of eyeball

Including glaucoma, enucleation

For diseases of a specific part of the eyeball, see the part, e.g., cornea 617.719

.742 Diseases of crystalline lens

Including cataracts

.746 Diseases of vitreous body

617.75 Optometry

Including setting and adjusting spectacles [*formerly* †681.44] and mechanical work of opticians

.755 Disorders of refraction and accommodation

Correction of functional disorders [*formerly also* †152.15], e.g., myopia, hypermetropia, astigmatism, presbyopia

.758 Aniseikonia

.759 Color blindness

.76 Diseases of ocular muscular and lacrimal mechanisms

.762 Diseases of ocular neuromuscular mechanism

Including strabismus, binocular imbalance, diplopia

.762 2 Orthoptics

.764 Diseases of lacrimal glands and ducts

Including obstructions of lacrimonasal duct, dacryocystitis

.77 Diseases of conjunctiva [*formerly* †617.71] and eyelids

.772 Trachoma

.773 Conjunctivitis other than trachoma

.78 Diseases of orbit

.79 Prosthetic ophthalmology

.8 Otology

Diseases of ears and their treatment

Including wounds, injuries

Class otorhinolaryngology [*formerly* *617.8] in 616.21

.81 Diseases of external ear

For diseases of tympanic membrane, see 617.85

.82 Auricle

For plastic surgery of ears, see 617.958 5

.83 Auditory canal

Including treatment of impacted earwax

.84 Diseases of middle ear

Including otitis media

.85 Tympanic membrane

617.86 Eustachian tubes

.87 Mastoid processes

.88 Diseases of internal ear

Diseases of cochlea, labyrinth, semicircular canals, vestibule

Including otosclerosis, fenestration operations

.89 Deafness

Including pathology [*formerly also* †612.858 77], deaf-mutism, hard of hearing

For training of deaf, see 371.912; *service to deaf,* 362.42

.890 78 Hearing aids

.9 Techniques and other surgical specialties

.91 Operative surgery

Including techniques of making incisions, tying knots, suturing

For anesthesiology, see 617.96; *surgical dressings,* 617.93

.910 1 Asepsis and antisepsis in surgery

.917 Operating room equipment

Including preparation of operating room

.917 8 Surgical instruments and apparatus

Including setons, issues, sutures [*all formerly* †615.812], ligatures [*formerly* †615.813], needles, retractors, forceps, clamps

.919 Preoperative and postoperative care

[†.92] Orthopedic appliances

Class in 617.307 8

.93 Surgical dressings

Including bandages [*formerly* †615.813], adhesive plasters and their application

[†.94] Amputation

Class in 617.57

617.95 Plastic surgery (Restorative surgery)

Including cosmetic surgery, tissue grafting

Divide like 611, e.g., otoplasty 617.958 5; harelip [*formerly* †617.32] 617.953 1

.950 74 Tissue banks

Including bone and organ banks

For eye banks, see 617.719 074

.96 Anesthesiology

Methods and techniques of administering surgical anesthetics, management of anesthesia

Including preoperative sedation, operative risks of anesthesia, equipment and apparatus

For anesthetics, see 615.781

.962 General anesthesia

Including inhalation, rectal, intravenous anesthesia

.964 Regional anesthesia

Including spinal and caudal anesthesia

.966 Local anesthesia

.97 Geriatric surgery

Comprehensive works

For surgery of a specific area, see the area, e.g., removal of cataracts 617.742

.98 Pediatric surgery

Comprehensive works

For surgery of a specific area, see the area, e.g., removal of tonsils 617.532

.99 Military surgery

Comprehensive works

For surgery of a specific area, see the area, e.g., brain surgery 617.481

618 Gynecology, obstetrics, other medical specialties

Class physiology of pregnancy [*formerly* *618] in 612.63

.1 Gynecology

Including surgical gynecology

For cancer of genital tract, see 616.994 65

.11 Diseases of ovaries

618.12 Diseases of Fallopian tubes

.13 Periuterine diseases

.14 Diseases of uterus and cervix

For leucorrhea, see 618.173

.142 Infections

Including cervicitis, endometritis, pyometra

.143 Erosions

.144 Malformations

Including atrophies, hypertrophies, prolapse of uterus

.145 Surgical therapeutics

For Caesarean section, see 618.86

.145 3 Hysterectomies

.145 8 Dilation and curettage

.15 Diseases of vagina

.16 Diseases of vulva

Including diseases of Bartholin's glands, clitoris, hymen, labia majora and minora

.17 Functional and systemic disorders

.172 Menstruation disorders

Including amenorrhea, menorrhagia, dysmenorrhea, oligomenorrhea

.173 Leucorrhea

.175 Menopause disorders

.178 Female sterility

Including comprehensive works on sterility

For male sterility, see 616.692

.19 Diseases of female breast

For cancer of breast, see 616.994 49; *diseases of lactation,* 618.71

.2 Obstetrics

[†.21] Physiology of pregnancy

Class in 612.63

.22 Examination and diagnosis

Including signs and symptoms of pregnancy, diagnostic tests

618.24 Prenatal care

Including hygiene and management of pregnancy

.25 Multiple pregnancy

.3 Diseases of pregnancy

Including toxemias

.31 Extrauterine pregnancy (Ectopic pregnancy)

Including tubal, ovarian, cervical, abdominal pregnancies

.32 Fetal abnormalities

Including molar pregnancy (degeneration of fetus) [*formerly* †618.39], lithopedion (calcified fetus)

.33 Fetal deaths and stillbirths [*formerly* †618.39]

Including retention of fetus

For spontaneous abortion, see 618.39

.39 Miscarriage (Spontaneous abortion)

Class molar pregnancy in 618.32, stillbirths in 618.33 [*both formerly* †618.39]

For therapeutic abortion, see 618.88

.4 Normal labor (Parturition)

Mechanism and management of normal labor and childbirth

Including natural childbirth

Class physiology of parturition [*formerly* †618.4] in 612.63

.42 Presentations

Position of fetal body during labor

Including longitudinal and transverse presentations

.45 Anesthesia and analgesia in obstetrics

Including induced amnesia, twilight sleep

For anesthesia and analgesia in obstetrical surgery, see 618.895

.5 Complicated labor (Dystocia)

.51 Maternal dystocia

Difficult labor due to anomalies of expellant forces, mechanical obstructions [*formerly* †618.52], e.g., narrow pelvis, rigid cervix

[†.52] Mechanical obstructions

Class in 618.51

618.53 Fetal dystocia

Difficult labor due to size of fetus

For placental dystocia, see 618.56

.54 Uterine hemorrhage

For postpartum hemorrhage, see 618.77

.56 Placental dystocia

Including placenta previa

.58 Complications from umbilical cord

Including prolapse of cord

.6 Normal puerperium

Postpartum management and care

For care of newborn infants, see 618.920 1

.7 Puerperal diseases

.71 Diseases of lactation

Including pathology [*formerly also* †612.664 6], stagnation mastitis, galactedema

.72 Puerperal infections

.73 Puerperal metritis and peritonitis

.74 Puerperal septicemia and pyemia

.75 Puerperal eclampsia

.76 Puerperal psychoses

.77 Hemic disorders

Including postpartum hemorrhage, phlebitis, thrombosis

For hemorrhage during labor, see 618.54

.78 Other puerperal disorders

.79 Maternal death

.8 Obstetrical operations (Obstetrical surgery)

.81 Applications of lever and forceps

For use of instruments in a specific operation, see the subject, e.g., use of obstetrical forceps in extraction 618.82

618.82 Version and extraction

Including dilation of cervix [*formerly* †618.84], use of obstetrical forceps in extraction and dystocia

.83 Embryotomy and craniotomy

Mutilation of fetus to facilitate delivery when impossible by natural means

For therapeutic abortion, see 618.88

[†.84] Dilation of cervix

Class in 618.82

.85 Minor surgery

Including symphyseotomy, vaginiperineotomy, repair of lacerations of genital tract

.86 Caesarean section

.87 Surgical removal of placenta

.88 Therapeutic abortion

Including induction of labor, removal of fetus

For embryotomy, see 618.83

.89 Surgical aids in obstetrics

.892 Asepsis and antisepsis

.895 Anesthesia and analgesia

For anesthesia and analgesia during labor and childbirth, see 618.45

.9 Other medical specialties

.92 Pediatrics

Diseases of children and their treatment

For pediatric surgery, see 617.98; *orthopedic surgery,* 617.3; *pedodontics,* 617.645; *pediatric therapeutics,* 615.542; *home care and management of children,* 649.1; *child psychology,* 136.7; *child welfare,* 362.7; *child development,* 612.65

.920 1 Newborn infants

Care and treatment

For treatment of specific diseases, see 618.921–618.929

.920 11 Premature infants

Including full-term infants weighing less than 5½ pounds

618.921–.929 98 Specific diseases of children

Divide like 616.1–616.998, e.g., cardiac diseases in children 618.921 2

.929 34 Cholera infantum [*formerly* †616.934]

Noncontagious diarrhea of young children prevailing during summer months

.97 Geriatrics

Diseases of the aged and their treatment

Class gerontology [*formerly* *618.97] in 612.67

For geriatric surgery, see 617.97; *geriatric therapeutics,* 615.547; *social gerontology,* 301.435; *old-age welfare,* 362.6; *psychology of the aging,* 136.53

619 Comparative medicine

Study of diseases and their treatment in laboratory animals

Including experimental medicine [*formerly* †*610.72]

For veterinary medicine, see 636.089 6

.5 Domestic fowl

.7 Dogs

.8 Cats

.9 Other mammals

.93 Rodents

Including laboratory rats, mice, rabbits, hamsters

.98 Primates

Including monkeys, apes

620 Engineering

.01 Statistics

.02 Quantities, costs, estimates

.03 Contracts and specifications

.04 Designs and drawings

For mechanical drawing, see 744.422

.07 Laws and regulations

.08 Engineering patents

.09 Reports and surveys

For engineering establishments, see 620.65

.1 Engineering mechanics and materials

Including applied mechanics

Use 620.100 1–620.100 9 for form divisions

For mechanical engineering, see 621; *structural engineering,* 624.1

SUMMARY

620.101 Vibration in engineering
.102 Applied acoustics (Acoustical engineering)
.11 Strength of materials
.112 9 Other engineering properties
.12 Wood
.13 Masonry materials
.14 Ceramic and allied materials
.15 Masonry adhesives
.16 Metals and their alloys
.17 Iron, steel and their alloys
.18 Nonferrous metals and their alloys
.19 Other engineering materials

620.101–620.112 9 Fields of applied mechanics

For science of flight, see 629.132; *automatic control engineering,* 629.8; *air-conditioning engineering,* 697.9

.101 Vibration in engineering

Calculation, measurement, effects, suppression of mechanical vibration

620.102 Applied acoustics (Acoustical engineering)

Including comprehensive works on acoustical designing, noise control thru acoustical countermeasures, applied ultrasonics

For theoretical acoustics, see 534; *electronic and electric communication engineering,* 621.38; *soundproofing a specific structure, the subject, e.g., airplanes* 629.134 42; *a specific application of ultrasonics, the subject, e.g., in dentistry* 617.6

.11 Strength of materials [*formerly also* †539.4]

Stresses, deformations resulting from forces acting on materials

For strength of specific materials, see 620.12–620.199; *structural analysis,* 624.171

.112 Specific tests of strength of materials

Comprehensive works

Including testing methods

For tests of strength of a specific material, see the subject, e.g., deformation of iron and steel 620.173

.112 1 Effect of temperature on strength

.112 2 Deterioration and deterioration tests

Including deterioration rates; resistance to and protective measures against corrosion, weathering, deterioration of materials

.112 3 Elastic limit and elastic limit tests

Including tests of elasticity, proportional limit, plasticity, mechanical deformation, fatigue, yield point, photoelasticity

.112 4 Other stress measurements

Including tests for tensile, compressive, shearing, torsional stresses

.112 5 Impact and impact tests

Including tests of rigidity and repeated shock

.112 6 Hardness and hardness tests [*formerly also* †539.53]

620.112 8 Tests of strength on specific shapes and forms

Including tests of structural forms

.112 82 Plates and beams

Including bars, rods, angles

.112 83 Columns and tubes

Including cylinders, pipes

.112 84 Rollers and ball bearings

Including roller bearings, hollow and solid spheres

.112 85 Springs

.112 86 Hooks, chains, rings

.112 87 Fasteners

Including rivets, bolts, screws, nails

.112 88 Wires, cables, hawsers

.112 9 Other engineering properties of materials

Including ductility, malleability [*formerly* †539.51–†539.52]; thermal, optical, acoustical, electrical, magnetic properties

---

620.12–620.199 Specific engineering materials

Including engineering properties and tests

For selection, deterioration, preservation of building construction materials, see 691; *design in kinds of material,* 624.18

.12 Wood

.13 Masonry materials

Including artificial masonry materials

For masonry adhesives, see 620.15; *brick, tile, terra cotta,* 620.14

.132 Stone

.135 Cement

.136 Concrete

.137 Reinforst concrete

.14 Ceramic and allied materials

For ceramic and allied industries, see 666; *ceramic arts,* 738

.142 Brick, tile, terra cotta

620.144 Glass

.15 Masonry adhesives

.16 Metals [*formerly* †*620.18] and their alloys

Comprehensive works

Divide like 620.112, e.g., mechanical deformation of metals 620.163

For properties and tests of iron, steel and their alloys, see 620.17; *of nonferrous metals and their alloys,* 620.18

.17 Iron, steel and their alloys

Including chrome steel, stainless steel

Divide like 620.112, e.g., mechanical deformation of steel alloys 620.173

.18 Nonferrous metals and their alloys

Class comprehensive works on metals [*formerly* †*620.18] in 620.16

.182 Copper and its alloys

Including brass, bronze, Muntz metal, phosphor bronze, gun metal, copper-aluminum alloys, copper-beryllium alloys, aluminum bronze

For aluminum-copper alloys, see 620.186; *Babbitt metal,* 620.185; *Monel metal, German silver,* 620.188

.183 Lead and its alloys

Including antimonial lead

.184 Zinc and its alloys

Including spelter, die-casting alloys

For German silver, see 620.188

.185 Tin and its alloys

Including Babbitt metal

For bronze, see 620.182

.186 Aluminum and its alloys

Including Duralumin®, aluminum-copper alloys

For copper-aluminum alloys, see 620.182; *magnesium-aluminum alloys,* 620.187

.187 Magnesium and its alloys

Including magnesium-aluminum alloys, magnesium-aluminum-manganese alloys (Dow metal®)

620.188 Nickel and its alloys

Including Monel metal®, Inconel®, German silver

.189 Other nonferrous metals and their alloys

Including ferroalloying metals and their alloys

For nickel and its alloys, see 620.188

.19 Other engineering materials

For soil mechanics, see 624.151

.192 Plastics

Including engineering laminates

.194 Natural and synthetic rubber

.195 Insulating materials

Including rock wool, corkboard, asbestos, kapok, diatomaceous earth

.196 Bituminous materials

Including asphalt, synthetic and rock asphalts, tar

.199 Adhesives

Including glues, cementing agents

For engineering laminates, see 620.192; *masonry adhesives,* 620.15

.2 Handbooks and outlines

.3 Dictionaries and encyclopedias

.4 Essays and lectures

.5 Periodicals

.6 Organizations and societies

.7 Study and teaching

.8 Collections

.83 Tables and formulas

For statistics, see 620.01

.84 Audio-visual aids

For designs and drawings, see 620.04

.9 History and local treatment

621 Mechanical engineering

Class manufacture of industrial measuring instruments [*formerly* *621] in 681.12

For a specific branch of mechanical engineering, see the subject, e.g., motor vehicle engineering 629.2

SUMMARY

621.01	**Engineering thermodynamics**
.1	**Steam-power engineering**
.2	**Hydraulic-power engineering**
.3	**Electrical engineering**
.4	**Prime movers**
.47	**Solar engineering**
.48	**Nuclear engineering**
.5	**Pneumatic machinery and mechanical refrigeration**
.6	**Fans, blowers, pumps**
.7	**Factory engineering**
.8	**Mechanical power transmission machinery and related equipment**
.9	**Tools**

.01 Engineering thermodynamics

For a specific application of thermodynamics, see the subject, e.g., heat engines 621.4; *thermodynamics of steam,* 621.101

.1 Steam-power engineering

.101 Thermodynamic properties of steam

.11 Steam engines

For portable steam engines, see 621.15; *stationary steam engines,* 621.16; *steam pumps,* 621.197 3; *a specific application, the subject, e.g., steam locomotive engines* 621.134

[†.12] Marine steam engines

Class in 623.872 2

.13 Steam locomotive engineering [*formerly* *625.26]

.132 Types of steam locomotives

Including Whyte nomenclature for wheel arrangement

.133 Locomotive boilers [*formerly* †621.184 23, *621.184]

Including auxiliary parts, fuel and fuel consumption, feed-water treatment

621.134 Steam locomotive engines

Including steam-mechanical, steam-electric locomotives

.134 3 Reciprocating steam engines for locomotives

.134 6 Steam turbines for locomotives

.135 Running gear

.136 Tenders

.139 Other parts of steam locomotives

.14 Steam tractors and rollers

Including boilers [*formerly* †621.184 23, *621.184]

.15 Portable steam engines

Including boilers [*formerly* †621.184 23, *621.184]

For a specific application of portable steam engines, see the subject, e.g., fire engines 621.68

.16 Stationary steam engines

Including boilers [*formerly* †621.184 24, *621.184]

For a specific application of stationary steam engines, see the subject, e.g., steam elevators 621.877

.164 Reciprocating steam engines

Including simple, compound, triple-expansion, quadruple-expansion steam engines

.165 Steam turbines

Comprehensive works

For a specific application of steam turbines, see the subject, e.g., locomotives 621.134 6

.165 1 Theoretic and mathematical aspects

Including efficiency calculations, steam rate, calorimetric and thermodynamic factors

.165 2 Specific types of steam turbines

Including impulse, single-stage impulse, velocity-compounded, pressure-compounded, reaction turbines

.165 3 Design and construction of steam turbines

Including design and construction of component parts

.166 Other steam engines

Including rotary, eolipile, aerosteam, cycloidal steam engines

621.18 Steam generation and transmission

For steam heating, see 697.5

.182 Fuels and fuel consumption

Fuels for boiler furnaces

Including fuel efficiency

For fuel technology, see 662.6

.183 Boiler furnaces

Comprehensive works

For boilers in a specific heating system, see the system, e.g., hot-water heating 697.4

.183 6 Mechanical stokers

.183 8 Draft appliances

Natural-draft appliances, forst-draft appliances

Including stacks, chimneys, flues, dampers

.184 Boilers (Steam generators)

Class firing boilers in 621.194; locomotive boilers in 621.133; boilers for steam tractors in 621.14, for portable steam engines in 621.15, for stationary steam engines in 621.16 [*all formerly* *621.184]

.184 1 Theoretic and mathematical aspects

Including boiler economy, calorimetric and thermodynamic factors

.184 2 Specific types of boilers

Including internally and externally fired fire-tube boilers; water-tube boilers; natural and forst circulation boilers; horizontal, semivertical, vertical boilers

[†.184 22] Marine boilers

Class in 623.873

[†.184 23] Locomotive, traction, portable boilers

Class locomotive boilers in 621.133; boilers for steam tractors and rollers in 621.14; portable boilers in 621.15

[†.184 24] Stationary boilers

Class in 621.16

.184 5 Design and construction of boilers

Including maintenance, repairs, inspection

For operation of boilers, see 621.194

621.184 7 Boiler accessories

Including gauges, valves, steam collectors

.185 Steam circulation

Including steam pipes, safety valves, pressure regulators, insulation of steam systems

.19 Central steam-power plants

.194 Operation of boilers

Including firing [*formerly* *621.184], feeding of boilers

.194 3 Feed-water treatment

Including scale prevention [*formerly* †621.194 4], purification and softening of feed water

For feed-water appliances, see 621.197 2

[†.194 4] Scale prevention

Class in 621.194 3

.197 Steam plant accessories

.197 2 Feed-water appliances

Including feed-water heaters, economizers, steam accumulators

For feed-water treatment, see 621.194 3

.197 3 Steam traps

Including pumping traps, lift traps, boiler-feed return traps, steam pumps

.197 4 Steam separators

.197 5 Steam superheaters

.197 6 Steam condensers and cooling towers

.197 7 Steam plant instruments

Including steam calorimeters, indicators and gauges for pressure and temperature

.2 Hydraulic-power engineering

For steam-power engineering, see 621.1; *hydraulic engineering,* 627; *water-supply engineering,* 628.1; *mechanics of liquids,* 532.1

.21 Water wheels

.22 Overshot wheels

.23 Undershot wheels

621.24 Hydraulic turbines

For steam turbines, see 621.165

.25 Hydraulic engines

For steam engines, see 621.11

.252 Hydraulic pumps

.254 Hydraulic accumulators

.26 Hydraulic machinery and appliances

Comprehensive works

For a specific hydraulic machine or appliance, see the subject, e.g., hydraulic elevators 621.877

.27 Hydraulic rams

Including lifting, pumping, compressing rams

.3 Electrical engineering

SUMMARY

621.31 Generation of electricity
.32 Electric lighting
.33 Electric traction
.35 Electric batteries
.37 Electrical measurements
.38 Electronic and electric communication engineering
.39 Other branches of electrical engineering

.300 1 Statistics on electric-power production

.300 2 Estimates and costs of electric-power production

.300 23 Rates for electric power

.300 3 Contracts and specifications for electric-power production

.300 4 Designs and drawings of electrical circuits

Including wiring diagrams

.300 7 Laws and regulations on electric installations

Including underwriter requirements [*formerly* †621.328 1, *621.328]

.300 8 Electrical engineering patents

.300 9 Electrical engineering reports

621.31 Generation of electricity

SUMMARY

621.312	**Plants for electric-power generation**
.313	**Dynamoelectric machinery**
.314	**Voltage transformation machinery**
.315	**Electric condensers**
.316	**Details of electrical machinery**
.317	**Control devices at electric-power stations**
.319	**Power transmission engineering**

.312 Plants for electric-power generation

.312 13 Central stations for electric power

Comprehensive works

For nuclear power plants for electricity, see 621.481; *central stations for electric lighting only,* 621.312 2; *for electric traction only,* 621.312 3

.312 132 Steam-driven central stations

For steam turbines, see 621.165

.312 133 Internal-combustion-engine driven central stations

Including central stations driven by diesel engines, gas turbines

For internal-combustion engines, see 621.43

.312 134 Hydroelectric central stations

Including stations using tidal power

For dam engineering, see 627.8; *hydraulic turbines,* 621.24

.312 136 Wind-driven electric plants

.312 2 Central stations for electric lighting

Divide like 621.312 13, e.g., hydroelectric central stations for lighting 621.312 24

For electric lighting, see 621.32

.312 3 Central stations for electric traction

For electric traction, see 621.33

.312 6 Electric substations

621.313 Dynamoelectric machinery

For transmission systems, see 621.319 1

.313 1 Construction and installation

Including maintenance, testing of electric-generating machinery

.313 2 Direct-current machinery

Including dynamos, dynamotors, direct-current motors, converters, compensators, boosters

.313 3 Alternating-current machinery

.313 32 Polyphase machinery

For polyphase induction motors, see 621.313 6

.313 4 Synchronous machinery

Including synchronous generators and motors, alternating-current generators

For synchronous converters, see 621.313 5

.313 5 Alternating-current converters

Conversion of alternating current to direct current

Including synchronous converters, phase converters, frequency converters, motor converters

For rectifiers, see 621.313 7

.313 6 Asynchronous and commutator machinery

Including alternating-current series, repulsion, induction, polyphase induction motors; asynchronous phase and frequency converters

For rectifiers, see 621.313 7

.313 7 Rectifiers

Converters equipt with commutators

Including mechanical, electronic, electrolytic rectifiers

.314 Voltage transformation machinery

Including voltage regulators, reactors, induction coils

.314 3 Electric transformers

.314 31 Power transformers

Including step-up, step-down, interconnection transformers

621.314 38 Instrument transformers

Including current and potential transformers

.315 Electric condensers

.316 Details of electrical machinery

Including armatures and armature winding, contactors, electromagnets (field cores), brushes

For induction coils and reactors, see 621.314

.317 Control devices at electric-power stations

Including servomechanisms for power stations

For automatic control engineering, see 629.8

.317 2 Switchboards

Including panels, switchboard meters

.317 3 Electrical switches

.317 36 Electric circuit breakers

For electric fuses, see 621.317 8

.317 4 Rheostats

.317 5 Signal devices

.317 8 Protective devices for electric-power stations

Including fuses, lightning arresters, protective relays, grounding

For electric circuit breakers, see 621.317 36; *protective devices for electric transmission lines,* 621.319 8; *protective devices at service end of line,* 621.328

.319 Power transmission engineering

For dynamoelectric machinery, see 621.313

.319 1 Electric-power transmission systems

.319 12 Direct-current systems

.319 13 Alternating-current systems

Including single-phase, two-phase, polyphase current systems

.319 15 Composite electric current systems

Direct and alternating currents combined

.319 16 Polycyclic electric current systems

621.319 2 Electric transmission lines

For interior wiring, see 621.328 2

.319 21 Characteristics of electric circuits

Including heat losses in electric lines, transient currents, induction capacity of parallel lines

For telephone network analysis, see 621.385 1

.319 22 Overhead electric transmission lines

Including overhead power, telephone, telegraph lines

.319 223 Poles for electric transmission lines

Including construction, installation, maintenance of poles for electric transmission lines

.319 224 Cross arms for electric transmission lines

Including accessories for cross-arm installations

.319 225 Towers for electric transmission lines

.319 23 Underground electric transmission lines

Including electric conduits, conduit materials, manholes for underground electric transmission lines

.319 3 Electric wires and cables

.319 32 Uninsulated electric wires

.319 33 Insulated electric wires

For electric cables, see 621.319 34

.319 34 Electric cables

Including submarine cables, cable laying

For telephone cables, see 621.387 84; *submarine cable telegraphy,* 621.382 8

.319 37 Electric insulators [*formerly* †621.319 4] and insulation

Insulating materials used for electric lines and cables

[†.319 4] Electric insulators

Class in 621.319 37

.319 8 Protective devices for electric transmission lines

Including line lightning arresters, grounding devices

For protective devices in central electric-power stations, see 621.317 8; *at service end of line,* 621.328; *in central telephone stations,* 621.387 94

621.32 Electric lighting

Including systems and lamps; comprehensive works on illumination engineering

Class electric lighting for streets in 628.95, domestic lighting in 644.3 [*both formerly* *621.32]

For a specific application of electric lighting, see the subject, e.g., in mines 622.474; *central stations for electric lighting,* 621.312 2; *electric transmission lines,* 621.319 2

.325 Arc lighting

Including carbon arc lighting, high-intensity arc lighting, arc searchlights

.326 Incandescent lighting

Including carbon filament, tungsten, Nernst lamps

.327 Gas-discharge electric lighting

Comprehensive works on luminous tube lighting

For arc lighting, see 621.325

.327 3 Fluorescent electric lighting

.327 4 Mercury-vapor electric lighting

Including Cooper Hewitt, high-pressure mercury-vapor lamps

.327 5 Neon electric lighting

Including Moore lamps (carbon dioxide and nitrogen lamps), neon tubes

For neon signs in advertising, see 659.136

.327 6 Sodium-vapor electric lighting

Including sodium-vapor lamps

For municipal lighting, see 628.9

.328 Apparatus at service end of line

Including panels, fuses, insulators, switches

Class underwriter requirements [*formerly* *621.328] in 621.300 7

[†.328 1] Underwriter requirements

Class in 621.300 7

.328 2 Interior wiring

Including house wiring

621.328 8 Protective devices at service end of line

Including grounding devices

For protective devices for electric transmission lines, see 621.319 8; *in central telephone stations,* 621.387 94

.33 Electric traction [*formerly* *625.1]

Electric-power transmission for railways

Including apparatus, appliances for transmission

For comprehensive works on electric railways, see 625.6; *central stations for electric traction,* 621.312 3

.331 Mechanics of electric traction

Including trolley and third-rail systems

[†.334] Rolling stock

Class in 625.2

[†.334 2] Locomotives

Class in 625.263

.335 Electrification of street railways

.336 Electrification of railroads

Including steam railroad electrification

[*.34] Electronic engineering

Class in 621.381

[*.342] Electron tubes

Class in 621.381 51

[*.343] Electronic circuit functions

Class in 621.381 5

[*.345] Electroacoustics

Class electroacoustics in 621.381 8; manufacture of sound recorders and reproducers in 681.843

.35 Electric batteries

.353 Primary batteries

Including dry cells

.354 Secondary batteries (Storage batteries)

.355 Lead-acid storage batteries

.356 Alkaline storage batteries

Including nickel-iron alkaline cells, nickel-cadmium alkaline cells

621.37 Electrical measurements [*formerly also* †537.7]

Determination of instantaneous effective electrical values (instruments), measurement of total quantities of electricity over a period of time (meters)

.372 Electrical units and standards

Including primary (absolute) and secondary standards of resistance, voltage, inductance, capacitance, frequency; calibration of electrical instruments; instrument errors

.373 Electric recording meters

Electric meters driven by clockwork and equipt with charts for recording electrical variations

For specific electric meters and instruments, see 621.374

.374 Electric meters and instruments

Measurement of electric quantities

For electrical measurement of nonelectric quantities, see 621.379; *electric recording meters,* 621.373

.374 2 Electric resistance measurements

Including Wheatstone bridges, ohmmeters, resistance boxes, shunts

.374 3 Electric potential measurements

Including electrometers [*formerly also* †537.25], voltmeters, potentiometers, voltage detectors

.374 4 Electric current measurements

Including voltameters, ammeters, milliammeters, coulometers, ampere-hour meters, galvanometers

.374 5 Electric energy measurements

Including watt-hour meters, demand meters, electric supply meters

.374 6 Electric-power measurements

Including wattmeters, electrodynamometers, voltammeters

For power-factor meters, see 621.374 91

.374 7 Electric frequency meters

Including magnetic oscillographs, cathode-ray oscillographs

For electric phasemeters, see 621.374 91

.374 9 Other electric meters and instruments

.374 91 Electric phasemeters

Including synchroscopes, power-factor meters

621.379 Electric measurements of nonelectric quantities

For a specific measuring instrument, see the subject, e.g., telephone meters 621.387 96

.379 5 Electric telemeter systems

Electrical instruments measuring, transmitting, and recording electrical or nonelectrical quantities

.38 Electronic and electric communication engineering

For comprehensive works on telecommunication, see 384

SUMMARY

621.381	**Electronic engineering**
.382	**Wire telegraphy**
.383	**Telegraph instruments**
.384	**Radio communication engineering**
.385	**Wire telephony**
.386	**Telephone instruments**
.387	**Central telephone station equipment**
.388	**Television engineering**
.389	**Other electrical and electronic communication devices**

.381 Electronic engineering [*formerly* *621.34]

Applied electronics

Class radar [*formerly* *621.381] in 621.384 8

For electronics, see 537.5; *electronic navigation,* 623.893; *gas-discharge electric lighting,* 621.327

.381 5 Electronic circuits

Electrical circuits depending on vacuum tubes for their operation

Including electronic circuit functions, e.g., detection, amplification, control, modulation, frequency generation [*formerly* *621.343], semiconductors

For a specific application of electronic circuits, see the subject, e.g., radio circuits 621.384 12; *printed circuits* 621.381 7

.381 51 Electronic circuit components

Including high-vacuum and electron tubes [*formerly* †621.384 132, *621.342], gas tubes

For a specific application of electron tubes, see the subject, e.g., radio tubes 621.384 132

621.381 7 Printed circuits

Printed replacements for conventional wiring

Including electrical and electronic printed circuits

.381 71 Printed circuit components

Including modules, printed resistors and inductors, transistors, electron tube replacements

.381 8 Electroacoustics [*formerly* *621.345]

Electronic aspects of electroacoustical devices, sound recording and reproducing systems

For communication engineering, see 621.382–621.389; *manufacture of a specific electroacoustical device, the subject, e.g., sound reproducers* 681.843; *use of a specific electroacoustical device, the subject, e.g., electronic musical instruments* 789.9

.381 9 Applications of electronic engineering

Comprehensive works

Including electronic metal locators

For a specific application of electronic engineering, see the subject, e.g., radar 621.384 8

621.382–621.389 Communication engineering

Including manufacture of apparatus [*formerly also* †681.63]

.382 Wire telegraphy

Class telegraph instruments [*formerly* *621.382] in 621.383

For radiotelegraphy, see 621.384 2; *military telegraphy,* 623.732

.382 1 Telegraphic codes

Including Morse, Phillips, Continental codes

.382 3 Acoustic systems of telegraphy

Including hand-operated systems, e.g., simplex, duplex, quadruplex, multiplex systems

.382 4 Automatic systems of telegraphy

Including telegraphic systems of Bain, Morse, Wheatstone, Delany

.382 5 Printing telegraphy

Including stockticker, teleprinter, teletype

.382 6 Writing telegraphy (Telautography)

621.382 7 Facsimile telegraphy

For radiofacsimile, see 621.384 2

.382 8 Submarine cable telegraphy

For cables, cable laying, see 621.319 34

.383 Telegraph instruments [*formerly* *621.382]

Including telegraph keys, transmitters, receivers, calling apparatus, relays, repeaters, switches, recorders

.384 Radio communication engineering

.384 1 Radio principles

.384 11 Radio-wave propagation

Radio-wave radiation, spreading, absorption, reflection, diffraction, refraction, transmission

Including ionospheric reflection phenomena, e.g., fading, skip distance; effects of atmospheric electricity on radio-wave transmission

For elimination of interference in radio reception, see 621.384 154

.384 12 Radio circuits

Including radio circuit functions, e.g., detection, amplification, control, modulation, frequency generation

For radio tubes, see 621.384 132; *other radio circuit instrumentation,* 621.384 133

.384 13 Radio instruments and apparatus [*formerly* *621.384 3]

.384 131 Radio transmitters

Transmitting instruments

Including carrier-current generators, modulators, power amplifiers, alternators

For transmitting antennas, see 621.384 135

.384 132 Radio tubes

Comprehensive works

Class comprehensive works on high-vacuum and electron tubes [*formerly* †621.384 132] in 621.381 51

For radio transmitting instruments, see 621.384 131; *radio receiving instruments,* 621.384 136

621.384 133 Other radio circuit instrumentation

Including condensers, microphones, inductors, resistors, filters, oscillographs, grounding devices

.384 135 Radio antennas

Including transmitting and receiving antennas, wave guides

.384 135 5 Directional radio antennas

Including direction finders; directive, radio beam, Adcock antennas

For radar, see 621.384 8; *direction finders in aeronautics,* 629.135 1; *positioning ships with respect to radio beams,* 623.893

.384 136 Radio receivers

Receiving instruments

Including radio-frequency amplifiers, modulators, rectifiers, detectors, loud speakers

.384 136 6 Radio receiving sets

Including crystal, radio-tube, regenerative, tuned radio-frequency, superheterodyne receiving sets

For manufacture of radio receiving sets, see 621.384 18

.384 15 Radio communication systems [*formerly* *621.384 5]

.384 151 Short-wave radio systems

For frequency modulation systems, see 621.384 152; *elimination of radio interference,* 621.384 154

.384 152 Frequency modulation (FM) systems

[†.384 152 2] Radio telephone systems

Class in 621.384 5

.384 153 Long-wave radio systems

Including amplitude modulation (AM) systems

.384 154 Elimination of radio interference

For effects of atmospheric electricity on radio-wave transmission, see 621.384 11

621.384 16 Radio broadcasting stations

Technical operations of clear-channel, regional, local radio stations

Including control room operations

For planning, organization, management of radio stations, see 384.5

.384 166 Amateur broadcasting stations

.384 17 Radio measurements and standardization

Including measurements and standardization of radio impedance, frequency, wave-length, modulation, signal intensity

.384 18 Manufacture of radio receiving sets

Including repairs

.384 19 Applications of radio [*formerly* *621.384 9]

Comprehensive works only

For a specific application of radio transmission, see the subject, e.g., as an aid in sea navigation 623.893; *as a landing aid in aeronautics* 629.135 1; *in advertising* 659.142; *as entertainment* 791.44

.384 2 Radiotelegraphy

Including systems for radiotelegraphic transmission; radiofacsimile

For wire telegraphy, see 621.382; *military radiotelegraphy,* 623.732

.384 3 Radiotelegraph instruments and apparatus

Class radio instruments and apparatus [*formerly* *621.384 3] in 621.384 13

.384 5 Radiotelephony

Including radiotelephone systems [*formerly also* †621.384 152 2]

Class radio communication systems [*formerly* *621.384 5] in 621.384 15

For wire telephony, see 621.385; *military radiotelephony,* 623.733

.384 6 Radiotelephone instruments and apparatus

621.384 8 Radar [*formerly* *621.381]

Including racon

For a specific application of radar, see the subject, e.g., as landing aid in aeronautics 629.135 1; *directional antennas,* 621.384 135 5

[*.384 9] Applications of radio

Class in 621.384 19

.385 Wire telephony

Class telephone instruments in 621.386, central telephone station equipment in 621.387 [*both formerly* *621.385]

For radiotelephony, see 621.384 5; *military telephony,* 623.733

.385 1 Telephone network analysis

.385 3 Intercommunication systems

Interphone systems

.385 4 Central telephone stations

Telephone exchanges

For central telephone station equipment, see 621.387

.385 41 Telephone substations

.385 47 Manual switchboard systems

For automatic switchboard systems, see 621.385 7; *manual telephone switchboards,* 621.387 2

.385 5 Multiple switchboard systems

.385 6 Trunking systems

Including transfer systems

.385 7 Automatic switchboard systems

Including semiautomatic and Strowger systems

For manual switchboard systems, see 621.385 47; *automatic telephone switchboards,* 621.387 7

.385 8 Private telephone exchanges

Including private automatic exchange (PAX), private board exchange (PBX)

.386 Telephone instruments [*formerly* *621.385]

Including dial telephones, automatic telephones

For telephone meters, see 621.387 96

.386 2 Telephone transmitters

Including handsets containing transmitters and receivers in one housing

621.386 3 Telephone receivers

.386 7 Recording telephones (Mechanical telephones)

Telephonographs, telegraphones

.386 9 Telephone pay stations

.387 Central telephone station equipment [*formerly* *621.385]

.387 2 Manual telephone switchboards

For manual switchboard systems, see 621.385 47; *automatic telephone switchboards,* 621.387 7

.387 3 Multiple telephone switchboards

.387 4 Transfer telephone switchboards

Switchboards for transferring lines from one central station to another

.387 5 Telephone switchboard components

Including parts and accessories of manual and automatic telephone switchboards

.387 6 Telephone central station power equipment

Including auxiliary generators, batteries

.387 7 Automatic telephone switchboards

Including semiautomatic and Strowger switchboards

For automatic switchboard systems, see 621.385 7; *manual telephone switchboards,* 621.387 2

.387 8 Telephone transmission

Including local and long-distance telephone transmission

For electric transmission lines, see 621.319 2

.387 84 Telephone cable construction

.387 9 Other central telephone station equipment

.387 94 Protective devices in central telephone stations

Including grounding devices, lightning arresters

.387 96 Telephone meters and counters

.388 Television engineering

Including monochrome and color television engineering

.388 1 Television principles

Including television circuits and optics

621.388 3 Television apparatus and instruments

Divide like 621.384 13, e.g., television picture tubes 621.388 32

.388 34 Television cameras

Including iconoscopes, image orthicon cameras, camera tubes

.388 6 Television stations

Technical operations

Including control room operations

For planning, organization, management of television stations, see 384.55

.388 9 Television applications

Comprehensive works only

For a specific application of television, see the subject, e.g., television in teaching 371.335 8

.389 Other electrical and electronic communication devices

Including electric bells, buzzers, alarms, public address systems

For amplifiers and loudspeakers in radio receiving instruments, see 621.384 136

.39 Other branches of electrical engineering

Including comprehensive works on applications of electricity

For a specific application, see the subject, e.g., electroplating 671.732

.393 Rural electrification

Comprehensive works

For central stations for electric power, see 621.312 13; *agricultural use of electric power,* 631.371

.396 Electric furnaces

Comprehensive works on arc, resistance, electromagnetic, dielectric furnaces

Including conduction and induction heating [*formerly* *697.7]

For a specific use of electric furnaces, see the subject, e.g., metallurgical furnaces 669.8

621.4 Prime movers

Including comprehensive works on heat engines

For steam engines, see 621.11; *hydraulic-power engineering,* 621.2; *engineering thermodynamics,* 621.01

.41 External-combustion engines

Including hot air engines

.42 Air engines (Air motors)

Including reciprocating air motors, rotary vane positive expansion motors, air-turbine engines

For wind engines, see 621.45; *air compressors,* 621.51; *gas-turbine engines,* 621.433

.43 Internal-combustion engines

For a specific application of internal-combustion engines, see the subject, e.g., aircraft engines 629.134 35; *internal-combustion-engine driven central stations,* 621.312 133

.433 Gas-turbine engines

Including comprehensive works on gas-turbine engines and jet engines

For jet engines, see 621.435

.433 5 Modified gas-turbine engines

Including free-piston engines

.434 Spark-ignition engines

Engines using gasoline and other light petroleum products as fuel

For high-compression-ignition engines, see 621.436

.435 Jet engines

.436 High-compression-ignition engines (Diesel engines)

Engines using heavy oil as fuel

For spark-ignition engines, see 621.434

.436 1 Theories and principles

.436 2 Design and construction

.436 8 Operation, maintenance, repair

Including lubrication

.437 Parts and accessories of internal-combustion engines

Including cylinders, carburetors, pistons, ignition devices, connecting rods, governors

621.438 Applications of internal-combustion engines

Comprehensive works only

For a specific application of internal-combustion engines, see the subject, e.g., aircraft engines 629.134 35

.45 Wind engines

Including windmills, wind wheels, Flettner rotors

For air engines, see 621.42; *wind-driven electric plants,* 621.312 136

.47 Solar engineering

For solar heat, see 523.72; *solar heating,* 697.78; *solar houses,* 728.69

.48 Nuclear engineering

Including fission and fusion reactions

For nuclear physics, see 539.7

.481 Central stations using nuclear power

Including stations for generation of thermal and electric power

.483 Nuclear reactors

Including production and industrial research reactors

.483 2 Design and construction of nuclear reactors

Including shielding designs

.483 3 Nuclear materials and fuels

Preparation and treatment of metallic fuels

.483 5 Operation of nuclear reactors

Including safety measures

.483 7 Nuclear by-products

Industrial production of radioactive isotopes

Including comprehensive works on utilization of radioactive isotopes

For a specific application of radioactive isotopes, see the subject, e.g., in medicine 615.842 4

.483 8 Treatment of radioactive wastes

Including proposed disposal methods

For preventive measures against radioactive fallout, see 614.715

621.489 Nuclear power applications

Comprehensive works only

For a specific application of nuclear power, see the subject, e.g., heating buildings 697.3–697.79

.49 Central power stations

Comprehensive works

For steam-power plants, see 621.19; *central stations for electric power,* 621.312 13; *central stations using nuclear power,* 621.481

.5 Pneumatic machinery and mechanical refrigeration

For pneumatic tools, see 621.9; *fans, blowers, pumps,* 621.6; *materials-handling equipment,* 621.86

.51 Air compressors

Including reciprocating, rotary, jet air compressors

For air engines, see 621.42

.53 Comprest-air transmission

Including design of comprest-air transmission systems; equipment, e.g., piping, mains, gauges; pneumatic pumping

For vacuum pumps, see 621.692

.54 Applications of comprest air

Comprehensive works only

For a specific application of comprest air, see the subject, e.g., pneumatic hoisting machinery 621.862

.549 Pneumatic cleaners and carriers

Including sandblasts

.55 Vacuum technique applications

Comprehensive works

For a specific vacuum technique or application, see the subject, e.g., high-vacuum tubes 621.381 51

.56 Refrigeration

Including comprehensive works on refrigeration and air conditioning engineering

For heating, ventilating and air conditioning engineering, see 697; *a specific application of refrigeration, the subject, e.g., commercial refrigeration and cold storage of fruits and vegetables* 664.85

.563 Heat pumps

For heat pumps used as heating devices, see 697.3

621.564 Refrigerants

Including ammonia, Freons®, carbon dioxide, dry ice, methyl chloride, sulfur dioxide used as refrigerants

.57 Mechanical refrigerators

Comprehensive works on commercial, domestic, storage (deep-freeze) refrigerators

For domestic use of mechanical refrigerators, see 643.3; *commercial use,* 664.802 85

.58 Ice manufacture

Including ice cutting, ice storage

.6 Fans, blowers, pumps

For use of fans and blowers in ventilating buildings, see 697.92; *air compressors,* 621.51

.61 Piston blowers

Including blast engines

.62 Rotary blowers

.63 Centrifugal blowers

Including centrifugal and exhaust fans

.64 Pumps

.643 Hand pumps

.65 Reciprocating pumps

Including piston and plunger pumps

.66 Rotary pumps

.67 Centrifugal pumps

.68 Fire engines

For fire extinction, see 614.843–614.846

.69 Other pumps

.691 Jet pumps

Including injectors (injection pumps), ejectors

.692 Vacuum pumps

Including oil-diffusion and high-vacuum pumps

.699 Miscellaneous pumps

Including density pumps, direct fluid pressure displacement pumps, e.g., pulsometers

621.7 Factory engineering

Engineering aspects affecting over-all operations of manufacturing plants; arrangement with reference to sequence of processes, mechanical equipment, economy of power

For production management, see 658.5; *manufactures,* 660–680

.75 Machine-shop practice

Comprehensive works on machining to size and assembling metalwork

For machine tools, see 621.9; *metal manufactures,* 671; *manufacture of specific finisht articles,* 680

.78 Automatic factories

For automatic control engineering, see 629.8; *automation in production,* 658.561

.8 Mechanical power transmission machinery and related equipment

Class servomechanisms [*formerly* †*621.8] in 629.83

For comprest-air transmission, see 621.53; *hydraulic-power engineering,* 621.2

.81 Principles of mechanism

Including mechanical movements, kinematics and dynamics in machines

.812 Power control devices

Including speed controllers (governors), power measuring devices, e.g., dynamometers

.815 Machine design

For mechanical drawing, see 744.422

.82 Elements of mechanical power transmission

.821 Journals

.822 Bearings

Including plain, ball, roller bearings

For lubrication, see 621.89

.823 Shafts and shafting

.824 Springs

621.825 Couplings and clutches

Including universal joints

.83 Gears [*formerly* †621.84] and gearing

For gear-cutting machinery, see 621.944

.838 Cams

.84 Valves and pistons

Class gears [*formerly* †621.84] in 621.83

.85 Power transmission by flexible connections

For materials-handling equipment, see 621.86

.852 Belt transmission

For belt conveyers, see 621.867 5

.853 Rope transmission

.854 Wire transmission

.859 Chain transmission

For chain hoists, see 621.863

.86 Materials-handling equipment

For excavating machinery, see 624.152; *materials handling in production,* 658.512

.862 Hoisting machinery

For cranes, derricks, elevators, see 621.87

.863 Mechanical tackles

Including hydraulic tackles, chain hoists

.864 Windlasses

Including winches, capstans

.865 Power shovels

.867 Conveying machinery

.867 2 Pipes and pipelines

Comprehensive works

For gas pipelines, see 665.74; *petroleum pipelines,* 665.54; *water mains,* 628.15; *pipe fitting,* 696

.867 5 Belt conveyers

621.867 6 Escalators

For elevators, see 621.877

.868 Telpherage

Including ski tows, chair lifts

For cable railways, see 625.5

.87 Cranes, derricks, elevators

.872 Derricks

.873 Cranes

Including mobile [*formerly* †621.874–†621.875] and stationary cranes

[†.874–†.875] Mobile cranes

Class in 621.873

.877 Elevators

Including hand-powered, belt-driven, steam, hydraulic, electric elevators; elevator parts and accessories

.877 7 Dumb-waiters

.88 Fastenings

.882 Screws, nuts, bolts

For screw-cutting machinery, see 621.944; *tapping machinery,* 621.955

.883 Cotters and cotter pins

.884 Rivets and nails

For riveting machinery, see 621.978

.89 Lubrication

Elimination of friction in machinery by lubricants

For manufacture and properties of lubricants, see 665; *bearings,* 621.822

.9 Tools

Design, maintenance, repair, operation

Including pneumatic tools [*formerly* †621.542], power-driven metalworking machinery, toolmaking

For machine-shop practice, see 621.75; *woodworking tools,* 674.42–674.43; *hand-forged tools,* 682.4

.908 Hand tools

Comprehensive works

For a specific hand tool, see the subject, e.g., hand hammers 621.973

621.91 Milling machinery

.912 Planers and shapers

Including slotting and grooving machines

.92 Abrading machinery

.922 Grinding machinery

Including cylinder and surface grinders, lapping machines, crushers

.923 Emery wheels and grindstones

.924 Filing machinery

Including rasps

.93 Cutting and sawing machinery

Including power shears, contour band saws

For sawmills, see 674.2

.94 Turning machinery

.942 Lathes

.943 Chucks

.944 Screw-cutting machinery

Including gear-cutting and pipe-threading machinery

For tapping machines, see 621.955; *screws, nuts, bolts,* 621.882; *gears,* 621.83

.945 Boring machinery

.95 Perforating machinery

For boring machines, see 621.945; *punching machines,* 621.96

.952 Drilling machinery

.954 Reaming machinery

Including broaching machinery

.955 Tapping machinery

For screw-cutting machinery, see 621.944

.96 Punching machinery

For die-pressing machinery, see 621.984

.97 Hammers

.973 Hand hammers

.974 Power hammers

Including pneumatic hammers

621.978 Riveting machinery

For rivets, see 621.884

.98 Pressing machinery

.982 Bending machinery

.983 Straightening jigs

.984 Die-pressing machinery

Including punch and die machines

For punching machinery, see 621.96

.99 Jigs, fixtures, gauges

For straightening jigs, see 621.983

622 Mining and mining engineering

For economic geology, see 553; *metallurgy,* 669; *economics of production in mineral industries,* 338.2; *conservation of mineral resources,* 333.8

SUMMARY

622.1	**Prospecting and exploratory operations**
.2	**Underground mining**
.3	**Types of mining**
.4–.5	**Mine plant and equipment**
.6	**Transportation and hoisting in mines**
.7	**Ore dressing**
.8	**Mine hazards and accidents**

.001 Mining statistics

[†.002] Quantities, costs, estimates

Class in 622.13

.007 Mining laws and regulations

.009 Reports on mines and mining

For mining companies, see 622.065

.065 Mining companies [*formerly* *622.17]

For reports on mines and mining, see 622.009

.078 Mining machinery

Comprehensive works

For machinery used in a specific type of mining, see the subject, e.g., placer mining 622.320 78; *ore dressing machinery* 622.707 8

622.1 **Prospecting [*formerly* *553] and exploratory operations**

Class development workings [*formerly* *622.1] in 622.2

For mining prospectuses, see 553

.12 Practical prospecting methods

Including surface examination, biogeochemical and geobotanical prospecting

Class divining rods [*formerly* †622.12] in 133.323

For geophysical exploration, see 622.15; *prospecting for a specific mineral,* 622.18

.13 Mineral surveys and valuation

Quantities, costs, estimates [*all formerly also* †622.002]

Including mine examination, sampling, quantitative measurements of mineral content, tonnage calculations [*all formerly* *622.17]

.14 Mine surveying

Determination of size, shape of mines

Including preparation of mine maps and models

.15 Geophysical exploration

Comprehensive works on gravitational methods, magnetic methods, seismic methods, electrical (resistivity, potential, electromagnetic) methods, acoustic methods, radioactivity methods

For exploration for specific minerals, see 622.18

[*.17] Mining economics

Class examination, sampling, measurement, tonnage calculation in 622.13; mining companies in 622.065

.18 Prospecting and exploration for specific minerals [*formerly* *622.33–*622.38]

Divide like 553.2–553.86, e.g., seismic prospecting for petroleum 622.182 82

For mining specific minerals, see 622.33–622.39

622.2 **Underground mining**

Including development workings [*formerly* *622.1]

For underground mining of specific ores, see 622.33–622.39

.21 Excavation of mines

Including stoping [*formerly* †622.27]

For quarrying, see 622.35; *mine shafts,* 622.25; *mine tunnels,* 622.26

[†.22] Quarrying

Class in 622.35

.23 Blasting operations

Including drilling of blast holes

.24 Boring operations

.25 Mine shafts

Including inclines, winzes, raises

.26 Mine tunnels

Including drifts, crosscuts, levels, adits, gangways

[†.27] Stoping

Class in 622.21

.28 Supporting structures in mines

Including structures of timber, masonry, steel

.3 **Types of mining**

Comprehensive works on underground mining, open-pit mining, alluvial mining

For underground mining, see 622.2

.31 Open-pit mining

Including strip mining

For open-pit mining of specific ores, see 622.33–622.39

.32 Alluvial mining

Placer mining, hydraulic mining, dredging, drift mining

For alluvial mining of specific ores, see 622.33–622.39

622.33–622.39 Mining specific minerals

Class prospecting and exploration for specific minerals [*formerly* *622.33–*622.38] in 622.18

.33 Mining carbonaceous ores

Divide like 553.2, e.g., mining anthracite coal 622.335

622.34 Mining metalliferous ores

.341 Mining ferrous ores

.342 Mining gold, silver, platinum ores

.343–.349 9 Mining other metalliferous ores

Divide like 553.43–553.499, e.g., mining uranium ores 622.349 3

.35 Quarrying [*formerly also* †622.22]

Extraction of building stone deposits

Divide like 553.5, e.g., quarrying granite 622.352

.36 Mining earthy material deposits

Divide like 553.6, e.g., mining salt 622.363

.37 Extracting minerals from mineralized water

Including extraction of minerals and metals from sea water and oil brines

.38 Mining gem deposits

Divide like 553.8, e.g., mining diamonds 622.382

.39 Mining other economic minerals

.4 Mine plant and equipment

For mining machinery, see 622.078; *transportation and hoisting,* 622.6

.41 Mine gases

Including methods of detecting mine gases

.42 Ventilation and air conditioning in mines

.43 Temperature control in mines

Including heating systems, cooling systems, temperature control devices in mines

.47 Illumination in mines

.473 Portable lamps

Including safety lamps, miners' lamps

.474 Electric lighting systems in mines

.48 Electricity in mines

Comprehensive works

For a specific application of electricity in mines, see the subject, e.g., illumination 622.474

622.49 Mine sanitation

.5 Mine drainage

Including drainage ditches, drainage channels, pumping systems

.6 Transportation and hoisting in mines

Including haulage systems

[†.63–†.64] Cars and gravity planes

Class in 622.66

.65 Nonmechanical haulage

Including use of chutes, wheelbarrows, hand tramming, horse and mule haulage

.66 Mechanical haulage

Including gravity planes [*formerly* †622.64], shuttle cars [*formerly* †622.63], conveyers, electric mine locomotives, scrapers

.67 Hoisting systems

Direct- and gear-driven hoists

Including single- and double-drum hoists

.68 Mine elevators

Including cages, skips, buckets

.69 Surface transportation

Including loading, unloading, transshipment

.7 Ore dressing

Comprehensive works

For preparation and treatment of a specific ore, see technology of the ore, e.g., reduction of iron ore 669.14

.73 Crushing and grinding operations

.74 Sizing operations

Including use of screens and mechanical classifiers

.75 Ore concentration

Separation of crusht ores and removal of wastes

.751 Gravity concentration

Ore concentration utilizing differences in specific gravity between minerals

Including sink-float concentration, jigging

622.752 Flotation

Ore concentration utilizing differences in chemical composition of minerals to bring about attachment of mineral grains to air bubbles in water

.77 Electrical separation

Ore concentration depending upon differences in magnetic permeability or surface electrical conductivity between different mineral varieties

Including magnetic and electrostatic separation

[†.78] Coal washing

Class in 662.623

.79 Milling plants

Including design and equipment

For a specific operation in milling plants, see the subject, e.g., ore concentration 622.75

.8 Mine hazards and accidents

Causes, occurrence, prevention of mine accidents

.81 Mine explosions

.82 Mine fires

.83 Earth movements in mines

Including cave-ins, fall of rocks, subsidences

.84 Mine floods

.86 Rescue and relief operations for miners

623 Military and naval engineering

SUMMARY

623.1	Fortifications
.2	Offensive engineering operations (Demolition operations)
.3	Defensive engineering operations
.4	Ordnance
.5	Gunnery
.6	Military transportation engineering
.7	Other military engineering operations
.8	Naval engineering

623.1–623.77 Military engineering

For military science, see 355–359

623.1 Fortifications

.12 Permanent fortifications

Design, construction, maintenance of permanent land, harbor, coastal defenses

.15 Temporary fortifications

Field fortifications built by combat forces with material available to field armies

.19 Specific forts and fortresses

Divide like 930–999, e.g., fortress of Gibraltar 623.194 689

.2 Offensive engineering operations (Demolition operations)

Including demolition of transportation facilities [*formerly also* *623.6], railroad tracks [*formerly* †623.632], fortifications, wire entanglements

Class countermining operations [*formerly* *623.2] in 623.36

For demolition of military communication facilities, see 623.32

.26 Mine laying [*formerly* *623.3]

For countermining operations, see 623.36

.262 Land mines

Including booby traps, underground torpedoes

.263 Marine mines

.3 Defensive engineering operations

Class mine laying [*formerly* *623.3] in 623.26

For camouflage engineering, see 623.77

.32 Demolition of enemy communication facilities

.34 Trench defenses

.36 Countermining operations [*formerly* *623.2]

Detection of land mines, demolition of mine fields, mine sweeping

.37 Defenses against chemical and biological warfare

.372 Defenses against gas warfare

Including military use of gas masks

623.373 Decontamination operations

Including decontamination from gases, microorganisms, radiation

.38 Defenses against air warfare

Including engineering aspects of civilian protection against bombings, atomic warfare

For barrage balloons, see 623.744

.382 Air raid warning systems

Operation, maintenance of air raid warning systems

Including radar detection of enemy approach, distant early warning systems

For radar engineering, see 621.384 8

.383 Blackouts in war

Engineering aspects of blackouts, dimouts, brownouts

Including blackout flashlights, lanterns, flares

.388 Air raid shelters

Design, construction, maintenance of air raid shelters

.4 Ordnance

Design, construction, repair of war weapons

Including naval ordnance [*formerly* †623.9]

.41 Artillery

Comprehensive works on mounted artillery pieces

For types of artillery, see 623.42; *mounts,* 623.43; *ammunition,* 623.45

.42 Types of artillery

For chemical artillery, see 623.445

.421 2 Guns

Including guns on mobile and fixt mounts

.421 3 Howitzers

.421 4 Mortars

.421 7 Guided missile launchers

[†.422] Machine guns and submachine guns

Class in 623.442

[†.425] Sighting apparatus

Class in 623.46

623.43 Gun mounts and armored vehicles

.431 Towed mounts

.433 Fixt mounts

Including turret mounts

.434 Naval mounts

.438 Armored vehicles

Including tanks, armored cars, armored trains

.44 Small arms

Portable arms of not more than .60 caliber

For manufacture and repair of small nonmilitary firearms, see 683.4

.441 Primitive firearms

.442 Machine guns [*formerly* †623.422] and shoulder weapons

Including submachine guns [*formerly* †623.422], bazookas, rifles, muskets, carbines

.443 Pistols

Including revolvers, automatic pistols, semiautomatic pistols

.444 Side arms

Including swords, bayonets, daggers, lances, trench knives

.445 Chemical artillery

Including flame throwers [*formerly* †623.454 31], mortars for smoke and gas projectiles

.45 Ammunition

.451 Artillery missiles

Including fixt [*formerly* †623.453], semifixt, separate-loading ammunition

Class rockets in 623.454 3, pyrotechnical signal devices in 623.454 4 [*both formerly* *623.451]

.451 1 Bombs

Low-velocity projectiles

Including fragmentation, demolition, depth bombs; comprehensive works on aircraft bombs

For chemical projectiles, see 623.451 6; *rockets,* 623.454 3

.451 14 Grenades

Including rifle and hand grenades

623.451 15 Mines

Including land, naval, aerial mines

For mine laying, see 623.26; *countermining operations,* 623.36

.451 19 Nuclear projectiles

Including atom and hydrogen bombs

.451 3 Projectiles

Comprehensive works

Including high-velocity projectiles

For bombs, see 623.451 1; *nuclear projectiles,* 623.451 19

.451 4 Shrapnel projectiles

.451 6 Chemical projectiles

Including incendiary [*formerly also* †623.454 31], gas, smoke bombs

For pyrotechnical signal devices, see 623.454 4

.451 7 High-explosives (HE) projectiles

Including torpedoes [*formerly also* †623.95], block-busters, high-explosive-antitank (HEAT) projectiles

For bangalore torpedoes, see 623.454 5

.451 8 Armor-piercing (AP, APC) projectiles

Including high-velocity armor-piercing (HVAP), canister projectiles

.451 9 Guided missiles (Strategic rockets) [*formerly* †623.74]

Including intercontinental ballistic missiles (ICBM)

For pilotless aircraft, see 623.746 9; *tactical rockets,* 623.454 3

.451 94 Antimissile rockets

.452 Explosives

Chemical compounds used for propelling, bursting, demolition charges

For manufacture of explosives, see 662.2

[†.453] Fixt ammunition

Class in 623.451

623.454 Other types of ordnance material

For artillery missiles, see 623.451; *small-arms ammunition,* 623.455

[†.454 1] Fuses

Class in 623.454 2

.454 2 Detonators

Including fuses [*formerly* †623.454 1], primers, firing mechanisms, boosters, percussion caps

.454 3 Rockets (Tactical rockets) [*formerly* *623.451]

Jet-propelled bombs, "buzz" bombs

For guided missiles, see 623.451 9; *signal rockets,* 623.454 4

[†.454 31] Incendiary devices

Class incendiary bombs in 623.451 6; flame throwers in 623.445

.454 4 Pyrotechnical signal devices [*formerly* *623.451]

Including signal rockets, illuminating projectiles, star shells, drifting lights, float lights, aircraft-wing flares, parachute-borne flares used for illumination, signaling, recognition

.454 5 Demolition charges

Including bangalore torpedoes, shaped charges, destructors, demolition blocks

For mines, see 623.451 15; *demolition of mine fields,* 623.36

.455 Small-arms ammunition

Bullets, cartridges

.46 Artillery accessories

Including sighting apparatus [*formerly* †623.425], range finders, range keepers, range directors

For sighting, range finding, see 623.5

[†.47] Arsenals

Class in 355.73

623.5 Gunnery

Application of ballistics in laying, aiming, firing various types of guns

Including sighting, range finding, fire control

For sighting apparatus, range finders, see 623.46; *target practice,* 355.54

.51 Ballistics [*formerly* *623.53]

Former heading: Theory and strength of guns

Motion of projectiles, conditions affecting that motion

Including bomb, rocket ballistics

For forensic ballistics, see 364.12

.53 Interior ballistics

Motion of projectiles within the bore, conditions governing that motion

Class comprehensive works on ballistics [*formerly* *623.53] in 623.51

For reaction of mounts, see 623.57

.54 Exterior ballistics

Motion of projectiles after leaving gun tube, resistance encountered due to motion thru air

[†.554] Naval target practice

Class in 359.5

.56 Terminal ballistics

Effect of projectiles on targets

.57 Reaction of mounts

Including controlled recoil mounts, nonrecoil mounts

.6 Military transportation engineering

Temporary and rapid construction, maintenance, and repair of transportation facilities

Including use of pierst steel planking (PSP)

Class demolition of transportation facilities in 623.2, military water-supply engineering in 623.75, military power and light systems in 623.76 [*all formerly* *623.6]

For military aircraft, see 623.74; *military transports,* 623.826 4

.62 Military roads

623.63 Military railways

[†.632] Demolition of railroad tracks

Class in 623.2

.64 Military docks

Including construction, maintenance, repair of breakwaters, artificial harbors

.65 Military bridges

Including materials [*formerly* †623.66], construction, maintenance, repair of pontoon bridges, rope ferries, other temporary bridges

[†.66] Bridge material

Class in 623.65

.7 Other military engineering operations

.71 Military topography

Military sketching, map making, map reading

Class military photogrammetry [*formerly* *623.71] in 623.72

.72 Military photography

Including photogrammetry [*formerly* *623.71], photomaps

.73 Military communication engineering

Including installation, operation of equipment

.731 Visual signal communication

Including semaphore systems, heliographs, light emitters, smoke generators, panel systems

For pyrotechnical signal devices, see 623.454 4

.732 Military telegraphy

Including teletype, radiotelegraphy, radioteletype

.733 Military telephony

Including radiotelephony, walkie-talkies, radiocommunication

.74 Military aircraft [*formerly* *629.1]

Design, construction, identification

Class guided missiles [*formerly* †623.74] in 623.451 9

.741 Military lighter-than-air aircraft

.742 Military free balloons

623.743 Military airships

Including nonrigid, semirigid, rigid dirigibles

.744 Barrage balloons

.746 Military heavier-than-air aircraft

Including military airplanes

.746 2 Trainers

.746 3 Bombers

.746 4 Fighters

.746 5 Carriers

Including transport and cargo aircraft

.746 6 Rescue aircraft

Including amphibian planes, helicopters

.746 9 Pilotless aircraft (Guided aircraft)

.75 Military sanitary engineering

Military water-supply engineering [*formerly* *623.6], military sewage-disposal engineering

For military hygiene, see 613.67

.76 Military power and light systems [*formerly* *623.6]

.77 Camouflage engineering

.8 Naval engineering

Including nonmilitary naval engineering

SUMMARY

623.81 Naval architecture
.82 Shipbuilding
.83 Shipyards
.84 Hull construction
.85 Electrical, mechanical, chemical accessory systems
.86 Equipment and outfit
.87 Marine engineering
.88 Seamanship
.89 Sea navigation

.81 Naval architecture

Structural engineering for ships

Including design of ships; calculations and considerations of moments, stability, displacement, resistance and speed, rolling, pitching, structural strength, tonnage, steering, maneuvering

For graphic statics, see 531.25; *strength of materials,* 620.11; *fluid mechanics,* 532

623.82 Shipbuilding

Comprehensive works on construction, maintenance, repair of ships

For hull construction, see 623.84; *comprehensive works on ships,* 387.2

.821 Ancient and medieval ships

Including caravels [*formerly* †623.822 5], galleys, sailing men-of-war, biremes, triremes; comprehensive works on primitive crafts

Class clipper ships [*formerly* *623.821] in 623.822

For hand-propelled and towed craft, see 623.829

.822 Modern sailing ships

Including clipper ships [*formerly* *623.821], racing yachts, rotor ships

Class caravels [*formerly* †623.822 5] in 623.821

For ancient and medieval ships, see 623.821; *power yachts,* 623.824 3; *yachting,* 797.14

.823 Power-driven ships

.823 1 Small power craft

Including motorboats, motor launches

For racing yachts, see 623.822; *power yachts,* 623.824 3

.823 2 Tugboats and towboats

.823 4 Ferryboats

Including passenger, freight, train ferryboats

.824 Merchant ships

.824 3 Passenger ships

Including lake, river, ocean liners; power yachts

For military transports and hospital ships, see 623.826 4

.824 5 Cargo ships

Including freighters, bulk carriers, tankers

For military supply ships, see 623.826 5

.824 8 Factory ships

Including modern whaleboats, ship canneries

623.825 Warships

Design, construction, identification

Including armor protection of warships [*formerly* †623.9]

Class patrol craft [*formerly* *623.825] in 623.826 3

For sailing men-of-war, see 623.821

.825 2 Battleships

.825 3 Cruisers

Including antiaircraft cruisers

.825 4 Destroyers

Including destroyer escorts, motor torpedo boats, gunboats, submarine chasers

For patrol craft, see 623.826 3

.825 5 Aircraft carriers

.825 6 Landing craft

Including amphibious landing craft

.825 7 Submarines

Including nuclear-powered submarines

.826 Other government vessels

.826 2 Mine craft

Including mine layers, mine sweepers

.826 3 Patrol craft [*formerly* *623.825]

Including police boats, revenue cutters

For submarine chasers, motor torpedo boats, see 625.825 4

.826 4 Military transports and hospital ships

.826 5 Military supply ships

.828 Other power-driven ships

Including icebreakers, trawlers, dredgers

For underwater dredging operations, see 627.73

.829 Hand-propelled and towed craft

Including canoes, lifeboats, barges, scows, rowboats, towed canalboats, coracles

For lifeboats as equipment on ships, see 623.865

623.83 Shipyards

Appliances and facilities used in construction, maintenance and repair of ships

Including slips, launching ways, drydocks, moldlofts, shipbuilding berths

.831 Experimental model tanks for ships

.84 Hull construction

Construction of body of ships

Including joinery, riveting, welding, sheet-metal work for shipbuilders (loftsmen, ship fitters, shipwrights)

.85 Electrical, mechanical, chemical accessory systems

Class gear [*formerly* †623.85] in 623.862

.852 Electricity on ships

Electric power equipment and its installation on ships

Including electric lighting on ships

For communication systems on ships, see 623.864

.853 Heat, ventilation, refrigeration on ships

Including air conditioning on ships

.854 Water supply and sanitation on ships

Including water distillation, fire detection and prevention systems, plumbing systems

.86 Equipment and outfit

.862 Gear [*formerly* †623.85] and rigging

Including rope, masts, spars, rudder, sails, cordage, anchors

.863 Nautical instruments

.864 Communication systems on ships

Including wireless equipment, telephones, signal lights

.865 Lifesaving equipment

Including lifeboats, life preservers

For construction of lifeboats, see 623.829

.866 Ship furniture

623.87 Marine engineering

Marine propulsion machinery and its auxiliaries

For naval design involving calculation of resistance and speed, see 623.81; *hydrodynamics,* 532.5

.872 Marine engines

.872 2 Marine steam engines [*formerly* †621.12]

Including steam turbines, reciprocating steam engines

.872 3 Marine internal-combustion engines

Divide like 621.43–621.437, e.g., marine diesel engines 623.872 36

.873 Marine engine auxiliaries

Including marine boilers [*formerly* †621.184 22], piping, condensers, blowers, pumps, propellers, propulsion shafting

.874 Marine fuels

.88 Seamanship [*formerly* †656]

Art and science of handling ships

Including splicing, marling, knotting ropes; rescue at sea, Inland Rules of the Road, International Rules of the Road

.89 Sea navigation [*formerly* †656]

Selection and steering of a course on water

Including problems of position, direction, distance

For celestial navigation, see 527

.892 Geonavigation (Surface piloting)

Positioning ships by visual observation of prominent objects of known position on the earth

Including dead reckoning

.892 9 Pilot guides

Divide like 940–999, e.g., pilot guides for harbor of New York 623.892 974 71

.893 Electronic navigation

Positioning ships with respect to radio stations and beams thru visual or audio presentation

Including use of radar, loran, decca, pulse doppler

623.894 Aids to navigation

Including lighthouses, lightships, buoys, sailing directions, light lists, navigational tables, tide and current tables

For comprehensive works on tide tables, see 525.69

[†.9] Naval ordnance

Class naval ordnance in 623.4; armor protection of warships in 623.825

[†.95] Torpedoes

Class in 623.451 7

624 Civil engineering

Comprehensive works on design, construction, maintenance of public works

For a specific branch of civil engineering, see the subject, e.g., sanitary engineering 628

.1 Structural engineering

Comprehensive works on planning, analysis, design, construction of bridges, buildings, dams, other structures

Class bridge engineering and construction [*formerly* †624.1] in 624.2

For architectural design, see 729; *a specific branch of structural engineering, the subject, e.g., dam engineering* 627.8; *engineering materials,* 620.1

.15 Foundation engineering

For design and construction of foundations for a specific structure, see the structure, e.g., foundations for buildings 721.1

.151 Foundation soils

Physics and mechanics of soils supporting structures

Including soil surveys, physical tests and analysis, engineering properties, e.g., strength, deformation, compressibility, stability, moisture content

For comprehensive works on soil physics, see 631.43; *soil surveys for a specific structure, the subject, e.g., for highways* 625.732

.152 Excavation engineering

Including earthwork, shoring, rock excavation, use of excavating machinery

Class tunnel engineering [*formerly* *624.152] in 624.19

For excavation of mines, see 622.21

624.154 Pile foundations

Including pile driving [*formerly* †624.155]

[†.155] Pile driving

Class in 624.154

.156 Floating foundations (Platform foundations)

Including cantilever foundations

.157 Underwater foundations (Subaqueous foundations)

For bridge engineering, see 624.2; *dock engineering,* 627.3

.157 1 Cofferdam method

.157 2 Crib and open-caisson method

.157 3 Pneumatic-caisson method

.157 4 Freezing methods

.157 5 Pneumatic forcing method

.157 6 Dredging method

.158 Pier foundations

Including "skyscraper" foundations

.16 Other supporting structures

Including piers, abutments, embankments, retaining walls

For dock engineering, see 627.3

.17 Structural theory

.171 Structural analysis

Determination of forces on all types of structures by mathematical means and use of models

Including calculation of pressure, shears, impact, bending moments

Class loads in 624.172, wind pressure in 624.175, stresses in 624.176 [*all formerly* *624.171]

For graphic statics, see 531.25

.172 Loads [*formerly also* †624.173–†624.174, *formerly* *624.171]

Determination of dead and live loads on structures

Including weight of snow and ice

[†.173–†.174] Loads

Class in 624.172

.175 Wind pressure [*formerly* *624.171]

624.176 Stresses [*formerly* *624.171]

Including stresses produced by earthquakes

.177 Structural design

Determination of materials for structure and proportions of the structural elements

Including girders [*formerly* †624.21, †624.23], beams [*formerly* †624.22], trusses [*formerly* †624.24, †624.3], columns, arches, slabs, frames and fastenings for all types of structures

For design and construction of elementary forms for buildings, see 721

.18 Design in specific materials

For systems of building construction, see 693–694

.182 Design in structural metal

Including iron, steel

.183 Design in masonry

Including design in brick, cement, concrete, reinforst concrete

.184 Design in wood

.19 Tunnel engineering and construction [*formerly* †*625.13, *624.152]

Design, construction, maintenance of tunnels

Including railroad and vehicular tunnels

.192 Mountain tunnels

.193 Underground tunnels

.194 Underwater tunnels

.199 Other tunnels

Including siphon and canal tunnels

.2 Bridge engineering and construction [*formerly also* †624.1]

Comprehensive works on railroad [*formerly* *625.13] and highway bridges

[†.21–†.24] Girders, beams, trusses

Class in 624.177

.25 Floor systems for bridges

624.27 Girder bridges

Including plate-girder and lattice-girder bridges

For plate-girder suspension bridges, see 624.7; *box-girder bridges,* 624.4

.275 Covered bridges

.3 Trussed bridges

Class trusses [*formerly* †624.3] in 624.177

For trussed arch bridges, see 624.7

.32 Trestle bridges

.33 Continuous bridges

Bridges consisting of beams, girders, or trusses extending uninterruptedly over more than two supports

.35 Cantilever bridges

.4 Tubular bridges

Including box-girder bridges

.5 Suspension bridges

For plate-girder suspension bridges, see 624.7

.52 Primitive suspension bridges

Rope bridges of hammock and basket types

.55 Modern suspension bridges

Including wire-cable, self-anchored, eyebar-chain, rope-strand cable suspension bridges

.6 Arch bridges

Including hinged and hingeless arch bridges

.63 Masonry arch bridges

Including arch bridges of stone, brick, concrete, reinforst concrete

.67 Arch bridges of structural metal

Including iron and steel arch bridges

.7 Compound bridges

Including plate-girder suspension bridges and trussed arch bridges

.8 Movable bridges

.82 Bascule bridges

.83 Swing bridges

624.84 Vertical lift bridges

.86 Transporter bridges

.87 Permanent pontoon bridges

For military pontoon bridges, see 623.65

.9 Roof engineering and construction

Comprehensive works

For design and construction of roofs, see 721.5; *roof design,* 729.35; *covering and repairing roofs,* 695

625 Railroad and road engineering

SUMMARY

625.1	**Railroad engineering and construction**
.2	**Rolling stock**
.3	**Inclined and mountain railways**
.39	**Ship railways**
.4	**Rapid transit systems**
.5	**Cable railways**
.6	**Electric railways**
.7	**Road and highway engineering**
.8	**Pavements and other road surfaces**

.1 Railroad engineering and construction

Including monorailroads, standard- and narrow-gauge railroads

Class cable railways in 625.5, underground railways in 625.42, elevated railways in 625.44, street railways in 625.66, electric traction in 621.33, ship railways in 625.39 [*all formerly* *625.1]

For rolling stock, see 625.2; *railroad transportation,* 385.1; *railroad construction over ice covers,* 625.892

.11 Railroad surveying

Reconnaissance, preliminary surveys, final location surveys

Including roadway design, determination of grades, curves, switchbacks, right of way

For soil surveys, see 625.122

.12 Earthwork operations for permanent way

.122 Soil surveys

Including soil profiles, physical tests and analysis of subgrade soils for railroad purposes

.123 Preparation of roadbed

Including clearing and grubbing, compaction, excavation, rock cutting, earth and rock haulage, grading, formation of embankments, cuts, fills

625.125 Roadbed stabilization

Including drainage structures, e.g., culverts [*formerly also* †625.13], grouting, slide piling, sand piling of railroad roadbeds

.13 Protective structures

Including snow fences, permanent snowsheds, retaining walls

Class culverts in 625.125 [*formerly* †*625.13]; tunnel engineering in 624.19 [*formerly* †625.13]; railroad tunnels in 624.19, railroad bridges in 624.2 [*both formerly* *625.13]

.14 Superstructure of permanent way

Including tracks

Class maintenance of tracks [*formerly* *625.14] in 625.17

.141 Ballast

Including ballast materials, raising tracks, tamping

.143 Ties and sleepers

Including tie plates

.15 Rails and rail fastenings

Including rail joints, tie pads, spikes, rail anchors

.16 Track accessories

.163 Track turnouts and crossings

Including design, construction, installation of railroad switches, frogs, sidings

.165 Railroad signals

Design, construction, installation

For codes of visual signaling, see 384.9

.17 Railroad maintenance and repairs

Including maintenance of tracks [*formerly* *625.14] and roadbed, snow removal operations

For work trains, see 625.222; *protective structures,* 625.13

.18 Railroad yards

Engineering aspects of terminal layouts

Including receiving, separating, departure, storage, repair yards

For design and construction of railroad transportation buildings, see 725.31–725.33; *comprehensive works on stations, terminals, railroad yards,* 385.3

.19 Model railroads and trains

625.2 Rolling stock

Design, construction, maintenance

Including rolling stock for electric traction [*formerly* †621.334]

.21 Running gear

Including wheels, axles, bearings and lubrication, springs

For accessory equipment, see 625.25

.22 Specific types of cars

Including car building [*formerly* †699]

Class passenger cars in 625.23, freight cars in 625.24 [*both formerly* *625.22]

.222 Work cars (Nonrevenue rolling stock)

Design, construction, maintenance of locomotive cranes and shovels, handcars, railroad snowplows, ditchers, flangers, derrick cars, cabooses, wrecking cars

For railroad maintenance, see 625.17

.23 Passenger cars [*formerly* *625.22]

Design, construction, maintenance of coaches, chair cars, diners, club cars, lounge cars, sleeping cars, baggage cars, mail cars

Including interior furnishing, heating, lighting, ventilation, air conditioning, sanitation

For streetcars and trolley buses, see 625.662

.24 Freight cars [*formerly* *625.22]

Design, construction, maintenance of refrigerator cars, automobile cars, boxcars, cattle cars, tank cars, hoppers, gondola cars, flatcars

.25 Accessory equipment

Including design, construction, maintenance, installation of brakes and couplings

For running gear, see 625.21

.26 Railroad locomotive engineering

Design, construction, maintenance

Class steam locomotive engineering [*formerly* *625.26] in 621.13

.262 Gas-turbine locomotives

.263 Electric locomotives [*formerly* †621.334 2]

.265 Comprest-air locomotives

625.266 Diesel locomotives

Including diesel-mechanical, diesel-electric locomotives

.27 Mechanical operation of railroads (Railroading) [*formerly* †656]

Including trainmen's manuals

.3 Inclined and mountain railways

.32 Funicular railways

.33 Rack railways

.39 Ship railways [*formerly* †625.9, *625.1]

.4 Rapid transit systems

For street railways, see 625.66

.42 Underground railways (Subways) [*formerly* *625.1]

.44 Elevated railways [*formerly* *625.1]

.5 Cable railways [*formerly* *625.1]

Comprehensive works

Including aerial railways

For funicular railways, see 625.32; *ski lifts and chair lifts,* 621.868

.6 Electric railways

Including light interurban electric railways

For electric traction, see 621.33; *electric locomotives,* 625.263

.66 Street railways [*formerly* *625.1]

.662 Streetcars and trolley buses

.7 Road and highway engineering

Including streets

Class pavements [*formerly* *625.7] in 625.8

.71 Road systems

Including rural and urban systems

.72 Highway surveying

Reconnaissance, preliminary surveys, final location surveys

Including determination of grades, curves, bankings; design of highways

625.73 Earthwork operations for highways

.732 Soil surveys

Including physical tests, analysis of subgrade soils for highway purposes; soil profiles

.733 Preparation of foundations

Including clearing and grubbing, excavation, earth haulage, compaction, formation of embankments, finishing operations, e.g., trimming slopes, grading roadbed

.734 Drainage and drainage structures

Drainage dikes, gutters, ditches; culverts, pipes, conduits

For soil stabilization processes, see 625.74; *sidewalk gutters,* 625.88; *installation of utility lines under highways,* 625.78

.735 Highway materials

Road aggregates, bituminous materials, nonbituminous materials

Including tests of highway materials

For paving materials, see 625.8

.74 Stabilized soil roads

Granular stabilized roads, granular subbases, bituminous soil stabilized roads, gravel roads, soil-cement roads

Including binders [*formerly* †625.75], soil stabilization processes

.75 Dirt road surfacing

Class binders [*formerly* †625.75] in 625.74

.76 Highway maintenance

.761 Highway damage and repairs

Including frost damage, patching, blading, dragging, scarifying, resurfacing, resealing, shoulder maintenance

.763 Snow and ice control on highways

Comprehensive works

Including use of snowplows, power graders, bank-slicers, sanders, stock-piled abrasives, snow guides, snow fences

For municipal snow removal, see 628.466

625.77 Roadside improvement

Including construction and maintenance of highway rest areas, parking turnouts, highway picnic areas

For landscape design for public thorofares, see 713

.78 Subsurface structures

Including installation of utility lines under highways

For drainage structures, see 625.734

[*.79] Highway traffic control

Class in 388.312

.8 Pavements [*formerly* *625.7] and other road surfaces

Design, construction, materials

Including base, subbase, subgrade treatment

For dirt road surfacing, see 625.75; *highway maintenance,* 625.76; *paved runways and aprons,* 629.136 3

.81 Flagstone pavements

.82 Brick and stone pavements

.83 Wooden surfacings

Including corduroy roads, boardwalks

.84 Rigid pavements

Including portland cement concrete and reinforst concrete pavements

.85 Flexible pavements

Including rock asphalt, sheet asphalt, sand asphalt, bituminous concrete, road-mix surfaces

.86 Macadam pavements

Traffic-bound, water-bound, bituminous, cement-bound macadams

Including telford surfaces

.88 Sidewalks

Comprehensive works

Including curbs

For sidewalks of a specific material, see the subject, e.g., flagstone pavements 625.81

.889 Auxiliary pavements

Including driveways, parking aprons

625.89 Other road surfaces

.892 Ice crossings

Including ice and snow-compacted roads, natural ice bridges over open water, reinforst crossings, railroad construction over ice covers

[†.9] Ship railways

Class in 625.39

[†626] Canal engineering

Class in 627.13

[†.8] Irrigation canals

Class in 627.52

[†.9] Ship canals

Class in 627.137

627 Hydraulic engineering (Water control engineering)

For water-supply engineering, see 628.1; *mechanics of fluids,* 532; *hydroelectric engineering,* 621.312; *water economics,* 333.91

.1 Inland waterway engineering

Improvement of inland waterways

For inland waterway transportation, see 386; *underwater dredging operations,* 627.73

.12 River and lake engineering

Including construction of barrages

For flood control engineering, see 627.4; *dam engineering,* 627.8

.125 Stream measurement

Including measurement of volume, pressure, velocity, height

For limnology, see 551.48

.13 Canal engineering [*formerly* †626]

Design and construction of navigation canals

Including canal locks, lifts, inclines, lock chambers, accessory canal structures

For canal transportation, see 386.4; *irrigation canals,* 627.52

.137 Ship canals [*formerly* *626.9]

Interoceanic and noninteroceanic ship canals

.138 Barge canals

627.2 **Harbor engineering**

For lighthouse engineering, see 627.92; *aids to navigation,* 623.894

.24 Breakwaters

For jetties, see 627.6

.3 Dock engineering

Design, construction, maintenance of docks, piers, wharves, quays

For drydocks, see 623.83

.4 **Flood control engineering**

Preventive and protective control of floods

.42 Protective measures

Including construction of dikes, sea walls, levees

.44 Preventive measures

Including water storage in ponds, lakes, artificial reservoirs

For dam engineering, see 627.8

.5 **Reclamation engineering**

.52 Irrigation engineering

Reclamation of arid land by construction of irrigation canals [*formerly* †626.8], flumes, conduits; flooding wastelands

For agricultural irrigation, see 631.7; *dam engineering,* 627.8

.54 Drainage engineering

Reclamation of bogs, swamps, marshes by means of drainage systems

For agricultural drainage, see 631.6

.58 Shore reclamation and protection

Including prevention of beach erosion

.6 **Jetties**

For breakwaters, see 627.24

.7 **Underwater operations**

Including salvage operations [*formerly* *387.55]

For marine salvage business, see 387.55

.72 Diving operations

For recreational diving, see 797.2

627.73 Underwater dredging operations

For excavation engineering, see 624.152

.74 Underwater blasting operations

.8 **Dam engineering**

Design and construction

Including sluices, penstocks, spillways, weirs

For hydroelectric engineering, see 621.312 134; *barrages,* 627.12; *flood control engineering,* 627.4; *water-supply engineering,* 628.1

.82 Masonry dams

Including gravity, arch, arch-gravity, buttress dams

.83 Earth and rock-fill dams

Including rock-fill dams with concrete facing, embankment dams

.84 Movable dams and gates

Including bear-trap, bridge, shutter and wicket, roller, frame, curtain dams

.85 Steel dams

.9 **Other hydraulic structures**

.92 Lighthouse engineering

Design and construction of lighthouses, lightships, beacons, buoys, daymarks

For lighthouse services, see 623.894

.98 Artificial islands

628 Sanitary and municipal engineering

Design, construction, operation of works contributing to public health

Class house drainage [*formerly* *628] in 696.13

For public health aspects of sanitation and sanitary control, see 614.7; *military sanitary engineering,* 623.75

SUMMARY

628.1	**Water-supply engineering**
.2	**Sewerage**
.3	**Sewage treatment and disposal**
.4	**Municipal sanitation**
.5	**Industrial sanitation**
.7	**Rural sanitary engineering**
.9	**Municipal lighting**

628.1 Water-supply engineering

Comprehensive works

Including waterworks, municipal water-supply plants

For rural water-supply engineering, see 628.72

.11 Water-supply sources

Including lakes, rivers, springs, wells

.13 Water storage

Including reservoirs, storage tanks, water towers

For dam engineering, see 627.8

.14 Water distribution

Including pumping stations, conduits, aqueducts

.15 Water mains and service pipes

Including thawing frozen water mains

For plumbing and pipe fitting, see 696

.16 Water purification [*formerly also* *613.35] and treatment

Including biological analysis of water [*formerly* †613.33–†613.34]

.162 Sedimentation

Including coagulation

.164 Filtration

.165 Aeration and deaeration

.166 Chemical treatment

.166 2 Disinfection

Including chlorination, superchlorination, dechlorination, ozone treatment, copper sulfate treatment, ultraviolet radiation

.166 3 Fluorination

For preventive dentistry, see 617.601

.166 6 Softening processes (Demineralization processes)

.167 Conversion of sea water into potable water

.168 Water pollution

Comprehensive works on stream pollution

For water pollution from sewage, see 628.39; *water pollution from industrial wastes,* 628.54

.17 Water consumption

.177 Water meters

628.2 Sewerage [*formerly* *628.3]

Comprehensive works on design, construction, maintenance of sewerage systems and sewage treatment plants

Including pumping stations

For sewage treatment and disposal, see 628.3

.21 Sewerage systems

Including combined and separate systems

.23 Ventilation of sewers

Elimination of sewer gas

Including flues, drains, pipes, chemical methods for eliminating and deodorizing sewer gases

For ventilators and traps, see 628.25

.24 Sewers

Including design, construction, maintenance of sewers

.25 Sewer appurtenances

Including manholes, house connections, flushing apparatus, inlets, catch basins, regulators, valves, penstocks, ventilators, traps

.28 Septic tanks

.3 Sewage treatment and disposal

Class sewerage [*formerly* *628.3] in 628.2

For rural sewage disposal, see 628.74

.32 Disinfection of sewage

[†.33] Subsidence

Class in 628.34

.34 Primary treatment of sewage

Including subsidence [*formerly* †628.33], precipitation; use of screens, grit chambers, skimming tanks, sedimentation tanks

[†.348] Sludge disposal

Class in 628.36

.35 Secondary treatment of sewage

Including use of secondary sedimentation tanks

.352 Filtration

Including trickling filter process

628.354 Activated sludge process

Including use of aeration chambers, sludge digestion tanks, anaerobic digestion

.36 Sewage disposal on land

Including sludge disposal [*formerly* †628.34], sewage irrigation

.39 Sewage disposal into water

Disposal into streams, sea, other bodies of water

Including water pollution from sewage

.4 Municipal sanitation

For water-supply engineering, see 628.1; *sewerage,* 628.2; *sewage treatment and disposal,* 628.3; *rural sanitary engineering,* 628.7; *municipal lighting,* 628.9

.41 Middens, privies, cesspools

.42 Pail systems

.43 Earth closet systems

.44 Municipal garbage and refuse

For rural refuse disposal, see 628.74

.442 Municipal refuse collection

Including collection of ashes, garbage, street sweepings, dead animals

.445 Municipal garbage treatment and disposal

Disposal of garbage and refuse by burial, incineration, reduction

For production of fertilizers from municipal wastes, see 628.49

.45 Public comfort stations

.46 Street cleaning

Including street sprinkling

.466 Snow and ice removal

Including salting and sanding streets and pavements

.49 Production of fertilizers from municipal wastes

For municipal garbage treatment, see 628.445

.5 Industrial sanitation

.51 Industrial plant sanitation

.52 Effluvium control

Including prevention of noxious odors

628.53 Smoke control

Including prevention of smoke and smog

.54 Industrial wastes

Including disposal of industrial wastes, water pollution from industrial wastes

For waste recovery and utilization in a specific manufacture, see the manufacture, e.g., in pulp and paper manufacture 676

[†.6] House drainage

Class in 696.13

.7 Rural sanitary engineering

Including sanitary engineering in isolated areas

.72 Rural water-supply engineering

For wells, see 628.11

.74 Rural sewage and refuse disposal

For middens, privies, cesspools, see 628.41; *pail systems,* 628.42; *earth closet systems,* 628.43; *septic tanks,* 628.28

[†.8] Ventilation, heating, air conditioning

Class in 697

.9 Municipal lighting

.93 Gas lighting for streets

.95 Electric lighting for streets [*formerly* *621.32]

Including electric lighting systems for parks, flood lighting for sports and exhibitions

629 Other branches of engineering

.1 Automotive engineering

Comprehensive works on all types of automotive vehicles

Class military aircraft in 623.74, aeronautics in 629.13 [*both formerly* *629.1]

Relocations from specific subdivisions of *629.1 to subdivisions of 629.13 are indicated below only in those cases where the digits following *.1 and .13 vary, e.g., electrical installations relocated from *629.143 to 629.135 4

For a specific type of automotive vehicle, see the subject, e.g., land vehicles 629.2

629.13 Aeronautics [*formerly* *629.1]

Relocations from specific subdivisions of *629.1 to subdivisions of 629.13 are indicated below only in those cases where the digits following *.1 and .13 vary, e.g., electrical installations relocated from *629.143 to 629.135 4

For air transportation, see 387.7; *military aircraft,* 623.74

SUMMARY

629.130 9	**History and local treatment of aeronautics**
.132	**Science of flight**
.133	**Aircraft**
.134	**Airplane design, construction, performance**
.135	**Aircraft equipment and instruments**
.136	**Airports**
.138	**Uses of aircraft**
.138 8	**Space flight (Inertial navigation)**

.130 9 History and local treatment of aeronautics

Accounts of flights, flight records

For voyages and travels, see 910.4

.130 91 Transoceanic flights

Divide like 551.461–551.469, e.g., transpacific flights 629.130 915

.130 94–.130 99 Flights in specific countries

Divide like 940–999, e.g., transcontinental flights in the United States 629.130 973

.132 Science of flight

.132 2 Aerostatics of flight

Equilibrium, static lift, stability characteristics of lighter-than-air aircraft

For lighter-than-air aircraft, see 629.133 2

.132 3 Aerodynamics of flight

Forces acting on heavier-than-air aircraft in motion thru air

Including subsonic, transonic, supersonic aerodynamics

For heavier-than-air aircraft, see 629.133 3

.132 31 Forces in gliding, soaring [*both formerly* *629.133 3], diving

Including bird and insect flight as basis of aerodynamic studies

For gliders, see 629.133 33

629.132 32 Air-flow patterns

Including incompressible, compressible (subsonic, transonic, supersonic), laminar and turbulent flows; shock waves; downwash; Mach number

For boundary layers, see 629.132 37

.132 33 Dynamic lift and thrust

Including unsteady lift in high-speed flight

For zero-lift drag, see 629.132 34

.132 34 Drag (Air resistance)

Including zero-lift drag, parasite drag

.132 35 Pressure distribution over wing surfaces

Including chordwise and spanwise pressure distribution, wing load

For drag, see 629.132 34

.132 36 Moment equilibrium and stability

Longitudinal, lateral, and vertical stability

Including roll, pitch, yaw, autorotation (spinning)

.132 362 Control aerodynamics

Including flutter and vibration

.132 37 Boundary layers

Region of retarded air flow near surface of moving aircraft due to viscosity of air

Including laminar and turbulent boundary layers, transition regions, skin friction (shearing stress), Reynolds number

For air-flow patterns, see 629.132 32

.132 4 Meteorology in aeronautics

Study of weather conditions for aeronautical purposes and methods of combating adverse effects

Divide like 551.5–551.57, e.g., ice formation and prevention [*formerly* *629.18] 629.132 472

629.132 5 Flight engineering

Class celestial navigation [*formerly* *629.125] in 527

.132 51 Air navigation

Dead reckoning and electronic navigation

Including navigational radar (Gee-H, micro-H, racon, and shoran systems), navigational radio (Gee and loran systems)

For navigation instruments, see 629.135; *radio and radar as landing aids,* 629.136 6; *celestial navigation,* 527

.132 52 Piloting of airplanes [*formerly* *629.126]

Operation of airplanes

Including flight training, instrument flying, take-off and landing, operational problems, e.g., cruise control; weight and balance problems [*both formerly* *629.18]

For fighter pilot training, see 358.43; *operation of lighter-than-air aircraft,* 629.133 2; *of heavier-than-air aircraft other than airplanes,* 629.133 3

[†.132 53] Airways

Class in 387.72

.132 54 Navigational aids

Including aerial maps, charts, logbooks, pilot guides

For navigation instruments, see 629.135; *landing aids,* 629.136 6

.132 55 Wreckage studies

Determination of causes of aircraft accidents thru examination of broken remains

For air travel safety, see 614.869

[†.132 56] Aviation medicine

Class in 616.980 21

.132 6 Command systems

Including geomagnetic, celestial, and electronic systems of controlling guided aircraft

629.133 Aircraft

Comprehensive works

For military aircraft, see 623.74

.133 1 Aircraft models and modelmaking

Divide like 629.133 2–629.133 39, e.g., models of helicopters 629.133 135

For use of models in aeronautical research, see 629.130 72

.133 2 Lighter-than-air aircraft

Description, design, construction, operation, maintenance, performance of lighter-than-air aircraft and their parts

For military lighter-than-air aircraft, see 623.741

.133 22 Balloons

Including free and captive balloons, balloon sondes

For toy balloons, see 796.15

.133 24 Airships (Dirigible balloons)

.133 25 Rigid dirigibles

.133 26 Semirigid dirigibles

.133 27 Nonrigid dirigibles

.133 3 Heavier-than-air aircraft

Description, design, construction, operation, maintenance, performance of heavier-than-air aircraft other than airplanes

Including parts of heavier-than-air aircraft other than airplanes

Class gliding, soaring [*both formerly* *629.133 3] in 629.132 31

.133 32 Kites

For flying kites as a sport, see 796.15

.133 33 Gliders

.133 34 Airplanes

Description and identification

For design, construction, performance of airplanes, see 629.134; *of airplane parts,* 629.134 3; *operation of airplanes,* 629.132 52; *military airplanes,* 623.746

.133 343 Monoplanes

For jet-propelled airplanes, see 629.133 349

629.133 347 Seaplanes (Hydroplanes)

.133 348 Amphibian planes

.133 349 Jet-propelled airplanes

For jet engines, see 629.134 353

.133 35 Rotary-wing aircraft

Including helicopters, Autogiros®

.133 36 Orthopters (Ornithopters)

.133 38 Rocket-propelled aircraft

Including rocket-propelled, high-speed, high-altitude test missiles (rockets [*formerly* *629.143 53])

For guided missiles, see 623.451 9; *rocket engines,* 629.134 354

.133 39 Other heavier-than-air aircraft

.133 4 Unidentified flying objects (UFO)

Including flying saucers

.134 Airplane design, construction, performance

Including comprehensive works on design, construction, performance of aircraft

For design, construction, performance of heavier-than-air aircraft other than airplanes, see 629.133 3; *of lighter-than-air aircraft,* 629.133 2

.134 1 Structural analysis and design

Former heading: Stress analysis and structures

Including calculations of strains, stresses, shears, impact; determination of materials and proportion of various members; monocoque design

.134 2 Airplane manufacturing techniques

Including materials, template production, forging, sheet-metal work, riveting, welding, finishing

.134 3 Parts and details of airplanes

Including design, construction, performance, maintenance, repair

.134 31 Airframes

For fuselages, see 629.134 34

.134 32 Airfoils

Including wings, wing accessories

For control surfaces, see 629.134 33; *fuselages,* 629.134 34

629.134 33 Control surfaces

Including fins, flaps, ailerons, elevators, rudders, stabilizers

For wings, see 629.134 32

.134 34 Fuselages

Including cockpits, instrument panels

For airframes, see 629.134 31; *power plants,* 629.134 35

.134 35 Power plants

Including engine fuels

For propellers, see 629.134 36

.134 352 Reciprocating and compound engines

.134 353 Gas-turbine and jet engines

Including turbojet, turboprop, turbo-ram-jet, pulse-jet engines; jet propulsion

.134 354 Rocket engines

Including rocket propulsion; comprehensive works on rocket engineering

For a specific application of rocket engineering, see the subject, e.g., interplanetary travel 629.138 85

.134 36 Propellers (Air screws)

.134 37 Rigging and bracing equipment

.134 38 Take-off and landing gear

Including wheel, float, ski, caterpillar truck gears

.134 386 Ejectors

Including pilot-seat ejectors, capsule cockpits, parachutes

.134 4 Airplane accommodations

Including interior design

.134 42 Airplane comfortization

Including soundproofing [*formerly* *629.18], heating, ventilating, air conditioning, pressurization

.134 43 Airplane safety devices

Including safety belts [*formerly* †629.135 7], life rafts, fire prevention, first-aid equipment

For ice formation and prevention, see 629.132 47; *parachutes,* 629.134 386

629.134 5 Testing of airplanes

.134 52 Mechanical testing of airplanes

Factory inspection

.134 53 Flight testing of airplanes

Including performance, performance calculations

.134 6 Airplane maintenance and repair

Including fueling; refueling [*formerly* *629.18], lubrication

For maintenance and repair of airplane parts, see 629.134 3

.135 Aircraft equipment and instruments

Including hydraulic [*formerly* *629.143] and pneumatic equipment

.135 1 Navigation instruments

Including radio compasses (direction finders), automatic pilots, altimeters, air-speed indicators, air-mileage indicators, air-position indicators, vertical-speed indicators (rate-of-climb indicators), landing and navigation lights

.135 2 Operational instruments

Including turn-and-bank indicators, accelerometers, Machmeters, gyro horizons, directional gyros

For automatic pilots, altimeters, air-speed indicators, vertical-speed indicators, see 629.135 1

.135 3 Power-plant instruments

Including manifold-pressure, oil-pressure, fuel-pressure, fuel quantity gauges; engine tachometers; oil and cylinder-head thermometers; propeller-pitch indicators

.135 4 Electrical installations

Including maintenance and servicing of electrical equipment [*formerly* *629.143]

.135 5 Communication equipment [*formerly* *629.16]

For communication equipment at airports, see 629.136 6

.135 7 Equipment for personnel

Including protective eyeglasses, oxygen masks, pressure suits

Class safety belts [*formerly* †629.135 7] in 629.134 43

For parachutes, see 629.134 386

[†.135 8] Accessory equipment

Class in 629.135 9

629.135 9 Other equipment and instruments

Including accessory equipment [*formerly* †629.135 8]

.136 Airports

Design, construction, maintenance of airdromes and seadromes

For airport administration, see 387.736

[†.136 2] Airport planning

Class in 711.78

.136 3 Runways

Including paving runways and aprons, installation of surface and subsurface drainage systems, snow removal and compaction

.136 4 Airport buildings

Including terminal buildings, hangars, control towers, cargo warehouses

For architecture of airport buildings, see 725.39

.136 5 Airport lighting systems

Including control-tower lighting, boundary lighting systems

.136 6 Air traffic control systems

Landing aids, communication and signaling systems

Including radio and radar control devices

For airport lighting systems, see 629.136 5

.136 8 Airport fire prevention and protection

Including fire fighting equipment

.138 Uses of aircraft

Comprehensive works

For a specific use of aircraft, see the subject, e.g., in crop dusting 632.94

.138 8 Space flight (Inertial navigation) [*formerly* *629.143 53]

For rocket-propelled aircraft, see 629.133 38; *rocket engineering,* 629.134 354

.138 82 Artificial earth satellites

629.138 85 Interplanetary flight

Including proposed flights to moon

[*.143] Hydraulic and electrical equipment

Class hydraulic equipment in 629.135; electrical equipment in 629.135 4

[*.143 53] Rockets and space flight

Class rockets in 629.133 38; space flight in 629.138 8

[*.16] Communication equipment in aircrafts

Class in 629.135 5

[*.18] Operational problems

Class refueling in 629.134 6; soundproofing in 629.134 42; ice formation and prevention in 629.132 47; cruise control, weight and balance problems in 629.132 52

.2 Motor vehicle engineering (Land vehicles)

SUMMARY

629.21 Financial and legal aspects
.22 Types of motor vehicles
.23 Motor vehicle design and construction
.24 Chassis
.25 Motor vehicle engines
.26 Motor vehicle bodywork
.27 Motor vehicle accessories
.28 Operation of motor vehicles

.21 Financial and legal aspects

.213 Laws and regulations

For financial responsibility laws, see 368.572

.213 4 Taxation and registration

Including motor vehicle titles and transfers, drivers' licenses, revenues, motor vehicle tags

[†.213 43] Traffic regulations

Class in 388.312

629.213 6 Accidents and accident prevention

Including compulsory motor vehicle inspection, wreckage studies

For highway safety, see 614.862; *factory inspection,* 629.234

[†.213 63] Insurance

Class in 368.572

[†.213 7] Accounting

Class in 657.867

[†.213 8] Sales and prices

Class sales in 658.896 292; prices in 338.476 292

.22 Types of motor vehicles

For motor vehicles for operation on railroads, see 625.26; *steam locomotives,* 621.13; *steam tractors and rollers,* 621.14

629.222–629.228 Gasoline and oil-powered motor vehicles

For other types of motor vehicles, see 629.229

.222 Passenger automobiles

Including manufacturers' manuals

.222 2 Private automobiles

Including sport cars, three-wheel cars

Arrange alphabetically by name of car, using A1 for comprehensive works, e.g., Lincoln cars 629.222 2 L7

For racing cars, see 629.228

.222 3 Motor vehicles for public transportation

.222 32 Taxicabs

.222 33 Motor buses

Including urban, interurban, school, sight-seeing buses

.223 Light motor trucks

Including light delivery trucks

629.224 Heavy motor trucks

Including moving vans, dump trucks; comprehensive works on motor trucks

For light motor trucks, see 629.223

.225 Motor tractors

Including bulldozers, Caterpillars®

For steam tractors, see 621.14; *use of tractors on farms,* 631.372

.226 Trailers

.227 Cycles

Design, construction, maintenance, repair

Including velocipedes, tricycles, tandems

.227 2 Bicycles

Including motor bicycles

.227 5 Motorcycles

.228 Racing cars

Including "hot rods"

.229 Other types of motor vehicles

Motor vehicles by motive power

For gasoline- and oil-powered motor vehicles, see 629.222–629.228

.229 2 Steam automobiles

.229 3 Electric automobiles

.229 4 Comprest-air automobiles

.23 Motor vehicle design and construction

Class plant layout [*formerly* *629.23] in 658.23

For design and construction of motor vehicle parts, see 629.24–629.27

.232 Materials for motor vehicles

For materials used in a specific part of motor vehicles, see the part, e.g., rubber for tires 629.248 6

.233 Tests of materials for motor vehicles

Including testing methods and equipment

629.234 Motor vehicle manufacturing techniques

Including assembly methods and equipment, template production, forging, sheet-metal work, riveting, welding, finishing, factory inspection

For performance tests of motor vehicles, see 629.282; *compulsory motor vehicle inspection,* 629.213 6

[†.234 2] Plant layout

Class in 658.23

[†.234 3] Personnel management

Class in 658.3

[†.234 8] Storage

Class in 658.78

629.24–629.27 Motor vehicle parts

Including design, construction, maintenance, repair of motor vehicle parts

.24 Chassis

.242 Supporting frames

Including engine mountings

.243 Springs

Including shock absorbers

.244 Transmission devices

Including clutches, conventional and automatic transmission devices

.245 Rear axles, differentials, drive shafts

Including drive shafts with universal joints, torque elements

.246 Brakes

Including brake fluids

.247 Front axles and steering gear

.248 Wheels

Including rims, hubs, bearings

.248 6 Tires

Comprehensive works on natural and synthetic rubber tires

For manufacture of rubber tires, see 678.32

629.25 Motor vehicle engines

Including steam, electric, and internal-combustion engines (e.g., spark ignition, diesel engines) in motor vehicles

.252 Motor parts

Including cylinders, piston assemblies, crankcases, bearings, valve mechanisms, manifolds, mufflers

.253 Fuels and fuel systems

Including carburetors and carburation, use of producer gas in motor vehicles, fuel consumption

.254 Ignition and electrical systems

Including batteries, generators, spark plugs, distributors, ignition controls

For electric lights on motor vehicles, see 629.271

.255 Lubricants and lubricating systems

For lubrication, see 629.287

.256 Cooling systems

Including radiators, fans, pumps, controls, antifreeze solutions

.257 Starting devices

.258 Control devices

Including valve, throttle, spark control devices

.26 Motor vehicle bodywork

Including trimming and finishing operations, conventional and plastic bodies, interior design and upholstery

.27 Motor vehicle accessories

Including tools, tool chests, gauges, signals, bumpers

.271 Lighting equipment

Including lights, beam modifiers, reflectors

For electrical systems, see 629.254

.277 Heaters for motor vehicles

629.28 Operation of motor vehicles

Operation of passenger automobiles, motor trucks, tractors

Including safe driving

For automobiling, see 796.7; *road guides,* 914–919; *maps,* 912

.282 Performance tests of motor vehicles

For factory inspection, see 629.234; *compulsory motor vehicle inspection,* 629.213 6

[†.285] Garages

Class in 629.286

.286 Garages [*formerly* †629.285] and service stations

Including tools, equipment

.287 General servicing of motor vehicles

Mechanics' handbooks on maintenance and repair of motor vehicles

Including washing, lubrication, adjustment and replacement of parts

Arrange alphabetically by name of car, using A1 for comprehensive works, e.g., general servicing of Lincoln cars 629.287 L7

For repairs of motor vehicle parts, see 629.24–629.27

.288 Individual servicing of motor vehicles

Including preventive maintenance manuals

Arrange alphabetically by name of car, using A1 for comprehensive works, e.g., personal care and maintenance of Lincoln cars 629.288 L7

.8 Automatic control engineering

Engineering aspects of automation

For socioeconomic effects of automation, see 301.243; *automation in relation to production,* 338.45; *as a production method,* 658.561; *automatic factory,* 621.78

.82 Open-loop control systems

Control mechanisms which are independent of the performance of the systems which are controlled

Including manufacture of automatic dispensing machines [*formerly* †681.131]

629.83 Closed-loop control systems

Feed-back control systems; control mechanisms which maintain establisht relationships between the controlled variable and the command

Including servomechanisms [*formerly* †621.8]

For a specific application of servomechanisms, see the subject, e.g., in electric power stations 621.317

.89 Applications of automation

Comprehensive works

For a specific application of automation, see the subject, e.g., automatic pilots 629.135 1

630 Agriculture

.1 Rural life

Including living conditions and interests of individuals and families

For rural sociology, see 301.35; *rural communities,* 323.354

.2 Manuals

Including compendiums, outlines

Divide like 500 where applicable. Representative subdivisions are given below

.23 Agricultural physics

For soil physics, see 631.43

.24 Agricultural chemistry

For soil chemistry, see 631.41

.251 5 Agricultural climatology [*formerly also* †631.9]

.289 9 Agricultural bacteriology

.62 Nongovernment organizations

Class cooperative agriculture [*formerly* †630.62] in 334.683

.7 Study and teaching

.71 Instruction in schools

.711 Agricultural colleges

Arrange alphabetically, using A1 for comprehensive works, e.g., Clemson Agricultural College 630.711 C6. If preferred, divide like 940–999, e.g., Clemson Agricultural College 630.711 757 21

.712 Secondary and other agricultural schools

Arrange like 630.711

.713 Short courses

.714 Correspondence courses

.715 Institutes

.716 Courses in nonagricultural institutions

.717 Extension work

Including work of county agent, boys' and girls' clubs

For 4-H Clubs, see 630.627 3; *home economics demonstration agents,* 640.714

631 The farm and farmstead

Including farm management

SUMMARY

631.09	**Geographic distribution of cultivation**
.1	**Business management of farms**
.2	**Farm buildings**
.28	**Farm roads and bridges**
.3	**Farm machinery and equipment**
.4	**Land and soil**
.5	**Crop production**
.6	**Drainage of farm land**
.7	**Irrigation of farm land**
.8	**Fertilizers and improvement of soil**

.09 Geographic distribution of cultivation

.091 Crop zones and physical regions

.091 1 Frigid Zones

.091 2 Temperate Zones

.091 3 Torrid Zone (Tropics)

.091 4 Mountainous regions

.091 5 Desert regions

.1 Business management of farms

For agricultural economics, see 338.1

.11 Selection and acquisition of farms

Including location, means of communication and transportation

.112 Purchase

Including cost, valuation, taxes

For valuation in real estate business, see 333.332; *valuation for tax purposes,* 336.222

.113 Rent

From renter's point of view

.114 Share systems

.115 Systems of management

From owner's point of view

Including working by owner, manager, share system, renting

.116 Size of farm

631.12 Planning of farm

Including layout of buildings, fields, roads

.14 Types of farms

Comprehensive works on types of farms, e.g., field crop, vegetable, fruit, woodland, stock, fish farms

For a specific type, see the type, e.g., fruit farms 634

.16 Financial management of farms

Including finances and accounts; bookkeeping records

For accounting principles, see 657

.17 Expenses

For agricultural wages, see 331.286 3

.18 Marketing of farm products direct from the farm

For marketing a specific product, see the product, e.g., melons 635.61; *prices of agricultural products,* 338.13; *agricultural markets and marketing programs,* 338.14

.2 Farm buildings

Including fences, walls; comprehensive works on maintenance and use of farm buildings

For architecture of farm buildings, see 728; *construction,* 690; *housing of animals,* 636.083 1

.28 Farm roads [*formerly also* †631.9] and bridges

.3 Farm machinery and equipment

Description, maintenance

For manufacture, see 681.763; *use in a specific operation, the operation, e.g., mowing* 631.552

.31 Soil working tools and machines

Including digging tools

.312 Plows

.313 Harrows

.314 Rollers

Including disk rollers, clod crushers, plankers

.315 Hand gardening tools

Including hoes, scrapers, weeders, garden rakes

.316 Cultivators

631.33 Planting and sowing equipment

Including drills, planters, fertilizer distributers, fertilizer and seed spreaders, transplanters

.34 Equipment for care and shelter of plants

Including grafting, pruning, protection and shelter equipment; supports, receptacles

.35 Harvesting equipment

Including hand tools, e.g., sickle, scythe, cradle; mowers, reapers, combines, corn harvesters, harvesting tools for special crops

.36 Equipment used in preparing for storage or transport

Including threshers, cleaning tools, silo machinery, balers, packers

.37 Power and power machinery, transport, on the farm

.371 Sources of power

Including human, animal, water, wind, steam, internal-combustion engine, electric power

For engineering aspects, see 621

.372 Tractors

For manufacture, see 629.225

.373 Farm transportation equipment

Including packs, sleds, handcarts, wagons, motor trucks

For manufacture of motor vehicles, see 629.2

[†.374] Harness and saddles

Class in 636.083 7

[†.38] Implements for care of farm animals

Class in 636.083

.4 Land and soil

For engineering properties of soil, see 624.151; *reclamation and drainage,* 631.6; *irrigation,* 631.7; *fertilizers,* 631.8

[.407 2] Soil research

Class in 631.42

[.409] History

Class in 631.49

631.41 Soil chemistry

For soil classification, see 631.44

.411 Soil mineralogy

.42 Soil testing and research

Methods of investigation and analysis

Including analysis for soil pollution [*formerly* †614.771]

.43 Soil physics

Including organic matter, moisture, temperature, color, texture, structure

For conservation of soil moisture, see 631.45

.44 Soil classification

Including adaptability for growing special crops, e.g., tobacco; alkali lands

For soil surveys, see 631.47; *economic aspects of land classification,* 333.7; *improvement of soil,* 631.8

.45 Soil conservation

Including maintenance of soil fertility

For economic aspects of conservation of agricultural land, see 333.76; *irrigation,* 631.7; *fertilizers,* 631.8; *drainage,* 631.6; *crop production methods for maintenance of soil fertility,* 631.58

.455 Erosion control

Including contour planting, terracing

.46 Microbiology of soils

Class nitrification and soil inoculation [*both formerly* *631.46] in 631.847

.47 Soil surveys

Surveys showing the kinds, composition, characteristics of soils within a given area, and the uses to which they are or can be put

Including methods and reports

For soil classification, see 631.44

.473–.479 Soil surveys by country

Divide like 930–999, e.g., soil survey of France 631.474 4

.49 History and local treatment

Divide like 930–999, e.g., soils of Mexico 631.497 2

631.5 **Crop production**

Comprehensive works

For production of a specific crop, see the crop, e.g., wheat 633.11; *farm machinery and equipment,* 631.3

.51 Preparation and tilling of soil

.52 Plant selection and breeding

.521 Plant selection

Including seed selection, catalogs, regulation, inspection

.522 Plant breeding

.523 Hybrids

Including crossing, creation of new varieties

.524 Introduction of new kinds

.53 Methods of plant multiplication

.531 Seeding

.532 Separation of growing plants

Including separation of bulbs, cutting of tubers, division or partition of plants

.533 Detaching of separate plants

Including suckers, runners, proliferous buds

.534 Layering

.535 Cuttings

.536 Transplanting

For grafting, see 631.541

.537 Nurseries

For nursery catalogs, see 631.521

.54 Care of plants

.541 Grafting

.542 Pruning

.544 Protection and shelter

Including greenhouses

For protection against injury, see 632

.545 Retardation

631.546 Training

Including training on poles, trellises, walls, arbors

.547 Stages of plant growth

.55 Harvesting

Comprehensive works on methods, operations

.552 Mowing

.553 Haymaking and stacking

.554 Reaping

[†.555] Corn harvesting

Class in 633.15

[†.556] Harvesting other special crops

Class in 633–635

.56 Operations subsequent to harvesting

.561 Preparing grains

Including threshing, husking, shelling

.562 Cleaning

Including winnowing, sorting, sifting, washing, grading

.563 Storing

Including silo filling

.564 Packing

Including baling

.58 Special methods of crop production

Including cover crops and strip cropping

.581 Fallowing

.582 Crop rotation

.585 Soilless culture

Including tank, chemical, water culture

.586 Dry farming

.587 Irrigation farming

For irrigation and water supply, see 631.7

631.6 **Drainage of farm land**

Including ditching, draining of waste lands, marshes, swamps; comprehensive works on reclamation of land

For economic aspects of conservation of agricultural land, see 333.76; *drainage engineering methods,* 627.54

.7 **Irrigation of farm land**

For irrigation engineering methods, see 627.52; *economic aspects of conservation of agricultural land,* 333.76; *water rights for irrigation,* 333.913; *farming methods using irrigation,* 631.587

.71 Source of water

Including wells, reservoirs

.72 Irrigation canals

.74 Measure and distribution of water

.75 Cost of water

.78 Machinery

.79 Methods of conserving moisture

Including mulching

For dry farming, see 631.586

.8 **Fertilizers and improvement of soil**

Class manufacture of commercial fertilizers [*formerly* *631.8] in 668.62

[.807 2] Experiments and research

Class in 631.88

.81 History, nature, uses

Including analysis, methods of application

.819 History in specific places

Divide like 930–999, e.g., use of fertilizers in Japan 631.819 52

.82 Mineral additions

Including calcium (lime), gypsum, plaster of Paris, marl, sulfate of iron

631.83 Potash fertilizers

Including wood ashes, potassium chloride, sulfate of potash

Class seaweed [*formerly* *631.83] in 631.87

.84 Nitrogenous fertilizers

Class muck [*formerly* *631.84] in 631.87

.842 Nitrates

.843 Animal industry residues

Including fish, blood, tankage [*formerly* †631.844–†631.846]

For bone meal, see 631.85

[†.844–†.846] Fish, blood, tankage

Class in 631.843

.847 Nitrifying crops

Including nitrification and soil inoculation [*both formerly* *631.46], bacteria

.85 Phosphoric fertilizers

Including rock phosphates, bone meal, basic slag, superphosphate or acid phosphate

Class guano [*formerly* †631.854] in 631.86

.86 Animal manure

Including guano [*formerly* †553.64, †631.854]

.87 Vegetable manures

Including muck [*formerly* *631.84], leaves; seaweed [*formerly* *631.83], residue from vegetable industries

.874 Green manures

Crops plowed under while still green, e.g., rye, clover, vetch, cowpeas

.875 Compost

.88 Fertilizer experiments and research

[†.9] **Climate and roads**

Class agricultural climatology in 630.251 5; roads in 631.28

632 Plant injuries, diseases, pests in crop production

Including blights; comprehensive works on destruction of, and diseases and pests injurious to, both plants and animals; on effect and control; on plant diseases, injuries, pests

For injuries, diseases, and pests of a specific crop or plant, see the crop, e.g., diseases and pests of potatoes 633.491; *plant pathology,* 581.2; *crop insurance,* 368.123; *pest control,* 632.9; *diseases of animals,* 636.089 6

.1 Elemental destruction and damage

Including methods of protection

.11 Low temperature

.12 Excessive heat and drought

.14 Hail

.15 Lightning

.16 Wind and rain

.17 Floods

.18 Fires

.2 Galls

Including cecidiology

For gall insects, see 632.7

.3 Bacterial diseases

Including bacterial blights, e.g., fire blight, wilt

For virus diseases, see 632.8

.4 Fungus diseases

Including rusts, smuts, bunts, mildews, molds, rots

Divide like 589.2, e.g., smuts 632.427

For fungi, see 589.2; *fungicides,* 632.952

.5 Injurious plants

Including parasitic plants

.58 Weeds [*formerly also* †581.65]

For deleterious plants, see 581.65

632.6 Animal pests

Including birds, rodents

Divide like 590, except for insects, e.g., snails 632.643

For injurious insects, see 632.7

.7 Insect pests

Divide like 595.7, e.g., locusts 632.72

For pesticides, see 632.95; *household pest control,* 648.7

.8 Other injurious factors

Including virus diseases

.9 Agricultural pest control

Comprehensive works

Including inspection and regulation by government

For protection from elements, see 632.1; *control of a specific pest, the pest, e.g., control of flies* 632.77; *protection of a specific crop, the crop, e.g., protection of apple crops* 634.11

.93 Plant quarantine

.94 Methods and apparatus of pest control

Including spraying, dusting, fumigating; use of airplanes

For biological control, see 632.96

.95 Pesticides

For manufacture of pesticides, see 668.65

.951 Insecticides and rodenticides

Including fumigants, contact and stomach poisons; vermicides

.952 Fungicides and algicides

.953 Disinfection and disinfectants

Including bactericides

.954 Herbicides

Chemical weed killers

.96 Biological control

Including natural enemies of pests, e.g., praying mantis

633–635 Production of specific crops

Including harvesting [*formerly* †631.556], varieties, yield, storage

For comprehensive works on crop production, see 631.5; *agricultural economics,* 338.1; *scientific classification and description of plants,* 582–589

633 Field crops

For plants raised for fruits, see 634; *for garden crops,* 635; *ornamental plants and plants raised for flowers,* 635.9; *forestry,* 634.9

SUMMARY

633.1	Cereals and grains
.2	Pasture grasses
.3	Pasture legumes
.39	Other forage crops
.4	Root crops
.5	Fiber crops
.6	Sugar and starch plants
.7	Alkaloidal crops
.8	Other plants grown for industrial processing

.1 Cereals and grains

.11 Wheat (Triticum aestivum)

.12 Buckwheat (Fagopyrum esculentum)

.13 Oats (Avena)

.14 Rye (Secale cereale)

.15 Corn (Zea mays)

Including corn harvesting [*formerly* †631.555]

.16 Barley (Hordeum)

.17 Millet (Panicum miliaceum), sorghum (Andropogon sorghum), and related crops

Including panic grass, prosos, broom corn, shallu, Kaffir corn, milo maize, durra, Jerusalem corn

For sweet sorghum, see 633.62

.18 Rice (Oryza sativa)

.2 Pasture grasses

Including comprehensive works on forage crops, hay

For a specific forage crop, see the subject, e.g., clover 633.32

.21 Bluegrass (Poa)

633.22 Orchard grass (Dactylis)

.23 Bent grass (Agrostis)

Including redtop

.24 Timothy (Phleum)

.25 Cereal grasses

Divide like 633.1, e.g., corn as fodder 633.255

.3 Pasture legumes

.31 Alfalfa (Medicago)

.32 Clovers (Trifolium)

.33 Cowpeas (Vigna)

.34 Soybean (Glycine)

For edible seeds of the soybean, see 635.655

.35 Vetches (Vicia)

.36 Peanut (Arachis hypogaea)

For edible seeds of the peanut, see 635.659

.364 Japan clover (Lespedeza)

.366 Sweet clover (Melilotus)

.367 Lupine (Lupinus)

.39 Other forage crops

Including cactus, sunflower

.4 Root crops

For root crops as garden vegetables, see 635.1–635.2

.41 Beet (Beta vulgaris)

Including mangel-wurzel

For sugar beet, see 633.63

.42 Turnip (Brassica rapa)

.43 Carrot (Daucus carota)

.44 Parsnip (Pastinaca sativa)

.49 Tubers and bulbs

Including Jerusalem artichoke

.491 Potato (Solanum tuberosum)

.492 Sweet potato (Ipomaea batatas)

633.5 **Fiber crops**

Plants grown primarily for use in textiles or other industrial uses

.51 Cotton (Gossypium)

.52 Flax (Linum)

.53 Hemp (Cannabis)

.54 Jute (Corchorus)

.55 Ramie (Boehmeria)

.58 Fibers for plaiting, basket and wickerwork, weaving

Including coir (coconut fiber), raffia, esparto, hat fibers, rushes, sedges, reeds, bamboo, osier, willow

.59 Fibers for other industrial uses

Including filling or stuffing fibers, bast fibers

.6 **Sugar and starch plants**

Comprehensive works

.61 Sugar cane (Saccharum)

.62 Sorghum (Andropogon sorghum)

For sorghum as a cereal crop, see 633.17

.63 Sugar beet (Beta)

For beet as root crop, see 633.41; *as garden vegetable,* 635.11

.64 Sugar maple

.68 Plants raised for starch

Including arrowroot, sago palm

.7 **Alkaloidal crops**

For medicinal plants, see 633.88

.71 Tobacco (Nicotiana)

.72 Tea (Camellia thea Link; Thea Linn)

.73 Coffee (Coffea)

.74 Cacao, cocoa, chocolate (Theobroma)

.75 Poppy (Papaver)

.76 Cola (Cola acuminata)

.77 Maté (Ilex)

.78 Chicory (Cichorium)

For chicory as a salad green, see 635.54

633.8 **Other plants grown for industrial processing**

.81 Plants yielding perfume

Including floral and herbal plants, woods, roots, balms and gums grown for perfume

.82 Flavorings

Including vanilla, mint, wintergreen, sassafras, ginger, hop

For condimental and sweet herbs as garden crops, see 635.7

.83 Spices

Including allspice, clove, cinnamon, nutmeg

.84 Condiments

Including pepper, paprika, chili, mustard, caper, horseradish

For condimental and sweet herbs as garden crops, see 635.7

.85 Plants yielding oil

Comprehensive works

For plants yielding perfume-producing oils, see 633.81

.86 Plants yielding dyes

.87 Plants yielding tannin

Including sumac

.88 Medicinal plants

Including cinchona, digitalis, ginseng

.89 Resin-producing plants

For resin-producing insects, see 638.3; *naval stores,* 634.986 2

.895 Rubber-producing plants

Including guayule, gutta-percha

For production of rubber latex from trees, see 634.986 5

.898 Plants used in making insecticides

Including pyrethrum

For insecticides, see 632.951

634 Fruit culture and orchards

Including propagation, varieties, yield, storage of fruits and nuts

For melon, see 635.61

SUMMARY

634.1	**Pomaceous or pome fruits**
.2	**Drupaceous or stone fruits**
.3	**Citrus fruits**
.36	**Moraceous fruits**
.4	**Minor fruits**
.5	**Nuts**
.6	**Palmaceous fruits**
.7	**Small fruits**
.77	**Herbaceous or nonwoody fruits**
.8	**Grape**

.1 Pomaceous or pome fruits

.11 Apple (Malus)

.12 Crab apple

.13 Pear (Pyrus)

.14 Quince (Cydonia)

.15 Medlar (Mespilus)

.16 Loquat (Eriobotrya japonica)

.2 Drupaceous or stone fruits

.21 Apricot (Prunus armeniaca)

.22 Plum (Prunus)

.23 Cherry (Prunus cerasus)

.24 Racemose cherry

Including wild cherry, chokecherry, sand cherry

.25 Peach (Amygdalus persica)

.26 Nectarine

.3 Citrus fruits

.31 Orange

Including sour orange (Citrus aurantium), sweet orange (Citrus sinensis); Valencia, navel orange

.32 Special varieties

Including mandarin, Temple orange; tangerine, tangelo

634.323 Grapefruit (Citrus grandis)

Including pomelo, shaddock

.324 Kumquat (Fortunella)

.33 Citron group

.331 Citron (Citrus medica)

.334 Lemon (Citrus limonia)

.337 Lime (Citrus aurantifolia)

.36 Moraceous fruits

.37 Fig (Ficus carica)

.38 Mulberry (Morus)

.39 Breadfruit (Artocarpus altilis)

.4 Minor fruits

.41 Anonaceous fruits

Including sour-sop, sweet-sop, Jamaica apple, northern papaw, custard apple

For melon papaw, see 634.651

.42 Myrtaceous fruits

Myrtle family

Including guava (Psidium)

.425 Passifloraceous fruits

Passionflower family

Including passion fruit (maypop)

.43 Sapotaceous fruits

Star apple or sapodilla family

.44 Anacardiaceous fruits

Including mango, Spanish plum

For cashew nuts, see 634.573

.45 Ebenaceous fruits

Ebony family

Including persimmon

.46 Leguminous fruits

Bean family

Including tamarind

634.5 **Nuts**

For wild nut trees, see 634.987; *peanuts,* 635.659

.51 Walnut (Juglans)

Including English, black, Japanese walnut; butternut

.52 Hickory nut (Hicoria)

Including pecan, pignut

.53 Chestnut (Castanea)

Including European, American, Japanese chestnut; chinquapin

.54 Filbert, hazelnut, cobnut (Corylus)

.55 Almond (Prunus)

.57 Other nuts

Including litchi (leechee), ginkgo

.573 Cashew (Anacardium occidentale)

.574 Pistachio (Pistacia vera)

.575 Brazil nut (Bertholletia excelsa)

.6 **Palmaceous fruits**

Palm and other tropical, subtropical tree fruits

.61 Coconut (Cocos nucifera)

.62 Date (Phoenix dactylifera)

.63 Olive (Olea europaea)

.64 Pomegranate (Punica granatum)

.651 Papaya (Carica papaya)

Including melon papaw, melon zapote

For northern papaw, see 634.41

.653 Avocado (Persea gratissima)

.7 **Small fruits**

.71 Rubaceous, cane or bramble fruits (Rubus)

.711 Raspberry

.713 Blackberry

.714 Loganberry

.717 Dewberry

634.72 Ribaceous fruits (Ribes)

.721 Currants

.722 Garden or common currant (Ribes rubrum)

.723 Black currant

.724 Buffalo, Missouri, flowering or golden currant (Ribes aureum)

.725 Gooseberry (Saxifragaceae)

.73 Huckleberry (Gaylussacia) and blueberry (Vaccinium)

.74 Other bush fruits

Including Juneberry, buffalo berry, barberry, elderberry

.75 Strawberry (Fragaria)

.76 Cranberry (Vaccinium)

.77 **Herbaceous or nonwoody fruits**

.771 Musaceous fruits

.772 Banana (Musa sapientum)

.773 Plantain banana (Musa paradisiaca)

.774 Pineapple (Ananas sativus)

.775 Cactaceous fruits

Including prickly pear, tuna (Opuntia tuna)

.8 **Grape**

.81 Viticulture

Including management, special techniques, equipment

.82 Injuries and diseases

Including blights, pests

.83 Varieties

Including varieties adapted to specific environments; varieties of specific colors

.84 American species and stocks

.85 Other species and stocks

Divide like 930–999, e.g., grape culture of Italy 634.854 5

.87 Grapes for purposes other than winemaking

.872 Table grapes

.873 Raisins

634.9 Forestry

Art and science of forming, maintaining, cultivating forests

SUMMARY

634.92	Forest economics
.93	Forestry engineering
.94	Forest ecology
.95	Silviculture
.96	Protection of forests against injury and disease
.97	Forestry of specific kinds of trees
.98	Forest exploitation and utilization
.99	Other uses of forests

.92 Forest economics [*formerly also* †333.75]

Including relation of forests to industries, forest influences on health, recreation

.922 Forest geophysics

Including influence on climate, soil, water resources, erosion

.925 Forest policy

Including public and private ownership, government regulation; importance of forests for watershed protection, water-power development, timber production

Divide like 930–999, e.g., forest policy in the United States 634.925 73

.927 Forest resources

Including production, distribution, consumption of timber and other forest resources

.928 Forest management

Including personnel, organization and plans

Class business management [*formerly* *634.928] in 658.934 9

.928 4 Finance

Including valuation, timber risks

.928 5 Mensuration

Including determination of volume of timber stands, growth and yield, logs and lumber

.93 Forestry engineering

Including surveying, construction relating to forest improvement

For a specific engineering process, see the subject, e.g., road engineering 625.7

634.94 Forest ecology

Reaction of individual trees and tree groups to environment

Including site factors, e.g., light, soil, moisture, climate [*formerly also* †551.58]; formational forest ecology [*formerly also* †581.526 42]

.95 Silviculture

Establishment, development, care, reproduction of stands of timber

For commercial raising of ornamental trees, see 635.977

.956 Forestation

Establishment of forest stands

Including seeds and seeding, planting, reforestation, nursery practice; planting for shelter belts, watershed protection

.96 Protection of forests against injury and disease

Divide like 632, e.g., forest fires 634.961 8

For injuries, diseases, pests of a specific species, see the species, e.g., diseases of pine tree 634.975 1; *a specific disease or pest attacking both forest trees and other plants, the disease or pest, e.g., tent caterpillar* 632.78

.97 Forestry of specific kinds of trees

For forest exploitation and utilization, see 634.98; *cultivation of trees for a specific product, the subject, e.g., for production of coffee* 633.73

.972 Deciduous trees

.972 1 Oak

.972 2 Maple

For maples raised for sugar, see 633.64

.972 3 Poplar

.972 4 Chestnut

.972 5 Beech

.972 6 Birch

.972 7 Linden and basswood

.972 8 Elm

.973 Other dicotyledons

Divide like 583, e.g., locust tree 634.973 32

634.974 Monocotyledons

Divide like 584, e.g., palm 634.974 5

.975 Coniferous or evergreen trees

.975 1 Pine

.975 2 Spruce

.975 3 Hemlock

.975 4 Fir

.975 5 Cypress

.975 6 Cedar

.975 7 Larch

.975 8 Sequoia

.975 9 Other coniferous trees

.98 Forest exploitation and utilization

Comprehensive works

Class wood technology in 674.1, rough lumber products in 674.28 [*both formerly* *634.98]

For exploitation and utilization of a specific species, see the species, e.g., oak bark products 634.972 1; *exploitation and utilization of trees for a specific product, the subject, e.g., for production of quinine* 633.88

.982 Logging

Including machinery and tools, transportation, log sorting and grading

For grading lumber, see 674.5

634.983–634.987 Primary products of forests

For production of secondary and finisht products, see the subject, e.g., maple syrup 664.132, *wood pulp* 676.12, *latex products* 678.53

.983 Logs and pulpwood

Class rough lumber products (crossties, poles, piling, posts, mine timbers, fuel woods [*all formerly* †634.983]) in 674.28

.985 Barks

Including cork, tannin barks, medicinal barks

634.986 Saps

Including gums, resins, latexes

.986 2 Naval stores

Including turpentine orchards, turpentining operations, extraction of gum from pine trees

For turpentine as a by-product of pulp and paper industries, see 676.5

.986 5 Rubber latex

Including rubber plantations, extraction of latex from rubber-producing trees

For rubber-producing plants other than trees, see 633.895

.986 7 Food saps

.987 Fruits and nuts

Including tung oil nuts

For culture of fruits and nuts, see 634.1–634.873

.989 Other forest products

Including pine needles, Spanish moss, forest wastes

.99 Other uses of forests

Including grazing and pasture use, farm woodlands

For camping, see 796.54; *fishing, hunting as recreation,* 799

635 Garden crops (Horticulture)

Plants usually grown on a smaller scale than field crops; raised for food, ornament, home use or commercial marketing

Including truck and home gardening, vegetable gardening

For landscape gardening, see 712; *field crops,* 633; *flower gardening,* 635.9

SUMMARY

635.1	**Edible roots**
.2	**Edible tubers and bulbs**
.3–.5	**Edible leaves, flowers, stems**
.6	**Edible fruits and seeds**
.7	**Condimental and sweet herbs**
.8	**Mushrooms and truffles**
.9	**Flower gardening (Floriculture)**

.1 Edible roots

.11 Beet

635.12 Turnip
Including rutabaga, celeriac
.13 Carrot
.14 Parsnip
.15 Radish
.16 Salsify, oyster plant, vegetable oyster

.2 Edible tubers and bulbs
.21 Potato
.22 Sweet potato
.23 Yam
.24 Jerusalem artichoke
.25 Onion
.26 Other plants of genus Allium
Including leek, garlic, shallot, chive

.3 Edible leaves, flowers, stems
.31 Asparagus
.32 Artichoke
.34 Cabbage
Including kale, collard, kohlrabi
.35 Cauliflower
Including broccoli
.36 Brussels sprouts
.4 Greens
Including mustard, sorrel, dandelion
.41 Spinach
.42 Chard
.48 Rhubarb
.5 Salad greens
.52 Lettuce
.53 Celery
.54 Chicory

635.55 Endive
.56 Cresses
Including water cress, garden cress, winter cress

.6 Edible fruits and seeds
.61 Melon
Including muskmelon, cantaloupe, watermelon
.62 Squash
Including pumpkin, gourd
.63 Cucumber and gherkin
.64 Tomato
.646 Eggplant
.648 Okra
.65 Legumes
Including beans
.651 Broad bean
.652 Kidney bean
Including garden, snap, string bean
.653 Lima bean
.655 Soybean
For soybean as a forage crop, see 633.34
.656 Peas
.657 Chick-pea
.658 Lentil
.659 Other legumes
Including peanuts
For peanuts as a forage crop, see 633.36
.67 Corn
Including sweet corn
.677 Popcorn

635.7 Condimental and sweet herbs

For growing of condimental plants for industrial use, see 633.84

.71 Seasoning leaves and flowers

.72 Mint

.74 Flavoring for pickles and vinegar

Including dill, tarragon, samphire, costmary

.75 Seeds for flavoring

Including anise, coriander, caraway

.78 Garnishes

Including parsley, leaf chervil

.8 Mushrooms and truffles

.9 Flower gardening (Floriculture)

Flowers and ornamental plants grown for home use or commercial marketing

For flowering plants in landscape gardening, see 716

.907 4 Flower and garden shows

Including exhibits of potted plants [*formerly* †635.965 5], exhibits of cut flowers [*formerly* †635.966 5]

.91 Economics and operations of flower raising

Divide like 631, e.g., fertilizers and improvement of soil in the florist business 635.918

For raising a specific species, see the species, e.g., roses 635.933 3; *of a specific group of plants, the group, e.g., foliage plants* 635.975; *operations common to a variety of plants, not limited to floriculture,* 631

.92 Diseases and injuries of plants

Comprehensive works on diseases and injuries of ornamental plants

For diseases and injuries affecting a specific species, see the species, e.g., rose blight 635.933 3; *diseases and injuries common to a variety of plants, not limited to floriculture,* 632

.93 Plants groupt by life duration

.931 Annuals and biennials

Comprehensive works

For a specific species, see the species, e.g., aster 635.933 55

635.932 Perennials

Comprehensive works

For a specific species, see the species, e.g., rose 635.933 3

.933–.939 Individual species

Divide like 583–589, e.g., cactus 635.933 47

If preferred, arrange alphabetically under 635.933

For a specific species of ornamental tree, see 635.977 3–635.977 5; *scientific classification and description,* 582–589

.94 Plants groupt by means of propagation

Including plants raised from seed, runners, cuttings

For a specific species, see the species, e.g., narcissus 635.934 25

.944 Bulbs and tubers

.95 Plants groupt by special conditions of growth

For a specific species, see the species, e.g., orchid 635.934 15

.952 Plants growing in special climates

Including tropical plants, arctic plants, alpine plants

.953 Plants flowering at specific times

Including spring-flowering plants, morning-blooming plants

.954 Plants growing under certain light conditions

Including sunshine, shade, artificial light

.955 Plants growing under certain soil conditions

Including moist, dry, rich, sandy soils

.96 Plants groupt by purpose

For a specific species, see the species, e.g., coleus 635.933 89

.963 Borders or edging

.964 Lawns

Including grass, other ground cover plants

.965 House plants

Including potted plants, window gardening

Class exhibits of potted plants [*formerly* †635.965 5] in 635.907 4

.966 Cut flowers

Class exhibits of cut flowers [*formerly* †635.966 5] in 635.907 4

635.966 3 Flower arrangement in vases

.966 4 Floral designs

Including set floral pieces, wired or tied; corsages

.967 Special kinds of gardens

.967 2 Rock gardens

.967 4 Water gardens

Including aquatic plants

.967 6 Wild flower gardens

.969 Nurseries

For nursery practice in forestry, see 634.956; *comprehensive works on plant nurseries,* 631.537

.97 Other groupings

For a specific species, see the species, e.g., coleus 635.933 89

.973 Everlastings

.974 Climbing plants

Including vines, creepers

.975 Foliage plants

Including ferns, mosses

.976 Shrubs and hedges

Including deciduous and evergreen, ornamental and flowering shrubs

.977 Trees

Including commercial raising of ornamental trees; miniature trees

For use of trees in landscape planning, see 715.2; *fruit tree culture,* 634; *forestry,* 634.9

.977 3–.977 5 Individual species

Divide like 583–585, e.g., elm 635.977 396 2

If preferred, arrange alphabetically under 635.977 3

.98 Plants raised under glass

Including hotbeds, cold frames, bell glasses, forcing of plants

.982 Plants raised in greenhouses

Including conservatories

For greenhouses as means of protection and shelter of plants, see 631.544

636–638 Animal husbandry

636 Livestock and domestic animals

For scientific classification and description, see 592–599

SUMMARY

636.08	Livestock management, breeding, care
.1	Horses and other equines
.2	Cattle
.3	Sheep
.39	Goats
.4	Swine
.5	Poultry
.6	Birds
.7	Dogs
.8	Cats
.9	Other useful animals

.08 Livestock management, breeding, care

For management of a specific species, see the species, e.g., horses 636.1

.081 Selection and acquisition of stock

For breeding, see 636.082

.081 2 Branding and marking

Including catalogs of brands

.081 3 Stock farms and ranches

Including descriptions of individual farms

For farms not limited to livestock, see 631

.082 Stockbreeding

Including species, races, breeds, strains; heredity, variation; formation of stock; character and composition of herd, flock, colony

.082 2 Herdbooks, studbooks, flock books

.082 4 Breeding and reproduction

Including inbreeding, crossbreeding, artificial insemination, incubation

636.083 Shelter, care, protection of livestock

Including implements for care of farm animals [*formerly* †631.38], protection from predatory animals, extremes of climate

.083 1 Housing

Including stables, stalls, pens, sties, coops, cages, kennels, hutches

For architecture of farm buildings, see 728.9

.083 3 Care of animals

Including grooming, clipping

.083 7 Care of harnesses and accessories [*formerly also* †631.374]

.084 Feeding methods

Including feeding of young; amount and preparation of food, feeding for special purposes, e.g., feeding for greater production

.084 2 Grazing

.085 Feed

Including composition, nutritive value, adulteration; fodder, silage, commercial preparations

Class individual feeds, e.g., oats, corn, hay [*formerly* *636.085] in 636.086; garden crops, feeds of animal and mineral origin [*formerly* *636.085] in 636.087

.086 Cereals and other field crops [*formerly* *636.085]

Including oats, corn, hay, other forage crops

.087 Fruit, feeds of animal and mineral origin [*formerly* *636.085]

Including garden crops

.088 Development of animals

Breeding and training for specific purposes

.088 1 For breeding purposes

For reproduction and breeding, see 636.082 4

.088 2 For work [*formerly also* †636.088 6]

Including hauling, guarding, racing

.088 3 For production of food

Including meat, eggs

636.088 4 For production of other animal products

Including wool, skins, feathers, fur

For fur farming, see 636.92

.088 5 For scientific purposes

For experimental physiology, see 612.072; *experimental medicine,* 619

[†.088 6] Breaking in, training

Class in 636.088 2

.088 7 For pets

.088 8 For performance and exhibits

.089 Veterinary science

Divide like 611–618, where applicable. Representative subdivisions are given below

.089 1 Veterinary anatomy

For comparative anatomy, see 591.4

.089 2 Veterinary physiology [*formerly* *591.1]

.089 4 Veterinary public health [*formerly* †614.9]

Including veterinary hygiene, control and eradication of livestock diseases; sanitation

.089 5 Veterinary therapeutics

Including pharmacology

.089 6 Diseases and their treatment

.089 7 Veterinary surgery

Including dentistry

.089 8 Veterinary obstetrics

.1 Horses and other equines

Divide 636.108 like 636.08, e.g., feeding of horses 636.108 4

For horse racing, see 798.4; *horsemanship,* 798.2; *scientific description and classification,* 599.725; *cavalry services,* 357

[.108 82] Utilization for work

Class in 636.12–636.15

.11 Oriental horses

Including Arabian, Persian, Tartar, Turkish, Barb horses

.12 Race horses and trotters

636.13 Riding horses

Including saddle horses, hunters

.14 Carriage horses

.15 Draft horses

Including cart horses, dray horses

.16 Ponies

.168 American ponies

Including mustangs, broncos, Indian ponies, pintos, quarter horses

.18 Other equines

Including asses, mules, zebras

.2 Cattle

Including other large ruminants

Divide 636.208–636.208 7, 636.208 9 like 636.08–636.087, 636.089, e.g., branding cattle 636.208 12

For scientific description and classification, see 599.735

.21 Uses

Divide like 636.088, e.g., cattle for beef production 636.213

For production of a specific breed, see the breed, e.g., Jersey 636.224

.22 British cattle

.222 Beef breeds

Including Shorthorn, Hereford

.223 Scotch, Welsh, Irish breeds

Including Aberdeen Angus, Galloway

.224 Dairy breeds

Including Alderney, Jersey, Guernsey

.225 Scotch and Irish breeds

Including Ayrshire, Kerry

.226 Dual-purpose breeds

Including Devon, Polled Durham, Red Polled, Longhorn

.23 German, Dutch, Danish, Swiss cattle

.232 Beef breeds

636.234 Dairy breeds

Including Holstein-Friesian

.235 Dutch breeds

Including Dutch Friesian

For other Friesian breeds, see 636.234

.235 6 Danish breeds

.236 Dual-purpose breeds

.237 Swiss breeds

.24 French and Belgian cattle

Including beef, dairy, dual-purpose breeds

.27 Other European cattle

Including Russian breeds

.28 Non-European cattle

.282 American beef breeds

.283 American dairy breeds

Including Holderness, Quebec Jersey

.29 Other large ruminants

Including domesticated reindeer, buffalo, camel, zebu

.3 Sheep

Including comprehensive works on sheep, goats, other small ruminants

Divide 636.308–636.308 7, 636.308 9 like 636.08–636.087, 636.089, e.g., sheep breeding 636.308 24

For scientific description and classification, see 599.735

.31 Uses

Divide like 636.088, e.g., production of wool 636.314

.32 English sheep

Including long-wooled, short-wooled, mountain breeds

.33 German, Dutch, Swiss sheep

Including low country or marsh, upland breeds

.34 French and Flemish sheep

.35 Italian sheep

636.36 Merino breeds

Including other Spanish breeds

.367 Other European Merino breeds

.368 Non-European Merino breeds

Including American, Delaine, Australian

.37 Other European sheep

Including Russian breeds

.38 Non-European sheep

.385 Asiatic sheep

.386 African sheep

.39 Goats

Divide 636.390 8–636.390 87, 636.390 89 like 636.08–636.087, 636.089, e.g., feeding of goats 636.390 84

For scientific description and classification, see 599.735

.391 Uses

Divide like 636.088, e.g., raising of goats for milk 636.391 3

.392 British goats

Including long-haired Irish, short-haired English goats

.393 German and Austrian goats

.393 6 Swiss goats

.394 French goats

.395 Italian goats

.396 Spanish goats

.397 Other European goats

.398 Non-European goats

Including American, Asiatic, African goats

.4 Swine

Divide 636.408–636.408 7, 636.408 9 like 636.08–636.087, 636.089, e.g., diseases of swine 636.408 96

For scientific description and classification, see 599.734

.41 Uses

Divide like 636.088, e.g., production of bacon 636.413

636.42 British swine

.421 Small colored breeds

Including Essex, Sussex

.422 Small white breeds

Including Windsor, Small Yorkshire, Coleshill

.423 Large colored breeds

.424 Large white breeds

Including Yorkshire, Lancashire, Cumberland, New Leicester, Lincolnshire

.426 Medium colored breeds

Including Black Berkshire, Red Berkshire, Red Tamworth

.427 Medium white breeds

Including Middle Yorkshire

.43 German and Dutch swine

.44 French and Swiss swine

.45 Italian, Neapolitan, Maltese, Tuscan, Romagnole swine

.46 Spanish and Portuguese swine

.47 Other European swine

.48 Non-European swine

.481 American swine

.482 Poland-China

.483 Red Jersey or Duroc-Jersey

.484 Other American breeds

Including Chester White, Hampshire, Cheshire, Victoria, mulefoot, razorback

.485 Asiatic swine

.486 African swine

.489 Oceanic swine

Including Papuan swine

636.5 Poultry

Divide 636.508–636.508 7, 636.508 9 like 636.08–636.087, 636.089, e.g., poultry hatching 636.508 24

For scientific description and classification, see 598.6

.51 Uses

Divide like 636.088, e.g., raising chickens for egg production 636.513

.52 British poultry

Including Dorking, Sussex, Kent, Orpington, Redcap

.53 German and Dutch poultry

Including Hamburg, Lakenfelds, Ramelsloher, Styrian, Bohemian

.54 French and Belgian poultry

Including Crèvecoeur, Houdan, La Flèche, La Bresse, Faverolles, Gournay

.55 Italian poultry

Including Leghorn, Paduan, Polverara, Ancona

.56 Spanish poultry

Including Castilian, Minorcan, Black Spanish, Blue Andalusian, Prat

.57 Other European poultry

.58 Non-European poultry

.581 American poultry

Including Dominique, Jersey Blue, Bucks County, Java, Winnebago

.582 Plymouth Rock

.583 Wyandotte

.584 Rhode Island Red

.585 Asiatic poultry

Including Cochin China, Brahmaputra, Langshan, Malay

.587 Special varieties

.587 1 Bantams

.588 Other

Including game, deformed, silkies, frizzles

636.59 Other domestic and game birds

.592 Turkeys

Including North American or wild turkey, Bronze, Bourbon Red

.593 Guinea fowl

.594 Pheasants

Including partridge

.595 Peacocks

.596 Pigeons

Including pouter, English carrier, homing

For military use of pigeons, see 355.424

.597 Ducks

.598 Geese

.6 Birds

Raising, care of domesticated birds, other than poultry, useful for plumage or work, pet birds

For poultry, see 636.5; *scientific description and classification of birds,* 598.2–598.9

.68 Song and ornamental birds

.686 Caged and aviary birds

.686 2 Canaries

Including finches

.686 4 Budgerigars (Shell parakeets)

.686 5 Parrots

Including macaws, cockatoos

.7 Dogs

Divide 636.708–636.708 7, 636.708 9 like 636.08–636.087, 636.089, e.g., diseases of dogs 636.708 96

For scientific description and classification, see 599.744 4

.71 Breeds of dogs

Comprehensive works on various types and breeds

For a specific breed, see type of usefulness, e.g., bulldogs 636.74

636.72 Utility dogs

.73 Draft and other work dogs

Including sled dogs, Eskimo dogs

.74 Watch dogs and herd dogs

Including shepherd dogs, police dogs

.75 Hunting and sleuth dogs

Including sporting dogs, gun dogs, hounds

.76 Pet dogs

.765 Toy dogs

.77 Pictures and illustrations of dogs

For painting of dogs, see 758.3

.78 Essays, stories, biographies of dogs [*formerly the* *800's]

.8 Cats

Divide 636.808–636.808 7, 636.808 9 like 636.08–636.087, 636.089, e.g., feeding of cats 636.808 4

For scientific description and classification, see 599.744 2

.81 Breeds

.87 Pictures and illustrations of cats

For painting of cats, see 758.3

.88 Essays, stories, biographies of cats [*formerly the* *800's]

.9 Other useful animals

Including selection, breeding, care, feeding, training, diseases of specific animals not provided for in 636.1–636.8

Arrange alphabetically by name of animal, using A1 for comprehensive works, e.g., skunks 636.9 S6

For culture of fish, see 639.3; *of insects and other invertebrates,* 638

.92 Fur farming

Including comprehensive works on raising animals for fur

For raising a specific animal, see the animal, e.g., Persian lamb 636.385; *mink* 636.9; *trapping and hunting animals for fur,* 639.1

637 Dairy industry

Including management of dairies; production, analysis, testing of dairy products

For sanitary control and inspection of milk and milk products, see 614.32

.1 Milk industry

.11 Dairy farms

Including description of individual farms

Class business management of dairy farms [*formerly* *637.11] in 658.937 1

.12 Milk production and composition

Including choice of dairy cows

For a specific breed, see the breed, e.g., Jersey 636.224

.124 Milking methods

Including hand and machine methods

.125 Milking machinery

.127 Composition and quality of milk

Including sampling, analysis, testing

For chemical analysis of milk, see 543.2

.13 Care of milk

.131 Dairy buildings

.132 Installations and apparatus for handling milk

.133 Treatment of milk

Including cooling, filtration, pasteurization, sterilization, irradiation, homogenization

.135 Distribution and transportation

.14 Forms of milk for utilization and consumption

.141 Whole milk

Including fresh milk, evaporated milk

.142 Condenst milk

.143 Dried milk or milk powder

.145 Milk sugar (Lactose) [*formerly also* †637.345]

.146 Cultured milk

Including fermented milk (kumiss)

637.147 Skim milk

For casein-derived plastics, see 668.43; *casein-derived fiber textiles,* 677.472

.148 Cream

For ice-cream industry, see 637.4

.17 Milk other than cow's milk

Including mare's, ewe's milk

.174 Goat's milk

Including yogurt

.18 Substitutes for milk

Including soybean milk, coconut milk

.2 Butter industry

.22 Composition and quality of butter

Including analysis, testing

For chemical analysis of butter, see 543.2

.23 Buttermaking

Including processes, equipment, packing, transportation

For sanitary control and inspection, see 614.32

.24 By-products

Including buttermilk

[†.28] Butter substitutes

Class in 664.32

.3 Cheese industry

.32 Composition and quality of cheese

Including grades, testing, analysis

For chemical analysis of cheese, see 543.2

.33 Cheese manufacture

Including factories, apparatus, transportation

For sanitary control and inspection, see 614.32

.34 By-products

Including whey

[†.345] Milk sugar

Class in 637.145

637.35 Varieties of cheese

.352 Cream cheese

.353 Soft cheese

Including semisoft, blue-mold, white-mold cheese

.354 Hard cheese

.355 Cheese from other than cow's milk

.356 Sour-milk cheese

Including cottage cheese, pot cheese

.358 Procest cheese

Including cheese spreads

.4 Ice-cream industry [*formerly* †*664.15]

Including sherbets, ices, frozen custards

For ice-cream making at home, see 641.86

638 Insects and other useful invertebrates

For oysters and other mollusks, see 639.4

.1 Beekeeping

For scientific description and classification of bees, see 595.799

.11 Management

Including establishment of apiaries, selection of bees

For hive management, see 638.14

.12 Bees

Including habits, varieties

.13 Pasturage for bees

Including nectar plants, pollen plants

For supplementary feeding, see 638.14

.14 Hive management

Including handling beehives, breeding, supplementary feeding, swarming control, comb honey removal

Class diseases [*formerly* *638.14] in 638.15

.15 Diseases [*formerly* *638.14] and injuries

Including means of protection

638.16 Honey production

Including composition, preparation, varieties, alterations, substitutes

.169 Uses of honey

Including use of honey in medicine, e.g., royal jelly

.17 Beeswax and other honeybee products

.19 Bees as pollinating agents

.2 Silkworm cultivation

.3 Resin- and dye-producing insects

Including lac insects, cochineal

For manufacture of lacquer, see 667.75; *of shellac,* 667.79

.5 Culture of miscellaneous useful invertebrates

.51 Worms

Including earthworm culture

.57 Praying mantises

639 Hunting and fishing industries

For hunting and fishing as sport, see 799; *conservation of wildlife,* 799; *seafood processing and preservation,* 664.94

.1 Hunting and trapping

For sealing, see 639.29

.11 Game animals

Including deer, big game, fur-bearing animals

For fur farming, see 636.92

.12 Wild fowl

.14 Crocodiles and alligators

.2 Fishing, sealing, whaling

.21 Fresh-water fisheries

.22 Salt-water fisheries

639.27 Specific kinds of fish and amphibians

Divide like 597, e.g., salmon fishing 639.275

.279 9 Reptiles

Including turtles, terrapins

For hunting and trapping crocodiles and alligators, see 639.14

.28 Whaling

.29 Sealing

.3 Fish culture

.31 Culture in fresh water

Including lakes, streams

.311 Ponds

Including artificial ponds

.32 Culture in salt water

.34 Ornamental fish culture

.37 Culture of specific kinds of fish and amphibians

Divide like 597, e.g., frog culture 639.378

.379 9 Culture of reptiles

Including alligator farms, snake farms

.4 Mollusk fisheries

Including clams, mussels, scallops

.41 Oysters

.412 Pearl fishing

.5 Crustacean fisheries

Including lobsters, crabs, shrimp

.6 Other sea food

Including sea urchins, seaweed

.7 Sponges and coral

640 Home economics

Including public and private establishments

.714 Extension work

641 Food

Including food for laborers [*formerly* †331.834]

For physiology of nutrition, see 612.3; *food in relation to health,* 613.2

.01 Epicurism

Including pleasures of eating, esthetics of cookery, gourmets

For ethical aspects of gluttony, see 178.9; *overweight and health,* 613.25

.1 Food values

Applied nutrition

Including food requirements for adults [*formerly* †612.395], nutrients required to meet body needs, their proportions in various foods, application of principles of nutrition in diet control

For chemical analysis of food, see 543.1; *food and drug control,* 614.3; *dietotherapy,* 615.854; *food and health,* 613.2; *physiology of nutrition,* 612.3; *food requirements for children,* 649.3

.11 Organic food ingredients

Composition of foodstuffs

.12 Proteins

Including meat, eggs, nuts, legumes

.13 Carbohydrates

Including vegetables, cereals, fruits, sugar

.14 Fats and oils

.15 Inorganic food ingredients

.16 Water

.17 Salts, minerals, ash ingredients

.18 Vitamins

For pharmacology of vitamins, see 615.328; *vitamin therapy,* 615.854

641.3 Animal and vegetable foods

Comprehensive works on foods derived from specific agricultural products

Including history, customs, supply, value, preparation

For cookery of specific foodstuffs, see 641.6; *commercial manufacture of foods,* 664

.31 Food selection and buying

Including retail food markets [*formerly* †641.4]; quality, cost, other factors in buying food

.33 Products of field crops

.331 Cereals

Divide like 633.1, e.g., rice 641.331 8

.336 Sugar

.337 Alkaloidal plants

Divide like 633.7, e.g., coffee 641.337 3

.338 Seasonings and flavorings

Divide like 633.8, e.g., spices 641.338 3

.34 Fruits

Divide like 634, e.g., apples 641.341 1

.35 Vegetables

Divide like 635, e.g., potatoes 641.352 1

.36 Meat

Divide like 636, e.g., chicken 641.365

.37 Dairy products

Divide like 637, e.g., butter 641.372

.38 Honey

.39 Products of hunting and fishing

Divide like 639, e.g., oysters 641.394 1

641.4 **Home preservation of foods**

Including comprehensive works on methods of food preservation

Class retail food markets [*formerly* †641.4] in 641.31

For commercial preservation of food, see 664.8; *commercial preparation of fruit and vegetable juices,* 663.63; *home preparation of jelly, jam, marmalade,* 641.8

.42 Home canning [*formerly* †641.48]

Including fruits, vegetables, soups

For canning meats, see 641.49

.44 Drying and dehydration [*formerly* †641.484]

Including concentrated and extracted foods

For drying meats, see 641.49

.45 Freezing [*formerly* †641.485]

For freezing meats, see 641.49

.46 Brining and pickling [*both formerly* †641.48]

For brining, pickling meats, see 641.49

[†.48] Home canning, pickling

Class canning in 641.42; pickling in 641.46

[†.484] Drying and dehydration

Class in 641.44

[†.485] Freezing

Class in 641.45

.49 Meat processing and preservation

Including canning, drying, freezing, brining, smoking, pickling; home slaughtering, dressing

.493 Poultry processing and preservation

.494 Sea food processing and preservation

.5 **Food preparation**

Including cookbooks, recipes

For menus and meal planning, see 642.1; *commercial manufacture and preparation of food,* 664

.56 Cookery for special conditions

Including low-calorie recipes, allergy cooking

.562 Infants and children

For management of meals for infants and children, see 649.3

641.563 Invalids and aged

Including hospital cookery

For food in relation to health, see 613.2; *dietotherapy,* 615.853

.565 Religious limitations of food

.566 Christian seasons and days

Including Lent, fast days

.567 Limitations in other religions

Including Jewish, Buddhist

.57 Institutional and quantity cookery

For institutional management, see 647.9; *hospital cookery,* 641.563

.572 Hotel and restaurant cookery

.573 Armed services cookery

Including army, navy, air force

[†.574] Shipboard cookery

Class in 641.575

.575 Travel cookery

Including shipboard cookery [*formerly* †641.574]

.576 Railway dining and buffet car cookery

.577 Canteen cookery

Including emergency mass feeding in times of disaster

.578 Outdoor cookery

Including camp cooking, barbecues

For camping, see 796.54

.58 Cookery with special appliances, utensils, fuels

For kitchen equipment, see 643.3

.583 Cooking by oil

.584 Cooking by gas

.585 Cooking by alcohol

Including chafing dish cookery

.586 Cooking by electricity

Including cooking with electric skillet, frying pan, roaster, grill, waffle iron

641.587 Steam cookery

Including pressure cooking

.588 Slow and fireless cookery

Including Aladdin ovens

.59 Cookery of special countries

Including international cookery

.591 Arctic and cold weather cookery

.592 Tropical and hot weather cookery

.593–.599 National and regional cookery

Divide like 930–999, e.g., German cooking 641.594 3

.6 Cookery of specific foodstuffs

Divide like 641.3, e.g., meat cookery 641.66

.7 Cookery techniques

Including braising, stewing, steaming

For cookery of specific foodstuffs, see 641.6; *quantity cookery,* 641.57; *cookery with special appliances,* 641.58

.71 Baking and roasting

For home baking of cakes, see 641.631; *desserts,* 641.8

.73 Boiling and simmering

Including soups

.76 Broiling, grilling, barbecuing

For cooking by electricity, see 641.586; *outdoor cookery,* 641.578

.77 Frying and sautéing

.8 Composite dishes

Including jelly, jam, marmalade; comprehensive works on desserts

For a specific dessert, see the type of food, e.g., pies 641.631

.81 Sauces, relishes, appetizers

Including canapés, hors d'oeuvres

.83 Salads

.84 Sandwiches

For planning of picnic and travel lunches, see 642.3

641.85 Confectionery

Including candies, sweets, bonbons; comprehensive works on use and making of confectionery

For commercial manufacture of candies and confectionery, see 664.15

.86 Ice cream

Including ices, sherbets, puddings; comprehensive works on use and making of ice cream

For commercial manufacture of ice cream, see 637.4

.87 Beverages

Including soft drinks; comprehensive works on use and making of beverages

For commercial manufacture of beverages, see 663; *bartenders' manuals and recipes,* 663.8

642 Dining and food service

For etiquette of hospitality, see 395.3; *table service,* 642.6

.1 Home and family meal planning

Including menus, meal management

[†.2] Refreshments

Class in 642.4

.3 Camp, picnic, travel lunches

Including packt lunches

For camp cooking, see 641.578

.4 Entertaining

Including light refreshments [*formerly* †642.2], luncheons, dinners, receptions, buffet suppers, banquets; church suppers

.47 Catering

Service for all types of functions

For systems for serving large numbers, see 642.5

[†.48] Toasts, table anecdotes, conversation

Class in 808.85

642.5 Systems for serving large numbers

Including table d'hôte, à la carte

For quantity cookery, see 641.57; *restaurant management,* 647.95

.57 Lunch counters and cafeterias

Including quick service, short orders, snack bars, canteens

.58 School lunchrooms and cafeterias

Including management, service

For school meals, see 371.716

.6 Table service

Including table setting, carving, serving, changing courses

.7 Table furnishings

Including linen, china, silver, crystal; comprehensive works on use, history, making of each

For manufacture of table linens, see 677.6; *of dishes and glassware,* 666; *of silverware,* 739.238 3; *of cutlery,* 683.82

.8 Table decorations

Selection and arrangement of flowers, colors, lights

For floral arrangements, see 635.966 3

643 Home planning

Location and arrangement of home for convenient and economic administration

Including natural lighting

For architecture, see 720; *materials and construction,* 690; *heating and ventilation in the home,* 644; *heating, ventilating, air conditioning engineering,* 697; *artificial lighting,* 644.3; *plumbing and gas fitting,* 696; *furnishing,* 645; *interior decoration,* 747

.3 Kitchens and equipment

Including location, arrangement; comprehensive works on use, manufacture, history of kitchen utensils, kitchen equipment

For cookery with special utensils or fuels, see 641.58; *manufacture of kitchen utensils,* 683.82; *of kitchen equipment,* 683.88

.4 Dining areas

Including pantries, breakfast rooms, bars

643.5 Other special rooms

Including living rooms, bedrooms, bathrooms, sunrooms, laundries, storage rooms

For laundry equipment, see 648.1; *storage of materials,* 648.8

.6 Household appliances

Comprehensive works

Including electric appliances; comprehensive works on laborsaving installations

For a specific appliance, see the use, e.g., vacuum cleaners 648.5; *manufacture of household appliances,* 683.8

.7 Household repair and home improvement

Including remodeling, "how to do it" and "fix it" books, yard or garden improvement

For building construction, see 690; *built-in furniture,* 684.2; *furniture repair,* 645.4

644 Heating, lighting, ventilation, water supply

Description, suitability, choice, operation of systems in households

.1 Heating systems and appliances for household use [*formerly* *697]

Including comprehensive works on equipment

For installation, see 697; *manufacture of equipment,* 683.88

.3 Domestic lighting [*formerly* *621.32]

Including lamps [*formerly also* †665.6], fixtures, fittings, accessories; comprehensive works on use, manufacture, history of each

For electric lighting, see 621.32; *decorative lighting,* 747.92; *manufacture of fixtures, equipment,* 683.8; *natural lighting,* 643

.5 Home ventilation [*formerly* *697]

Including air conditioning for the home

For manufacture of ventilating and air conditioning equipment, see 697.9

.6 Domestic water supply

Including hot-water supply

For water-supply engineering, see 628.1; *plumbing,* 696.1

645 **Home furnishing [*formerly* *747]**

Furnishings from the point of view of the home decorator or housewife

For interior decoration, see 747; *manufacture of home furnishings,* 684

.1 Floor coverings

Including carpets, rugs, linoleum; comprehensive works on use, manufacture, history of each

For manufacture of carpets and rugs, see 677.643; *handmade rugs,* 746.7; *Oriental rugs,* 746.75

.2 Wall coverings

Including wallpaper, paint

For wallpaper design, see 745.54

.3 Window and door furnishings

Including curtains, draperies, shades, blinds, accessories; comprehensive works on use, manufacture, history of each

For manufacture of draperies, hangings, curtains, see 684.3

.4 Furniture and accessories

Including upholstery of furniture, slip covers; comprehensive works on use and manufacture of furniture

For manufacture of furniture, see 684.1; *of slip covers,* 684.3

.6 Furnishings for special rooms

For decoration of specific rooms, see 747.7

.8 Outdoor furnishings

Including garden and patio furnishings; comprehensive works on manufacture, use, history

For manufacture of garden, patio, porch furniture, see 684.18

646 **Management of clothing and personal appearance**

Including clothing for workers [*formerly* †331.836]; comprehensive works on clothing

For social and historic aspects of costume, see 391; *apparel manufacture,* 687; *manufacture of leather and fur garments,* 685.2; *of footwear,* 685.3; *of gloves and mittens,* 685.4; *ethics of personal appearance,* 177.4

.01 Fashions

Including psychology and economics of fashions, home clothing design; comprehensive works on clothing design

For fashion modeling, see 659.152; *commercial clothing design,* 687.1

.09 Climate and clothing

Including seasonal, arctic, tropical clothing

For military uniforms, see 355.14

.1 **Textiles and fibers**

Comprehensive works on materials used by housewife

For manufacture of textiles, see 677

.2 **Sewing [*formerly also* †746.42]**

Including mending, darning, reweaving, machine sewing at home

Class embroidery in 746.44; knitting, crocheting, tatting in 746.43 [*all formerly* *646.2]

For clothing construction, see 646.4; *manufacture of sewing machines,* 681.746 2

[†.26–†.27] Knitting, crocheting, tatting

Class in 746.43

.3 **Clothing selection and buying**

Guides to quality, workmanship

.32 Clothing for men

.34 Clothing for women

.36 Clothing for children

Including layettes, baby clothes

646.4 Clothing construction

Including dressmaking, directions for cutting and fitting, remodeling, patternmaking for various types of clothing and accessories

For commercial garment making, see 687.1

.42 Underwear

.43 Outer house garments

Including dresses, coats, trousers

.45 Outdoor garments

Including overcoats, stoles, sweaters

For millinery, see 646.5

.47 Garments for special purposes

Including lounging garments, sportswear

.48 Accessories

Including neckties, collars, cuffs, belts, aprons, handkerchiefs

.5 Millinery

Hatmaking at home

Including comprehensive works on use, making, history of hats

For commercial millinery, see 687.4

.6 Care of clothing at home

For home laundering, see 648.1

.62 Dry cleaning of clothes

For commercial dry cleaning, see 667.12

.63 Dyeing

For commercial dyeing, see 667.2

.7 Care of personal appearance

Including cleanliness, good grooming, charm, bathing, toilet

For personal hygiene, see 613; *manufacture of accessories for personal grooming,* 688.5

.72 Beauty culture

Including professional hairdressing for women [*formerly* *646.74]; professional treatment of skin, nails [*formerly* *646.75]; cosmetology; administration of beauty shops

For personal care at home, see 646.73; *barbering,* 646.74; *manufacture of cosmetics,* 668.55

646.73 Home care of skin and hair

For professional beauty treatment, see 646.72; *manufacture of cosmetics,* 668.55

.74 Barbering

Including barbers' manuals, tools, materials; hairdressing for men, shaving; administration of barbershops

Class hairdressing for women [*formerly* *646.74] in 646.72

.75 Slenderizing salons

Including massage, steam baths, professional reducing treatments

Class manicure [*formerly* *646.75] in 646.72

For exercise and health, see 613.71; *reducing exercises,* 796.41

647 Household management

Including organization, administration of private and public households

.1 Household expenses

Including budgets, finances, costs, shopping and buying for the home

For food selection and buying, see 641.31; *clothing selection and buying,* 646.3

.2 Household employees

Indoor servants

Selection and training of housekeepers, hostesses, cooks, butlers, maids, waitresses, laundresses, janitors, emergency help

Class outdoor employees [*formerly* *647.2] in 647.3

.3 Outdoor employees [*formerly* *647.2]

Including gardeners, chauffeurs, laborers

.6 Hours and duties

Class wages [*formerly* †647.6] in 331.284 7

.9 Institutional household management

Including cooperative housekeeping [*formerly also* †334.4], collective housekeeping, janitorial duties

For housing of laborers, see 331.833; *housing and health,* 613.5

.92 Apartment house management

647.94 Hotel management

Including inns, taverns, hostels, clubs

For motels, see 647.97

.943–.949 History and local treatment

Including history, description of specific hotels

Divide like 930–999, e.g., Mayflower Hotel, Washington, D.C. 647.947 53

.95 Restaurant management

Including restaurants for laborers [*formerly* †331.835], cafeterias, tea rooms, canteens, soda fountains, bars

For restaurant cookery, see 641.572; *service,* 642.5

.953–.959 History and local treatment

Including history, description of specific restaurants

Divide like 930–999, e.g., restaurants in Washington, D.C. 647.957 53

.96 Household management of other public buildings

Divide like 725, e.g., management of office buildings 647.962 3

.969 8 Religious and ecclesiastical buildings

Divide like 726, e.g., management of monastery buildings 647.969 87

.969 9 Educational and scientific buildings

Including buildings for research, learned societies, community centers

For management of school buildings, see 371.62; *of museum buildings,* 069.2; *of library buildings,* 025.9

.97 Tourist accommodation management

Including tourist and trailer camps, tourist homes, motor courts, motels

For hotels, see 647.94

648 Household sanitation

.1 Home laundering

Including processes, equipment, supplies for washing, drying, ironing [*all formerly* †648.2–†648.4]

For home processes of dry cleaning, see 646.62; *commercial laundering,* 667.13; *manufacture of laundry equipment,* 683.88

[†.2–†.4] Washing, drying, ironing

Class in 648.1

648.5 House cleaning

Including sweeping, dusting, polishing, dishwashing; by hand or with appliances, e.g., vacuum cleaners

For manufacture of household appliances, see 683.8

.7 Household pests

Control and eradication

For insecticides, see 632.951

.8 Storage

Including preparation of materials for storage

For storage rooms, see 643.5

649 Child care and home nursing

.1 Child care and management

Guides for parents on care and training of infants and children

For child psychology, see 136.7; *pediatrics,* 618.92; *sociological aspects of child and the family,* 301.427

.2 Nursery management and routine

.3 Feeding and meals

Including food requirements for children [*formerly* †612.394], food for infants [*formerly* †613.22]

For cookery for infants and children, see 641.562

.4 Clothing, dress, cleanliness

For making of children's clothes, see 646; *manufacture of children's clothing,* 687.13

.5 Recreation and play

Including creative activities in the home, e.g., paper work

.55 Amusements

Including toys, dolls, games in the home

For toy and doll manufacture, see 688.72; *indoor games and amusements,* 793

.6 Manners and habits

.8 Home nursing

Home care of the sick, invalids and infirm

For geriatrics, see 618.97; *pediatrics,* 618.92

650 Business and business methods

For chambers of commerce, see 381; *businessmen's service clubs, e.g., Rotary,* 366

.19 Success in business

Achievement of material success

For success in living, see 174

651 Office management

Including specific types of offices

Class manufacture of business machines [*formerly* *651] in 681.14

For writing, see 652; *shorthand,* 653; *accounting,* 657

.1 Office buildings

Comprehensive works

Including location, layout, lighting, heating, ventilating, air conditioning, sanitary facilities

For architecture of commercial buildings, see 725.2; *heating, ventilating, air conditioning engineering,* 697; *plumbing,* 696; *illumination engineering,* 621.32

.2 Office equipment

Including supplies [*formerly* †651.46], fixtures, furnishings

For stationery supplies, see 651.71

.23 Office furniture

Including comprehensive works on use, manufacture, history

For manufacture of office furniture, see 684.1

.26 Office mechanization and automation

Including electronic data processing in business and industry

For engineering aspects of office equipment, see the subject, e.g., telephony 621.385; *manufacturing details, the subject, e.g., manufacture of adding machines* 681.141; *appliances for a specific operation in offices, the subject, e.g., typewriters* 652.3

.262 Telecommunication equipment

Including telephones, intercom systems, loudspeakers

.263 Voice recording and dictating machines

.264 Calculators, tabulators, statistical machines

For accounting, see 657

.265 Numbering, counting, dating machines

651.3 Office organization and administration

.32 Administrative units

Including management of branch offices; of office departments, divisions, sections

.34 Management of office personnel [*formerly* *658.3]

Including selection; in-service training [*formerly* †651.455], promotion, demotion, termination

.37 Job descriptions of office personnel

Including handbooks, manuals, occupational books

.372 Office managers

.373 Subadministrators

Including department, division, section heads

.374 Other employees

.374 1 Secretaries

.374 2 Bookkeepers

.374 3 Clerical workers

Including typists, stenographers, clerks

.38 Office salary administration [*formerly* *658.32]

Including bonus systems, profit-sharing programs, pay increases, pension systems, fringe benefits

For vacation and sick leave, see 651.42

.4 Office efficiency

For office mechanization and automation, see 651.26

.42 Office attendance [*formerly* *658.381]

Including attendance records, lunch and coffee breaks, overtime, vacation and sick leave

.44 Office rules and regulations

For office attendance, see 651.42

[†.455] In-service training

Class in 651.34

[†.46] Supplies

Class in 651.2

.47 Office inventories

651.5 **Business records management**

Information storage and retrieval systems in business

Including filing, indexing, preservation, destruction of business correspondence, reports, minutes; other special material [*formerly* †*651.6]

.53 Filing systems

Including numerical, alphabetical, chronological, classified arrangements

.54 Active files

.56 Inactive files (Business archives)

[†*.6] **Special material**

Class in 651.5

.7 **Preparation of written business communications**

Including writing, dictating, revising, editing

For records management, see 651.5

.71 Stationery supplies

Including letterheads, memo heads, post cards, envelopes

.74 Style manuals and business linguistics

Divide like 420–499, e.g., business Spanish 651.746

For style manuals for typewriting, see 652.32

.75 Business correspondence

For sales letters, see 658.824; *collection letters,* 658.884

.77 Business minutes

.78 Business reports

652 Writing

For shorthand, see 653; *authorship techniques,* 029.6; *literary composition,* 808

.1 **Penmanship**

Comprehensive works

For handwriting analysis and identification, see 137.7; *in criminal investigation,* 364.122; *paleography,* 417; *manuscripts,* 091; *methods of teaching handwriting in elementary schools,* 372.51

652.3 **Typewriting**

Including comprehensive works on use, manufacture, history of typewriters

Class manufacture of typewriters [*formerly* *652.3] in 681.61

For job descriptions of typists, see 651.374 3

.302 Typewriter manuals

Including description, operation, maintenance, repair of typewriters

Arrange alphabetically by name of typewriter, using A1 for comprehensive works, e.g., Royal typewriters 652.302 R8

.307 6 Speed tests (Timed writing)

.32 Style manuals for typewriting

.322 Letter typewriting

.323 Manuscript typewriting

Including typewriting theses, manuscripts for publication

.324 Tabulation typewriting

.4 **Duplicating methods**

Comprehensive works

Including stencil work

Class manufacture of machines duplicating by offset and by stencils [*both formerly* *652.4] in 681.6

For printing, see 655.1–655.3; *photoduplication,* 778.1; *microphotography,* 778.315

.8 **Cryptography and cryptanalysis**

Comprehensive works

Including business codes and ciphers

For a specific application of cryptography or cryptanalysis, see the subject, e.g., telegraphic codes 621.382 1

653 Shorthand

.1 Principles and theories

Including legibility, brevity, simplicity

For principles and theories of a specific shorthand system, see the system, e.g., principles of Gregg shorthand 653.427

.18 Applications of shorthand

Including personal use, office dictation, shorthand reporting

For job descriptions of stenographers, see 651.374 3; *of secretaries,* 651.374 1

.2 Abbreviation systems

Systems using conventional letters

Including Notehand®, Speedwriting®

.3 Machine shorthand systems and machines

Including Stenotype®, Stenograph®

Class manufacture of shorthand machines [*formerly* *653.3] in 681.61

For dictating and recording machines, see 651.263; *manufacture of shorthand machines,* 681.61

.4 Shorthand systems

Textbooks, theories, techniques, applications

Including all types of pen or pencil shorthand

For abbreviation systems, see 653.2; *machine systems,* 653.3

.41 Multilingual shorthand systems

.42 English language shorthand systems

.421 Early forms of shorthand

Shorthand systems to 1837

For history of shorthand, see 653.09

.422 Shorthand systems essentially nonphonetic

Including alphabetic (based on conventional spelling), syllabic, arbitrary types

---

653.423–653.428 Shorthand systems essentially phonetic

.423 Geometric disjoined vowel systems

For Pitmanic systems, see 653.424

653.424 Pitmanic shorthand systems

Including Isaac Pitman, Benn Pitman, Graham, Munson, many others

.425 Geometric joined vowel systems

Including Pernin, Sloan, Lindsley, Dewey (1922)

For Dewey (1936), see 653.428

.426 Semigeometric, script-geometric, semiscript shorthand systems

Including Malone

For Gregg, see 653.427

.427 Gregg

.428 Script shorthand systems

Including Dewey (1936)

For Dewey (1922), see 653.425; *Gregg,* 653.427

.43–.499 Shorthand systems by language

Divide like 430–499, e.g., German language shorthand systems 653.43

For English language shorthand systems, see 653.42

[†654] Communication

Class in 384

[†.1–†.4] Wire telegraphy

Class in 384.1

[†.5] Submarine cable telegraphy

Class in 384.4

[†.6] Telephonic communication

Class in 384.6

[†.7] Alarm systems

Class in 384.7

[†.8] Pneumatic dispatch

Class in 383.145

[†.9] Other signaling devices

Class in 384.9

655 Printing, publishing, bookbinding

Class manufacture of printing presses [*formerly* *655] in 681.62

For prints and print making, see 760; *book illustration,* 741.64; *value and influence of the book,* 002; *bibliography,* 010; *music printing and publishing,* 781.98

SUMMARY

655.1 History of printing
.2 Type and typography
.3 Printing processes
.4 History of publishing and bookselling
.5 Publishing and bookselling (Book trade)
.6 Copyright
.7 Bookbinding

655.1–655.38 Printing and printing processes

.1 History of printing

.108 87 Printers' marks

.11 Invention of printing

.12 Celebration of printing anniversaries

.14–.19 Printing in specific countries

Including histories and accounts of specific printing establishments [*formerly* *655.4]

Divide like 940–999, e.g., printing in France 655.144

.2 Type and typography

Including composition

.21 Type founding

[†.22] Platemaking

Class in 655.3

.24 Type faces

Design and styles

Including specimen books

For decorative lettering, see 745.6

.25 Hand composition [*formerly* *655.28]

Hand typesetting

Including page design, type distribution

.255 Proofreading

655.258 Style manuals

.27 Imposition and lockup

.28 Machine composition

Machine typesetting

Class manufacture of composing machines in 681.6, hand composition in 655.25 [*both formerly* *655.28]

.282 Linotype® and Monotype® composition

Including Intertype® composition

.283 Typewriter composition

Including Varityper®, teletypesetter composition

.3 Printing processes

Offset, relief, intaglio printing processes

Including platemaking [*formerly* †655.22], presswork; comprehensive works on printing presses, on practical printing

For manufacture of printing presses, see 681.62; *composition,* 655.2

.31 Mechanical printing techniques

For photomechanical printing techniques, see 655.32

.312 Letterpress printing

Printing from metallic type

.314 Plate printing

Printing from stereotypes, electrotypes, autotypes

Including printing commercial books, newspapers, magazines

For printing from machine engravings, see 655.318

.315 Planographic printing

Including commercial lithography

.316 Silk-screen printing

.318 Machine engraving [*formerly* †768] and printing

Including engraving and printing of bank notes, bonds, securities, paper money, postage stamps

.32 Photomechanical printing techniques [*formerly* †774]

Including photogelatin, collotype, photoprint processes

.325 Photolithography [*formerly* †775]

Including photo-offset, offset lithography

655.326 Photometallography [*formerly* †776]

Including photozincography, photoalgraphy, photoaluminography

.327 Photomechanical engraving [*formerly* †777]

Including photoengraving, photoetching, photogravure, photointaglio

.38 Printing for the blind

Including Braille printing

.4 History of publishing and bookselling

Divide like 930–999, e.g., history of publishing and book trades in England 655.442

Class history of the making of books in 002, individual printing establishments in 655.14–655.19, chapbooks in 398.5 [*all formerly* *655.4]

For book trade, see 655.5; *copyright,* 655.6; *history of printing,* 655.1

[*.45] Bookbinding

Class in 655.7

.5 Publishing and bookselling (Book trade)

Including author-publisher relations, e.g., selection of manuscript, price

For newspaper publishing, see 070; *music publishing,* 781.98; *history of publishing and bookselling,* 655.4

.53 Book design

Including format

.54 Cost of manufacture

.56 Retail book trade

.57 Subscription book trade

.58 Direct-mail book trade

Including publishing societies, book clubs

.59 Government and other official publishing

.592 Institutional publishing

Including publishing by universities

655.6 Copyright

Protection of original literary, artistic expression

.62 Copyright of nonbook materials

Including art, maps, motion pictures, music, photographs

Divide like 000–999, e.g., music copyright 655.627 8

.63 International copyright

.64–.69 Copyright in specific countries

Divide like 940–999, e.g., United States copyright 655.673

.7 Bookbinding [*formerly* †686, *655.45]

For binding and repair of books in libraries, see 025.7; *book trade,* 655.5

.72 Hand bookbinding

.73 Commercial bookbinding

Including materials, tools, machinery, techniques

.74 Types of bindings

For rare bindings, see 095

.742 Leather bindings

.743 Cloth bindings

Including imitation leather bindings

.744 Paper bindings

Including cardboard bindings

.76 Book ornamentation

Including tooling, lettering, marbling, gilding

For decorative lettering, see 745.6

[†656] Transportation

Class transportation services in 385–388; mechanical aspects of railroading in 625.27; seamanship in 623.88; sea navigation in 623.89

657 Accounting

Principles, procedures, equipment

For business mathematics, see 511.8; *comprehensive works on office calculators and tabulators,* 651.264

657.2–657.67 Branches of accounting

For a branch of accounting applied to a specific industry or occupation, see 657.8

.2 Bookkeeping (Constructive accounting)

Single and double entry bookkeeping

Including posting, trial balances, adjusting and closing books

For job descriptions of bookkeepers, see 651.374 2

.3 Financial statements

Including adjustment accounts, profit and loss statements, balance sheets, good-will evaluation, depreciation, liquidation, realization

.4 Cost accounting

Systems of ascertaining total cost of a service or finisht product

[*.5] Accounting systems

Class in 657.8

.6 Public accounting (C.P.A. practice)

.62 Installation of accounting systems

.64 Auditing (Analytical accounting)

Including internal and public auditing, detection of frauds and embezzlements in accounts

.67 Tax accounting

.8 Accounting systems in specific industries and occupations [*formerly* *657.5]

Including bookkeeping, financial statements, cost accounting, auditing, tax accounting in specific industries and occupations

If preferred, instead of systematic arrangement in 657.83–657.869, arrange alphabetically by name of industry or occupation, e.g., accounting systems for dentists 657.8 D4

.83 Services

.833 Finance and real estate

657.834 Professional services

For accounting for libraries, see 025.11; *for museums,* 069.6

.835 Government

For government budgeting and accounting, see 351.72, 352.17; *military accounting,* 355.62

.836 Insurance

.838 Public utilities

Including transportation, communication

.839 Wholesale and retail trade

.86 Commodities

.862 Mining industries

.863 Agricultural industries

For farm accounting, see 631.16

.867 Manufacturing industries

Including accounting in motor vehicle engineering [*formerly* †629.213 7]

.869 Construction industries

658 Business and industrial management

Managerial methods, policies, operations

Including comprehensive works on management

For public administration, see 350; *office management,* 651; *accounting,* 657; *advertising,* 659.1; *factory engineering,* 621.7

SUMMARY

658.01 Theories of management
.1 Organization for control
.2 Plant equipment and facilities
.3 Personnel management and administration
.5 Production management
.7 Procurement, storage, shipment
.8 Marketing (Distribution of goods)
.9 Management of specific businesses and industries

.01 Theories of management

Including efficiency

658.1 **Organization for control**

For economic organization, see 338.7–338.8

[†.112] Location

Class in 658.21

.114 Forms of ownership

For intercorporate relationships, see 658.16

.114 1 Individual proprietorships

.114 2 Partnerships

Including limited partnerships [*formerly* †658.114 3]

[†.114 3] Limited partnerships

Class in 658.114 2

.114 4 Stock companies

Unincorporated companies

.114 5 Corporations

.114 6 Trusts

.14 Capitalization

Raising capital funds for establishment and promotion of enterprises thru loans, sale of stocks, bonds, other securities

For credit systems, see 332.7; *capital as wealth,* 339

.15 Financial management

Interpretation and utilization of financial statements for managerial purposes

For preparation of financial statements, see 657.3; *disbursements,* 658.17

.151 Financial managers

Including directors, trustees, receivers

.152 Control of investments

.154 Budgetary control

.155 Profit-and-loss studies

.156 Dividend policies

.157 Savings programs

658.16 Intercorporate relations

Including mergers, consolidations, holding companies, liquidations for control of management

Class internal organization [*formerly* *658.16] in 658.39

For organization to control production, see 338.8; *forms of ownership,* 658.114

.17 Disbursements

.171 Taxation

Effects of taxation on managerial policies, methods, operations

For comprehensive works on corporation taxes, see 336.243

.171 2 Federal taxes

.171 3 State taxes

.171 4 Local taxes

.2 **Plant equipment and facilities**

For design and construction of business and industrial buildings, see 725.2–725.4

.21 Location of plant [*formerly also* †658.112]

Including location in relation to transportation, markets, labor supply

.23 Plant layout

Floor space arrangement for operations, storage; comfort, convenience of employees

Including layout in specific industries and businesses, e.g., automobile industry [*formerly* †629.234 2, *629.23]

.24 Lighting equipment

For illumination engineering, see 621.32

.25 Heating, ventilating, air conditioning

For heating, ventilating, air conditioning engineering, see 697

.28 Safety equipment

For fire prevention and protection, see 614.84

[†.281] Materials handling

Class in 658.512

658.3 Personnel management and administration [*formerly also* †331.14]

Including personnel management and administration in specific industries and businesses, e.g., automobile industry [*formerly* †629.234 3]; comprehensive works on management and administration of office and factory workers

Class management of office personnel [*formerly* *658.3] in 651.34

.31 Employment practices

.311 Selection of personnel [*formerly also* †331.115]

Including recruiting, interviewing, testing, placing prospective employees

Class employment agencies [*formerly* *658.311] in 331.115

For labor market, see 331.112; *discrimination in employment,* 331.113

.312 In-service management of personnel [*formerly also* †331.123–†331.125]

Including performance ratings, promotions, transfers, demotions

For merit ratings, see 658.322 6; *in-service training,* 658.386; *termination of service,* 658.313

.312 4 Foremanship and supervision

For training foremen, see 658.386

.313 Termination of service

Including discharge, administrative leave, retirement, terminal interviews

For pension systems, see 658.325

.314 Employee morale

Including incentives [*formerly* *658.32], suggestion systems [*formerly* *658.315], privileges

For merit ratings, see 658.322 6

.315 Employer-employee relationships

Class suggestion systems [*formerly* *658.315] in 658.314

For labor-management conciliation, see 331.15

.315 2 Employee representation in management [*formerly also* †331.152]

For labor-management committees, see 331.152

.315 5 Management of employee grievances

Including grievance procedures

658.32 Wage and salary administration

Class job analysis in 658.511, incentives in 658.314, office salary administration in 651.38 [*all formerly* *658.32]

For wages and earnings, see 331.2

.321 Payroll administration

Including methods, procedures

.322 Compensation plans

.322 2 Job evaluation

Including job classification in terms of compensation

For job analysis, see 658.511

.322 5 Bonus systems

.322 6 Merit ratings

For incentives, see 658.314; *performance ratings,* 658.312

.324 Profit sharing [*formerly also* †331.24]

.325 Pensions

Including administration of retirement and disablement compensation

For industrial pension systems, see 331.252

.38 Conditions of employment

For industrial sociology, see 331.8

.381 Work schedules

Including hours, vacations, leave policies, absenteeism

Class office attendance [*formerly* *658.381] in 651.42

.382 Employee welfare

Including health and safety programs, counseling services

.386 In-service training

Including job instructions, training executives and foremen

For foremanship and supervision, see 658.312 4

.39 Internal organization [*formerly* *658.16]

Including military, line-and-staff, functional systems of intercommunication

.5 Production management

For production economics, see 338.6–338.8

[.507 2] Production research and development

Class in 658.57

658.51 Production programing

Scheduling the order of procedures, operations, tasks

.511 Job analysis [*formerly* *658.32]

Including output analysis

For job evaluation, see 658.322 2

.512 Routing procedures

Including materials handling [*formerly also* †658.281]

.516 Internal standardization

Including standardization of equipment, procedures, products

For standardization of weights and measures, see 389.16; *of a specific product, the product, e.g., gasolines* 665.538 2

.53 Production charts

Including time and performance records

.54 Methods analysis (Operation studies)

Work factors in relation to production

Including analysis of flow charts and layouts

For production charts, see 658.53

.542 Time and motion studies

.544 Fatigue and monotony studies

.56 Production controls

.561 Production methods

Including mass-production methods, automation in production

For automatic control engineering, see 629.8; *production programing,* 658.51; *economic aspects of automation in industry,* 338.45

.561 2 Continuous-process methods

.561 4 Assembly-line methods

.561 5 Job-lot methods

.562 Quality control

Including statistical methods, inspection and sampling techniques

658.564 Unit packaging

For package research, see 658.83; *packaging in advertising,* 659.12

.567 Control of industrial waste

Including comprehensive works on salvage and utilization of wastes

For salvage and utilization of a specific waste product, see the product, e.g., scrap metal 671.9

.57 Production research and development

For products research, see 607.2

.58 Equipment maintenance

Including maintenance and repair of tools, machines, accessory equipment

.7 Procurement, storage, shipment

Organization, administration, procedures

.72 Purchasing methods

Buying from manufacturers and middlemen thru bids and contracts

Including acquisition of raw materials

For government purchasing, see 351.712, 352.16; *wholesale marketing,* 658.86; *military purchasing,* 355.8

.77 Receipt of goods

Including checking, inspection, invoicing

.78 Storage and material control

Including storage and material control in specific industries and businesses, e.g., in automobile industry [*formerly* †629.234 8]

.785 Warehousing

Including bonded and customs warehouses, storage methods and appliances

.787 Stock inventory

.788 Shipment of goods

Operations of shipping departments

Including traffic management in business and industrial organizations

For transportation services, see 385–388

.788 4 Packing for shipment

658.8 **Marketing (Distribution of goods)**

Comprehensive works on sales promotion, advertising, selling

For advertising, see 659.1; *shopping and buying for the home,* 647.1; *marketing cooperatives,* 334.6; *securities exchanges,* 332.61; *marketing specific goods and services,* 338.1–338.4

.801 Sales psychology [*formerly* *658.85]

.807 Study and teaching of marketing

Class training of salesmen [*formerly* †658.807] in 658.85

[†.807 2] Market research and analysis

Class in 658.83

[†.808] Sales analysis

Class in 658.817

.81 Sales planning

Including organization and administration of sales departments

For sales promotion, see 658.82

.812 Sales policies

Including long-run and short-run plans, sales quotas

.817 Sales records and analysis [*formerly* †658.808]

.818 Sales budgets

Estimates of probable sales and probable expenses of selling

Including sales forecasting, cost estimates

.82 Sales promotion

Activities coordinating advertising and personal selling for increasing sales, e.g., displays [*formerly* †658.841, *658.84], shows and exhibitions [*formerly* †658.845, *658.84]; demonstrations, other special sales events

For advertising, see 659.1; *salesmanship,* 658.85

.824 Sales letters

.83 Market research and analysis [*formerly* †380.122, †658.807 2]

Consumer, motivation, distribution, medium, product, package research

Including market surveys, area analysis, questionnaire techniques

Class methods of marketing [*formerly* †658.83] in 658.84

For sales analysis, see 658.817; *packaging in advertising,* 659.12; *unit packaging,* 658.564

658.839 Market research and analysis by country

Divide like 940–999, e.g., market research and analysis in England 658.839 42

.84 Marketing channels [*formerly* †380.12]

Comprehensive works on marketing methods [*formerly* †658.83]

Including markets, fairs, auctions

Class displays, exhibitions in 658.82; commercial travelers in 658.855 2; canvassing in 658.855 3; peddling in 658.855 4 [*all formerly* *658.84]

For wholesale marketing, see 658.86; *retail marketing,* 658.87

[†.841] Displays

Class in 658.82

[†.843] Peddling

Class in 658.855 4

[†.845] Exhibitions

Class in 658.82

[†.846] Commercial travelers

Class in 658.855 2

[†.847] Canvassing

Class in 658.855 3

.85 Salesmen and salesmanship (Personal selling)

Including training of salesmen [*formerly* †658.807]

Class sales psychology [*formerly* *658.85] in 658.801

For salesmanship in specific businesses, see 658.89

[*.851] Salesmanship in specific businesses

Class in 658.89

.852 House salesmen

Selling in manufacturing plants, warehouses, stores

For retail marketing, see 658.87

.853 Selling by telephone

658.855 Route selling

.855 2 Field salesmen (Commercial travelers [*formerly* †658.846, *658.84])

Selling to middlemen, industrial and institutional users

For wholesale marketing, see 658.86

.855 3 Canvassers and canvassing [*formerly* †658.847, *658.84]

House-to-house selling with samples

.855 4 Peddlers and peddling [*formerly* †658.843, *658.84]

.86 Wholesale marketing

Selling for resale and for use in business, institutional, industrial operations

Including functions, operations, services of merchant middlemen, jobbers, agent middlemen, e.g., commission merchants, brokers, selling agents, manufacturers' agents, auction companies

.87 Retail marketing

Selling to ultimate consumers

Including limited-price variety stores, specialty stores, cash-carry and self-service stores

For personal salesmanship, see 658.85; *consumer cooperatives,* 334.5; *point-of-sale advertising,* 659.157

.871 Department stores

.872 Mail-order houses

.873 Chain-store systems

Including corporate and voluntary chain stores

.874 Independent retail stores

.877 Branch stores

.878 Supermarkets

.88 Credit and collections

Including credit bureaus

For credit and loan institutions, see 332.3

.882 Mercantile credit

Credit for purchases extended by manufacturers to wholesalers, retailers, other manufacturers, and by wholesalers to retailers

For commercial credit, see 332.742

658.883 Consumer credit (Retail credit)

Credit for purchases extended to ultimate consumers by retailers

Including charge accounts, revolving accounts, installment plans, other deferred payment plans

.884 Collection methods

Including garnisheeing procedures, collection letters

.89 Salesmanship in specific businesses [*formerly* *658.851]

Divide like 000–999, e.g., selling automobiles [*formerly* †629.213 8] 658.896 292

If preferred, arrange alphabetically by name of business, e.g., selling automobiles 658.89 A9

For comprehensive works on salesmen and salesmanship, see 658.85

.9 Management of specific businesses and industries

Including management of small businesses

If preferred, instead of systematic arrangement in 659.91–659.998, arrange alphabetically by name of business or industry, e.g., management of photographic studio 658.9 P5

.91 Service, financial, and professional businesses

Including businesses not provided for in 658.92–658.998

Divide like 000–999, e.g., management of photographic studio 658.917 7

For business management of newspapers and periodicals, see 070.3

.92–.998 Specific industries

Divide like 620–698, e.g., management of petroleum refining company 658.965 5; of forestry [*formerly* *639.928] 658.934 9; of dairy farms [*formerly* *637.11] 658.937 1

For management of farms, see 631.1; *of other businesses,* 658.91

659 Other topics in business

.1 Advertising

.101 Theoretical aspects of advertising

.101 15 Psychology of advertising

For color in advertising, see 659.132 5

[.107 2] Advertising research

Class in 659.112 7

.11 Organization and administration

.111 Publicity and public relations

Including policies, methods, service to consumers

For comprehensive works on public opinion and propaganda, see 301.154

.112 Advertising agencies and departments

.112 7 Advertising research

Comprehensive works

Including copy research, mediums research

For market research and analysis, see 658.83

.113 Advertising campaigns

Including planning, procedures, analysis of results

.118 Fraudulent advertising

For ethics in advertising, see 659.106 9

.12 Packaging and labeling

Use of trade-marks, trade names, slogans on containers, wrappings, labels as a means of advertising

Including informative labeling

For package research, see 658.83

.13 Advertising mediums and techniques

For packaging and labeling, see 659.12

.132 Newspaper and magazine advertising

Including classified advertisements (want ads); coupon advertisements, testimonial and descriptive advertisements

.132 2 Copy writing

659.132 3 Art in newspaper and magazine advertising

For designing and drawing magazine and newspaper illustration, see 741.65

.132 4 Advertising layout and typography

.132 5 Color in advertising

.133 Direct-mail advertising

Comprehensive works on preparation and distribution of circulars, letters, prospectuses, mail-order catalogs, broadsides

Including mailing lists

Class blotters, calendars [*both formerly* *659.133] in 659.137

For sales letters, see 658.824

.134 Outdoor and transportation advertising

Including billboards, signs, car cards and posters; moving signs [*formerly* †659.135]

For designing and drawing posters, see 741.67

[†.135] Moving signs

Class in 659.134

.136 Spectaculars in advertising

Electric signs, neon signs, signs with moving colored lights

.137 Advertising on novelties

Including advertisements on blotters, calendars [*both formerly* *659.133], match covers, post cards, programs, toys

.138 Entertainment publicity

Including use of stunts and recreational mediums for advertising purposes

For broadcast advertising, see 659.14

.138 2 Skywriting

.138 8 Motion-picture advertising [*formerly* *659.14]

For motion-picture entertainment, see 791.43

659.14 Broadcast advertising

Including paid announcements, sponsored programs, quiz programs; comprehensive works on audio-visual advertising

Class motion-picture advertising [*formerly* *659.14] in 659.138 8

.142 Radio advertising

For radio entertainment, see 791.44

.143 Television advertising

For television entertainment, see 791.45

.15 Display advertising

Persuasion thru examination of product and observing manipulation and operation of product

.152 Exhibits and shows

Including fashion modeling [*formerly* *687]

.153 Demonstrations

Including home demonstrations

.157 Point-of-sale advertising

Including window, showcase, counter displays

.16 Premiums and trading stamps in advertising

.17 Contests and lotteries in advertising

For quiz programs, see 659.14; *solving puzzles,* 793.73

660–680 Manufactures

Including catalogs, directories, histories, process reports of manufacturing companies; manufactures based on plant, animal, mineral materials [*formerly* †679.1–†679.2]

For comprehensive works on manufactures, see 670; *on manufacture, use, history of a specific product, the product, e.g., chinaware* 642.7; *comprehensive reports of manufacturing companies,* 338.4

660 Chemical technology (Industrial chemistry)

Including chemical technology of specific elements or groups of elements [*formerly* †661.1]

.28 Chemical engineering

Design, construction, operation of chemical plants

Class industrial stoichiometry, chemical engineering calculations [*both formerly* *660.28] in 660.76

For industrial electrochemistry, see 660.297

.280 72 Pilot plants

Tests of new processes on a moderately large scale

.282 Chemurgy

Industrial utilization of organic raw materials, especially from farm products

Including chemical utilization of wood [*formerly* *668.7]

For materials limited to a specific chemical industry, see the industry, e.g., production of polyvinyl alcohol products 668.423

.283 Equipment

Instruments, apparatus, machinery applicable to several chemical industries

Including autoclaves, columns, towers, mixing machines

For equipment limited to a specific chemical industry, see the industry, e.g., gas compressors 665.74; *to a specific process, the process, e.g., packt towers* 660.284 23

660.284 Industrial processes

For processes used for the production of a specific chemical product, see the product, e.g., hydrogenated fats and oils 664.33

.284 2 Unit physical operations

Including mass transfer

.284 22 Crushing, grinding, mechanical separation

Including screening

.284 23 Absorption and adsorption

Including packt towers

.284 24 Precipitation, filtration, extraction

Including sedimentation

.284 25 Fractional distillation

.284 26 Drying and evaporation

Including freeze-drying, heating, cooling

.284 27 Heat transfer

Including heat exchangers

.284 29 Other unit operations

Including fluid flow, humidification, dehumidification

.284 4 Unit chemical processes

Divide like 547.2, e.g., industrial hydrogenation 660.284 43

.29 Industrial physical chemistry

Divide like 541.3, e.g., industrial electrochemistry 660.297

For electrometallurgy, see 669.028 4

.76 Industrial stoichiometry [*formerly* *660.28]

Including chemical engineering calculations; chemical problems and questions

661 Industrial chemicals (Heavy chemicals)

Large-scale production of chemicals used as raw materials or reagents in the manufacture of other products

For coal and coal tar chemicals, see 668.7

661.1–661.6 Inorganic chemicals

661.1 Elements

Comprehensive works

Class chemical technology of a specific element or group of elements [*formerly* †661.1] with the subject in 660–669, e.g., of nitrogen 665.824, of metals 669

.2 Industrial acids

Class industrial alkalies in 661.3; industrial salts in 661.4; sulfates in 661.6; nitrates and nitrites in 661.65; cyanides in 661.7 [*all formerly* *661.2]

For industrial organic acids, see 661.86

.22 Sulfuric acid

.23 Hydrochloric (Muriatic) acid

.24 Nitric acid

.25 Phosphoric acids

Including meta-, pyro- and ortho-phosphoric acids only

.29 Other industrial acids

Including hydrofluoric acid

.3 Industrial alkalies [*formerly* *661.2]

.32 Soda

.322 Caustic soda (Sodium hydroxide)

.323 Sodium bicarbonate

For sodium bicarbonate used as a baking aid (baking soda), see 664.6; *as a medicinal,* 615.2

.324 Sodium carbonate

.33 Potash

.332 Caustic potash (Potassium hydroxide)

.334 Potassium carbonate

.34 Ammonia [*formerly* *661.9]

Including ammonium hydroxide [*formerly* *661.2]

For ammonium salts, see 661.5

.4 Industrial salts [*formerly* *661.2]

.42 Chlorides and fluorides

For food salts, see 664.4

661.43 Phosphates and silicates

For phosphate fertilizers, see 668.62; *water glass,* 666.159

.5 Ammonium salts

For ammonium fertilizers, see 668.62

.6 Sulfates and sulfites [*formerly* *661.2]

.65 Nitrates and nitrites [*formerly* *661.2]

For nitrate fertilizers, see 668.62

.7 Cyanides (Nitriles) [*formerly* *661.2]

.8 Organic chemicals

Comprehensive works

Including organic solvents

For cyanides, see 661.7; *cyclic organic chemicals,* 668.7

.82 Industrial alcohols

Including denatured, ethyl, methyl (wood), isopropyl alcohols

For fuel alcohols produced from waste products, see 662.669

.83 Industrial esters (Essential oils)

Including ethyl acetate, amyl acetate (banana oil), ethyl butyrate, methyl salicylate (oil of wintergreen), other volatile oils

For essential oils used in perfumes, see 668.54; *wood oils,* 665.33

.84 Industrial ethers (Essential ethers)

Including methyl, ethyl, vinyl, allyl ethers

For essential ethers used in perfumes, see 668.54

.85 Industrial aldehydes and ketones

Including formaldehyde, acetaldehyde, valeraldehyde, acetone, cyclobutanone

.86 Industrial organic acids

Including acetic, formic, oxalic, propionic, tartaric, fumaric acids

.89 Other organic chemicals

Including industrial amines, amides

[*.9] Comprest and liquefied industrial gases

Class compression and liquefaction of gases in 665.8 and its subdivisions; ammonia in 661.34

662 Explosives, fuels, and related products

.1 Fireworks (Pyrotechnics)

.2 Explosives

Manufacture, storage, handling

Including comprehensive works on uses

For a specific use of explosives, see the subject, e.g., blasting operations in mining 622.23

[*.26] Propellants, burning and deflagratory explosives

Class in 662.3

.27 High explosives

Nitroglycerin, dynamite, nitroguanidine, TNT (trinitrotoluene), ammonium picrate and chlorate, PETN (pentaerythrite tetranitrate), RDX (cyclonite, hexagen), tetryl, HMTD (hexamethylene-triperoxidediamine)

Including primary explosives, e.g., mercury fulminate, lead azide and picrate, diazonitrophenol

[*.28] Blasting caps, detonators, primers, fuses

Class in 662.4

.3 Low explosives (Propellants) [*formerly* *662.26]

Burning and deflagratory explosives

Including black powder (gunpowder), smokeless powder, nitrocellulose (guncotton), cordite, flashless and coated powders

For rocket propellants, see 662.666

.4 Detonators [*formerly* *662.28]

Including blasting caps, primers, fuses

.5 Matches

.6 Fuel technology

Class natural gas [*formerly* †662.6] in 665.7

For petroleum technology, see 665.5; *gaseous fuels,* 665.7; *coke,* 662.72; *charcoal,* 662.74

662.62–662.65 Solid fuels

.62 Coal technology

Including peat, lignites [*both formerly* *662.65]

For coal deposits, see 553.2; *coal mining,* 622.33; *industrial carbons other than fuel,* 662.9

662.622 Analysis and testing of coal

Tests of physical properties (hardness, elastic limit) and chemical constitution of coal

Including carbonizing properties, petrographic studies of coal

Divide like 553.21–553.25, e.g., friability of anthracite coal 662.622 5

.622 9 Analysis and testing of coal of specific areas

Divide like 940–999, e.g., analysis of Ohio coal 662.622 977 1

.623 Mechanical treatment of coal

Materials, processes, equipment used in washing [*formerly* †622.78], coloring, drying, grinding, sizing coal

.624 Storage and transportation of coal

.625 Uses of coal

Comprehensive works only

Class carbonization of coal in 662.72; hydrogenation and liquefaction of coal in 662.662 2 [*both formerly* *662.625]

For a specific use of coal, see the subject, e.g., domestic heating 644.1

[*.627] Coal tar

Class in 668.7

[*.628] Coal and coal tar chemicals

Class coal and coal tar chemicals in 668.7; benzene, toluene, naphthalene in 668.72; wood preserving oils in 668.73; naphthas in 665.538 2

[*.64] Coke

Class in 662.72

.65 Other solid fuels

Including bagasse, briquettes, wood, sawdust as fuels

Class charcoal in 662.74; lignites and peat in 662.62; petroleum coke in 665.538 8; gashouse coke in 662.72 [*all formerly* *662.65]

For solid rocket fuels, see 662.666

662.66 Synthetic liquid fuels

Including liquid fuels produced from coal, gas, wood, farm produce, waste products

.662 Synthetic petroleum

For petroleum, see 665.5

.662 2 Bergius process

Production of synthetic gasoline and other synthetic petroleum products thru hydrogenation and liquefaction of coal [*formerly* *662.625]

.662 3 Fischer-Tropsch process

Production of synthetic gasoline and other synthetic petroleum products thru hydrogenation of natural gas, coal gas, or other fuel gases

.666 Rocket fuels

Including liquid and solid rocket fuels (rocket propellants)

.669 Other synthetic liquid fuels

Including production of fuel alcohols and benzene from waste products

[*.67] Gaseous fuels

Class in 665.7

.7 Residual products of carbonization

For a volatile product of carbonization, see the product, e.g., benzene 668.72

.72 Carbonization of coal [*formerly* *662.65]

Including coke [*formerly* *662.64], gashouse coke [*formerly* *662.65]

For coal tar, see 668.7; *coal gases,* 665.772; *petroleum coke,* 665.538 8

.74 Carbonization of wood

Destructive distillation of wood [*formerly also* †*668.7]

Including charcoal [*formerly* *662.65]

For methyl (wood) alcohol, see 661.82; *adsorbent charcoals,* 662.93

.8 Other fuels

Including colloidal fuels, mud fuels, synthetic fuels not otherwise provided for

662.9 **Non-fuel carbons**

.92 Graphite and graphite products

.93 Adsorbent carbons

Including activated carbons, animal black, bone char, carbon black, adsorbent charcoals, decolorizing carbons, lampblack

For a specific use of adsorbent carbons, see the industry, e.g., carbon black in rubber manufacture 678.23

663 Beverages

Manufacture, processing, bottling

Including materials, machinery, testing

For inspection of beverages, see 614.34; *chemical analysis,* 543.1; *home preparation,* 641.87

.1 **Alcoholic beverages**

663.2–663.4 Fermented alcoholic beverages

For distilled liquors, see 663.5

.2 Wine and wine making

Including raw materials, crushing, stemming, pressing, fermentation, racking, aging, refrigeration, flash pasteurization, bottling

.22 Grape wines

Including fortified grape wines

.222 White wines

Including sherry, muscatel, angelica, sauterne

.223 Red wines

Including port, burgundy, claret

.224 Sparkling wines

Including champagne, sparkling burgundy

.29 Other wines

Including hard cider, perry, blossom wines, other fruit wines

.3 Malting and brewing [*formerly* *663.4]

Including raw materials, fermentation, aging, finishing, bottling

663.4 Beer

Including ale, porter, stout

Class brewing [*formerly* *663.4] in 663.3

.49 Other brewed beverages

Including sake, pulque

.5 Distilled liquors

Including distillation, rectification, aging, bottling

For mixt alcoholic beverages, see 663.8

.52 Whiskies

Liquors made by distilling fermented grain mash

Including bourbon, Scotch, vodka

.53 Brandies

Liquors made by distilling fermented fruit mash

Including cognac, armagnac, applejack, kirsch, slivovitz, other fruit brandies

.55 Compound liquors

Distilled spirits flavored with various seeds, roots, leaves, flowers, or fruits, e.g., gin, cordials (liqueurs)

Including curaçao, kümmel, absinthe

.59 Other liquors

Including mescal, potato whisky

.6 **Nonalcoholic beverages**

Manufacture, processing, bottling, canning

For chocolate, cocoa, tea, coffee, see 663.9; *milk production,* 637.12

.62 Carbonated beverages

.63 Fruit and vegetable juices

For freezing fruit and vegetable juices, see 664.85

.8 **Mixt alcoholic drinks**

Bartenders' manuals and recipes

Including cocktails, highballs, eggnogs, spiked punches

663.9 **Chocolate, cocoa, tea and coffee manufacture**

Processing, packaging

.92 Chocolate and cocoa manufacture

For use of chocolate and cocoa in another industry, see the industry, e.g., candies and confectionery 664.15

.93 Coffee processing

Roasting, blending, grinding, packaging coffee

Including manufacture of instant coffee

.94 Tea processing

Fermenting, oxidizing, curing, firing, blending, packaging tea

Including manufacture of instant tea

.96 Herb teas

Including catnip, maté, sassafras teas

.97 Cereal beverages

664 Food technology

Commercial manufacture and preparation of foods

Including processes, equipment, practical testing

For beverages, see 663; *home preparation of food,* 641; *agricultural production of foods,* 630; *economic aspects of food manufacture and processing,* 338.476 64; *chemical analysis of food,* 543.1; *food adulteration and inspection,* 614.3

SUMMARY

664.1	**Sugar manufacture and refining**
.2	**Stiffening and jellying agents**
.3	**Shortenings**
.4	**Food salts**
.5	**Flavoring aids**
.6	**Leavening agents and baking aids**
.7	**Grain processing**
.8	**Commercial preservation of food**
.9	**Meat packing and allied industries**

.1 **Sugar manufacture and refining**

Class pectins [*formerly* †664.1] in 664.25

.12 Cane and beet sugars and syrups

.122 Cane sugar

Including molasses

664.123 Beet sugar

.13 Other sugars and syrups

For milk sugar, see 637.14; *honey production,* 638.16

.132 Maple sugar and syrup

.133 Corn and sorghum syrups

.139 Minor sugar sources

Including syrup from Jerusalem artichokes

.15 Candies and confectionery

Class ice-cream industry [*formerly* †*664.15] in 637.4

For candymaking at home, see 641.85

.19 Industrial utilization of sugar by-products

Comprehensive works only

Class a specific use of sugar by-products with the subject, e.g., fodder 636.085

.2 **Stiffening and jellying agents**

.22 Starch manufacture and refining

Including cornstarch, potato starch, cornstarch mixes

For starch pastes, see 668.33; *use of starch in a specific industry, the industry, e.g., in commercial laundering* 667.13

.23 Cassava products

Including tapioca, arrowroot

.24 Other starches

Including sago and taro products

.25 Pectins [*formerly* †664.1]

Including liquid and powdered pectins

For jelly and jam making, see 664.83

.26 Edible gelatins

Including vegetable gelatins, e.g., agar-agar; gelatin dessert mixes

.3 **Shortenings**

Class salad oils [*formerly* †*664.3] in 665.32

For other edible fats and oils, see 665.2–665.3; *butter manufacture,* 637.23

.32 Oleomargarines [*formerly also* †637.28]

664.33 Hydrogenated fats and oils

Including Crisco®, Spry®

For oleomargarines, see 664.32

.34 Lard

.4 Food salts

Including table salt, monosodium glutamate, sodium-free salts

For brining fruits and vegetables, see 664.86; *brining meats,* 664.926

.5 Flavoring aids

Including spices, condiments, herbs, flavoring essences and extracts, vinegar

For food salts, see 664.4; *commercial preservation of food,* 664.8

.6 Leavening agents and baking aids

Including baking powder, baking soda, cream of tartar, yeast

.7 Grain processing [*formerly* †679.131 and its subdivisions]

.72 Flour milling

.722 Wheat flour

.725 Milling other grains

Including production of corn meal, oatmeal, rye flour, rice flour, buckwheat flour

.729 Prepared cereal processing

Including wheat meal, ready-to-eat cereals

.75 Flour products

For prepared cereal processing, see 664.729

.752 Bakery products

Including commercial production of breads, cakes, cookies, crackers

For baking at home, see 641.631

.753 Cake and pancake mixes

.755 Macaroni products

Including noodles, spaghetti, vermicelli

664.8 Commercial preservation of food

Class meat processing and preservation in 664.92; seafood processing and preservation in 664.94 [*both formerly* *664.8]

For home preservation of food, see 641.4

.802 8 Processing and preservation techniques

.802 82 Canning

.802 84 Drying and dehydrating

.802 85 Freezing

.802 86 Brining, pickling, curing

Including smoking

.802 87 Chemical preservation

Including use of ascorbic acid, propionic acid and its salts, ethylene gas, glycerol, sorbitol, benzoates

For brining, pickling, curing, see 664.802 86

.802 88 Preservation by electromagnetic radiations

Including sterilization of food by radio-frequency heating, ultraviolet light treatment

.82–.88 Processing and preservation of fruits and vegetables

Divide like 664.802 8, e.g., freezing fruits and vegetables 664.85

For fruit and vegetable juices, see 663.63

.83 Jelly and jam making

Including commercial production of preserves, marmalades

.9 Meat packing and allied industries

.902 8 Slaughtering techniques

.902 9 Slaughterhouses

.92 Meat processing and preservation [*formerly also* *664.8]

Divide like 664.802 8, e.g., canning meat 664.922

For poultry processing and preservation, see 664.93

.93 Poultry processing and preservation

Including poultry dressing

Divide like 664.802 8, e.g., frozen chicken 664.935

.94 Sea food processing and preservation [*formerly also* *664.8]

Including fish and shellfish

Divide like 664.802 8, e.g., smokt fish 664.946

665 Oils, fats, waxes

Including fixt oils, lubricants

For essential oils (volatile oils), see 661.83

.1 Wax technology

Manufacturing, extracting, processing, purifying, practical tests

For mineral waxes, see 665.4; *paraffinic waxes derived from petroleum,* 665.538 5

.12 Vegetable waxes

Including carnauba, candelilla (grass wax), laurel, myrtle, candleberry, bayberry waxes

.13 Animal waxes

Including spermaceti, lanolin (wool wax), insect waxes

For beeswax, see 638.17; *sperm oil,* 665.2

.19 Blended waxes

Including wax for candles, torches

For polishes, see 667.72

.2 Animal fats and oils

Rendering, refining, bleaching, fractionating, purifying, practical tests

Including tallow, fish oils, sperm oil, neat's-foot oil

For butter manufacture, see 637.23; *lard,* 664.34

.3 Vegetable fats and oils

Extracting, refining, bleaching, fractionating, purifying, practical tests

.32 Salad and cooking oils [*formerly also* †*664.3]

For hydrogenated fats and oils, see 664.33

.322 Olive oil

.323 Cottonseed oil

.329 Other salad and cooking oils

Including corn, soybean, peanut, sesame oils

.33 Wood oils

.332 Turpentine

Including rosin oil, wood and gum turpentines

For pine tar, see 668.47; *paint diluents,* 667.624; *recovery of turpentine from pulping processes,* 676.5

665.333 Tung oil (Chinese wood oil)

For use of tung oil as a paint drier, see 667.622

.35 Other industrial fats and oils

.352 Linseed oil (Flaxseed oil)

For use of linseed oil as a paint oil, see 667.622

.353 Castor oil

For use of castor oil as a paint drier, see 667.622

.354 Cacao butter (Cocoa butter)

.355 Coconut oil

.4 Mineral oils and waxes other than petroleum

Including naturally occurring paraffin, ozocerite, asphalt, shale oils

For paraffinic waxes derived from petroleum, see 665.538 5; *asphalts derived from petroleum,* 665.538 8

.5 Petroleum technology

Including comprehensive works on petroleum and natural gas technology

For petroleum geology, see 553.282; *extraction of petroleum,* 622.338 2; *synthetic petroleum,* 662.662; *natural gas technology,* 665.7

[*.52] Properties, tests, testing methods

Class in 665.538

.53 Refinery treatment of petroleum

.532 Fractional distillation of petroleum

.533 Cracking processes

Thermal and catalytic cracking, hydrogenation of residual petroleum distillates

.534 Purification and blending

Including chemical treatment of petroleum distillates

665.538 Direct petroleum products and by-products

Including properties, tests, testing methods [*all formerly* *665.52]; specifications, additives

For a specific petroleum derivative, see the subject, e.g., explosives 662.2; *gases produced from petroleum,* 665.773; *crude organic chemicals derived from petroleum,* 668.7

.538 2 Naphthas [*formerly also* *662.628] and gasolines

.538 25 Aviation gasolines

High-octane-rating gasolines

.538 27 Gasolines for land vehicles

For diesel fuels, see 665.538 4

.538 3 Kerosenes

.538 4 Heavy fuel oils

Including gas oil, absorber oil, diesel fuels, fuel oils for heating

.538 5 Lubricating oils and greases

Including petrolatums, paraffinic waxes

For naturally occurring paraffins, see 665.4; *a specific use of lubricants, the subject, e.g., lubrication of machinery* 621.89

.538 8 Residues (Bottoms)

Including bunker oils, asphalts, road oils; petroleum coke [*formerly* *662.65], petroleum pitch

For naturally occurring asphalts, see 665.4; *carbonization of coal,* 662.72

.54 Storage and distribution of petroleums

Including transportation, pumping systems, meters, pipelines

.55 Uses of petroleum and petroleum by-products

Comprehensive works only

For a specific use, see the subject, e.g., synthetic rubber 678.72

[†.6] Lamps

Class in 644.3

665.7 Natural [*formerly also* †662.6] and manufactured gas technology

Including gaseous fuels [*formerly* *662.67] and illuminants

For helium, see 665.822; *acetylene,* 665.85

.73 Processing natural gas and methane gas

Drying, purification, fractionation, compression, oil absorption, conversion of crude natural gas

Class bottling [*formerly* *665.73] in 665.74

For organic chemicals derived from distillation of natural gas, see 668.7

.74 Storage, transportation, distribution of natural and manufactured gases

Including bottling [*formerly* *665.73], gas gathering lines, pipelines, pumping systems, compressors, meters, mains, other containers for natural and manufactured gas in gaseous and liquid forms

.75 Uses of gas

Comprehensive works only

For a specific use, see the subject, e.g., cooking by gas 641.584

.77 Production of manufactured gas

.772 Gases produced from coal and coke

Including coal gas, producer gas, water gas, carbureted blue gas, blast furnace gas, city gas, coke oven gas, carbon monoxide

.773 Gases produced from petroleum and natural gas

Including oil gas; refinery gas; reformed refinery gas; reformed natural gas; crackt gas; liquefied hydrocarbon gases, e.g., butane, propane, pentane, butene and their mixtures

.779 Other synthetic gases

Gases composed of mixtures of fuel gases from several sources

Including oxyhydrogen mixtures for calcium lights

For acetylene, see 665.85

665.8 **Other industrial gases [*formerly* *661.9]**

Manufacture, compression, liquefaction, solidification, transportation, storage in cylinders and other containers

For gaseous fuels and illuminants, see 665.7; *ammonia,* 661.34; *acetylene,* 665.85

.81 Hydrogen

.82 Liquefaction and fractionation of air

Including Claude process of liquefaction

.822 Rare gases

Helium, argon, neon, xenon, krypton

Including extraction of helium from natural gases

.823 Oxygen

.824 Nitrogen

.825 Carbon dioxide

Including carbon dioxide generators, dry ice (solid carbon dioxide)

For use of dry ice in refrigeration, see 621.564

.83 Industrial halogen gases

Including chlorine, fluorine

.84 Sulfur dioxide

.85 Acetylene

.89 Other gases

Including ozone, hydrogen sulfide

666 Ceramic and allied industries

For ceramic art, see 738

.1 **Glass technology**

For stained glass and glassware, see 748

.12 Glass manufacture

Including materials, melting, working

For manufacture of a specific type of glass, see the type, e.g., plate glass 666.153

.122 Glass blowing

Including glass blowing machines, saggers

.123 Glass pressing

666.124 Glass drawing

.125 Glass molding and casting

.126 Multiform processes

Cold-molding glass powder under pressure and firing at high temperatures

.129 Other operations

Including annealing and tempering glass

.13 Properties and practical tests of glass

For engineering properties of glass, see 620.144

.15 Types of glass

.152 Window glass

.153 Plate glass (Sheet glass)

Including tempered plate glass, insulated glass

.154 Laminated glass

.155 Heat-resistant glass

.156 Optical glass

For a specific application of optical glass, see the subject, e.g., telescopes 522.2

.159 Soluble glass

Including water glass

.19 Glass products

Comprehensive works

Including diversified glass products, e.g., bottles

For manufacture of a specific glass product, see the subject, e.g., spectacles 681.411

.2 **Enamels and enameling**

Including ceramic coatings, vitreous and porcelain enamels, enameled metals

.3 **Clay industries**

Including commercial pottery [*formerly* †666.6], ceramic whiteware

Class porcelain in 666.5; stoneware, earthenware, terra cotta in 666.6 [*all formerly* *666.3]

[*.32] Clays

Class in 666.42

666.4 Ceramic processes

.42 Ceramic materials

Preparation, composition, properties of ceramic clays [*formerly* *666.32], glazes, colors

Including ball clay, kaolin, petuntse

.43 Kilns and kiln-drying

.5 Porcelain (Chinaware) [*formerly* *666.3]

Including bone china (artificial porcelain)

.6 Stoneware and earthenware [*formerly* *666.3]

Including terra cotta

Class pottery [*formerly* †666.6] in 666.3

.7 Refractories and structural clay products

.72 Refractory materials

Including asbestos [*formerly* †679.267], fire-clays, alumina, graphite, zirconia, chrome, talc, mica

For deposits of refractory materials, see 553.67; *refractories applied to a specific use, the subject, e.g., refractories in metallurgical furnaces* 669.82

.73 Structural clay products

Including bricks, tiles

For engineering properties of bricks and tiles, see 620.142

.8 Artificial minerals and structural products

For structural clay products, see 666.73; *cementing materials,* 666.9

.86 Synthetic earthy minerals

Including manufacture of synthetic mica, feldspar, graphite, cryolite

.88 Synthetic gem minerals

Including manufacture of synthetic diamonds, garnets, rubies, sapphires

.89 Artificial stones

Including concrete and concrete blocks, cinder blocks, artificial marble

For engineering properties of concrete, see 620.136

666.9 Masonry adhesives

Manufacture, processes, practical tests of cementing materials

For engineering properties of masonry adhesives, see 620.15

.92 Gypsum plasters

Including plaster of Paris, cement plaster and mortar, Keene's cement

.93 Limes

Including lime mortars

.94 Portland cement

For concrete, see 666.89; *engineering properties of cement,* 620.135

667 Cleaning, dyeing and related industries

.1 Commercial cleaning and bleaching

.12 Commercial dry cleaning

Including dry cleaning textiles, furs, leather

For home dry cleaning, see 646.62

.13 Commercial laundering

Including starching

For home laundering, see 648.1; *soaps,* 668.12; *detergents and wetting agents,* 668.14

.14 Bleaching practice (Textile bleaching) [*formerly* †677.028 27]

.2 Commercial dyes and dyeing

Comprehensive works

Class commercial process dyeing [*formerly* †*667.2] in 667.3; fur dyeing [*formerly* *667.2] in 675.3

.25 Synthetic dyes

Large-scale manufacture of dyes and dye auxiliaries, e.g., mordants, lakes, intermediates, developers

Including coal tar dyes

Divide like 547.86, e.g., manufacture of Congo red 667.253

.26 Natural dyes

For indigo, see 667.256

667.3 **Commercial process dyeing [*formerly* †*667.2, †677.028 27] and printing**

Divide like 677, e.g., dyeing and printing cotton textiles 667.32

.4 **Inks**

Class printing inks [*formerly* *667.4] in 667.5

.42 Writing inks

Including indelible inks, India inks

For use of inks in art, see 751.2

.44 Sympathetic inks (Invisible inks)

.49 Specialty inks

Including stamp-pad inks, inks for recording instruments

.5 Printing inks [*formerly* *667.4]

Including newspaper inks, duplicating inks

.6 **Protective and decorative coatings**

For house painting, see 698.1

.62 Oil-soluble paints

For use of oil paints in art, see 751.2

.622 Paint oils, driers, plasticizers

Including dehydrated castor, linseed, tung oils

.623 Paint pigments and extenders

Including lithopone, titanium dioxide, white lead, zinc oxide, iron oxide, colored pigments, metal pigments

For carbon black, see 662.93

.624 Paint diluents (Thinners)

.63 Water-soluble paints

Including whitewash, latex paints

.69 Special-purpose paints

Including fire-resistant paints, luminous paints

.7 Varnishes and allied products

.72 Polishes

For scouring compounds, see 668.127

.75 Lacquers

Including nitrocellulose (cellulose nitrate), acetate, glyptal lacquers

667.79 Spirit varnishes

Including shellac in alcoholic solution, spar varnishes

.8 Oil varnishes

Including japans combined with carbon black, asphaltum, or stearin pitch (blacking); colored japans

For enamels and enameling, see 666.2

668 Other organic products

SUMMARY

668.1 Surface-active materials
.2 Glycerine
.3 Adhesives and related products
.4 Plastics and related resins
.5 Perfumery and cosmetology
.6 Synthetic agricultural chemicals and related products
.7 Crude organic chemicals (Cyclic organic chemicals)

.1 **Surface-active materials**

Including emulsifiers

.12 Soaps

For fats and oils, see 665; *alkalies,* 661.3; *glycerine,* 668.2; *laundering,* 667.13

.124 Soluble soaps

Including framed and milled soaps, soap chips and powders, liquid soaps

.125 Insoluble soaps (Metallic soaps)

Oleates and stearates of aluminum, copper, cobalt, magnesium, iron, calcium

.127 Scouring compounds

Manufacture of household scouring mixtures

.14 Detergents and wetting agents

Non-soap materials which manifest surface activity

Including sulfated oils, sulfonated hydrocarbons, fatty-alcohol sulfates

.2 **Glycerine**

668.3 Adhesives and related products

For gums and resins, see 668.47

.32 Animal glues

Including albumin and casein glues, glues derived from gelatin and other meat-packing by-products

.33 Vegetable glues

Including starch pastes, mucilages, nitrocellulose and soybean glues

.34 Gelatin

Crude commercial gelatin

For edible gelatin, see 664.26; *glues made from gelatin,* 668.32

.4 Plastics and related resins

Including thermosetting and thermoplastic resins

For varnishes, see 667.6; *fibers produced from synthetic resins,* 677.474 4; *elastomers,* 678.7

.41 Techniques for manufacturing plastics

Materials, apparatus, machinery, processes

Including fillers, plasticizers

For manufacturing a specific plastic, see the plastic, e.g., phenol-aldehyde condensation products 668.423

.412 Molding and casting operations

.413 Extrusion operations

For extrusion of synthetic fibers, see 677.46–677.47

.414 Laminating operations

.415 Welding operations

.419 Practical testing methods

Including properties, testing equipment

.42 Plastics made from synthetic resins

.422 Condensation polymerization plastics

Phenol-aldehyde, urea-formaldehyde, melamine-formaldehyde, thio urea-formaldehyde (organic sulfur resins) condensation products; organic silicon polymers (silicones) and alkyd resins only

668.423 Addition polymerization plastics

Polyvinyl (alcohols and esters), polyethylene, polyacrylic, polymeric amide (nylon), polyolefin, and polyaromatic plastics only

For addition polymerization fibers, see 677.474

.43 Plastics made from proteins

Plastics derived from milk (casein), soybean, corn (zein) proteins

For fibers derived from proteins, see 677.472

.44 Plastics made from cellulose

Cellulose nitrate, acetate, propionate, butyrate; methyl, ethyl, benzyl cellulose; mixt cellulose esters

Including celluloid [*formerly* †679.8], cellophane

For fibers derived from cellulose, see 677.46; *explosives,* 662.2

.45 Plastics made from natural resins

Including shellac as a plastic

For shellac in alcoholic solution, see 667.79

.47 Natural gums and resins not used in plastics

Including pine tar (wood tar)

For turpentine, see 665.332; *natural latex,* 678.5; *coal tar,* 668.7; *asphalt,* 665.4

.5 Perfumery and cosmetology

For chemical analysis of cosmetics and perfumes, see 543.4

.54 Perfumes

Including manufacture of essences, essential oils and ethers used in perfumes

For flavoring essences, see 664.5

.542 Natural floral oils and waters

.544 Synthetic perfumes

.55 Cosmetics

Including manufacture of cosmetic emulsions, creams, lotions, powders, deodorants, depilatories, nail preparations, hair preparations

For soaps, see 668.12; *detergents,* 668.14

668.6 **Synthetic agricultural chemicals and related products**

.62 Manufactured fertilizers [*formerly* *631.8]

Nitrates, phosphates, metaphosphates, superphosphates and sulfates of ammonium, calcium, sodium and potassium

Including manufactured soil conditioners

For use of fertilizers and soil conditioners, see 631.8

.65 Pesticides [*formerly* †679.137 156]

For agricultural pest control, see 632.9; *household pest control,* 648.7; *chemical analysis of poisons,* 543.5

.651 Insecticides and rodenticides

Fumigants, contact and stomach poisons

Including manufacture of dichloro-diphenyl-trichloro-ethane (DDT), chlordan, rotenone

.652 Fungicides

Including manufacture of sulfur and copper compounds, chloroquinones, dithiocarbamates

.654 Herbicides

Manufacture of chemical weed killers

.7 **Crude organic chemicals (Cyclic organic chemicals)**

Organic chemicals (compounds) obtained by distillation of coal and coal tar [*formerly* *662.628], by distillation and cracking of petroleum and natural gases, from various fermentation processes

Including basic materials, e.g., coal tar [*formerly* *662.627]

Class chemical utilization of wood [*formerly* *668.7] in 660.282; distillation of wood [*formerly* †*668.7] in 662.74

For alcohols, see 661.82; *coke,* 662.72; *petroleum distillation residues,* 665.532; *synthetic liquid fuels,* 662.66

.72 Crude cyclic hydrocarbons

Including benzene, toluene, naphthalene [*all formerly* *662.628], xylene, anthracene

.73 Tar acids

Including phenols, cresols (wood preserving oils [*formerly* *662.628])

.74 Tar bases

Including quinolines, pyridines

668.79 Cyclic intermediates

Chemicals obtained from crude organic chemicals for conversion into other intermediates, finisht chemicals, or chemical products

Including phthalic anhydride, dichlorobenzene, cresylic acid, ethyl benzene

For a finisht chemical or chemical product, see the product, e.g., plastics 668.4

669 Metallurgy

Production of metals and their alloys from ores and scrap metal

Including comprehensive works on metals, e.g., resources, mining, metallurgy, manufacture of metal products

For economic geology, see 553.3–553.4; *mining,* 622.34; *metal manufactures,* 671–673; *scrap metal,* 671.9

SUMMARY

669.028	**Metallurgical processes**
.1	**Iron, steel and their alloys**
.2	**Precious metals and their alloys**
.29	**Radioactive metals**
.3	**Copper and its alloys**
.4	**Lead and its alloys**
.5	**Zinc, cadmium and their alloys**
.6	**Tin and its alloys**
.7	**Nonferrous metals and their alloys**
.8	**Metallurgical furnaces**
.9	**Physical and chemical metallurgy**

[*.016] Metallography

Class in 669.95

[*.018] Heat treatment and hardening of metals

Class in 671.36

.028 Metallurgical processes

For processes applied to a specific metal, see metallurgy of the metal, e.g., open-hearth furnace practice 669.142 2; *ore concentration,* 622.75; *powder metallurgy,* 671.37

.028 2 Pyrometallurgy

Production of metals from ores by smelting, roasting or furnace methods

For metallurgical furnaces, see 669.8

669.028 3 Hydrometallurgy

Production of metals from ores by leaching methods

.028 4 Electrometallurgy

Production of metals from ores by electrical means

Including vacuum metallurgy

669.1–669.7 Metallurgy of individual metals

.1 Iron, steel and their alloys

For fabrication of iron, steel and their alloys, see 672

.14 Reduction and refining of iron ores

.141 Production of commercial iron alloys

.141 3 Blast furnace practice

Production of pig iron and crude cast iron

For steel castings, see 672.25

.141 4 Puddling furnace practice

Production of wrought iron

For mechanical working and forming of iron alloys, see 672.3

.141 9 Other iron alloy practices

Including production of iron powder and sponge iron

.142 Production of commercial steel and alloy steels

Including utilization, reduction, refining of scrap iron and steel [*formerly* *669.143] in the production of commercial steel and alloy steels

.142 2 Open-hearth furnace practice (Siemens process)

.142 3 Bessemer converter practice

Production of Bessemer steel, ingot iron, duplex-process steel

.142 4 Electric furnace practice

Including steel production in arc and induction furnaces

669.142 9 Other practices

Including production of crucible steel

[*.143] Scrap iron and steel

Class utilization, reduction, refining of scrap iron and steel in 669.142

[*.16] Metallography of iron and steel

Class in 669.951

[*.18] Heat treatment and hardening of steel

Class in 672.36

669.2–669.79 Metallurgy of other metals

Class metallography of other specific metals [*formerly* subdivision *6 under *669.22–*669.734] in 669.952–669.957 9; heat treatment [*formerly* subdivision *8 under *669.22–*669.734] in 673

For fabrication of these metals, see 673

.2 Precious metals and their alloys

.22 Gold

.23 Silver

Including silver combined with lead

For lead, see 669.4

.24 Platinum

.29 Radioactive metals

Including radium, thorium, uranium, actinium, neptunium, plutonium, polonium

.3 Copper and its alloys

Including brass, bronze, Muntz metal, phosphor bronze, gun metal, copper-aluminum alloys, copper-beryllium alloys, aluminum bronze

For aluminum-copper alloys, see 669.722; *German silver, Monel metal®,* 669.733; *Babbitt metal,* 669.6

.4 Lead and its alloys

Including antimonial lead

For silver combined with lead, see 669.23

.5 Zinc, cadmium and their alloys

Including spelter, die-casting alloys

For German silver, see 669.733; *Wood's alloy,* 669.75

669.6 Tin and its alloys

Including Babbitt metal

For bronze, see 669.3

.7 Nonferrous metals and their alloys

Comprehensive works

For precious metals and their alloys, see 669.2; *radioactive metals,* 669.29; *copper and its alloys,* 669.3; *lead and its alloys,* 669.4; *zinc, cadmium and their alloys,* 669.5; *tin and its alloys,* 669.6; *fabrication of nonferrous metals and their alloys,* 673.7

.71 Mercury and amalgams

.72 Light metals and their alloys

.722 Aluminum and its alloys

Including Duralumin®, aluminum-copper alloys

For copper-aluminum alloys, see 669.3; *magnesium-aluminum alloys,* 669.723

.723 Magnesium and its alloys

Including magnesium-aluminum alloys, magnesium-aluminum-manganese alloys (Dow metal®)

.724 Beryllium and its alloys

.725 Alkali metals, alkaline earth metals and their alloys

Including sodium, potassium, lithium, strontium, calcium, barium and their alloys

For magnesium and its alloys, see 669.723; *beryllium and its alloys,* 669.724; *radium,* 669.29

.73 Ferro-alloying metals and their alloys

.732 Titanium, vanadium, manganese and their alloys

.733 Cobalt, nickel and their alloys

Including German silver, Monel metal®

.734 Chromium, molybdenum, tungsten and their alloys

.735 Tantalum, zirconium and their alloys

.75 Antimony, arsenic, bismuth and their alloys

Including Wood's alloy

.79 Minor metals and their alloys

Including hafnium, germanium, gallium, indium, tellurium, niobium, thallium

669.8 Metallurgical furnaces

Construction, operation, maintenance

For metallurgical furnaces used in a specific operation, see the subject, e.g., Bessemer converter practice 669.142 3

.82 Refractory materials for metallurgical furnaces

.84 Metallurgical slags and fluxes

.9 Physical and chemical metallurgy

Including metallurgical analysis

.92 Assaying

Including cupellation [*formerly* †545.4], blowpipe analysis of metallic ores and alloys

.94 Physical metallurgy

Constitution, structure, properties, associated behavior of metals and alloys

For engineering properties of metals, see 620.16–620.18; *microscopic study of metal and alloy structure,* 669.95

.95 Metallography [*formerly* *669.016]

Microscopic and photographic study and analysis, interpretation of metal and alloy structure

Including electron and X-ray metallography

.951 Metallography of iron, steel and their alloys [*formerly* *669.16]

.952–.957 9 Metallography of other specific metals [*formerly* subdivision *6 under *669.22–*669.734]

Divide like 669.2–669.79, e.g., metallography of aluminum 669.957 22

670 Manufactures

Comprehensive works

Including manufacture of intermediate products

For industrial chemistry, see 660; *manufacture of specific finisht articles and goods,* 680; *manufacture of a specific article not provided for in* 660–680, *the subject, e.g., of automobiles* 629.2

671 Metal manufactures

Metal fabrication and manufacture of metal products

For manufacture of specific metals, see 672–673; *manufacture of a specific metal product, the product, e.g., automobiles* 629.2

.2 Foundry practice

Including hot-working operations

.22 Foundry equipment

.23 Mold and pattern making

.24 Melting practice

.25 Molding and casting practice

Production of metal castings

Including sand, die, centrifugal, other methods of molding and casting

.3 Mechanical working and forming

Including cold-working operations

.32 Rolling processes

.33 Forging, pressing, stamping processes

Including hammering, spinning, piercing processes

For welding by hammering and pressing, see 671.529

.34 Extruding and drawing processes

.35 Machining and grinding processes

.36 Heat treatment and hardening of metals [*formerly* *669.018]

Including annealing, tempering, age-hardening

.37 Powder metallurgical processes (Powder metallurgy)

.5 Joining and cutting operations

.52 Welding operations

.521 Electric welding

Including arc and resistance welding

671.522 Gas welding

Including acetylene welding

.529 Other methods of welding

Including welding by hammering and pressing

.53 Cutting operations

Including flame and arc cutting

.56 Soldering and brazing operations

.59 Other methods of joining

Including riveting

For rivets, see 621.884; *riveting machinery,* 621.978

.7 Finishing and surface treatment

Including surface hardening

.72 Buffing and polishing operations

.73 Coatings

For metal enameling, see 666.2

.732 Electroplating

.733 Hot-metal dipping

Including galvanizing processes

.734 Metal spraying

.735 Vapor plating (Vacuum deposition)

Vacuum metalizing, vapor-phase deposition

.739 Other finishing processes

Including chemical treatment, oxidation finishing processes

.8 Metal products

For art metalwork, see 739; *metalcrafts,* 745.56

.82 Sheet metal products

.821 Pattern making for sheet metal products

.83 Forged, prest and stampt metal products

Including tubes, pipes

.84 Extruded and drawn metal products

Including wire; metal cordage and cables [*formerly* †677.72], conducting wires and cables [*formerly* †677.73]

.87 Powder metallurgical products

671.9 **Scrap metal**

Collection, classification, utilization of scrap metal

For a specific scrap metal, see the metal, e.g., iron and steel scrap 672.9; *utilization of scrap metal in production of metals,* 669

672 Iron and steel manufactures

Fabrication and products of iron, steel and their alloys

Divide like 671, e.g., steel castings 672.25

Class manufacture of cutlery in 683.82, of stoves in 683.88 [*both formerly* †672]

.36 Heat treatment and hardening of steel [*formerly* *669.18]

673 Other metals manufactures

Fabrication and products of metals and their alloys other than iron and steel

Divide like 669.2–669.7, e.g., fabrication of aluminum 673.722. If desired, divide specific metals, but not groups of metals, further like 671, e.g., welding of aluminum 673.722 52; heat treatment and hardening of aluminum [*formerly* *669.722 8] in 673.722 36

674 Lumber industry

For logging, see 634.982

.1 **Wood technology [*formerly* *634.98]**

For preservation of building construction wood, see 691.1; *seasoning of wood,* 674.38; *wood products,* 674.8; *chemical utilization of wood,* 660.282

.12 Structure and identification of wood

Including texture, grain, figure, moisture content and distribution, microscopic structure

.13 Properties and tests of wood

.132 Physical properties of wood

Including thermal, electrical, acoustic properties; reflectivity; luminescence

For engineering properties of wood, see 620.12

674.134 Chemical properties of wood

Including chemical composition and analysis; comprehensive works on wood extractives

For chemistry of a specific wood component, see the subject, e.g., cellulose chemistry 547.782; *industrial extraction of a specific wood component, the subject, e.g., cellulose manufacture* 676.4; *chemical utilization of a wood extractive, the subject, e.g., manufacture of rayon* 677.46

.14 Types of wood

.142 Hardwood

Wood of broad-leaved, deciduous trees

Including oak, maple, cherry, chestnut, elm, basswood

.144 Softwood

Wood of coniferous trees

Including pine, spruce, fir, hemlock, cypress, cedar

.2 **Sawmill operations**

Conversion of logs into lumber

.22 Sawmill equipment

Including power saws, edgers, slashers, trimmers, handling and conveying equipment

.28 Sawmill products

Including rough lumber products [*formerly* †634.983, *634.98], dimension stock (cut stock)

For wood waste and residues, see 674.84; *surfaced lumber,* 674.42; *pattern lumber,* 674.43

.282 Round timbers

Including poles, piles, posts

For mine timbers, see 674.283

.283 Mine timbers

.284 Railroad ties

Including crossties (sleepers), switch ties, bridge ties

.285 Fireplace wood

.286 Shooks

Including cooperage and box lumber

.287 Shingles and shakes

674.3 **Storage and seasoning of lumber**

.32 Lumberyards

.38 Seasoning of lumber

For preservation of building construction wood, see 691.1

.382 Air seasoning

.384 Dry kiln seasoning

Including lumber kilns

.386 Chemical methods of seasoning

Including seasoning with urea salt

.4 **Remanufacture of lumber**

For products of wood-using industries, see 674.8; *furniture manufacture and cabinetmaking,* 684.1–684.2; *carpentry,* 694

.42 Planing mill operations

Production of surfaced lumber from rough lumber

Including planing mills and equipment, e.g., saws for resawing, planers

Class molders [*formerly* *674.42] in 674.43

.43 Woodworking plants

Production of pattern lumber (workt lumber), e.g., shiplap; bungalow, drop, beveled sidings; tongue-and-groove products

Including equipment for secondary woodworking operations, e.g., molders [*formerly* *674.42], matchers, shapers, lathes, sanders, grinders, other finishing machines

.5 **Grading of lumber**

Including inspection and specifications of rough and surfaced lumber

For grading logs, see 634.982

.8 **Wood-using industries**

Including manufacture of wood products

For rough lumber products, see 674.28; *furniture manufacture and cabinetmaking,* 684.1–684.2; *a specific use of a product, the subject, e.g., veneers in cabinetmaking* 684.2; *a secondary wood industry, the industry, e.g., manufacture of wood pulp* 676.12; *carpentry,* 694

.82 Wooden containers (Cooperage)

Including wooden crates, boxes, barrels, casks

674.83 Veneers and composite woods

Including manufacture, machinery, pressing, drying, finishing

For adhesives, see 668.3

.833 Veneers

Including face, commercial, container veneers

For manufacture of wooden containers, see 674.82

.834 Plywood

Wood panels consisting of an odd number of veneer sheets glued together with the grains of the layers at right angles to one another

.835 Wood laminates (Specialty plywoods)

Wood panels consisting of an even number of veneer sheets bonded together under high pressure and heat with the grains of the layers parallel to one another

Including high-density wood, sandwich panels

.84 Wood waste and residues

Including excelsior, wood flour, sawdust, wood shavings, other mill residues

For a specific use of wood waste, see the subject, e.g., sawdust as fuel 662.65

.88 Minor wood products

Including wood-cased lead pencils, toothpicks, spools, woodenware, picture frames

For matches, see 662.5

.9 **Cork and cork products**

For a specific use of cork or a cork product, see the subject, e.g., bottling 663

675 Leather and fur industries

For hand tooling of leather, fur craft, see 745.53

.2 **Leather processing**

Including materials, apparatus, machinery, finisht leathers

For artificial leather, see 677.682; *manufacture of leather goods,* 685

.22 Preliminary operations

Including salting, fleshing, unhairing (liming), bating, washing hides and skins

675.23 Tanning operations

Including tanning with vegetable and mineral tannins

For chemistry of tannins, see 547.783; *tanning furs,* 675.3

.24 Dressing operations

Including fat liquoring (lubricating), stuffing, toggling, pasting

.25 Finishing operations

Including dyeing, boarding, embossing, buffing (suede leather), glazing, moldproofing, production of patent leather

.29 Properties and practical tests of leather

Including tensile strength, flexibility, elasticity, resistivity to chemical reagents, aging properties

.3 Fur dressing

Treatment of raw pelts, e.g., preliminary dressing, tanning, bleaching, dyeing [*formerly* *667.2], glazing, plucking, shearing

For fur farming, see 636.92; *trapping for fur,* 639.11; *leather tanning,* 675.23; *textiles woven from animal hair,* 677.3; *manufacture of fur apparel,* 685.24

676 Pulp, paper and related industries

Including materials, machinery, processes and their chemistry, properties, tests, recovery of waste products

For paper fabrics, see 677.57; *paper handicraft,* 745.54

.1 Pulp and its manufacture

For a specific utilization of pulp, see the subject, e.g., utilization in paper manufacture 676.2; *purified pulp,* 676.4

.12 Wood pulp

For pulpwood, see 634.983

.122 Mechanical process (Groundwood process)

Including manufacture of pulp from steamed wood

.124 Soda process

.125 Sulfite process

For neutral sulfite semichemical process, see 676.127

.126 Sulfate process (Kraft process)

676.127 Semichemical process

Including neutral sulfite semichemical process

.13 Rag pulps

.14 Other pulps

Pulps manufactured from straw, jute, hemp, bamboo, cornstalks, bagasse, waste paper

Including Pomilio process, nitric acid pulping

.17 Properties and tests of pulp

.18 Pulp products other than paper

.182 Molded pulp products

For paper plates, see 676.34

.183 Pulpboards

Including wallboards, chip boards, fiberboards

For paperboard, see 676.288

.2 Paper, paperboard and their manufacture

Manufacture of basic paper and paperboard products from pulp

For manufacture of converted paper products, see 676.3; *photographic paper,* 771.532 3

.22 Handmade paper and its manufacture

.23 Machine-made paper and its manufacture

For specific types of paper and paperboard, see 676.28

.232 Papermaking machines and processes

Including beaters and refiners; Fourdrinier, Harper, Jordan, Yankee papermaking machines; stock preparation equipment

.234 Calendering and finishing

Including surface finishes, sizing, coloring, creping

.235 Machine coating processes

.27 Properties and tests of paper

Including physical tests, e.g., bursting strength, opacity, durability; chemical tests, e.g., Herzberg, Lofton-Merritt, Bright, modified iodine stain tests

For properties and tests of a specific kind of paper, see the kind, e.g., currency paper 676.282 6

676.28 Types of paper and paperboard

Including manufacture, properties, tests

.282 Graphic arts papers

Including writing and ledger papers, bond and other fine papers

For school tablets, see 676.286

.282 3 Stationery

Including onionskin paper

.282 4 Book papers

Comprehensive works

For coated papers, see 676.283

.282 5 Drawing and art papers

.282 6 Currency papers

Including paper for bonds and securities

.283 Coated papers

Including machine coated and off-machine coated papers

.284 Specialty papers

.284 2 Tissue papers

Including cigarette paper, carbon tissue, cutlery tissue, tracing paper, fruit and candy wrappings, Japanese tissue

For onionskin paper, see 676.282 3

.284 4 Blotting and saturating papers

Including filter papers, paper towels

.284 5 Parchment and vulcanized papers

Including glassine and greaseproof papers

For coated papers, see 676.283

.286 Newsprint

Including other unsized papers, e.g., paper for school tablets, scratch pads, handbills

676.287 Wrapping and bag paper

Including kraft wrapping, "brown wrapper," butcher paper, Manila paper, bogus wrapping

.288 Paperboard

Including pasteboard, Bristol board, cardboard, food board

For pulpboards, see 676.183

.289 Roofing and building papers

Including asbestos paper

For use of roofing and building papers, see 693–698

.29 Identification of paper

Including watermarks

.3 Converted paper products industry

Conversion of paper and paperboard into finisht products

.32 Paper boxes and cartons

Including folding boxes, corrugated and solid paperboard boxes

For food board containers, see 676.34

.33 Paper bags

.34 Food board containers

Including paper plates and cups, milk cartons, ice-cream containers, frozen food cartons

.4 Cellulose and its manufacture

Production of purified pulp (alpha cellulose) from wood pulp and cotton linters

For cellulose chemistry, see 547.782; *a specific product derived from cellulose, the product, e.g., plastics made from cellulose* 668.44

.44 Cellulose derivatives

Comprehensive works on manufacture of cellulose esters and ethers

For a specific cellulose derivative, see the subject, e.g., nitrocellulose 662.3

676.5 **By-products of pulp and paper industries**

Including recovery of tall oil, turpentine, resins, fatty acids

.52 Industrial lignin

677 Textile and fiber manufactures

Manufacture of cloth and other fiber products by weaving, knitting, knotting, crocheting, braiding, bonding, laminating

For fiber plant cultivation, see 633.5; *commercial process dyeing, commercial printing of textiles,* 667.3; *textile handicrafts,* 746; *apparel manufacture,* 687

SUMMARY

677.02	Textile manuals
.1	Textiles woven from bast fibers
.2	Textiles woven from seed hair fibers
.3	Textiles woven from animal hair
.4	Silk textiles and synthetic textiles
.5	Mineral fibers and fabrics
.54	Braiding and matting processes
.55	Elastic fibers and fabrics
.57	Paper fibers and fabrics
.6	Other fabrics and processes
.7	Cordage, trimmings, allied products

.02 Textile manuals

.022 Textile designs and designing

Working patterns for ornamental woven effects

For fancy weaves, see 677.61

.028 Textile manufacturing techniques

Comprehensive works

For manufacturing a specific textile, see the textile, e.g., flax processes 677.112

.028 1 Textile mills

Including layout, equipment, organization

For textile power machinery, see 677.028 5

677.028 2 Textile processes

Comprehensive works on processes and machinery used in processes

For textile power machinery, see 677.028 5

.028 21 Preparation of fibers

Production of fiber slivers, batts

Including carding, combing

.028 22 Manufacture of yarns and threads

Spinning, twisting, reeling, throwing fiber slivers

Including winding yarn and thread in skeins and balls, on bobbins and spools

.028 24 Manufacture of woven cloth

Weaving operations

Class finishing operations [*formerly* †677.028 24] in 677.028 25

For mesht and knotted fabrics, see 677.66; *bonding and laminating,* 677.69

.028 25 Basic finishing operations [*formerly* †677.028 24]

Including shearing, singeing, beetling, mercerizing, tentering, calendering, pressing, creping

For functional finishes, see 677.68

[†.028 27] Bleaching and dyeing

Class textile bleaching in 667.14; commercial process dyeing in 667.3

.028 3 Raw materials

Including properties of raw fibers

For preparation of fibers, see 677.028 21

677.028 5 Textile power machinery

Comprehensive works

For use of machinery in textile processes, see 677.028 2; *knitting machines,* 677.661; *manufacture of textile power machinery,* 681.767 7

.028 52 Power spinning machines

Including spinning frames, mules, rings, jennies

For spinning wheels, see 746

.028 54 Power looms and loom accessories

Including Jacquard looms and cards

Class braiding machinery in 677.54; finishing machines in 677.028 55 [*both formerly* †677.028 54]

For hand looms, see 746

.028 55 Finishing machines [*formerly* †677.028 54]

Machines for basic finishes

For machines for functional finishes, see 677.68

.028 6 Textile products

.028 62 Yarns and threads

.028 64 Fabrics

.028 7 Tests of textile products

Including specifications, identification, properties

677.1–677.2 Textiles woven from vegetable fibers

Including textiles of simple weaves, e.g., plain (tabby), twill, satin weaves

For fancy weaves, see 677.61; *cordage and trimmings,* 677.7

.1 Textiles woven from bast fibers

Including ramie, piña, coir, similar fibers

.11 Flax industry

.112 Flax processes

Including flax dressing; basic finishing operations

.113 Raw materials

Including properties of raw flax

For properties of flax products, see 677.117

677.116 Flax products

Including linen yarn, thread, fabrics

For flaxseed oil, see 665.352

.117 Tests of flax products

Including specifications, identification, properties of linen yarn, thread, fabrics

For properties of raw flax, see 677.113

.12 Hemp industry

Including sisal, abacá

.13 Jute industry

.2 Textiles woven from seed hair fibers

Including kapok, milkweed fibers

.21 Cotton industry

Divide like 677.11, e.g., mercerizing cotton 677.212

677.3–677.44 Textiles woven from animal fibers

Including basic weaves, e.g., plain (tabby), twill weaves

For fancy weaves, see 677.61; *cordage and trimmings,* 677.7

.3 Textiles woven from animal hair

.31 Sheep wool industry

Divide like 677.11, e.g., production of woolen suiting 677.316

For napt fabrics, see 677.62

677.32–677.35 Specialty fibers

.32 Llama wool industry

Including alpaca, llama, vicuña

.33 Goat hair industry

Including mohair, cashmere, Angora

.34 Camel hair industry

.35 Rabbit hair industry

For felting, see 677.63; *fur dressing,* 675.3

.36 Reprocest and re-used wool industry

677.4 **Silk textiles and synthetic textiles**

Including basic weaves, e.g., plain (tabby), twill, satin weaves

For fancy weaves and blended fibers, see 677.61; *cordage and trimmings,* 677.7

677.41–677.44 Textiles woven from silk fibers

.41 Cultivated silk industry

Divide like 677.11, e.g., weighting silk 677.412

.42 Wild silk industry (Tussah silk)

Including silk pongee, shantung

.44 Reprocest and waste silk industry

Including noil silk

677.46–677.47 Synthetic fibers and fabrics

Including chemical processing, extrusion of filaments, spinning, weaving, finishing

.46 Rayons

Regenerated cellulose and cellulose derivative fibers and fabrics

For plastics derived from cellulose, see 668.44

.461 Nitrocellulose rayon (Chardonnet process)

.462 Cuprammonium rayon

.463 Viscose rayon

.464 Cellulose acetate rayon

.47 Noncellulose synthetic fibers and fabrics

.472 Textiles derived from proteins

Textiles derived from milk (casein), soybean, corn (zein), and other proteins

For plastics derived from proteins, see 668.43; *reprocest and re-used silk,* 677.44

.473 Polyamide fibers and fabrics (Nylon)

For nylon as a plastic, see 668.423

.474 Addition polymerization fibers and fabrics

For nylon, see 677.473; *addition polymerization plastics,* 668.423

.474 2 Polyacrylic fibers and fabrics

Including Orlon®, Acrilan®, Dynel®

677.474 3 Polyester fibers and fabrics

Including Dacron®

.474 4 Polyvinyl resin fibers and fabrics

Including Vinyon®, Saran®

.5 **Mineral fibers and fabrics**

.51 Asbestos textiles

Including woven and matted asbestos textiles

.52 Glass textiles

.54 **Braiding and matting processes**

Raffia, rush, cane, bamboo, rattan braiding and matting on industrial basis

Including machinery [*formerly* †677.028 54]

For basketry as an art, see 746.41; *matted asbestos textiles,* 677.51; *felting processes,* 677.63; *matted paper fabrics,* 677.57; *decorative braids,* 677.76

.55 **Elastic fibers and fabrics**

Including threads and filaments, woven and knitted fabrics of natural and synthetic rubber

.57 **Paper fibers and fabrics**

Including woven and matted fabrics

.6 **Other fabrics and processes**

.61 Blended fabrics and fancy weaves

For fabrics in leno weave, see 677.65

.615 Fabrics in dobby weave

Including bird's-eye, sharkskin, huckaback, figured madras

.616 Fabrics in Jacquard weave

Including damask, brocade, brocatelle, lamé, upholstery fabrics

For tapestry, see 677.642

.617 Fabrics in pile weave

Including velvet, velveteen, velour, plush, chenille, corduroy, frieze, terry cloth

For woven carpets, see 677.643

677.62 Napt and fulled fabrics

Including finisht products

.624 Flannels and swanskins

Including swansdown

.626 Blankets and lap robes

Including machine-quilted blankets

.63 Felts and felting

Including finisht products

.632 Felt cloth

Including felt carpets, yard goods

.635 Felt hatmaking

.64 Tapestry and carpet industries

.642 Tapestries

Including reversible and nonreversible machine-made tapestries

For hand woven tapestries, see 746.3; *tapestry rugs,* 677.643

.643 Carpets and rugs

Machine-made pile, chenille, tapestry, short napt, reversible, hookt, Oriental patterned carpets and rugs

For felt carpets, see 677.632; *handmade rugs,* 746.7; *Oriental rugs,* 746.75

.65 Machine lace and lace making

Including bobbin lace, tulle, embroidered lace; fabrics in leno weave, e.g., marquisette, grenadine

For mesht and knotted fabrics, see 677.66

.66 Mesht and knotted fabrics

Including machine crocheted and tatted laces, netting

For hand crocheted and tatted laces, see 746.43

.661 Machine knitting and knitting machines

For knitting a specific article, see the subject, e.g., hosiery 687.32; *hand knitting,* 746.43; *manufacture of knitting machines,* 681.767 7

677.68 Functional finishes of fabrics

Including processes and machinery

.681 Crease- and wrinkle-resistant fabrics

Including Tebilizing®

.682 Waterproof and water-repellent fabrics

Including plastic coated fabrics, oilcloth, oilskin, moleskin, artificial leather

.688 Controlled shrinkage in fabrics

Including Sanforizing®

.689 Flameproof and flame-resistant fabrics

.69 Bonding and laminating processes

Including fused fabrics, linoleums

For felting, see 677.63; *woven and matted paper fabrics,* 677.57

.7 Cordage, trimmings and allied products

.71 Ropes, twines, strings

Including cordage of hemp, flax, silk, wool, coir, nylon

For splicing, marling, knotting, see 623.88

[†.72] Metal cordage and cables

Class in 671.84

[†.73] Conducting wires and cables

Class in 671.84

[†.75] Braids, lacings, ribbons, cords

Class in 677.76

.76 Textile trimmings (Passementerie)

Machine-made decorative cords, braids, lacings, ribbons [*all formerly* †677.75], gimps, tinsel, tapes, bias bindings, upholstery trimmings

For handmade trimmings, see 746.27

.77 Machine embroidery

Including swivel (dotted Swiss), clip spot, lappet, Schiffli embroidery

For machine-embroidered lace, see 677.65; *handmade embroidery,* 746.44

[†.8] Manufacture of textile machinery and equipment

Class in 681.767 7

678 Rubber, rubberlike materials, and their manufacture

For rubber chemistry, see 547.842

.2 Manufacture of rubber

Comprehensive works on processing crude natural, synthetic, and reclaimed rubber

Including machinery

For rubber goods, see 678.3; *manufacture of natural rubber,* 678.62; *processing natural latex,* 678.52; *manufacture of synthetic rubber,* 678.722

.22 Mastication

Including mixing, milling, plasticizing crude rubbers

.23 Compounding and compounding ingredients

Including use of solvents, antioxidants, accelerators, pigments, e.g., carbon black, titanium oxide

.24 Vulcanization

Including hot (Goodyear) and cold vulcanizing processes

.27 Other processes

Including molding, extruding, calendering

.29 Reclaimed rubber

Collecting, sorting, classifying [*all formerly* *678.8], processing natural and synthetic scrap rubber; tests of reclaimed rubber

Including devulcanization

For utilization of reclaimed rubber in a specific process, see the process, e.g., vulcanization 678.24

.3 Rubber goods

Including natural and synthetic rubber products

For latex products, see 678.53; *elastic fibers and fabrics,* 677.55

.32 Rubber tires

For a specific use of tires, see the use, e.g., automobile tires 629.248 6; *inner tubes,* 678.35

.33 Rubber overshoes

.34 Articles molded and vulcanized in presses

Including soles, heels, hot-water bottles, bathing caps, tiles, doorstops, hollow ware

678.35 Extruded articles

Including rubber bands, inner tubes, tubing, windshield wipers, gaskets, weatherstripping

.36 Reinforst articles

Including dipt, spread, electrodeposited articles, e.g., conveyor and driving belts, hose, sheeting

For plastic coated fabrics, see 677.682

.4 Properties of rubber

Comprehensive works on properties of natural and synthetic rubber in crude and vulcanized forms

Including physical and chemical properties, e.g., tensile strength, hardness, elasticity, aging and deterioration; analysis; tests

For properties of latexes, see 678.54; *of crude natural rubber,* 678.64; *of synthetic rubber,* 678.724; *engineering properties of rubber,* 620.194; *tests of reclaimed rubber,* 678.29

.5 Latexes

Natural and synthetic latexes

For coagulation of synthetic latexes, see 678.722; *extraction of latex from plants,* 634.986 5

.52 Processing latex

.522 Preliminary treatment

Including preservation, concentration, creaming, centrifuging, preparation of latex biscuits

For preparation of crude rubber from latex, see 678.62

.524 Vulcanization

.527 Other processes

Including molding, coating, casting, dipping, spreading, electrodepositing

.53 Latex products

Including products made directly from vulcanized and unvulcanized latex

.532 Latex foam products

Including manufacture of latex foam mattresses, pillows, upholstery; latex foam in sheets and fragments

.533 Dipt and cast latex products

Including manufacture of toy balloons, meteorological balloons, surgeons' gloves, feeding bottle nipples, pen sacs, cast toys and models

678.538 Other latex products

Including extruded, spread, sprayed, electrodeposited products

For latex paints, see 667.63

.54 Properties of latexes

Including physical, chemical, colloidal properties; analysis; tests

For comprehensive works on properties of rubber, see 678.4; *properties of crude rubber,* 678.64; *of synthetic rubber,* 678.724

.6 Crude natural rubber (Raw rubber)

.62 Manufacture of crude rubber

Production of crepe and smokt sheet rubber by coagulation of latex; milling, drying, smoking coagulum

Including grading, packing, storing crude rubber

For further processing of crude rubber, see 678.2; *processing natural latex,* 678.52

.64 Properties of crude rubber

Including physical and chemical properties, analysis, tests

.68 Chemical derivatives of natural rubber

Including cyclo rubbers, rubber hydrochloride, halogenated rubbers

For a specific utilization of a chemical derivative of rubber, see the subject, e.g., paint plasticizers 667.622; *chemical derivatives of synthetic rubbers,* 678.728

.7 Elastomers

Elastic, rubberlike substances having some of the properties of natural rubber

.72 Synthetic rubber

Including butadiene-styrene rubbers (GR-S), chloroprene rubbers (GR-M), acrylonitrile rubbers (GR-A), isobutylene rubbers (GR-I), polyurethane, cis-polydienes

.722 Manufacture of synthetic rubber

Emulsion polymerization of basic monomers, coagulation of synthetic latexes, drying coagulums

For further processing of crude synthetic rubber, see 678.2; *synthetic rubber products,* 678.3

678.724 Properties of synthetic rubber

Including physical, chemical, colloidal properties; analysis; tests

For comprehensive works on properties of rubber, see 678.4; *properties of crude rubber,* 678.64; *of latexes,* 678.54

.728 Chemical derivatives of synthetic rubber

Production, properties, utilization

Including isomerized synthetic rubber

For high-styrene resins, see 678.73; *chemical derivatives of natural rubber,* 678.68

.73 High-styrene resins (Elasto-plastics)

Production, properties, utilization

For a specific utilization of a high-styrene resin, see the subject, e.g., plastics made from synthetic resins 668.42

[*.8] Scrap rubber

Class in 678.29

679 Manufacture of miscellaneous products

For manufacture of small articles, see 688

[†.1] Manufactures based on plant and animal materials

Class with the subject in 660–688, e.g., grain processing 664.7, pestifuges 668.65

[†.137 1] Tobacco products

Class in 679.7

[†*.2] Manufactures based on mineral materials; tobacco products

Class manufactures based on mineral materials [*formerly* †679.2] with the subject in 660–688, e.g., asbestos manufactures 666.72; tobacco products [*formerly* *679.2] in 679.7

679.4 **Ivory, horn, and feather products**

.43 Ivory products

For ivory carving, see 736.6

.47 Feather products

Including preparation of feathers and downs for use in pillows, mattresses, upholstery

For use of feathers in millinery, see 687.42

.6 **Brooms and brushes**

Including brooms and brushes made of vegetable, animal, and synthetic fibers and bristles

.7 **Tobacco products [*formerly* †679.137 1, *679.2]**

Processes, machinery, packaging

Including chewing tobacco, snuff

For tobacco culture, curing, aging, see 633.71; *drugs derived from tobacco,* 615.3; *manufacture of pesticides derived from tobacco,* 668.65

.72 Cigars

.73 Cigarettes

For cigarette paper, see 676.284 2

[†.8] **Celluloid**

Class in 668.44

.9 **Waste materials**

Comprehensive works on salvage and utilization of waste and scrap materials

For salvage and utilization of a specific material, see the material, e.g., scrap rubber 678.29; *chemurgy,* 660.282

680 Other manufactures

Including manufacture of specific finisht articles and goods

For handicrafts, see 745.5; *hobbies,* 790.2; *comprehensive works on manufacture, use, history of a specific finisht article, the use, e.g., telescopes* 522.2; *comprehensive reports of manufacturing companies,* 338.4

681 Precision instruments and apparatus, and related machines

SUMMARY

681.1 Wheel mechanisms and related devices
.2 Scientific measuring instruments
.4 Optical instruments
.6 Printing and duplicating machines
.7 Other instruments and machines
.8 Sound and music instruments

.1 **Wheel mechanisms and related devices**

.11 Horology

Manufacture of instruments for measuring and indicating time

Including repairing, testing, adjusting timepieces

.111 Ancient and primitive instruments

Including manufacture of sundials, water clocks (clepsydras); portable sundials, hourglasses [*both formerly* †681.119]

.112 Clockwork

Constituent parts of clocks and watches, e.g., gears, escapements, bearings, regulating devices

.113 Clocks

Including manufacture of private and public clocks

For pneumatic clocks, see 681.115; *electric clocks,* 681.116; *clock parts,* 681.112

.114 Watches

Including manufacture of pocket and wrist watches; precision timepieces, e.g., chronometers, railroad watches

For stop watches, see 681.118; *watch parts,* 681.112

.115 Pneumatic clocks

.116 Electric clocks

681.118 Chronographs and chronoscopes

Including manufacture of stop watches, metronomes, tachometers, time clocks, time-and-date recorders

[†.119] Portable sundials and hourglasses

Class in 681.111

.12 Industrial measuring instruments [*formerly also* †681.26, *formerly* *621]

Including manufacture of flow meters, e.g., electric, water, gas meters; of gauges; comprehensive works on manufacture of industrial and scientific measuring instruments

For scientific measuring instruments, see 681.2

.13 Cameras and accessories [*formerly* *771.3]

Including manufacture of studio, hand, motion-picture cameras, projectors

For manufacture of sound-picture recording and reproducing machines, see 681.844

[†.131] Automatic dispensing machines

Class in 629.82

[†.135] Phonographs

Class in 681.843

.14 Business machines [*formerly* *651]

For manufacture of stenographic machines, see 681.61; *of time clocks, time-and-date recorders,* 681.118

681.141–681.144 Computation instruments and machines [*formerly* *510.78]

.141 Adding and calculating machines

.142 Automatic (electronic) digital computers

Including manufacture of UNIVAC, RAYDAC, BINAC, puncht card computing machines; comprehensive works on manufacture of puncht card machines

For manufacture of puncht card sorting machines, see 681.148

681.143 Analogue machines

Including manufacture of differential analyzers, slide rules, planimeters

.144 Other digital machines

Including manufacture of abacuses

.145 Cash registers

.147 Machines for counting discrete units

Including manufacture of voting machines

.148 Sorting machines

Including manufacture of puncht card sorting machines

For puncht card computing machines, see 681.142

[†.15] Mechanical toys

Class in 688.728

.2 Scientific measuring instruments [*formerly* *500–*599]

For industrial measuring instruments, see 681.12

.25 Specific measuring instruments

Divide like 500, except as provided for in 681.414–681.416, e.g., manufacture of thermometers 681.253 65, of balances 681.253 154

[†.26] Industrial measuring instruments

Class in 681.12

.4 Optical instruments [*formerly* *535.8]

.41 Specific types of optical instruments

.411 Spectacles [*formerly* *617.7]

For manufacture of lenses, see 681.42; *of spectacle frames,* 681.43; *optometry,* 617.75

.412 Telescopes

Including manufacture of opera glasses, spyglasses

.413 Microscopes

Divide like 578.1, e.g., manufacture of electron microscopes 681.413 5

.414 Spectroscopes

Divide like 535.84, e.g., manufacture of chromatic spectroscopes 681.414 3

.415 Photometers

681.416 Polarimeters

.42 Lenses

Including manufacture of converging, diverging, achromatic, astigmatic, anastigmatic, contact, Polaroid® lenses

.43 Spectacle frames [*formerly* *617.7]

[†.44] Setting and adjusting

Class in 617.75

.6 Printing and duplicating machines

Including manufacture of composing machines [*formerly* *655.28], of machines duplicating by offset and by stencils [*both formerly* *652.4]

.61 Stenographic machines

Including manufacture of manual and electric typewriters [*formerly* *652.3], shorthand machines [*formerly* *653.3]

.62 Printing presses [*formerly* *655.3]

Including manufacture of manual and mechanical presses

[†.63] Apparatus for telecommunication

Class in 621.382–621.389

.7 Other instruments and machines [*formerly* *000–*999]

Divide like 000–999, except as provided for elsewhere in 600–699, e.g., manufacture of textile machinery and equipment [*formerly* †677.8] 681.767 7, medical instruments and apparatus 681.761, agricultural machinery 681.763

.8 Sound and music instruments [*formerly* †*780–†*789]

Including sound recorders and reproducers [*formerly* *621.345]

.81 Conventional musical instruments

Divide like 786–789.6, e.g., manufacture of pipe organs 681.816 6

For manufacture of electronically operated conventional instruments, add 8 to the instrument number, e.g., manufacture of electronic organs 681.816 68

For comprehensive works on musical instruments, see 781.91; *hand construction of a specific musical instrument, the instrument, e.g., violin* 787.12

.82 Mechanical musical instruments

Including manufacture of hand organs, music boxes

.83 Automatic musical players

Including player pianos

681.84 Other sound recorders and reproducers

Including manufacture of dictation machines

.842 Sound records and recorders

Including manufacture of disc, tape, wire, cylinder, belt records

.843 Sound reproducers

Including manufacture of phonographs [*formerly also* †681.135], radiophonographs, automatic record changers

For communication engineering, see 621.382–621.389

.844 Sound-picture recording and reproducing machines

Comprehensive works

For manufacture of cameras and accessories, see 681.13; *of lenses,* 681.42; *of sound recorders,* 681.842; *sound-picture recording,* 778.534 4

682 Small forge work (Blacksmithing)

.1 Horseshoeing

.4 Hand-forged tools and ironwork

For ornamental ironwork, see 739.4

683 Hardware

.3 Locksmithing

Including manufacture of locks, keys, hasps, hinges, catches

.34 Safes and strongboxes

.4 Gunsmithing

Manufacture and repair of small firearms

For ordnance, see 623.4; *arms and armor,* 739.7

.8 Household appliances

.82 Kitchen utensils

Including manufacture of cutlery [*formerly* †672], pots, pans, pails

.83 Electrical appliances

Including manufacture of electrical toasters, waffle irons, flatirons, mixers, vacuum cleaners

683.88 Heavy equipment

Household equipment requiring installation

Including manufacture of stoves and ranges [*formerly* †672], heating equipment, water heaters, washing machines, dryers, dishwashers, garbage disposal units

For manufacture of refrigerators, see 621.57; *of boiler furnaces,* 621.183; *of fans and blowers,* 621.6

684 Manufacture of furnishings and related products

Including construction, repair, refinishing of articles made from wood and other materials

For lumber industry, see 674; *wood handicrafts,* 745.51; *carpentry,* 694

.1 Manufacture of furniture

Including home and office furniture, upholstery

For furniture as home equipment, see 645; *manufacture of doll furniture,* 688.723

.12 Upholstered furniture

Including manufacture of sofas, couches, upholstered chairs

.13 Chairs and tables

For manufacture of upholstered chairs, see 684.12; *of desks,* 684.14

.14 Desks

Including manufacture of metal and wooden desks

.15 Beds

Including manufacture of bedsprings, mattresses

For manufacture of foam rubber mattresses, see 678.532

.18 Garden, patio, porch furniture

Including manufacture of wrought-iron, tubular, rattan furniture

.2 Cabinets

Including manufacture and veneering of chests, dressers, bookcases, china and linen cabinets, file cabinets, shelving, built-in furniture

Class veneering in architectural design and decoration [*formerly* *684.2] in 729.6

For installation of built-in cabinets, shelves, bookcases, see 694.7

684.3 Other furnishings

Including manufacture of draperies, hangings, slip covers, curtains

For machine-made carpets and rugs, see 677.643; *handmade rugs,* 746.7; *manufacture of picture frames,* 674.88

.7 Carriages and wagons

Including manufacture of carts, wheelbarrows

For manufacture of automobiles, see 629.2

.8 Home workshops

Including woodworking manuals, tools, machinery

For making a specific product, see the subject, e.g., chairs 684.13; *manual training in schools,* 371.426; *household repair and home improvement,* 643.7

685 Manufacture of leather goods and related products

For leather processing, e.g., tanning, dressing, see 675.2; *fur dressing,* 675.3; *hand tooling of leather and fur craft,* 745.53

.1 Saddlery and harness making

.2 Leather and fur garment making

.22 Leather garments and accessories

Including manufacture of leather jackets, skirts, trousers, aprons, belts

For leather shoes, see 685.31; *leather gloves and mittens,* 685.4; *handbags and purses,* 685.51

.24 Fur garments and accessories

Fur craftsmanship [*formerly* *687.1]

Including manufacture of fur coats, jackets, stoles, neckpieces, muffs, hats

For fur-trimmed garments, see 687.1; *fur gloves and mittens,* 685.4

.3 Footwear

For rubber overshoes, see 678.33; *rubber soles and heels,* 678.34

.31 Leather and fabric shoes

Manufacture and repair of boots, shoes, slippers of leather, fabric, plastics, composite materials

.32 Wooden shoes

Including manufacture of clogs

.36 Footwear for specific activities

.361 Ice skates

685.362 Roller skates

.363 Snowshoes

Class skis [*formerly* †685.363] in 685.364

.364 Skis [*formerly* †685.363]

.37 Stilts

.38 Orthopedic appliances

For comprehensive works on orthopedic appliances, see 617.307 8

.4 Gloves and mittens

Manufacture of leather, fur, fabric, knitted gloves and mittens

.43 Boxing gloves

.5 Travel and camping equipment

.51 Luggage

Manufacture of trunks, suitcases, valises, handbags, purses, brief cases of leather, fabric, wicker, composite materials

.53 Camping gear

Manufacture of tents, camp beds, campstools, sleeping bags

[†686] Bookbinding

Class in 655.7

687 Apparel manufacture

Class fashion modeling [*formerly* *687] in 659.152

For home sewing and tailoring, see 646.4; *home millinery,* 646.5; *costume,* 391; *leather and fur garment making,* 685.2; *fashion drawing,* 741.672

.1 Commercial garment making

Design, patternmaking and grading, pressing, cutting, tailoring, dressmaking

Including manufacture of fur-trimmed garments

Class fur craftsmanship [*formerly* *687.1] in 685.24

For comprehensive works on clothing design, see 646.01

.11 Men's apparel

.12 Women's apparel

.13 Children's apparel

Including infants' apparel, layettes

687.15 Special types of garments

Including manufacture of uniforms, ceremonial and academic robes, ecclesiastical vestments

.19 Dress accessories

Including manufacture of collars, cuffs, ties, scarves, handkerchiefs, belts, jabots

For leather belts, see 685.22

.2 Underwear

Including manufacture of lingerie, night clothes, dressing gowns

.25 Foundation garments

Including corsets, brassières

.3 Knitwear

For underwear, see 687.2

.32 Hosiery

.38 Sweaters

.4 Commercial hatmaking

Comprehensive works on manufacture of hats

For felt hatmaking, see 677.635; *fur hatmaking,* 685.24

.41 Men's hats

.42 Millinery

.8 Industries auxiliary to garment making (Notions)

Including manufacture of buttons, hooks and eyes, snaps, slide fasteners, needles, pins, shoulder pads, dress shields

For manufacture of thread, see 677.028 62

688 Manufacture of small articles

For manufacture of miscellaneous products, see 679; *of notions,* 687.8; *of minor wood products,* 674.88; *of dress accessories,* 687.19

.1 Models and modelmaking

Comprehensive works

For making models of a specific object, see the subject, e.g., train models 625.19

.2 Costume jewelry

Mass production of costume ornaments from inferior metals and ornamental stones, and from miscellaneous materials

For jewelry made of precious metals, see 739.27; *handmade ornaments, the specific craft, e.g., shell craft* 745.55

688.4 **Smokers' supplies**

Including manufacture of pipes, hookahs, cigarette holders and cases, tobacco pouches, lighters, ash trays

For tobacco products, see 679.7

.5 **Accessories for personal grooming**

Including manufacture of razors and razor blades, electric shavers, combs, nail care tools, tweezers

For brushes, see 679.6; *cosmetics,* 668.55

.7 **Recreational equipment**

For use of equipment in recreational activities, see 790–799; *recreational equipment made of rubber,* 678

.72 Toys for children

For playing with toys, see 649.55

.722 Dolls

Including manufacture of puppets and marionettes

.723 Doll houses and furniture

.724 Stuft toys other than dolls

.728 Mechanical [*formerly* †681.15] and electrical toys

Including musical toys

For manufacture of aerial toys, see 688.761 5

688.74–688.79 Equipment for games and sports

.74 Equipment for games of skill

Divide like 794, e.g., manufacture of chessmen 688.741

.75 Equipment for games of chance

Divide like 795, e.g., manufacture of playing cards 688.754

.76 Equipment for outdoor sports and games

Divide like 796, e.g., manufacture of tennis rackets 688.763 42

For manufacture of boxing gloves, see 685.43; *of footwear for specific activities,* 685.36–685.37; *of motor vehicles,* 629.2; *of camping gear,* 685.53

.79 Equipment for fishing

Including manufacture of fishing rods, creels, fishhooks, flies

689

690 Building construction

Erection of buildings

For design and construction of specific types of buildings, see 725–728; *of other structures, the structure, e.g., bridges* 624.2; *of elementary forms for buildings,* 721; *comprehensive works on civil engineering,* 624

691 Building construction materials

Including selection, deterioration, preservation, construction properties

For comprehensive works on engineering properties and tests of specific materials, see 620.12–620.199; *comprehensive works on properties and tests of a specific material, the subject, e.g., of wood* 674.13; *a specific type of building construction, the type, e.g., steel construction* 693.7; *structural design in kinds of material,* 624.18; *building materials for libraries,* 022.2

.1 **Timber**

.12 Decay and its prevention

Spraying, painting, impregnating timber with coal-tar creosote, zinc chloride, other fungicides

Including weathering, fungi penetration, dry rot

For painting as a finishing detail in construction, see 698.1

.14 Termite damage and its prevention

Including impregnation of timber with termite-resistant chemicals; artificial petrifaction of timber

For termite-resistant construction, see 693.842

.15 Treatment for fire resistance

Impregnation of timber with monomagnesium, monoammonium, diammonium phosphates

For fireproof construction, see 693.82

.2 **Building stones**

Including granite, limestone, marble, sandstone, slate

.3 **Concrete and reinforst concrete**

.4 **Ceramic and clay materials**

Including brick, tile, adobe

691.5 **Masonry adhesives**

Including gypsum plaster, lime, Portland cement

.6 **Glass**

Including glass blocks

For ornamental glass design, see 729.8

.7 **Structural iron and steel**

.8 **Other structural metals**

.87 Structural aluminum

.9 **Other building materials**

.92 Plastics

.95 Insulating materials

Including rock wool, asbestos, wallboard

.96 Bituminous materials

Asphalts and tars used for roofing and waterproofing

.97 Prefabricated housing materials

For design and construction of prefabricated houses, see 728.64

692 Construction business practices

.1 **Architect's plans**

Rough sketches and working drawings of buildings

Including blueprints of building plans

For plans of a specific building, see 725–728

.2 **Architect's detail drawings**

Including large-scale drawings of trims, moldings, other details of buildings

For detail drawings of a specific building, see 725–728

.3 **Building standards and specifications**

Including specification writing; comprehensive works on contracts and specifications

For building contracts, see 692.4

.4 **Building contracts**

Including lump-sum and cost-plus-fee contracts, subcontracts

692.5 **Quantities and costs**

Including estimates of materials, time, labor costs; estimating methods

.6 **Building supervision**

.8 **Contracting as a profession**

Including practices, fees, commissions

For architecture as a profession, see 720.69

.9 **Building laws and codes [*formerly also* †614.784, †614.85]**

Regulations of construction, alteration, repair, remodeling, moving, zoning, maintenance, occupancy

Divide like 940–999, e.g., building codes of Massachusetts 692.974 4

For laws and regulations on electric installations, see 621.300 7; *plumbing codes,* 696.9

693 Systems of building construction

Techniques, machinery, tools

Including comprehensive works on building construction methods and materials

For building construction materials, see 691; *design in specific materials,* 624.18; *design and construction of a specific type of building,* 725–728; *design and construction of elementary forms for buildings,* 721; *wood construction,* 694

693.1–693.542 Masonry construction

.1 **Stone masonry**

Including stonecutting [*formerly also* †515.81]

.2 **Stabilized earth construction**

.21 Brick masonry

Including brickwork, bricklaying

For hollow brick masonry, see 693.4

.22 Adobe construction

Including pisé and other prest earth building construction

.3 **Tile and terra cotta masonry**

For hollow tile masonry, see 693.4

693.4 **Hollow block masonry**

Including concrete block [*formerly* †693.5], cinder block, hollow tile, hollow brick masonry

.5 **Concrete and reinforst concrete masonry**

Class concrete block masonry [*formerly* †693.5] in 693.4

.52 Concrete masonry

.522 Precast concrete masonry

Including precast reinforst concrete masonry

For concrete block and cinder block masonry, see 693.4

.54 Reinforst concrete masonry [*formerly* †721.97]

For precast reinforst concrete masonry, see 693.522

.542 Prestressed concrete masonry

.6 **Plaster and lathwork**

Including stucco, scagliola, other types of internal and external plastering

.7 **Steel construction [*formerly* †721.93]**

Methods of erection of structural steel parts and supports for buildings

Including riveted, bolted, arc welded construction; structural steel framing

For reinforst concrete masonry, see 693.54; *welding operations,* 671.52

.8 **Resistant construction**

For resistant construction of libraries, see 022.2

.82 Fireproof construction

Including fireproofing of schools [*formerly* †371.627 8]

.83 Insulated construction

.832 Thermal insulation

For air conditioning, see 697.93

.834 Acoustical insulation (Soundproofing)

.84 Pest-resistant construction

.842 Termite-resistant construction

.844 Rodent-resistant construction

693.85 Shock-resistant construction

.852 Earthquake-resistant construction

.854 Blast-resistant construction

Including bombproof construction

For design and construction of air-raid shelters, see 623.388

.89 Other types of resistant construction

.892 Waterproof construction

For foundations, see 721.1; *roofs,* 721.5

.893 Moistureproof construction

Including constructional control of condensation in buildings

For ventilating and air conditioning, see 697.9

.898 Lightning-resistant construction

.9 **Ice and snow construction**

Including construction of igloos

For ice crossings, see 625.892

694 Wood construction (Structural woodworking)

Including carpentry [*formerly also* †515.82], structural joinery

.02 Carpentry manuals

.024 Manuals for amateur carpenters

.2 **Rough carpentry (Framing)**

Construction of frame of wooden structures

Including posts [*formerly* †694.4], beams [*formerly* †694.3], walls, floors, partition frames, sidings, sills, joists

For roofing and roofing materials, see 695; *design and construction of interior details of buildings,* 721

.28 Scaffolding in building

[†.3–†.4] Beams, posts

Class in 694.2

694.6 **Finish carpentry**

Construction of interior details [*formerly* *695]

For design and construction of a specific interior detail, see the subject, e.g., doorways 721.8

.7 Fine joinery

Including built-in cabinets, shelves, bookcases

For manufacture of furniture and fine woodwork, see 684.1–684.2

.8 Stairbuilding [*formerly also* †515.83]

695 Roofing and roofing materials

Covering and repairing roofs

Including installation, maintenance, repair of roof gutters and flashings

Class construction of interior details [*formerly* *695] in 694.6

For comprehensive works on roofs, see 721.5; *roof design,* 729.35; *roof engineering,* 624.9; *selection, deterioration, and preservation of building construction materials,* 691

.1 **Wooden shingle roofing**

.2 **Slate roofing**

.3 **Concrete [*formerly* †695.6] and tile roofing**

.4 **Metal roofing**

Including metal sheet roofing

For iron and steel roofing, see 695.5

.43 Copper roofing

.44 Lead roofing

.46 Tin roofing

.47 Aluminum roofing

.5 **Iron and steel roofing**

.6 **Composition roofing**

Including asbestos roofing, prepared roll roofing [*both formerly* †695.7], mineral-surfaced asphalt shingles, asbestos-cement roofing

Class concrete roofing [*formerly* †695.6] in 695.3

695.7 **Textile roofing [*formerly also* †695.8]**

Including felt, duck, canvas roofing

Class asbestos roofing, prepared roll roofing [*both formerly* †695.7] in 695.6

[†.8] **Textile roofing**

Class in 695.7

.9 **Other roofings**

Including thatch roofing

696 Plumbing and pipe fitting

Design, installation, supplies, repair of pipes and plumbing fixtures

Including comprehensive works on plumbing, heating, ventilation

For heating, ventilation, and air conditioning engineering, see 697; *roof gutters and flashings,* 695; *sanitary and municipal engineering,* 628

.1 **Water pipes and fixtures**

For hot-water pipes and fixtures, see 696.6

.12 Water-supply plumbing

Pipes bringing clean water into structures

Including valves, cocks, faucets

For domestic water supply, see 644.6

.13 Water drainage plumbing

Pipes removing contaminated water, sewage, and other wastes from structures

Including house drainage [*formerly* †628.6, *628], venting

.18 Plumbing and plumbing fixtures in specific parts of buildings

.182 Lavatory plumbing

Including water closets, tub and shower fixtures, basins

.183 Laundry plumbing

.184 Kitchen plumbing

Including installation of garbage disposal units, dish washers

.2 **Gas pipes and fixtures**

696.3 **Steam pipes and fixtures**

For steam heating, see 697.5

.6 **Hot-water pipes and fixtures**

Including installation of water heaters, water-softening equipment, repair of calkt joints

For hot-water heating, see 697.4

.8 **Other plumbing services**

Including thawing of frozen water pipes in buildings

For thawing frozen water mains, see 628.15

.9 **Plumbing laws and codes**

Divide like 940–999, e.g., plumbing codes of Oregon 696.979 5

697 Heating, ventilating, air conditioning engineering [*formerly also* †628.8]

Including principles, systems, equipment, installation, maintenance and repair

Class comprehensive works on domestic heating and ventilating [*formerly* *697] in 644

697.1–697.2 Local heating

.1 **Open fires**

Heating rooms with wood, coal, charcoal, gas fires in fireplaces, braziers

Class convectors in 697.32; radiators in 697.507 8; district heating in 697.54 [*all formerly* *697.1]

.2 **Space heaters**

Class radiant panel heating in 697.72; solar heating in 697.78 [*both formerly* *697.2]

.22 Stationary stoves

Including stoves burning wood, coal, charcoal, gas, oil

For cooking stoves, see 643.3

.24 Portable heaters

Including oil, gas, electric heaters

697.3 **Central heating systems**

Including central systems using gas, oil, coal, coke, wood

For radiant panel heating, see 697.72

.32 Warm-air heating

Including convectors [*formerly* *697.1], heat pump heating

For heat pumps, see 621.563

.322 Gravity circulation systems

.323 Forst circulation systems

For year-round air conditioning, see 697.933

.4 Hot-water heating

Including boilers, accessories, e.g., radiators

.5 Steam heating

.507 8 Radiators [*formerly* *697.1]

Comprehensive works

For radiators used in a specific system of heating, see the system, e.g., radiators in hot-water heating 697.4

.52 Steam heating single buildings

.54 District heating [*formerly* *697.1]

Heating a group of buildings from a central station

.7 **Other methods of heating buildings**

Class comprehensive works on induction and conduction heating [*formerly* *697.7] in 621.396

.72 Radiant panel heating [*formerly* *697.2]

Including hot-air, hot-water, steam, and electric radiant panel heating

For portable electric heaters, see 697.24

.78 Solar heating [*formerly* *697.2]

For solar houses, see 728.69

.79 Nuclear heating

.8 **Chimneys and flues**

697.9 Ventilation and air conditioning in buildings

Including comprehensive works

For ventilation and air conditioning in structures other than buildings, see the subject, e.g., ventilation and air conditioning in airplanes 629.134 42

.92 Ventilation in buildings

Including ventilating fans, blowers, exhausters, punkas

For chimneys and flues, see 697.8

.93 Air conditioning in buildings

For thermal insulation, see 693.832; *refrigeration,* 621.56

.931 Principles of air conditioning

Including principles of air distribution, humidification and dehumidification, temperature controls; design of air conditioning systems; psychrometric considerations

.933 Central station systems of air conditioning

Selection, installation, operation, maintenance and repair

Including conduit system, year-round air conditioning

For heating systems, see 697.1–697.78

.934 Unit installations for air conditioning

.935–.938 Air conditioning in specific types of buildings

Divide like 725–728, e.g., air conditioning in hotels 697.938 5

For home ventilation and air conditioning, see 644.5

698 Detail finishing in building construction

Including application, installation of decorative and protective coatings and coverings

For interior decoration, see 747

.1 Painting in building construction

Including mixing and application methods

For painting structures other than buildings, see the structure, e.g., motor vehicle bodywork 629.26

.12 Exterior painting

.128 Sign painting

698.14 Interior painting

Including painting floors, walls, ceilings

For painting woodwork, see 698.3

.2 Calcimining in building construction

Including whitewashing

.3 Wood finishing

Staining, polishing, varnishing, waxing, graining, marbling

Including painting and enameling woodwork

.5 Glazing and leading windows

.6 Paper hanging

[†.7] Wall hangings

Class in 747.3

[†.8] Relief work

Class in 729.5

.9 Floor coverings

Measuring, cutting, laying linoleum, tiles, carpeting

For decorative treatment of floors, see 747.4

[†699] Rolling stock

Class in 625.22

The Arts

700 The arts

Fine, decorative, graphic, useful, sportive arts

For literature, see 800; *costume,* 391

701 Philosophic aspects of art

For philosophic aspects of a specific field of art, see the subject, e.g., philosophy of music 780.1

.1 Theories of art

.15 Psychology of art

[†.16] Styles in art

Class in 709.01–709.04

.17 Esthetics of art

For comprehensive works on esthetics, see 111.85

.18 Art criticism and appreciation

.184 Audio-visual aids in art appreciation

.8 Art techniques

Including composition, use of models

702 Handbooks and outlines

703 Dictionaries and encyclopedias

704 Essays and lectures

.9 Collected writings on art

Divide like form division 08, e.g., sales catalogs 704.95

.94 Specific subjects in art

Comprehensive works on art in more than one field considered primarily from viewpoint of subject treatment

For the work of a specific artist, see the history of art in the specific country regardless of subject, e.g., nudes of Michelangelo (sculptured and painted) 709.45; *the work of an artist in a specific field of art, the history of the field of art in the specific country, e.g., religious paintings of Michelangelo* 759.5

704.942 Human figure in art

Including portraits

.942 1 Nude figures

.942 2 Draped figures

.942 3 Men

.942 4 Women

.942 5 Children [*formerly also* †136.757]

.942 6 Groups

.943 Nature in art

Including landscapes, seascapes

.943 2 Animals

.943 4 Plants and flowers

.944 Architectural subjects in art

.945 Devices, patterns, ornamentation in art

.946 Symbolism and allegory in art

For religious symbolism in art, see 704.948

.947 Mythology in art

Including gods, goddesses, mythological heroes, other legendary characters

.948 Religion in art

Including religious symbolism in art

.948 2 Christian art

For use and symbolism of art in religious services and buildings, see 246

[†.948 3] Early Christian and Byzantine art

Class in 709.02

.948 4 Biblical characters in art

For Trinity in art, see 704.948 5; *apostles and saints,* 704.948 6; *devils,* 704.948 7

704.948 5 Trinity in art

Including God, Jesus Christ, Holy Ghost in art

.948 55 Madonna and child in art

.948 56 Holy Family in art

.948 6 Apostles and saints in art

Including angels in art

.948 7 Devils in art

.948 9 Other religions in art

Divide like 294–299, e.g., Buddha in art 704.948 943

For Biblical characters in art, see 704.948 4; *mythology in art,* 704.947; *symbolism in non-Christian religions,* 291.37

.949 Other specific subjects in art

Divide like 000–999 except as provided for above, e.g., representation of industrial subjects 704.949 6

705 Periodicals

706 Organizations and societies

.9 Persons in relation to art

Including art as a profession

Divide like 920–928, e.g., doctors as artists 706.961

.907 Women and children as artists

.992 Art patrons and patronage

.994 Art dealers

707 Study and teaching

For audio-visual aids in art appreciation, see 701.184

708 Art galleries and museums, private collections

Including collections of antiques

Use 708.001–708.009 for form divisions

For collected writings on art, see 704.9

.01–.07 Museum economy

Divide like 069.1–069.7, e.g., art forgeries 708.054

708.1–708.999 Art galleries and museums, private collections in specific countries

Including histories, guidebooks; comprehensive catalogs of art galleries and museums, private collections

For exhibits other than in specific museums, see 707.4

708.1 United States and Canada

.11 Canada

.13 United States

.14–.19 States in the United States

Divide like 974–979, e.g., galleries in New York State 708.147

.2 England

Including comprehensive works on art galleries and museums, private collections in Great Britain and Ireland

For Scotland, see 708.941; *Ireland,* 708.941 5; *Wales,* 708.942 9

.3 Germany

Divide like 943 for art galleries and museums, private collections in countries whose history classes in 943, e.g., in Poland 708.38

.4 France

.5 Italy

.6 Spain

.69 Portugal

.7 Union of Soviet Socialist Republics (Russia)

.71 Finland

.8 Scandinavia

.81 Norway

.85 Sweden

.89 Denmark

.9 Other countries

Divide like 930–999 except as provided for above, e.g., Mexican galleries 708.972

709 History of art

Development, critical appraisal, collections of works of specific periods and schools of art

For history of a specific field of art, see the subject, e.g., history of painting 759

709.01–709.04 Historic periods of art

Art of the same chronological period extending over more than one country

Including styles in art [*formerly* †701.16]

For art in a specific country or by an individual artist, see the national school regardless of period, e.g., primitive African art 709.6

.01 Ancient art [*formerly also* †709.3]

Comprehensive works

For art in specific ancient countries, see subdivisions of 709.3

.011 Art of primitive peoples

For prehistoric art, see 571.7

.02 Medieval art

Including early Christian, Byzantine [*both formerly* †704.948 3]; Romanesque, Gothic art

.03 Renaissance art, 1400–1600

Including classicism

Class 20th century art [*formerly* *709.03] in 709.04

.033 17th and 18th century art

Including baroque and rococo art

.035 19th century art

Including neoclassicism; comprehensive works on modern art

For 20th century art, see 709.04

.04 20th century art [*formerly* *709.03]

Including cubism, surrealism, abstraction, other international movements

709.3–.9 **Art of specific countries**

Including works of individual artists in more than one specific field of art regardless of subject or period

Divide like 930–999, e.g., works of Michelangelo 709.45

Class comprehensive works on ancient art [*formerly* †709.3] in 709.01

710 Landscape and civic art

For architecture of buildings, see 720

711 Area planning

Design and control of human environmental areas for beauty, comfort, convenience, health

For landscape gardening, see 712; *social planning,* 309.2; *economic planning,* 338.9; *maps,* 912

.01 Theory

Class population trends [*formerly* *711.01] in 711.13

[.026] Laws and regulations

Class in 711.172

[.061] Government organizations

Class in 711.173

.1 Practical aspects of area planning

Including economic aspects, technical procedures

.12 Professional practice

Including collection of data, preparation of plans, models, presentation, estimation of cost, supervision

.13 Social factors affecting planning

Including population trends [*formerly* *711.01]

For population statistics, see 312; *social change,* 301.24

.17 Legislation and administration

.172 Laws and regulations

For zoning laws, see 711.51; *land economics,* 333

.173 Administration

Including government planning departments, commissions

.2 National and international planning [*formerly* *309.22–*309.23]

711.3 **Regional planning [*formerly* *309.24]**

State [*formerly* *309.25], interstate, county planning

Including rural development programs

For planning metropolitan areas, see 711.43

.4 **City planning [*formerly also* †614.781]**

Comprehensive works

Including designs and plans for specific types of cities

For planning specific city areas, see 711.5; *planning transportation facilities,* 711.7; *other utilities,* 711.8; *structural elements in city planning,* 711.6

.409 History and local treatment

Including plans and planning for specific cities regardless of type

Divide like 930–999, e.g., master plan for Newark, New Jersey 711.409 749 32

.41 Plans based on street patterns

Including gridiron, radial, studied irregularity plans

.42 Plans based on topography and climate

.43 Plans based on size

Including plans for metropolitan areas

.45 Plans based on function

Including capital, industrial, resort cities; cities serving primarily as religious [*formerly* †711.46], educational [*formerly* †711.47], residential [*formerly* †711.48] centers

[†.46–†.48] Religious, educational, residential cities

Class in 711.45

.5 **Planning specific city areas**

.51 Zoning laws and regulations

Divide like 940–999, e.g., zoning laws of Chicago 711.517 731 1

[†*.52] Recreational areas; blighted areas

Class recreational areas [*formerly* *711.52] in 711.558; blighted areas [*formerly* †711.52] in 711.59

711.55 Planning functional areas

Class cultural and intellectual centers [*formerly* *711.55] in 711.57

For plans of cities based on functions, see 711.45

.551 Planning civic centers

Including administrative, governmental areas; centers for public works

For cultural and intellectual centers, see 711.57

.552 Planning commercial areas

Including shipping centers [*formerly* †711.553], industrial centers [*formerly* †711.554], business districts, shopping centers

For transportation facilities in city planning, see 711.7

[†.553–†.554] Planning shipping centers, industrial centers

Class in 711.552

.555 Planning medical centers

.556 Planning prison and reformatory areas

.557 Planning hotel and restaurant areas

Including motels, tourist camps

.558 Planning recreational areas [*formerly* *711.52]

Including parks [*formerly also* †614.783], playgrounds, plazas, bathing beaches, athletic fields, theater districts

For landscaping public parks, see 712.5; *water parks,* 714; *planning preservation of public parks,* 719.32

.56 Planning areas for religious centers

.57 Planning cultural and intellectual areas [*formerly* *711.55]

Including areas for libraries, museums, colleges, universities, other schools

.58 Planning residential areas

Including neighborhood and community planning in suburban and rural residential areas, apartment house districts

For residential architecture, see 728; *residential landscape design,* 712.6; *sociological aspects of community planning,* 309.26; *planning low-cost and low-rental housing,* 711.59

[†.585–†.586] Slums, blighted areas

Class in 711.59

711.59 Planning urban redevelopment

Including slums [*formerly* †711.585] and slum clearance, blighted areas [*formerly* †711.52, †711.586], and their redevelopment, planning low-cost and low-rental housing

.6 Structural elements in city planning

Adaptation of structures to surroundings

Including site planning

For structures in landscaping, see 717

.7 Planning transportation facilities

Planning for national, international, regional, local transportation

.73 Planning for motor traffic and transport

Including planning for terminal facilities [*formerly* †711.77]

.74 Planning for pedestrian traffic

.75 Planning for railroad transport

Including planning for terminal facilities [*formerly* †711.77], local street railways, rapid transit systems; subways and elevated ways [*formerly also* †614.782]

.76 Planning for marine transport

Including planning for terminal facilities [*formerly* †711.77], ports, harbors, waterfronts

[†.77] Terminal facilities

Class in 711.73, 711.75–711.76, 711.78

.78 Planning for air transport

Including planning for terminal facilities [*formerly* †629.136 2, †711.77]

.8 Planning for other utilities

Including planning for water supply, sanitation, power transmission, subsurface pipes and pipelines

712 Landscape architecture (Landscape gardening)

For planning natural landscape reserves, see 719

.2 Principles of landscape design

Including esthetics, style, effect, composition

.3 Professional practice

Including preparation and presentation of plans, estimation of cost, supervision

712.5 Landscaping public parks and grounds

Including landscaping commons, fairgrounds, amusement parks, zoological and botanical gardens, grounds of public buildings

For landscaping semiprivate and institutional grounds, see 712.7; *roads and highways,* 713

[†.53] Water parks and recreational waterfronts

Class in 714

.6 Landscaping private parks and grounds

Including residential landscape design

.62 Landscaping home gardens

Including design of back yards, penthouse gardens, gardens devoted to special plants, e.g., old-fashioned, rose, rock gardens

.64 Landscaping private estates

.7 Landscaping semiprivate and institutional grounds

Including landscaping grounds of country clubs, golf clubs, hotels, hospitals, churches, universities, industrial plants

For landscaping public grounds, see 712.5; *roads and highways,* 713

713 Landscaping roads and highways

Including landscaping streets, paths, promenades, other public thorofares

714 Water features in landscaping

Including design of water parks and recreational waterfronts [*both formerly* †712.53]; esthetic use of artificial pools, fountains, cascades

715 Woody plants in landscaping

Including use of flowering woody plants in landscaping

For botany of woody plants, see 582.15; *herbaceous plants in landscaping,* 716

.1 Topiary work

Training and trimming woody plants into ornamental shapes

.2 Trees in landscaping

For forestry, see 634.9; *commercial raising of ornamental trees,* 635.977

.3 Shrubs in landscaping

.4 Woody vines in landscaping

716 Herbaceous plants in landscaping

Including lawns, mosses, ferns, hothouse plants, ornamental and flowering herbaceous plants

For woody plants in landscaping, see 715; *floriculture,* 635.9; *herbaceous plants in botany,* 582.12

717 Structures in landscaping

Including relationship of buildings, terraces, fences, gates, steps, ornamental accessories to other elements of landscape design

For architectural design, see 729; *building construction,* 690

718 Planning cemeteries

Design, laws and regulations, administration

Including consideration of approaches, plantings, monuments, markers, buildings in planning

For mortuary architecture, see 726.8; *disposal of dead,* 614.6; *burial customs,* 393

.8 Planning national memorial cemeteries

719 Planning natural landscape reserves

Planning for preservation of natural scenery

Including administration, laws and regulations

For conservation policies on land resources, see 333.72

.3 Types of reserved lands

For economic aspects of specific natural resources, see 333.7–333.92

.32 Public parks and natural monuments

Including international, national, state, local parks

For planning recreational areas in cities, see 711.558; *landscaping public parks,* 712.5; *water parks,* 714

.33 Forest and water-supply reserves

For forest economics, see 634.92

.36 Wildlife reserves

720 Architecture

Plan, design, construction, decorative treatment of buildings

For structural elements in city planning, see 711.6; *in landscape architecture,* 717; *naval architecture,* 623.81; *building construction and materials,* 690; *architects' plans and drawings,* 692.1–692.2; *architectural drawing,* 744.424

.69 Architecture as a profession

Including licensing and registration of architects

For directories of architects, see 720.58; *contracting as a profession,* 692.8

.9 History and local treatment

Including periods of architecture in specific countries [*formerly* †723–†724], development and critical appraisal of architecture in specific countries; comprehensive works on individual architects

Divide like 940–999, e.g., French architecture 720.944

For ancient architecture, see 722; *medieval, Renaissance, modern periods of architecture extending over more than one country,* 723–724; *works of an individual architect on a specific subject, the subject, e.g., cathedrals* 726.6

[†*.93] Ancient architecture

Class in 722

721 Architectural construction

Comprehensive works on design and construction [*formerly* *729.3] of structural elements of buildings

Including design and construction of interior details of buildings, e.g., walls, partitions

For design of structural elements, see 729.3; *structural engineering,* 624.1; *design and construction of specific buildings,* 725–728; *building construction,* 690

.1 Foundations for buildings

For foundation engineering, see 624.15

.2 Walls for buildings

Including design and construction of footings, arcades, colonnades, entablatures and their parts, gable walls, partitions, bearing and retaining walls of buildings

For design of walls, see 729.31; *columnar constructions,* 721.3; *curved constructions,* 721.4

721.3 **Columnar constructions**

Including design and construction of piers, abutments, colonnettes, columns, posts, pedestals for buildings

For columnar design, see 729.32; *colonnades and entablatures,* 721.2; *columnar doors and windows,* 721.8

.4 **Curved constructions**

Including design and construction of curved details in buildings

For design and construction of arcades, see 721.2; *of door and window arches,* 721.8; *structural design of arches,* 624.177

.41 Arches [*formerly also* †721.42]

For arch design, see 729.33; *groined arches,* 721.44

[†.42] Other arches

Class in 721.41

.43 Vaults

For vault design, see 729.34

.44 Groined vaults

Including groined arches

.45 Other types of vaults

Including design and construction of tunnel, expanding, rib and fan vaults

.46 Domes [*formerly also* †721.47]

For cupulated roofs, see 721.5

[†.47] Other domes

Class in 721.46

.48 Niches

.5 **Roofs**

Including design and construction of dormers, roof cornices, skylights, cupulated roofs, spires, pinnacles, gable roofs

For roof design, see 729.35; *covering and repairing roofs,* 695; *roof engineering,* 624.9

.6 **Floors**

For floor coverings, see 698.9; *decorative treatment of floors,* 747.4

.7 **Ceilings**

For ceiling design, see 729.34; *decorative treatment of ceilings,* 747.3

721.8 **Other architectural elements**

Including design and construction of doors, doorways, portals, windows, enclosures of doors and windows, balconies, porches, verandas, shutters, blinds, louvers, fastenings

For design of these elements, see 729.38

[†.9–†.92] **Cast and wrought ironwork**

Class in 739.4

[†.93] **Steel construction**

Class in 693.7

[†.97] **Reinforst concrete masonry**

Class in 693.54

722–724 Architectural periods

Chronological development of architectural styles

Including architecture of the same chronological period extending over more than one country

For architectural periods in specific countries, see 720.9; *a specific kind of building in a specific style, the kind, e.g., Gothic cathedrals* 726.6

722 **Ancient architecture [*formerly also* †*720.93]**

.1 **Ancient Oriental architecture**

Comprehensive works

Including ancient Chinese and Japanese architecture

For ancient Southeast Asian architecture, see 722.4; *ancient west Asian architecture,* 722.5; *comprehensive works on Oriental architecture,* 720.95

.2 **Ancient Egyptian architecture**

.3 **Ancient Semitic architecture**

.31 Phoenician architecture

Including architecture of Tyre, Sidon, Beirut, Byblos

.32 Colonial Phoenician architecture

Including architecture of ancient Carthage, Utica, Cadiz, Cyprus

.33 Ancient Jewish architecture

.4 **Ancient architecture of Southeast Asia**

Including architecture of ancient India, Tibet, Burma, Siam, Cambodia, Java

722.5 **Ancient Near Eastern architecture**

For ancient Semitic architecture, see 722.3; *ancient Egyptian architecture,* 722.2

.51 Ancient Mesopotamian architecture

Architecture of Tigris-Euphrates Valley

Including Assyro-Babylonian, Chaldean architecture

.52 Ancient Persian architecture

.6 **Classical architecture**

For classical revival architecture, see 724.2

.61 Aegean (Cretan) architecture

Including Minoan, Mycenaean architecture

.62 Etruscan architecture

.7 Roman architecture

.8 Greek (Hellenic) architecture

.9 **Other types of ancient architecture**

.91 Pre-Columbian American architecture

Including ancient architecture of Pueblo, Aztec, Toltec, Maya, Inca Indians

723 Medieval architecture, ca. 300–1400

Class medieval architecture in specific countries [*formerly* †723] in 720.9

.1 **Early Christian architecture**

.2 **Byzantine architecture**

.3 **Saracenic architecture**

Including Moslem, Moorish, Mudejar architecture

.4 **Romanesque architecture**

Including Norman architecture

For Romanesque revival architecture, see 724.8

.5 **Gothic architecture**

For Gothic revival architecture, see 724.3

724 Renaissance and modern architecture, 1400–

Class Renaissance and modern architecture in specific countries [*formerly* †724] in 720.9

.1 **Renaissance architecture, 1400–1800**

Including Elizabethan, Jacobean, Queen Anne, Georgian, colonial styles of architecture

For these styles of architecture in a specific country, see the architecture of the country, e.g., American colonial architecture 720.973, *Queen Anne architecture in England* 720.942; *Renaissance revival architecture,* 724.5

.19 Baroque and rococo architecture

Including Churrigueresque architecture

.2 **Classical revival architecture**

For neoclassical architecture, see 724.5

.22 Roman revival architecture

.23 Greek revival architecture

.3 **Gothic revival architecture**

.5 **Renaissance revival architecture**

Including neoclassical architecture [*formerly* †724.6]

For classical revival architecture, see 724.2

[†.6] Neoclassical architecture

Class in 724.5

.7 **Swiss timber and half-timber architecture**

.8 **Romanesque revival architecture**

.9 **20th century architecture**

Including modern functional architecture

725–728 Specific types of buildings

Plans, detail drawings, design, construction of specific buildings and types of buildings and their elements

For works limited to construction and materials of a specific type of building, see 690–698

725 Public buildings

For ecclesiastical buildings, see 726; *educational and research buildings,* 727

SUMMARY

725.1	Government buildings
.2	Commercial buildings
.3	Transportation and storage buildings
.4	Industrial buildings
.5	Health and welfare buildings
.6	Prisons and reformatories
.7	Refreshment and park buildings
.8	Recreation buildings
.9	Other public buildings

725.1 Government buildings

For architecture of prisons and reformatories, see 725.6

.11 Capitols

Including international, national, state legislative buildings

.12 Executive departments

Including departments, ministries of justice, foreign affairs, defense

.13 County and city buildings

Including city halls, hôtels de ville

.14 Customs buildings

.15 Courthouses

Including international, national, state, county, municipal courthouses

.158 Archives buildings

Including halls of records

.16 Post offices

.17 Official residences

Including executive mansions, palaces of rulers, embassies, legations, consulates

.18 Military buildings

Including barracks, forts, armories, arsenals

.188 Police stations

.19 Other government buildings

Including municipal and private waterworks, sanitation plants, light and power plants

.191 Fire stations

725.2 Commercial buildings

.21 Stores and shops

Including shopping centers

.22 Combined store, office and apartment buildings

.23 Office buildings

Including skyscrapers, medical office buildings and clinics

.235 Radio and television buildings

Including radio and television towers

.24 Financial institutions

Including banks, trust and investment institutions

.25 Exchanges

Including stock and commodity exchanges, boards of trade, chambers of commerce

.3 Transportation and storage buildings

.31 Railroad passenger stations

.32 Railroad freight stations

.33 Accessory railroad buildings

Including roundhouses, shops, tool houses, guard and signal houses

.34 Marine transportation buildings

Including harbor, dock, pier buildings

.35 Warehouses

.36 Storage elevators

Including grain and ore elevators

.38 Motor vehicle transportation buildings

Including bus terminals, public garages, filling stations

.39 Air transportation buildings

Including hangars, terminal buildings, shops

.4 Industrial buildings

Including factories, mills, shipyards

.5 Health and welfare buildings

For medical office buildings and clinics, see 725.23

.51 General hospitals and sanitariums

For children's hospitals, see 725.57

725.52 Psychiatric hospitals

Including institutions for alcoholics [*formerly* †725.65], drug addicts [*formerly* †725.66]

.53 Institutions for the mentally deficient

.54 Institutions for the physically handicapt

.55 Institutions for the indigent

.56 Institutions for the aged

.57 Child welfare institutions

Including children's general hospitals, institutions for dependent children [*formerly* †725.58]

[†.58] Institutions for dependent children

Class in 725.57

.59 Other welfare institutions

Including homes for veterans

For hospitals, see 725.51–725.52

.592 Veterinary hospitals and clinics

.6 Prisons and reformatories

Including juvenile reformatories, internment camps

[†.65–†.66] Institutions for alcoholics, drug addicts

Class in 728.52

.7 Refreshment and park buildings

For recreation buildings, see 725.8

.71 Restaurants

Including drive-in restaurants

.72 Taprooms

.73 Bathhouses

.74 Swimming pools

[†.75] Buildings for watering places and health resorts

Class in 728.5

.76 Park buildings

Including amusement park buildings [*formerly* †725.77], casinos [*formerly* †725.78]

[†.77–†.78] Amusement park buildings, casinos

Class in 725.76

725.8 Recreation buildings

For refreshment and park buildings, see 725.7

.81 Music halls

Including concert and orchestra halls

.82 Theaters

Including motion-picture theaters, opera houses

.827 Stadiums

Including amphitheaters, buildings for outdoor sports

.83 Auditoriums

.84 Buildings for indoor games

Including boys' clubs, bowling alleys; halls for pool, indoor tennis, card games, chess, checkers

.85 Gymnasiums and athletic clubs

.86 Rinks and dance halls

.87 Boathouses

Including canoe clubs, yacht clubs, recreation piers

.88 Riding clubs

.89 Other recreation buildings

Including race tracks

.9 Other public buildings

.91 Exhibition buildings

Including fair buildings

.94 Memorial buildings

Including war memorial buildings

.97 Towers

Comprehensive works

Including bell towers, clock towers, observatory towers

For a specific type of tower, see the type, e.g., church towers 726.597

726 Ecclesiastical buildings

.1 Non-Christian temples and shrines [*formerly* †726.42]

.14 Hindu and Buddhist temples

.143 Buddhist temples

726.145 Hindu temples

.15 Zoroastrian temples

.17 Bahai temples

.19 Other non-Christian temples

Including Shinto shrines, Taoist temples

For mosques and minarets, see 726.2; synagogues and Jewish temples, 726.3

.2 Mosques and minarets

.3 Synagogues and Jewish temples

.4 Parish houses and chapels

Including Sunday school buildings, baptistries, and shrines as separate buildings

For wayside shrines, see 726.9; details of churches and cathedrals, 726.59

[†.42] Shrines

Class non-Christian shrines in 726.1

.5 Christian churches

Class cathedrals [*formerly* *726.5] in 726.6

.58 Christian churches by denomination

Divide like 280, e.g., Protestant Episcopal churches 726.583

.59 Details of churches and cathedrals

.591 Entrances and approaches

Including porticoes, vestibules

.592 Naves and transepts

.593 Chancels

Including sanctuaries, choir lofts, pulpit platforms

.594 Clerestories

.595 Side chapels

For chapels as separate buildings, see 726.4

.596 Sacristies and baptistries

For baptistries as separate buildings, see 726.4

.597 Church towers and steeples

726.6 Cathedrals [*formerly* *726.5]

For details of cathedrals, see 726.59

.63 Cathedrals of Orthodox Church (Eastern Church)

Including cathedrals of Greek, Russian, Rumanian churches

.64 Roman Catholic cathedrals

.65 Anglican cathedrals

Including cathedrals of Church of England, Episcopal Church in Scotland, Protestant Episcopal Church

.69 Accessory structures of cathedrals

Including cathedral cloisters, chapter houses

For cloisters as separate buildings, see 726.79

.7 Monastic buildings

Including abbeys, priories, friaries, convents, monasteries

.77 Buildings for specific Christian orders

Including buildings for brotherhoods and sisterhoods

Divide like 271.1–271.98, e.g., Franciscan monasteries 726.773

.779 9 Buildings for orders of other religions

Divide like 290, e.g., Buddhist monasteries 726.779 943

.79 Accessory monastic structures

Including refectories, cloisters, cells

.8 Mortuary buildings

Including mortuary chapels, tombs, crematories, morgues, towers

.9 Other religious buildings

Including parsonages, episcopal palaces, missions, buildings of religious associations, wayside shrines

727 Educational and research buildings

.1 Elementary schools

Class secondary schools [*formerly* *727.1] in 727.2

.2 Secondary schools [*formerly* *727.1]

.3 Colleges and universities

.38 Accessory structures

Including dormitories, dining halls, music rooms

.4 Professional and technical schools

Divide like 000–999, e.g., law school buildings 727.434

727.5 **Research buildings**

Including laboratories, botanical and zoological gardens, observatories

Divide like 000–999, e.g., astronomical observatories 727.552

.6 **Museums**

Divide like 000–999, e.g., science museums 727.65

Class comprehensive works on museum buildings [*formerly* *727.6] in 069.2

For art museums, see 727.7

.7 Art museums and galleries

.8 **Libraries**

727.8–727.84 to be used only by libraries wishing to keep architecture of libraries with architecture of other kinds of buildings; otherwise class libraries [*formerly* *727.8] in 022.3

.82 General libraries

Including public, college and university libraries

.83 Special libraries

Divide like 000–999, e.g., music libraries 727.837 8

.84 Branch libraries

.9 **Other educational and research buildings**

Including community centers, learned society buildings

728 Residential buildings

.1 **Temporary buildings**

Including temporary unit and multiple dwellings

Class multiple dwellings [*formerly* *728.1], tenements [*formerly* †*728.1] in 728.2

.2 **Multiple dwellings [*formerly* *728.1]**

Including tenements [*formerly* †*728.1], permanent apartments, flats, apartment hotels

For hotels, see 728.5; *temporary multiple dwellings,* 728.1; *row houses,* 728.31; *combined store, office and apartment buildings,* 725.22

728.3 **Urban houses**

Houses of two or more stories

Class palaces [*formerly* †728.3] in 728.82; prefabricated houses [*formerly* *728.3] in 728.64

For ramblers, cottages, ranch-style houses, bungalows, see 728.64

.31 Row houses

Including row houses of brick [*formerly* †728.32], wood [*formerly* †728.33], stone, concrete

For end units of row houses, see 728.34

[†.32–†.33] Brick, wooden row houses

Class in 728.31

.34 Semidetacht houses

Including semidetacht houses of brick [*formerly* †728.35], wood [*formerly* †728.36], stone, concrete; end units of row houses

[†.35–†.36] Brick, wooden semidetacht houses

Class in 728.34

.37 Detacht houses

Comprehensive works

Including detacht houses of brick [*formerly* †728.38], wood [*formerly* †728.39], stone, concrete

Class mansions [*formerly* †728.37] in 728.83

For rural, suburban, farm dwellings, see 728.6

[†.38–†.39] Brick, wooden detacht houses

Class in 728.37

.4 **Club houses**

Including country, city, political, fraternal clubs

For yacht clubs, see 725.87

.5 **Hotels and inns**

Including buildings for watering places and health resorts [*formerly* †725.75], motels, hostels, resort hotels

728.6 **Small dwellings**

Including rural, suburban, farm dwellings

For resort dwellings, see 728.7

[†.61–†.63] Cottages and bungalows; stone, brick houses

Class in 728.64

.64 One-story dwellings

Cottages, bungalows [*both formerly* †728.61]; ranch houses, ramblers, split-level houses made of stone [*formerly* †728.62], brick [*formerly* †728.63], composite materials [*formerly* †728.65], wood [*formerly* †728.66], concrete

Including prefabricated dwellings [*formerly* *728.3]

For vacation cabins, see 728.7

[†.65–†.66] Houses of composite materials, wooden houses

Class in 728.64

.67 Farmhouses

Including farm cottages [*formerly* †728.68]

[†.68] Farm cottages

Class in 728.67

.69 Solar houses

.7 **Resort dwellings**

Including vacation cabins, hunting lodges, houseboats, house trailers

For resort hotels, see 728.5; *trailers,* 629.226

.8 **Countryseats**

Elaborate, large dwelling places

Including historic palatial dwellings

.81 Castles

.82 Palaces [*formerly* †728.3] and chateaux

For palaces of rulers, see 725.17; *of bishops,* 726.9

.83 Mansions [*formerly* †728.37] and manor houses

For executive mansions, see 725.17

.84 Villas

.9 **Accessory domestic structures**

Including gatehouses, private garages, conservatories; farm buildings, e.g., stables and silos

729 Architectural design and decoration

Systematic arrangement of elements and details of buildings

For comprehensive works on design and construction of structural elements of buildings, see 721; *architectural drawing,* 744.424; *theory of design,* 745.4; *design and construction of specific types of buildings,* 725–728

.1 **Façades and elevations**

Including principles of composition

.18 Sections

.2 **Planning**

Including consideration of function, size, arrangement of interior, communication, lighting, acoustics

For architects' plans, see 692.1

.3 **Design of details**

Design of structural elements

Class comprehensive works on design and construction of structural elements [*formerly* *729.3] in 721

.31 Walls

Including use of architectural materials for decorative purposes, paneling, entablatures, moldings

.32 Columns and colonnades

Including the architectural orders, entasis, pilasters

.33 Arches and arcades

.34 Vaults and domes

Including groined, ribbed, fan vaulting

.35 Roofs and roof structures

Including spires, chimneys, gables, pediments

.36 Towers

.38 Doors and windows

.39 Stairs and ramps

Including balustrades

.4 **Painted and architectural decoration**

Including decorative painting as an adjunct to architecture

For comprehensive works on murals, see 751.73; *specific murals, the school of painting, e.g., paintings in the Sistine Chapel* 759.5

729.5 **Decoration in relief [*formerly also* †698.8]**

Including carved and sculptured decoration and ornament, Gothic tracery, gargoyles

For sculpture, see 730

.6 **Veneering [*formerly* *684.2] and incrustation**

Including use of wood, stone, metal, enamel as architectural decoration

.7 **Mosaic decoration [*formerly* *738.5]**

Including mosaic pavements

.72 Mosaic murals

Including history and critical discussion of early Christian and Byzantine mosaics

For mosaic paintings, see 751.48

.8 **Ornamental glass design [*formerly* *748.5]**

For stained glass, see 748.5

.9 **Ecclesiastical furniture [*formerly* *749]**

Fixt and built-in furniture

Class other built-in furniture [*formerly* †729.9] in 749.4

For religious aspects and use, see 247.1

.91 Sacramental furniture

Including altars, baptismal fonts, confessionals

.92 Rostral furniture

Including pulpits, lecterns, prayer desks

.93 Seats and canopies

Including bishops' thrones, baldachins, choir stalls, pews

[†.95] Fireplaces

Class in 749.62

.96 Screens and railings

Including rood screens, altar screens, altar and chancel railings

.97 Organ cases

.98 Lighting fixtures

Class other lighting fixtures [*formerly* †729.98] in 749.63

730 Sculpture

Art of producing purely decorative or expressive representations in the round or in relief by modeling in plastic materials

Including molding and casting in metal [*formerly* *739], sculpture in wood [*formerly* *736.4], stone [*formerly* *736.5], and similar materials; comprehensive works on sculpture and related arts

For minor arts related to sculpture, see 736–739

.7 **Study and teaching**

For study and teaching of techniques of sculpture, see 731.4

.9 **History of sculpture**

Development, description, critical appraisal, collections of work of specific periods in specific countries [*formerly* †734.4–†734.9, †735.4–†735.9] and schools of sculpture

Including medieval Eastern sculpture [*formerly* †*734.5], modern Latin American sculpture [*formerly* †735.8, *735]; works of individual sculptors regardless of medium, technique, subject, or period

Divide like 940–999, e.g., Italian sculpture 730.945

For periods of medieval, Renaissance, modern sculpture extending over more than one country, see 734–735; *history of a related decorative art, the art, e.g., history of numismatics* 737.09; *sculpture in specific forms and subjects,* 731.5–731.7; *ancient sculpture,* 732–733

[†*.93] Ancient sculpture

Class in 732–733

731 Materials, techniques, representations in sculpture

Class carving in wax, snow, soap, other materials [*formerly* *731] in 736.9

.1 **Composition and design in sculpture**

731.2–731.48 Materials and techniques

.2 **Materials**

Including metals, wood, stone, clay, wax, other plastic materials, finishing materials

Class methods and techniques [*formerly* †731.2] in 731.4

[†.253–†.259] Carving in wax, snow, soap, other materials

Class in 736.9; cire-perdue process in 731.456

.3 **Equipment**

Including tools, machines, accessory equipment

731.4 Methods and techniques of sculpturing [*formerly also* †731.2]

Including comprehensive works on materials, equipment, techniques

For materials, see 731.2; *equipment,* 731.3

731.42–731.45, 731.47 Sculpturing in metal

For art metalwork, see 739

.42 Modeling

Modeling in clay, plasticene, other plastic materials with or without armatures

Including modeling for metal and ceramic sculpture

For modeling ceramic ware, see 738.142; *firing modeled clay objects prior to molding,* 731.47

.43 Molding

Preparation of waste, piece, or flexible molds from modeled objects

[†.44] Stamping

Class in 739.14

.45 Casting

Including reproductions of ceramic sculpture

.452 Plaster and cement casting

.453 Casting synthetic plastics

.456 Bronze casting

Including cire-perdue (lost wax) process [*formerly* †731.253] and its modifications

.457 Other metal castings

Including casting stainless steel and aluminum, electrolytic casting

.46 Carving and chiseling techniques in sculpture

.462 Sculpturing in wood

For wood carving, see 736.4

.463 Sculpturing in stone

Including cutting [*formerly also* †515.81], pointing

For stone carving, see 736.5

731.47 Firing and baking modeled objects

Preparation of modeled clay objects for molding

Including firing ceramic sculpture

For firing ceramic ware, see 738.143

.48 Restoration techniques

731.5–731.8 Representations in sculpture

.5 Representation styles and forms

For sculpture in the round, see 731.7

.52 Styles of representation

Comprehensive works on idealistic, naturalistic, grotesque styles in sculpture

For specific periods of sculpture, see 732–735; *schools of sculpture,* 730.9

[†.53] Sculpture in the round

Class in 731.7

.54 Sculpture in relief

Comprehensive works

For reliefwork on specific buildings, see 729.5; *carving in stone,* 736.5

.542 Portals and doors

.549 Monumental reliefs

.55 Mobiles and stabiles

.7 Sculpture in the round [*formerly* †731.53]

Including specific types in sculpture by purpose and form

For specific subjects in sculpture, see 731.8

.72 Decorative sculpture

.722 Garden sculpture and fountains

.724 Sculptured vases and urns

[†.73] Statues

Class in 731.8

.74 Busts

.75 Masks

Including death masks

731.76 Monuments

Comprehensive works

For monumental reliefs, see 731.549; *monuments representing a specific subject, the subject, e.g., religious monuments* 731.88

.8 Specific subjects in sculpture

Including statues [*formerly* †731.73]

Divide like 704.94, e.g., statues of Venus 731.87

.81 Equestrian sculpture

732–735 Periods of sculpture

Chronological development of sculpture

732 Ancient [*formerly also* †*730.93] and primitive sculpture

Including ancient Oriental sculpture

For modern Oriental sculpture, see 730.95

.2 Primitive sculpture

Comprehensive works on sculpture of primitive peoples regardless of period

For primitive sculpture in a specific area, see sculpture in the area, e.g., primitive African sculpture 730.96; *prehistoric sculpture,* 571.73

.3 Ancient Jewish sculpture

.4 Ancient sculpture of India

.5 Ancient Median, Persian, Assyro-Babylonian sculpture

.6 Ancient European sculpture

Including sculpture of Germanic tribes, Celts, Slavs

.7 Ancient Chinese sculpture

.8 Ancient Egyptian sculpture

.9 Sculpture in other ancient countries

Divide like 939, e.g., Phoenician sculpture 732.944

733 Classical sculpture [*formerly also* †*730.93]

For Aegean sculpture, see 732.91

.3 Greek sculpture (Hellenic sculpture)

.4 Etruscan sculpture [*formerly* †733.575]

733.5 Roman sculpture

[†.575] Etruscan sculpture

Class in 733.4

734 Medieval sculpture, ca. 500–1400

Sculpture of medieval period extending over more than one country

For medieval sculpture in a specific country, see history of sculpture of the country, e.g., Romanesque sculpture in France 730.944

.22 Early Christian and Byzantine sculpture

.24 Romanesque sculpture

.25 Gothic sculpture

[†.4–†.9] Medieval sculpture in specific countries

Class in 730.9

[†*.5] Eastern sculpture

Class in 730.95

735 Renaissance and modern sculpture, 1400–

Sculpture of Renaissance and modern periods extending over more than one country

Class sculpture of Latin America [*formerly* *735] in 730.98

For Renaissance and modern sculpture in a specific country, see history of sculpture of the country, e.g., 20th century sculpture in France 730.944

.21 Renaissance sculpture, 1400–1800

Including baroque, rococo, Churrigueresque sculpture

.22 19th century sculpture

Including classical revival, romanticism, realism in sculpture

.29 20th century sculpture

[†.4–†.9] Renaissance and modern sculpture in specific countries

Class in 730.9

736–739 Minor arts related to sculpture

Including history, criticism, collections, exhibitions, materials, techniques

For a specific minor art, see the subject, e.g., glassware 748.2

736 Carvings and carving techniques

Shaping materials thru cutting, carving, engraving, chiseling, whittling, or similar methods

For carving and chiseling techniques in sculpture, see 731.46

.2 Precious and semiprecious stones (Glyptics)

.202 8 Lapidary work

Cutting [*formerly* *739.27], polishing, engraving gems

For mounted gems, see 739.27

.22 Specific forms of engraved gems

For scarabs, see 736.209 32

.222 Cameos

.223 Intaglios

736.24–736.28 Specific carved gems

.24 Jade

.25 Sapphires

.28 Obsidian

.3 Engraved seals, stamps, signets

Including personal and official seals, seals for special occasions and organizations

For numismatics, see 737

.4 Wood carving

Including whittling small objects, scrollwork, chip carving, wood rasp carving, wood carving as a hobby

Class sculpture in wood [*formerly* *736.4] in 730

For ornamental woodwork, see 745.51

.46 Pyrography

Including pyrography on leather

For hand tooling of leather, see 745.53

.5 Stone carving

Including carving of lettering, inscriptions, designs on stone

Class sculpture in stone [*formerly* *736.5] in 730

For carving precious and semiprecious stones, see 736.2

736.6 Carved ivory, bone, horn

Including carved amber, tortoise shell

.68 Netsukes

For carved jade, see 736.24

.7 Ornamental fans

Including carved and painted fans

.9 Other materials and forms [*formerly* †731.253–†731.259, *731]

.93 Wax carving

.94 Snow and ice carving

.95 Soap carving

737 Numismatics

For engraved seals, stamps, signets, see 736.3

.2 Medals and medallions

Including medals and orders of honor and merit, talismans, amulets

.3 Counters, tokens, jettons

.4 Coins

Including design

For mint practices, see 332.46

.407 5 Coin collecting and collections

.49 History of coins

Divide like 930–999, e.g., coins of United States 737.497 3

738 Ceramic arts

For ceramic and allied industries, see 666; *ceramic sculpture,* 730–735

738.1–738.3 Pottery

For potters' marks, see 738.88

.1 Materials and techniques of pottery [*formerly also* †738.21–†738.22, †738.31–†738.32]

.12 Materials

Including kaolin, petuntse, other clays, glazes, color materials

.13 Equipment

Including potter's wheel, kilns, accessory equipment

738.14 Methods and techniques

Including comprehensive works on materials, equipment, methods

For materials, see 738.12; *equipment,* 738.13

.142 Modeling and casting

.143 Firing processes

Including firing before and after glazing

.144 Glazing processes

.15 Other decorative treatment

Including underglaze and overglaze painting, slip tracing, sgrafitto decoration, transfer painting

.2 Porcelain (China)

[†.21–†.22] Materials and techniques

Class in 738.1

.27 Specific varieties of porcelain

Arrange alphabetically, e.g., Haviland porcelain 738.27 H3

.28 Specific objects of porcelain

Including vases, tableware

.3 Earthenware

Including comprehensive works on pottery

For porcelain, see 738.2; *ornamental bricks and tiles,* 738.6

[†.31–†.32] Materials and techniques

Class in 738.1

.37 Specific varieties of earthenware

Arrange alphabetically, e.g., Wedgwood pottery 738.37 W3

.38 Specific earthenware objects

.382 Vases

Including comprehensive works

For sculptured vases, see 731.724; *porcelain vases,* 738.28

.383 Other earthenware containers

Including jars, jugs, pitchers

738.4 Enamels and enameling

Including cloisonné, champlevé, basse-taille, surface-painted enamels

For jewelry, see 739.27; *nielloing,* 739.15

.47 Specific varieties of enamels

Divide like 930–999, e.g., ancient Egyptian enamels 738.473 2

.5 Mosaic ornaments and jewelry

Class mosaics in architectural design and decoration [*formerly* *738.5] in 729.7

For mosaic painting, see 751.48

.6 Ornamental bricks and tiles

Including terra cottas

.8 Specific objects in ceramics, enamels, mosaics

Including lighting fixtures, candlesticks, stoves, braziers, other objects not otherwise provided for

.88 Potters' marks

739 Art metalwork

Creation of decorative metallic forms other than sculpture

Class metal sculpture [*formerly* *739] in 730

For metalcrafts, see 745.56; *metal manufactures,* 671–673

.1 Materials and techniques of metalwork

For materials and techniques of a specific type of metalwork, see the subject, e.g., goldsmithing 739.22

.13 Equipment

Including tools, machinery, accessory equipment

.14 Methods and techniques

Shaping metals by hammering and beating (repoussé work) [*formerly* †739.15], stamping [*formerly also* †731.44], forging, welding, rolling, drawing

Including casting small metallic objects

For casting in sculpture, see 731.45; *in ceramics,* 738.142

.15 Decorative treatment

Including painting, chasing, nielloning, patinating

Class hammering and beating (repoussé work) [*formerly* †739.15] in 739.14

739.2 Work in precious metals

Including materials, e.g., precious metals and their alloys; tools and equipment; processes, e.g., hammering, welding, decorating; specific articles of solid and plated ware

.21 Gold and silver marks

Comprehensive works

For gold marks, see 739.228 8; *silver marks,* 739.238 8

.22 Goldsmithing

For jewelry, see 739.27

.227 Goldwork in specific countries

Including specific articles of gold and gold plate in specific countries

Divide like 930–999, e.g., goldwork in United States 739.227 73

.228 Specific articles of gold and gold plate

For specific articles of gold and gold plate in specific countries, see 739.227

.228 2 Ecclesiastical articles

.228 3 Tableware

.228 4 Receptacles

Including vases, boxes, loving cups

.228 8 Marks

.23 Silversmithing

Divide like 739.22, e.g., Sheffield plate 739.237 427 4

For jewelry, see 739.27

.24 Platinumwork

For jewelry, see 739.27

.27 Jewelry

Including design of settings, mounting gems, repairwork

Class cutting gems [*formerly* *739.27] in 736.202 8

For carving precious and semiprecious stones, see 736.202 8; *mosaic ornaments and jewelry,* 738.5; *manufacture of costume jewelry,* 688.2

.3 Ornamental cases for watches and clocks

For making watches and clocks, see 681.11; *clockcases as furniture,* 749.3

739.4 Ornamental ironwork

Ornamental work in wrought iron [*formerly also* †721.92], cast iron [*formerly also* †721.91], stainless steel

Including grills, balcony motifs, balustrades, knockers, ornamental nails

For hand-forged tools and ironwork, see 682.4

.47 Ironwork in specific countries

Divide like 930–999, e.g., ironwork in Charleston, South Carolina 739.477 579 1

.5 Work in other metals

Including hammered and forged monumental representations

.51 Copperwork

.512 Bronzework

Including bronze cases, boxes, other miscellaneous articles

.52 Brasswork

.53 Work in tin and its alloys

.532 Tinsmithing

.533 Pewterware

.54 Work in lead

.55 Work in zinc

.56 Work in nickel

.57 Work in aluminum

.58 Work in chromium

.7 Arms and armor

Including ornamentation of suits of armor, side arms, firearms, shields

For gunsmithing, see 683.4; *ordnance,* 623.4

740 Drawing and decorative arts

741–744 Drawing and sketching

For painting, see 750

741 Freehand drawing

For drawing and sketching specific subjects, see 743; *technical drawing,* 744

.2 Drawing in specific mediums

.22 Charcoal drawing

Including drawing in charcoal and crayon, stump drawing

.23 Chalk drawing

Including drawing in chalk and crayon, crayon only, pastel drawing

.24 Pencil drawing

.25 Silverpoint drawing

.26 Pen and ink drawing

For silhouettes, see 741.7

.29 Other types of drawing

Including scratchboard drawing, airbrush drawing

.4 Drawing techniques and composition

Including design, line, light and shade, proportion

For perspective, see 742; *drawing in specific mediums,* 741.2

.5 Cartoons and caricatures

Including methods, materials

.501 3 Influence and value of cartoons and comics

For ethical aspects, see 175.83

.58 Animated cartoons

Including materials and methods of drawing for motion-picture cartoons

.59 Collections of cartoons and caricatures

.591 Collections by cartoonist

.593–.599 Collections by country

Divide like 930–999, e.g., English cartoons 741.594 2

741.6 Commercial art

.61 Principles of illustration

[†.63] Drawing of specific subjects

Class in 743

.64 Book illustration

Including book jackets

.642 Illustration of children's books

.65 Magazine and newspaper illustration

.67 Advertising illustration

Including posters

.672 Fashion drawing

.68 Greeting cards and calendars

.7 Silhouettes

.9 Collections of drawings

Class collections of drawings on specific subjects [*formerly* *741.9] in 743.9

[†.91] Collections by artist

Class in 741.93–741.99

.92 Collections by period

.921 Ancient drawings

.922 Medieval drawings

.923 Renaissance drawings, 1400–1800

.924 Modern drawings, 1800–

.93–.99 Collections by country

Including collections by individual artists [*formerly* †741.91] regardless of subject or period

Divide like 930–999, e.g., collections of Italian drawings of the 20th century 741.945

742 Perspective

Including theory, principles, methods of drawing in perspective

For other methods of projection, see 744

743 Drawing of specific subjects [*formerly also* †741.63]

.4 Human figure

Including anatomy for artists

For fashion drawing, see 741.672

.5 Draperies

Including draped figure

.6 Animal life

.62–.69 Specific animals

Divide like 592–599, e.g., drawing birds 742.682

.7 Plant life

Including trees, flowers, fruit

.8 Drawing other specific subjects

Divide like 704.94 except as provided in 743.4–743.7, e.g., drawing landscapes 743.83

.9 Collections of drawings on specific subjects [*formerly* *741.9]

Collections by several artists in more than one period

Divide like 704.94, e.g., collections of drawings of buildings 743.94

For collections of drawings by individual artists, see 741.93–741.99; *drawings of a specific period,* 741.92

744 Technical drawing

For freehand drawing, see 741

.2 Drafting room practice

Including preservation and storage of drawings [*formerly* †744.8], equipment [*formerly* †744.3], arrangement, organization, management

[†.3] Equipment

Class in 744.2

.4 Drafting procedures and conventions

Including orthographic, isometric, spheric projections

For perspective, see 742; *descriptive geometry,* 515

.42 Types of technical drawing

.422 Engineering drawing

Including mechanical drawing

744.424 Architectural drawing

[†.428] Map projection

Class in 526.8

.429 Production illustration

Nontechnical graphic representations of component parts of a mechanism or assembly to show parts included in the assembly and their relationships

Including pictorial drawings, sectioned photographs, phantom views, exploded views

.43 Other drafting conventions

Including lettering, titling, dimensioning, shades, shadows

.5 Reproduction methods

Including photostats, blueprints, blueprint reading

For photostat production, see 778.12; *blueprinting process,* 772.2

[†.8] Preservation and storage of drawings

Class in 744.2

745–749 Decorative arts and crafts

745 Decorative art and design

Including folk art

.2 Industrial art and design

Comprehensive works on artistic design of mass-produced commodities

For design of a specific commodity, see the subject, e.g., airplane design 629.134

.4 Design

Comprehensive works on theories, principles, elements of pure and applied design

For industrial design, see 745.2; *design in a specific art form, the form, e.g., design in freehand drawing* 741.4

.44 Historic styles of design and decoration

Including collections of natural, grotesque, geometric designs and motifs

.441 Ancient design and decoration

745.442 Medieval design and decoration

.443 Renaissance design and decoration, 1400–1800

.444 Modern design and decoration, 1800–

.449 National design and decoration

Divide like 930–999, e.g., colonial American design and decoration 745.449 73

.5 Handicrafts

Productive, creative work done by hand with the aid of simple tools or machines

Including design and instruction in crafts

For textile handicrafts, see 746

745.51–745.59 Handicrafts in specific materials

.51 Woodworking

Including marquetry, inlay trim, ornamental woodwork

For wood sculpture, see 731.462; *wood carving,* 736.4; *woodworking plants,* 674.43; *ornamental woodwork as furniture,* 749.5; *as architectural decoration,* 729.6

[†*.52] Textile handicrafts

Class in 746

.53 Leatherwork

Including hand tooling of leather, furcraft

For leather goods manufacture, see 685; *pyrography on leather,* 736.46

.54 Paper and papier-maché

Including design of end papers, gift wrappings; design and history of wallpaper

For paper and pulp manufactures, see 676

.55 Shellcraft

For carved ivory, horn, bone, see 736.6

.56 Metalcrafts

For metal sculpture, see 730–735; *art metalwork,* 739; *metal manufactures,* 671–673; *tolecraft,* 745.72

745.57 Rubber and plastic materials

For rubber manufactures, see 678; *plastics and related resins,* 668.4

[†*.58] Basketry, raffiawork, rushwork

Class in 746.41

.59 Handicraft in other materials

.6 Decorative lettering

.66 Heraldic design

For heraldry, see 929.6

.67 Manuscript illumination

Including methods and materials only

For illuminated manuscripts and their history, see 096

.7 Stencil handicrafts [*formerly* †747.94]

For stenciled textiles, see 746.6

.72 Tolecraft

Including tray painting

.74 Decalcomania

.8 Composite representation

Including cycloramas

For painted cycloramas, dioramas, see 751.74

746 Textile handicrafts [*formerly also* †*745.52]

Design, methods, materials, history, collecting

Including tools, e.g., spinning wheels, hand looms, bobbins

For textile manufactures, see 677

.1 Hand-woven fabrics

Comprehensive works

For tapestries, see 746.3; *rugs and carpets,* 746.7

.2 Laces and related fabrics

For mesht and knotted fabrics, see 746.43

.22 Bobbin, darned, needlepoint laces

Including tulle, pillow lace

.27 Trimmings (Passementerie)

Including braids, cords, fringes

746.3 **Tapestries**

Including cartoons for tapestries

.39 History and local treatment

Divide like 930–999, e.g., French tapestries 746.394 4

.4 **Other textile crafts**

.41 Braided and matted fabrics

Including basketry, raffiawork, rushwork [*all formerly* †*745.58]

For hand-woven fabrics, see 746.1

[†.42] Sewing and smocking

Class sewing in 646.2; smocking in 746.44

.43 Mesht and knotted fabrics

Knitting, crocheting, tatting [*all formerly also* †646.26–†646.27, *646.2]

Including knitted, crocheted, tatted laces

For bobbin, darned, needlepoint laces, see 746.22; *crocheted and knitted rugs,* 746.73

.44 Art needlework (Embroidery [*formerly also* *646.2])

Including smocking [*formerly* †746.42], appliqué [*formerly* †746.45], couching [*formerly* †746.48], cutwork, needlepoint, crewelwork, drawn work, hardanger

.445 Pictures and hangings

Including samplers

[†.45] Appliqué

Class in 746.44

.46 Quilts and quilting

Including patchwork [*formerly* †746.47]

[†.47] Patchwork

Class in 746.46

[†.48] Couching

Class in 746.44

.5 **Beadwork**

Including needle and loom beadwork

746.6 **Resist-dyeing techniques**

Including tie-dye, batik, resist-painting techniques, e.g., hand-painted and stenciled textiles

.7 **Handmade rugs and carpets**

.72 Hand-woven rugs without pile

Rugs woven in plain, twill, Jacquard, tapestry weaves

Including Navaho rugs

For hand-woven pile rugs, see 746.75

.73 Crocheted and knitted rugs

.74 Hookt rugs

Including latchet rugs

.75 Hand-woven pile rugs

Including Oriental rugs

Divide like 950, e.g., Persian rugs 746.755

For hand-woven rugs without pile, see 746.72

.759 Caucasian rugs

.79 History of rugs and rugmaking

Divide like 930–999, e.g., handmade rugs in France 746.794 4

.8 **Waxwork**

Including dipt and poured candles, wax flowers

For wax carving, see 736.93

747 **Interior decoration**

Planning, designing, decorative treatment of structural interiors and their furnishings

Class home furnishing [*formerly* *747] in 645

For architecture, see 720; *furniture,* 749; *color,* 752

.2 **History of interior decoration**

Divide like 749.2, e.g., modern interiors 747.204

.3 **Ceilings and walls**

Including hangings [*formerly also* †698.7], stenciling [*formerly* †747.94], decorative painting, paneling, woodwork

For mural painting as fine art, see 751.73; *wallpaper design,* 745.54; *handmade tapestries,* 746.3

747.4 **Floors and floor coverings**

Including carpeting

For handmade rugs, see 746.7

.5 **Draperies and upholstery**

Including decorative treatment of doors and windows

For textile handicrafts, see 746

.7 **Decoration of specific rooms**

[†.72] Drawing rooms, parlors

Class in 747.75

.73 Home libraries

Including studies [*formerly* †747.74]

[†.74] Studies

Class in 747.73

.75 Living rooms

Including drawing rooms, parlors [*both formerly* †747.72]

.76 Dining rooms

.77 Bedrooms

Including nurseries

.78 Bathrooms

Including powder rooms

.79 Recreation rooms

Including family rooms

.8 **Decoration of specific buildings**

Divide like 725–728, e.g., church decorations 747.865

.9 **Specific decorations**

.92 Decorative lighting

.93 Decoration for specific occasions

Including parties, weddings, holidays

[†.94] Stencil decoration

Class stencil handicrafts in 745.7; stenciling on walls and ceilings in 747.3

748 Glassware and stained glass

Including design, identification, collecting

For glass technology, see 666.1

.2 **Glassware**

Ornamental and useful glass products other than stained glass

Including blown, prest, molded, cast, decorated glass

For specific articles of glass, see 748.8; *methods of decorating glass,* 748.6

.29 History of glassware

Including period styles of glass

.290 1 Ancient glassware

.290 2 Medieval glassware

.290 3 Renaissance glassware, 1400–1800

.290 4 Modern glassware, 1800–

.291–.299 Glassware in specific countries

Divide like 708.1–708.9, e.g., French glassware 748.294

[†.3] **Glass cutting**

Class in 748.6

[†.4] **Painted glass**

Class in 748.5

.5 **Stained glass**

Including painted glass [*formerly* †748.4], leaded glass, mosaic glass

Class ornamental glass design [*formerly* *748.5] in 729.8

.59 History of stained glass

Divide like 748.29, e.g., stained glass of French cathedrals 748.594

.6 **Methods of decorating glass**

Including engraving and cutting [*formerly* †748.3], sand blasting, glass etching; spun glass techniques

For stained glass, see 748.5

.8 **Specific articles of glass**

Including mirrors, paperweights

For lighting fixtures, see 749.63

749 Furniture and accessories

Including design, historic development, collecting of fine furniture

Class fixt and built-in ecclesiastical furniture [*formerly* *749] in 729.9

For upholstery, see 747.5

.2 Historic styles of furniture

Including antiques and reproductions

.201 Ancient furniture

.202 Medieval furniture

.203 Renaissance furniture, 1400–1800

.204 Modern furniture, 1800–

.21–.29 Historic styles in specific countries

Divide like 708.1–708.9, e.g., English furniture 749.22

.3 Specific kinds of furniture

Including clockcases [*formerly* †749.74], buffets and cupboards [*formerly* †729.94], screens [*formerly also* †729.96], chairs, tables, chests

.4 Built-in furniture [*formerly also* †729.9]

Including storage walls

For manufacture of built-in furniture, see 684.2; *installation,* 694.7

.5 Ornamental woodwork

For woodworking as a craft, see 745.51; *as architectural decoration,* 729.6

.6 Heating and lighting fixtures

.62 Heating fixtures [*formerly also* †729.95]

Including fireplaces, mantels, inglenooks

.63 Lighting fixtures [*formerly also* †729.98]

Including chandeliers, lamps

For ecclesiastical lighting fixtures, see 729.98

.7 Other accessories

Including picture frames and framing, shadow boxes

[†.74] Clockcases

Class in 749.3

750 Painting

For commercial art, see 741.6; *hand-painted textiles,* 746.6; *a specific painter and his work, the school of painting regardless of medium, technique, or subject, e.g., religious oil paintings of Leonardo da Vinci* 759.5

.7 Study and teaching

For study and teaching of techniques of painting, see 751.4

[.84] Collections of paintings

Class in 758.9

[†.9] History

Class in 759

751 Painting materials and methods

.2 Materials

Including surfaces, pigments, mediums, fixatives, coatings

.3 Equipment

Including models, tools

.4 Methods and techniques

Including composition

.42 Water-color painting

Including gouache painting

.43 Tempera painting

.44 Fresco painting

.45 Oil painting

.46 Encaustic or wax painting

.48 Mosaic painting

.49 Other methods of painting

Including airbrush painting, finger painting

.5 Reproduction and copying of paintings

For prints and print making, see 760

.58 Forgeries and alterations

Including expertizing, determination of authenticity

.6 Care and preservation of paintings

Including restoration of paintings

751.7 Paintings in specific forms

Comprehensive works only

For a specific painter and his work, see the school of painting regardless of medium, technique, or subject, e.g., murals of Diego Rivera 759.972; *specific subjects of painting,* 753–758.7; *painting on ceramics,* 738.15; *stencil decorations,* 745.7; *cartoons for tapestries,* 746.3

.72 Easel paintings

Including altarpieces, diptychs, triptychs

.73 Murals

.74 Panoramas

Including cycloramas, dioramas

.75 Scene paintings

Including theatrical scenery

.76 Decorative paintings

For decorative painting in architecture, see 729.4

752 Color theory and practice

Including color symbolism, color composition, artist's palette

For physics of color, see 535.6; *color vision and perception,* 152.1

753–758.7 Specific subjects of painting

Comprehensive works on paintings considered primarily from viewpoint of subject treatment, the artists being of secondary importance

For a specific painter and his work, see the school of painting regardless of meduim, technique, or subject, e.g., still-life paintings of Cézanne 759.4

753 Epic paintings

Including paintings of gods, heroes, other legendary characters

For religious paintings, see 755

754 Genre paintings

Paintings in which subjects of everyday life are treated realistically

755 Religious paintings

Divide like 704.948, e.g., paintings of Jesus Christ 755.5

For altarpieces, diptychs, triptychs, see 751.72

756 Historical paintings

Including battles, coronations, other famous events

757 Figure paintings

Including portraits

.2 Nude figures

.23 Draped figures

.3 Men's portraits

.4 Women's portraits

.5 Children's portraits

.6 Group portraits

.7 Miniature paintings

Including portraits on ivory

For miniatures or illuminations in manuscripts, see 096; *technique of manuscript illumination,* 745.67

.9 Collections of portraits

For a collection of painted portraits with subject rather than artistic interest, see the subject, e.g., general collections 920, *collections of portraits of physicians* 926.1

758 Other subjects of painting

.1 Landscape paintings

.2 Marine paintings

Including seascapes

.3 Animal paintings

Including hunting, sporting subjects

.4 Still-life paintings

.42 Flower paintings

.6 Industrial and technical subjects

.7 Architectural subjects

.9 Collections of paintings

Comprehensive works only

For collections of paintings of a specific painter, see the school of painting regardless of medium, technique, or subject, e.g., collection of Van Gogh paintings 759.949 2

759 History of painting [*formerly* †750.9]

Development, critical appraisal, collections of work of specific periods and schools of painting

759.01–759.06 Periods of painting

Paintings of the same chronological period extending over more than one country

For painting in a specific country or by an individual artist, see the national school regardless of period, e.g., modern Spanish paintings 759.6, *paintings by Botticelli* 759.5

.01 Ancient painting

Comprehensive works [*formerly* †759.93]

Class ancient painting in specific countries [*formerly* *759.01] in 759.93

.011 Painting of primitive peoples

For primitive painting in a specific area, see painting in the area, e.g., primitive African painting 759.96; *a specific "primitive" (untutored) painter, the school of painting, e.g., Grandma Moses* 759.13; *prehistoric painting,* 571.72

.02 Medieval painting

Including early Christian, Byzantine, Romanesque, Gothic painting

.03 Renaissance painting, 1400–1600

Including classicism [*formerly* †759.911]

.04 17th and 18th century painting

Including baroque, rococo styles of painting

.05 19th century painting

Including naturalism [*formerly* †759.912], impressionism [*formerly* †759.914], neoimpressionism, intimism; comprehensive works on modern painting

For 20th century painting, see 759.06

.06 20th century painting

Including postimpressionism [*formerly* †759.915], abstraction, Dadaism, other contemporary movements

759.1–759.999 National and international schools of painting

Including works of individual painters regardless of medium, technique, subject, or period

Under each school, arrange individual painters alphabetically, using A1 for comprehensive works, e.g., paintings of Cézanne 759.4 C4

759.1 North American painting

For Mexican and Central American painting, see 759.972

.11 Canadian painting

.13 United States painting

.14–.19 Painting in specific states of United States

Comprehensive works

Divide like 974–979, e.g., Minnesota painters 759.176

For a specific United States painter, see 759.13

.2 English painting

Including comprehensive works on British painting

For Scottish painting, see 759.941; *Irish painting,* 759.941 5; *Welsh painting,* 759.942 9

.3 Central European painting

Painting of countries whose history classes in 943

Divide like 943, e.g., Polish painting 759.38, German painting 759.3

.4 French painting

.5 Italian painting

For ancient Roman painting, see 759.937

.6 Spanish painting

.69 Portuguese painting

.7 Russian painting

.71 Finnish painting

.8 Scandinavian painting

.81 Norwegian painting

.85 Swedish painting

.89 Danish painting

759.9 **Other schools of painting**

.91 International schools

Comprehensive works only

For a specific international school, see the specific period, e.g., impressionism 759.05

[†.911] Classicism

Class in 759.03

[†.912] Naturalism

Class in 759.05

[†.914] Impressionism

Class in 759.05

[†.915] Postimpressionism

Class in 759.06

.93 Ancient painting in specific areas [*formerly also* *759.01]

Divide like 930, e.g., ancient Oriental painting 759.931

Class comprehensive works on ancient painting [*formerly* †759.93] in 759.01

.94 Modern European painting

Comprehensive works

Divide like 940 except as provided in 759.2–759.8, e.g., modern Greek painting 759.949 5

.95 Asian painting

Including modern Far Eastern, Oriental, Near Eastern painting

Divide like 950, e.g., Iranian painting 759.955

For ancient Oriental painting, see 759.931; *Indonesian painting,* 759.991

.96 African painting

Divide like 960, e.g., modern Egyptian painting 759.962

For ancient Egyptian painting, see 759.932

.972 Mexican and Central American painting

Including Caribbean painting

759.98 South American painting

Including comprehensive works on Latin American painting

Divide like 980, e.g., Brazilian painting 759.981

For Mexican and Central American painting, see 759.972

.99 Painting of Pacific and Atlantic islands, Polar Regions

Divide like 990, e.g., Indonesian painting 759.991

760 Prints and print making

Including comprehensive works on graphic arts

For photography, see 770; *commercial printing,* 655.1–655.327; *commercial art,* 741.6

[.84] Collections of prints

Class in 769

761–767 Print making

Including designs, materials, methods and techniques of surface preparation and printing

Class collections [*formerly* *761–*767], critical appraisal [*formerly* *761–*767] in 769; work of individual print makers [*formerly* *761–*767] in 769.9

761 **Relief processes (Block printing)**

.2 **Wood engraving**

Including printing in color and in black and white (chiaroscuro method) from woodcuts

.3 **Linoleum-block printing**

.8 **Metal relief engraving**

[†762] **Intaglio work**

Class in 765–767

763 **Lithographic processes**

Printing from an inkt or painted flat surface

.22 **Lithography with lithographic stone**

.23 **Lithography with aluminum surface**

.24 **Lithography with zinc surface**

764 **Chromolithography**

.8 **Serigraphy (Silk-screen printing)**

765–767 Intaglio work [*formerly also* †762]

765 Metal engraving

Comprehensive works

For metal relief engraving, see 761.8; *mezzotints and aquatints,* 766; *etching and dry point work,* 767

.2 **Line engraving**

.5 **Stipple engraving**

.6 **Criblé engraving**

766 Mezzotinting, aquatinting, and related processes

For etching and dry point work, see 767

.2 **Mezzotinting**

.3 **Aquatinting**

Tinted etching

For comprehensive works on etching, see 767.2

.7 **Composite processes**

The use of two or more processes in a single print

767 Etching and dry point work

.2 **Etching**

Comprehensive works

For tinted etching, see 766.3; *glass etching,* 748.6

.3 **Dry point work**

For line engraving, see 765.2

[†768] Machine engraving

Class in 655.318

769 Collections of prints [*formerly also* *761–*767]

Including critical appraisal [*formerly* *761–*767]

For history of prints and print making, e.g., development of techniques, see 760.9

.1 **Collecting prints**

Including care and preservation of prints

[†.2] **Collections of prints by individual print makers**

Class in 769.9

769.3 **Collections by artist copied**

Collections not limited to one country

Class collections limited to one country [*formerly* †769.3] in 769.9

.4 **Collections by subject**

Comprehensive works

Divide like 704.94, e.g., portrait engravings 769.42

For work of a specific print maker, regardless of medium, technique, or subject, see 769.9

.41 Engravers' and collectors' marks

.5 **Applications of print making processes**

Including engraved lettering, inscriptions, decorative designs on diplomas, name cards, post cards, posters

[†.6] **Collections by technique**

Class in 769.9

.9 **Collections by country**

Including collections of work of individual print makers [*formerly* †769.2, *formerly also* *761–*767], and reproductions of artists' work [*formerly* †769.3], regardless of medium, technique [*formerly* †769.6], or subject

Divide like 930–999, e.g., Currier and Ives lithographs of railroads 769.973

For reproductions of the work of a specific artist not limited to one country, see 769.3; *collections by subject not limited to one country,* 769.4

770 Photography

For a specific application of photography, see the subject, e.g., astronomical photography 522.63

.1 **Photography as an art**

Including theory; composition and perspective in photography

.15 **Photographic optics**

Comprehensive works on light in photography [*formerly* *771.44]

For optical parts of cameras, see 771.35; *sensitometry,* 771.534; *optics,* 535

770.2 **Manuals, handbooks, guides**

Comprehensive works on cameras and processing operations

For cameras, see 771.3; *photographic equipment and supplies,* 771

.24 Guides for amateur photographers

For guides in using a specific camera, see 771.31

.28 Techniques in photography

For processing techniques in color photography, see 778.63–778.66

.281 Manufacture of photosensitive surfaces

Including manufacture of photographic plates, films, papers

For photographic chemistry, see 771.5

.282 Camera techniques

Including loading, focusing, exposure, plate and film removal

For photographic optics, see 770.15; *focusing and exposure apparatus,* 771.37; *photography under specific conditions,* 778.7

770.283–770.284 Darkroom practice

.283 Preparation of negatives

Developing, rinsing, fixing, washing, drying exposed plates, films, paper

Including auxiliary processes, e.g., desensitizing, reducing, intensifying

For reversing negatives, see 770.285

.284 Preparation of positives (Contact printing)

Exposing, developing, rinsing, fixing, washing, drying photographic printing papers

Including finishing processes, e.g., retouching, toning, coloring, mounting contact prints

For special printing processes, see 772–773; *color photography,* 778.6

.285 Preservation of negatives and transparencies

Including storage, aging effects, reversing negatives

770.286 Preservation of positives (contact prints)

For mounting contact prints, see 770.284

.287 Recovery of waste materials

.69 **Photographers**

For biographies of photographers, see 927.7

.692 Photography as a profession

.693 Photography as a hobby

771 Photographic equipment and supplies

.1 **Photographic studios and laboratories**

Including darkrooms, research establishments

.2 **Furniture and fittings**

.3 **Cameras**

Including comprehensive works on studio, view, hand, miniature, Polaroid® cameras; comprehensive works on use, manufacture, history of cameras

Class special cameras in 778, manufacture of cameras in 681.13 [*both formerly* *771.3]

.31 Specific types of hand cameras

Including guides in using specific cameras

Arrange alphabetically by trade name of camera, e.g., Kodak® 771.31 K7

[†.34] Tripods

Class in 771.38

.35 Optical parts of cameras

.352 Lenses

For manufacture of lenses, see 681.42

.356 Filters

.36 Shutters

.37 Focusing and exposure apparatus

Including exposure meters, view finders, range finders

.38 Camera accessories

Including tripods [*formerly* †771.34], carrying cases

771.4 **Apparatus for developing and printing**

Including trays, utensils, frames

For darkroom practice, see 770.283–770.284; *chemical supplies,* 771.5

[†.44] Light

Class in 770.15

[†.442] Sunlight photography

Class in 778.712

[†.443] Artificial light photography

Class in 778.72

[†.448] Flash bulb photography

Class in 778.37

[†.449] Night photography

Class in 778.719

.5 **Chemical supplies**

Including photographic chemistry, manufacture of chemical supplies

For manufacture of a specific chemical used in photography, see the subject, e.g., cyanides 661.7

.52 Support materials

Backings of glass, metal, ceramics, cellulose compounds

.53 Photosensitive surfaces

Comprehensive works

For manufacture of photosensitive surfaces, see 770.281

.532 Specific photosensitive surfaces

.532 2 Plates

.532 3 Papers

.532 4 Films

.534 Sensitometry

Quantitative study of effects of exposure and development on photosensitive materials

771.54 Developing and printing supplies

Including inorganic and organic chemicals used in photography [*formerly* †771.6–†771.7]; preparation of developing, reducing, toning, intensifying, fixing solutions

[†.6–†.7] **Inorganic and organic chemicals**

Class in 771.54

772–773 Special processes

Materials, equipment, methods

Including historic photographic processes

For contact printing, see 770.284; *projection printing,* 778.13; *processing techniques in color photography,* 778.63–778.66

772 **Metallic salt processes of photography**

.1 **Direct positive and printing-out processes**

For platinum printing-out process, see 772.3

.12 Daguerreotype process

.14 Wet-collodion process

Including ferrotype, tintype processes

.16 Kallitype processes

.2 **Blueprinting process (Cyanotype process)**

For blueprints and blueprint reading, see 744.5

.3 **Platinotype processes**

Including platinum printing-out process

773 **Pigment processes of photographic printing**

.1 **Carbon and carbro processes**

Including Artigue, Mariotype, ozotype, ozobrome processes

.2 **Powder processes (Dusting-on processes)**

Including peppertype process

.3 **Imbibition processes**

.5 **Gum-bichromate processes**

.6 **Photoceramics and photoenamels**

.7 **Diazotype processes**

773.8 **Oil processes**

Including oil transfer, bromoil process and transfer

[†774] **Photogelatin, collographic, photoprint processes**

Class in 655.32

[†775] **Photolithography**

Class in 655.325

[†776] **Photometallography**

Class in 655.326

[†777] **Photomechanical engraving**

Class in 655.327

778 Specific fields of photography

Including special cameras [*formerly* *771.3]

For a specific application of photography, see the subject, e.g., in X-ray diagnosis 616.075 7

SUMMARY

778.1 Photoduplication (Photocopying)
.2 Photographic projection
.3 Scientific and technological applications of photography
.4 Stereoscopic photography
.5 Motion-picture photography (Cinematography)
.6 Color photography and photography of colors
.7 Photography under specific conditions
.8 Trick photography
.9 Photography of specific subjects

.1 Photoduplication (Photocopying)

Duplication of photographs, sketches, paintings, drawings, documents, other printed matter thru photographic means

For contact printing, see 770.284; *reproduction of photographs by means of printing inks,* 655.32; *microphotography,* 778.315

.12 Facsimile production

Including photostats

For blueprinting process, see 772.2; *facsimile telegraphy,* 621.382 7; *radiofacsimile,* 621.384 2

.13 Projection printing

Including enlarging processes

.14 Reduction printing

For microphotography, see 778.315

778.2 Photographic projection

Comprehensive works on filmstrip and filmslide projection

Including projection apparatus; comprehensive works on its use, manufacture, history

For stereoscopic projection, see 778.4; *motion-picture projection,* 778.55; *color projection,* 778.65; *projection printing,* 778.13; *manufacture of projectors,* 681.13

.3 Scientific and technological applications of photography

Comprehensive works

For a specific scientific or technological application of photography, see the subject, e.g., biological photomicrography 578.46

.31 Photomicrography

Production of enlarged photographs of microscopic objects

Including color photomicrography

For motion-picture photomicrography, see 778.56

.315 Microphotography

Production of photographic records on a reduced scale

Including color microphotography [*formerly* †778.316], microfilms, microprints, microcards

For reduction printing, see 778.14

.315 078 Readers for microphotographs

[†.316] Color microphotography

Class in 778.315

.32 Photography in terms of focus

.322 Telephotography

For aerial photography, see 778.35; *panoramic photography,* 778.36

.324 Close-up photography

For portrait photography, see 778.92

.33 Radiography (X-ray photography)

Including fluoroscopy [*formerly* †778.34]

.34 Infrared photography

Class fluoroscopy [*formerly* †778.34] in 778.33

778.35 Aerial photography

For telephotography, see 778.322; *panoramic photography,* 778.36; *photogrammetry,* 526.982

.36 Panoramic photography

For telephotography, see 778.322; *aerial photography,* 778.35

.37 Ultra high-speed photography

Including flash bulb photography [*formerly* †771.448, *778.7]

[†.38] Photogrammetry

Class in 526.982

.4 Stereoscopic photography

Production of effects of binocular vision by photographic means

Including stereoscopic projection and projectors

For stereoscopic motion-picture photography, see 778.534 1

.5 Motion-picture photography (Cinematography)

.53 Motion-picture cameras

For motion-picture cameras for amateurs, see 778.534 9

.534 Types of motion-picture photography

For motion-picture projectors and projection, see 778.55

.534 1 Stereoscopic motion-picture photography

Production of effects of binocular vision in motion-picture photography

Including Cinerama®

.534 2 Color motion-picture photography

.534 4 Sound-picture recording

For manufacture of sound-picture recorders and reproducers, see 681.8

.534 7 Cartoon motion-picture photography [*formerly* †778.58]

For drawing motion-picture cartoons, see 741.58

.534 9 Amateur motion-picture photography

Including motion-picture cameras for amateurs

.535 Editing motion-picture films

Including titling [*formerly also* †778.58]

778.538 Motion-picture photography of specific subjects

Divide like 000–999, e.g., newsreel photography 778.538 07

.55 Motion-picture projection and projectors

.554 1 Projection of stereoscopic motion pictures

.554 2 Projection of color motion pictures

.554 4 Projection of sound pictures

.554 9 Projection of amateur motion pictures

.56 Motion-picture photomicrography

.58 Preservation and storage of motion-picture films

Class titling in 778.535; cartoon motion-picture photography in 778.534 7 [*both formerly* †778.58]

.6 Color photography and photography of colors

For color motion-picture photography, see 778.534 2; *color photomicrography,* 778.31; *color microphotography,* 778.315

.62 Photography of colors in monochrome

Including orthochromatic and panchromatic photography

778.63–778.66 Processing techniques in color photography

.63 Direct process reproduction in color photography

Including Lippmann process [*formerly* †778.64]

[†.64] Lippmann process

Class in 778.63

778.65–778.66 Indirect processes in color photography

.65 Additive processes

Production of color films and projections by additive analysis and additive synthesis respectively

Including Autochrome®, Filmcolor®, Dufaycolor®, Finlay color®

.66 Subtractive processes

Production of color films and prints by subtractive analysis and subtractive synthesis respectively

Including Kodachrome®, Ektachrome®, Kodacolor®, Agfacolor®, Anscocolor®, Casparcolor® processes; Tricolor Carbro®, Chromatone®, Wash-Off Relief®, Kodak Dye Transfer®, Duxachrome®, Colorstil®, Autotype-Dyebro® prints

778.7 **Photography under specific conditions**

Class flash bulb photography [*formerly* *778.7] in 778.37

.71 Outdoor photography

Comprehensive works

For photography of a specific outdoor subject, see the subject, e.g., photography of landscapes 778.93

.712 Sunlight photography [*formerly* †771.442]

.719 Night photography [*formerly* †771.449]

For indoor photography, see 778.72; *infrared photography,* 778.34

.72 Indoor photography

Comprehensive works

Including artificial light photography [*formerly* †771.443]

For photography of a specific indoor subject, see the subject, e.g., portrait photography 778.92; *flash bulb photography,* 778.37

.73 Underwater photography

.75 Photography under extreme climatic conditions

Including hot weather and cold weather photography

.8 **Trick photography**

Including table-top photography; photography of specters, distortions, multiple images; silhouette photography

.9 **Photography of specific subjects**

Divide like 704.94, e.g., wild animal photography [*formerly also* †799.28] 778.932

779 Collections of photographs

Divide like 704.94, e.g., photographs of children 779.25

For photographs of celestial bodies, see the subject, e.g., solar photographs 523.79

780 Music

Including scores and parts, librettos, history, criticism

Use separate numbers for music itself (scores and parts), where provided, to separate it from works about music, e.g., works about violin and violin music 787.1–787.12, violin music itself 787.15

If preferred, class scores and works about music in the same number, distinguishing scores by prefixing M to the number, e.g., works about violin and violin music 787.1, violin music itself M787.1

Class manufacture of musical instruments [*formerly* †*780–†*789] in 681.8

For miniature scores, see 780.84

.01 Musicology

Including comprehensive works on music research

For research in a specific branch of music, see the subject, e.g., counterpoint 781.4; *bibliography of books about music,* 016.78; *bibliography of music itself,* 781.97

.07 Music and society

Including relations with literature and the arts

Class music in the home [*formerly* *780.07] in 780.13

For copyright of music, see 655.627 8; *value of music,* 780.13

.071 Musicians

Including music as a profession, professional ethics

For biography of musicians, see 927.8; *criticism and appraisal of a specific musician's work,* 780.92

.071 1 Composers

For musical composition, see 781.61

.071 2 Interpreters and performers

Including conductors [*formerly* †781.632 5], bards, minstrels, troubadours, minnesingers, meistersingers

For performance, interpretation, conducting, see 781.63

.072 Musical criticism and critics

Class analytical guides (program notes) [*formerly* †780.072] in 780.15

For music appreciation, see 780.15

.073 Amateurs

.074 Private patronage and support

Including foundations, fellowships

780.075 Official patronage and support

Including government subsidies, supervision, examination for musicians; registration of musicians

.1 Philosophy and esthetics of music

For theory of music, see 781

.13 Value of music

Including music in the home [*formerly* *780.07] and community; comprehensive works on influence and effect of music

For a specific application, see the subject, e.g., music therapy 615.837; *home and community songs,* 784.61

[.14] Nomenclature and terminology

Class in 781.23

[.148] Music notation

Class in 781.24

.15 Music appreciation

Including comprehensive analytical guides and program notes [*formerly* †780.072]

For guides to music of a specific medium or composer, see the medium or composer, e.g., Messiah 783.354, *music of Brahms* 780.81; *thematic catalogs,* 781.973 5

.65 Concert bureaus and concert management

For management of music business, see 658.917 8

[.69] Persons in relation to music

Class in 780.071–780.075

.7 Study and teaching

For tests of musical talent, see 151.223; *study of a specific instrument, the instrument, e.g., of piano* 786.3

.72 Music conservatories and schools

Including courses in general public and private schools at secondary and higher levels

For courses and methods of teaching music in elementary schools, see 372.878; *music in school curriculum,* 375.78; *school songbooks,* 784.62; *music research,* 780.01

.729 Music education in specific countries

Divide like 940–999, e.g., Boston Conservatory of Music 780.729 744 6

780.73 Concert and recital programs

Comprehensive works

Including concerts [*formerly also* †791.2]

For program notes and analytical guides, see 780.15; *programs in a specific medium, the medium, e.g., violin programs* 787.107 3

.739 Programs in specific places

Divide like 940–999, e.g., Boston Pops concert programs 780.739 744 6

.77 Methods of teaching music

Comprehensive works

Including dictation, ear training, pitch perception, eye training, music reading, sight reading

For methods of teaching a specific instrument, see the instrument, e.g., teaching organ 786.7; *execution and performance,* 781.63

.79 Music festivals and competitions [*formerly also* †791.2]

Including musical gatherings

Divide like 940–999, e.g., Salzburg festival 780.794 363

For song festivals and competitions, see 784.5

.8 Collected works about music by one or more authors

Including quotations, anecdotes, critical and historical miscellany

.81 Collected scores of individual composers

For thematic catalogs of a composer's works, see 781.973 5; *collections limited to a specific medium, the medium, e.g., violin* 787.154; *criticism and appraisal of a composer's work,* 780.92

.82 Collected scores by two or more composers

For collected scores limited to a specific medium, see the medium, e.g., collected violin scores 787.152; *thematic catalogs,* 781.97

.84 Miniature pocket scores

Including collections, individual works in miniature format

Arrange alphabetically by compilers and composers, e.g., Beethoven's Symphony No. 5 780.84 B4

If preferred, class miniature scores in the same number as scores of conventional size, prefixing MM to the number, e.g., miniature scores of Beethoven's Symphony no. 5 MM785.115 4

780.85 **Commercial circulars**

For music publishers' and dealers' catalogs, see 781.973 4

[†.881] Fiction and poetry on musical themes

Class in the 800's

.9 **History and local treatment**

Class theories and forms from national viewpoint [*formerly* *780.9] in 781.7

.902 Middle Ages, ca. 450–1450

.903 Renaissance, 1450–1600

.903 2 Baroque period, 1600–1750

.903 3 Rococo and classical period, 1750–1825

.903 4 Romantic period, 1825–1900

.904 20th century, 1900–

Including neoromantic, neoclassical movements; impressionism

.92 Criticism and appraisal of work of individual musicians

Musicians composing or performing in more than one medium

Including, if preferred, musicians working in one medium

Including biography (but only in those libraries which classify biography by subject)

For criticism and appraisal of individual musicians working in one medium, see the medium, e.g., of violinists 787.108 1; *biography of musicians,* 927.8

.93–.99 History of music in specific countries

Divide like 930–999, e.g., history of music in Spain 780.946

For theories and forms from racial and national viewpoint, see 781.7

781 Theory and technique of music

For musicology, see 780.01; *theory and technique of a specific medium, the medium, e.g., violin* 787.1

.1 **Scientific theories**

Including mathematical theory of music, acoustics in music, physiology of music

For physics of sound, see 534; *musical sound,* 781.22; *physiology of singing voice,* 784.92

781.15 Psychology of music

Including music and color

For tests of auditory perception, see 152.28; *music therapy,* 615.837

.2 **Principles of music**

.22 Musical acoustics

Including scales, intervals, tonalities, chords, pitch

For scientific theories of musical acoustics, see 781.1; *harmony,* 781.3

.23 Nomenclature and terminology

For music dictionaries, see 780.3

.24 Music notation

Including systems of notation, neumes, tablature, notation for the blind, reform proposals

.3 **Harmony**

Including realization of figured bass [*formerly* *781.66], thoro bass, modulation, keyboard harmony

For musical composition, see 781.61; *melody,* 781.41

.4 **Counterpoint**

Including canon and fugue

For scores of canons and fugues for a specific medium, see the medium, e.g., piano fugues 786.42; *musical form,* 781.5; *musical composition,* 781.61; *catches and rounds,* 784.1

.41 Melody

Including melodic structure and techniques; twelve-tone technique, quarter-tone scale

For harmonic systems, see 781.3

.5 **Musical form**

Comprehensive works

For forms used in a specific medium or group of mediums, see the medium or group, e.g., variations for symphony orchestra or other instrumental ensemble 785.34; *kinds of vocal music,* 784.1–784.7; *canon and fugue,* 781.4

[†.508 22] Sonata

Class in 781.52

[†.508 5] Dances

Class in 781.55

781.52 Sonata [*formerly* †781.508 22]

Comprehensive works

For sonatas in a specific medium, see the medium, e.g., violin sonatas 787.1

.55 Dance music [*formerly* †781.508 5]

Comprehensive works

Including works about the music of early dances, parlor and ballroom dances, folk and country dances, artistic dances

For dancing, see 793.3; *children's dancing games,* 796.13; *works about jazz,* 781.57; *ballet music,* 782.95; *dance orchestra,* 785.41; *dance music in a specific medium, the medium, e.g., dance music for piano* 786.44–786.46

.56 Program music

For program music for a specific medium, see the medium, e.g., for instrumental ensemble 785.32

.57 Jazz

Including ragtime, swing, blues music

For jazz orchestra, see 785.42; *jazz music for a specific medium, the medium, e.g., jazz music for piano* 786.46

.6 Composition and performance

Comprehensive works

For composition and performance of music of a specific kind or in a specific medium, see the subject, e.g., composition of grand opera 782.028, *violin performance* 787.107

.61 Musical composition

Including instrumental composition [*formerly also* *781.63], vocal composition

Class arranging [*formerly* *781.61] in 781.64

For harmony, see 781.3; *counterpoint,* 781.4; *improvisation,* 781.65; *composition of accompaniments,* 781.66; *embellishment,* 781.67

.62 Rhythm and meter

Including relation of words to music

781.63 Performance [*formerly* *781.64–*781.67]

Including interpretation [*formerly* *781.65], execution, expression; comprehensive works on conducting

Class instrumental composition [*formerly* *781.63] in 781.61

For conducting a specific musical group, see the group, e.g., conducting opera 782.07; *improvisation,* 781.65; *accompaniment,* 781.66; *embellishment,* 781.67

.632 Orchestration and instrumentation

[†.632 5] Profession of orchestra leader and direction of orchestra

Class profession of orchestra leader in 780.071 2; direction of orchestra in 785.107

.633 Score reading and playing

Including memorizing and phrasing [*both formerly* *781.65]

[*.64–*.67] Performance

Class in 781.63

.64 Musical arrangement [*formerly* *781.61]

Including adaptation, resolution, instrumental reduction, transcription

.642 Transposition

Including written transposition

.65 Improvisation

Including extemporization

Class memorizing and phrasing in 781.633, interpretation in 781.63 [*all formerly* *781.65]

.66 Accompaniment

Composition and performance

Class realization of figured bass [*formerly* *781.66] in 781.3

For accompaniment of a specific kind of music or performance, see the kind, e.g., instrumental accompaniment of church music 783.1

.67 Embellishment

Including graces, ornaments, decoration

781.7 **Theories and forms of music from racial or national viewpoint [*formerly* *780.9]**

For folk songs, see 784.4; *history of music in specific countries,* 780.93–780.99; *national airs, songs, hymns,* 784.71

.71 Primitive music

Including American Indian music

.72 Music of peoples not otherwise provided for

Including gypsy music

.73 Ancient music [*formerly* *780.93, *formerly also* †781.8]

Divide like 930, e.g., ancient Egyptian music 781.732

.74–.79 Music of modern peoples and races

Divide like 940–999, e.g., German music 781.743

[†.8] **Ancient music**

Class in 781.73

.9 **Other topics**

.91 Musical instruments

Comprehensive works

Including history, hand construction, repair, tuning, verification

Class manufacture of musical instruments [*formerly* †781.91] in 681.81

For a specific instrument, see the instrument, e.g., violin 787.1

.96 Works of dramatic authors

Comprehensive works

Including librettos, scenarios, opera poems, ballet poems

For librettos for a specific kind of composition, see the subject, e.g., librettos for Rigoletto 782.12; *libretto writing,* 782.028

.969 Manuscripts and autographs of musicians

Including first editions, special editions; letters, scores and parts of music

For a manuscript of a specific subject, see the subject, e.g., a manuscript of an unaccompanied violin solo by Kreisler 787.154 1

781.97 Bibliographies of music scores

Including thematic catalogs; comprehensive bibliographies of music itself and works about music

Class bibliographies of works about music [*formerly* *781.97] in 016.78

.973 Catalogs of music scores

Divide like 017, e.g., auction catalogs 781.973 3

For catalogs of phonograph records, see 789.913

.973 5 Catalogs of musical works of specific composers

Including thematic catalogs, bibliographies

.98 Music publishing

For publishers' catalogs, see 781.973 4

.981 Music printing

Including other methods of reproduction

782 **Dramatic music [*formerly also* †785.22]**

.028 Composition of opera and other dramatic music

Including libretto writing, scenario writing, and translating, arrangement

.07 Opera production and musical dramaturgy [*formerly* †792.4–†792.6]

Including training of performers, conducting of operas, operettas, ballets, other music for theatrical production; professional and amateur performance

For stage guides, see specific form, e.g., for grand opera 782.12; *ballet production,* 792.8; *theatrical production,* 792; *motion-picture, radio, television play production,* 791.4

.08 Collections of stories, plots, analyses

For works about one or more operas of a single composer, see 782.1; *about one or more operettas of a single composer,* 782.81; *about one or more ballets of a single composer,* 782.95; *about plays, the* 800's; *about motion-picture, radio, television plays,* 791.4

.1 **Opera**

Including works about Wagnerian, German, French, Italian grand opera [*all formerly* †782.2–†782.5], comic and satiric opera [*formerly* †782.6], opéra bouffe [*formerly* †782.7], chamber opera

Class operetta [*formerly* *782.1] in 782.81

.12 Librettos and stage guides

782.15 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Including arrangements, abridgments, excerpts

.152 Collections by two or more composers

.154 Single works and collections by one composer

[†.2–†.5] Epic, Wagnerian, other German, French, Italian grand opera

Class in 782.1

[†.6] Comic and satiric opera

Class in 782.1

[†.7] Opéra bouffe

Class in 782.1

.8 Theater music

.81 Operettas [*formerly* *782.1]

Including musical comedies, revues

Divide like 782.1, e.g., excerpts from scores of musical shows by one composer 782.815 4

.82 Secular cantatas

Including secular oratorios [*formerly* †785.21]

Divide like 782.1, e.g., librettos 782.822

For sacred cantatas, see 783.4; *sacred oratorios,* 783.3

.83 Incidental dramatic music

Including instrumental and vocal music intended for use with stage performances

Divide like 782.1, e.g., incidental music for a specific play 782.835 4

.85 Film music

Divide like 782.1

.86 Radio music

Divide like 782.1

.87 Television music

Divide like 782.1

782.9 Other forms of dramatic music

Including music for pantomimes, masks, pageants

For theatrical production, see 792

.95 Ballet music

Divide like 782.1, e.g., music for a specific ballet 782.955 4

For ballet production, see 792.8

783 Sacred music

Including church music

For hymnology, see 245; *music in public worship,* 264.2

.026 Music of specific Christian denominations

Comprehensive works

Divide like 280, e.g., music of Presbyterian Church 783.026 5

If preferred, add 0 and divide further like 783.1–783.9, e.g., Presbyterian hymnbooks 783.026 509. Denominational libraries may prefer to class music of other denominations here, while classing music of their own denomination in 783.1–783.9

For a specific kind of church music, see the kind, e.g., hymnbooks 783.952

.029 Music of other religions

Comprehensive works

Divide like 290, e.g., music of Buddhist religion 783.029 43

For a specific kind of religious music, see the kind, e.g., liturgical music 783.2

.1 Organ, orchestral, instrumental church music [*formerly* *785–*789]

Works about the subject only

Including accompaniment

Class instrumental sacred music itself (scores and parts) [*formerly* †783.1] in 785–789

783.2 **Liturgical and ritualistic music**

Works about music for public worship and prayer of all religions and sects

For liturgical texts without music, see 264; *sacred oratorios,* 783.3; *nonliturgical sacred choral music,* 783.4

.205 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Including arrangements, abridgments, excerpts

.205 2 Collections by two or more composers

.205 4 Single works and collections by one composer

.21 Missal, divine liturgy, communion

Divide 783.215 like 783.205, e.g., music arrangement for communion 783.215 4

.22 Common (Ordinary) of the Mass

Including Kyrie, Gloria, Credo, Sanctus, Benedictus, Agnus Dei

Divide 783.225 like 783.205

.23 Proper of the Mass

Including offertory, gradual, tract, sequence, tropes, verses

Divide 783.235 like 783.205

For Requiem Masses, see 783.29

.24 Music for other specific services

Including vespers, complins, antiphonal responsive services, morning and evening prayer

Divide 783.245 like 783.205

[†.25] Plain song

Class in 783.5

.26 Litanies

Divide 783.265 like 783.205

.27 Lenten and penitential music

Including Good Friday, The Reproaches

Divide 783.275 like 783.205

.28 Liturgical dramas and mysteries

Including Christmas, Easter liturgical music

Divide 783.285 like 783.205

For Christmas carols, see 783.65

783.29 Other special services

Including solemnities, Requiem Masses, processionals, recessionals

Divide 783.295 like 783.205

.3 **Sacred oratorios**

Large sacred choral works, complete

Including Passion music; comprehensive works on sacred and secular oratorios

For secular oratorios, see 782.82; *sacred cantatas,* 783.4

.32 Librettos

.35 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Including arrangements, abridgments, excerpts

.352 Collections by two or more composers

.354 Single works and collections by one composer

.4 **Shorter nonliturgical sacred choral pieces**

Including anthems, motets, choruses, sacred cantatas; comprehensive works on sacred and secular cantatas

Divide like 783.3, e.g., collections of anthems by several composers 783.452

For liturgical motets and anthems, see 783.2; *secular cantatas,* 782.82; *sacred oratorios,* 783.3

.5 **Chants**

Including plain chant (plain song) [*formerly* †783.25], harmonized chant; Gregorian, Ambrosian, Anglican chant; Jewish chant

Divide like 783.3

.6 **Carols**

Including popular canticles

Divide 783.63 like 783.35, e.g., collections of traditional carols 783.635 2

For church choirs, see 783.8; *hymn tunes,* 783.9

.65 Christmas carols

Divide like 783.3

783.66 **Christmas music**

Comprehensive works about the subject only

For a specific kind of Christmas music, see the subject, e.g., collections of Christmas oratorios 783.352; *Christmas music for a specific medium, the medium, e.g., excerpts of Christmas music for organ* 786.805 2

.67 **Sacred songs for one [*formerly* *784.3] or more voices**

Songs not otherwise provided for in 783.4–783.9

For songs for congregational singing, see 783.9

.675 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Including arrangements, abridgments, excerpts; evangelistic songs for one or more voices [*formerly* †*783.7]

Divide like 784.306, e.g., soprano solo 783.675 12

For works about evangelistic music, see 783.7

.7 **Evangelistic music**

Works about the subject only

Including mission, revival, Sunday school music

Class music itself (scores and parts) of evangelistic songs for one or more voices in 783.675, for congregational singing in 783.95 [*both formerly* †*783.7]

.8 **Church choirs**

Works about the subject only

Including junior choirs, vocal quartets; church choir training and conducting

For choral training and conducting, see 784.96; *music itself (scores and parts) for choirs, the kind of music, e.g., anthems* 783.45

.9 **Congregational singing**

Including hymnody, psalmody; hymn tunes

For chanted psalms, see 783.5; *hymnology, hymns without music,* 245

.95 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Including evangelistic songs for congregational singing [*formerly* †*783.7]

Divide like 783.35, e.g., hymnals 783.952

For works about evangelistic music, see 783.7

784–789 Individual mediums of musical performance

Including works on history, instruction, composition, arrangement, technique, interpretation, performance; programs; scores and parts

When choice must be made from among the numbers for two or more different mediums performing together, class by the number for that medium which is highest on the following list, e.g., duets for violin and flute 785.727 1

Voice
- Children
- Women
- Men

String instruments
- Arranged as in 787

Wind instruments
- Arranged as in 788

Percussion instruments
- Arranged as in 789

Keyboard instruments
- Accordion
- Organ
- Harpsichord
- Piano

For dramatic music performed in a specific medium, see 782

784 Vocal music

With or without instrumental accompaniment

Including secular vocal music other than dramatic; songs; comprehensive works on secular and sacred vocal music

For sacred vocal music, see 783; *dramatic vocal music,* 782

SUMMARY

784.1	**Choruses and part songs**
.2	**Large secular choral works**
.3	**Songs for one or more voices**
.4	**Folk songs**
.5	**Song and choral festivals**
.6	**Songs for groups**
.7	**Other kinds of songs**
.8	**Collected songs**
.9	**Vocal performance**

784.015 Analytical guides and program notes

.028 Composition of vocal music

Including arrangement

[.07] Instruction and study

Class in 784.93

.073 Vocal concert and recital programs

784.1–784.7 Specific kinds of songs and vocal music

Including collections [*formerly also* †*784.8]

For vocal music intended for dramatic performance, see 782; *sacred vocal music,* 783; *collections of various kinds of songs,* 784.8

.1 Choruses [*formerly also* †784.6] and part songs

Including choral pieces not originally composed for orchestral accompaniment, and not provided for in 784.4–784.7; madrigals, glees, rounds, catches

.106 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Including collections, single works; arrangements, abridgments, excerpts

.106 81 Children only

.106 82 Women only

.106 83 Men only

.106 84 Mixt choruses

.106 85 Vocal parts with choruses

.2 Large secular choral works

Compositions originally composed for chorus and orchestra with or without solo voices

.206 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Including collections, single works; arrangements, abridgments, excerpts

.3 Songs for one or more voices

Including vocal chamber music; art songs, dance songs, ballads, ballades, canzonets; songs not provided for in 784.4–784.7

Class sacred solo songs [*formerly* *784.3] in 783.67

784.306 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Including collections, single works; arrangements, abridgments, excerpts

.306 1 One-voice part (Solos)

.306 11 Children

.306 12 Women

Including soprano, mezzo-soprano, contralto voices

.306 13 Men

Including tenor, baritone, bass voices

.306 2 Two-voice parts (Duets)

Including mixt duets

Divide like 784.306 1, e.g., duets for women 784.306 22

.306 3 Three-voice parts (Trios)

Including mixt trios

Divide like 784.306 1

.306 4 Four-voice parts (Quartets)

Including mixt quartets

Divide like 784.306 1

.306 5 Five-voice parts (Quintets)

Including mixt quintets

Divide like 784.306 1

.306 6 Six-voice parts (Sextets)

Including mixt sextets

Divide like 784.306 1

.306 7 Seven-, eight-, nine-voice parts (Septets, octets, nonets)

Including mixt songs

Divide like 784.306 1

.4 Folk songs

Including comprehensive works on folk songs, folk song collecting, folk music

For folk dances, see 793.31; *national airs, songs, hymns,* 784.71; *songs of special ethnic groups,* 784.75; *instrumental folk music, the specific medium, e.g., folk dance tunes arranged for piano* 786.45; *Christmas carols,* 783.65

.406 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Including collections, single works; arrangements, abridgments, excerpts

784.49 Folk songs and folk music of specific countries

Works about the subject only

Divide like 930–999, e.g., folk songs of France 784.494 4

For scores and parts of folk songs, see 784.406; *of instrumental folk music, the specific medium, e.g., collections of folk music arranged for violin* 787.152

.5 Song and choral festivals

Works about the subject only

Including competitive festivals, e.g., eisteddfod, sängerfest

For general musical competitions and festivals, see 780.79

.6 Songs for groups

Unorganized groups, groups not organized primarily for musical purposes

Class choruses [*formerly* †784.6] in 784.1

For choral societies, see 784.96

.606 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Including collections, single works; arrangements, abridgments, excerpts

.61 Home and community songs, popular songs

Including community singing, singing in the home

For children's songs, see 784.624; *student songs,* 784.62

.610 6 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Including collections, single works; arrangements, abridgments, excerpts

.62 Student and school songs

Comprehensive works about the subject and comprehensive collections of music itself

.622 College and university songs

Including songs of professional and technical schools, college fraternity songs

.622 06 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Including collections, single works; arrangements, abridgments, excerpts

.623 High school songs [*formerly* *784.624]

.623 06 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Including collections, single works; arrangements, abridgments, excerpts

784.624 Children's songs

Including elementary school songs

Class secondary school songs [*formerly* *784.624] in 784.623

For kindergarten songs, see 372.215; *children's singing games,* 796.13

.624 06 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Including collections, single works; arrangements, abridgments, excerpts

.66 Songs of societies, special groups, service clubs

Including Masonic songs, Rotary, Lions Club songs

For college fraternity songs, see 784.622; *topical songs,* 784.68

.660 6 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Including collections, single works; arrangements, abridgments, excerpts

.68 Topical songs

Works about the subject and music itself (collections, single works; arrangements, abridgments, excerpts)

Divide like 000–999, e.g., baseball songs 784.687 963 57, labor songs 784.683 31

.7 Other kinds of songs

.71 National airs, songs, hymns

Comprehensive works about the subject and comprehensive collections of music itself

Including martial and political songs

For theories and forms of music from racial and national viewpoint, see 781.7; *folk songs,* 784.4

.719 National songs of specific countries

Works about each and music itself (collections, single works; arrangements, abridgments, excerpts)

Divide like 930–999, e.g., national air of Spain 784.719 46

784.75 Songs of ethnic and cultural groups not otherwise provided for

Comprehensive works about the subject and comprehensive collections of music itself

.751 American Indian songs

Works about the subject and music itself (collections, single works; arrangements, abridgments, excerpts)

.752 Gypsy songs

Works about the subject and music itself (collections, single works; arrangements, abridgments, excerpts)

.754 Creole songs

Works about the subject and music itself (collections, single works; arrangements, abridgments, excerpts)

.755 Anglo- and Celtic-American songs

Works about the subject and music itself (collections, single works; arrangements, abridgments, excerpts)

.756 American Negro songs and spirituals

Including minstrel and plantation songs

.756 06 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Including collections, single works; arrangements, abridgments, excerpts

.8 Collected songs

Collections of music itself too general or comprehensive for 784.1–784.7

Class collections of specific kinds of songs [*formerly* †*784.8] in 784.1–784.7

.81 Collected solos

Including arrangements, abridgments, excerpts

Divide like 784.306 1, e.g., collections of women's solos 784.812

.82 Collected duets

Including mixt duets

Divide like 784.306 1, e.g., collections of tenor duets 784.823

.83 Collected trios

Including mixt trios

Divide like 784.306 1

784.84 Collected quartets

Including mixt quartets

Divide like 784.306 1

.85 Collected songs for quintets, sextets, septets, octets, nonets

Including mixt songs

Divide like 784.306 1

.87 Collections for male voices

.88 Collections for female voices

.9 Vocal performance

Works about the subject only

Including solo and ensemble

.92 Physiology of singing voice

For physiology of voice and speech, see 612.78

.93 Voice training

Including tone formation, vowel exercises [*both formerly* †784.94]; voice culture, vocal exercises, breathing, pronunciation, vowel formation; performance and interpretation

For public speaking, see 808.5

.94 Special methods of musical expression

Including sight singing, solfeggios, sol-fa; whistling

Class tone formation, vowel exercises [*both formerly* †784.94] in 784.93

.95 Voice training for dramatic performance

Including training in dramatic interpretation

.96 Choral societies

Including performance in concert, choral training and conducting

For church choir training and conducting, see 783.8; *choral music,* 784.1; *choir music,* 783.4; *choral festivals,* 784.5; *choral speaking,* 808.55

785–789 Instruments and instrumental music

Including works on history, hand construction, care, repair, instruction, technique, interpretation, conducting, composition, musical form, analytical guides, programs; music itself (scores and parts); instrumental sacred music itself [*formerly* †783.1]

Class works about sacred instrumental music [*formerly* *785–*789] in 783.1; manufacture of specific musical instruments [*formerly* †*785–†*789] in 681.8

For a specific instrument and music written and arranged for it, see the instrument, e.g., music for viola 787.2; *dramatic instrumental music,* 782; *comprehensive works on musical instruments,* 781.91

785 Instrumental ensemble and its music

Including grouping of instruments; arrangements, transcriptions, potpourris [*all formerly* †785.9]; comprehensive works on instruments and instrumental music

For keyboard instruments, see 786; *string instruments,* 787; *wind instruments,* 788; *percussion instruments,* 789; *arrangements, transcriptions, potpourris for a specific medium, the medium, e.g., orchestral arrangement of short compositions for single instrument* 785.3

SUMMARY

785.1 Symphony orchestra and its music
.12 Band and its music
.2 Orchestral music with incidental vocal parts
.3 Other music for symphony orchestra
.4 Small or light orchestra and its music
.5 Independent overtures for symphony orchestra
.6 Concertos
.7 Chamber music
.8 Suites for symphony orchestra

.015 Analytical guides and program notes

.028 Composition for instrumental ensemble

Including arrangement

For compositions for band, see 785.120 28

.062 Specific organizations

Divide like 940–999, e.g., Philadelphia Orchestra 785.062 748 11

.073 Concert and recital programs

785.1 Symphony orchestra and its music

Including comprehensive works on orchestras, bands, and music composed and arranged for them

For band, see 785.12; *orchestra with voices,* 785.2; *small orchestra,* 785.4; *overtures,* 785.5; *concertos,* 785.6; *suites,* 785.8; *short and miscellaneous orchestral pieces,* 785.3

.107 Orchestra training and conducting

Including direction of orchestra [*formerly* †781.632 5]; symphony orchestra, salon orchestra, string orchestra; organization, management of orchestras

For band training and conducting, see 785.120 7; *dance orchestra training and conducting,* 785.410 7; *jazz orchestra training and conducting,* 785.420 7

.11 Symphonies

Including comprehensive works

Class symphonic poems [*formerly* †*785.11] in 785.32; variations [*formerly* *785.11] in 785.34

For symphonies for a medium other than full orchestra, see the medium, e.g., symphonies for band 785.12

.115 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Including arrangements, abridgments, excerpts

.115 2 Collections by two or more composers

.115 4 Single works and collections by one composer

.12 Band and its music [*formerly* *788]

Including wind band, brass band, military band, school band, drum and bugle corps; symphonies, program music, variations, overtures, suites for band

For wind instruments, see 788; *jazz band,* 785.42; *rhythm and percussion band,* 785.43; *dance orchestra,* 785.41; *concertos with band,* 785.6; *military band music itself,* 785.13

.120 28 Composition for band

Including arrangement

.120 7 Band training and conducting [*formerly* *788.07]

Including drum majoring, organization, management of bands

785.125 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Divide like 785.115, e.g., collections of band music by one composer 785.125 4

For military band music itself, see 785.13

.13 Military band music itself

Including marches, patriotic music

Divide like 785.115, e.g., collections by one composer 785.134

For works about military band music, see 785.12

.2 Orchestral music with incidental vocal parts

For dramatic orchestral music, see 782; *sacred music with orchestral accompaniment,* 783; *secular vocal music with orchestral accompaniment,* 784

[†.21] Secular oratorios

Class in 782.82

[†.22] Dramatic music for orchestra with voices

Class in 782

.25 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Divide like 785.115, e.g., collections of orchestral music with voice parts by one composer 785.254

.3 Other music for symphony orchestra

Including shorter pieces not provided for elsewhere; romantic idyllic orchestral music; comprehensive works on such music for instrumental ensemble

For such music for another medium, see the medium, e.g., for string orchestra 785.47

.305 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Divide like 785.115, e.g., collections of short romantic pieces by several composers 785.305 2

.32 Program music for symphony orchestra

Including symphonic poems [*formerly* †*785.11]; comprehensive works on program music for instrumental ensemble

For program music for another medium, see the medium, e.g., for salon orchestra 785.46

.325 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Divide like 785.115, e.g., collections of symphonic poem arrangements by several composers for symphony orchestra 785.325 2

785.34 Variations and other large works for symphony orchestra [*formerly* *785.11]

Including comprehensive works on variations for instrumental ensemble

For variations for another medium, see the medium, e.g., for string orchestra 785.47

.345 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Divide like 785.115

.4 Small or light orchestra and its music

Comprehensive works about the subject and comprehensive collections of music itself

For concertos with small orchestra, see 785.6; *chamber music,* 785.7

.41 Dance orchestra and its music

For jazz orchestra, see 785.42; *rhythm band,* 785.43; *dance forms of music,* 781.55; *dance music in a specific medium, the medium, e.g., dance music for piano* 786.44–786.46

.410 7 Dance orchestra training and conducting

Including organization, management

.415 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Divide like 785.115, e.g., arrangements for dance orchestra by one composer 785.415 4

.42 Jazz orchestra and its music

Including jazz band

For jazz as a form of music, see 781.57

.420 7 Jazz orchestra training and conducting

Including organization, management

.425 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Divide like 785.115, e.g., single works 785.425 4

.43 Rhythm band and orchestra

Including percussion ensemble, toy orchestra

.435 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Divide like 785.115

785.46 Salon orchestra and its music

Including theater, hotel, café orchestra

.465 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Including symphonies, program music, variations, overtures, suites for salon orchestra

Divide like 785.115

.47 String orchestra and its music [*formerly* *787]

For string instruments, see 787

.475 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Including symphonies, program music, variations, overtures, suites for string orchestra

Divide like 785.115

.5 Independent overtures for symphony orchestra

Including comprehensive works on overtures for instrumental ensemble

For opera overtures, see 782.1; *overtures for another medium, the medium, e.g., for salon orchestra* 785.46

.55 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Divide like 785.115, e.g., scores of one overture 785.554

.6 Concertos

One or more solo instruments with symphony orchestra, small orchestra, or band

Including concerti grossi

For music for organ, piano, and orchestra, see 786.89

.66–.69 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Divide like 786–789, e.g., violin concertos 785.671. Add 0 and divide further like 785.115, e.g., collections of violin concertos by two or more composers 785.671 02

Where there is more than one solo instrument, divide by the number for that instrument which appears first in the table of precedence of mediums under 784–789, e.g., concertos for flute and violin 785.671; do not divide for additional solo instruments or for the group medium

785.7 Chamber music

Works about compositions for two or more different solo instruments

Including string [*formerly* *787.04], wind [*formerly* *788.04] chamber music; plectral ensembles [*formerly* *787.95]; duets with string instrument and keyboard instrument [*formerly* *787], with wind instrument and keyboard instrument [*formerly* *788]

Add 0 and divide like 785.72–785.79, e.g., works about duets 785.702, about duets for flute and piano 785.702 851

For compositions for two or more of the same instrument, see the instrument, e.g., for two or more violins 787.1; *organ and piano music,* 786.88

785.71–785.79 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Including arrangements, abridgments, excerpts; compositions in various forms, e.g., sonatas

.71 Collections of music for groups of different sizes

For collections limited to groups of a specific size, see 785.72–785.79

785.72–785.79 Music itself for groups of specific sizes

Including collections, single works

For collections for groups of different sizes, see 785.71

.72 Duets

Divide like 786–789, using the number for that instrument of the two which appears first in the table of precedence of mediums under 784–789, e.g., duets for violin and flute 785.727 1

.73 Trios

Divide like 785.72

.74 Quartets

Divide like 785.72

.75 Quintets

Divide like 785.72

.76 Sextets

Divide like 785.72

.77 Septets

Divide like 785.72

785.78 Octets

Divide like 785.72

.79 Nonets and larger combinations

Divide like 785.72

.8 Suites for symphony orchestra

Including comprehensive works on suites for instrumental ensemble

For suites for another medium, see the medium, e.g., for salon orchestra 785.46; *opera suites,* 782.1; *ballet suites,* 782.95

.85 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Divide like 785.115, e.g., single suites 785.854

[†.9] Arrangements, transcriptions, potpourris

Class in 785 and its subdivisions

786 Keyboard instruments and their music

SUMMARY

786.1	**Keyboard string instruments**
.2	**Piano**
.221	**Harpsichord**
.23	**Piano tuning and repairing**
.3	**Piano instruction and study**
.4	**Piano music**
.5	**Keyboard wind instruments**
.6	**Organ**
.7	**Organ instruction and study**
.8	**Organ music**
.9	**Other keyboard instruments**

.1 Keyboard string instruments

.101 5 Analytical guides and program notes

.102 8 Composition for keyboard string instruments

.107 3 Concert and recital programs

.2 Piano

For player piano, see 789.72

[.207] Instruction and study

Class in 786.3

[.209] History

Class in 786.22

786.22 History

Including clavichord

.221 Harpsichord

Including spinet, virginal

.23 Piano tuning and repairing

Including harpsichord tuning and repairing

Class manufacture [*formerly* †*786.23] in 681.816 2

.3 Piano instruction and study

Including performance and interpretation, accompaniment on piano, instruction and study of harpsichord

.31 Hand

.32 Touch

.33 Studies and exercises

Including series covering more than one grade of difficulty, études

For artistic études, see 786.47

.332 Scales

.34 Octaves, chords, arpeggios

.35 Pedal

.36 Elementary instruction

Including juvenile and adult beginners

.37 Intermediate instruction

.38 Advanst instruction

.4 Piano music

Music composed and arranged for piano, harpsichord, other early keyboard string instruments

For piano concertos, see 785.662

.405 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Comprehensive collections and works not provided for in 786.41–786.49

Including arrangements, abridgments, excerpts

.405 2 Collections by two or more composers

.405 4 Single works and collections by one composer

786.41–786.49 Special forms of piano music

786.41 Sonatas

Including sonatinas, rondos

Divide 786.415 like 786.405, e.g., collections of piano sonatas by one composer 786.415 4

.42 Fantasias

Including fugues, rhapsodies, arabesques

Divide 786.425 like 786.405

.43 Romantic and descriptive music

Including nocturnes, meditations, ballads, songs without words

Divide 786.435 like 786.405

786.44–786.46 Dances

For dance music with dance instruction, see 793.3; *dance forms of music,* 781.55; *dance orchestra,* 785.41; *ballet music,* 782.95

.44 Marches, polonaises, polkas, mazurkas

Divide 786.445 like 786.405

.45 Other dance forms

Including national, classic, idealized; dance suites, square dance music

Divide 786.455 like 786.405

.46 Modern dance music

Including ballroom dance music, jazz music

Divide 786.465 like 786.405

For jazz as a form of music, see 781.57

.47 Artistic études

Divide 786.475 like 786.405

For études for instruction, see 786.33

.48 Variations and suites

Including transcriptions

Divide 786.485 like 786.405

For dance suites, see 786.45

786.49 Music for more than one performer

.495 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Comprehensive collections and works not provided for in 786.41–786.48

Including arrangements, abridgments, excerpts

.495 6 One piano, two or more performers

.495 7 Two pianos, two or more performers

.495 8 Three or more pianos, three or more performers

786.5–786.9 Keyboard wind and electronic instruments and their music

.5 Keyboard wind instruments

Including comprehensive works on keyboard instruments with stops and air chambers

.501 5 Analytical guides and program notes

.502 8 Composition for keyboard wind instruments

.507 3 Concert and recital programs

.6 Organ

For reed organ, see 786.94; *electronic organ,* 786.92

[.607] Instruction and study

Class in 786.7

[.609] History

Class in 786.62

.62 History

.63 Organ care and repair

Including tuning

Class manufacture [*formerly* †*786.63] in 681.816 6

.7 Organ instruction and study

Including performance and interpretation, accompaniment on organ; other keyboard instruments with stops and air chambers

.73 Studies and exercises

Including series covering more than one grade of difficulty

.76 Elementary instruction

.77 Intermediate instruction

.78 Advanst instruction

786.8 Organ music

Including music composed and arranged for pipe organ; music for other keyboard instruments with stops and air chambers

For organ concertos, see 785.666; *works about sacred organ music,* 783.1

.805 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Comprehensive collections and works not provided for in 786.81–786.89

Including arrangements, abridgments, excerpts

Divide like 786.405, e.g., arrangements for organ by one composer 786.805 4

.81 Sonatas

Including sonatinas and similar long works for organ alone

Divide 786.815 like 786.405, e.g., organ sonatas by one composer 786.815 4

.82 Fugues

Including fugues with or without preludes; toccatas

Divide 786.825 like 786.405

For preludes, see 786.83

.83 Preludes

Divide 786.835 like 786.405

For preludes and fugues, see 786.82

.84 Interludes

Divide 786.845 like 786.405

.85 Postludes

Divide 786.855 like 786.405

.86 Offertories

Divide 786.865 like 786.405

.87 Voluntaries and improvisations

Divide 786.875 like 786.405

.88 Organ and piano

Divide 786.885 like 786.405

.89 Organ, piano, and orchestra

Divide 786.895 like 786.405

786.9 Other keyboard instruments

.92 Electronic and semielectronic organs

For music for electronic organ, see 786.8

.923 Tuning and repairing

For manufacture, see 681.866 8

.94 Reed organ

Including harmonium, cabinet organ, melodeon

For music for reed organ, see 786.8

.943 Tuning and repairing

For manufacture, see 681.816 92

.97 Accordion

Including concertina, bandonion

Divide like 787.1, e.g., single accordion solos unaccompanied 786.975 41

787 String instruments and their music

Class string orchestras in 785.47, duets with string instrument and keyboard instrument in 785.7 [*both formerly* *787]

For keyboard string instruments, see 786.1–786.4; *concertos of string instruments,* 785.67

[*.04] String chamber music

Class in 785.7

787.1–787.42 Bowed string instruments

.1 Violin

Including comprehensive works on bowed string instruments and their music

For a specific bowed string instrument, see the instrument, e.g., double bass 787.41

.101 5 Analytical guides and program notes

Including analysis of various forms of violin music, e.g., sonatas

.102 8 Composition for violin

Including arrangement

787.107 Instruction and study

Including performance, interpretation

For instructive editions of violin music, see 787.151

.107 3 Concert and recital programs

.108 1 Criticism and appraisal of specific violinists

Including compositions, performance

For collected violin scores of a single composer, see 787.154

.12 Hand construction, care, repair

For manufacture, see 681.817 1

.15 Music itself (Scores and parts)

Including arrangements, abridgments, excerpts; compositions in various forms, e.g., sonatas

.151 Instructive editions

For instruction and study of violin, see 787.107

.152 Collections by two or more composers

Divide like 787.154, e.g., collections of accompanied solos 787.152 2

.154 Single works and collections by one composer

.154 1 Solo, unaccompanied

.154 2 Solo, accompanied

For duets for violin and second instrument, see 785.727 1

.154 3 Two or more violins, unaccompanied

.154 4 Two or more violins, accompanied

For chamber music combinations including violin, see 785.7

.2 Viola

Divide like 787.1, e.g., single solos, unaccompanied 787.254 1

.3 Violoncello

Divide like 787.1

.4 Other bowed string instruments

.41 Double bass

Including contrabass

Divide like 787.1, e.g., care of double bass 787.412

787.42 Viols

Including vielle

Divide like 787.1

For wheel vielle, see 787.9

787.5–787.92 Plectral instruments

.5 Harp

Including comprehensive works on plectral instruments and their music

Divide like 787.1, e.g., recital programs 787.507 3

For a specific plectral instrument, see the instrument, e.g., banjo 787.7

.61 Guitar

Including Hawaiian guitar, balalaika

Divide like 787.1, e.g., instructive editions 787.615 1

.65 Mandolin

Divide like 787.1

.67 Lute

Divide like 787.1

.7 Banjo

Divide like 787.1

.8 Zither

Divide like 787.1

.9 Other plectral instruments

Including hurdy-gurdy [*formerly* *789.7], dulcimer, wheel vielle

For street organ, see 789.71

.92 Ukelele

Divide like 787.1, e.g., ukelele music itself 787.925

[*.95] Plectral ensemble

Class in 785.7

788 Wind instruments and their music

Class bands and band music in 785.12, duets with wind instrument and keyboard instrument in 785.7 [*both formerly* *788]

For keyboard wind instruments, see 786.5–786.9; *concertos of wind instruments,* 785.68

[*.04] Wind chamber music

Class in 785.7

[*.07] Band conducting

Class in 785.120 7

788.1–788.49 Brass wind instruments

For brass band, see 785.12

.1 Trumpet and bugle

Including cornet [*formerly* †788.3], valve bugle [*formerly* †788.47]; comprehensive works on brass wind instruments and their music

Divide like 787.1, e.g., single trumpet solos, unaccompanied 788.154 1

For a specific brass wind instrument, see the instrument, e.g., French horn 788.41

.2 Trombone

Divide like 787.1

[†*.3] Cornet, mellophone, alto horn

Class cornet [*formerly* †788.3] in 788.1; mellophone, alto horn [*both formerly* *788.3] in 788.42

.4 Horns and other brass wind instruments

.41 French horn

Including hunting horn

Divide like 787.1, e.g., single selections for two horns, accompanied 788.415 44

.42 Saxhorn

Including alto horn, mellophone [*both formerly* *788.3]

Divide like 787.1

For tuba, see 788.48; *saxophone,* 788.66

[†.43] Saxophone

Class in 788.66

788.44 Baritone and euphonium [*both formerly* *788.47]

Divide like 787.1

For trombone, see 788.2

.45 Ophicleide

Including key bugle [*formerly* †788.46], cornett

Divide like 787.1

For cornet, see 788.1; *serpent,* 788.48

[†.46] Key bugle

Class in 788.45

[†*.47] Valve bugle, baritone, euphonium

Class valve bugle [*formerly* †788.47] in 788.1; baritone, euphonium [*both formerly* *788.47] in 788.44

.48 Bass horn

Including tuba, sousaphone, serpent

Divide like 787.1, e.g., instruction and study 788.480 7

.49 Other instruments with cupt mouthpiece

Including alpenhorn [*formerly* †*788.9]

788.5–788.9 Wood-wind instruments

.5 Flute group

Wind instruments with mouth hole

Including ocarina; comprehensive works on wood-wind instruments and their music

For a specific wood-wind instrument, see the instrument, e.g., clarinet 788.62

.51 Flute

Including piccolo, fife

Divide like 787.1, e.g., selections for three flutes, unaccompanied 788.515 43

.53 Recorder

Including flageolet

Divide like 787.1

788.6 Reed instruments

For reed organ, see 786.94; *accordion,* 786.97

.62 Clarinet

Including bass clarinet, basset horn

Divide like 787.1, e.g., instruction and study 788.620 7

.66 Saxophone [*formerly* †788.43]

Divide like 787.1

.7 Double-reed instruments

Including oboe, oboe d'amore, oboe di caccia, English horn (cor anglais)

.8 Bass double-reed instruments

Including bassoon, double bassoon, heckelphone, bombardon

.9 Other reed instruments without keyboard

Including bagpipe, harmonica, mouth organ, mouth harp

Class alpenhorn [*formerly* †*788.9] in 788.49

789 Percussion, mechanical, electrical instruments

789.1–789.69 Percussion instruments and their music

For percussion ensemble, see 785.43

.1 Membranophone

Including tambourine [*formerly* †*789.4], drum, timpano (kettle-drum), tom-tom; comprehensive works on percussion instruments and their music

Divide like 787.1, e.g., single timpani solos with piano accompaniment 789.154 2

.2 Cymbals [*formerly* *789.4]

Divide like 787.1

.3 Triangle [*formerly* *789.4]

Divide like 787.1

.4 Other percussion instruments of indefinite pitch

Including castanets, maracas

Class tambourine [*formerly* †*789.4] in 789.1; cymbals in 789.2, triangle in 789.3 [*both formerly* *789.4]

.5 Bells, carillons, chimes

Including change ringing

789.6 Other percussion instruments of definite pitch

Including musical glasses [*formerly* †789.9], glockenspiel, marimba, xylophone, vibraphone, celesta

.69 Unsophisticated instruments

Including musical saw, comb, jew's-harp

789.7–789.913 Mechanical and electrical reproduction of music

.7 Mechanical instruments and devices

Class hurdy-gurdy [*formerly* *789.7] in 787.9

For manufacture, see 681.82

.71 Barrel organ

Including hand organ, street organ, street piano

For hurdy-gurdy, see 787.9

.72 Reproducing and player pianos [*formerly* †*789.9]

Including orchestrion

For manufacture, see 681.83

.8 Music box

.9 Electronic musical instruments

Including emicon, theremin, trautonium

Class musical glasses [*formerly* †789.9] in 789.6; player piano [*formerly* †*789.9] in 789.72

For a modification or imitation of a standard instrument, see its prototype, e.g., electronic organ 786.92

.91 Music recording

Including music recording on and playing from phonorecords (phonocylinders, phonodiscs, phonowires, phonotapes, phono-films)

For manufacture of sound reproducers, see 681.843

.911 Phonographs

Including mechanical phonographs

For use of phonograph in education, see 371.333; *manufacture,* 681.843

.912 Phonograph records (Phonorecords)

Including record collecting; talking books

.913 Catalogs of records

Including discography

790 Recreation

.1 Philosophy and theory

For ethics of recreation, see 175

.13 Value of recreation

Comprehensive works on use and effect of recreation

Including effective use of leisure

For a specific use of recreation, see the subject, e.g., recreational therapy 615.851 5

.19 Recreation for specific classes

Including recreational programs, collections of recreational materials; recreation for the family, recreation for laborers [*formerly* †331.84]

For a specific recreation, see the recreation, e.g., puzzles 793.73

.192 Recreation for specific age groups

Children, young adults, adults, aged

.194 Recreation for groups by sex

Boys, men; girls, women

.196 Recreation for the handicapt

Including invalids, convalescents

.2 Hobbies

Including collecting as a hobby

For a specific hobby, see the subject, e.g., shellcraft 745.55; *collecting specific objects, the subject, e.g., philately* 383.22

.68 Recreation centers

Including community centers as recreation centers

For playgrounds, see 796.068; *recreation for specific classes,* 790.19; *architecture of recreation buildings,* 725.8

.8 Collections and polygraphy

For collecting as a hobby, see 790.2

791 Public entertainment

For ethics of public shows, see 175.1

.068 Amusement parks

Including entertainments using amusement park equipment [*formerly* †791.7]

.1 Traveling shows

Production, staging, direction

Including medicine shows

Class conjuring, juggling, ventriloquism [*all formerly* †791.1] in 793.8

For circus, see 791.3

.12 Minstrel shows

Including minstrel skits [*formerly the* *800's]

[†.2] Concerts

Class concerts in 780.73; music competitions in 780.79

.3 Circus

Including clowns, horse shows in circuses, circus parades

For riding exhibitions, see 798.24

.4 Motion pictures, radio, television [*formerly* *792.93–*792.95]

Including comprehensive works on stage, motion-picture, radio, and television entertainment

For stage entertainment, see 792

.43 Motion-picture entertainment [*formerly* *792.93]

Including comprehensive works on motion pictures

For motion-picture photography, see 778.5; *a specific use of motion pictures, the use, e.g., motion pictures in advertising* 659.138 8

.430 1 Theory and principles of criticism of motion-picture entertainment

.430 13 Influence and value of motion pictures

For ethical aspects, see 175.1

.430 2 Motion-picture handbooks

Divide like 792.02 where applicable, e.g., make-up for motion pictures 791.430 27

791.432 Script writing for motion pictures

Writing of scripts other than plays

Including comprehensive works on motion-picture script writing

For motion-picture playwriting, see 808.23

.435 Types of motion pictures

Including newsreels, documentary films, plays

.437 Specific films

Including individual scripts [*formerly the* *800's]

Arrange alphabetically by title of film

If preferred, class all scripts, or those of literary value only, in the 800's

.44 Radio entertainment [*formerly* *792.94]

Including comprehensive works on radio

For radio communication, see 384.5; *radio engineering,* 621.384; *a specific use of radio, the use, e.g., radio in education* 371.333

.440 1 Theory and principles of criticism of radio entertainment

.442 Script writing for radio

Writing of scripts other than plays

Including comprehensive works on radio script writing

For radio playwriting, see 808.22

.443 Methods of presentation

Including live or recorded, network production, announcing, place of commercials

.445 Types of programs

Including news, sports, quiz shows, music, plays

.447 Specific programs

Including individual scripts [*formerly the* *800's]

Arrange alphabetically by name of program

If preferred, class all scripts, or those of literary value only, in the 800's

791.45 Television entertainment [*formerly* *792.95]

Including comprehensive works on television

For television communication, see 384.55; *television engineering,* 621.388; *a specific use of television, the use, e.g., television in education* 371.335 8

.450 1 Theory and principles of criticism of television entertainment

.450 2 Television handbooks

Divide like 792.02 where applicable, e.g., make-up for television 791.450 27

.452 Script writing for television

Writing of scripts other than plays

Including comprehensive works on television script writing

For television playwriting, see 808.22

.453 Methods of presentation

Including live or filmed, color, network production, announcing, place of commercials

.455 Types of programs

Including news, sports, quiz shows, music, plays

.457 Specific programs

Including individual scripts [*formerly the* *800's]

Arrange alphabetically by name of program

If preferred, class all scripts, or those of literary value only, in the 800's

.5 Miniature theaters

Including toy theaters, shadow plays

.53 Puppetry

Including making and operating marionettes and puppets, producing and staging puppet plays

.538 Texts of puppet plays

If preferred, class all texts, or those of literary value only, in the 800's

791.6 Pageantry

Including processions, festivals, Mardi gras, illuminations, parades, decoration of floats for parades

For water pageants, see 797.2; *school pageants,* 371.895; *circus parades,* 791.3; *pageantry customs,* 394.5; *Mardi gras customs,* 394.25

.62 Pageants

.622 Religious pageants

.624 Historical pageants

[†.7] Public games and sports

Class jousts in 394.7; use of playground equipment in 796.068; use of amusement park equipment in 791.068

.8 Animal performances

Including cockfighting, rodeos

For circus, see 791.3; *riding exhibitions,* 798.24; *shows of specific animals, the animal, e.g., cat shows* 636.8; *racing of specific animals,* 798; *ethics of animal fighting,* 175.6; *cruelty to animals,* 179.3

.82 Bullfighting

792 Theater

Stage presentations

For architecture of theaters, see 725.82; *dramatic music,* 782; *writing for the theater,* 808.2; *texts of plays, the* 800's; *use of plays in schools,* 371.895; *ethics of theatergoing,* 175.2; *comprehensive works on stage, motion-picture, radio, and television entertainment,* 791.4

792.01–792.028 Special applications of form divisions

Where applicable, 01–028 may be used under any subdivision of 792, e.g., costuming for ballet 792.802 6

.01 Theory and principles of criticism of dramatic production

For criticism of plays as literature, see the 800's, *e.g., criticism of American 20th century plays* 812.509

.013 Influence and value of the theater

Including moral aspects

For ethics of the theater, see 175.2

792.02 Theater handbooks

Including comprehensive works on theatrical production and direction [*formerly* *792.9]

For motion-picture, radio, television production, see 791.4

.022 Types of theaters

Including municipal theater, showboats, amateur theatricals

.022 3 Little theater movement

.022 4 Summer theater

.022 6 Children's theater

.022 8 Arena theater

.025 Stage setting

Including scenery, lighting

.026 Stage costuming

.027 Theatrical make-up

.028 Acting

Including impersonation, improvisation, use of expression and gestures, stage fright

For voice, expression, gesture in public speaking, see 808.52

.1 Tragedy

Including presentation of Passion plays, morality plays

For texts of literary plays, see the 800's, *e.g., early English morality plays* 822.1

.2 Comedy

Including melodrama, vaudeville

.3 Pantomimes

[†.4–†.6] Opera, comic opera, operetta production

Class in 782.07

.7 Music halls

Including histories, programs, performances; variety theaters, cabarets, night clubs

.8 Ballet

For ballet music, see 782.95

.82 Ballet dancing

Including choreography

792.84 Specific ballets

Including stories, plots

[*.9] Theatrical production

Class stage show production in 792.02; motion-picture, radio, television production in 791.4

793 Indoor games and amusements

.1 Private theatricals as home entertainment

For amateur production of plays, see 792.022

.2 Parties

Including showers

.21 Children's parties

.22 Seasonal parties

For holiday customs, see 394.26

.24 Charades and tableaux

.3 Dancing

For children's dancing games, see 796.13; *dance music,* 781.55; *ethics of dancing,* 175.3

.31 Folk and national dances

.319 Dances of specific countries

Divide like 930–999, e.g., folk dances of England 793.319 42

.32 Theatrical dancing

Including artistic, classical, interpretative dancing; dancing in motion pictures and television

For ballet dancing, choreography, see 792.82

.324 Tap dancing

Including clog dancing

.33 Ballroom dancing

Including round dances, jitterbug dancing

.34 Square dancing

.35 Dances with accessory features

Including sword dance, cotillion

.38 Balls

Including court, public, costume balls

793.4 Games of action

Including blindman's buff

.5 Forfeit and trick games

.7 Parlor games

Games not characterized by action

.73 Puzzles

Including quizzes, literary games, e.g., anagrams, acrostics, Scrabble®

For charades, see 793.24

.732 Crossword puzzles

Including dictionaries for use in solving the puzzles

.735 Riddles

For history and folklore of riddles, see 398.6

.74 Mathematical recreations

Class magic squares [*formerly* *793.74] in 511.61

For mathematical problems, see 510.76

.8 Parlor magic

Including scientific recreations, conjuring, juggling, ventriloquism suitable for home entertainment; for public entertainment [*formerly* †791.1]

For card tricks, see 795.438

.9 Other indoor diversions

Including amusements involving cutting and folding paper

For playing with toys, see 649.55; *model railroads,* 625.19

794 Indoor games of skill

For card games based on skill, see 795.41; *ethics of games of skill,* 175.4

.1 Chess

.2 Checkers and similar games

.6 Bowling [*formerly* *796.31]

Including skittles, tenpins

For lawn bowling, see 796.31

.7 Indoor ball games

Including billiards, pool [*both formerly* *796.3]; table tennis [*formerly* *796.34]

795 **Games of chance**

Including gambling, lotteries

For betting on a specific game or sport, see the game or sport, e.g., horse racing 798.48; *ethics of gambling,* 174.6; *of games of chance,* 175.5; *of betting,* 175.9; *investment lotteries,* 332.68

.01 Theory

Including gambling and betting systems, chances of winning

.1 Games with dice

Including backgammon, craps

.2 Wheel and top games

Including roulette

.3 Games dependent on drawing numbers or counters

Including dominoes, mah-jongg

.4 Card games

.41 Games based on skill

.412 Poker

.413 Whist

Including bridge whist

.414 Auction bridge

.415 Contract bridge

.416 Pinochle

.418 Rummy

Including canasta, samba

.42 Games of chance

Including baccarat, faro, twenty-one

.43 Games based on position and skill

Including card solitaire, patience

.438 Card tricks

For fortunetelling with cards, see 133.324

796 **Athletic and outdoor sports and games**

For athletics and sports in schools, see 371.73–371.75

SUMMARY

796.1	**Children's outdoor games**
.2	**Active games requiring use of equipment**
.3	**Ball games**
.4	**Athletic exercises and gymnastics**
.5	**Outdoor life**
.6	**Cycling**
.7	**Automobiling**
.8	**Combat sports**
.9	**Winter sports**
797	**Aquatic sports**
.5	**Air sports**
798	**Equestrian sports**
.8	**Racing other animals**
799	**Fishing, hunting, target shooting as sports**

.068 Playgrounds

Including sports using playground equipment [*formerly* †791.7]

For school playgrounds, see 371.61

.077 Coaching

.1 Children's outdoor games

.13 Singing and dancing games

.15 Play with aerial toys

Including kites

For model aircraft, see 629.133 1

.2 Active games requiring use of equipment

For ball games, see 796.3

.21 Roller skating

.24 Pitching games

Including quoits, horseshoe pitching

[†.26] Battledore and shuttlecock

Class in 796.345

796.3 Ball games

Class billiards, pool [*both formerly* *796.3] in 794.7

.31 Ball thrown directly by hand

Including handball, lawn bowling

Class indoor bowling [*formerly* *796.31] in 794.6

.32 Inflated ball thrown by hand

.323 Basketball

.325 Volleyball

.33 Inflated ball driven by foot

.332 Football

.333 Rugby

.334 Soccer

.34 Racket games

Class table tennis [*formerly* *796.34] in 794.7

.342 Tennis

.343 Rackets and squash

.345 Badminton

Including battledore and shuttlecock [*formerly* †796.26]

.347 Lacrosse

.35 Ball driven by mallet or bat

.352 Golf

.352 2 Miniature golf

.353 Polo

For water polo, see 797.25

.354 Croquet

.355 Hockey

For ice hockey, see 796.962

.357 Baseball

.357 8 Softball

.358 Cricket

[†.38] Throwing sports

Class in 796.435

796.4 Athletic exercises and gymnastics

For athletics in schools, see 371.74

.406 8 Gymnasiums and stadiums

.41 Calisthenics

Exercises for strength and suppleness

Including gymnastics [*formerly also* †613.71], setting-up exercises, exercises with dumbbells, Indian clubs

For exercise and health, see 613.71

.42 Track and field athletics

.420 68 Athletic fields

.426 Running

Including sprinting, hurdling

.43 Jumping and vaulting

.435 Throwing events [*formerly* †796.38]

Including shot-putting, discus throwing

.44 Horizontal bars

Including parallel bars

.46 Trapeze work

Including rope climbing, wire walking

.47 Acrobatics

Including tumbling, trampolining

.48 Olympic games

.5 Outdoor life

Including life on dude ranches

.51 Walking

.52 Mountain climbing

[†.53] Touring

Class in 796.7

.54 Camping

.545 Woodcraft

796.6 Cycling

Use of man-power driven or coasting vehicles as recreation or sport

Including soapbox racing [*formerly* *796.72]

Class motorcycling [*formerly* *796.6] in 796.75

For gliding as a sport, see 797.5; *tobogganing,* 796.95

.7 Automobiling

Use of motor driven vehicles as recreation or sport

Including touring [*formerly* †796.53]

.72 Automobile racing

Class soapbox racing [*formerly* *796.72] in 796.6

.75 Motorcycling [*formerly* *796.6]

Including motorcycle racing

.8 Combat sports

For combat with animals, see 791.8; *ethical aspects,* 175.6

.81 Wrestling

Including Olympic, Greco-Roman wrestling [*both formerly* †796.82]

.815 Jujitsu [*formerly* *796.84]

[†.82] Olympic, Greco-Roman wrestling

Class in 796.81

.83 Boxing

Including prize fighting

[*.84] Jujitsu

Class in 796.815

.86 Fencing

.9 Winter sports

.91 Ice skating

.92 Snowshoeing

.93 Skiing

For water skiing, see 797.17

.95 Tobogganing

Including coasting

796.96 Ice games

Including curling

.962 Ice hockey

.97 Ice sports

Including iceboating

For ice skating, see 796.91

797 Aquatic sports

.1 Boating

Including regattas

.122 Canoeing

.123 Rowing

.124 Sailing

.125 Motorboating

.14 Yachting

.142 Yacht racing

.17 Minor methods of navigation

Including surf riding, water skiing

.2 Swimming and diving

Including water pageants, synchronized swimming

.23 Diving

Including skin diving, deep-sea diving

.25 Water games

Including water polo

.5 Air sports

Including aircraft racing

798 **Equestrian sports**

For raising and care of horses, see 636.1

.2 Horsemanship

Including training of horses for exhibition and sport riding

For cavalry horsemanship, see 357.2

.23 Riding

.24 Riding exhibitions

For circus, see 791.3

.4 Horse racing

For ethics of horse racing, see 175.7

.43 Flat racing

Including trotting, pacing

.45 Steeplechasing

.46 Harness racing

.48 Betting

Including pari mutuel

For betting on games of chance, see 795; *ethics of gambling,* 174.6; *of betting,* 175.9

.6 Driving and coaching

.8 Racing other animals

Including dog racing

For ethics of racing, see 175.7; *raising and care of animals, the kind of animal, e.g., of dogs* 636.7

799 **Fishing, hunting, target shooting as sports**

Including comprehensive works on conservation of wildlife [*formerly* *333.78]

For hunting and fishing industries, see 639; *wildlife refuges,* 333.78

.1 Fishing

.11 Fresh-water fishing

Comprehensive works on fishing in ponds, lakes, rivers

For a specific method of fishing, see the method, e.g., angling 799.12

799.12 Angling

Including fly casting, spinning

.13 Net fishing as a sport

Including seining

.14 Other methods of fishing

Including spear fishing

.16 Salt-water fishing

.166 By oceans

Divide like 551.46, e.g., fishing in the Gulf of Mexico 799.166 3

.17 Fishing for specific kinds of fish

Divide like 597, e.g., trout fishing 799.175

.2 Hunting

.21 Shooting game

Including selection, care, use of hunting guns

For target shooting, see 799.31; *gunnery,* 623.5

.215 Hunting with bow and arrow

For archery, see 799.32

.23 Hunting with retrievers and pointers

.24 Small game hunting

.241 Bird hunting

.242 Land birds

.244 Waterfowl

.248 Hunting specific kinds of birds

Divide like 598.3–598.9, e.g., duck hunting 799.248 4

.25 Hunting with hounds and falcons

For hunting specific kinds of birds, see 799.248; *specific kinds of animals,* 799.27

.252 Falconry

799.26 Big game hunting

.27 Hunting mammals

Divide like 599.1–599.8, e.g., elephant hunting 799.276 1

.279 Hunting other specific kinds of animals

Divide like 590, e.g., crocodile hunting 799.279 814

For hunting specific birds, see 799.248

[†.28] Hunting with camera

Class in 778.932

.29 Hunting in specific places

Divide like 930–999, e.g., hunting in Africa 799.296

.3 Shooting other than for game

.31 Target practice

Including trapshooting; skeet shooting; selection, care, use of sporting guns

For gunnery, see 623.5

.32 Archery

For hunting with bow and arrow, see 799.215

Literature (Belles-lettres)

800 Literature (Belles-lettres)

Including poetry, drama, fiction about Jesus Christ [*formerly also* †*232.99]; religious stories, allegories, satires [*all formerly* †*244]; religious poetry [*formerly also* †*245]; literature on musical themes [*formerly also* †780.881]

Class literature according to language in which originally written, e.g., Mexican literature 860; specific exceptions are shown in schedules, e.g., United States literature 810

If preferred, separate two or more literatures written in same language by prefixing distinguishing letters, e.g., Spanish literature 860, Mexican literature M860

If preferred, class all literature written in or translated into English in 820

If preferred, arrange all fiction in English alphabetically by author, omitting class number or substituting F for it

Divide specific literatures (but not groups of literatures) by form like 810, e.g., Portuguese poetry 869.1, except Old English literature 829, Latin literature 870, Greek literature 880

Class works combining two or more literary forms according to the following table of precedence, e.g., class drama in verse with drama, humorous fiction with fiction, humorous fiction in verse with poetry:

Drama
Poetry
Fiction
Essays
Oratory
Letters
Satire and humor
Miscellany

If preferred, arrange all works in a specific literature alphabetically by author instead of dividing by form

Class legends and stories of animals in 591.508, of dogs in 636.78, of cats in 636.88; motion-picture scripts in 791.437, radio scripts in 791.447, television scripts in 791.457, minstrel skits in 791.12 [*all formerly the* *800's]

801 Philosophy and theory

.9 Criticism

Theory and technique of literary criticism

Including literary esthetics

For criticisms of a specific literature, see the literature, e.g., criticisms of American poetry 811.09; *of the work of a specific author, the author, e.g., criticisms of poems of an American poet of later 19th century* 811.4

802 Handbooks and outlines

803 Dictionaries and encyclopedias

804 Essays and lectures

Essays about literature

For collections of essays from several literatures, see 808.84; *essays about a specific literature, the subject, e.g., essays on American literature* 810.4; *essays from a specific literature, the form, e.g., English essays* 824

805 Periodicals

806 Organizations and societies

807 Study and teaching

808 Literary composition (Rhetoric)

For translating, see 410

.06 Writing in special fields and for special groups

Class "how to write for profit" [*formerly* *808.06] in 029.6

For authorship of a specific literary form, see the form, e.g., authorship of drama 808.2; *news writing,* 070.431; *preparation of manuscript for publication,* 029.6; *publishing,* 655.5; *script writing for radio,* 791.442; *for television,* 791.452; *for motion pictures,* 791.432

.066 Professional and technical writing

Comprehensive works

For writing business records, see 651.7; *writing in a specific subject field, the subject, e.g., medical writing* 610.14

.068 Writing for children and young adults

Divide like 808.1–808.7, e.g., writing children's stories 808.068 3

808.1 Poetry

Including comprehensive works on the art of poetry and versification

Class prosody [*formerly* *808.1] in 416, 426, etc.

.12–.17 Types of poetry

Divide like 811.02–811.07, e.g., writing dramatic poetry 808.12

.2 Drama

For theatrical production, see 792

.22 Radio and television playwriting

For comprehensive works on radio script writing, see 791.442; *on television script writing,* 791.452

.23 Motion-picture playwriting

For comprehensive works on motion-picture script writing, see 791.432

.24 One-act playwriting

.25 Writing other special kinds of drama

Including masks, miracle plays, moralities, Passion plays, Christmas plays, other plays for special occasions

.3 Fiction

.31 Short-story writing

.4 Essays

.5 Speech and public speaking

Including art of conversation; techniques for delivering public addresses, radio speeches, after-dinner speeches, toasts and speeches for special occasions

.52 Voice, expression, gesture

Including speech correction

For musical voice training, see 784.93; *training of speech defectives,* 371.927

.53 Debating

Including speech techniques for round-table and forum discussions

For discussion groups as a means of adult education, see 374.24

808.54 Recitation techniques

Including delivery of monologs, dialogs; reading aloud

.55 Choral speaking

.6 Letters

For business letter writing, see 651.75; *etiquette of social letter writing,* 395.4

.7 Satire and humor

.8 Collections from several literatures

Divide like 808.1–808.7, e.g., collections of after-dinner speeches and toasts [*formerly* †642.48] 808.85; of dialogs 808.854

For collections on a specific subject, see the subject, e.g., collections of writings on architecture 720.8

.88 Miscellany

Including quotations, epigrams

.889 Miscellaneous collections illustrating special aspects

Divide like 809.9, e.g., collections of literature treating of children 808.889 3

.89 Collections of literature for and by members of special groups

Including dialect literature; literature of religious, racial, social groups, e.g., Catholic literature, literature by Negro authors

.9 Literatures of artificial languages

Divide like 408.9, e.g., Esperanto literature 808.92

809 History and criticism of literature

Divide like 808.1–808.7, e.g., history of world poetry 809.1

For theory and technique of literary criticism, see 801.9

.8 History and criticism of literature for and by members of special groups

.9 Special aspects of literary criticism

Subdivisions 91–93 below may be used with 0, under specific literatures and their forms, e.g., romanticism in French literature 840.91, characters in early Italian fiction 853.109 2, treatment of nature in American poetry 811.093

.91 Literary movements and schools

Including realism, idealism, naturalism, romanticism, symbolism in literature

809.92 Literary characters

.93 Treatment of special subjects in literature

Examples: treatment of children [*formerly* †136.758], of nature

.94–.99 History and criticism of literature of countries using more than one language

Divide like 940–999, e.g., history and criticism of Swiss literature 809.949 4

810 American (United States) literature in English

Including Canadian English literature, English literature of other American countries; dialect literature

If desired, prefix a letter to number to distinguish literature of Canada or another country, e.g., Canadian poetry C811. If preferred, class Canadian literature in 819, other in 819.9

For Canadian French literature, see 840; *comprehensive works comprising or on both English and American literature,* 820

811 American poetry

Use 811.002–811.007 for form divisions

.01 Philosophy and theory

811.02–811.07 Types of poetry

Including collections by two or more authors, works about each type

For works of a specific poet, see 811.1–811.54, *e.g., poems by a later 20th century poet* 811.54

.02 Dramatic poetry

.03 Romantic and epic poetry

.04 Lyric poetry

Including ballads

.05 Didactic poetry

.06 Descriptive poetry

.07 Satirical and humorous poetry

.08 Collections

.09 History and criticism

.1–.54 Periods of American poetry

Divide like 812.1–812.54, e.g., poetry of later 19th century 811.4

812 American drama

.1 **Colonial period, 1607–1776**

.2 **Post-Revolutionary period, 1776–1830**

.3 **Middle 19th century, 1830–1861**

.4 **Later 19th century, 1861–1900**

.5 **20th century**

.52 Early 20th century, 1900–1945

.54 Later 20th century, 1945–

813 American fiction

Divide like 812

814 American essays

Divide like 812

815 American oratory

Divide like 812

816 American letters

Divide like 812

For letters chiefly of biographical interest, see 920

817 American satire and humor

Divide like 812

818 American miscellany

Literature not provided for in 811–817

Including epigrams; reminiscences where the personal and subject interests are minor

Divide like 812

For collections of American literature, see 810.8

819 Canadian English literature

To be used only by libraries preferring to separate Canadian English literature by number from United States English literature

.9 English literature of other American countries

To be used only by libraries preferring to separate literature of these countries by number from United States and Canadian English literature

820 English literature

Including English-language literature of all countries outside America; comprehensive works comprising or on both English and American literature; dialect literature

If desired, prefix a letter to number to distinguish literature of another country from that of England, e.g., Australian English literature A820; if preferred, class literature of other countries in 828.99

For American literature, see 810

821 English poetry

.002–.09 Form divisions, and types of poetry

Divide like 811.002–811.09, e.g., English lyric poetry 821.04, study and teaching of English poetry 821.007

.1–.914 Periods of English poetry

Divide like 822.1–822.914, e.g., Elizabethan poetry 821.3

822 English drama

.1 **Early English period, 1066–1400**

.2 **Pre-Elizabethan period, 1400–1558**

.3 **Elizabethan period, 1558–1625**

.33 William Shakespeare

A special table for arrangement of works by and about Shakespeare may be found at end of volume 2

.4 **Post-Elizabethan period, 1625–1702**

.5 **Queen Anne period, 1702–1745**

.6 **Later 18th century, 1745–1800**

.7 **Early 19th century, 1800–1837**

.8 **Victorian period, 1837–1900**

.91 **20th century**

.912 Early 20th century, 1900–1945

.914 Later 20th century, 1945–

823 English fiction

Divide like 822

824 English essays

Divide like 822

825 **English oratory**

Divide like 822

826 **English letters**

Divide like 822

For letters chiefly of biographical interest, see 920

827 **English satire and humor**

Divide like 822

828 **English miscellany**

Literature not provided for in 821–827

Including epigrams; reminiscences where the personal and subject interests are minor

Divide like 822

For collections of English literature, see 820.8

.99 **English literature of countries other than England and the Americas**

To be used only by libraries preferring to separate literature of these countries by number

829 **Old English (Anglo-Saxon) literature**

.1 **Poetry**

.2 **Caedmon**

.3 **Beowulf**

.4 **Cynewulf**

.5 **Homilies and other religious literature**

.6 **Aelfric**

.7 **Alfred the Great**

.8 **Miscellaneous writings**

.9 **Historical and biographical writings**

830 **German literature**

Including dialect literature

831 **German poetry**

.002–.09 Form divisions, and types of poetry

Divide like 811.002–811.09, e.g., German lyric poetry 831.04, encyclopedia of German poetry 831.003

.1–.914 **Periods of German poetry**

Divide like 832.1–832.914, e.g., poetry of classical period 831.6

832 **German drama**

.1 **Early medieval period to 1150**

.2 **Later medieval period, 1150–1300**

.3 **Period of decline, 1300–1517**

.4 **Reformation period, 1517–1625**

.5 **Period of imitation, 1625–1750**

.6 **Classical period, 1750–1830**

.7 **Postclassical period, 1830–1856**

.8 **Later 19th century, 1856–1900**

.91 **20th century**

.912 Early 20th century, 1900–1945

.914 Later 20th century, 1945–

833 **German fiction**

Divide like 832

834 **German essays**

Divide like 832

835 **German oratory**

Divide like 832

836 **German letters**

Divide like 832

For letters chiefly of biographical interest, see 920

837 **German satire and humor**

Divide like 832

838 German miscellany

Literature not provided for in 831–837

Including epigrams; reminiscences where the personal and subject interests are minor

Divide like 832

For collections of German literature, see 830.8

[*.99] Yiddish literature

Class in 892.49

839 Other Germanic literatures

.1 Western Germanic literatures

.2 Frisian literature

Class Old Saxon literature [*formerly* †839.2] in 839.4

.3 Netherlands literatures

.31 Dutch literature

Divide by literary form, e.g., Dutch fiction 839.313; divide further by period, e.g., Dutch fiction in the 19th century 839.313 5, using the following table:

1 Medieval period to 1450
2 Renaissance period, 1450–1600
3 17th century
4 18th century
5 19th century
Class 20th century [*formerly* †5] in 6
6 20th century [*formerly* †5]
62 Early 20th century, 1900–1945
64 Later 20th century, 1945–

.32 Flemish literature

Divide like 839.31

.36 Afrikaans literature

.4 Low German (Plattdeutsch) literature

Including Old Saxon literature [*formerly* †839.2]

839.5 Scandinavian literatures

.6 Old Norse (Old Icelandic) literature

.69 Modern Icelandic literature

.699 Faroese literature

.7 Swedish literature

Divide by literary form, e.g., Swedish fiction 839.73; divide further by period, e.g., Swedish fiction in the 19th century 839.736, using the following table:

1 Medieval period to 1520
2 Reformation period, 1520–1640
3 Age of Stjernhjelm, 1640–1740
4 Age of Dalin, 1740–1780
5 Age of Gustavus, 1780–1800
6 19th century
Class 20th century [*formerly* †6] in 7
7 20th century [*formerly* †6]
72 Early 20th century, 1900–1945
74 Later 20th century, 1945–

.8 Danish and Norwegian literatures

.81 Danish literature

Divide by literary form, e.g., Danish poetry 839.811; divide further by period, e.g., Danish poetry in the age of Holberg 839.811 4, using the following table:

1 Medieval period to 1500
2 Reformation period, 1500–1560
3 Learned period, 1560–1700
4 Age of Holberg, 1700–1750
5 Period of Enlightenment, 1750–1800
6 19th century
Class 20th century [*formerly* †6] in 7
7 20th century [*formerly* †6]
72 Early 20th century, 1900–1945
74 Later 20th century, 1945–

.82 Norwegian literature (Rigsmaal literature)

Divide like 839.81, e.g., Norwegian drama in 19th century 839.822 6

Class Landsmaal literature [*formerly* †*839.82] in 839.83

.83 Landsmaal literature [*formerly* †*839.82]

.9 Gothic literature

840 French literature

Including French literature of countries other than France; dialect literature

If desired, prefix a letter to number to distinguish literature of another country, e.g., Canadian French literature C840; if preferred, class literature of other countries in 848.99

841 French poetry

.002–.09 Form divisions, and types of poetry

Divide like 811.002–811.09, e.g., French lyric poetry 841.04, outline of French poetry 841.002

.1–.914 Periods of French poetry

Divide like 842.1–842.914, e.g., poetry of 18th century 842.5

842 French drama

.1 Early period to 1400

.2 15th century

.3 16th century

.4 Classical period, 1600–1715

.5 18th century, 1715–1789

.6 Revolution and Empire, 1789–1815

.7 Constitutional monarchy, 1815–1848

.8 Later 19th century, 1848–1900

.91 20th century

.912 Early 20th century, 1900–1945

.914 Later 20th century, 1945–

843 French fiction

Divide like 842

844 French essays

Divide like 842

845 French oratory

Divide like 842

846 French letters

Divide like 842

For letters chiefly of biographical interest, see 920

847 French satire and humor

Divide like 842

848 French miscellany

Literature not provided for in 841–847

Including epigrams; reminiscences where the personal and subject interests are minor

Divide like 842

For collections of French literature, see 840.8

.99 French literature of countries other than France

To be used only by libraries preferring to separate literature of these countries by number

849 Provençal literature

Divide by literary form, e.g., Provençal poetry 849.1; divide further by period, e.g., Provençal poetry of the golden age 849.12, using the following table:

1 Early period to 1100
2 Golden age, 1100–1300
3 14th and 15th centuries
4 Decline, 1500–1800; revival, 1801–1900
5 20th century
52 Early 20th century, 1900–1945
54 Later 20th century, 1945–

.9 Catalan literature

Divide by literary form, e.g., Catalan poetry 849.91; divide further by period, e.g., Catalan poetry in the golden age 849.913, using the following table:

1 First period to 1350
2 Second period, 1350–1450
3 Golden age, 1450–1500
Class decline, revival, 20th century [*all formerly* †3] in 4–5
4 Decline, 1500–1840; revival, 1840–1900 [*both formerly* †3]
5 20th century [*formerly* †3]
52 Early 20th century, 1900–1945
54 Later 20th century, 1945–

850 Italian literature

Including dialect literature

851 Italian poetry

.002–.09 Form divisions, and types of poetry

Divide like 811.002–811.09, e.g., Italian lyric poetry 851.04, teaching of Italian poetry 851.007

.1–.914 Periods of Italian poetry

Divide like 852.1–852.914, e.g., poetry of early 19th century 851.7

852 Italian drama

.1 Early period to 1375

.2 Period of classical learning, 1375–1492

.3 Age of Leo X, 1492–1542

.4 Later 16th century, 1542–1585

.5 Period of decline, 1585–1748

.6 Period of renovation, 1748–1814

.7 Early 19th century, 1814–1859

.8 Later 19th century, 1859–1900

.91 20th century

.912 Early 20th century, 1900–1945

.914 Later 20th century, 1945–

853 Italian fiction

Divide like 852

854 Italian essays

Divide like 852

855 Italian oratory

Divide like 852

856 Italian letters

Divide like 852

For letters chiefly of biographical interest, see 920

857 Italian satire and humor

Divide like 852

858 Italian miscellany

Literature not provided for in 851–857

Including epigrams; reminiscences where the personal and subject interests are minor

Divide like 852

For collections of Italian literature, see 850.8

859 Rumanian literature

.9 Rhaeto-Romance literatures

Including Romansh, Friulian, Ladin

860 Spanish literature

Including Spanish literature of countries other than Spain; dialect literature

If desired, prefix a letter to number to distinguish literature of another country or countries, e.g., Hispano-American literatures H860, or Argentine literature A860, Mexican literature M860. If preferred, class literature of other countries in 868.99

861 Spanish poetry

.002–.09 Form divisions, and types of poetry

Divide like 811.002–811.09, e.g., Spanish lyric poetry 861.04, teaching of Spanish poetry 861.007

.1–.64 Periods of Spanish poetry

Divide like 862.1–862.64, e.g., later 20th century poetry 861.64

862 Spanish drama

.1 Early period to 1369

.2 Age of imitation, 1369–1516

.3 Golden age, 1516–1700

.4 18th century

.5 19th century

.6 20th century

.62 Early 20th century, 1900–1945

.64 Later 20th century, 1945–

863 Spanish fiction

Divide like 862

864 Spanish essays

Divide like 862

865 Spanish oratory

Divide like 862

866 Spanish letters

Divide like 862

For letters chiefly of biographical interest, see 920

867 Spanish satire and humor

Divide like 862

868 Spanish miscellany

Literature not provided for in 861–867

Including epigrams; reminiscences where the personal and subject interests are minor

Divide like 862

For collections of Spanish literature, see 860.8

.99 Spanish literature of countries other than Spain

To be used only by libraries preferring to separate literature of these countries by number

869 Portuguese literature

Including Portuguese literature of countries other than Portugal

If desired, prefix a letter to number to distinguish literature of another country, e.g., Brazilian literature B869; if preferred, class literature of other countries in 869.899

Divide by literary form, e.g., Portuguese drama 869.2; divide further by period, e.g., Portuguese drama in the 16th century 869.22, using the following table:

1 Early period to 1500
2 16th–18th centuries, 1500–1800
3 19th century
4 20th century
41 Early 20th century, 1900–1945
42 Later 20th century, 1945–

.899 Portuguese literature of countries other than Portugal

To be used only by libraries preferring to separate literature of these countries by number

.9 Galician (Gallegan) literature

870 Latin literature

For comprehensive works comprising or on classical Greek and Latin literatures, see 880

871 Latin poetry

872 Dramatic poetry
873 Epic poetry
874 Lyric poetry

875 Latin oratory

876 Latin letters

For letters chiefly of biographical interest, see 920

877 Latin satire and humor

878 Latin miscellany

Including epigrams, quotations

879 Medieval and modern Latin literature

.9 Romance literatures

Comprehensive works

For literature of a specific Romance language, see the literature, e.g., French literature 840

.99 Other Italic literatures

880 Greek literature

Including comprehensive works comprising or on classical Greek and Latin literatures

For Latin literature, see 870

881 Greek poetry

882 Dramatic poetry
883 Epic poetry
884 Lyric poetry

885 Greek oratory

886 Greek letters

For letters chiefly of biographical interest, see 920

887 Greek satire and humor

888 Greek miscellany

Including epigrams, quotations

889 Medieval (Byzantine) and modern Greek literature

Including comprehensive works comprising or on Byzantine and Hellenic literatures

.9 Other Hellenic literatures

890 Literatures of other languages

Including comprehensive works comprising or on Oriental literatures

891 Literatures of other Indo-European languages

Divide like 491, e.g., Bengali literature 891.44, Romany literature [*formerly* †397] 891.49

[†.69] Basque literature

Class in 899.92

.7 Russian literature

Divide by literary form, e.g., Russian fiction 891.73; divide further by period, e.g., Russian fiction in the 19th century 891.733, using the following table:

1 Early period to 1700
2 18th century, 1700–1800
3 19th century, 1800–1917
4 20th century, 1917–
42 Early 20th century, 1917–1945
44 Later 20th century, 1945–

Class comprehensive works on Slavic literatures [*formerly* *891.7] in 891.8

.8 Other Slavic literatures

Including comprehensive works on Slavic literatures [*formerly* *891.7]

892 Semitic literatures

Divide like 492, e.g., Yiddish literature [*formerly* *838.99] 892.49

893 Hamitic literatures

Divide like 493, e.g., Coptic literature 893.2

894 Literatures of Finno-Ugric, Turkic, other linguistic groups

Divide like 494, e.g., Tamil literature 894.811

[†.7] Caucasian literatures

Class in 899.96 [*formerly* (Notes and Decisions, Second Series, No. 26, Oct. 1948) †894.7]

.8 Dravidian literatures

Class Caucasian literatures [*formerly* *894.8] in 899.96

895 Literatures of East and Southeast Asia

Divide like 495, e.g., Chinese literature 895.1

896 African literatures

Divide like 496, e.g., Bushman literatures [*formerly* *896.1] 896.2

897 North American Indian literatures

Divide like 497, e.g., Eskimo literature 897.1

898 South American Indian literatures

899 Austronesian and other literatures

Divide like 499, e.g., Basque literature [*formerly* †891.69] 899.92, Caucasian literatures [*formerly* (Notes and Decisions, Second Series, No. 26, Oct. 1948) †894.7, *894.8] 899.96

History

900 History

Comprehensive works on political, social, cultural, diplomatic, military history

Use 01–09 for historical periods of specific countries, except Ireland 941.5, United States 973, e.g., history of Canada in 20th century 971.06

For cultural history, see 901.9; *diplomatic history,* 327; *history of a specific subject, the subject, e.g., of art* 709

901 Philosophy and theories

For historiography, see 907.2

.9 Civilization

Including history of civilization, cultural history

Divide 901.91–901.94 like form divisions 090 1–090 4, e.g., history of medieval civilization 901.92

If preferred, class ancient civilization in 930; medieval, modern civilization and comprehensive works on ancient, medieval, modern civilization in 909

For civilization in a specific region or country, see the region or country, e.g., in China 915.1; *Oriental civilization,* 915; *prehistoric artifacts,* 571; *culture and society,* 301.2; *anthropology,* 572

902 Handbooks and outlines

Including chronologies

903 Dictionaries and encyclopedias

For dictionaries and encyclopedias in chronological form, see 902

904 Essays and lectures

Including collected accounts of specific historical events, e.g., battles, disasters, not sufficiently limited by time, place, or subject to class elsewhere

For a specific event, see the event, e.g., Battle of Gettysburg 973.734 9, *San Francisco earthquake and fire* 979.461; *collected accounts of events limited to a specific time, place, or subject, the subject, e.g., battles of World War II* 940.54, *earthquakes* 551.22, *shipwrecks* 910.453

905 Periodicals

906 Organizations and societies

907 Study and teaching

.2 Historiography

Research in history

For philosophy and theories of history, see 901

908 Collections

909 Medieval and modern world history

Including comprehensive works on ancient, medieval, modern history

Including (but only in those libraries preferring to keep civilization with general history) medieval and modern civilization

For ancient history, see 930; *history of a specific region or country, the region or country, e.g., northern Europe* 948; *medieval and modern civilization,* 901.92–901.94

.1 476–1199

.2 1200–1299

.3 1300–1399

.4 1400–1499

.5 1500–1599

.6 1600–1699

.7 1700–1799

.8 1800–

.81 1800–1899

.82 1900–

For World War I, see 940.3; *World War II,* 940.53

910 Geography, travels, description of places

For a specific kind of geography, see the subject, e.g., physical geography 551.4; *geography of or travel in a specific place, the place, e.g., geography of Europe* 914

.01 Philosophy of geography

.2 Travel guides

Comprehensive works

Including practical handbooks, tourist guides, vacation guides, travel regulations

For guidebooks of a specific place, see the place, e.g., guidebooks of South America 918

910.3 **Dictionaries and gazetteers**

Including comprehensive works on place names [*formerly* †929.4]

For gazetteers and place names of a specific place, see the place, e.g., gazetteers of England 914.2; *personal names,* 929.4

.4 **Travel and adventure**

Comprehensive works

Including accounts of voyages, travels, journeys, trips, tours in several parts of the world

For travel, exploration, discovery in a specific place, see the place, e.g., travel in France 914.4; *comprehensive works on explorations and discoveries,* 910.9; *collected travels,* 910.8; *legendary places,* 398.23; *scientific expeditions,* 508.3–508.9; *accounts of adventure not concerned with travel or exploration, the specific subject, e.g., adventures of a test pilot* 629.134 53

.41 Trips around the world

Including voyages, flights, travel by any means

.45 Ocean travel and seafaring life

Including individual narratives, sailors' yarns, voyages of individual ships

For yachting, see 797.14; *guides to ocean travel,* 910.2

.453 Voyages of adventure

Including shipwrecks, mutinies, buried treasure, pirates' voyages

For marine salvage business, see 387.55; *legendary accounts of Captain Kidd,* 398.22

.8 **Collected travels and explorations**

Collections of original accounts by explorers and travelers not limited to any one place

For collected travels dealing with a specific place, see the place, e.g., travels in North America 917

910.9 **History of geography**

Comprehensive works

Including history of geographical knowledge, of discovery and exploration

Divide like 930–999 by country responsible for the travel or exploration, e.g., explorations by Portuguese 910.946 9

For history of exploration and growth of geographic knowledge of a specific place, see geography of the place, e.g., growth of geographic knowledge of Australia 919.4, *Portuguese explorations in Brazil* 918.1

.91 Geography of zones and physical regions

Divide like form division 091, e.g., geography of desert regions 910.915

For geography of Frigid Zones, see 919.8

911 Historical geography

Growth and changes in political divisions

Including historical atlases

For geopolitics, see 320.12; *anthropogeography,* 572.9; *demography,* 312; *migration and colonization,* 325

.3 **Geography of ancient world [*formerly* *913]**

Divide like 930, e.g., geography of ancient Egypt 911.32

Class economic and commercial geography [*both formerly* *911.3] in 330.9

.4–.9 **Historical geography of modern places**

Divide like 940–999, e.g., historical geography of Europe 911.4

912 Atlases and maps

Comprehensive works

Including globes, charts, plans, relief models

Divide like 930–999, e.g., atlases of France 912.44

If desired, separate maps from atlases by prefixing M to class number

For cartography, see 526.8; *photogrammetry,* 526.982; *atlases and maps on a specific subject, the subject, e.g., historical atlases* 911, *aerial maps and charts* 629.132 54

.1 **Eastern Hemisphere**

.2 **Western Hemisphere**

913 Antiquities and archeology of historic times [*both formerly* *930–*999]

Including comprehensive works on prehistoric and historic archeology; methods and results of excavations

Divide like 930–999, e.g., antiquities of France 913.44

Class in 913.3 antiquities of countries having both ancient and modern history numbers, e.g., antiquities of Italy 913.37, unless the antiquities relate wholly or mainly to the country after it entered the modern period

If preferred, class antiquities of a specific country in 930–999, e.g., antiquities of France 944.01

Class geography of ancient world [*formerly* *913] in 911.3

For prehistoric archeology, see 571; *Biblical archeology,* 220.93; *American Indian archeological remains,* 970.1–970.6, 980.1–980.6

914–919 Regional geography, description, travel

Including customs [*formerly* *390.9], civilization, culture; guidebooks, gazetteers, place names, discovery and exploration, growth of geographic knowledge

Divide like 940–999, e.g., guidebooks of London 914.21

If preferred, class travel in 940–999

For social history of a country, see history of the country, e.g., social history of England 942

914 Geography of Europe

915 Geography of Asia

916 Geography of Africa

917 Geography of North America

918 Geography of South America

919 Geography of Pacific and Atlantic islands, of Polar Regions

920 Biography

Including autobiographies; diaries, personal narratives, portraits, eulogies, correspondence when none of these is primarily of literary, artistic, or subject interest

If preferred, class all individual biographies in 92 or B; or, if preferred, class biographies clearly belonging to specific subject fields with the subjects of the respective biographees, using form division 092, e.g., biographies of botanists 580.92 instead of 925.8

Under 920, 92, B, each subdivision of 920 (except those limited to collective biography), and form division 092, arrange individual biographies alphabetically by biographee; use A1 for collective biography if clast in same number with individual biography

For collective biography of faculty and alumni of specific colleges and universities, see 378.4–378.98

.002 Biography as a literary form

Including techniques of research, of writing, of criticism

.01 Universal biography

.02 Partial collections

Selective works not limited to any specific country or subject

.03–.09 Collective biography by place

Divide like 930–999, e.g., collective biography of Englishmen 920.042

For collective biography of a specific subject in a specific place, see the subject, e.g., biographies of English statesmen 923.242

920.1–928 Individual and collective biography by subjects

For biographies of individuals not clearly belonging to any specific subject, see 920

.1 **Bibliographers**

Including book collectors

.2 **Librarians**

.3 **Encyclopedists**

For lexicographers, see 924

920.4 **Publishers and booksellers**

.5 **Journalists**

Including radio and television news commentators

.6 **Academicians**

Collective biography only

For individual biography of academicians, see 920.1–920.5, 920.7–928

.7 **Women**

Including individual biographies not clearly belonging to any specific subject

.8 **Eccentrics**

Including the insane; individual biographies not clearly belonging to any specific subject

.9 **Other special classes not included in 921–928**

Divide like 000–999, e.g., astrologers 920.913 35

For lives of slaves, see 326.92; *of North American Indians,* 970.2; *of South American Indians,* 980.2

921 Philosophers

Including psychologists

.1 **American and Canadian philosophers**

For Latin American philosophers, see 921.88

.2 **British philosophers**

Including English, Scottish, Irish, Welsh philosophers

.3 **German and Austrian philosophers**

.4 **French philosophers**

.5 **Italian philosophers**

.6 **Spanish and Portuguese philosophers**

.7 **Russian philosophers**

For other Slavic philosophers, see 921.8

.8 **Other modern philosophers**

Divide like 940–999 except for those provided for in 921.1–921.7 and 921.9, e.g., Scandinavian philosophers 921.848

.9 **Ancient, medieval, Oriental philosophers**

Divide like 180, e.g., Aristotelian philosophers 921.95

922 Religious leaders

Including individual and collective biography of saints, theologians, ministers, priests, missionaries, monks, persons chiefly notable for their piety; collective biography only of communicants of specific religious groups and sects whose contributions have been in various other fields

For communicants of a specific religious group or sect whose contributions have been in a specific nonreligious field, see the subject, e.g., Jewish musicians 927.8, *a Roman Catholic general in United States Army* 923.573; *collective biography of Old and New Testament characters,* 220.92; *biographies of Old Testament characters,* 221.92; *of New Testament characters,* 225.92; *of Jesus Christ,* 232.9; *of other members of Holy Family,* 232.93

.1 **Early church leaders**

Including churchmen of Eastern churches

Divide like 930–999, e.g., Greek Orthodox clergy in United States 922.173

.2 **Roman Catholics**

Divide like 930–999

.21 Popes

.22 Saints

.3 **Anglicans and Episcopalians**

Divide like 940–999

.4 **Continental Protestants**

Including Lutherans, Huguenots

Divide like 940–999

.5 **Presbyterians and Congregationalists**

Divide like 940–999

.6 **Baptists**

Divide like 940–999

.7 **Methodists**

Divide like 940–999

.8 **Members of other Christian sects**

.81 Unitarians and Universalists

Divide like 940–999, e.g., Unitarians in England 922.814 2

922.83 Latter-Day Saints (Mormons)
Divide like 940–999

.84 Swedenborgians
Divide like 940–999

.85 Christian Scientists
Divide like 940–999

.86 Friends (Quakers)
Divide like 940–999

.87 Mennonites
Divide like 940–999

.88 Shakers
Divide like 940–999

.89 Others

.9 Adherents of other religions

.91 Atheists and Deists

.912 Theosophists

.94 Hindus and Brahmans

.943 Buddhists

.95 Parsees

.96 Jews

.97 Moslems

.99 Others

923 Persons in social sciences

For biographies of slaves, see 326.92

.1 Rulers
Including kings, queens, presidents
Divide like 930–999, e.g., presidents of United States 923.173

.2 Persons in political science
Including legislators, governors, politicians, statesmen, diplomats
Divide like 930–999
For rulers, see 923.1

923.3 Persons in economics
Including bankers, economists
Divide like 930–999

.31 Labor leaders
Divide like 930–999, e.g., labor union leaders in United States 923.317 3

.4 Persons in law
Including lawyers, judges
Divide like 930–999

.41 Criminals
Divide like 930–999

.5 Public administrators
Including military persons
Divide like 930–999
For rulers, see 923.1; *legislators, governors, politicians, statesmen,* 923.2

.6 Philanthropists, humanitarians, social reformers
Divide like 930–999

.7 Educators
Divide like 930–999

.8 Persons in commerce, communication, transportation
Divide like 930–999

.9 Explorers and geographers
Including pioneers, frontiersmen
Divide like 930–999

924 Philologists

Including grammarians, lexicographers
Divide like 400, e.g., biographies of Hispanic philologists 924.6

925 Scientists

Divide like 500, e.g., biographies of botanists 925.8

926 Persons in technology (useful arts)

Divide like 600, e.g., biographies of engineers 926.2

927 **Persons in arts and recreation**

Divide like 700, e.g., biographies of actors 927.92

928 **Persons in literature**

Including historians, biographers

Divide like 810–899, e.g., Russian writers 928.917

929 **Genealogy and heraldry**

.1 **Genealogy**

Including methods and tools of genealogy, genealogical forms and blanks

.2 Family histories

.3 Genealogical sources

Including registers, wills, tax lists, census records, court records, intended for genealogical purposes

.4 Personal names

Class place names [*formerly* †929.4] in 910.3

.5 Epitaphs

For collections having literary interest, see 808.88

.6 **Heraldry**

.7 Peerage and royal houses

Including titles of honor, rank, precedence; landed gentry

.71 Orders of knighthood

.72–.799 Royal houses, nobility, gentry of Europe

Divide like 942–949.9, including Scotland and Ireland in 929.72, e.g., royal houses of France 929.74, Scottish peerage 929.72

.799 9 Royal houses, nobility, gentry of countries outside Europe

Divide like 930–999, e.g., Japanese noblemen 929.799 952

.8 Armorial bearings

Including coats of arms, crests, seals

.9 Flags

Including national, state, ship, ownership flags; flag etiquette

930–999 History of specific places

Class archeology of specific places in 913; diplomatic history of specific places in 327 [*both formerly* *930–*999]

If preferred, class archeology of specific places in 930–999, e.g., archeology of Egypt 932

930 **Ancient history**

Including (but only in those libraries preferring to keep civilization with general history) ancient civilization

For ancient history of countries not provided for here, see 940–999; *ancient civilization,* 901.91

931 **China to 420 A.D. [*formerly* *951]**

Including comprehensive works on ancient Oriental history

If preferred, class ancient history of China in 951.01

For ancient history of a specific Oriental country, see the country, e.g., ancient India 934, *ancient Japan* 952.01

932 **Egypt to ca. 640 A.D.**

.01 History to 332 B.C.

.02 Greco-Roman period, 332 B.C.–640 A.D.

Including conquest by Alexander the Great, 332 B.C.; Moslem invasion, 639–642

933 **Judea to 70 A.D.**

For Biblical history, see 220.95, 221.95, 225.95; *Judaism,* 296; *pre-Judaic Palestine,* 939.45

934 **India to ca. 650 A.D. [*formerly* *954]**

If preferred, class ancient history of India in 954.01

935 **Median, Persian, Assyro-Babylonian Empires**

Including Tigris-Euphrates Valley, Mesopotamia

For a specific area in Asia Minor or Eastern Mediterranean, see 939.2–939.6

936 Ancient European tribes

For history of tribes in a specific country, see the country, e.g., Celts in France 944.01

.3 **Germanic tribes**

.31 Burgundians

.313 Vandals

.314 Alans

.32 Saxons and Angles

.33 Suevians

.331 Alamanni (Alemanni)

.332 Heruli

.35 Lombards

.36 Goths

.361 Ostrogoths (East Goths)

.362 Visigoths (West Goths)

.4 **Celts**

.7 **Slavs**

937 Rome to 476 A.D.

937.01–937.09 Period divisions

.01 Early Roman Kingdom to ca. 500 B.C.

.02 Roman Republic, ca. 500–31 B.C.

.03 Unification of Italy, ca. 500–264 B.C.

.04 Punic Wars, 264–146 B.C.

.05 Civil strife and early Empire, 146–31 B.C.

.06 Roman Empire, 31 B.C.–476 A.D.

.07 Early and middle period, 31 B.C.–284 A.D.

.08 Period of absolutism, 284–395

Including early invasions

937.09 Final period, 395–476

Including barbarian conquests, fall of Rome

For tribes of barbarians, see 936

937.1–937.9 Geographic divisions of Italian peninsula and adjacent islands

For a specific overseas province of Rome, see the province, e.g., Pannonia 939.8

.1 **Liguria**

.2 **Gallia Cisalpina**

.3 **Venetia and Istria**

.4 **Umbria**

Including Picenum, Sabini

.5 **Etruria**

.6 **Latium**

Including Rome

.7 **Southern peninsula**

Including Campania, Samnium, Apulia

.8 **Sicily**

Including Syracuse

.9 **Sardinia and Corsica**

938 Greece to 323 A.D.

938.01–938.09 Period divisions

.01 Mythical age to 775 B.C.

.02 Formation of states, 775–500 B.C.

.03 Persian Wars, 500–479 B.C.

.04 Athenian supremacy, 479–431 B.C.

Including Age of Pericles

.05 Peloponnesian War, 431–404 B.C.

.06 Spartan and Theban supremacy, 404–362 B.C.

938.07 Macedonian era, 362–323 B.C.

.08 Hellenistic period, 323–146 B.C.

Including Macedonian Wars and Roman conquests, 220–146 B.C.

.09 Roman era, 146 B.C.–323 A.D.

938.1–938.9 Geographic divisions

For Greek Archipelago, see 939.1

.1 Macedonia

.2 Thessaly and Epirus

.3 Acarnania, Aetolia, Locris, Doris, Phocis, Ithaca

.4 Boeotia, Megaris, Euboea

.5 Attica

.6 Peloponnesus

.7 Corinthia and Achaea

.8 Elis, Arcadia, Argolis

.9 Messenia, Laconia, Sparta

939 Other civilizations of the Mediterranean Basin

Including Hittites

.1 Greek Archipelago

.11 Northern islands

Including Thasos, Lemnos

.12 Lesbos

.13 Chios

.14 Samos

.15 Cyclades

.16 Rhodes

.17 Karpathos

.18 Crete

939.2 Asia Minor and Eastern Mediterranean

.21 Mysia and Troas

Including Troy

.22 Lydia

.23 Ionia

.24 Caria

.25 Bithynia

.26 Phrygia

.27 Pisidia

.28 Lycia

.29 Pamphylia

.31 Paphlagonia

.32 Galatia

.33 Pontus

.34 Cappadocia

.35 Cilicia

.36 Commagene

.37 Cyprus

.4 Syria and neighboring regions

Including Palmyra

For Commagene, see 939.36

.44 Phoenicia and Tyre

.45 Palestine

Including Philistines

For ancient Judea, see 933

.46 Edom and Moab

.47 Arabia

.48 Arabia Petraea and Sinai

939.5 Black Sea region

Former heading: Northwestern Asia

Including Sarmatia, Colchis, Iberia, Albania

For ancient southeastern Europe, see 939.8; *modern Albania in Balkan Peninsula,* 949.65

.51 Scythia

.55 Armenia

.6 Caspian Sea region

Former heading: South central Asia

Including Sogdiana, Hyrcania, Margiana, Bactriana, Ariana

.7 North Africa

For Egypt, see 932

.71 Mauretania

.72 Numidia

.73 Carthage

.74 Tripolis

Including Regio Syrtica, Tripolitana

.75 Cyrenaica

.76 Marmarica

.77 Libya

Including Gaetulia

.78 Ethiopia

.8 Southeastern Europe

Including Sarmatia in Europe, Dacia, Pannonia, Illyria, Moesia, Thracia

940–999 Medieval and modern history of specific places

Including political, social history; ancient history of countries not included in 930–939

Including (but only in those libraries preferring to keep these topics with history) description, travel, culture, civilization, customs of specific places

Class comprehensive works on a geographic feature, such as a lake, river, mountain range, extending over more than one country, state, county or other unit, with the unit where it is noted in the schedules, e.g., Danube River 949.6, Appalachian Mountains 974, Lake Winnipesaukee 974.245; class works on a specific part of such a feature located in a unit other than that where it is specifically noted in the schedules with the other unit, e.g., Danube River in Bavaria 943.3, Cumberland Mountains 976.915 4, Lake Winnipesaukee in Carroll County, New Hampshire 974.24. For certain features of great extent or prominence, the schedules make special provision for major parts as well as for the whole, e.g., Mississippi River 977, lower Mississippi River 976, but Mississippi River in Louisiana 976.3, Mississippi River in Baton Rouge 976.318 1. Cross references are not regularly supplied to lead from the comprehensive number to numbers for the component parts

Class individual countries in World War I in 940.34–940.39, in World War II in 940.534–940.539 [*both formerly* *940–*999]

For description, travel, culture, civilization, customs of specific places, see 914–919

940 Europe

From fall of Rome, 476, to present

Including Mediterranean Sea history

For ancient history of Europe, see 930

.1 Middle Ages, 476–1453

.11 Barbarian invasions and rise of new nations, 476–800

For a specific tribe of invaders, see the tribe, e.g., Lombards 936.35; *a specific nation, the nation, e.g., England* 942

940.14 Age of feudalism, 800–1100

Including reign of Charlemagne, Norman conquests

.17 Later Middle Ages, 1100–1453

Including age of chivalry; fall of Constantinople, 1453

.18 Period of the Crusades, 1096–1270

For religious history of the Crusades, see 270.4–270.5

.2 Modern history, 1453–1914

Including comprehensive works on modern history of Europe, 1453 to present

For World War I, see 940.3–940.4; *20th century, 1918–* 940.5

.21 Renaissance period, 1453–1517

.22 Reformation to French Revolution, 1517–1789

Class Reformation in 940.23, late 17th and 18th centuries in 940.25 [*both formerly* †*940.22]; Thirty Years' War [*formerly* *940.22] in 940.24

.23 Reformation, 1517–1648 [*formerly* †*940.22]

For religious history of Reformation, see 270.6

.24 Thirty Years' War, 1618–1648 [*formerly* *940.22]

.25 Late 17th and 18th centuries, 1648–1789 [*formerly* †*940.22]

Including War of the Spanish Succession, 1701–1714; War of the Austrian Succession, 1740–1748; Seven Years' War, 1756–1763

.27 Napoleonic era, 1789–1815

Including comprehensive works on Napoleonic Wars

For Napoleonic Wars in a specific country, see the country, e.g., Russia's war with Napoleon 947.07

.28 19th century, 1815–1914

940.3 World War I, 1914–1918

SUMMARY

940.31	**Political and economic history**
.32	**Diplomatic history**
.33	**Groups of countries concerned in the war**
.34–.39	**Participation of individual countries**
.4	**Conduct of the war**
.401	**Strategy**
.402	**Mobilization**
.403	**Racial minorities in the war**
.405	**Repressive measures and atrocities**
.41	**Military units**
.414	**Operations in Europe**
.415	**Operations in Asia**
.416	**Operations in Africa**
.42–.438	**Campaigns and battles**
.439	**Armistice, November 11, 1918**
.44	**Air operations**
.45	**Naval operations**
.46	**Celebrations, commemorations, memorials**
.47	**Prisons, health, social services**
.48	**Personal narratives**
.483–.484	**Military life and customs**
.485–.487	**Secret service and spies**
.488	**Propaganda**
.49	**Graphic materials**

[.308 4] Audio-visual aids

Class in 940.49

.31 Political and economic history

.311 Causes

.311 2 Political and diplomatic causes

For propaganda, see 940.488

.311 3 Economic causes

.312 Efforts to preserve or restore peace

Including peace efforts during the war [*formerly* *940.32]

940.314 Results

Including peace terms

.314 1 Treaties and conferences

Including terms of cessation of hostilities

For armistice, see 940.439; *peace conferences during the war,* 940.312; *military conferences,* 940.4; *consequences of treaties and conferences,* 940.314 2

.314 2 Consequences of treaties and conferences

Including political, diplomatic, economic consequences; occupation

For military occupation during the war, see 940.4; *occupation in a specific country, the country, e.g., in Germany* 943.085

.314 22 Reparations

.314 24 Territorial questions

.314 25 Establishment of new nations

.314 26 Establishment of mandates

.314 4 Reconstruction

Comprehensive works

For reconstruction in a specific country, see the country, e.g., in Germany 943.085

.314 8 Effect on world conditions

Comprehensive works

For a specific effect, see the subject, e.g., effect on wages in Finland 331.294 71; *effect on a specific country, the country, e.g., on China* 951.041

.315 Relation of special classes of persons to the war

Except for classes of persons specifically provided for, e.g., doctors 940.475, divide like 000–999, e.g., librarians and World War I 940.315 02

.315 2 Clergy and churches

Divide 940.315 21–940.315 28 like 281–288, e.g., Roman Catholic Church and World War I 940.315 22; divide 940.315 289 like 289, e.g., Christian Scientists and World War I 940.315 289 5

For chaplains, see 940.478

.315 29 Non-Christian groups

Divide like 290, e.g., rabbis and World War I 940.315 296

940.315 9 Refugees

Divide like 940–999, e.g., French refugees 940.315 944

.316 Other classes of persons not elsewhere classified

.316 1 Noncombatants

Including children

.316 2 Pacifists

.316 3 Enemy sympathizers

.318 Special aspects of the war

Except for aspects specifically provided for, e.g., military aspects 940.4, divide like 000–999, e.g., comprehensive works on economic aspects 940.318 33

For economic causes, see 940.311 3

.32 Diplomatic history

Comprehensive works on relations between countries during the war

Class peace efforts during the war [*formerly* *940.32] in 940.312

For diplomatic causes, see 940.311 2; *treaties and conferences,* 940.314 1; *their consequences,* 940.314 2

.322 Allies and associated powers

Divide like 940–999, e.g., diplomacy of France concerning the war 940.322 44

.324 Central Powers

Divide like 940–999, e.g., diplomacy of Austria concerning the war 940.324 436

.325 Neutrals

Divide like 940–999, e.g., diplomacy of Switzerland concerning the war 940.325 494

.33 Groups of countries concerned in the war

Comprehensive works

For a specific activity of a group, see the subject, e.g., diplomatic history of the Allies 940.322; *specific countries,* 940.34–940.39

.332 Allies and associated powers

.334 Central Powers

.335 Neutrals

940.34–.39 Participation of individual countries [*formerly* *940–*999]

Including mobilization in specific countries

Divide like 940–999, e.g., France in World War I 940.344

For works of purely local interest, see the specific locality, e.g., war activities of Omaha women 978.225; *comprehensive works on mobilization,* 940.402

.4 Conduct of the war

Including military history, military conferences, military occupation

.401 Strategy

.401 2 Allies and associated powers

Divide like 940–999, e.g., French strategy 940.401 244

.401 3 Central Powers

Divide like 940–999, e.g., German strategy 940.401 343

.402 Mobilization

Comprehensive works

Including recruitment, volunteering, drafts

For mobilization in specific countries, see 940.34–940.39

.403 Racial minorities in the war

Including Negroes, American Indians, colonials

For specific military units, see 940.412–940.413

.405 Repressive measures and atrocities

For internment camps, see 940.472

.41 Military units

For medical corps, see 940.475; *chaplains,* 940.478; *intelligence,* 940.485

.412 Units of the Allies and associated powers

Divide like 940–999, e.g., 92d (Negro) Division 940.412 73

940.413 Units of the Central Powers

Divide like 940–999, e.g., German troops 940.413 43

.414 Operations in Europe

For specific campaigns and battles, see 940.42–940.43

.414 3 German front

.414 4 French front

Including comprehensive works on western front

For German front, see 940.414 3

.414 5 Italian front

.414 7 Russian front

Including comprehensive works on eastern front

.415 Operations in Asia

Including Asia Minor

For specific campaigns and battles, see 940.42–940.43

.416 Operations in Africa

For specific campaigns and battles, see 940.42–940.43

.42 Campaigns and battles, 1914–1916

Class campaigns and battles, 1917–1918 [*formerly* *940.42] in 940.43

.421 1914, western front

Including battles in Flanders, Battles of the Ardennes, of the Marne

.422 1914, eastern front

Including Serbia, Albania

.423 1914, other areas

Including Asia, Africa, Pacific islands

.424 1915, western front

Including Austro-Italian front; first German assault on Verdun

940.425 1915, eastern front

Including Salonika; comprehensive works on operations at Gallipoli and the Dardanelles

For naval operations, see 940.455

.426 1915, other areas

Including Asia, Africa

.427 1916, western front

Including Battle of the Somme, battles at Verdun; Austro-Italian front

.427 5 1916, eastern front

Including Galicia; specific parts of eastern front [*formerly* †940.427 6–†940.428 9]

[†.427 6–†.428 9] Specific parts of eastern front

Class in 940.427 5

.429 1916, other areas

Including Asia, Africa

.429 1 Turkey in Asia: Asia Minor

.43 Campaigns and battles, 1917–1918 [*formerly* *940.42]

.431 1917, western front

Including Austro-Italian front [*formerly* †940.432 1–†940.432 4]; Second Battle of Flanders, Second Battle of the Aisne, Battle of Cambrai; introduction of tank warfare

.432 1917, eastern front

[†.432 1–†.432 4] Austro-Italian front

Class in 940.431

.433 1917, other areas

Including Asia, Africa

.434 1918, western front

Including final German offensives; Austro-Italian front [*formerly* †940.437 1–†940.437 3]

.435 Allied offensive, July 18–September 24

940.436 Allied offensive, September 25–November 11: Argonne-Meuse offensive

.437 1918, eastern front

[†.437 1–†.437 3] Austro-Italian front

Class in 940.434

.438 1918, other areas

Including Asia, Africa

.439 Armistice, November 11, 1918

.439 3 Celebrations

For celebrations of Veterans' Day, see 394.268

.44 Aerial operations

.441 Air services

Including observation, scouting, artillery detecting, range finding, signaling, bombing, auxiliary land and naval fighting, antisubmarine activities, coast patrol

For a specific incident, see the subject, e.g., bombardment of London 940.447

.442 Air raids

Comprehensive works

For specific air raids, see 940.444–940.448

.443 Air bases

.444 Events of 1914

Including raids on Paris and England

.445 Events of 1915

Including raids on England

.446 Events of 1916

Including Zeppelin attacks, raids on Paris and England

.447 Events of 1917

Including air battle over Hindenburg line, raids on Paris and England

.448 Events of 1918

Including raids on Paris

940.449 History of aerial operations

Including specific aircraft, specific fliers

Divide like 940–999, e.g., American aviators in World War I 940.449 73

For specific air battles and raids, see 940.444–940.448

.45 Naval operations

.451 Submarine warfare

.451 2 German use of submarine (U-boat)

.451 3 Allied use of submarine

Divide like 940–999, e.g., American submarines 940.451 373

.451 4 Important events

Including sinking of the Lusitania

.451 6 Antisubmarine warfare

.452 Blockades

Including blockade running

.453 Naval bases

.454 Events of 1914

.455 Events of 1915

For sinking of the Lusitania, see 940.451 4

.456 Events of 1916

.457 Events of 1917

.458 Events of 1918

.459 History of naval operations

Divide like 940–999, e.g., British navy in World War I 940.459 42

For specific naval battles and events, see 940.454–940.458

940.46 Celebrations, commemorations, memorials

Comprehensive works

For celebrations, commemorations, memorials of a specific event, see the event, e.g., Armistice Day 940.439 3; *societies commemorating the war,* 369

.461 Commemorative meetings

Divide like 940–999, e.g., German meetings 940.461 43

.463 Flag presentations

Divide like 940–999, e.g., flag presentations in the United States 940.463 73

.464 Decorations

Including presentation of awards

Divide like 940–999, e.g., presentation of Medal of Honor 940.464 73

.465 Monuments

Divide like 940–999, e.g., monuments of World War I in France 940.465 44

For monuments to a specific event, see the event, e.g., monument at Château-Thierry 940.435; *architecture of war memorials,* 725.94; *national memorial cemeteries,* 718.8

.467 Rolls of honor

Including lists of dead

Divide like 940–999, e.g., roll of honor at Hattiesburg, Mississippi 940.467 762 18

.47 Prisons, health, social services

Including relief and welfare activities for armed forces and civilians

.472 Prisons

Including internment camps

Divide like 940–999, e.g., German prison camps 940.472 43

.473 Exchange of prisoners

.475 Medical services

Including activities of medical and hospital personnel

.475 2 Sanitary affairs

940.475 3 Ambulance companies

.475 4–.475 9 Medical services of specific countries

Divide like 940–999, e.g., British medical services 940.475 42

.476 Hospitals

.476 34–.476 39 Hospitals in specific locations

Comprehensive works

Divide like 940–999, e.g., military hospitals in France 940.476 344

For hospitals maintained by a specific country, see 940.476 4–940.476 9

.476 4–.476 9 Hospitals maintained by specific countries

Divide like 940–999, e.g., British hospitals in France 940.476 42

.477 Relief and welfare work

.477 1 Red Cross

.477 2 Salvation Army

.477 3 Young Men's Christian Associations

.477 4 Young Women's Christian Associations

.477 5 Knights of Columbus

.477 6 Young Men's Hebrew Associations

.477 7 Other

Including college units

.477 8 Relief activities conducted by specific countries

Divide like 940–999, e.g., relief activities of the United States 940.477 873

.477 9 Relief activities in specific countries

Comprehensive works

Divide like 940–999, e.g., relief activities in Finland 940.477 947 1

For relief activities conducted by specific countries, see 940.477 8

.478 Chaplains

940.48 Personal narratives

For personal narratives relating to a specific battle, event, or subject, see the subject, e.g., spies of Central Powers 940.487

.481 Individuals from Allies and associated powers

Divide like 940–999, but only to country, or in United States to state, e.g., war experiences of soldier from Richmond, Virginia 940.481 755

.482 Individuals from Central Powers

Divide like 940–999, but only to country, e.g., war experiences of resident of Danzig 940.482 43

.483 Military life and customs of Allies and associated powers

Including all armed forces

Divide like 940–999, e.g., life in the United States Navy 940.483 73

.484 Military life and customs of Central Powers

Including all armed forces

Divide like 940–999, e.g., life in the Luftwaffe 940.484 43

.485 Secret service and spies

.486 Allies and associated powers

Divide like 940–999, e.g., French spies 940.486 44

.487 Central Powers

Divide like 940–999, e.g., Austrian spies 940.487 436

.488 Propaganda

.488 6 By Allies and associated powers

Divide like 940–999, e.g., British propaganda 940.488 642

.488 7 By Central Powers

Divide like 940–999, e.g., German propaganda 940.488 743

.488 9 Propaganda in specific countries

Propaganda of both sides

Divide like 940–999, e.g., French and German propaganda in Norway 940.488 948 1

For propaganda of only one side, see 940.488 6–940.488 7

.49 Graphic materials

Including maps, pictorial histories, cartoons

940.5 **20th century, 1918–**

Including comprehensive works on 20th century

For early 20th century to 1914, see 940.28; *World War I,* 940.3–940.4

.51 1918–1930

.52 1930–1939

.53 World War II, 1939–1945

SUMMARY

940.531	**Political and economic history**
.532	**Diplomatic history**
.533	**Groups of countries concerned in the war**
.534–.539	**Participation of individual countries**
.54	**Conduct of the war**
.540 1	**Strategy**
.540 2	**Mobilization**
.540 3	**Negroes and American Indians during the war**
.540 4	**Other racial and ethnic groups**
.540 5	**Repressive measures and atrocities**
.541–.542	**Combined operations**
.544	**Aerial operations**
.545	**Naval operations**
.546	**Celebrations, commemorations, memorials**
.547	**Prisons, health, social services**
.548	**Personal narratives**
.548 3–.548 4	**Military life and customs**
.548 5–.548 8	**Unconventional warfare**
.549	**Graphic materials**

[.530 84] Audio-visual aids

Class in 940.549

.531 Political and economic history

.531 1 Causes

Including comprehensive works on the following wars as precursors of World War II: Japanese invasions of China, 1931–1937; Italo-Ethiopian War, 1935–1936; Spanish Civil War, 1936–1939

For history of a specific war, see the subject, e.g., Italo-Ethiopian War 963.056

.531 12 Political and diplomatic causes

940.531 13 Economic causes

.531 14 Social and psychological causes

For propaganda, see 940.548 8

.531 2 Efforts to preserve or restore peace

Including peace efforts during the war [*formerly* *940.532]

.531 4 Results

Including political, diplomatic, economic consequences; terms of cessation of hostilities; conferences

For peace conferences during the war, see 940.531 2; *military conferences, military occupation,* 940.54

.531 44 Reconstruction

Comprehensive works

Including plans, problems, discussions of the postwar world

For reconstruction in a specific country, see the country, e.g., in England 942.085

.531 5 Relation of special classes of persons to the war

Except for classes of persons specifically provided for, e.g., doctors 940.547 5, divide like 000–999, e.g., librarians and World War II 940.531 502

.531 52 Clergy and churches

Divide 940.531 521–940.531 528 like 281–288, e.g., Roman Catholic Church and World War II 940.531 522; divide 940.531 528 9 like 289, e.g., Christian Scientists and World War II 940.531 528 95

.531 529 Non-Christian groups

Divide like 290, e.g., rabbis and World War II 940.531 529 6

.531 59 Refugees

Divide like 940–999, e.g., French refugees 940.531 594 4

.531 6 Other classes of persons not elsewhere classified

.531 61 Noncombatants

Including children

.531 62 Pacifists

940.531 63 Enemy sympathizers

For anti-Axis national groups, see 940.532 2; *pro-Axis national groups,* 940.532 4

.531 8 Special aspects of the war

Except for aspects specifically provided for, e.g., military aspects 940.54, divide like 000–999, e.g., comprehensive works on economic aspects 940.531 833

For economic causes of the war, see 940.531 13

.532 Diplomatic history

Comprehensive works on relations between countries during the war

Class peace efforts during the war [*formerly* *940.532] in 940.531 2

For diplomatic causes, see 940.531 12; *treaties and conferences, diplomatic consequences,* 940.531 4

.532 2 United Nations

Including anti-Axis national groups, e.g., Free French; governments in exile, e.g., Norwegian representatives in London

Divide like 940–999, e.g., wartime diplomacy of de Gaulle 940.532 244

.532 4 Axis Powers

Including pro-Axis national groups, e.g., quislings

Divide like 940–999, e.g., wartime diplomacy of Pétain 940.532 444

.532 5 Neutrals

Divide like 940–999, e.g., diplomacy of Switzerland concerning the war 940.532 549 4

.533 Groups of countries concerned in the war

Comprehensive works

For a specific activity of a group, see the subject, e.g., diplomatic history of the United Nations 940.532 2; *specific countries,* 940.534–940.539

.533 2 United Nations

.533 4 Axis Powers

.533 5 Neutrals

.533 6 Occupied countries

.533 7 Occupied by Axis Powers

.533 8 Occupied by United Nations

940.534–.539 Participation of individual countries [*formerly* *940–*999]

Including governments in exile, anti-Axis national groups, pro-Axis national groups; mobilization in specific countries

Divide like 940–999, e.g., France in the war 940.534 4

For works of purely local interest, see the specific locality, e.g., war activities of New York City 974.71

.54 Conduct of the war

Including military history, military conferences, military occupation

.540 1 Strategy

.540 12 United Nations

.540 13 Axis Powers

.540 2 Mobilization

Comprehensive works

Including recruitment, volunteering, drafts

For mobilization in specific countries, see 940.534–940.539

.540 3 Negroes and American Indians during the war

For specific military units, see 940.541 2

.540 4 Other racial and ethnic groups

.540 5 Repressive measures and atrocities

For internment camps, see 940.547 2

.541 Combined operations

Including land operations

For aerial operations, see 940.544; *naval operations,* 940.545

.541 2 Military organizations of United Nations

Divide like 940–999, e.g., 92d (Negro) Division 940.541 273

For medical corps, see 940.547 5; *chaplains,* 940.547 8; *intelligence,* 940.548 6

940.541 3 Military organizations of Axis Powers

Divide like 940–999, e.g., Austrian troops 940.541 343 6

For medical corps, see 940.547 5; *chaplains,* 940.547 8; *intelligence,* 940.548 7

[†.541 4] Battle fronts

Class in 940.542

.542 Campaigns and battles

Including operational fronts [*formerly* †940.541 4]

.542 1 European theater of operations

Including VE Day, war memorials of this theater

.542 3 Middle East and Africa

.542 5 Asian mainland, Japan, Netherlands East Indies

Including VJ Day

.542 6 Islands of the Pacific Ocean

.542 8 The Americas

.542 9 Other areas

.544 Aerial operations

Including antiaircraft defenses, combined air and naval blockades

For naval blockades, see 940.545 2

.544 1 Air services

Including observation, scouting, range finding, signaling, bombing, auxiliary land and naval fighting, antisubmarine operations, coast patrol, balloon barrage

Class air fighting [*formerly* †940.544 1] in 940.544 2

.544 2 Air campaigns and battles [*formerly* †940.544 1]

.544 3 Air bases

Divide like 940–999, e.g., air bases in England 940.544 342

.545 Naval operations

.545 1 Submarine warfare

.545 16 Antisubmarine warfare

940.545 2 Blockades

Including blockade running

.545 3 Naval bases

.546 Celebrations, commemorations, memorials

Comprehensive works

For celebrations, commemorations, memorials of a specific event, see the event, e.g., VE Day 940.542 1; *societies commemorating the war,* 369

.546 1 Commemorative meetings

Divide like 940–999, e.g., German meetings 940.546 143

.546 3 Flag presentations

Divide like 940–999, e.g., flag presentations in the United States 940.546 373

.546 4 Decorations

Including presentation of awards

Divide like 940–999, e.g., presentation of Medal of Honor 940.546 473

.546 5 Monuments

Divide like 940–999, e.g., monuments of World War II in France 940.546 544

For monuments to a specific event, see the event, e.g., American Memorial Chapel in Saint Paul's Cathedral 940.542 1; *architecture of war memorials,* 725.94; *national memorial cemeteries,* 718.8

.546 7 Rolls of honor

Including lists of dead

Divide like 940–999, e.g., roll of honor at Trenton, New Jersey 940.546 774 966

.547 Prisons, health, social services

Including relief and welfare activities for armed forces and civilians

.547 2 Prisons

Including internment camps

Divide like 940–999, e.g., German prison camps 940.547 243

.547 3 Exchange of prisoners

940.547 5 Medical services

Including activities of medical and hospital personnel

.547 52 Sanitary affairs

.547 53 Ambulance companies

.547 54–.547 59 Medical services of specific countries

Divide like 940–999, e.g., British medical services 940.547 542

.547 6 Hospitals

.547 634–.547 639 Hospitals in specific locations

Comprehensive works

Divide like 940–999, e.g., military hospitals in France 940.547 634 4

For hospitals maintained by a specific country, see 940.547 64–940.547 69

.547 64–.547 69 Hospitals maintained by specific countries

Divide like 940–999, e.g., British hospitals in France 940.547 642

.547 7 Relief and welfare work

.547 71 Red Cross

.547 78 Relief activities conducted by specific countries

Divide like 940–999, e.g., relief activities of the United States 940.547 787 3

.547 79 Relief activities in specific countries

Comprehensive works

Divide like 940–999, e.g., relief activities in Finland 940.547 794 71

For relief activities conducted by specific countries, see 940.547 78

.547 8 Chaplains

.548 Personal narratives

For personal narratives relating to a specific battle, event, or subject, see the subject, e.g., spies of Axis Powers 940.548 7

.548 1 Individuals from United Nations

Divide like 940–999, but only to country, or in United States to state, e.g., war experiences of a soldier from New York City 940.548 174 7

940.548 2 Individuals from Axis Powers

Divide like 940–999, but only to country, e.g., war experiences of a resident of Salzburg 940.548 243 6

.548 3 Military life and customs of United Nations

Including all armed forces

Divide like 940–999, e.g., life in the United States Navy 940.548 373

.548 4 Military life and customs of Axis Powers

Including all armed forces

Divide like 940–999, e.g., life in the Luftwaffe 940.548 443

.548 5 Unconventional warfare

Including intelligence, subversion, sabotage, infiltration

.548 6 United Nations

Divide like 940–999, e.g., French saboteurs 940.548 644

.548 7 Axis Powers

Divide like 940–999, e.g., German saboteurs 940.548 743

.548 8 Psychological warfare

Including propaganda

.548 86 By United Nations

Divide like 940–999, e.g., British propaganda 940.548 864 2

.548 87 By Axis Powers

Divide like 940–999, e.g., German propaganda 940.548 874 3

.548 89 Propaganda in specific countries

Propaganda of both sides

Divide like 940–999, e.g., Free French and German propaganda in Norway 940.548 894 81

For propaganda of only one side, see 940.548 86–940.548 87

.549 Graphic materials

Including maps, pictorial histories, cartoons

.55 Later 20th century, 1945–

941 Scotland

941.01–941.081 Period divisions

.01 Early history to 1057

Gaelic period to Norman penetration

For ancient Celtic tribes, see 936.4

.02 Efforts at control by England, 1057–1314

Including Battle of Bannockburn, 1314

.03 Early period of independence, 1314–1424

.04 James I–James V, 1424–1542

.05 Reformation period, 1542–1603

Including reign of Mary Stuart, 1542–1567

.06 Personal union with England, 1603–1707

.07 18th century, 1707–1837

Including political union with England to form Kingdom of Great Britain, 1707

.08 19th century, 1837–1901

Victorian era

.081 20th century, 1901–

941.1–941.495 Geographic divisions

.1 Northern Scotland and coastal islands

Including comprehensive works on the Highlands

For Grampian Mountains, see 941.2

.11 Shetland Islands (Zetland County)

.12 Orkney Islands

Including Scapa Flow

.13 Caithness

.14 Sutherland

941.15 Cromarty

Incorporated with Ross, 17th century

.16 Ross and Cromarty

Including part of Outer Hebrides

.17 Hebrides (Western Islands)

Comprehensive works

For a specific island or region, see the county of which it forms a part, e.g., Skye 941.21

.2 North central Scotland

Including Grampian Mountains, Strathmore

.21 Inverness

Including Caledonian Canal; parts of Inner and Outer Hebrides

.22 Nairn

.23 Moray

Formerly Elgin

.24 Banff

.25 Aberdeen

.26 Kincardine

.3 Central lowlands

Including Firth of Forth

.31 Angus

Formerly Forfar

.32 Perth

.33 Fife

.34 Kinross

.35 Clackmannan

.36 Stirling

.37 Dumbarton

.38 Argyll

Including part of Inner Hebrides

.39 Bute

Including Arran, Bute, Great Cumbrae, Little Cumbrae Islands

941.4 **Southern Scotland**

Including Clyde River, Solway Firth

.41 Renfrew

.42 Ayr

.43 Lanark

.435 Glasgow

.44 West Lothian

Formerly Linlithgow

.445 Midlothian

Including Edinburgh

.45 East Lothian

Formerly Haddington

.455 Berwick

.46 Peebles

.465 Selkirk

.47 Roxburgh

.48 Dumfries

.49 Kirkcudbright

Including comprehensive works on Galloway district

For Wigtown, see 941.495

.495 Wigtown

.5 Ireland

941.51–941.59 Period divisions

.51 Early history to 1086

Including settlement by Celts, Milesians; Danish invasions; Battle of Clontarf, 1014

For ancient Celtic tribes, see 936.4

.52 Period of English conquest, 1086–1171

Including Synod of Cashel, 1171; Norman settlement

.53 Ireland under House of Plantagenet, 1171–1399

.54 Ireland under Houses of Lancaster and York, 1399–1485

941.55 Ireland under Tudors, 1485–1603

Including Statute of Drogheda (Poynings's Law), 1495

.56 Ireland under Stuarts, 1603–1691

Including Battle of the Boyne, 1690; Treaty of Limerick, 1691

.57 18th century, 1691–1800

Including Wolfe Tone's rebellion, 1798

.58 19th century, 1801–1900

Ireland as part of United Kingdom, 1801–1920

.59 20th century, 1900–

Including Sinn Fein; Easter Rebellion, 1916; Irish Free State, Republic of Ireland (Eire), 1949– ; comprehensive works on Republic of Ireland and Northern Ireland

For history of Northern Ireland, 1920– , see 941.605

941.6–941.96 Geographic divisions

.6 Ulster (Northern Ireland)

.605 Northern Ireland under Government of Ireland Act, 1920–

For comprehensive works on Republic of Ireland and Northern Ireland, see 941.59

.61 Antrim

Including Belfast

.62 Londonderry

.63 Donegal

County of Republic of Ireland

Including Aran Island

.64 Tyrone

.65 Down

.66 Armagh

.67 Monaghan

County of Republic of Ireland

.68 Fermanagh

.69 Cavan

County of Republic of Ireland

941.7 **Connaught**

.71 Leitrim

.72 Sligo

.73 Mayo

.74 Galway

Including Aran Islands

.75 Roscommon

.8 **Leinster**

.81 Longford

.815 Westmeath

.82 Meath

.825 Louth

.83 Dublin

.84 Wicklow

.85 Kildare

.86 Offaly

Formerly King's County

.87 Laoighis (Leix)

Formerly Queen's County

.88 Carlow

.885 Wexford

.89 Kilkenny

.9 **Munster**

.91 Waterford

.92 Tipperary

.93 Clare

.94 Limerick

.95 Cork

.96 Kerry

942 England

Including comprehensive works on Commonwealth of Nations, on British Commonwealth, on British Empire, on United Kingdom, on Great Britain

For a specific part of the Commonwealth of Nations, see the part, e.g., Canada 971

942.01–942.085 Period divisions

.01 Early history to 1066

Including Anglo-Saxon, Roman, British, Danish periods; reigns of Alfred the Great, 841–899; of Edward the Confessor, 1042–1066

For tribes of Angles and Saxons, see 936.32; *of Celts,* 936.4

.02 Norman period, 1066–1154

Including growth of feudalism

.021 William I, 1066–1087

Including Battle of Hastings

.022 William II, 1087–1100

.023 Henry I, 1100–1135

.024 Stephen, 1135–1154

.03 House of Plantagenet, 1154–1399

.031 Henry II, 1154–1189

.032 Richard I, 1189–1199

.033 John, 1199–1216

Including signing of Magna Carta, 1215

For constitutional history, see 342.42

.034 Henry III, 1216–1272

.035 Edward I, 1272–1307

.036 Edward II, 1307–1327

.037 Edward III, 1327–1377

For Hundred Years' War, see 944.025

.038 Richard II, 1377–1399

942.04 Houses of Lancaster and York, 1399–1485

Including Wars of the Roses, 1455–1485

.041 Henry IV, 1399–1413

.042 Henry V, 1413–1422

.043 Henry VI, 1422–1461

.044 Edward IV, 1461–1483

.045 Edward V, 1483

.046 Richard III, 1483–1485

.05 Tudor period, 1485–1603

.051 Henry VII, 1485–1509

.052 Henry VIII, 1509–1547

.053 Edward VI, 1547–1553

.054 Mary, 1553–1558

.055 Elizabeth I, 1558–1603

.06 Stuart period, 1603–1714

Including personal union with Scotland, 1603–1707

.061 James I, 1603–1625

.062 Charles I, 1625–1649

Including civil wars, 1642–1646, 1648–1649

.063 Commonwealth, 1649–1660

.064 Oliver Cromwell, 1653–1658

.065 Richard Cromwell, 1658–1659

.066 Charles II, 1660–1685

Restoration period

.067 James II, 1685–1688

.068 William III (of Orange) and Mary, 1689–1702

.069 Anne, 1702–1714

Including political union with Scotland to form Kingdom of Great Britain, 1707

942.07 House of Hanover, 1714–1837

.071 George I, 1714–1727

.072 George II, 1727–1760

.073 George III, 1760–1820

Including formation of United Kingdom, 1801

.074 George IV, 1820–1830

.075 William IV, 1830–1837

.08 Victoria, 1837–1901

.082 20th century, 1901–

Including reigns of House of Windsor; of Edward VII, 1901–1910

.083 Period of World War I and postwar, 1914–1936

Including reign of George V, 1910–1936

.084 Period of World War II, 1936–1945

Including reigns of Edward VIII, 1936; of George VI, 1936–1952

.085 Later 20th century, 1945–

Including reign of Elizabeth II, 1952–

942.1–942.99 Geographic divisions

.1 London metropolitan area

Including County of London, Greater London

.12 Central London

Including City of London, Finsbury, Holborn

.13 West London

Including West End; Westminster, Chelsea, Fulham, Hammersmith, Kensington, Paddington

.14 North London

Including Saint Marylebone, Hampstead, Saint Pancras, Islington, Stoke Newington, Hackney

942.15 East London

Including East End; Shoreditch, Bethnal Green, Poplar, Stepney

.16 South London

Including Southwark, Bermondsey, Deptford, Greenwich, Woolwich, Lewisham, Camberwell, Lambeth, Battersea, Wandsworth

.17 Environs of London (Outer Ring)

Comprehensive works

For a specific part of Outer Ring, see the part, e.g., Croyden 942.21

.19 Middlesex

.2 Southeastern England

Including Thames River; comprehensive works on Wessex

For western Wessex, see 942.3

.21 Surrey

.23 Kent

.25 Sussex

.27 Hampshire (Hants; Southampton)

.28 Isle of Wight

.29 Berkshire

.3 Southwestern England

Including western Wessex

.31 Wiltshire

.33 Dorset

.34 Channel Islands

Including Jersey, Guernsey, Alderney, Sark

.35 Devon

.37 Cornwall

.38 Somerset

942.4 West Midlands

Including Mercia; comprehensive works on Midlands

For east Midlands, see 942.5

.41 Gloucester

.43 Monmouth

.44 Hereford

.45 Shropshire (Salop)

.46 Stafford

.47 Worcester

.48 Warwick

.5 East Midlands

Including the Fens

.51 Derby

.52 Nottingham

.53 Lincoln

.54 Leicester

.545 Rutland

.55 Northampton

Including Soke of Peterborough

.56 Huntingdon

.565 Bedford

.57 Oxford

.575 Buckingham

.58 Hertford

.59 Cambridge

Including Isle of Ely

.6 Eastern England

Including East Anglia

.61 Norfolk

.64 Suffolk

.67 Essex

942.7 **North central England**

Including Northumbria

.71 Cheshire

.72 Lancashire

.74 York

.8 **Northern England**

Including Lake District

.81 Durham

.82 Northumberland

Including Cheviot Hills

.85 Cumberland

.88 Westmoreland

.89 Isle of Man

.9 **Wales**

.91 Anglesey

.92 Caernarvon

.925 Merioneth

.93 Denbigh

.935 Flint

.94 Montgomery

.95 Cardigan

.96 Radnor

.965 Brecknock

.97 Glamorgan

.98 Carmarthen

.99 Pembroke

943 Germany

Comprehensive works on the states or areas which became part of Germany in 1866

Including comprehensive works on central Europe, on Holy Roman Empire, on House of Hapsburg

For a specific country formerly part of Holy Roman Empire, see the country, e.g., Liechtenstein 943.648; *Hapsburg rule in a specific country, the country, e.g., Austria* 943.6; *ancient tribes settling in Germany,* 936

943.01–943.087 Period divisions

.01 Early period and Empire of Charlemagne to 843

For reign of Charlemagne in another country, see the country, e.g., in France 944.01

.02 Holy Roman Empire during 843–1519

.021 Carolingian emperors, 843–911

.022 Conrad I, 911–918; and Saxon emperors, 919–1024

.023 Salian (Franconian) emperors, 1024–1125; and Lothair II, 1125–1137

.024 House of Hohenstaufen, 1138–1197

.025 House of Hohenstaufen and Interregnum, 1198–1273

.026 Houses of Hapsburg and Luxemburg, 1273–1519

.027 House of Luxemburg and Interregnum, 1378–1436

.028 House of Hapsburg, 1437–1519

.029 Maximilian I, 1493–1519

.03 Reformation period, 1519–1618

Including period of Counter-Reformation

.031 Charles V, 1519–1556

Including wars with France; Knights' War, 1522–1523; Peasants' War, 1524–1525; Peace of Madrid, 1526; Treaty of Cambrai, 1529; Schmalkaldic League and Wars, 1530–1547; Peace of Augsburg, 1555

For Charles V as Charles I, King of Spain, see 946.04

.032 Ferdinand I, 1556–1564

943.033 Maximilian II, 1564–1576

.034 Rudolf II, 1576–1612

.035 Matthias, 1612–1619

.04 17th century, 1618–1705

.041 Period of Thirty Years' War, 1618–1648

For comprehensive works on Thirty Years' War, see 940.24

.042 Ferdinand II, 1619–1637

.043 Ferdinand III, 1637–1657

.044 Leopold I, 1658–1705

.05 Rise of Prussia, 1705–1790

.051 Joseph I, Emperor, 1705–1711

.052 Charles VI, Emperor, 1711–1740

.053 Frederick the Great, King of Prussia, 1740–1786

Including First Silesian War, 1740–1742

.054 Charles VII, Emperor, 1742–1745

Including Second Silesian War, 1744–1745

.055 Francis I, Emperor, 1745–1765

.056 Third Silesian (Seven Years') War, 1756–1763

For comprehensive works on Seven Years' War, see 940.25

.057 Joseph II, Emperor, 1765–1790

.06 Period of Napoleonic Wars, 1790–1815

Including end of Holy Roman Empire, 1806; Confederation of the Rhine, 1806–1815

For comprehensive works on Napoleonic Wars, see 940.27

.07 Unification, 1815–1866

Including Schleswig-Holstein Wars, 1864–1866

.08 Second Empire, 1866–1918

.081 North German Confederation, 1866–1871

.082 Franco-German War, 1870–1871

.083 William I, 1871–1888 (King of Prussia, 1861–1888)

.084 Frederick, 1888; and William II, 1888–1918

.085 German Republic, 1918–1933

943.086 Third Reich, 1933–1945

.087 Later 20th century, 1945–

Including Allied occupation, 1945–1949; Federal Republic, 1949– (West Germany); comprehensive works on Federal Republic (West Germany) and Democratic Republic (East Germany)

For German Democratic Republic, 1949–, see 943.108 7

943.1–943.58 Geographic divisions

.1 Prussia

Including comprehensive works on former state of Prussia, on East Germany

For a specific part of former Prussia, see the part, e.g., Westphalia 943.56

.108 7 German Democratic Republic, 1949– (East Germany)

For comprehensive works on Federal Republic and Democratic Republic, see 943.087

.11 East Prussia

.112 Memel Territory

Part of Lithuania, 1920–1939, 1945–

Class comprehensive works on Lithuania in 947.5; if preferred, use 947.5 also for specific parts of Lithuania

.114 Kaliningrad (Königsberg)

Oblast of Russian Soviet Federated Socialist Republic, 1945–

Class comprehensive works on Russian Soviet Federated Socialist Republic in 947.3; if preferred, use 947.3 also for specific parts of Russian Soviet Federated Socialist Republic

.116 Olsztyn

Province of Poland, 1945–

Class comprehensive works on Poland in 943.8; if preferred, use 943.8 also for specific parts of Poland

943.12 West Prussia

Including Polish Corridor, city of Danzig

Part of Poland, 1919–1939, 1945–

Class comprehensive works on Poland in 943.8; if preferred, use 943.8 also for specific parts of Poland

For Polish Pomerania, see 943.163

.13 Poznan (Posen)

Province of Poland, 1919–

Class comprehensive works on Poland in 943.8; if preferred, use 943.8 also for specific parts of Poland

.14 German Silesia

Greater part transferred to Poland, 1945

Including comprehensive works on Silesia

Class comprehensive works on Poland in 943.8; if preferred, use 943.8 also for specific parts of Poland

For Czech Silesia, see 943.73; *Silesian Wars,* 943.053–943.056

.15 Brandenburg

State of German Democratic Republic, 1949–

For comprehensive works on East Germany, see 943.1

.155 Berlin

.16 Pomerania

.163 Polish Pomerania

Including Pomerelia

Class comprehensive works on Poland in 943.8; if preferred, use 943.8 also for specific parts of Poland

.165 German Pomerania

Part of Mecklenburg, 1945–

.17 Mecklenburg

State of German Democratic Republic, 1949–

For comprehensive works on East Germany, see 943.1

.175 Lübeck

Part of Schleswig-Holstein, 1937–

For comprehensive works on Schleswig-Holstein, see 943.51

943.18 Saxony-Anhalt

State of German Democratic Republic, 1949–

Including Prussian Saxony

For comprehensive works on East Germany, see 943.1

.19 Anhalt

.2 Central Germany

.21 Saxony

State of German Democratic Republic, 1949–

For comprehensive works on East Germany, see 943.1

.22 Thuringia

State of German Democratic Republic, 1949–

For comprehensive works on East Germany, see 943.1

.23 Saxe-Weimar

.24 Saxe-Altenburg

.25 Saxe-Coburg-Gotha

.26 Saxe-Meiningen

.27 Schwarzburg

.28 Reuss

.3 Bavaria

Including Danube River in Bavaria

For comprehensive works on Danube River, see 949.6

.31 Upper Franconia

.32 Middle Franconia

.33 Lower Franconia

.34 Upper Palatinate

For comprehensive works on Palatinate, see 943.43

.35 Lower Bavaria

.36 Upper Bavaria

.37 Swabia

943.4 **West central and southwestern Germany**

Including Rhine River and Valley

.41 Hesse-Darmstadt

Including comprehensive works on Hesse: formed, 1945, of Hesse-Darmstadt, Waldeck, and most of former Hesse-Nassau

For Waldeck, see 943.57; *Hesse-Nassau,* 943.58

.42 Rhine Province (Rhenish Prussia)

.423 Cologne, Aachen, Düsseldorf

Districts of state of North Rhine–Westphalia, 1945–

For comprehensive works on North Rhine–Westphalia, see 943.55

.425 Coblenz and Trier

Districts of State of Rhineland-Palatinate, 1945–

For comprehensive works on Rhineland-Palatinate, see 943.43

.427 Saar

Autonomous, 1919–1935, 1947–1956

.43 Rhineland-Palatinate

State formed, 1945, of former Rhenish Palatinate, former Rhenish Hesse, Montabaur, Coblenz, and Trier

Including comprehensive works on Palatinate

For Upper Palatinate, see 943.34; *Montabaur,* 943.58; *Coblenz and Trier,* 943.425

[†.44–†.45] Alsace-Lorraine

Class in 944.38

Libraries preferring to class works on Alsace-Lorraine under German administration with Germany may use 943.44 for Alsace-Lorraine, 943.445 for Alsace alone, and 943.45 for Lorraine alone

.46 Württemberg-Baden

.47 Württemberg

.48 Black Forest

Including Danube River in Germany

For comprehensive works on Danube River, see 949.6

.49 Hohenzollern

943.5 **Northwestern Germany**

Including Lower Saxony

.51 Schleswig-Holstein

Under Danish rule, 1027–1815; North Schleswig rejoined to Denmark, 1920; Lübeck, former free Hanseatic city attacht, 1937

For Denmark, see 948.9; *Lübeck,* 943.175; *Schleswig-Holstein Wars,* 943.07

.515 Hamburg

.518 Helgoland

.52 Oldenburg

.525 Bremen

.53 Hanover

.54 Brunswick

.55 North Rhine–Westphalia

Formed, 1945, of Lippe, Westphalia, Cologne, Aachen, and Düsseldorf

For Cologne, Aachen, Düsseldorf, see 943.423

.56 Westphalia

.57 Waldeck

Part of Hesse-Nassau, 1929–1945; of Hesse, 1946–

For comprehensive works on Hesse, see 943.41

.58 Hesse-Nassau

Montabaur part of Rhineland-Palatinate, 1945– ; remainder part of Hesse, 1945–

For comprehensive works on Rhineland-Palatinate, see 943.43; *on Hesse,* 943.41

.6 Austria

Including comprehensive works on Austro-Hungarian Empire

For Hungary, see 943.91; *ancient tribes settling in Austria,* 936

943.602–943.605 Period divisions

.602 Medieval period to 1500

.603 16th to 18th centuries, 1500–1815

943.604 19th century, 1815–1919

.605 20th century, 1919–

United with Germany, 1938–1945

943.61–943.69 Geographic divisions

.61 Lower Austria

.613 Vienna

.615 Burgenland

.62 Upper Austria

.63 Salzburg

.64 Tyrol

For Trento (Trentino), see 945.385

.645 Vorarlberg

.648 Liechtenstein

Independent, 1719–

.65 Styria

.655 Maribor (Marburg)

Oblast of Slovenia, 1918–

For comprehensive works on Slovenia, see 943.67

.66 Carinthia

.67 Slovenia

Comprises Carniola, Karst, Maribor

Part of Yugoslavia, 1918–

Class comprehensive works on Yugloslavia in 949.7; if preferred, use 949.7 also for specific parts of Yugoslavia

For Maribor, see 943.655; *Karst,* 943.682 3

.68 Istria and Gorizia

.682 Istria

For ancient Istria, see 937.3

.682 3 Karst

Part of Slovenia, 1947–

For comprehensive works on Slovenia, see 943.67

943.682 5 Free Territory of Trieste

.682 7 Istrian Peninsula

Part of Veneto, 1919–1947; of Croatia, 1947–

For comprehensive works on Croatia, see 943.94

.686 Gorizia

Part of Friuli–Venezia Giulia, Italy, 1947–

For Friuli–Venezia Giulia, see 945.39

.69 Dalmatia

Part of Croatia, 1919–

For comprehensive works on Croatia, see 943.94

.7 Czechoslovakia

For ancient tribes settling in Czechoslovakia, see 936

943.702–943.704 Period divisions

.702 Kingdom of Bohemia to 1918

Including Hussite Wars, 1420–1431

.703 Republic, 1918–1945

.704 Later 20th century, 1945–

943.71–943.735 Geographic divisions

.71 Bohemia

Including Sudetenland

.72 Moravia

Including province of Moravia and Silesia, 1945–1949

.73 Czech Silesia

.735 Slovakia

.74 Galicia

.743 Polish Galicia

Part of Poland, 1919–

Class comprehensive works on Poland in 943.8; if preferred, use 943.8 also for specific parts of Poland

943.745 **East Galicia**

Part of Ukrainian Soviet Socialist Republic, 1945–

Class comprehensive works on Ukrainian Soviet Socialist Republic in 947.71; if preferred, use 947.71 also for specific parts of Ukrainian Soviet Socialist Republic

.75 Bukovina

Province of Rumania, 1918–

Class comprehensive works on Rumania in 949.8; if preferred, use 949.8 also for specific parts of Rumania

.755 **North Bukovina**

Part of Ukrainian Soviet Socialist Republic, 1940–

Class comprehensive works on Ukrainian Soviet Socialist Republic in 947.71; if preferred, use 947.71 also for specific parts of Ukrainian Soviet Socialist Republic

.8 Poland

Comprehensive works

Class works on a specific part of Poland with the part, e.g., Gdansk 943.12; if preferred, class all specific parts of Poland in 943.8

For ancient tribes settling in Poland, see 936

.802 Early period to 1795

Including partition [*formerly* †947.06]

.803 Period of foreign rule, 1795–1918

.804 Republic, 1918–1939

.805 Later 20th century, 1939–

Including People's Democracy, 1947–

.9 Hungary, Transylvania, Slavonia, Croatia, Bosnia and Herzegovina

.91 **Hungary**

For invasion by ancient tribes, see 936

.910 2 Arpad dynasty, 894–1301

Including settlement by Magyars

.910 3 Period of elective kings, 1301–1526

.910 4 Period of foreign rule, 1526–1918

.910 5 20th century, 1918–

943.915 Banat (Banat of Temesvar)

.915 1 Rumanian Banat

Province of Rumania, 1920–

Class comprehensive works on Rumania in 949.8; if preferred, use 949.8 also for specific parts of Rumania

.915 3 Yugoslav Banat

Part of Vojvodina, 1920–

For comprehensive works on Vojvodina, see 949.71

.92 **Transylvania**

Province of Rumania, 1918–

Class comprehensive works on Rumania in 949.8; if preferred, use 949.8 also for specific parts of Rumania

.93 **Slavonia**

United with Croatia, 1868–

For comprehensive works on Croatia, see 943.94

.94 **Croatia**

Absorbed Slavonia, 1868; part of Yugoslavia, 1918–

Class comprehensive works on Yugoslavia in 949.7; if preferred, use 949.7 also for specific parts of Yugoslavia

For Dalmatia, see 943.69; *Istrian Peninsula,* 943.682 7; *Slavonia,* 943.93

.95 **Bosnia and Herzegovina**

Part of Yugoslavia, 1918–

Class comprehensive works on Yugoslavia in 949.7; if preferred, use 949.7 also for specific parts of Yugoslavia

.955 Bosnia

.96 Herzegovina

944 France

Including comprehensive works on French Union, on Overseas France

For a specific part of French Union, see the part, e.g., Corsica 945.95

944.01–944.082 Period divisions

.01 Early history to 987

Including former Gaul; Merovingian dynasty, 486–751; Carolingian dynasty, 751–987; reign of Charlemagne, 771–814

For ancient tribes settling in France, see 936; *reign of Charlemagne in another country, the country, e.g., in Germany* 943.01

.02 Growth of royal power, 987–1589

Including wars with Italy, 1494–1559

.021 Capetian House, 987–1328

Including reigns of Hugh Capet, 987–996; of Robert II, 996–1031; of Henry I, 1031–1060

.022 Philip I, 1060–1108; Louis VI, 1108–1137; Louis VII, 1137–1180

.023 Philip II, 1180–1223; Louis VIII, 1223–1226; Louis IX, 1226–1270

.024 Philip III, 1270–1285; Philip IV, 1285–1314; Louis X, 1314–1316; John I, 1316; Philip V, 1316–1322; Charles IV, 1322–1328

.025 House of Valois, 1328–1498

Including reigns of Philip VI, 1328–1350; of John II, 1350–1364; of Charles V, 1364–1380; Hundred Years' War

.026 Charles VI, 1380–1422, and Charles VII, 1422–1461

.027 Louis XI, 1461–1483; Charles VIII, 1483–1498; Louis XII, 1498–1515

.028 Francis I, 1515–1547, and Henry II, 1547–1559

.029 Francis II, 1559–1560; Charles IX, 1560–1574; Henry III, 1574–1589

944.03 House of Bourbon, 1589–1789

For Bourbon rule in another country, see the country, e.g., in Spain 946

.031 Henry IV, 1589–1610

.032 Louis XIII, 1610–1643

.033 Louis XIV, 1643–1715

.034 Louis XV, 1715–1774

.035 Louis XVI, 1774–1792

Including antecedents of French Revolution

.04 Revolution, 1789–1804

.041 Period of Estates-General, National Assembly, Legislative Assembly, 1789–1792

.042 First Republic, 1792–1799

.043 National Convention, 1792–1795

Including abolition of monarchy, rise of Napoleon

.044 Reign of Terror, 1793–1794

.045 Directory, 1795–1799

Including period of war with the Second Coalition

.046 Consulate, 1799–1804

Including dictatorship of Napoleon

.05 First Empire, 1804–1815

Including reigns of Napoleon I, 1804–April 11, 1814; of Louis XVIII, April 1814–March 13, 1815; Hundred Days, March 1–June 22, 1815

.06 Restoration, 1815–1848

.061 Louis XVIII, 1815–1824

.062 Charles X, 1824–1830

.063 Louis Philippe, 1830–1848 (July Monarchy)

.07 Second Republic, 1848–1852, and Second Empire, 1852–1870

Including revolution, 1848; coup d'état, 1851; reign of Napoleon III (Louis Napoleon), 1852–1870

944.08 Third Republic, 1870–1945

Including period of Franco-German War; territorial expansion in Africa

For Franco-German War, see 943.082

.081 Period of World War II, 1939–1945

Including German occupation, Vichy government, provisional government at Algiers, Free French movement

.082 Fourth Republic, 1945–

944.1–944.99 Geographic divisions

.1 Brittany

Region and former province

Including ancient Armorica

.11 Finistère

.12 Côtes-du-Nord

.13 Morbihan

.14 Loire-Inférieure

.15 Ille-et-Vilaine

.16 Maine

Region

Including Mayenne department; comprehensive works on former province of Maine

For a specific part of former province of Maine, see the part, e.g., Orne 944.23

.17 Sarthe

.18 Anjou

Region and former province

Including Maine-et-Loire department

.2 Normandy

Region and former province

.21 Manche

.22 Calvados

.23 Orne

944.24 Eure

.25 Seine-Maritime

Formerly Seine-Inférieure

.26 Picardy

Region

Including Somme department; comprehensive works on former province of Picardy

For a specific part of former province of Picardy, see the part, e.g., Oise 944.35

.27 Artois

Region and former province; included in Pas-de-Calais department

.28 French Flanders

Region and former province, coextensive with Nord department

.3 Champagne

Region

Including Marne River; comprehensive works on former province of Champagne

For a specific part of former province of Champagne, see the part, e.g., Yonne 944.41

.31 Ardennes

.32 Marne

.331 Aube

.332 Haute-Marne

.34 Île-de-France

Region and former province

Including Seine River

.345 Aisne

.35 Oise

.36 Paris metropolitan area

Including Seine department

For a specific part of metropolitan Paris, see the part, e.g., Seine-et-Marne 944.37

.365 Seine-et-Oise

.37 Seine-et-Marne

944.38 **Lorraine [*formerly also* †943.44–†943.45]**

Region and former province

Including Vosges Mountains, Argonne Forest; comprehensive works on Alsace-Lorraine

For Vosges department, see 944.39; *Alsace,* 944.383

.381 Meuse

.382 Meurthe-et-Moselle

.382 5 Moselle

.383 **Alsace [*formerly also* †943.445]**

Region and former province

For Moselle, see 944.382 5; *Belfort,* 944.455

.383 3 Haut-Rhin

.383 5 Bas-Rhin

.39 **Vosges**

For Vosges Mountains, see 944.38

.4 **Burgundy**

Region and former province

Including Saône River

.41 Yonne

.42 Côte-d'Or

.43 Saône-et-Loire

.44 Ain

.45 **Franche-Comté**

Region and former province

Including Jura Mountains in France

.453 Haute-Saône

.455 Territory of Belfort

.46 Doubs

944.47 Jura

.48 **Savoy**

Including Savoie department

.49 Haute-Savoie

.5 **Orléanais**

Region

Including Loire River; comprehensive works on former province of Orléanais

For a specific part of former province of Orléanais, see the part, e.g., Yonne 944.41

.51 Eure-et-Loir

.52 Loiret

.53 Loir-et-Cher

.54 **Touraine**

Region and former province

Including Indre-et-Loire department

For Indre, see 944.551

.55 **Berry**

Region and former province

.551 Indre

.552 Cher

.56 **Nivernais**

Region and former province, coextensive with Nièvre department

.57 **Bourbonnais**

Region

Including Allier department; comprehensive works on former province of Bourbonnais

For Cher, see 944.552

.58 **Lyonnais**

Region and former province

.581 Loire

.582 Rhône

944.59 **Auvergne**

Region

Including Massif Central; comprehensive works on former province of Auvergne

For Haute-Loire, see 944.81

.591 Puy-de-Dôme

.592 Cantal

.6 **Poitou**

Region and former province

.61 Vendée

.62 Deux-Sèvres

.63 Vienne

.64 **Charente-Maritime department**

Formerly Charente-Inférieure

Including former Aunis province, former Saintonge province

.65 **Charente department**

Including region and former province of Angoumois

.66 **Limousin**

Region and former province

Including Haute-Vienne department

.67 Corrèze

.68 **Marche**

Region

Including Creuse department; comprehensive works on former province of Marche

For Haute-Vienne, see 944.66

.7 **Guienne (Aquitaine)**

Region and former province

Including Landes region, Garonne River

.71 Gironde

.72 Dordogne

.73 Lot

944.74 Aveyron

Rouergue district

.75 Tarn-et-Garonne

.76 Lot-et-Garonne

.77 **Gascony**

Region

Including comprehensive works on former province of Gascony

For a specific part of former province of Gascony, see the part, e.g., Lot-et-Garonne 944.76

.771 Gers

.772 Landes

.78 Hautes-Pyrénées

.79 **Béarn**

Region and former province, generally coextensive with Basses-Pyrénées department

.8 **Languedoc**

Region

Including Cevennes Mountains, Rhone River; comprehensive works on former province of Languedoc

For Tarn-et-Garonne, see 944.75

.81 Haute-Loire

.815 Lozère

.82 Ardèche

.83 Gard

.84 Hérault

.85 Tarn

.86 Haute-Garonne

.87 Aude

.88 Ariège

Including former Foix province

.89 **Pyrénées-Orientales**

Including region and former province of Rousillon; Pyrenees Mountains in France

944.9 Provence

Region and former province

Including comprehensive works on Riviera

For Basses-Alpes, see 944.95; *Italian Riviera,* 945.182

.91 Bouches-du-Rhône

Including Marseilles

.92 Vaucluse

Including former Comtat Venaissin; Canton of Valréas, enclave in Drôme department; Avignon

.93 Var

.94 Alpes-Maritimes

.949 Monaco

Enclave in Alpes-Maritimes: independent principality to 1793; annext to France, 1793–1814; independent, 1814–

.95 Basses-Alpes

Department of Provence region

.96 Dauphiné

Region and former province of France

.97 Hautes-Alpes

.98 Drôme

For Canton of Valréas, enclave of Vaucluse, see 944.92

.99 Isère

945 Italy

For Roman Empire, see 937; *a specific part of Italy, the part, e.g., Gorizia* 943.686

945.01–945.092 Period divisions

.01 Gothic and Lombard kingdoms, 476–774

Including barbarian invasions; creation of Papal States, 756; conquest by Charlemagne, 774

For ancient tribes settling in Italy, see 936.3; *Papal States,* 945.6

.02 Frankish rule, 774–962

Including union of church and state in Holy Roman Empire, 800

For Holy Roman Empire, see 943

.03 German emperors, 962–1122

Including Norman invasion of Sicily, 1059; rise of kingdom of Sicily; achievement of papal supremacy by Hildebrand (Gregory VII) thru Concordat at Worms, 1122

For Roman supremacy of the church, see 270.4

.04 12th and 13th centuries, 1122–1300

Including growth of communes; formation of Lombard League, 1167, with self-government granted to Lombardy, 1183; Guelphs versus Ghibellines; rise of Venice

For Venice, see 945.31

.05 Renaissance period, 1300–1494

Including decline of temporal power of papacy; rule of despots; emergence by 1494 of five principal states: Milan, Venice, Florence, Papal States, Naples

For history of a specific state, see the subject, e.g., kingdom of Naples 945.7

945.06 European aggression, 1494–1796

Including sack of Rome, 1527; development of new national culture inspired by Renaissance

.07 Spanish and Austrian domination, 1527–1796

Including rise of kingdom of Sardinia (House of Savoy), 1720

.08 Growth of nationalism, 1796–1870

Including loss of Lombardy and Venetia to Austria; wars of independence, 1848–1849; Risorgimento movement, 1849–1861; return of Lombardy by Peace of Zurich, 1859; Sardinia as dominant power under Victor Emmanuel II, 1861–1878; annexation of Venetia after war with Austria, 1866; unification of Italy by occupation of Rome, 1870

.09 Kingdom of Italy, 1870–1918

Including reigns of Victor Emmanuel II, 1870–1878; of Humbert I, 1878–1900; of Victor Emmanuel III, 1900–1947

.091 Fascist Italy, 1918–1946

Including dictatorship of Benito Mussolini, 1922–1945; Lateran Treaty establishing Vatican City, 1929

For Vatican City, see 945.634

.092 Italian Republic, 1946–

945.1–945.95 Geographic divisions

.1 Piedmont

Region

.11 Val d'Aosta

Autonomous, 1945– ; formerly Aosta province formed from part of Torino, 1927; southern part returned to Torino, 1945

.12 Torino

.13 Cuneo

.14 Alessandria

Area reduced to form Asti province, 1935

.15 Asti

Formed 1935 from part of Alessandria province

945.16 Novara

Area reduced to form Vercelli province, 1927

.17 Vercelli

Formed 1927 from part of Novara province

.18 Liguria

Region

.182 Genova

Area reduced to form provinces of La Spezia (1923) and Savona (1927)

Including Italian Riviera

.183 La Spezia

Formed from part of Genova province, 1923

.184 Savona

Formed from part of Genova province, 1927

.187 Imperia

Formerly Porto Maurizio province

.2 Lombardy

Region

Including Po River

.21 Milano

Area reduced to form part of Varese province, 1927

.22 Varese

Formed from parts of Milano and Como provinces, 1927

.23 Como

Area reduced to form part of Varese province, 1927

.24 Bergamo

.25 Sondrio

.26 Brescia

.27 Cremona

.28 Mantova

.29 Pavia

945.3 **Veneto**

Part of Austria, 1797–1866; formerly included Istrian Peninsula (ceded to Yugoslavia, 1947), Trieste (since 1947 Free Territory of Trieste); province of Udine detacht 1947 to form part of Friuli-Venezia Giulia

For Istrian Peninsula, see 943.682 7; *Gorizia,* 943.686; *Free Territory of Trieste,* 943.682 5; *Friuli-Venezia Giulia,* 945.39

.31 Venezia

.32 Padova

.33 Rovigo

Including Polesine district

.34 Verona

.35 Vicenza

.36 Treviso

.37 Belluno

.38 Trentino-Alto Adige

Autonomous region, 1947–

Formerly Venezia Tridentina

.383 Bolzano (Alto Adige)

.385 Trento (Trentino)

Part of Austrian Tyrol until 1919

.39 Friuli-Venezia Giulia

Autonomous region formed, 1945, of Udine province (Friuli) and part of Gorizia province

For Gorizia, see 943.686

.4 Emilia-Romagna

Region, called Emilia until 1948

.41 Bologna

.42 Modena

945.43 Reggio Emilia

.44 Parma

.45 Ferrara

.46 Piacenza

.47 Ravenna

.48 Forlì

.49 San Marino

Independent, 4th century-

.5 Tuscany

Region

Including Tuscan Archipelago, Elba

.51 Firenze

Area reduced 1927 to form part of Pistoia province

.52 Pistoia

Formed 1927 from parts of Firenze and Lucca provinces

.53 Lucca

Area reduced 1927 to form part of Pistoia province

.54 Massa e Carrara

Formerly Apuania

.55 Pisa

Area reduced by transfer of territory to Livorno province, 1925

.56 Livorno

Area increased by transfer of territory from Pisa province, 1925

.57 Grosetto

Including Maremma district

.58 Siena

.59 Arezzo

945.6 **Central Italy**

Including comprehensive works on former Papal States (States of the Church), territories united at various times under temporal power of Pope

For a specific region under Papal States, see the region, e.g., former Comtat Venaissin 944.92

.62 Latium

Region

.622 Frosinone

Formed 1926

.623 Latina

Formerly Littoria

Including Pontine Marshes, Pontine (Ponza) Islands

.624 Rieti

Formed 1923 from part of Perugia province

.625 Viterbo

.63 Roma province

.632 Rome

.634 Vatican City

Independent papal state, 1929–

.65 Umbria

Region

.651 Perugia

Area reduced to form provinces of Rieti (1923) and Terni (1927)

.652 Terni

Formed 1927 from part of Perugia province

.67 Marche

Region

.671 Ancona

.673 Macerata

.675 Ascoli Piceno

.677 Pesaro e Urbino

945.7 **Southern Italy**

Including former kingdom of Naples

.71 Abruzzi e Molise

Region

.711 Aquila

Area reduced 1927 to form part of Pescara province

.713 Chieti

Area reduced 1927 to form part of Pescara province

.715 Teramo

Area reduced 1927 to form part of Pescara province

.717 Pescara

Formed 1927 from parts of provinces of Aquila, Chieti, Teramo

.719 Campobasso

Coextensive with Molise

.72 Campania

Region

.721 Avellino

.723 Benevento

.725 Caserta

Separate province until 1927; reconstituted 1945, mostly from Napoli province

.73 Napoli

For former kingdom of Naples, see 945.7

.74 Salerno

.75 Apulia (Puglia)

Region

.751 Bari

.753 Lecce

Area reduced to form provinces of Taranto (1923) and Brindisi (1927)

945.754 Brindisi

Formed 1927 from part of Lecce province

.755 Taranto

Formerly Ionio

Formed 1923 from part of Lecce province

.757 Foggia

.77 Basilicata

Region

.771 Potenza

Area reduced 1927 to form Matera province

.772 Matera

Formed 1927 from part of Potenza province

.78 Calabria

Region

.781 Catanzaro

.783 Reggio di Calabria

.785 Cosenza

.8 Sicily

Autonomous, 1947–

Including provinces of Agrigento, Caltanissetta, Catania, Enna, Messina, Palermo, Ragusa, Siracusa, Trapani; Lipari and Pantelleria Islands

.85 Malta (Maltese Islands)

British crown colony, 1800–

.9 Sardinia

Autonomous, 1947–

.95 Corsica

Department of France

Occupied by Italian and German troops, 1942–1945

946 Spain

For a specific region or administrative area of Spain, see the area, e.g., Canary Islands 964.9

946.01–946.082 Period divisions

.01 Early history to 711

Including invasions by Suevians, Vandals, Visigoths; defeat by Moslems, 711

For an ancient tribe settling in Spain, see the tribe, e.g., Visigoths 936.362

.02 Moorish dynasties, 711–1479

Including conquest of Spanish March (Catalonia) by Charlemagne; development and consolidation of kingdoms of Asturias, Galicia, Leon, Castile, Navarre, Aragon

.03 Union of Castile and Aragon, 1479–1516

Including reign of Ferdinand V and Isabella I; expulsion of the last Moors, 1492

.04 Early Hapsburg rulers, 1516–1598

Including reigns of Charles I, 1516–1556; of Philip II, 1556–1598

For Charles I as Charles V of Germany, see 943.031

.05 Later Hapsburg rulers, 1598–1700

.051 Philip III, 1598–1621

.052 Philip IV, 1621–1665

For Thirty Years' War, see 940.24

.053 Charles II, 1665–1700

.054 Bourbon rulers, 1700–1808

.055 Philip V, 1700–1746

Including War of Jenkins' Ear

For War of the Spanish Succession, War of the Austrian Succession, see 940.25

.056 Ferdinand VI, 1746–1759

946.057 Charles III, 1759–1788

.058 Charles IV, 1788–1808

.06 Peninsular War, 1808–1814

Napoleon's invasion of Spain

Including rule of Joseph Bonaparte

.07 Bourbon restoration, 1814–1868

Including reigns of Ferdinand VII, 1814–1833; of Isabella II, 1833–1868

.08 Later 19th and 20th centuries, 1868–

Including revolution and second Bourbon restoration: reign of Amadeo I, 1871–1873; First Republic, 1873–1874; reigns of Alfonso XII, 1875–1885; of Alfonso XIII, 1886–1931

For Spanish-American War, see 973.89

.081 Second Republic, 1931–1939

Including Civil War, 1936–1939

.082 Francisco Franco, 1939–

946.1–946.88 Geographic divisions

.1 Galicia

Region and former kingdom

.11 La Coruña

.13 Lugo

.15 Orense

.17 Pontevedra

.19 Asturias

Region and former kingdom, coextensive with province of Oviedo

.2 Leon

Region and former kingdom

.21 Leon province

.22 Palencia

Sometimes considered part of Old Castile

946.23 Valladolid

Sometimes considered part of Old Castile

.24 Zamora

.25 Salamanca

.26 Estremadura

Region; formerly Vetonia, part of Roman province of Lusitania

.27 Badajoz

.28 Cáceres

.3 Castile

Region and former kingdom

For Valladolid, see 946.23; *Palencia,* 946.22

.35 Old Castile

.351 Santander

.353 Burgos

For Treviño enclave, see 946.67

.354 Logroño

.355 Soria

.357 Segovia

.359 Ávila

.4 New Castile

Including La Mancha

.41 Madrid

.43 Toledo

.45 Ciudad Real

.47 Cuenca

.49 Guadalajara

946.5 Navarre

Region and former kingdom of northern Spain and southwestern France; Lower Navarre ceded to France, 1589, and incorporated in Basses-Pyrénées in 1790; Spanish Navarre a Basque province

Including comprehensive works on Pyrenees

For Basses-Pyrénées, see 944.79; *comprehensive works on Basque Provinces,* 946.6

.55 Aragon

Region and former kingdom

.551 Teruel

.553 Saragossa

.555 Huesca

.6 Basque Provinces (Vascongadas)

Including comprehensive works on territories inhabited by Basques

For Navarre, see 946.5; *Basses-Pyrénées,* 944.79

.61 Guipúzcoa

.63 Vizcaya (Biscay)

For Orduña, see 946.69

.65 Álava

.67 Treviño

Enclave of Burgos province in Álava

.69 Orduña

Enclave of Vizcaya province between Álava and Burgos provinces

.7 Catalonia

Region

.71 Gerona

.72 Barcelona

.73 Tarragona

.74 Lérida

946.75 Balearic Islands

Archipelago and province of Spain

Including Majorca, Minorca, Iviza, Formentera

.76 Valencia

Region and former kingdom

.761 Castellón de la Plana

.763 Valencia province

.765 Alicante

.77 Murcia

Region and former kingdom

.771 Albacete

.773 Murcia province

.79 Andorra

Autonomous republic, 8th century-

.8 Andalusia

.81 Almería

.82 Granada

.83 Jaén

.84 Córdoba

.85 Málaga

.86 Seville

.87 Huelva

.88 Cádiz

Administers Ceuta in Spanish North Africa

For Ceuta, see 964.2

.89 Gibraltar

British crown colony, 1704–

For engineering and construction of fortress of Gibraltar, see 623.194 689

946.9 Portugal

Including comprehensive works on overseas provinces of Portugal

For a specific overseas province, see the province, e.g., Goa 954.799

946.901–946.904 Period divisions

.901 Early history to 1143

Including comprehensive works on Roman province of Lusitania; barbarian invasions; Moslem conquest, 711–719; Spanish conquest establishing County of Portugal; recognition of independence at Peace of Zamora, 1143

For an ancient tribe settling in Portugal, see the tribe, e.g., Visigoths 936.362; *Estremadura, region of Spain,* 946.26

.902 Rise and fall of empire, 1143–1640

Including expulsion of Moors, consolidation of kingdom under House of Burgundy; recognition of House of Avis, 1385; rule of Spanish Hapsburg dynasty, 1580–1640

.903 Restoration of Portuguese monarchy, 1640–1910

Including House of Braganza and Coburg-Braganza; period of Peninsular War; overthrow of monarchy, 1910

For Peninsular War, see 946.06

.904 20th century, 1910–

Including Republic, 1910–1926; presidency of General Oscar de Fragosa Carmona, 1926–1951; Novo Estado, 1933–

946.91–946.99 Geographic divisions

.91 Minho

Formed 1936 from Braga and Viana do Castelo districts of former province of Entre Douro e Minho

.915 Douro Litoral

Formed 1936 from part of former Entre Douro e Minho province and part of former Beira province

Including Pôrto district

.92 Trás-os-Montes e Alto Douro

Formed 1936 from former Trás-os-Montes province and part of former Beira province

Including Bragança and Vila Real districts

946.93 Beira Alta

Formed 1936 from part of former Beira province

Including major parts of Viseu and Guarda districts

.933 Beira Baixa

Formed 1936 from part of former Beira province

Including Castelo Branco district

.935 Beira Litoral

Formed 1936 from part of former Beira province and part of Estremadura province

Including major portions of Aveiro and Coimbra districts

.94 Estremadura

Surrendered territory 1936 to form Ribatejo and parts of Beira Litoral and Baixo Alentejo provinces

Including most of Lisboa, part of Leiria and Setúbal districts

.945 Ribatejo

Formed 1936 from part of Estremadura province

Including Santarém district

.95 Alto Alentejo

Formed 1936 from part of former Alentejo province

Including Évora and major part of Portalegre districts

.955 Baixo Alentejo

Formed 1936 from part of former Alentejo province and part of Estremadura province

Including Beja district

.96 Algarve

Coextensive with Faro district

.98 Funchal

District, coextensive with Madeira and Pôrto Santo Islands

.99 Azores

Including Ponta Delgada, Angra do Heroísmo, Horta districts

947 Union of Soviet Socialist Republics (Russia)

USSR and certain adjacent areas in Europe

Including comprehensive works on Union of Soviet Socialist Republics, on former Russian Empire

Class works on a specific part of European USSR with the part, e.g., Moldavian Soviet Socialist Republic 949.85; if preferred, class all specific parts of European USSR in 947

For comprehensive works on USSR in Asia, see 957; *Soviet republics of central Asia,* 958.4; *Armenian Soviet Socialist Republic,* 956.64; *Moldavian Soviet Socialist Republic,* 949.85

947.01–947.085 Period divisions

.01 Origins to 862

Including early settlements by Slavs, Khazar state, penetration by Vikings (Varangians)

For a specific ancient tribe settling in Russia, see the tribe, e.g., Slavs 936.7

.02 Kievan period, 862–1240

Including rule of Varangian princes, 862–1125; Mongol-Tatar invasions, 1223 to sack of Kiev, 1240

.03 Tatar suzerainty, 1240–1480

Including reign of Alexander Nevsky establishing House of Rurik; rise of Muscovite state

.04 Growth of nationalism, 1480–1689

Including reigns of Ivan III (the Great), 1462–1505; of Ivan IV (the Terrible), 1533–1584; Livonian War, 1557–1582; Time of Troubles, 1605–1613

.05 Peter I (the Great), 1689–1725

Including Great Northern War, 1700–1721; establishment of Russian Empire

947.06 Growth of Empire, 1725–1796

Including reigns of Elizabeth, 1741–1762; of Catharine II (the Great), 1762–1796

Class partition of Poland [*formerly* †947.06] in 943.802

.07 Early 19th century, 1796–1855

Including reign of Alexander I, 1801–1825; invasion by Napoleon, 1812; reign of Nicholas I, 1825–1855; Crimean War, 1853–1856

For Napoleonic Wars, see 940.27

.08 Later 19th century, 1855–1917

Including reigns of Alexander II, 1855–1881; of Alexander III, 1881–1894; of Nicholas II, 1894–1917; Russo-Turkish War, 1877–1878; period of Russo-Japanese War, 1904–1905; revolution of 1905

For Russo-Japanese War, see 952.031; *revolution of 1917,* 947.084 1

[*.083] Fall of Russian Empire, 1917–1939

Class revolution and period of Lenin in 947.084 1, period of Stalin in 947.084 2

.084 20th century, 1917–

.084 1 Revolution and civil war, 1917–1921, to death of Lenin, 1924 [*all formerly* *947.083]

Including provisional government of Kerensky, 1917; Bolshevik Revolution; foreign intervention, 1918–1920

.084 2 Period of Stalin, 1924–1953

Including period 1924–1939 [*formerly* *947.083], period 1945–1953 [*formerly* *947.085]

.085 Later 20th century, 1953–

Class period 1945–1953 [*formerly* *947.085] in 947.084 2

947.1–947.95 Geographic divisions

SUMMARY

947.1 Finland
.2 White Sea region
.25 Karelia
.3 West central region of RSFSR in Europe
.4 Baltic Sea region
.41 Estonia
.43 Latvia
.5 Lithuania
.6 Western region of USSR in Europe
.65 Belorussia
.7 Black Sea region
.71 Ukraine
.8 Volga River region
.87 Ural Mountains region
.9 Caucasus region
.91 Azerbaijan
.95 Georgia

947.1 Finland [*formerly* *948.95]

Independent republic

Including Aland Islands

.101 Early history to end of Swedish rule, 1809

.102 19th century, 1809–1917

Period of autonomy under Russian rule

.103 Independence, 1917–

Including Russo-Finnish War, 1939–1940; cession of Vyborg (Viipuri) and Pechango (Petsamo) regions to USSR, 1947

.17 Finnish Lapland (Lapi)

Including comprehensive works on Lapland

For a specific part of Lapland, see the part, e.g., Soviet Lapland 947.2

947.2 White Sea region

Former heading: Northern Great Russia

Including Dvina River, Lakes Onega and Ladoga; the following parts of Russian Soviet Federated Socialist Republic: former Northern Oblast, divided 1937, into Archangel and Vologda Oblasts; Murmansk Oblast with Kola Peninsula, Soviet Lapland

Class Novgorod Oblast [*formerly* †947.2] in 947.41

For Komi Autonomous Soviet Socialist Republic, formerly part of Northern Territory, see 947.87; *Arctic islands,* 998.6; *Barents Sea,* 998.1; *Arctic Ocean,* 998

.25 Karelia

Karelo-Finnish Soviet Socialist Republic, formed 1940; reorganized 1956 as Karelian Autonomous Soviet Socialist Republic of RSFSR

Including Olonets

For Karelian Isthmus, see 947.45

.3 West central region of Russian Soviet Federated Socialist Republic in Europe

Former heading: Southern Great Russia

Including comprehensive works on RSFSR, on RSFSR in Europe, on Great Russia

Class works on a specific part of European RSFSR, of Great Russia, with the part, e.g., Archangel Oblast 947.2, Kaliningrad Oblast 943.114; if preferred, class all specific parts of European RSFSR in subdivisions of 947

For RSFSR in Asia, see 957

.31 Central industrial region

Including Moscow, Vladimir, Ivanovo, Yaroslavl, Kostroma, Ryazan, Tula Oblasts

.35 Central black-earth region

Including Orel, Kursk, Voronezh, Tambov Oblasts

.4 Baltic Sea region

Including Baltic States, former Baltic provinces

.41 Estonia

Estonian Soviet Socialist Republic, formed 1940; independent state, 1918–1940

.43 Latvia

Latvian Soviet Socialist Republic, formed 1940; independent state, 1918–1940

Including Courland

947.45 Northwest region of Russian Soviet Federated Socialist Republic in Europe

Including ancient district of Ingermanland (Ingria); Novgorod [*formerly* †947.2], Leningrad, Pskov Oblasts; Karelian Isthmus

For Kaliningrad Oblast, see 943.114; *Karelia,* 947.25

.5 Lithuania

Former heading: Russian Poland

Lithuanian Soviet Socialist Republic, formed 1940; independent state, 1918–1940

Including early history; union with Poland, 1386–1795

Class works on a specific part of Lithuania with the part, e.g., Memel Territory 943.112; if preferred, class all specific parts of Lithuania in 947.5

For comprehensive works on Poland, see 943.8

.6 Western region of USSR in Europe

Including Bryansk, Kaluga, Smolensk, Kalinin, Velikiye Luki Oblasts of RSFSR

For Kaliningrad Oblast, see 943.114

.65 Belorussia (White Russia)

Belorussian Soviet Socialist Republic, formed 1922

Including Pripet Marshes

.7 Black Sea region

Including Sea of Azov

Class Bessarabia [*formerly* †947.7] in 949.85

For Moldavian Soviet Socialist Republic, see 949.85

.71 Ukraine (Little Russia)

Ukrainian Soviet Socialist Republic, formed 1922; independent state, 1917–1922; Moldavian Autonomous Soviet Socialist Republic separated, 1940; Transcarpathian Oblast of RSFSR (Ruthenia, Carpatho-Ukraine) added, 1945

Including Donets Basin (Donbas) and River, Dniester and Dnieper Rivers

Class works on a specific part of Ukraine with the part, e.g., East Galicia 943.745; if preferred, class all specific parts of Ukraine in 947.71

.76 Crimea

Peninsula and Oblast of RSFSR

947.77 Lower Don River region

Including Rostov Oblast of RSFSR

.8 Volga River region

Former heading: East Russia

.81 Upper Volga region

Including Gorki and Kirov Oblasts, Mari and Udmurt Autonomous Soviet Socialist Republics, of RSFSR

.83 Middle Volga region

Including the following parts of RSFSR: Ulyanovsk, Penza, Kuibyshev Oblasts; Chuvash, Mordvinian, Tatar Autonomous Soviet Socialist Republics

.85 Lower Volga region

Including Saratov, Stalingrad, Astrakhan Oblasts of RSFSR

.87 Ural Mountains region

Including Ural Mountains in Europe; the following parts of RSFSR: Sverdlovsk, Molotov, Chelyabinsk, Chkalov Oblasts; Bashkir and Komi Autonomous Soviet Socialist Republics

.9 Caucasus region

Including Caspian Sea; the following parts of RSFSR: Grozny Oblast; Krasnodar and Stavropol territories; Kabardian, North Ossetian, Dagestan Autonomous Soviet Socialist Republics

.91 Azerbaijan

Azerbaijan Soviet Socialist Republic, formed 1936, from part of former Transcaucasian Soviet Federated Socialist Republic

Including Nakhichevan Autonomous Soviet Socialist Republic, separated from Azerbaijan proper by Armenian Soviet Socialist Republic

For Iranian Azerbaijan, see 955.3–955.4

[*.92] Armenia (Armenian Soviet Socialist Republic)

Class in 956.64

.95 Georgia

Georgian Soviet Socialist Republic, formed 1936, from part of former Transcaucasian Soviet Federated Socialist Republic

948 Scandinavia

Including North Sea; comprehensive works on northern Europe

For a specific part of northern Europe, see the part, e.g., Finland 947.1; *Baltic Sea,* 947.4

948.01–948.08 Period divisions

.01 Early history to 800

.02 Period of migration and conquest, 800–1387

For Norse settlements in a specific country, see the country, e.g., in Russia 947.02

.03 Union of Kalmar, 1397–1523

Including personal union under Margaret from 1387

For period of union in Norway, see 948.102; *in Sweden,* 948.501; *in Denmark,* 948.902

.04 Period of Reformation, 1523–1648

Including rise of Sweden; period of Thirty Years' War, 1618–1648

For Thirty Years' War, see 940.24

.05 Period of conflict, 1648–1792

Including period of Great Northern War, 1700–1720

For Great Northern War, see 947.05

.06 Napoleonic era, 1792–1814

Including cession of Norway to Sweden by Denmark (Treaty of Kiel, 1814)

For Napoleonic Wars, see 940.27

.07 19th century, 1814–1905

Including granting of independence to Norway, 1905 (Karlstad Agreement)

.08 20th century, 1905–

Including occupation of Denmark and Norway by Germans during World War II

948.1 Norway

Class parts of Norway [*formerly* *948.1] in 948.2–948.45

For an overseas possession of Norway, see the subject, e.g., Spitsbergen 998.1

948.101–948.104 Period divisions

.101 Early history to 1387

Including unification under early kings

.102 Union with Denmark, 1387–1814

Including period of Kalmar Union, 1397–1523

For Union of Kalmar, see 948.03

.103 Union with Sweden, 1814–1905

.104 20th century, 1905–

Including reigns of Haakon VII, 1905–1957; of Olaf V, 1957–

948.2–948.45 Geographic divisions

.2 Eastern Norway [*formerly* *948.1]

Including Aust-Agder, Telemark, Vest-Agder, Akershus, Buskerud, Hedmark, Opland, Oslo, Ostfold, Vestfold counties; Hamar [*formerly* †948.3]

.3 Western Norway [*formerly* *948.1]

Including Bergen, Hordaland, More og Romsdal, Rogaland, Sogn og Fjordane counties

Class Hamar [*formerly* †948.3] in 948.2

.4 Central Norway (Trondelag) [*formerly* *948.1]

Including Nord-Trondelag, Sor-Trondelag counties

.45 Northern Norway [*formerly* *948.1]

Including Nordland, Troms, Finnmark counties; Lofoten and Vesteralen Islands; Norwegian Lapland

For comprehensive works on Lapland, see 947.17

948.5 Sweden

Class parts of Sweden [*formerly* *948.5] in 948.6–948.8

948.501–948.505 Period divisions

.501 Early history to 1523

Including period of Kalmar Union, 1397–1523

For Union of Kalmar, see 948.03

.502 Vasa dynasty, 1523–1654

Including reigns of Gustavus I (Gustavus Vasa), 1523–1560; of Gustavus II (Gustavus Adolphus), 1611–1632; of Christina, 1632–1654

For Livonian War, see 947.04

.503 Decline of power, 1654–1818

Including reign of Charles XII, 1697–1718; period of Great Northern War; Holstein-Gottorp dynasty, 1571–1818

For Great Northern War, see 947.05

.504 19th century, 1818–1905

Including reign of Charles XIV John (Bernadotte line), 1818–1844

.505 20th century, 1905–

Including reigns of Gustavus V (Gustaf), 1907–1950; of Gustavus VI (Gustaf Adolf), 1950–

948.6–948.8 Geographic divisions

.6 Southern Sweden (Gotaland) [*formerly* *948.5]

Including Alvsborg, Blekinge, Goteborg och Bohus, Gotland, Halland, Jonkoping, Kalmar, Kristianstad, Kronoberg, Malmohus, Ostergotland, Skaraborg counties; Oland and Gotland Islands; Gota Canal; Gothenburg (Goteborg)

.7 Central Sweden (Svealand) [*formerly* *948.5]

Including Gavleborg, Kopparberg, Orebro, Sodermanland, Stockholm, Uppsala, Varmland, Vastmanland counties; Stockholm city

.8 Northern Sweden (Norrland) [*formerly* *948.5]

Including Jamtland, Vasternorrland, Vasterbotten, Norrbotten counties; Swedish Lapland

For comprehensive works on Lapland, see 947.17

948.9 Denmark

Including Jutland Peninsula; Baltic islands of Zealand, Fyn, Falster, Lolland, Langeland, Bornholm

For Faeroe Islands, see 949.15; *Greenland,* 998.2; *Baltic Sea,* 947.4; *North Sea,* 948

948.901–948.905 Period divisions

.901 Early history to 1387

Including Viking rulers; reign of Canute the Great, 995–1035; Valdemar (Waldemar) kings

For Canute the Great as king of England, see 942.01

.902 Union with Norway and Sweden, 1387–1523

Including period of Kalmar Union, 1397–1523; union of Schleswig-Holstein duchies and Denmark

For Union of Kalmar, see 948.03; *Schleswig-Holstein,* 943.51

.903 Union with Norway, 1523–1814

Including reign of Christian III, 1535–1559

For Great Northern War, see 947.05

.904 19th century, 1814–1906

Including reign of Christian IX, 1863–1906; loss of duchies of Schleswig-Holstein, 1864

For Schleswig-Holstein question, Schleswig-Holstein Wars, 1864–1866, see 943.07

.905 20th century, 1906–

Including reign of Christian X, 1912–1947; return of North Slesvig (Schleswig) to Denmark, 1920; reign of Frederick IX, 1947–

.91 Copenhagen

[*.95] Finland

Class in 947.1

949 Other areas of Europe

SUMMARY

949.1	Iceland
.15	Faeroe Islands
.2	Netherlands (Holland)
.3	Belgium
.35	Luxembourg
.4	Switzerland
.5	Greece
.6	Balkan States
.61	Turkey in Europe
.65	Albania
.7	Yugoslavia
.77	Bulgaria
.8	Rumania
.85	Soviet Moldavia
.9	Islands of the Aegean Sea
.98	Crete

.1 Iceland

.101 Early history to 1262

Including submission to Norway

.102 Medieval period, 1262–1550

Including transfer to Denmark, 1380

.103 Early modern period, 1550–1848

.104 Modern period, 1848–

Including limited autonomy, 1874–1918; independence under Treaty of Union with Denmark, 1918–1943; republic, 1944–

.15 Faeroe Islands

Colonized by Norsemen; transferred to Denmark, 1380; autonomous, 1948–

.2 Netherlands (Holland)

Constitutional monarchy

Including comprehensive works on Union of the Netherlands

For an overseas territory of Union of the Netherlands, see the region, e.g., Netherlands Antilles 972.986

.201 Early history to 1477

Including rule of Franks; incorporation into Holy Roman Empire; Burgundian rule

949.202 Hapsburg rule, 1477–1568

Including Austrian, Spanish rule

.203 Struggle for independence, 1568–1648

Including Union of Utrecht, 1579, uniting northern provinces under William I of Orange (the Silent); recognition of independence, 1648, with addition of North Brabant and part of Limburg

.204 Dutch Republic, 1648–1795

Including reign of William III, 1672–1702; Anglo-Dutch Wars, 1652–1653, 1665–1667; Great War against England, France, and allies, 1672–1678; Coalition War, 1690–1697 (England and Netherlands against France); war with England, 1780

For William III as king of England, see 942.068; *War of the Spanish Succession, War of the Austrian Succession,* 940.25

.205 Napoleonic era, 1795–1830

Including Batavian Republic, 1795–1806; Kingdom of Holland under Louis Napoleon, 1806–1810; annexation by France, 1810–1814; union of former United Provinces (Netherlands), former Austrian Netherlands (Belgium) and Luxembourg under William I, 1815–1830

For Napoleonic Wars, see 940.27; *Belgium,* 949.3; *Luxembourg,* 949.35

.206 Kingdom of the Netherlands, 1830–

Including reign of William III, 1849–1890

.207 20th century, 1901–

Including reigns of Wilhelmina, 1890–1948; of Juliana, 1948–

For Indonesian War, see 991.03

.3 Belgium

Constitutional monarchy, 1830–

Including comprehensive works on Meuse River, on the Ardennes

.301 Early history to 1477

Including Roman and Frankish rule; incorporation into Holy Roman Empire; development of national state under Philip of Burgundy, 1396–1467

949.302 Foreign rule, 1477–1830

Including rule by Austria, Spain, France; Dutch rule as part of Kingdom of the Netherlands, 1815–1830

.303 Kingdom of Belgium, 1830–

Including reigns of Leopold I, 1831–1865; of Leopold II, 1865–1908

.304 20th century, 1909–

Including reigns of Albert I, 1909–1934; of Leopold III, 1934–1951; of Baudouin, 1951–

.35 Luxembourg

Grand duchy

For Luxembourg province of Belgium, see 949.3

.4 Switzerland

Federal republic

949.401–949.407 Period divisions

.401 Early history to 1291

Including rule of Frankish kings of Swabia and Burgundy; incorporation into Holy Roman Empire from 1032; formation of League of the Three Forest Cantons, 1291

.402 Struggle for independence, 1291–1499

Including wars with Austria, war with Burgundy, 1474–1477; growth of Swiss Confederation; partial recognition of independence by Treaty of Basel, 1499

.403 Period of the Reformation, 1499–1648

Including independence, 1648

.404 Period of internal strife, 1648–1789

Including Peasant War, 1653; Villmergen Wars, 1656 and 1712

.405 Napoleonic period, 1789–1815

Including Helvetic Republic, 1789–1803; restoration of Swiss Confederation, 1803, with official name of Switzerland

.406 19th century, 1815–1900

.407 20th century, 1900–

949.43–949.47 Geographic divisions

949.43 Jura region

Including Jura Mountains; cantons of Solothurn, Vaud, Neuchâtel, Basel-Land, Basel-Stadt

.45 Mittelland

Including Swiss Plateau; cantons of Geneva, Fribourg, Bern, Lucerne, Aargau, Zurich, Schaffhausen, Thurgau

.47 Alps

Including cantons of Valais, Obwalden, Nidwalden, Schwyz, Zug, Saint Gall, Appenzell Ausser Rhoden, Appenzell Inner Rhoden, Glarus, Uri, Grisons, Ticino

.5 Greece

Including Aegean Sea, Ionian Sea; comprehensive works on Byzantine Empire

For ancient Greece, see 938; *Aegean Islands,* 949.9; *Crete,* 949.98

949.501–949.507 Period divisions

.501 Eastern Roman Empire (Byzantine) to 717

Including reign of Constantine I, 323–337; permanent separation of East and West, 395; reign of Justinian, 527–565; Heraclian dynasty, 610–695; wars against Avars and Persians

For Western Roman Empire, see 937.09

.502 Period of Byzantine prosperity, 717–1057

Including reign of Leo III, 717–741; Isaurian dynasty; Macedonian dynasty, 867–1081; final break with Rome, 1054

.503 Dissolution of Byzantine Empire, 1057–1204

Including Comnenus dynasty, 1081–1185

.504 Latin and Greek states, 1204–1453

Including Latin dynasty, 1204–1261; restoration of Byzantine Empire under Greek rule of Michael Paleologus, 1259–1282; siege of Constantinople by Turks, 1453

949.505 Turkish domination, 1453–1821

For Ottoman Empire, see 949.6

.506 Independence, 1821–

.506 1 Monarchy, 1821–1924

Including reigns of Otto I, 1832–1862; of George I, 1863–1913; Greco-Turkish War, 1896–1897; incorporation of Crete, 1913; period of Balkan Wars, 1912–1913; addition of parts of Thrace, Macedonia, Epirus; abdication of King Constantine, 1917

For Balkan Wars, see 949.6

.507 20th century, 1924–

Including Hellenic Republic, 1924–1935; restoration of George II, 1935–1947; reign of Paul, 1947– ; cession of Dodecanese by Italy, 1947

949.51–949.57 Geographic divisions

.51 Central Greece

Including nome and island of Euobea; nomes of Aetolia, Acarnania, Attica, Boeotia, Eurytania, Phocis, Phthietis

For Cyclades, Northern Sporades, see 949.9; *Kythera island,* 949.52

.512 Athens

.52 Peloponnesus

Including nomes of Achaea, Arcadia, Argolis, Corinthia, Elis, Laconia, Messenia; Kythera island

.53 Epirus

Including nomes of Arta, Ioannina, Preveza, Thesprotia; comprehensive works on Epirus

For Albanian Epirus, see 949.65

949.54 Thessaly

Including nomes of Karditsa, Larissa, Magnesia, Trikkala

For Northern Sporades, see 949.9

.55 Ionian Islands

Including nomes and islands of Cephalonia, Corfu, Leukas, Zante; island of Ithaca

.56 Macedonia

Including Mount Athos; nomes of Chalcidice, Drama, Hematheia, Kastoria, Kavalla, Kilkis, Kozane, Pella, Pieria, Phlorina, Salonika, Serrai; comprehensive works on Macedonia

For Yugoslav Macedonia, see 949.76; *Bulgarian Macedonia,* 949.77; *Thasos island,* 949.9

.57 Thrace

Including nomes of Hevros, Rhodope, Xanthe; comprehensive works on Thrace

For Bulgarian Thrace, see 949.77; *Turkish Thrace (Turkey in Europe),* 949.61; *Samothrace island,* 949.9

.6 Balkan States

Including Balkan Peninsula, Danube River; Balkan Wars, 1912–1913; comprehensive works on Ottoman Empire, 1288–1918 [*formerly* *956.1]

For Greece, see 949.5; *a specific part of Ottoman Empire, the part, e.g., Anatolia* 956.1

.61 Turkey in Europe

Including Turkish Thrace, Istanbul, Bosporus, Sea of Marmara, Dardanelles

If preferred, class Turkey in Europe in 956.1

For Turkey in Asia, comprehensive works on Turkey, see 956.1; *comprehensive works on Thrace,* 949.57; *Imbros and Tenedos islands,* 949.9

.65 Albania

Republic, 1944–

Including Byzantine, Serbian, Ottoman rule; independence, 1912–1939; Italian protectorate, 1939–1944

949.7 Yugoslavia

Former kingdom; federal republic, 1945–

Comprehensive works

Class works on a specific part of Yugoslavia with the part, e.g., Slovenia 943.67; if preferred, class all specific parts of Yugoslavia in 949.7

949.701–949.702 Period divisions

.701 Early history to 1918

Including Turkish rule, 1459–1804; emergence of Serbia as principal power; period of Balkan Wars, 1912–1913

For Balkan Wars, see 949.6

.702 20th century, 1918–

Including establishment of Kingdom of Serbs, Croats, and Slovenes, 1918; change of name to Yugoslavia, 1929; addition of most of Istrian Peninsula, 1947

For Istria, see 943.682

949.71–949.76 Geographic divisions

For a specific part of Yugoslavia not provided for here, see the part, e.g., Croatia 943.94

.71 Serbia

Independent kingdom including Bosnia, Macedonia, Epirus, Albania became part of Ottoman Empire, 1459; independent, 1878–1918; joined with Croatia, Slovenia, Montenegro to form Kingdom of Serbs, Croats, and Slovenes, 1918; constituent republic of Yugoslavia, 1946–

Including autonomous territory of Vojvodina, autonomous oblast of Kosovo-Metohija

For Yugoslav Banat (area of Vojvodina), see 943.915 3; *Epirus,* 949.53; *Albania,* 949.65; *Bosnia,* 943.955; *comprehensive works on Macedonia,* 949.56

.75 Montenegro

Joined with Serbia, Croatia, Slovenia to form Kingdom of Serbs, Croats, and Slovenes, 1918; constituent republic of Yugoslavia, 1946–

949.76 Macedonian People's Republic (Vardar Macedonia)

Constituent republic of Yugoslavia, 1946–

For comprehensive works on Macedonia, see 949.56

.77 Bulgaria

Republic, 1946–

Including northern part of Thrace, part of Macedonia, South Dobruja

For comprehensive works on Thrace, see 949.57; *on Macedonia,* 949.56; *North Dobruja,* 949.83

.770 1 Early history to 1878

Including first Bulgarian kingdom, 643–1018; Byzantine rule, 1018–1187; second Bulgarian kingdom, 1187–1395; Ottoman rule, 1395–1878

.770 2 Autonomy and independence, 1878–1946

Including annexation of South Bulgaria (Rumelia), 1885; full independence under Ferdinand of Saxe-Coburg-Gotha, 1908–1918; period of Balkan Wars, 1912–1913

For Balkan Wars, see 949.6

.770 3 Later 20th century, 1946–

Including Bulgarian People's Republic, 1946–

.8 Rumania

Formed, 1861, by union of Moldavia and Walachia; republic, 1947–

Comprehensive works

Class works on a specific part of Rumania with the part, e.g., Transylvania 943.92; if preferred, class all specific parts of Rumania in 949.8

949.801–949.803 Period divisions

.801 Foreign domination to 1861

.802 Monarchy, 1861–1947

Including united principalities of Moldavia and Walachia, 1861–1881; Kingdom of Greater Rumania under Carol I, 1881–1914; period of Balkan Wars, 1912–1913; reigns of Carol II, 1930–1940; of Michael I

For Balkan Wars, see 949.6

.803 Later 20th century, 1947–

Including Rumanian People's Republic, 1947–

949.81–949.83 Geographic divisions

For a specific part of Rumania not provided for here, see the part, e.g., Rumanian Banat 943.915 1

949.81 Moldavia

Province of Rumania

For Bessarabia (Russian Moldavia), see 949.85

.82 Walachia

Province of Rumania

.83 Dobruja

Province of Rumania

.85 Soviet Moldavia

Moldavian Soviet Socialist Republic, formed 1940

Including comprehensive works on Bessarabia [*formerly* †947.7]

For Ukrainian parts of Bessarabia, see 947.71; *Rumanian Moldavia,* 949.81

.9 Islands of the Aegean Sea

Including Thasos, Samothrace, Lemnos, Lesbos, Chios, Samos islands; Cyclades; Northern Sporades; Turkish islands of Imbros (Imroz) and Tenedos (Bozcaada)

For Euboea, see 949.51

.96 Dodecanese (Southern Sporades)

Including Karpathos [*formerly* †949.97], Rhodes

Under Turkish rule, 1522–1912; occupied by Italians, 1911–1912; awarded to Italy, 1920; transferred to Greece, 1947

[†.97] Karpathos

Class in 949.96

.98 Crete

Autonomous state, 1898–1908; union with Greece, 1908–

950 Asia

Including comprehensive works on the Orient, on the Far East, on Eurasia

For Europe, see 940; *Far East islands,* 991–992; *comprehensive works on ancient Orient,* 931

950.1–950.42 Period divisions

.1 Early history to 1162

.2 Mongol and Tatar Empires, 1162–1480

Including reigns of Genghis Khan, 1162–1227; of Kublai Khan, 1216–1294; of Timur (Tamerlane), ca. 1336–1405

.3 European exploration and conquest, 1480–1905

Including growth of nationalism

.4 20th century, 1905–

.41 Early 20th century, 1905–1945

.42 Later 20th century, 1945–

951 China

Class history of China to 420 A.D. [*formerly* *951] in 931

951.01–951.05 Period divisions

.01 Early history, 420–960

Including (but only in those libraries preferring to keep ancient history of China with later history) history to 420 A.D.

.02 Sung to Ming dynasties, 960–1644

Including conquests of Genghis Khan

.025 Mongols, 1253–1368

Including conquests by Kublai Khan, 1253–1294

.026 Ming dynasty, 1368–1644

.03 Ch'ing (Manchu) dynasty, 1644–1912

Including annexation of Formosa, 1683; conquest of Tibet, 1706–1720; Opium War, 1840–1842; Boxer Rebellion, 1900–1901

For Sino-Japanese War, 1894–1895, see 952.031

951.04 Early 20th century, 1912–1949

Class later 20th century [*formerly* †951.04] in 951.05

.041 Early Republic, 1912–1927

.042 Nationalist government, 1927–1949

Including Japanese aggression; occupation of Manchuria (Manchukuo), 1931–1945; independence of Outer Mongolia, 1945; removal of government to Formosa, 1949

For Japanese in Manchuria, see 951.8; *Nationalist government in Formosa,* 951.249

.05 Later 20th century, 1949– [*formerly* †951.04]

Including People's Republic, 1949– ; comprehensive works on China under People's Republic and Nationalist government

For Nationalist government in Formosa, see 951.249

951.1–951.885 Geographic divisions

Administrative units (in curves) under People's Republic correspond roughly to regional divisions

SUMMARY

951.1	Eastern China
.15	Northern China
.2	South central China
.3	Southwestern China
.4	Northwestern China
.5	Tibet
.6	Sinkiang
.7	Mongolia
.8	Manchuria

.1 **Eastern China**

Area (Hwatung) includes provinces: North and South Anhwei, Chekiang, Fukien, North and South Kiangsu, Shantung

Including Hwang Ho (Yellow River)

For Anhwei, see 951.225; *Chekiang,* 951.242; *Fukien,* 951.245

.13 Kiangsu

Including Shanghai, Nanking

951.14 Shantung

Including Weihaiwei, Kiaochow, Tsingtao, Tsinan

.15 Northern China

Area (Hwapei) includes provinces: Hopeh, Shansi, Pingyuan, Suiyuan, Chahar

Including Hopeh; Tientsin, Peking

For Suiyuan, see 951.76; *Chahar,* 951.77

.17 Shansi

Including Tatung, which became part of Chahar, 1949

For Chahar, see 951.77

.18 Honan

Part of Chungnan area of People's Republic

For comprehensive works on Chungnan area, see 951.2

.185 Pingyuan

Part of Honan until 1949

[†.19] Central China

Class in 951.2

.2 South central China

Area (Chungnan) includes provinces: Honan, Hunan, Hupeh, Kiangsi, Kwangsi, Kwangtung (including Hainan)

Including central China [*formerly* †951.19], Yangtze River

For Honan, see 951.18

.21 Hupeh

Including Hankow

.215 Hunan

Including Changsha

.22 Kiangsi

Including Nanchang

.225 Anhwei

Part of Hwatung area of People's Republic

Including Anking

For comprehensive works on Hwatung area, see 951.1

951.24 East China Sea provinces

.242 Chekiang

Part of Hwatung area of People's Republic

Including Hangchow

For comprehensive works on Hwatung area, see 951.1

.245 Fukien

Part of Hwatung area of People's Republic

For comprehensive works on Hwatung area, see 951.1

.249 Taiwan (Formosa) [*formerly also* †952.9]

Ceded to Japan, 1895; returned to China, 1945; seat of Nationalist government, 1949–

Including Quemoy, Pescadores

.25 Hong Kong

British crown colony

Including Kowloon

.26 Macao

Portuguese colony

.27 Kwangtung

Including South China Sea region, Hainan, South Sea islands and reefs; Swatow, Canton

.28 Kwangsi

.3 Southwestern China

Area (Sinan) includes provinces: Kweichow, Yunnan, Sikang, Szechwan

.34 Kweichow

Including Kweiyang

.35 Yunnan

Including Kunming

.37 Sikang

.372 Eastern Sikang

.374 Western Sikang

Including Tibetan Autonomous District

For Tibet, see 951.5

.38 Szechwan

Including Chungking, Chengtu

951.4 Northwestern China

Area (Sipei) includes provinces: Shensi, Kansu, Tsinghai, Ningsia, Sinkiang

Including Great Wall of China

For Sinkiang, see 951.6; *Ningsia,* 951.75

.43 Shensi

Including Sian

.45 Kansu

Including Lanchow

.47 Tsinghai

.5 Tibet

Autonomous region of central Asia; became a national autonomous province of China, 1951

Including Lhasa

For Tibetan Autonomous District, see 951.374

.6 Sinkiang

Part of Sipei area of People's Republic

Including Kunlun Mountains, Tien Shan, Taklamakan Desert

For comprehensive works on Sipei area, see 951.4

.7 Mongolia

Including Altai Mountains

.71 Tuva

Incorporated in Russian Soviet Federated Socialist Republic, 1944, as Tuva Autonomous Oblast

.73 Outer Mongolia

Including Mongolian People's Republic, Gobi Desert

.74 Inner Mongolia

.75 Ningsia

Part of Sipei area of People's Republic

For comprehensive works on Sipei area, see 951.4

.76 Suiyuan

Part of Hwapei area of People's Republic

For comprehensive works on Hwapei area, see 951.15

951.77 Chahar

Part of Hwapei area of People's Republic

For Tatung, see 951.17; *comprehensive works on Hwapei area,* 951.15

.775 Inner Mongolian Autonomous Region

Part of Tungpei area of People's Republic

Including Khingan [*formerly* †951.84]

For comprehensive works on Tungpei area, see 951.8

.78 Jehol

Part of Tungpei area of People's Republic

For comprehensive works on Tungpei area, see 951.8

.8 Manchuria

Area (Tungpei) includes provinces: Liaotung, Liaosi, Heilungkiang, Kirin, Sungkiang, Jehol, Inner Mongolian Autonomous Region

For Jehol, see 951.78; *Inner Mongolian Autonomous Region,* 951.775

.82 Liaoning

Including Antung province, Mukden

.822 Liaotung

.822 3 Kwantung (Port Arthur)

Including Dairen, Changsha Islands

.823 Liaosi

.84 Heilungkiang

Class Khingan [*formerly* †951.84] in 951.775

.88 Kirin

Including Changchun, Yungki

.885 Sungkiang

Including Harbin

.9 Korea (Choson)

Including Korean peninsula and offshore islands

951.901–951.904 3 Period divisions

.901 Early history to 1392

.902 Yi dynasty, 1392–1910

.903 Japanese period, 1910–1945

951.904 Later 20th century, 1945–

Including restoration of independence, 1945; foreign occupation, 1945–1948; separation into Republic of Korea and Democratic People's Republic of Korea, 1948

.904 2 Korean War, 1950–1953

.904 3 Postwar history, 1953–

Comprehensive works on postwar history of Republic of Korea and Democratic People's Republic of Korea

951.93–951.95 Geographic divisions

.93 Northern Korea

Including Democratic People's Republic of Korea, 1948–

.95 Southern Korea

Including Republic of Korea, 1948– ; Seoul

952 Japan

952.01–952.04 Period divisions

.01 Early history to 1186

.02 Feudal period, 1186–1868

Including reign of the shoguns; Mongol invasions, 1274 and 1281; European contacts; invasions of Korea, 1592 and 1596

.025 Tokugawa (Edo) period, 1600–1868

Including visits of Commodore Perry, 1853–1854

.03 Re-establishment of imperial power, 1868–1945

.031 Meiji period, 1868–1912

Including adoption of constitutional form of government, 1889; Sino-Japanese War, 1894–1895; acquisition of Pescadores and Formosa, 1895; Anglo-Japanese Alliance, 1902; Russo-Japanese War, 1904–1905

For Formosa and Pescadores, see 951.249

.032 Taishō period, 1912–1926

Including reign of Emperor Yoshihito; mandate of German-owned islands in Pacific; military expeditions into Siberia, 1918–1922

952.033 Early Shōwa period, 1926–1945

Including reign of Emperor Hirohito, 1926– ; revival of militarism; renewal of expansion on continent; intervention in Shantung, 1927–1929; occupation of Manchuria, 1931–1945

Class Allied occupation after World War II [*formerly* †*952.033] in 952.04

.04 Later Shōwa period, 1945–

Including period of foreign occupation [*formerly* †*952.033] and reconstruction, 1945–1952

952.1–952.4 Geographic divisions

.1 Honshu

.11 Northern Honshu

Including Aomori, Iwate, Miyagi, Akita, Yamagata, Fukushima

.12 Central Honshu

.13 East central Honshu

Including Ibaraki, Tochigi, Gumma, Saitama, Chiba, Kanagawa; Yokohama

.135 Tokyo prefecture and city

.14 West central Honshu

.15 Northwest central Honshu

Including Niigata, Toyama, Ishikawa, Fukui

.16 Southwest central Honshu

Including Yamanashi, Nagano, Gifu, Shizuoka, Aichi; Nagoya

.166 Fujiyama

.17 Southwestern Honshu

.18 Southern Honshu

Including Mie, Shiga, Nara, Wakayama, Osaka

.19 Western Honshu

Including Kyoto, Hyogo, Tottori, Shimane, Okayama, Hiroshima, Yamaguchi; Kobe

.2 Kyushu

Including Fukuoka, Saga, Nagasaki, Kumamoto, Oita, Miyazaki, Kagoshima

952.3 Shikoku

Including Tokushima, Kagawa, Ehime, Kochi

.4 Hokkaido

Former Yezo, renamed 1868

Including Sapporo; offshore islands

For Kurile Islands, see 952.7

.6 Southern Sakhalin

Under joint Russo-Japanese control to 1875; incorporated in Siberia, 1875–1905; occupied by Japan (renamed Karafuto), 1905–1945; occupied by Soviet troops, 1945; incorporated in Soviet Union, 1947

For comprehensive works on Sakhalin, see 957.7

.7 Kurile Islands

Incorporated in Japan and renamed Chishima, 1875–1945; occupied by Soviet troops, 1945; incorporated in Soviet Union, 1947

.8 Southern islands

.81 Ryukyu Islands (Luchu)

Invaded by Chinese in 7th century, by Japanese in 17th century; incorporated in Japan, 1879; placed under United States military government, 1945; under native civil government, 1951

Including Okinawa

.85 Bonin Islands

Discovered by Spanish, 1543; claimed by Japan, 1875; annext, 1880; after Japanese surrender occupied by United States forces, 1945

[†.9] Taiwan (Formosa)

Class in 951.249

953 Arabian Peninsula

Including Rub'al Khali, Dahana; comprehensive works on Arab states

For ancient history of Arabia, see 939.47; *League of Arab States,* 341.185 3

.1 Sinai Peninsula

Frontier province of Egypt

For Egypt, see 962; *ancient history of Sinai,* 939.48

953.2 **Hejaz**

Viceroyalty of Saudi Arabia, 1926–

Under Egyptian and Turkish domination until 1916; war with Ibn Saud of Nejd, 1924–1925, resulted in union of Hejaz and Nejd as Saudi Arabia with Hejaz administered as separate kingdom

Including Mecca

For comprehensive works on Saudi Arabia, see 953.8

.3 **Yemen and Aden**

.32 Yemen

Independent kingdom, ca. 900– ; affiliated with United Arab Republic to form United Arab States, 1958–

Including occupation by Turks, 1538–1630; Egyptian control, 1819–1840; occupation by Turks, 1849–1918

For comprehensive works on United Arab States, see 962

.34 Aden Colony

British crown colony, 1937–

.35 Aden Protectorate

Group of independent Arab tribal districts in protective treaty relations with Great Britain; under government of India until 1927; administered by Aden Colony, 1927–

.4 Hadhramaut and Mahri

.5 **Oman**

.6 **Hasa (Al Ahsa)**

Ancient Bahrien; occupied by Turkish forces, 1871; attacht to Nejd, 1913–1914

For Nejd, see 953.8

.8 **Saudi Arabia**

Independent kingdom, 1932–

Former Nejd and dependencies conquered by Ibn Saud, 1902–1926; joined with Hejaz to form Saudi Arabia, 1932

For Hejaz, see 953.2

.83 **Qatar**

Independent sheikdom and British protectorate; under suzerainty of Bahrein prior to 1868

953.85 **Bahrein**

Archipelago and independent sheikdom; British protectorate since 1820

.87 **Kuwait**

Independent state; under British protection since 1899

.9 **Syrian Desert**

Comprehensive works

954 **India**

Including autonomous tribal areas

Class ancient history of India [*formerly* *954] in 934

954.01–954.04 Period divisions

.01 Early history to Moslem conquests, ca. 650

To be used only by libraries wishing to keep ancient history of India with later history

.02 Moslem period, ca. 650–1774

.03 British rule, 1774–1947 [*formerly* *954.08]

Including rule of East India Company to 1858; Afghan Wars, 1839–1878; struggle for political freedom, 1919–1947; independence and partition into India and Pakistan, 1947

For Pakistan, see 954.7

.04 Republic of India, 1947– [*formerly* *954.09]

Member of Commonwealth of Nations, 1950–

[*.08] British rule, 1774–1947

Class in 954.03

[*.09] Republic of India, 1947–

Class in 954.04

954.1–954.9 Geographic divisions

SUMMARY

954.1	Northeastern region
.19	Bhutan
.2	Northern region
.26	Nepal
.27	Sikkim
.3	Central region
.4	West central region
.5	Punjab
.6	Jammu and Kashmir
.7	Pakistan
.79	Bombay
.799	Goa
.8	Southern India
.89	Ceylon
.9	Hyderabad

954.1 Northeastern region

Including Ganges River

.12 Bihar

Administered by East India Company as part of Bengal presidency, 1764–1912; included in province of Bihar and Orissa, 1912–1937; autonomous province, 1937; constituent state of Republic of India, 1950–

.13 Orissa

Conquered by British, 1803; subdivision of Bengal until 1912; included in province of Bihar and Orissa, 1912; became separate autonomous province, 1936; constituent state of Republic of India, 1950–

.14 Bengal

.142 West Bengal

Constituent state of Republic of India, 1950–

Including Calcutta

.145 East Bengal

Province of Pakistan, 1947–

Including Brahmaputra River

Class comprehensive works on Pakistan in 954.7; if preferred, use 954.7 also for specific parts of Pakistan

954.15 Tripura

Former princely state in Bengal States; incorporated into India as chief commissioner's state, 1949

.16 Assam

Constituent state of Republic of India, 1950–

.17 Manipur

Former Assam state incorporated into India as chief commissioner's state, 1949

.19 Bhutan

Indian protectorate, 1910–

.2 Northern region

Including Himalayas

.23 North-West Frontier Province

Province of Pakistan, 1947–

Class comprehensive works on Pakistan in 954.7; if preferred, use 954.7 also for specific parts of Pakistan

.25 Uttar Pradesh

Former United Provinces of Agra and Oudh; constituent state of Republic of India, 1950–

.26 Nepal

Military oligarchy; complete independence recognized by Great Britain, 1923; democratic constitution, 1952–

.27 Sikkim

British sovereignty recognized in 1890; became independent state, 1947; protectorate of India, 1949–

.3 Central region

For Orissa, see 954.13; *Hyderabad,* 954.9

.33 Madhya Pradesh

Former Central Provinces and Berar; constituent state of Republic of India, 1950–

.34 Bhopal

Chief commissioner's state of Republic of India, 1949–

.36 Vindhya Pradesh

Chief commissioner's state of Republic of India, 1948–

954.4 West central region

.42 Rajasthan

Formed by merger of several small princely states of former Rajputana States, 1948; constituent state of Republic of India, 1950–

Including Thar or Indian Desert

.43 Ajmer

Former Ajmer-Merwara province; chief commissioner's state of Republic of India, 1950–

.45 Madhya Bharat

Constituent state of Republic of India, 1950–

.46 Saurashtra

Constituent state of Republic of India, 1950–

.47 Cutch

Chief commissioner's state of Republic of India, 1948–

.5 Punjab

.52 Himachal Pradesh

Chief commissioner's state of Republic of India, formed 1948, by merger of former Punjab princely states and former Punjab Hill States

.53 Bilaspur

Formerly one of Punjab Hill States; chief commissioner's state of Republic of India, 1948–

.54 Patiala and East Punjab States Union (PEPSU)

Constituent state of Republic of India, 1948–

.55 Punjab of India (East Punjab)

Constituent state of Republic of India, 1950–

.56 Delhi

Chief commissioner's state of Republic of India, 1950–

.58 Punjab of Pakistan (West Punjab)

Province of Pakistan, 1947–

Including Lahore

Class comprehensive works on Pakistan in 954.7; if preferred, use 954.7 also for specific parts of Pakistan

954.59 Bahawalpur

Princely state; acceded to Pakistan, 1947

Class comprehensive works on Pakistan in 954.7; if preferred, use 954.7 also for specific parts of Pakistan

.6 Jammu and Kashmir

Including Karakoram Mountains

.7 Pakistan

Separate dominion of Commonwealth of Nations after partition of India, 1947

Comprehensive works

Including Indus River

Class works on a specific part of Pakistan with the part, e.g., East Bengal 954.145; if preferred, class all specific parts of Pakistan in 954.7

.71 Karachi

.73 Sind

Province of Pakistan, 1947–

Including Khairpur

.79 Bombay

Constituent state of Republic of India, 1950–

Including Baroda

.799 Goa

Portuguese India

Including Angediva Island

.8 Southern India

Including French areas

.82 Madras

Constituent state of Republic of India, 1950–

Including Laccadive Islands

.83 Travancore-Cochin

Constituent state of Republic of India, 1950–

.85 Coorg

Chief commissioner's state of Republic of India, 1950–

.87 Mysore

Constituent state of Republic of India, 1950–

954.88 Andaman and Nicobar Islands [*formerly* *992.5]

Chief commissioner's state of Republic of India, 1950–

.89 Ceylon

Dominion of Commonwealth of Nations, 1948–

Including Maldive Islands

.9 Hyderabad

Constituent state of Republic of India, 1950–

955 Iran (Persia)

For ancient Persia, see 935

955.02–955.05 Period divisions

.02 Medieval history, 642–1499

.03 Rise and fall of Persian dynasties, 1499–1794

Including wars with Russia and Turkey; invasion of India, 1731

.04 19th century, 1794–1906

Including wars with Russia, Turkey, Afghanistan; end of absolute monarchy, 1906

.05 20th century, 1906–

Including coup d'état by Riza Khan, 1921; election of new shah (Pahleve dynasty), 1925

955.1–955.95 Geographic divisions

.1 Gilan (First Province)

.2 Teheran (Second Province)

.3 East Azerbaijan (Third Province)

.4 West Azerbaijan (Fourth Province)

Including part of Kurdistan Plateau

.5 Kermanshah (Fifth Province)

Including part of Kurdistan Plateau

.6 Khuzistan (Sixth Province)

.7 Fars (Seventh Province)

.8 Kerman (Eighth Province)

Iranian Baluchistan became part of Kerman, 1938

For Iranian Baluchistan, see 958.82

955.9 Khurasan (Ninth Province)

.95 Isfahan (Tenth Province)

956 Near East (Middle East)

Including comprehensive works on countries of the Arabian Peninsula, Turkey, Israel, Syria, Lebanon, Jordan, Egypt, Libya, Iraq; Moslem Empire; Levant; Eastern question

For ancient history of Asia Minor and Eastern Mediterranean, see 939.2–939.6; *Syrian Desert,* 953.9; *a specific country, the country, e.g., Egypt* 962

.1 Turkey in Asia

Including comprehensive works on Turkey

Class Turkey in Europe, including Ottoman Empire [*formerly* *956.1] in 949.6; if preferred, class Turkey in Europe in 956.1

For Turco-Italian War, 1911–1912, see 961.203

956.101–956.103 Period divisions

.101 Period of Ottoman Empire to 1918

.102 Early 20th century, 1918–1945

.103 Later 20th century, 1945–

956.17–956.67 Geographic divisions

.17 Bursa (Khodavendikyar)

.2 Western Turkey (Aegean area)

Including Izmir (Smyrna), Aydin (Aidin), Afyon

For Imbros and Tenedos islands, see 949.9

.3 North central Turkey (Black Sea area)

Including Eskisehir, Ankara (Angora), Kastamonu (Kastamuni), Samsun (Amisus), Amasya

.4 South Turkey (Mediterranean area)

Including Konya (Konieh), Antalya (Adalya), Tarsus, Adana (Seyhan), Iskenderun (Alexandretta), Gaziantep, Antakya (Antioch), Toros (Taurus) Mountains

.45 Cyprus

Island under Turkish rule, 1571–1878; British colony, 1878–

.5 East central Turkey

Including Trabzon (Trebizond), Sivas, Urfa (Edessa)

956.6 Armenia and Kurdistan

For ancient history of Armenia, see 939.55

.62 Turkish Armenia

Including Kars (Chorsa), Erzurum (Erzerum), Van

.64 Soviet Armenia

Armenian Soviet Socialist Republic [*formerly* *947.92], formed 1936, from part of former Transcaucasian Soviet Federated Socialist Republic

.67 Kurdistan

Including Elazig (Mamuret-el-Aziz), Diyarbakir (Diarbekr), Bitlis

.7 Iraq

Including comprehensive works on Arab Federation (formed 1958)

For ancient history of Mesopotamia, see 935; *a specific part of Arab Federation, the part, e.g., Jordan* 956.95

.8 Aleppo

Province of Syria

For Syria, see 956.91

.9 Eastern Mediterranean

.91 Syria

Independent republic, 1941–1958; part of United Arab Republic, 1958–

For Aleppo, see 956.8; *comprehensive works on United Arab Republic,* 962

.92 Lebanon

Independent republic, 1941–

.93 Jews

Comprehensive works on history of Jews since their dispersion

For ancient Judea, see 933; *Israel,* 956.94; *history of Jews in a specific country other than Palestine (Israel),* 325.256 93

.94 Israel

Independent republic, 1948–

Including Palestine; Zionism

For Pre-Judaic Palestine, see 939.45; *ancient Judea,* 933

956.95 Jordan (Trans-Jordan, Transjordania)

Kingdom, 1946– ; part of Arab Federation, 1958–

For comprehensive works on Arab Federation, see 956.7

957 Siberia

Russian Soviet Federated Socialist Republic in Asia

Including comprehensive works on the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics in Asia

For a specific Soviet republic in Asia, see the republic, e.g., Uzbek Soviet Socialist Republic 958.7

.3 Western Siberia

Including Altai Territory; Kurgan, Tyumen, Omsk, Novosibirsk, Tomsk, Kemerovo Oblasts

For Ural Mountains, see 947.87

.5 Eastern Siberia

Including Krasnoyarsk Territory, Irkutsk and Chita Oblasts, Buryat-Mongol and Yakut Autonomous Soviet Socialist Republics, Sayan Mountains

For Tuva, see 951.71

.7 Soviet Far East

Including Amur Oblast, Maritime and Khabarovsk Territories, northern Sakhalin, Amur River; comprehensive works on Sakhalin Oblast

For southern Sakhalin, see 952.6; *Kurile Islands,* 952.7

958 Central Asia

For Middle East, see 956; *ancient history of Caspian Sea region,* 939.6

.1 Afghanistan

Independent kingdom, 1926–

Including northeastern region, Kabul; Hindu Kush

.2 Southern region

Including Kandahar

.3 Northwestern region

Including Herat

958.4 **West Turkestan (Soviet Central Asia)**

Including comprehensive works on Turkestan

For Chinese (Eastern) Turkestan, see 951.6; *Caspian Sea,* 947.9

.43 Kirghizia

Kirghiz Soviet Socialist Republic, formed 1924

Including Tien Shan in Soviet Union

.45 Kazakhstan

First constituted, 1920, as the Kirghiz (after 1925, Kazak) Autonomous Soviet Socialist Republic; became, 1936, Kazakh Soviet Socialist Republic

.5 Turkmenia

Former heading: Kiva (Khiva)

Turkmen Soviet Socialist Republic formed, 1924, including parts of Khiva and Bukhara; remainder of Khiva incorporated in Uzbekistan

For Bukhara, see 958.6; *Uzbekistan,* 958.7

.6 Tadzhikistan

Former heading: Bokhara (Bukhara)

Tadzhik Soviet Socialist Republic formed, 1929; parts of Bukhara incorporated, 1924, in Turkmenia and Uzbekistan

Including Pamirs

For Turkmenia, see 958.5; *Uzbekistan,* 958.7

.7 Uzbekistan

Former heading: Ferghana (Fergana) or Khokan

Uzbek Soviet Socialist Republic formed, 1924, including parts of Khiva and Bukhara

For Khiva, see 958.5; *Bukhara,* 958.6

.8 **Baluchistan**

.82 Western Baluchistan

Became part of Persia, 1895; incorporated into Iranian province of Kerman, 1938

For Kerman, see 955.8

958.84 Eastern Baluchistan

Became part of India, 1895; incorporated into Pakistan, 1947–1948

Class comprehensive works on Pakistan in 954.7; if preferred, use 954.7 also for specific parts of Pakistan

959 **Southeast Asia**

Including comprehensive works on Burma, Thailand, Laos, Malaya, Singapore, Cambodia, Vietnam, Indonesia, the Philippines

For SEATO, see 341.185 9; *Indonesia,* 991; *Philippines,* 991.4

.1 **Burma**

.2 Upper Burma

.3 **Thailand (Siam)**

Independent constitutional kingdom, 1932–

.4 **Laos**

Constitutional monarchy, 1947–

.5 **Malaya**

Became independent member of Commonwealth of Nations, 1957

Including comprehensive works on Malay Peninsula and Malay Archipelago

For Malay Archipelago, see 991

.52 Singapore

British crown colony, 1946–

.6 **Cambodia**

Constitutional monarchy, 1947– ; joined French Union, 1950

.7 **Vietnam**

Former heading: French Cochin China

Republic formed, 1945–1950, by union of Tonkin (North Vietnam), Annam (Central Vietnam), and Cochin China (South Vietnam)

Including comprehensive works on French Indochina

.8 Annam

.9 Tonkin

960 Africa

For history to 640, see 939.7

.2 **Early history, 640–1900**

Including discovery, partition

.3 **20th century**

961 North Africa

Including comprehensive works on the Barbary States: Morocco, Algeria, Tunisia, Tripolitania

For history of North Africa to 640, see 939.7

.02 Early history, 640–1830

Including period of piracy, 1516–1830

For Tripolitan War with the United States, see 973.47

.03 19th and 20th centuries, 1830–

.1 **Tunisia**

For ancient Carthage, see 939.73

.102 Period of Arab rule, 647–1516

.103 Period of Ottoman rule, 1516–1881

.104 Late 19th and 20th centuries, 1881–

.2 **Libya**

For ancient Libya and Gaetulia, see 939.77

961.202–961.204 Period divisions

.202 Periods of Arab and Ottoman rule, 644–1911

.203 Period of Italian rule, 1911–1952

Including Turco-Italian War, 1911–1912; amalgamation of Tripolitania, Cyrenaica, Fezzan into a colony of Italian Colonial Empire in Africa, 1939

.204 Independence, 1952–

961.22–961.9 Geographic divisions

961.22 Tripolitania

For ancient Tripolis, see 939.74

.3 Fezzan

.4 Cyrenaica

For ancient Cyrenaica, see 939.75

.9 Libyan Desert

Comprehensive works

For Western Desert, Qattara Depression, see 962.2

962 Egypt

Including Nile River and Valley; comprehensive works on United Arab Republic, on United Arab States (both formed 1958)

For ancient Egypt, see 932; *Egyptology,* 913.32; *Sinai Peninsula,* 953.1; *a specific part of United Arab Republic, of United Arab States, the part, e.g., Syria* 956.91

962.02–962.05 Period divisions

.02 Period of Arab rule, 640–1517

.03 Period of Ottoman rule, 1517–1882

.04 British occupation and protectorate, 1882–1922

.05 Independence, 1922–

962.1–962.3 Geographic divisions

.1 Lower Egypt

Nile Delta region: to about 30°N

.15 Isthmus of Suez

.16 Cairo

.2 Middle Egypt

Between Cairo and Asyut: 30°N to about 27°N

Including Western Desert, Qattara Depression

.3 Upper Egypt

South of Asyut: from 27°N

Including Arabian Desert

962.4 Sudan

Including comprehensive works on Anglo-Egyptian and French Sudan

For French Sudan, see 966.2

962.402–962.404 Period divisions

.402 From Arab invasion, 7th century, to 1820

.403 Period of Egyptian and British rule, 1820–1956

.404 Independence, 1956–

962.41–962.95 Geographic divisions

.41 Northern Province

Including former provinces of Halfa, Berber; Nubia, Nubian Desert

.5 Dongola

.6 Central provinces

.62 Khartoum

.64 Blue Nile Province

Including Sennar [*formerly* †962.9], former White Nile and El Fung Provinces

.7 Darfur

Including former kingdom of Darfur

.8 Kordofan

Including former province of Nuba Mountains

.9 Eastern and southern provinces

Class Sennar [*formerly* †962.9] in 962.64

.92 Kassala

.93 Upper Nile Province

Including Sobat and Pibor Rivers

.94 Bahr el Ghazal

Amalgamated in 1935 with Mongalla to form Equatoria, and separated in 1948

.95 Equatoria

Including former province of Mongalla; Lado Enclave

963 Ethiopia (Abyssinia)

Including Ogaden; comprehensive works on Italian East Africa

For history to 640, see 939.78; *Italian Somaliland,* 967.73

963.02–963.06 Period divisions

.02 Period of Arab rule, 640–1543

.03 Period of conquest, 1543–1855

Including Portuguese, British, French, Italian penetration

.04 Later 19th century, 1855–1896

Including Ethiopian War, 1895–1896

.05 Early 20th century, 1896–1941

.056 Italo-Ethiopian War, 1935–1936

.057 Italian rule, 1936–1941

.06 Independence, 1941–

.5 Eritrea

Class Italian Somaliland [*formerly* *963.5] in 967.73

964 Morocco

For ancient Mauretania, see 939.71

964.02–964.04 Period divisions

.02 Periods of Arab and Berber rule, 647–1830

.03 19th century, 1830–1900

Including Spanish-Moroccan War, 1859–1860

.04 20th century

964.2–964.9 Geographic divisions

.2 Spanish Morocco

Including Tetuán, Ceuta, Melilla, Rif Mountains

.22 Tangier

International zone

964.3 French Morocco

.31 Northern region

Region west of Atlas Mountains and south to Wâdy Oum er Rbia

Including Casablanca, Rabat, Fez, Oujda

.4 Central region

Including Atlas Mountains

For Atlas Mountains in Algeria, see 965.1

.5 Southeastern region

.6 Southwestern region

Region south of Wâdy Oum er Rbia

Including Marrakesh, Agadir

.8 Spanish West Africa

Including Ifni, Spanish Sahara, Southern Protectorate of Morocco, Saguia el Hamra, Rio de Oro

.9 Canary Islands

Including provinces of Tenerife, Las Palmas

965 Algeria

Including comprehensive works on French North Africa: Algeria, French Morocco, Tunisia

For Numidia, see 939.72; *French Morocco,* 964.3; *Tunisia,* 961.1

965.02–965.04 Period divisions

.02 Periods of Arab, Berber, Ottoman rule, 647–1830

.03 Later 19th century

.04 20th century

965.1–965.7 Geographic divisions

.1 Northern Algeria

Including Atlas Mountains in Algeria

.11 Oran

.3 Algiers

965.5 Constantine

.7 Southern Territories

Including Aïn-Sefra, Ghardaïa, Touggourt (Tugurt), Saharan Oases

966 West Africa

.1 French West Africa

Comprehensive works on French overseas territories in West Africa: Senegal, French Guinea, Ivory Coast, Dahomey, French Sudan, Mauritania, Niger, Upper Volta

For a specific territory of French West Africa, see the territory, e.g., Dahomey 966.8

.11 Sahara Desert

Including comprehensive works on the Sahara

For Spanish Sahara, see 964.8; *Libyan Desert,* 961.9; *Arabian Desert,* 962.3; *Nubian Desert,* 962.41

.12 Mauritania

.2 French Sudan

Including formation of colony from territories of Senegambia and Niger, 1904; change of name from Upper Senegal–Niger to French Sudan, 1920; addition of part of Upper Volta, 1932–1947

For Anglo-Egyptian Sudan, comprehensive works on Sudan, see 962.4

.21 Niger River

.25 Upper Volta

Including establishment of colony, 1919; partition of territory among Ivory Coast, Niger, French Sudan, 1932; reconstitution as territory, 1947

.26 Niger Territory

Including southwestern and northern regions [*formerly* †966.27–†966.28]; addition of part of Upper Volta, 1932–1947

[†.27–†.28] Southwestern and northern regions

Class in 966.26

.3 Senegal

Including former Senegambia

.32 Dakar

966.4 **Sierra Leone**

Comprehensive works on British colony establisht, 1808; and protectorate, 1896

Including Sherbro Island

.5 **Guinea**

Including Upper Guinea; comprehensive works on Upper and Lower Guinea

For Lower Guinea, see 967.1; *a specific country in Upper Guinea, the country, e.g., Sierra Leone* 966.4

.51 Gambia (English Guinea)

British colony establisht, 1888; protectorate, 1902

.52 French Guinea

Including regions of French Guinea [*formerly* †966.53–†966.56]

For comprehensive works on French West Africa, see 966.1

[†.53–†.56] Regions of French Guinea

Class in 966.52

.57 Portuguese Guinea

.579 Bijagos (Bissagos) Islands

.58 Cape Verde Islands

.6 **Liberia**

Including Grain Coast

.68 **Ivory Coast**

Including addition of part of Upper Volta, 1932–1947

For comprehensive works on French West Africa, see 966.1

.7 **Ghana (Gold Coast)**

Became an independent member of Commonwealth of Nations, 1957, including former Gold Coast Colony proper, Ashanti, Northern Territories protectorate, trust territory of British Togoland

For Togoland, see 966.81

.74 Ashanti

Came under Gold Coast protection, 1901; incorporated in Ghana, 1957

Including provinces of Ashanti [*formerly* †966.75–†966.76]

[†.75–†.76] Provinces of Ashanti

Class in 966.74

966.77 Northern Territories

Made British protectorate, 1901; administered by Gold Coast Colony; incorporated in Ghana, 1957

Including provinces of the Territories [*formerly* †966.78–†966.79]

[†.78–†.79] Provinces of Northern Territories

Class in 966.77

.8 **Dahomey**

Including Slave Coast

For comprehensive works on French West Africa, see 966.1

.81 **Togoland**

Former German protectorate placed under British and French trusteeship, 1922; trust territory of British Togoland incorporated in Ghana, 1957

.9 **Nigeria**

Including British Cameroons

For comprehensive works on Cameroons, see 967.11

.99 **Islands of the Gulf of Guinea**

.991 Fernando Po

Including Santa Isabel, capital of Spanish Guinea

For comprehensive works on Spanish Guinea, see 967.18

.993 Principe (Prince Island)

.994 São Tomé (Saint Thomas)

.996 Annobón

For comprehensive works on Spanish Guinea, see 967.18

967 Central (Equatorial) Africa

Including comprehensive works on Negro Africa, on Negro history

For history of Negroes in a specific country other than Africa, see 325.267

.1 Lower Guinea

For comprehensive works on Guinea, see 966.5; *a specific country in Lower Guinea, the country, e.g., Gabon* 967.21

.11 Cameroons

Comprehensive works on British and French Cameroons

Including regions of Cameroons [*formerly* †967.12–†967.17]

For British Cameroons, see 966.9

[†.12–†.17] Regions of Cameroons

Class in 967.11

.18 Spanish Guinea

Including continental Spanish Guinea (Rio Muni); comprehensive works on Rio Muni, Fernando Po, Annobón

For Fernando Po, Santa Isabel, see 966.991; *Annobón,* 966.996

.2 French Equatorial Africa

Comprehensive works on Gabon, Middle Congo, Ubangi-Shari, Chad

For a specific country in French Equatorial Africa, see the country, e.g., Ubangi-Shari 967.41; *Middle Congo,* 967.24

.21 Gabon

Including regions of Gabon [*formerly* †967.22–†967.23]

[†.22–†.23] Regions of Gabon

Class in 967.21

.24 Middle Congo

Originally French Congo, a name later applied to all French Equatorial Africa; became known as Middle Congo, 1903

Including regions of Middle Congo [*formerly* †967.25–†967.28]

[†.25–†.28] Regions of Middle Congo

Class in 967.24

967.3 Angola (Portuguese West Africa)

For Principe, São Tomé, see 966.993–966.994

.31 Cabinda (Kabinda)

Autonomous district and exclave of Angola

.4 Northern French Equatorial Africa

For comprehensive works on French Equatorial Africa, see 967.2

.41 Ubangi-Shari

Became part of French Equatorial Africa as Ubangi-Shari-Chad, 1910; lost Chad colony, 1920

Including eastern region, Banda [*formerly* †967.42]

[†.42] Eastern region, Banda

Class in 967.41

.43 Chad

Formerly part of Ubangi-Shari-Chad, made separate colony, 1920

Including regions of Chad [*formerly* †967.44–†967.49]

[†.44–†.49] Regions of Chad

Class in 967.43

.5 Belgian Congo

Formerly Congo Free State

Including Congo River, Ubangi River, Lake Edward

.57 Ruanda-Urundi

Formerly part of German East Africa, 1899–1917

.6 British East Africa

Comprehensive works on Kenya, Tanganyika, Uganda, Zanzibar

For a specific British possession in East Africa, see the possession, e.g., Zanzibar 967.81

.61 Uganda

Including native kingdom of Buganda; Lake Albert

Class Lake Rudolf [*formerly* †967.618] in 967.62

.62 Kenya

Including provinces of Kenya [*formerly* †967.63–†967.67, †967.69]; Lake Rudolf [*formerly* †967.618]

[†.63–†.67] Provinces of Kenya

Class in 967.62

967.68 **Jubaland**

Incorporated in Italian Somaliland, 1925

For comprehensive works on Italian Somaliland, see 967.73

[†.69] **Northern Frontier District**

Class in 967.62

.7 **Somaliland**

.71 French Somaliland

.72 British Somaliland (Somaliland Protectorate)

Including Socotra Island

.73 Italian Somaliland (Somalia) [*formerly* *963.5]

Including regions of Italian Somaliland [*formerly* †967.74–†967.77]

For Jubaland, see 967.68

[†.74–†.77] Regions of Italian Somaliland

Class in 967.73

.8 **Southern British East Africa**

.81 Zanzibar

Including Pemba and Mafia Islands and adjacent small islands

.82 Tanganyika

Including regions of Tanganyika [*formerly* †967.83–†967.89]; Kilimanjaro; Lake Tanganyika, Lake Nyasa, Lake Victoria

[†.83–†.89] Regions of Tanganyika

Class in 967.82

.9 **Mozambique (Portuguese East Africa)**

Including Zambezi River, Delagoa Bay

968 South Africa

Including Union of South Africa

968.02–968.05 Period divisions

.02 Early history to 1488

.03 Period of exploration and settlement, 1488–1814

968.04 19th century, 1814–1909

For South African (Boer) War, see 968.2

.05 20th century, 1909–

Including formation of the Union of South Africa

968.1–968.97 **Geographic divisions**

.1 **Bechuanaland**

Including comprehensive works on Bechuanaland Protectorate and British Bechuanaland; comprehensive works on High Commission Territories: Bechuanaland, Basutoland, Swaziland

For British Bechuanaland, see 968.7; *Swaziland,* 968.34; *Basutoland,* 968.6

.2 **Transvaal**

Including South African (Boer) War, 1899–1902; the Veld

.22 Gold field area

Including Witwatersrand, Johannesburg

.3 **Zululand**

Annext to Natal, 1897; annext Amatongaland, 1898

For Natal, see 968.4

.34 **Swaziland**

Including regions of Swaziland [*formerly* †968.35–†968.36]

For comprehensive works on High Commission Territories, see 968.1

[†.35–†.36] Regions of Swaziland

Class in 968.34

.4 **Natal**

Annext Zululand, 1897

.5 **Orange Free State**

.6 **Basutoland**

Including Kaffraria, annext to Cape of Good Hope, 1865; Transkeian Territories, annext to Cape of Good Hope, 1879

For Cape of Good Hope, see 968.7; *comprehensive works on High Commission Territories,* 968.1

968.7 **Cape of Good Hope**

Including Mossel Bay, British Bechuanaland

For Walvis Bay exclave, see 968.8; *comprehensive works on Bechuanaland,* 968.1

.8 **South-West Africa**

Including Walvis Bay, exclave of Cape of Good Hope

.9 **Federation of Rhodesia and Nyasaland**

.91 Southern Rhodesia

.92 Matabeleland

Including Victoria Falls

.93 Mashonaland

Including Zimbabwe

.94 Northern Rhodesia

Including northwestern and northeastern Rhodesia [*formerly* †968.95–†968.96]

[†.95–†.96] Northwestern and northeastern Rhodesia

Class in 968.94

.97 Nyasaland

969 **South Indian Ocean islands**

.1 **Madagascar**

.4 **Islands north of Madagascar**

Including Comoro, Aldabra, Cosmoledo, Glorioso, Providence, Farquhar, Agalega Islands

.5 **Amirantes**

.6 **Seychelles**

.7 **Chagos Islands**

.8 **Mascarene Islands**

Including Rodrigues, Cocos Islands; Cargados Carajos Shoals

.81 Réunion

.82 Mauritius

.9 **Isolated islands**

Including Amsterdam Island, Saint Paul Island, Kerguelen Islands

970 **North America**

For history of Central America, see 972.8; *of South America,* 980; *discovery and exploration,* 973.1

.1 **Indians of North America**

Including Indians of Central America; comprehensive works on Indians of the Americas

Class lives of Indians in 970.2, Indian tribes in 970.3, Indians in specific places in 970.4, government relations with Indians in 970.5, specific subjects in relation to Indians in 970.6 [*all formerly* *970.1]

For Indians of South America, see 980.1; *a specific ancient Indian civilization, the subject, e.g., Aztec civilization* 972.014; *prehistoric archeology,* 571; *anthropology,* 572

.2 Lives of Indians [*formerly* *970.1]

Arrange alphabetically by name of biographee, using A1 for collections

If preferred, class in 920–928, e.g., biography of Jim Thorpe 927.96

970.3–970.6 Special topics

When choice must be made from among these numbers, class according to the following table of precedence, e.g., leases on Indian lands 970.5, Iroquois games and dances 970.679

Government relations 970.5
Specific subjects 970.6
Specific tribes 970.3
Indians in specific places 970.4

.3 Specific tribes [*formerly* *970.1]

Arrange alphabetically by tribe

For comprehensive works on Mayan culture, see 972.015; *on Aztec culture,* 972.014

970.4 Indians in specific places [*formerly* *970.1]

Divide like 971–979, e.g., Indians in Wyoming 970.487

For Aztecs and Mayans in Mexico, see 972.014–972.015

.5 Government relations with Indians [*formerly* *970.1]

Including government policy, reservations, commerce

If preferred, class with the specific subject, e.g., oil leases on Indian lands 333.8

For a specific Indian war, see the period of history, e.g., French and Indian War 973.26

.6 Specific subjects [*formerly* *970.1]

Divide like 000–999, e.g., modern Indian pottery 970.673 83, prehistoric Indian pottery 970.657 15

If preferred, class with the specific subject, e.g., Indian pottery 738.3; if desired, 970.1 may be used as geographic subdivision under specific subjects, e.g., Indian pottery 738.309 701

For Indian education, see 371.975; *Indian religion,* 299.7; *Indian music,* 781.71; *Indian legends,* 398.2; *pre-Columbian American architecture,* 722.91

971 Canada

971.01–971.064 Period divisions

.01 Early history to 1763

Including Canada under French regime

.011 Exploration and early settlement, 1497–1632

Including explorations of Cabot, 1497; of Cartier, 1534; of Champlain, 1603–1635; establishment of Hudson's Bay Company, 1670; early conflicts between French and English

.016 French and English expansion, 1632–1689

Including period of government by Company of New France, 1627–1663; royal province, 1663; exploration of the West; conflicts with Indians

971.018 Struggle of France and England for supremacy, 1689–1763

Including period of King William's War (War of the League of Augsburg), 1689–1697; of Queen Anne's War (War of the Spanish Succession), 1702–1713; of King George's War (War of the Austrian Succession), 1744–1748; of French and Indian War (Seven Years' War), 1755–1763

For King William's War, Queen Anne's War in United States history, see 973.25; *King George's War, French and Indian War in United States history,* 973.26; *comprehensive works on War of the League of Augsburg,* 944.033; *on War of the Spanish Succession, on War of the Austrian Succession, on Seven Years' War,* 940.25

.02 Early British rule, 1763–1791

Including Pontiac's conspiracy, 1763–1764; Quebec Act, 1774; separation of Upper and Lower Canada, 1791

.024 United Empire Loyalists

For American Revolution, see 973.3

.03 Period of the separate colonies, 1791–1841

.034 Period of War of 1812, 1812–1814

For comprehensive works on War of 1812, see 973.52

.038 Rebellion, 1837–1838

.039 Union of Upper and Lower Canada, 1841

.04 Growth of responsible government, 1841–1867

.048 Fenian invasions, 1866–1871

.049 Confederation under British North America Act, 1867

.05 Dominion of Canada during period 1867–1914

.051 Riel's first (Red River) rebellion, 1869–1870

.054 Riel's second (Northwest) rebellion, 1885

.06 20th century, 1914–

.061 Period of World War I, 1914–1921

.062 Period between World Wars, 1921–1935

.063 Mid-20th century, 1935–1957

.064 Later 20th century, 1957–

971.1–971.9 Geographic divisions

Libraries which prefer alphabetic to systematic arrangement of local history under each province or territory may add, to the number for the province or territory, 09 for regions, geographic features, counties (where counties exist), and 093 for cities, towns, villages; e.g., York County, Ontario 971.309 Y6, Lake Nipissing, Ontario 971.309 N7, Brantford, Ontario 971.309 3 B8

SUMMARY

971.1	**British Columbia**
.2	**Canadian Northwest**
.21	**Yukon Territory**
.22	**Northwest Territories**
.23	**Alberta**
.24	**Saskatchewan**
.26	**Keewatin District**
.27	**Manitoba**
.28	**New Quebec District**
.29	**Franklin District**
.3	**Ontario**
.4	**Quebec**
.5	**New Brunswick**
.6	**Nova Scotia**
.7	**Prince Edward Island**
.8	**Newfoundland**
.88	**Saint Pierre and Miquelon**
.9	**Labrador Territory**

971.1 **British Columbia**

Including Rocky Mountains in Canada

.11 Northern region

Area north of 55°N

Including Peace River District in British Columbia

.12 Central interior region

Area between 55°N and 51°N, and east of Coast Mountains

Including interior plateau region, Bulkley Mountains, Fraser River and Valley, Cariboo Mountains

971.13 Coastal region

Area south of 55°N to international boundary, and west of Coast Mountains

Including Coast Range and Cascades region

.131 Queen Charlotte Islands

Including Hecate Strait, Queen Charlotte Sound

.132 Northwest coastal region

Area between 55°N and 51°N, and west of Coast Mountains

Including Prince Rupert, Skena River, Ocean Falls, Dean Channel

.133 Lower coastal mainland

Area south of 51°N to international boundary, and west of Coast Mountains

Including Vancouver, Port Moody, Port Coquitlam, New Westminster, Mission City, Chilliwack, lower Fraser Valley

.134 Vancouver Island

Including Victoria, Howe Sound, Queen Charlotte Strait, Georgia Strait, Juan de Fuca Strait

.14 Southern interior region

Area south of 51°N to international boundary, and east of Coast Mountains

.141 Valleys of lower Thompson, Nicola, Similkameen Rivers

Including Kamloops

.142 Okanagan Valley

Including Okanagan Lake, Kelowna, Vernon, Penticton

.143 Selkirk Mountains region

.144 Area between Monashee and Selkirk Mountains

Including Kootenay, Slocan, Upper and Lower Arrow Lakes

.145 Kootenay-Upper Columbia Rivers Valley

Including Rocky Mountain trench region; comprehensive works on Columbia River in British Columbia

971.2 **Canadian Northwest**

Including former territory of Hudson's Bay Company, Prairie Provinces, Beaufort Sea

.21 Yukon Territory

Including Klondike River, Yukon River in Canada; Dawson

.22 Northwest Territories

Acquired by Canada, 1870; Keewatin District annext, 1905; Franklin District created, 1895; Ungava District ceded to Quebec, 1912

Including Canadian Arctic

For Keewatin District, see 971.26; *former Ungava District,* 971.28; *Franklin District,* 971.29

.221 Mackenzie District

Including Mackenzie River, Great Bear and Great Slave Lakes

.23 Alberta

.231 Northwestern region

Area north of 55°N, and west of 114°W

Including Lesser Slave Lake, Peace River, Grande Prairie; comprehensive works on Peace River District

For Peace River District in British Columbia, see 971.11

.232 Northeastern region

Area north of 55°N, and east of 114°W

Including Athabaska River, Thickwood Hills, Lake Claire, Wood Buffalo National Park

.233 Central region

Area between 55°N and 51°N

Including North and South Saskatchewan and Red Deer Rivers, Edmonton, Banff, Calgary, Drumheller, Lacombe; Buffalo, Jasper, Banff National Parks

.234 Southern region

Area south of 51°N to international boundary

Including Waterton Lakes National Park, Blairmore, Coleman, Macleod, Lethbridge, Medicine Hat

971.24 Saskatchewan

.241 Northern region (Forest region)

Area north of 55°N

Including Lake Athabaska

.242 Central region (Park lands region)

Area between 55°N and 51°N

Including Battleford, Biggar, Prince Albert, Saskatoon; Last Mountain and Quill Lakes; comprehensive works on Saskatchewan River

.243 Southwestern region

Area south of 51°N, and west of 106°W

Including Maple Creek, Shaunavon, Swift Current; comprehensive works on Prairie region in Saskatchewan

.244 Southeastern region

Area south of 51°N, and east of 106°W

Including Regina, Fort Qu'Appelle, Indian Head, Melville, Moose Jaw, Weyburn

.26 Keewatin District

Incorporated in Northwest Territories, 1905

Including Southampton, Coats, Mansel, Ottawa, Belcher, Akimiski, Charlton Islands; Hudson Bay

.27 Manitoba

.271 Northern region

Area north of 55°N

Including Hudson Bay Lowland region, Churchill and Nelson Rivers, Churchill, Port Nelson

.272 Lake region

Area between 55°N and 50°30′N

Including Lakes Winnipeg, Winnipegosis, Manitoba, Dauphin, Saint Martin; Flin Flon, The Pas, Riding Mountain National Park, Laurentian Plateau region

.273 Southwestern region

Area south of 50°30′N, and west of 98°W

Including Brandon, Portage la Prairie, Minnedosa, Morden, Virden, Assiniboine River; comprehensive works on Prairie region in Manitoba

971.274 Southeastern region

Area south of 50°30′N, and east of 98°W

Including Winnipeg, Saint Boniface, Transcona, Red River of the North in Manitoba; comprehensive works on Lake Agassiz region

.28 New Quebec District

Formerly Ungava District, incorporated in Quebec, 1912 (part of Saguenay County)

Including comprehensive works on Ungava Peninsula

.29 Franklin District

Incorporated in Northwest Territories, 1895

Including Viscount Melville Sound; Banks, Melville, Victoria, Prince of Wales, Baffin, Ellesmere, Bathurst, Cornwallis, Devon, Bylot, Parry, Sverdrup Islands

.3 Ontario

Including former Upper Canada; comprehensive works on Great Lakes in Canada

Class comprehensive works on Lake Superior in 977.49, on Lake Huron in 977.4, on Lake Erie in 977.12, on Lake Ontario in 974.79 [*all formerly* *971.3]

For comprehensive works on Great Lakes, see 977

.31 Northern region

Including Lake Superior in Ontario, Hudson Bay Coast region

For comprehensive works on Lake Superior, see 977.49

.311 Kenora District

Including former Patricia District, Lake of the Woods in Ontario

For comprehensive works on Lake of the Woods, see 977.681

.311 7 Rainy River District

Including Rainy Lake in Ontario

For comprehensive works on Rainy River and Rainy Lake, see 977.679

.312 Thunder Bay District

Including Fort William, Port Arthur; Slate and Saint Ignace Islands; Lake Nipigon

971.313 Algoma District

Including Michipicoten Island, North Channel, Sault Sainte Marie

.313 3 Sudbury District

.313 5 Manitoulin District

Including Manitoulin, Cockburn, Barrie, Clapperton, Fitzwilliam, Birch Islands

.314 Cochrane District

.314 4 Timiskaming District

.314 7 Nipissing District

Including Algonquin Provincial Park, Lake Nipissing

.315 Georgian Bay region

Including Georgian Bay Islands National Park

For Manitoulin District, see 971.313 5

.315 1 Parry Sound District

.316 Muskoka District

Including Rosseau Lake

.317 Simcoe County

.318 Grey County

Including Owen Sound

.32 Western region (Lake Huron counties)

Including Lake Huron in Ontario

For comprehensive works on Lake Huron, see 977.4

.321 Bruce County

.322 Huron County

.323 Perth County

.325 Middlesex County

.326 London

.327 Lambton County

Including Saint Clair River in Ontario

For comprehensive works on Saint Clair River, see 977.441

971.33 Southwestern region

Including Lake Erie in Ontario, Niagara Escarpment

For comprehensive works on Lake Erie, see 977.12

.331 Essex County

Including Lake Saint Clair, Detroit River in Ontario

For comprehensive works on Lake Saint Clair, see 977.43; *on Detroit River* 977.433

.332 Windsor

.333 Kent County

.334 Elgin County

.335 Saint Thomas

.336 Norfolk County

.337 Haldimand County

.338 Welland County

.339 Niagara Falls

Comprehensive works

For Niagara Falls in New York State, see 974.799

.34 West central region

Including Laurentian Plateau in Ontario

.341 Dufferin County

.342 Wellington County

.343 Guelph

.344 Waterloo County

.345 Kitchener

Formerly Berlin

.346 Oxford County

.347 Brant County

.348 Brantford

.35 Southern region

Including Lake Ontario in Ontario

For comprehensive works on Lake Ontario, see 974.79

.351 Lincoln County

.352 Wentworth County

971.353 Halton County

.353 5 Peel County

.354 York County

.354 1 Toronto

.355 Ontario County

.356 Durham County

.357 Northumberland County

Including Rice Lake

.358 Hastings County

.358 7 Prince Edward County

.359 Lennox and Addington County

.36 Central region

.361 Haliburton County

.364 Victoria County

.367 Peterborough County

.368 Peterborough

.37 Southeastern region (Saint Lawrence River counties)

Including Thousand Islands in Ontario

For Saint Lawrence River, see 971.4; *comprehensive works on Thousand Islands,* 974.758

.371 Frontenac County

.372 Kingston

.373 Leeds County

Including Rideau Lake and Canal

.374 Grenville County

.375 Dundas County

.376 Stormont County

.377 Glengarry County

.38 Northeastern region (Ottawa Valley counties)

.381 Renfrew County

.382 Lanark County

971.383 Carleton County

.384 Ottawa

.385 Russell County

.386 Prescott County

.4 Quebec

Including former New France, former Lower Canada, Saint Lawrence River and Seaway; comprehensive works on Laurentian Plateau

.41 Northern region

For New Quebec District, see 971.28

.411 Mistassini Territory

.412 Abitibi Territory

.413 Abitibi County

.414 Lake Saint John County

Including Lake Saint John East and Lake Saint John West Counties

.416 Chicoutimi County

Including Saguenay River

.417 Saguenay County

Comprehensive works

Including Anticosti Island

For New Quebec District, see 971.28

.419 Ashuanipi Territory

Ceded to Labrador in 1927

.42 Western region (Ottawa Valley counties)

.422 Hull County

Including former Ottawa County

.422 1 Gatineau County

Formerly Wright County

Including Lake Baskatong, Lake Poisson Blanc

.422 2 Hull County

.422 5 Labelle County

971.422 7 Papineau County

.423 Argenteuil County

.424 Terrebonne County

.425 Two Mountains County

.426 Vaudreuil County

Including Ile Perrot

.426 5 Soulanges County

.427 Montreal and Jesus Islands County

.427 1 Laval County (Jesus Island)

.428 Montreal County (Montreal Island)

Including Hochelaga County

.428 1 Greater Montreal

Including Verdun, Outremont, West Mount, Mount Royal

.428 5 Jacques Cartier County

.43 Southwestern region

Area south of Saint Lawrence River, and west of Richelieu River

Including Richelieu River; comprehensive works on Saint Lawrence Lowlands region

.431 Huntingdon County

.432 Beauharnois County

.433 Châteauguay County

.434 Laprairie County

.435 Napierville County

.436 Verchères County

.437 Chambly County

.438 Saint Johns County

971.44 North central region

Area north of Saint Lawrence River from Montreal to Saguenay River

Including Montagne Tremblante Provincial Park, Laurentides Provincial Park

.441 Montcalm County

.441 6 L'Assomption County

.442 Joliette County

.443 Berthier County

.444 Maskinongé County

.445 Saint Maurice County

.446 Champlain County

.446 6 Portneuf County

.447 Quebec County

.447 1 Quebec

.448 Montmorency, no. 1 County

.448 7 Montmorency, no. 2 County

Including Isle of Orleans

.449 Charlevoix County

Including Charlevoix East and Charlevoix West Counties

.45 South central region

Area south of Saint Lawrence River, and east of Richelieu River to Quebec

.451 Richelieu County

.452 Saint Hyacinthe County

.452 5 Bagot County

.453 Rouville County

.454 Yamaska County

.455 Nicolet County

971.456 Drummond County

.456 5 Arthabaska County

.457 Wolfe County

.457 5 Megantic County

.458 Lotbinière County

.459 Levis County

.46 Southern region

Southern border area east of Richelieu River

Including Acadian region

.461 Iberville County

.462 Missisquoi County

.463 Shefford County

.464 Brome County

.465 Richmond County

.466 Sherbrooke County

.467 Stanstead County

.468 Compton County

.469 Frontenac County

Including Lake Megantic

.47 Southeastern region

Area south of Saint Lawrence River from Quebec to Gulf of Saint Lawrence

Including Notre Dame Mountains

.471 Beauce County

.472 Dorchester County

.473 Bellechasse County

.473 5 Montmagny County

.474 L'Islet County

971.475 Kamouraska County

.476 Temiscouata County
Including Rivière du Loup and Temiscouata Counties

.477 Gaspé Peninsula
Including Shickshock Mountains, Gulf of Saint Lawrence, Chaleur Bay

.477 1 Rimouski County

.477 5 Matane County
Including Matapédia and Matane Counties

.478 Bonaventure County

.479 Gaspé County
Including Gaspé East and Gaspé West Counties

.479 7 Magdalen Islands

.5 New Brunswick
Including comprehensive works on Maritime Provinces [*formerly* *971.6]
For Nova Scotia, see 971.6; *Prince Edward Island,* 971.7

.51 Northern region

.511 Restigouche County

.512 Gloucester County

.52 Eastern region

.521 Northumberland County

.522 Kent County

.523 Westmorland County

.53 Southern region
Including Bay of Fundy

.531 Albert County

.532 Saint John County

.533 Charlotte County
Including Grand Manan Island

971.54 Central region

.541 Kings County

.542 Queens County

.543 Sunbury County

.55 Western region
Including Saint John River

.551 York County
Including Fredericton

.552 Carleton County

.553 Victoria County

.554 Madawaska County

.6 Nova Scotia
Including former Acadia
Class Maritime Provinces [*formerly* *971.6] in 971.5

.61 Northern region
Including Western Plain region

.611 Cumberland County

.612 Colchester County

.613 Pictou County

.614 Antigonish County

.62 Southern region
Including Atlantic Coast region

.621 Guysborough County

.622 Halifax County
Including Halifax

.623 Lunenburg County

.624 Queens County

.625 Shelburne County

.63 Western region
Including Bay of Fundy in Nova Scotia

.631 Yarmouth County

.632 Digby County

971.633 Annapolis County

.634 Kings County

.635 Hants County

.69 Cape Breton Island
Including Bras d'Or Lake

.691 Inverness County
Including Cape Breton Highlands National Park

.693 Victoria County

.695 Cape Breton County

.696 Sydney

.698 Richmond County

.7 Prince Edward Island
Including Northumberland Strait

.71 Prince County

.74 Queens County

.75 Charlottetown

.77 Kings County

.8 Newfoundland
Including Strait of Belle Isle, Cabot Strait
For Labrador Territory, see 971.9

.88 Saint Pierre and Miquelon
French territory

.9 Labrador Territory
Including comprehensive works on Labrador Peninsula
For Ashuanipi Territory, see 971.419; *New Quebec District,* 971.28

972 Mexico

972.01–972.082 Period divisions

.01 Pre-Hispanic period to 1516

.014 Aztecs

.015 Mayas
Including comprehensive works on Mayan culture
For Mayas in Guatemala, see 972.810 1; *in British Honduras,* 972.820 1

.02 Colonial period, 1516–1810
Discovery to end of Spanish rule

.03 Independence, 1810–1822
Revolutionary period

.04 First empire and republic, 1822–1845

.05 Period of war with United States, 1845–1848
For comprehensive works on Mexican War, see 973.62

.06 Reaction and reform, 1848–1861

.07 European intervention, 1861–1867

.08 Republic, 1867–

.081 Later 19th century, 1867–1917
Republic under constitution of 1857
Including history, 1911–1917 [*formerly* *972.09]

.082 20th century, 1917– [*formerly* *972.09]
Republic under constitution of 1917

[*.09] 20th century, 1911–
Class in 972.081–972.082

972.1–972.7 Geographic divisions

.1 Northern states
Including Tamaulipas, Nuevo León, Coahuila, Durango, Chihuahua, Sonora

.2 Baja California (Lower California)
Including Baja California Norte (state), Baja California Sur (territory)

972.3 **Central Pacific states**

Including Sinaloa, Nayarit, Jalisco, Colima, Michoacán

.4 **Central states**

Including Guanajuato, Aguascalientes, Zacatecas, San Luis Potosí, Querétaro, Hidalgo, Tlaxcala, Puebla, Morelos

.5 **Valley of Mexico**

Including Mexico (state), Federal District, Mexico City

.6 **Southern Gulf states**

Including Veracruz, Tabasco, Campeche, Yucatán, Quintana Roo (territory)

.7 **Southern Pacific states**

Including Guerrero, Oaxaca, Chiapas; Isthmus of Tehuantepec

.8 Central America

For Panama, see 986.2

.801 Pre-Hispanic period to 1502

.802 Early 16th century, 1502–1535

Including discovery, exploration, conquest

.803 Colonial period, 1535–1821

Spanish rule to independence

.804 19th century, 1821–1900

Including attempts at Central American federation, 1823–1838

.805 20th century, 1900–

.81 Guatemala

.810 1 Pre-Hispanic period to 1502

Including Mayan civilization

For comprehensive works on Mayan culture, see 972.015

.810 2 Discovery, exploration, conquest, 1502–1535

.810 3 Colonial period, 1535–1821

Spanish rule to independence

.810 4 19th century, 1821–1900

Including establishment of republic

.810 5 20th century, 1900–

972.82 **British Honduras (Belize)**

British crown colony

.820 1 Pre-Hispanic period to 1502

Including Mayan civilization

For comprehensive works on Mayan culture, see 972.015

.820 2 Discovery, exploration, conquest, 1502–1535

.820 3 Early colonial period, 1535–1821

Including settlement by British; Spanish recognition of British sovereignty, 1798

.820 4 19th century, 1821–1900

Including period as dependency of Jamaica, 1882–1884

.820 5 20th century, 1900–

.83 Honduras

.830 1 Pre-Hispanic period to 1502

.830 2 Discovery, exploration, conquest, 1502–1535

.830 3 Colonial period, 1535–1821

Spanish rule to independence

.830 4 19th century, 1821–1900

.830 5 20th century, 1900–

.84 El Salvador

Divide 972.840 1–972.840 5 like 972.830 1–972.830 5, e.g., discovery and exploration 972.840 2

.85 Nicaragua

Divide 972.850 1–972.850 5 like 972.830 1–972.830 5, e.g., pre-Hispanic period 972.850 1

.86 Costa Rica

Divide 972.860 1–972.860 5 like 972.830 1–972.830 5, e.g., 19th century 972.860 4

972.9 West Indies (Antilles)

Including Caribbean area; comprehensive works on Greater Antilles

.901 Pre-Hispanic period to 1492

.902 Discovery, exploration, conquest, 1492–1608

Including colonization, colonial period

.903 17th and 18th centuries, 1608–1801

.904 19th century, 1801–1902

Including independence movements, autonomy, national development

.905 20th century, 1902–

For The West Indies federation, see 972.97

.91 Cuba

.910 1 Pre-Hispanic period to 1492

.910 2 Discovery, exploration, conquest, 1492–1514

.910 3 First colonial period, 1514–1763

Including siege of Havana and British occupation, 1762–1763

.910 4 Second colonial period, 1763–1810

.910 5 Third colonial period, 1810–1899

For Spanish-American War, see 973.89

.910 6 20th century, 1899–

.910 61 American military occupation, 1899–1902

.910 62 First republic, 1902–1933 [*formerly* *972.910 7]

.910 63 Second republic, 1933– [*formerly* *972.910 8]

[*.910 7–*.910 8] First and second republics, 1902–

Class in 972.910 62–972.910 63

.912 Havana

Including Isle of Pines

972.92 Jamaica

Joined The West Indies federation, 1957

For Turks and Caicos Islands, see 972.961; *comprehensive works on The West Indies federation,* 972.97

.920 1 Pre-Hispanic period to 1494

.920 2 16th century, 1494–1607

Including discovery, colonization

.920 3 17th and 18th centuries, 1607–1801

Including end of Spanish rule, establishment of English civil administration, English occupation

.920 4 19th century, 1801–1904

.920 5 20th century, 1904–

.921 Cayman Islands

.93 Dominican Republic

Including comprehensive works on Hispaniola

For Haiti, see 972.94

.930 1 Pre-Hispanic period to 1492

.930 2 Discovery, exploration, conquest, 1492–1608

.930 3 17th and 18th centuries, 1608–1801

.930 4 19th century, 1801–1902

.930 5 20th century, 1902–

.94 Haiti

Including Tortuga Island, Île de la Gonâve

For comprehensive works on Hispaniola, see 972.93

.940 1 Pre-Hispanic period to 1492

.940 2 Spanish rule, 1492–1625

.940 3 Haiti as French colony, 1625–1804

.940 4 Independence and republic, 1804–1915

.940 5 American occupation, 1915–1934

.940 6 Republic, 1934–

972.95 Puerto Rico

.950 1 Pre-Hispanic period to 1493

.950 2 16th century, 1493–1602

Including discovery, early colonial period

.950 3 17th and 18th centuries, 1602–1804

.950 4 19th century, 1804–1900

.950 5 20th century, 1900–

.950 53 Commonwealth, 1952–

.96 Bahamas

Including Grand Bahama Island, Great Abaco Island, Bimini Islands, Berry Islands, New Providence Island on which is Nassau, Andros Island, Eleuthera Island, Cat Island, Great Exuma Island, San Salvador (Watling) Island, Long Island, Crooked Island, Acklins Island, Mayaguana, Little Inagua Island, Great Inagua Island

.961 Turks and Caicos Islands

Jamaica dependencies

.97 Lesser Antilles (Caribbees)

Including comprehensive works on British West Indies, on The West Indies federation, 1957–

For a specific part of The West Indies, see the part, e.g., Jamaica 972.92

.971 Leeward Islands

Including French island of Guadeloupe and its dependencies; Netherlands islands of Saint Eustatius and Saba; Saint Martin, divided between France and the Netherlands; comprehensive works on French West Indies

For Martinique, see 972.982; *comprehensive works on Netherlands West Indies,* 972.986

.971 5 Leeward Islands in The West Indies federation

Antigua, Saint Christopher-Nevis, Montserrat

For comprehensive works on The West Indies federation, see 972.97

.972 Virgin Islands

972.98 Windward Islands

.981 Barbados

Joined The West Indies federation, 1957

For comprehensive works on The West Indies federation, see 972.97

.982 Martinique

Became overseas department of France, 1946

For comprehensive works on French West Indies, see 972.971

.983 Trinidad

Joined The West Indies federation, 1957

Including Tobago

For comprehensive works on The West Indies federation, see 972.97

.984 Grenada, Saint Vincent, The Grenadines, Saint Lucia, Dominica

Joined The West Indies federation, 1957

For comprehensive works on The West Indies federation, see 972.97

.986 Netherlands Antilles

Including Curaçao, Aruba, Bonaire; comprehensive works on Netherlands West Indies

For Netherlands Leeward Islands, see 972.971

.99 Bermuda

British crown colony

973 United States

For specific states of the United States, see 974–979

SUMMARY

973.1	Discovery and exploration to 1607
.2	Colonial period, 1607–1775
.3	Revolution and confederation, 1775–1789
.4	Constitutional period, 1789–1809
.5	Early 19th century, 1809–1845
.6	Middle 19th century, 1845–1861
.7	Civil War, 1861–1865
.8	Later 19th century, 1865–1901
.9	20th century, 1901–

.1 Discovery and exploration to 1607

Including comprehensive works on exploration of North America, of the New World

For discoveries and explorations in a specific country, see the country, e.g., Jacques Cartier in Canada 971.011; *North American Indians,* 970.1–970.6

.11 Pre-Columbian claims

.12 Chinese

.13 Norse

.14 Welsh

.15 Discoveries by Columbus

.16 Spanish and Portuguese explorations

.17 English explorations

.18 French explorations

.19 Explorations of other nations

973.2 Colonial period, 1607–1775

For history of a separate colony considered locally rather than as part of general colonial development, see the colony, e.g., colonial history of Pennsylvania 974.802, *Spanish settlement of Florida* 975.901

.21 Virginia settlements, 1607–1620

.22 Other early settlements, 1620–1643

Including settlements by English in New England and elsewhere, by Dutch on Hudson River, by Swedes on Delaware River; Pequot War, 1636–1638

.23 Middle 17th century, 1643–1664

Including New England Confederation

.24 Later 17th century, 1664–1689

Including conquest of New Netherland by English, 1664; King Philip's War, 1675–1676

.25 Period of early French wars, 1689–1732

Including King William's War, Queen Anne's War

For period of these wars in Canada, see 971.018; *comprehensive works on War of the League of Augsburg,* 944.033; *on War of the Spanish Succession,* 940.25

.26 Extension of English rule, 1732–1763

Including King George's War, French and Indian War

For period of these wars in Canada, see 971.018; *comprehensive works on War of the Austrian Succession, on Seven Years' War,* 940.25

.27 End of colonial period, 1763–1775

Including Pontiac's conspiracy, 1763–1764

For causes of the Revolution, see 973.311

973.3 **Revolution and confederation, 1775–1789**

For period of the American Revolution in England, see 942.073; *in Canada,* 971.024; *works of purely local interest, the specific locality, e.g., New York City during the Revolution* 974.72

SUMMARY

973.31	**Political and economic history**
.32	**Diplomatic history**
.33	**Military operations**
.34	**Military units**
.35	**Naval history**
.36	**Celebrations, commemorations, memorials**
.37	**Prisons**
.375	**Medical services**
.38	**Personal narratives**
.385	**American secret service and spies**
.381	**Treason**
.386	**British secret service and spies**
.39	**Graphic materials**

[.308 4] Audio-visual aids

Class in 973.39

.31 Political and economic history

Including Continental Congress; comprehensive works on consequences of Revolution

For diplomatic history, see 973.32; *military operations,* 973.33; *naval operations,* 973.35

.311 Causes

.311 1 Stamp Act, 1765–1766

.311 2 Commercial restrictions

Including Navigation Acts; Townshend Acts; burning of the Gaspée, June 17, 1772

For tax on tea, see 973.311 5

.311 3 Quartering of troops and Boston Massacre, March 5, 1770

.311 4 Taxation and representation

.311 5 Tax on tea and Boston Tea Party, December 16, 1773

.311 6 Boston Port Bill, 1774

973.313 Declaration of Independence, July 4, 1776

Including Fourth of July celebrations; Mecklenburg Declaration, May 20, 1775

If preferred, class Fourth of July celebrations in 394.268

.314 Loyalists (Tories)

For United Empire Loyalists in Canada, see 971.024; *treason during the Revolution,* 973.381

.315 Relation of special classes of persons to the Revolution

Except for classes of persons specifically provided for, e.g., doctors 973.375, divide like 000–999, e.g., clergy and the Revolution 973.315 2, Negroes and the Revolution 973.315 967

.317 Treaty of Peace, 1783

.318 Confederation, 1783–1789

.32 Diplomatic history

Relations with other nations

Divide like 940, e.g., relations with France 973.324

.33 Military operations

Including campaigns and battles on land; naval operations constituting part of a specific campaign or auxiliary to a specific land battle

For naval history, see 973.35

.331 Campaigns of 1775

Including sieges of Boston, Ticonderoga, Crown Point; Montgomery's and Arnold's expeditions to Canada

.331 1 Battles of Lexington and Concord

Including Patriots' Day celebrations

If preferred, class Patriots' Day celebrations in 394.268

.331 2 Battle of Bunker Hill

Including Bunker Hill Monument

If preferred, class Bunker Hill Monument in 917.446

.332 Campaigns of 1776

Including Hudson River campaign, British occupation of New York City; Battles of Long Island, Harlem Heights, White Plains, Fort Washington; Washington in New Jersey; Battles of Trenton and Princeton (January 3, 1777)

973.333 Campaigns of 1777

Including Burgoyne's campaign, Battles of Bennington and Saratoga; Battle of Fort Stanwix (Fort Schuyler or Oriskany); Howe's campaign, British occupation of Philadelphia; Battles of Brandywine, Paoli, Germantown

.334 Campaigns of 1778

Including Battle of Monmouth, evacuation of Philadelphia, Indian attacks in New York State; Rhode Island campaign; capture of Savannah; Clark's expedition to the Illinois, 1778–1779

.334 1 Winter at Valley Forge, 1777–1778

.335 Campaigns of 1779

Including Penobscot expedition, Sullivan's expedition; Battles of Stony Point, Paulus Hook

.336 Campaigns of 1780

Including siege of Charleston; Battles of Waxhaws, Camden, King's Mountain

.337 Campaigns of 1781

.337 5 Siege of Yorktown

Including surrender of Cornwallis

.338 Campaigns of 1782

.339 Events of 1783

Including British evacuation of New York; Evacuation Day celebrations

If preferred, class Evacuation Day celebrations in 394.268

.34 Military units

Including organization, history, rosters, service records

For campaigns and battles, see 973.33; *medical services,* 973.375; *rolls of honor, lists of dead,* 973.36; *secret service,* 973.385–973.386

.341 British troops

.342 Mercenaries

Including Hessians

.343 Indians

973.344–973.347 American troops

973.344 Troops from northern states

Divide like 974, e.g., Pennsylvania troops 973.344 8; if preferred, arrange alphabetically by states, using A1 for comprehensive works

If desired, arrange troops from all states alphabetically here

.345 Troops from southern states

Divide like 975, e.g., Virginia troops 973.345 5; if preferred, arrange alphabetically by states, using A1 for comprehensive works

If desired, arrange all states alphabetically in 973.344

.346 Auxiliaries

Including Poles, Swedes, Spanish

.347 French troops

.349 Special topics

Including Conway Cabal, mutiny of Pennsylvanians, Newburgh addresses

.35 Naval history

Including naval operations, naval units, privateering

For naval operations constituting part of a specific campaign or auxiliary to a specific land battle, see the campaign or battle, e.g., French fleet at Yorktown 973.337 5

.36 Celebrations, commemorations, memorials

Comprehensive works

Including rolls of honor, lists of dead

For celebrations, commemorations, memorials of a specific event, see the event, e.g., Fourth of July celebrations 973.313; *a specific memorial not associated with a specific event, the place, e.g., Washington memorial headquarters at Newburgh* 917.473 1; *organizations commemorating the Revolution,* 369.13; *architecture of war memorials,* 725.94; *national memorial cemeteries,* 718.8

[†.367] Washington's headquarters at Newburgh and Morristown

Class headquarters at Newburgh in 917.473 1; at Morristown in 917.497 4

973.37 Prisons

Including exchange of prisoners

.371 British prisons

Including prison ships

.372 American prisons

.375 Medical services

Including activities of medical personnel in the war

.376 Hospitals

.38 Personal narratives

For personal narratives relating to a specific battle, event, or subject, see the subject, e.g., British prison ships 973.371

.381 Treason

For Loyalists, see 973.314

.382 Treason of Benedict Arnold

.383 Treason of Charles Lee

.385 American secret service and spies

Including Nathan Hale

.386 British secret service and spies

Including Major John André

.39 Graphic materials

Including maps, pictorial histories, cartoons

.4 Constitutional period, 1789–1809

.41 Administration of George Washington, 1789–1797

.42 Indian wars, 1790–1791

.43 Washington's second term, 1793–1797

.44 Administration of John Adams, 1797–1801

.45 Troubles with France

.46 Administration of Thomas Jefferson, 1801–1809

Including Louisiana Purchase, 1803

.47 Wars with Barbary States

.48 Jefferson's second term, 1805–1809

973.5 Early 19th century, 1809–1845

.51 Administration of James Madison, 1809–1817

.52 War of 1812, 1812–1814

For period of this war in England, see 942.073; *in Canada,* 971.034

[.520 84] Audio-visual aids

Class in 973.529

.521 Political and economic history

Including causes, consequences; Treaty of Ghent

For diplomatic history, see 973.522; *military operations,* 973.523; *naval operations,* 973.525

.522 Diplomatic history

Relations with other nations

.523 Military operations

Including campaigns and battles on land in the Northwest, New York, New England, Canada; naval operations constituting part of a specific campaign or auxiliary to a specific land battle

For naval history, see 973.525

.523 8 Campaign in the South

Including Battle of Bladensburg, burning of Washington, bombardment of Fort McHenry

.523 9 Battle of New Orleans

.524 Military units

Including organization, history, rosters, service records

For campaigns and battles, see 973.523; *medical services,* 973.527 5; *rolls of honor, lists of dead,* 973.526; *secret service,* 973.528 5

.524 1 British troops

.524 2 Indian allies

973.524 4–.524 7 American troops

Divide like 974–977, e.g., Virginia troops 973.524 55, using 973.524 4 for comprehensive works; if preferred, arrange alphabetically by states in 973.524 4, using A1 for comprehensive works; or arrange states in each region alphabetically, e.g., Virginia troops 973.524 5 V8

.525 Naval history

Including naval operations, naval units, privateering

For naval operations constituting part of a specific campaign or auxiliary to a specific land battle, see the campaign or battle, e.g., naval fighting at Battle of New Orleans 973.523 9

.525 4 Battle of Lake Erie

.525 6 Battle of Lake Champlain

.526 Celebrations, commemorations, memorials

Comprehensive works

Including rolls of honor, lists of dead

For celebrations, commemorations, memorials of a specific event, see the event, e.g., Perry's Victory and International Peace Memorial 973.525 4; *organizations commemorating the war,* 369.14; *architecture of war memorials,* 725.94; *national memorial cemeteries,* 718.8

.527 Prisons

Including exchange of prisoners

.527 5 Medical services

Including activities of medical personnel in the war; hospitals

.528 Personal narratives

For personal narratives relating to a specific battle, event, or subject, see the subject, e.g., prison experiences 973.527

.528 5 Secret service and spies

.529 Graphic materials

Including maps, pictorial histories, cartoons

.53 War with Algeria, 1815

.54 Administration of James Monroe, 1817–1825

Including First Seminole War, 1818; purchase of Florida, 1819

For history of Florida, see 975.9

973.55 Administration of John Quincy Adams, 1825–1829

.56 Administration of Andrew Jackson, 1829–1837

Including Black Hawk War, 1832

.561 Nullification

For constitutional law, see 342.73

.57 Administration of Martin Van Buren, 1837–1841

Including Second Seminole War, 1835–1842

.58 Administrations of William Henry Harrison and John Tyler, 1841–1845

.6 Middle 19th century, 1845–1861

Period of westward expansion

For events of this period in relation to the Civil War, see 973.711

.61 Administration of James Knox Polk, 1845–1849

Including annexation of Texas, 1845; settlement of Northwest boundary, 1846

For history of Texas, see 976.4; *of Old Oregon Territory,* 979.5

.62 Mexican War, 1845–1848

For period of this war in Mexico, see 972.05

[.620 84] Audio-visual aids

Class in 973.629

.621 Political and economic history

Including causes, consequences; Treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo, Mexican cession

For diplomatic history, see 973.622; *military operations,* 973.623; *naval operations,* 973.625

.622 Diplomatic history

Relations with other nations

.623 Military operations

Including campaigns and battles in New Mexico, California, Mexico

For naval operations, see 973.625

973.624 Military units

Including organization, history, rosters, service records; state organizations

For campaigns and battles, see 973.623; *medical services,* 973.627 5; *rolls of honor, lists of dead,* 973.626

.625 Naval history

Including naval operations, naval units

.626 Celebrations, commemorations, memorials

Comprehensive works

Including rolls of honor, lists of dead

For celebrations, commemorations, memorials of a specific event, see the event, e.g., commemorations of cession of New Mexico 973.621; *organizations commemorating the war,* 369.14; *architecture of war memorials,* 725.94; *national memorial cemeteries,* 718.8

.627 Prisons

.627 5 Medical services

Including activities of medical personnel in the war; hospitals

.628 Personal narratives

For personal narratives relating to a specific subject, see the subject, e.g., campaign experiences 973.623

.629 Graphic materials

Including maps, pictorial histories, cartoons

.63 Administration of Zachary Taylor, 1849–1850

.64 Administration of Millard Fillmore, 1850–1853

.66 Administration of Franklin Pierce, 1853–1857

Including Gadsden Purchase

.68 Administration of James Buchanan, 1857–1861

973.7 Civil War, 1861–1865

Administration of Abraham Lincoln

For history of Confederate States of America, see 973.713; *history of the South,* 975; *local history of Confederate States,* 975–976; *period of this war in Canada,* 971.04

SUMMARY

973.71	**Political and economic history**
.72	**Diplomatic history**
.73	**Military operations**
.74	**Military units**
.75	**Naval history**
.76	**Celebrations, commemorations, memorials**
.77	**Prisons, health, social services**
.78	**Personal narratives**
.783	**Union military life and customs**
.784	**Confederate military life and customs**
.785	**Union secret service and spies**
.786	**Confederate secret service and spies**
.79	**Graphic materials**

[.708 4] Audio-visual aids

Class in 973.79

.71 Political and economic history

Including efforts to preserve peace

For diplomatic history, see 973.72; *military operations,* 973.73; *naval operations,* 973.75

.711 Causes

.711 1 Slavery

.711 2 Extension of slavery

.711 3 Compromises

Including Missouri Compromise, Compromise of 1850, Wilmot Proviso

.711 4 Abolition movement

.711 5 Fugitive slaves

Including underground railway, Dred Scott decision

.711 6 John Brown's raid

973.713 Secession

Including persons in the South [*formerly* †973.716]; comprehensive works on the Confederate States of America, on the South during the war

For history of the South, see 975; *local history of Confederate States,* 975–976

.714 Consequences

Including Emancipation Proclamation, establishment of Freedmen's Bureau

For reconstruction, see 973.8; *emancipation,* 326; *postwar relief work of Freedmen's Bureau,* 973.777

.715 Relation of special classes of persons to the war

Except for classes of persons specifically provided for, e.g., doctors 973.775, divide like 000–999, e.g., college students and the war 973.715 378

[†.716] Southern side

Class in 973.713

.717 Southern Union sympathizers

.718 Northern Confederate sympathizers

Including Copperheads

.72 Diplomatic history

Including relations of Union with other nations; Trent Affair [*formerly also* †973.751, *973.75]

.721 Relations of Confederate States with other nations

.73 Military operations

Including campaigns and battles on land; naval operations constituting part of a specific campaign or auxiliary to a specific land battle

For naval history, see 973.75

.731 Opening phase, 1861–1862

Including bombardment of Fort Sumter, First Battle of Bull Run (Manassas); operations in the West, May 1861–February 1862; in the South, July 1861–April 1862

973.732 Spring and summer campaigns, 1862

Including campaigns to open Mississippi River: capture of Fort Henry, of Fort Donelson, fall of Nashville, occupation of Memphis, Battle of Shiloh (Pittsburg Landing), capture of New Orleans, siege of Corinth; campaigns of Army of the Potomac: Peninsular campaign from siege of Yorktown to Second Battle of Bull Run (Manassas)

For Battle of Monitor and Merrimac, see 973.752

.733 Summer and fall campaigns, 1862

Including operations in the South other than those connected with opening the Mississippi, April 1862–June 1863; in the West, June 1862–January 1863; in Texas, New Mexico, Arizona to May 1863; Burnside's offensive against Richmond with defeat at Battle of Fredericksburg

.733 6 Lee's invasion of Maryland

Including Battles of Harper's Ferry, South Mountain, Antietam (Sharpsburg)

.734 Summer campaigns, 1863

Including trans-Mississippi campaigns to end of year; western campaigns: siege of Port Hudson, Louisiana; eastern campaigns: Hooker's offensive against Lee stopt at Chancellorsville

.734 4 Grant's siege of Vicksburg

.734 9 Battle of Gettysburg

.735 Fall campaigns, 1863

Including operations in the South: bombardment of Fort Sumter and Charleston, Chickamauga and Knoxville campaigns

.735 9 Chattanooga campaign

Including Battles of Lookout Mountain, Missionary Ridge

.736 Winter and spring campaigns, 1864

Including operations in the East, January–May; in the South, January–November; Grant and Meade offensive from Wilderness to Cold Harbor; Peninsular campaign followed by engagements at New Market, Lynchburg, Monocacy, Fort Stevens

973.737 Summer and fall campaigns, 1864

Including Sherman's Atlanta campaign, Sheridan in the Shenandoah Valley, siege of Petersburg

.737 8 Savannah campaign

Including Sherman's march to the sea

.738 Final phase, 1865

Including Sherman's march thru the Carolinas, evacuation of Charleston, Sheridan and Grant in Virginia, surrender of Lee at Appomattox, surrender of Johnston to Sherman, final capitulation in trans-Mississippi area

.74 Military units

Including organization, history, rosters, service records; foreign elements

For campaigns and battles, see 973.73; *medical services,* 973.775; *chaplains,* 973.778; *secret service,* 973.785–973.786; *rolls of honor, lists of dead,* 973.76

.741 Union Army

.741 5 Negro troops

.742 Confederate Army

Including guerrilla fighters

.744–.749 State organizations

Including Negro troops of specific states

Divide like 974–979, e.g., Crocker's Iowa Brigade 973.747 7; if preferred, arrange alphabetically by states in 973.744; or arrange Union organizations alphabetically by states in 973.744, Confederate in 973.745

.75 Naval history

Including naval operations, Union naval units, specific Union ships, privateering, blockade running

Class Trent Affair [*formerly* *973.75] in 973.72

For naval operations constituting part of a specific campaign or auxiliary to a specific land battle, see the campaign or battle, e.g., Farragut's participation in capture of New Orleans 973.732

[†.751] Trent Affair

Class in 973.72

.752 Battle of Monitor and Merrimac

.754 Battle of Kearsarge and Alabama off France

973.757 Confederate Navy

Including naval units, specific ships

.76 Celebrations, commemorations, memorials

Comprehensive works

Including rolls of honor, lists of dead

For celebrations, commemorations, memorials of a specific event, see the event, e.g., Lincoln's Gettysburg Address 973.734 9; *a specific memorial not associated with a specific event, the place, e.g., Confederate White House at Richmond* 917.554 51; *organizations commemorating the war,* 369.15–369.17; *architecture of war memorials,* 725.94; *national memorial cemeteries,* 718.8

[†.768] Memorial Day

Class in 394.268

.77 Prisons, health, social services

Including services for armed forces and civilians; exchange of prisoners

.771 Confederate prisons

.772 Union prisons

.775 Medical services

Including activities of medical personnel in the war

.776 Hospitals

.777 Welfare work

Including United States Sanitary Commission; postwar relief work, e.g., Freedmen's Bureau

For soldiers' homes, see 362.61; *establishment of Freedmen's Bureau,* 973.714

.778 Chaplains

Including United States Christian Commission

.78 Personal narratives

For personal narratives relating to a specific battle, event, or subject, see the subject, e.g., Union spies 973.785

.781 Union side

.782 Confederate side

.783 Union military life and customs

.784 Confederate military life and customs

Including Southern home life during the war

973.785 Union secret service and spies

.786 Confederate secret service and spies

.79 Graphic materials

Including maps, pictorial histories, cartoons

.8 Later 19th century, 1865–1901

Period of reconstruction

.81 Administration of Andrew Johnson, 1865–1869

Including purchase of Alaska, 1867

For history of Alaska, see 979.8

.82 Administration of Ulysses Simpson Grant, 1869–1877

.83 Administration of Rutherford Birchard Hayes, 1877–1881

.84 Administrations of James Abram Garfield and Chester Alan Arthur, 1881–1885

.85 First administration of Grover Cleveland, 1885–1889

.86 Administration of Benjamin Harrison, 1889–1893

.87 Second administration of Grover Cleveland, 1893–1897

.88 Administration of William McKinley, 1897–1901

Including annexation of Hawaii

For history of Hawaii, see 996.9

.89 Spanish-American War, 1898

For period of this war in Spain, see 946.08

[.890 84] Audio-visual aids

Class in 973.899

.891 Political and economic history

Including causes, consequences: acquisition of Philippines, Puerto Rico, Guam

For diplomatic history, see 973.892; *military operations,* 973.893; *naval operations,* 973.895; *history of Philippines,* 991.4; *of Puerto Rico,* 972.95; *of Guam,* 996.7

.892 Diplomatic history

Relations with other nations

973.893 Military operations

Including campaigns and battles on land

For naval history, see 973.895

.893 3 Cuban campaign

.893 5 Puerto Rican campaign

.893 7 Philippine campaign

.894 Military units

Including organization, history, rosters, service records

For campaigns and battles, see 973.893; *medical services,* 973.897 5; *rolls of honor, lists of dead,* 973.896

.895 Naval history

Including organization of naval units; operations: Battle of Manila Bay, sinking of the Merrimac, destruction of Cervera's squadron

.896 Celebrations, commemorations, memorials

Comprehensive works

Including rolls of honor, lists of dead

For celebrations, commemorations, memorials of a specific event, see the event, e.g., commemorations of Battle of Manila Bay 973.895; *organizations commemorating the war,* 369.18; *architecture of war memorials,* 725.94; *national memorial cemeteries,* 718.8

.897 Prisons, health, social services

Including services for armed forces and civilians

.897 5 Medical services

Including activities of medical personnel in the war; hospitals

.898 Personal narratives

For personal narratives relating to a specific battle, event, or subject, see the subject, e.g., sailors' narratives 973.895

.899 Graphic materials

Including maps, pictorial histories, cartoons

973.9 20th century, 1901–

.91 Early 20th century, 1901–1953

.911 Administration of Theodore Roosevelt, 1901–1909

.912 Administration of William Howard Taft, 1909–1913

.913 Administration of Woodrow Wilson, 1913–1921

Including purchase of Virgin Islands
For history of Virgin Islands, see 972.972

.914 Administration of Warren Gamaliel Harding, 1921–1923

.915 Administration of Calvin Coolidge, 1923–1929

.916 Administration of Herbert Clark Hoover, 1929–1933

.917 Administration of Franklin Delano Roosevelt, 1933–1945

.918 Administration of Harry S. Truman, 1945–1953 [*formerly* *973.92]

.92 Later 20th century, 1953–

Class administration of Harry S. Truman [*formerly* *973.92] in 973.918

.921 Administration of Dwight David Eisenhower, 1953–

974–979 State and local history of United States

Libraries which prefer alphabetic to systematic arrangement of local history under each state may add, to the number for the state, 09 for regions, geographic features, counties, and 093 for cities, towns, villages; e.g., Hancock County, Maine 974.109 H2, Mount Desert Island 974.109 M8, Bangor 974.109 3 B2

SUMMARY

974 Northeastern states
- **.1 Maine**
- **.2 New Hampshire**
- **.3 Vermont**
- **.4 Massachusetts**
- **.5 Rhode Island**
- **.6 Connecticut**
- **.7 New York**
- **.8 Pennsylvania**
- **.9 New Jersey**

975 Southeastern states
- **.1 Delaware**
- **.2 Maryland**
- **.3 District of Columbia**
- **.4 West Virginia**
- **.5 Virginia**
- **.6 North Carolina**
- **.7 South Carolina**
- **.8 Georgia**
- **.9 Florida**

976 South central states
- **.1 Alabama**
- **.2 Mississippi**
- **.3 Louisiana**
- **.4 Texas**
- **.6 Oklahoma**
- **.7 Arkansas**
- **.8 Tennessee**
- **.9 Kentucky**

977 North central states
- **.1 Ohio**
- **.2 Indiana**
- **.3 Illinois**
- **.4 Michigan**
- **.5 Wisconsin**
- **.6 Minnesota**
- **.7 Iowa**
- **.8 Missouri**

978	**Western states**
.1	**Kansas**
.2	**Nebraska**
.3	**South Dakota**
.4	**North Dakota**
.6	**Montana**
.7	**Wyoming**
.8	**Colorado**
.9	**New Mexico**
979	**Far western states**
.1	**Arizona**
.2	**Utah**
.3	**Nevada**
.4	**California**
.5	**Oregon**
.6	**Idaho**
.7	**Washington**
.8	**Alaska**

974 Northeastern states

Including New England, Middle Atlantic states; comprehensive works on Appalachian Mountains, Connecticut River

.1 Maine

974.101–974.104 Period divisions

.101 Discovery and early settlement to 1620

.102 Colonial period, 1620–1776

.103 Postcolonial period and statehood, 1776–1865

.104 Modern period, 1865–

974.11–974.195 Geographic divisions

.11 Aroostook County

Including Aroostook River

.12 Somerset County

Including Kennebec River

.125 Piscataquis County

Including Moosehead Lake, Mount Katahdin, Chesuncook Lake

.13 Penobscot County

Including Penobscot River

.14 Washington County

Including Machias River and Bay

974.145 Hancock County

Including Mount Desert Island, Acadia National Park, Deer Island, Frenchman Bay

.15 Waldo County

.153 Knox County

Including Isle au Haut, Vinalhaven Island, Monhegan Island

.157 Lincoln County

Including Boothbay Harbor

.16 Kennebec County

Including Augusta

.17 Franklin County

Including Rangeley Lakes

.175 Oxford County

.18 Androscoggin County

Including Androscoggin River

.185 Sagadahoc County

.19 Cumberland County

Including Sebago Lake, Casco Bay

.195 York County

Including Isles of Shoals

.2 New Hampshire

Including upper Connecticut River

.201–.204 Period divisions

Divide like 974.101–794.104, e.g., colonial period of New Hampshire 974.202

974.21–974.29 Geographic divisions

.21 Coos County

Including Connecticut Lakes, Umbagog Lake

.22 White Mountains

Including Presidential Range, Mount Washington

.23 Grafton County

Including Franconia Mountains, Squam Lake

.24 Carroll County

974.245 Belknap County
Including Lake Winnipesaukee
.25 Strafford County
.26 Rockingham County
For Isles of Shoals, see 974.195
.27 Merrimac County
Including Concord, Merrimac River
.275 Sullivan County
.28 Hillsboro County
.29 Cheshire County
Including Mount Monadnock

.3 Vermont
Including Green Mountains
.301–.304 Period divisions
Divide like 974.101–974.104, e.g., early settlement of Vermont 974.301

974.31–974.39 Geographic divisions

.31 Grand Isle County
Including Lake Champlain in Vermont
.313 Franklin County
Including Missisquoi River
.317 Chittenden County
Including Winooski River
.32 Orleans County
.325 Essex County
Including Maidstone Lake
.33 Caledonia County
.335 Lamoille County
Including Lamoille River, Mount Mansfield
.34 Washington County
Including Montpelier
.35 Addison County

974.36 Orange County
.365 Windsor County
Including White River
.37 Rutland County
.38 Bennington County
.39 Windham County

.4 Massachusetts
Including Connecticut River in Massachusetts
.401–.404 Period divisions
Divide like 974.101–974.104, e.g., colonial period of Massachusetts 974.402

974.41–974.497 Geographic divisions

.41 Berkshire County
Including Berkshire Hills, Hoosic River
.42 Franklin County
Including Deerfield River
.423 Hampshire County
.426 Hampden County
.43 Worcester County
Including Wachusett Mountain
.44 Middlesex County
Including Charles River
.45 Essex County
Including Cape Ann
.46 Suffolk County
Boston metropolitan area
.47 Norfolk County
.48 Plymouth County
Including Plymouth Bay
.485 Bristol County
.49 Barnstable County (Cape Cod)
Including Cape Cod Bay, Buzzards Bay

974.494 Dukes County

Including Martha's Vineyard, Elizabeth Islands

.497 Nantucket County (Nantucket Island)

.5 Rhode Island

Including Narragansett Bay

.501–.504 Period divisions

Divide like 974.101–974.104, e.g., modern Rhode Island 974.504

974.51–974.59 Geographic divisions

.51 Providence County

.52 Providence

.53 Pawtucket

.54 Kent County

.55 Bristol County

.56 Newport County

.57 Newport

.58 Block Island

Including Block Island Sound

.59 Washington County

.6 Connecticut

Including Connecticut River and Valley in Connecticut, Long Island Sound

For Long Island, see 974.721

.601–.604 Period divisions

Divide like 974.101–974.104, e.g., postcolonial period of Connecticut 974.603

974.61–974.69 Geographic divisions

.61 Litchfield County

Including Litchfield Hills

.62 Hartford County

.63 Hartford

974.64 Tolland County

.645 Windham County

.65 New London County

.66 Middlesex County

.67 New Haven County

.68 New Haven

.69 Fairfield County

.7 New York

.701–.704 Period divisions

Divide like 974.101–974.104, e.g., colonial period of New York 974.702

974.71–974.799 Geographic divisions

.71 Borough of Manhattan (New York County, Manhattan Island)

Including comprehensive works on New York City

For a specific borough of New York City, see the borough, e.g., Queens 974.724

.72 New York metropolitan area

.721 Long Island

For Long Island Sound, see 974.6

[†.722] Kings County

Class in 974.723

.723 Borough of Brooklyn (Kings County [*formerly* †974.722])

Including Coney Island

.724 Borough of Queens (Queens County)

.724 5 Nassau County

.725 Suffolk County

Including Gardiners, Shelter, Plum, Fishers Islands; Peconic, Gardiners Bay

.726 Staten Island (Borough of Richmond, Richmond County)

.727 Westchester County

974.727 5 Borough of the Bronx (Bronx County)
.728 Rockland County
.73 Southeastern counties
Including Hudson River
.731 Orange County
.732 Putnam County
.733 Dutchess County
.734 Ulster County
Including Ashokan Reservoir
.735 Sullivan County
.736 Delaware County
.737 Greene County
.738 Catskill Mountains
.739 Columbia County
.74 Middle eastern counties
.741 Rensselaer County
.742 Albany County
.743 Albany
.744 Schenectady County
.745 Schoharie County
.746 Montgomery County
.747 Fulton County
.748 Saratoga County
.749 Washington County
.75 Northern counties
.751 Warren County
Including Lake George
.752 Hamilton County
.753 Adirondack Mountains
.753 5 Essex County
Including Mount Marcy, Lake Placid, Keene Valley, Whiteface Mountain

974.754 Lake Champlain
Comprehensive works
.754 5 Clinton County
Including Ausable Chasm
.755 Franklin County
Including Saranac Lakes
.756 Saint Lawrence County
.757 Jefferson County
Including Alexandria Bay
.758 Thousand Islands
Comprehensive works
.759 Lewis County
.76 North central counties
Including Mohawk River and Valley
.761 Herkimer County
.762 Oneida County
Including Oneida Lake
.763 Utica
.764 Madison County
.765 Onondaga County
Including Skaneatales Lake, Lake Onondaga
.766 Syracuse
.767 Oswego County
.768 Cayuga County
Including Cayuga Lake, Owasco Lake
.769 Seneca County
Including Seneca Lake
.77 South central counties
.771 Tompkins County
.772 Cortland County
.773 Chenango County
Including Chenango River

974.774 Otsego County
.775 Broome County
.776 Binghamton
.777 Tioga County
.778 Chemung County
.779 Elmira
.78 West central counties
Including Finger Lakes region
For a specific lake of the Finger Lakes region, see the lake, e.g., Lake Onondaga 974.765
.781 Schuyler County
Including Watkins Glen
.782 Yates County
Including Keuka Lake
.783 Steuben County
.784 Allegany County
.785 Livingston County
.786 Ontario County
Including Canandaigua Lake
.787 Wayne County
.788 Monroe County
Including Genesee River
.789 Rochester
.79 Western counties
Including Lake Ontario [*formerly* *971.3]
.791 Orleans County
.792 Genesee County
.793 Wyoming County
.794 Cattaraugus County
Including Allegany State Park
.795 Chautauqua County
Including Chautauqua Lake

974.796 Erie County
Including Grand Island
.797 Buffalo
.798 Niagara County
.799 Niagara Falls
For comprehensive works on Niagara Falls, see 971.339

.8 Pennsylvania
Including Susquehanna River
.801–.804 Period divisions
Divide like 974.101–974.104, e.g., modern Pennsylvania 974.804

974.81–974.899 Geographic divisions

.81 Southeastern counties
Including Schuylkill River
.811 Philadelphia metropolitan area
Including Philadelphia County
.812 Montgomery County
.813 Chester County
Including Valley Forge State Park
.814 Delaware County
Including Brandywine Creek
.815 Lancaster County
.816 Berks County
.817 Schuylkill County
.818 Dauphin County
Including Harrisburg
.819 Lebanon County
.82 Eastern counties
Including Pocono Mountains
.821 Bucks County
.822 Northampton County

974.823 Wayne County
Including Lake Wallenpaupack
.824 Pike County
.825 Monroe County
Including Delaware Water Gap
.826 Carbon County
.827 Lehigh County

.83 Northeastern counties
.831 Northumberland County
.832 Luzerne County
Including Wyoming Valley
.833 Wilkes-Barre
.834 Susquehanna County
.835 Wyoming County
.836 Lackawanna County
.837 Scranton
.838 Columbia County
.839 Montour County

.84 Southeast central counties
.841 York County
.842 Adams County
Including Gettsyburg National Military Park
.843 Cumberland County
.844 Franklin County
Including Tuscarora Mountains
.845 Perry County
Including Juniata River
.846 Mifflin County
.847 Juniata County
.848 Union County
.849 Snyder County

974.85 Northeast central counties
Including West Branch of Susquehanna River
.851 Lycoming County
.853 Centre County
.854 Clinton County
.855 Potter County
.856 Tioga County
.857 Bradford County
.859 Sullivan County

.86 Northwest central counties
Including Allegheny River
.861 Clearfield County
.862 Jefferson County
.863 McKean County
.865 Elk County
.866 Cameron County
.867 Warren County
.868 Forest County
.869 Clarion County

.87 Southwest central counties
Including Allegheny Mountains in Pennsylvania
.871 Bedford County
.872 Fulton County
.873 Huntingdon County
.875 Blair County
.876 Altoona
.877 Cambria County
.879 Somerset County

.88 Southwestern counties
Including Chestnut Ridge, Laurel Hill, Monongahela River
.881 Westmoreland County

974.882 Washington County
.883 Greene County
.884 Fayette County
.885 Allegheny County
.886 Pittsburgh metropolitan area

For a specific area of Pittsburgh metropolitan area, see the area, e.g., Aliquippa 974.892

.888 Armstrong County
.889 Indiana County
.89 Northwestern counties
.891 Butler County
.892 Beaver County
.893 Lawrence County
.895 Mercer County
.896 Venango County
.897 Crawford County
.899 Erie County
.9 New Jersey

Including Delaware River

.901–.904 Period divisions

Divide like 974.101–974.104, e.g., colonial period of New Jersey 974.902

For colonial period of East Jersey, see 974.91; *of West Jersey,* 974.95

974.91–974.998 Geographic divisions

.91 East Jersey, 1676–1702

Colony occupying area north of a line extending from Little Egg Harbor to Delaware Water Gap settled by English and Scottish Calvinists

For subsequent history of area composing East Jersey, see 974.92–974.948; *of a specific county of East Jersey, the county, e.g., Monmouth* 974.946

.92 Northern New Jersey
.921 Bergen County

Including Palisades, Hackensack River

974.923 Passaic County
.924 Paterson
.926 Hudson County
.927 Jersey City
.928 Hoboken
.93 Northeastern New Jersey

Including Passaic River

.931 Essex County
.932 Newark
.933 Orange
.936 Union County
.937 Elizabeth
.938 Rahway
.94 Central New Jersey
.941 Middlesex County
.942 New Brunswick
.944 Somerset County

Including Raritan [*formerly* †974.972], Raritan River

.946 Monmouth County

Including Navesink River, Sandy Hook

.948 Ocean County

Including Toms River, Barnegat Bay

.95 West Jersey, 1676–1702

Colony occupying area south of a line extending from Little Egg Harbor to Delaware Water Gap settled by Society of Friends

For subsequent history of area composing West Jersey, see 974.96–974.998; *of a specific county of West Jersey, the county, e.g., Burlington* 974.961

.96 West central New Jersey
.961 Burlington County

Including Mullica River

974.965 Mercer County

.966 Trenton

.967 Princeton

.97 Northwestern New Jersey

.971 Hunterdon County

[†.972] Raritan

Class in 974.944

.974 Morris County

Including Lake Hopatcong, Morristown National Historical Park

.976 Sussex County

Including Kittatinny Mountains

.978 Warren County

.98 Upper southern New Jersey

.981 Gloucester County

.984 Atlantic County

Including Great Egg Harbor River

.985 Atlantic City

.987 Camden County

.988 Camden

.99 Lower southern New Jersey

.991 Salem County

.992 Salem

.994 Cumberland County

.995 Bridgeton

.998 Cape May County

Including Cape May

975 Southeastern states (South Atlantic states)

Including comprehensive works on the South, Piedmont Plateau, Atlantic Coastal Plain, Intracoastal Waterway

For Confederate States of America in United States history, see 973.713

.1 Delaware

Including Delaware Bay

.101–.104 Period divisions

Divide like 974.101–974.104, e.g., colonial period of Delaware 975.102

975.11–975.17 Geographic divisions

.11 New Castle County

.12 Wilmington

.14 Kent County

.15 Dover

.17 Sussex County

Including Rehoboth Bay

.2 Maryland

Including Potomac River

For Chesapeake Bay, see 975.518

.201–.202 Period divisions

Divide like 974.101–974.104, e.g., postcolonial period of Maryland 975.203

975.21–975.297 Geographic divisions

.21 Eastern Shore

Including Delmarva Peninsula

.221 Worcester County

Including Chincoteague Bay, Assateague Island

.223 Somerset County

Including Tangier Sound, Smith Island

.225 Wicomico County

975.227 Dorchester County
Including Bloodsworth, Hooper Islands
.231 Caroline County
Including Choptank River
.232 Talbot County
.234 Queen Annes County
Including Kent Island, Chester River
.236 Kent County
.238 Cecil County
Including Elk River

.24 Southern counties
.241 Saint Marys County
Including Patuxent River
.244 Calvert County
.247 Charles County
.251 Prince Georges County
.255 Anne Arundel County
.256 Annapolis
.26 Baltimore metropolitan area

.27 North central counties
Piedmont Plateau of Maryland
.271 Baltimore County
.274 Harford County
.277 Carroll County
.281 Howard County
.284 Montgomery County
.287 Frederick County
.288 Frederick

.29 Western counties
Ridge and valley region
.291 Washington County
.292 Hagerstown

975.294 Allegany County
.295 Cumberland
.297 Garrett County

.3 District of Columbia (Washington)
Including comprehensive works on Washington metropolitan area

.4 West Virginia
.401–.404 Period divisions
Divide like 974.101–974.104, e.g., modern period 975.404

975.41–975.499 Geographic divisions

.41 Ohio Valley region
.411 Northern Panhandle counties
.412 Hancock County
.413 Brooke County
.414 Ohio County
.415 Wheeling
.416 Marshall County
.418 Wetzel County
.419 Tyler County

.42 Little Kanawha Valley counties
Including Little Kanawha River
.421 Pleasants County
.422 Wood County
.423 Parkersburg
.424 Ritchie County
.426 Wirt County
.427 Gilmer County
.429 Calhoun County

.43 Kanawha Valley counties
Including Kanawha River
.431 Jackson County
.433 Mason County

975.435 Putnam County
.436 Roane County
.437 Kanawha County
.438 Charleston
.439 Boone County

.44 Southwestern border counties

.441 Guyandot Valley
Including Guyandot River
.442 Cabell County
.443 Lincoln County
.444 Logan County
.445 Wyoming County

.446 Tug Valley
Including Tug Fork
.447 Wayne County
.448 Mingo County
.449 McDowell County

.45 Central Plateau

.451 Monongahela Valley counties
Including Monongahela River in West Virginia
.452 Monongahela County
.453 Morgantown
.454 Marion County
.455 Taylor County
.456 Doddridge County
.457 Harrison County
.458 Clarksburg
.459 Barbour County

.46 Central counties of Central Plateau
.461 Lewis County
.462 Upshur County

975.464 Elk Valley
.465 Webster County
.466 Braxton County
.467 Clay County
.468 Gauley Valley
.469 Nicholas County

.47 New River Valley
.471 Fayette County
.473 Raleigh County
.474 Mercer County
.476 Summers County
.478 Monroe County

.48 Allegheny Crest
Including mountain regions

.481 Cheat Valley counties
.482 Preston County
.483 Tucker County
.485 Randolph County

.486 Greenbrier Valley counties
.487 Pocahontas County
.488 Greenbrier County
.489 White Sulphur Springs

.49 Eastern Panhandle counties
Including Potomac Valley of West Virginia
.491 Pendleton County
.492 Grant County
.493 Hardy County
.494 Mineral County
.495 Hampshire County
.496 Morgan County
.497 Berkeley County
.499 Jefferson County

975.5 **Virginia**

Including Blue Ridge

.501–.504 Period divisions

Divide like 974.101–974.104, e.g., colonial period in Virginia 975.502

975.51–975.599 1 Geographic divisions

.51 Tidewater Virginia

Comprehensive works

.513 Eastern Peninsula

.515 Northampton County

Including Hog, Cobb, Smith Islands

.516 Accomack County

Including Chincoteague Island

.518 Chesapeake Bay

.52 Northern Neck

Including Rappahannock River

.521 Northumberland County

.522 Lancaster County

.523 Richmond County

.524 Westmoreland County

.525 King George County

.526 Stafford County

.527 Prince William County

.527 5 Fauquier County

.528 Loudoun County

.529 Fairfax County

.529 3 Falls Church

.529 5 Arlington County

.529 6 Alexandria

975.53 Rappahannock-York region

Including York River

.531 Mathews County

.532 Gloucester County

.533 Middlesex County

.534 Essex County

.535 King and Queen County

.535 5 King William County

.536 Caroline County

.536 5 Spotsylvania County

.536 6 Fredericksburg

.537 Orange County

.537 5 Greene County

.538 Madison County

.539 Culpeper County

.539 5 Rappahannock County

.54 York-James region

Including James River

.541 Hampton

Including former Elizabeth City County

.541 5 Warwick County

Merged with Newport News, 1958

.541 6 Newport News

Absorbed Warwick County, 1958

.542 York County

.542 5 James City County

.542 52 Williamsburg

.543 New Kent County

.544 Charles City County

.545 Henrico County

.545 1 Richmond

975.545 5 Goochland County
.546 Hanover County
.546 5 Louisa County
.547 Fluvanna County
.548 Albemarle County
.548 1 Charlottesville
.549 Nelson County
.549 6 Amherst County

.55 Southeastern counties
.551 Princess Anne County
.552 Norfolk County
Including Dismal Swamps in Virginia
.552 1 Norfolk
.552 2 Portsmouth
.552 3 South Norfolk
.553 Nansemond County
Including Lake Drummond
.553 1 Suffolk
.554 Isle of Wight County
.555 Southampton County
.556 Surry County
.556 5 Sussex County
.557 Greensville County
.557 5 Brunswick County
.558 Dinwiddie County
.558 1 Petersburg
.558 5 Prince George County
.558 6 Hopewell
.559 Chesterfield County

.56 South central counties
Including Piedmont Region in Virginia, Roanoke River
.561 Powhatan County

975.561 5 Cumberland County
.562 Buckingham County
.562 5 Appomattox County
.563 Prince Edward County
.563 4 Amelia County
.563 7 Nottoway County
.564 Lunenburg County
.564 5 Mecklenburg County
.565 Charlotte County
.566 Halifax County
.566 5 Pittsylvania County
.566 6 Danville
.567 Campbell County
.567 1 Lynchburg
.567 5 Bedford County
.568 Franklin County
.569 Henry County
.569 2 Martinsville
.569 5 Patrick County

.57 Southwestern counties
.571 Floyd County
.571 4 Carroll County
.571 7 Grayson County
.572 Smyth County
.572 5 Washington County
.572 6 Bristol
.573 Scott County
.573 5 Lee County
.574 Wise County
.574 5 Dickenson County
.575 Buchanan County
.575 5 Russell County

975.576 Tazewell County
.576 5 Bland County
.577 Wythe County
.577 5 Pulaski County
.578 Giles County
.578 5 Montgomery County
.578 6 Radford
.579 Roanoke County
.579 1 Roanoke
.579 5 Craig County
.58 Central western counties
.581 Alleghany County
.581 1 Clifton Forge
.581 4 Covington
.583 Botetourt County
.585 Rockbridge County
.585 1 Buena Vista
.587 Bath County
.589 Highland County
.59 Northwestern counties
Including Shenandoah Valley, Shenandoah National Park
.591 Augusta County
.591 1 Staunton
.591 3 Waynesboro
.592 Rockingham County
.592 1 Harrisonburg
.594 Page County
.595 Shenandoah County
.597 Warren County
.598 Clarke County
.599 Frederick County
.599 1 Winchester

975.6 North Carolina

.601–.604 Period divisions
Divide like 974.101–974.104, e.g., modern period of North Carolina 975.604

975.61–975.699 Geographic divisions

.61 Coastal Plain
Including eastern North Carolina, flatwoods district
.611 Northeast Coastal Plain counties
Including Roanoke River
.612 Albemarle Sound
.613 Currituck County
.613 5 Camden County
Including Dismal Swamps
.614 Pasquotank County
.614 4 Perquimans County
.614 7 Chowan County
Including Chowan River
.615 Gates County
.615 5 Hertford County
.616 Bertie County
.616 5 Washington County
.617 Tyrrell County
.617 5 Dare County
Including Roanoke Island, Cape Hatteras
.618 Pamlico Sound
Including Cape Hatteras National Seashore Park
.618 2 Hyde County
.618 6 Beaufort County
Including Pamlico River
.619 Craven County
Including Neuse River
.619 4 Pamlico County

975.619 7 Carteret County
Including Raleigh Bay

.62 Southeast Coastal Plain counties
Including Cape Fear River

.621 Jones County
Including Whiteoak Swamp

.623 Onslow County
Including Onslow Bay

.625 Pender County

.627 New Hanover County

.629 Brunswick County

.63 Southwest Coastal Plain counties
Including Sand Hills of North Carolina

.631 Columbus County

.632 Bladen County

.633 Robeson County

.633 5 Scotland County

.634 Richmond County

.635 Moore County

.635 5 Lee County

.636 Harnett County

.636 5 Hoke County

.637 Cumberland County

.637 5 Sampson County

.638 Duplin County

.638 5 Lenoir County

.638 6 Kinston

.639 Greene County

.639 5 Wayne County

.639 6 Goldsboro

.64 Northwest Coastal Plain counties

.641 Johnston County

.643 Wilson County

975.644 Pitt County

.645 Martin County

.646 Edgecomb County

.647 Nash County

.648 Halifax County

.649 Northampton County

.65 Piedmont Plateau
Including central North Carolina

.651 Northeast Piedmont Plateau counties

.652 Warren County

.653 Vance County

.653 5 Granville County

.654 Franklin County

.655 Wake County

.655 1 Raleigh

.656 Durham County

.656 5 Orange County

.657 Person County

.657 5 Caswell County

.658 Alamance County

.659 Chatham County

.66 Northwest Piedmont Plateau counties

.661 Randolph County

.662 Guilford County

.663 Rockingham County

.664 Stokes County

.665 Surry County

.666 Yadkin County

.667 Forsyth County

.668 Davidson County
Including Yadkin River

.669 Davie County

975.67 South Piedmont Plateau counties

.671 Rowan County

.672 Cabarrus County

.673 Stanly County

.674 Montgomery County

.675 Anson County

.675 5 Union County

.676 Mecklenburg County

.677 Gaston County

.677 5 Cleveland County

.678 Lincoln County

.678 5 Catawba County

.679 Iredell County

.679 5 Alexander County

.68 Appalachian Mountain region

Including western North Carolina, Asheville Plateau

For Great Smoky Mountains National Park, see 976.889

.681 Northern Appalachian region counties

Including Blue Ridge in North Carolina

.682 Wilkes County

.683 Alleghany County

.683 5 Ashe County

.684 Watauga County

.684 5 Caldwell County

.685 Burke County

.686 Avery County

.686 5 Mitchell County

.687 Yancey County

Including Mount Mitchell

.687 5 Madison County

.688 Buncombe County

.689 McDowell County

975.69 Southern Appalachian region counties

.691 Rutherford County

.691 5 Polk County

.692 Henderson County

.693 Transylvania County

.694 Haywood County

.695 Jackson County

.696 Swain County

Including Great Smoky Mountains in North Carolina

.697 Graham County

.698 Macon County

.698 5 Clay County

.699 Cherokee County

.7 South Carolina

.701–.704 Period divisions

Divide like 974.101–974.104, e.g., colonial South Carolina 975.702

975.71–975.799 5 Geographic divisions

.71 Upland areas

Including Piedmont Plateau of South Carolina

.72 Mountain counties

Including Blue Ridge in South Carolina, Saluda River

.721 Oconee County

Including Chattooga Ridge and River

.723 Pickens County

.725 Anderson County

.727 Greenville County

.729 Spartanburg County

975.73 Southwest Piedmont Plateau counties
- .731 Laurens County
  - Including Enoree River
- .733 Greenwood County
  - Including Lake Greenwood
- .735 Abbeville County
- .736 McCormick County
- .737 Edgefield County
- .738 Saluda County
- .739 Newberry County

.74 Northeast Piedmont Plateau counties
- .741 Union County
  - Including Broad River
- .742 Cherokee County
- .743 York County
- .745 Lancaster County
  - Including Catawba River
- .747 Chester County
- .749 Fairfield County

.75 Coastal Plain (Low Country)

.76 Sand hills and upper pine belt, northeast section
- Including Pee Dee, Lynches Rivers
- .761 Kershaw County
- .763 Chesterfield County
- .764 Marlboro County
- .766 Darlington County
- .767 Lee County
- .769 Sumter County
  - Including Wateree River

.77 Sand hills and upper pine belt, northwest section
- .771 Richland County
  - Including Columbia
- .772 Calhoun County

- 975.773 Lexington County
- .775 Aiken County
  - Including Aiken Plateau
- .776 Barnwell County
- .777 Allendale County
- .778 Bamberg County
- .779 Orangeburg County

.78 Lower pine belt, northeast section
- Including Santee River
- .781 Clarendon County
  - Including Lake Marion
- .783 Williamsburg County
  - Including Black River
- .784 Florence County
- .785 Dillon County
- .786 Marion County
- .787 Horry County
- .789 Georgetown County

.79 Lower pine belt, southwest section
- .791 Charleston County
- .793 Berkeley County
- .794 Dorchester County
- .795 Colleton County
- .797 Hampton County
- .798 Jasper County
- .799 Beaufort County
- .799 5 Sea Islands
  - Including Folly, James, Johns, Wadamalaw, Kiawah, Edisto, Saint Helena, Ladies, Port Royal, Hunting, Parris, Hilton Head, Daufuskie Islands

975.8 **Georgia**

Including Chattahoochee River

.801–.804 Period divisions

Divide like 974.101–974.104, e.g., discovery and early settlement of Georgia 975.801

975.81–975.899 6 Geographic divisions

.81 North Georgia

.811 Northeastern counties

Including Savannah River

.812 Rabun County

.812 5 Habersham County

.813 Stephens County

.813 5 Franklin County

.814 Banks County

.814 5 Jackson County

.815 Madison County

.815 5 Hart County

.816 Elbert County

.816 5 Lincoln County

.817 Wilkes County

.817 5 Oglethorpe County

.818 Clarke County

.819 Oconee County

.819 5 Barrow County

.82 North central counties

Including Appalachian Mountains in Georgia

.821 Walton County

.821 5 Rockdale County

.822 Gwinnett County

.822 5 De Kalb County

975.823 Fulton County

Including, since 1932, former Campbell County, Milton County

.823 1 Atlanta

.823 4 Milton County

Merged with Fulton County, 1932

.823 7 Campbell County

Merged with Fulton County, 1932

.824 Douglas County

.824 5 Cobb County

Including Kennesaw Mountain

.825 Cherokee County

.825 5 Pickens County

.826 Dawson County

.826 5 Forsyth County

.827 Hall County

.827 3 Lumpkin County

Including Blue Ridge in Georgia

.827 7 White County

.828 Towns County

.828 5 Union County

Including Brasstown Bald Mountain

.829 Fannin County

.829 5 Gilmer County

.83 Northwestern counties

Including Appalachian Valley in Georgia

.831 Murray County

.832 Whitfield County

.832 6 Catoosa County

.833 Walker County

.834 Dade County

Including Lookout Plateau and Mountains

.834 4 Chattooga County

.835 Floyd County

975.8 **Georgia**

Including Chattahoochee River

.801–.804 Period divisions

Divide like 974.101–974.104, e.g., discovery and early settlement of Georgia 975.801

975.81–975.899 6 Geographic divisions

.81 North Georgia

.811 Northeastern counties

Including Savannah River

.812 Rabun County

.812 5 Habersham County

.813 Stephens County

.813 5 Franklin County

.814 Banks County

.814 5 Jackson County

.815 Madison County

.815 5 Hart County

.816 Elbert County

.816 5 Lincoln County

.817 Wilkes County

.817 5 Oglethorpe County

.818 Clarke County

.819 Oconee County

.819 5 Barrow County

.82 North central counties

Including Appalachian Mountains in Georgia

.821 Walton County

.821 5 Rockdale County

.822 Gwinnett County

.822 5 De Kalb County

975.823 Fulton County

Including, since 1932, former Campbell County, Milton County

.823 1 Atlanta

.823 4 Milton County

Merged with Fulton County, 1932

.823 7 Campbell County

Merged with Fulton County, 1932

.824 Douglas County

.824 5 Cobb County

Including Kennesaw Mountain

.825 Cherokee County

.825 5 Pickens County

.826 Dawson County

.826 5 Forsyth County

.827 Hall County

.827 3 Lumpkin County

Including Blue Ridge in Georgia

.827 7 White County

.828 Towns County

.828 5 Union County

Including Brasstown Bald Mountain

.829 Fannin County

.829 5 Gilmer County

.83 Northwestern counties

Including Appalachian Valley in Georgia

.831 Murray County

.832 Whitfield County

.832 6 Catoosa County

.833 Walker County

.834 Dade County

Including Lookout Plateau and Mountains

.834 4 Chattooga County

.835 Floyd County

975.836 Gordon County
.836 5 Bartow County
Formerly Cass County
.837 Paulding County
.837 5 Polk County
.838 Haralson County
.839 Carroll County
.84 Middle Georgia
Including Piedmont Plateau in Georgia
.841 West central counties
.842 Heard County
.842 3 Coweta County
.842 6 Fayette County
.843 Clayton County
.843 5 Henry County
.844 Spalding County
.844 6 Lamar County
.845 Pike County
.845 5 Meriwether County
.846 Troup County
.846 6 Harris County
.847 Muscogee County
.847 6 Chattahoochee County
.848 Marion County
.848 3 Talbot County
.848 6 Upson County
.849 Taylor County
.849 5 Schley County
.85 Central counties
Including Ocmulgee River
.851 Macon County
.851 5 Houston County
.852 Pulaski County

975.852 5 Bleckley County
.853 Dodge County
.853 5 Laurens County
.854 Wilkinson County
.854 5 Twiggs County
.855 Bibb County
.855 6 Peach County
.856 Crawford County
.856 3 Monroe County
.856 7 Jones County
.857 Baldwin County
.857 6 Putnam County
.858 Jasper County
Called Randolph County, 1807–1812
For present Randolph County, see 975.893
.858 5 Butts County
.859 Newton County
.859 5 Morgan County
.86 East central counties
Including Oconee River
.861 Greene County
.861 6 Taliaferro County
.862 Hancock County
.862 5 Warren County
.863 McDuffie County
.863 5 Columbia County
.864 Richmond County
Formed Saint Paul Parish until 1777
.865 Burke County
Formed Saint George Parish until 1777
.866 Jefferson County
Including Ogeechee River
.866 6 Glascock County

975.867 Washington County
.867 6 Johnson County
.868 Treutlen County
.868 4 Emanuel County
.869 Jenkins County
.869 5 Screven County
.87 South Georgia
Including Coastal Plains of Georgia
.871 Southeastern counties
Including Sea Islands of Georgia
.872 Effingham County
Formed Saint Matthew and part of Saint Philip Parishes until 1777
.872 4 Chatham County
Formed Christ Church Parish until 1777
Including Tybee, Wilmington, Skidaway, Ossabaw Islands
.873 Bryan County
.873 3 Liberty County
Formed Saint John, Saint Andrew, Saint James Parishes until 1777
Including Saint Catherines Island
.873 7 McIntosh County
Including Sapelo Island
.874 Glynn County
Formed Saint Patrick and Saint David Parishes until 1777
Including Saint Simons, Jekyll Islands
.874 6 Camden County
Formed Saint Thomas and Saint Mary Parishes until 1777
Including Cumberland Island

975.875 Charlton County
Including Okefenokee Swamp
.875 3 Brantley County
.875 6 Wayne County
Including Altamaha River
.876 Long County
.876 3 Evans County
.876 6 Bulloch County
.877 Candler County
.877 5 Tattnall County
.878 Toombs County
.878 4 Appling County
.878 7 Bacon County
.879 Pierce County
.879 4 Ware County
.879 5 Waycross
.88 South central counties
Including wire-grass region
.881 Clinch County
.881 4 Echols County
.881 7 Lanier County
.882 Atkinson County
.882 3 Coffee County
.882 7 Jeff Davis County
.883 Montgomery County
.883 5 Wheeler County
.884 Telfair County
.884 5 Wilcox County
.885 Ben Hill County
.885 5 Irwin County
.886 Berrien County
.886 4 Lowndes County
.886 5 Valdosta

975.887 Brooks County
.887 6 Cook County
.888 Tift County
.888 5 Turner County
.889 Crisp County
.889 5 Dooly County
.89 Southwestern counties
Including Flint River
.891 Sumter County
.891 6 Webster County
Called Kinchafoonee County, 1853–1856
.892 Stewart County
.892 4 Quitman County
.892 7 Clay County
.893 Randolph County
.893 5 Terrell County
.894 Lee County
.894 5 Worth County
.895 Dougherty County
.895 6 Calhoun County
.896 Early County
.896 4 Miller County
.896 7 Baker County
.897 Mitchell County
.897 5 Colquitt County
.898 Thomas County
.898 6 Grady County
.899 Decatur County
.899 6 Seminole County

975.9 Florida

975.901–975.906 Period divisions

.901 Early Spanish period, 1513–1763
.902 English period, 1763–1783
.903 Spanish period, 1783–1821
.904 Territorial period, 1821–1845
.905 Post-territorial period and statehood, 1845–1865
.906 Modern period, 1865–

975.91–975.999 Geographic divisions

.91 Northeastern counties
.911 Nassau County
Including Amelia Island, Saint Marys River
.912 Duval County
.912 1 Jacksonville
.913 Baker County
.914 Union County
.915 Bradford County
.916 Clay County
.917 Putnam County
.918 Saint Johns County
.919 Flagler County

.92 East central counties
Including lake region, Kissimmee Prairie
.921 Volusia County
.922 Lake County
.923 Seminole County

975.924 Orange County
.925 Osceola County
Including Lake Kissimmee
.927 Brevard County
Including Indian River, Merritt Island, Canaveral Peninsula
.928 Indian River County
.929 Saint Lucie County
Including Hutchinsons Island
.93 Southeast coast
.931 Martin County
Including Jupiter Island
.932 Palm Beach County
.935 Broward County
.938 Dade County
Including Biscayne Bay; Sands, Elliott, Old Rhodes Keys, Key Biscayne
.938 1 Miami and Miami Beach
.939 The Everglades
Including Lake Okeechobee
.94 Southwest coast
.941 Monroe County
Including Florida Keys, Florida Bay
.944 Collier County
Including Ten Thousand Islands, Big Cypress Swamp
.946 Hendry County
Including Okaloacoochee Slough
.948 Lee County
Including Caloosahatchee River
.949 Charlotte County
Including Charlotte Harbor

975.95 South central counties
.951 Glades County
.953 Okeechobee County
Including Kissimmee River
.955 Highlands County
.957 Hardee County
Including Peace River
.959 De Soto County
.96 West central counties
.961 Sarasota County
.962 Manatee County
.963 Pinellas County
.965 Hillsborough County
Including Tampa Bay
.967 Polk County
.969 Pasco County
.97 Northern west central counties
.971 Hernando County
.972 Citrus County
Including Withlacoochee River
.973 Sumter County
.975 Marion County
.977 Levy County
.978 Gilchrist County
.979 Alachua County
Including Santa Fe River
.98 North central counties
Including Suwannee River
.981 Dixie County
.981 6 Lafayette County
.982 Suwannee County

975.983 Columbia County
.984 Hamilton County
.985 Madison County
.986 Taylor County
.987 Jefferson County
.988 Leon County
.988 1 Tallahassee
.989 Wakulla County
Including Apalachee Bay
.99 Northwestern counties
Including Panhandle of Florida
.991 Franklin County
Including Apalachicola Bay
.992 Liberty County
Including Apalachicola River
.992 5 Gadsden County
.993 Jackson County
.994 Calhoun County
.994 7 Gulf County
.995 Bay County
.996 Washington County
.996 5 Holmes County
.997 Walton County
Including Choctawhatchee Bay
.998 Okaloosa County
.998 5 Santa Rosa County
Including Pensacola Bay
.999 Escambia County
Including Santa Rosa Island

976 South central states

Including comprehensive works on Old Southwest, lower Mississippi River and Valley, Gulf states, Gulf of Mexico

.1 Alabama

976.101–976.106 Period divisions

.101 Discovery and early exploration, 1539–1701
.102 French period, 1701–1763
.103 British period, 1763–1783
.104 Spanish and territorial periods, 1783–1817
.105 Territorial period and statehood, 1817–1865
.106 Modern period, 1865–

976.11–976.199 1 Geographic divisions

.11 Southern Alabama
.12 Gulf and Lower Coastal Plain counties
Including Gulf Coast, Tombigbee River, Alabama River
.121 Baldwin County
Including coast strip, Mobile Delta, estuarial swamps, Perdido River
.121 1 Mobile Bay
.122 Mobile County
Including Mobile River, Dauphin Island, Isle aux Herbes, Grants Pass
.122 1 Mobile metropolitan area
.123 Lime hills counties (Piney woods)
.124 Washington County
.124 5 Clarke County
.125 Monroe County
.126 Conecuh County
.126 5 Escambia County

976.127 Covington County
Called Jones County, 1868

.128 Lime sink counties (Wire-grass region)

.129 Geneva County
Including Pea River

.129 5 Houston County

.13 Southern red hills counties
Including southeastern counties

.131 Henry County

.132 Barbour County

.133 Dale County

.134 Coffee County

.135 Pike County

.136 Crenshaw County

.137 Butler County

.138 Wilcox County

.139 Marengo County

.139 5 Choctaw County

.14 Black Belt counties
Including canebrake (prairie) region, Chunnennuggee Ridge, blue marl region, central Alabama

.141 Sumter County

.142 Greene County

.143 Hale County

.144 Perry County

.145 Dallas County

.146 Autauga County

.146 5 Lowndes County

.147 Montgomery County

.147 1 Montgomery

.148 Bullock County

.148 5 Russell County

.149 Macon County

976.15 Northern Alabama
Including hill country, Piedmont region

.151 Piedmont region counties (East central Alabama)

.152 Elmore County

.153 Tallapoosa County
Including Tallapoosa River, Martin Lake

.155 Lee County

.156 Chambers County

.157 Randolph County

.158 Clay County

.159 Coosa County

.16 Coosa Valley region
Including Appalachian Valley and Blue Ridge in Alabama, Raccoon and Lookout Mountains, Coosa River

.161 Talladega County

.163 Calhoun County
Called Benton County, 1832–1858

.164 Cleburne County

.165 Cherokee County

.166 De Kalb County

.167 Etowah County
Formed as Baine County, 1866; abolisht, 1867; re-establisht as Etowah County, 1868

.169 Saint Clair County

.17 Central Plateau and Basin counties

.171 Plateau section counties

.172 Blount County

.173 Cullman County

.174 Winston County

.175 Basin section counties

.176 Walker County

976.178 Jefferson County
Including Bankhead Lake
.178 1 Birmingham metropolitan area
.179 Shelby County

.18 Central pine belt counties
Including west central counties
.181 Chilton County
Called Baker County, 1868–1871
.182 Bibb County
Called Cahaba County, 1818–1820
.184 Tuscaloosa County
.185 Pickens County
.186 Lamar County
.187 Fayette County
Including Sipsey River
.189 Marion County

.19 Tennessee Valley counties
.191 Franklin County
.191 5 Colbert County
.192 Lawrence County
.193 Morgan County
.194 Marshall County
Including Guntersville Reservoir
.195 Jackson County
Including Cumberland Plateau
.196 Highland Rim counties
Including The Barrens
.197 Madison County
.198 Limestone County
Including Wheeler Lake
.199 Lauderdale County
.199 1 Muscle Shoals
Including Lake Wilson

976.2 Mississippi
.201–.206 Period divisions
Divide like 976.101–976.106, e.g., British period of Mississippi 976.203

976.21–976.299 5 Geographic divisions

.21 Southeastern counties
Including former Mobile district of West Florida
.211 Gulf Coast counties
Including Mississippi Sound
.212 Jackson County
Including Pascagoula River; Horn, Round, Petit Bois Islands
.213 Harrison County
Including Saint Louis Bay, Cat and Ship Islands
.213 1 Biloxi and Gulfport
.214 Hancock County
.215 Pearl River County
.216 Stone County
.216 5 George County
.217 Greene County
.217 5 Perry County
.218 Forrest County
.219 Lamar County

.22 Southwestern counties
Including former Natchez district of West Florida
.221 Marion County
.222 Walthall County
.223 Pike County
.224 Amite County
.225 Wilkinson County

976.226 Adams County
.227 Franklin County
.228 Jefferson County
Called Pickering County, 1799–1802
.228 5 Claiborne County
.229 Warren County

.23 Choctaw Cessions counties
.24 Yazoo–Mississippi Delta counties
Including Big Black and Yazoo Rivers
.241 Issaquena County
.241 4 Sharkey County
.242 Washington County
.243 Bolivar County
.244 Coahoma County
.245 Quitman County
.245 5 Tallahatchie County
.246 Leflore County
.247 Sunflower County
.248 Humphreys County
.249 Yazoo County

.25 Piney Woods region counties
Including Pearl River
.251 Hinds County
.251 1 Jackson
.252 Copiah County
.253 Lincoln County
.253 6 Lawrence County
.254 Jefferson Davis County
.254 5 Covington County
.255 Jones County

976.256 Jackson Prairie counties
.257 Wayne County
.257 5 Jasper County
.258 Smith County
.258 5 Simpson County
.259 Rankin County

.26 Plateau region counties
.261 Western Plateau counties
Including central Mississippi
.262 Madison County
.262 5 Holmes County
.263 Carroll County
.263 5 Grenada County
Including Grenada Reservoir
.264 Montgomery County
.264 4 Attala County
.265 Leake County
.265 5 Scott County

.266 Eastern Plateau counties
.267 Newton County
.267 3 Clarke County
.267 6 Lauderdale County
.267 7 Meridian
.268 Kemper County
.268 5 Neshoba County
.269 Winston County
.269 4 Choctaw County
.269 7 Webster County
Called Sumner County, 1874–1882

.27 Chickasaw Cessions
.28 Northern Plateau counties
Including northwestern Mississippi
.281 Calhoun County

976.282 Yalobusha County

.283 Lafayette County
Including Sardis Reservoir

.284 Panola County

.285 Tate County
Including Arkabutla Reservoir

.286 Tunica County

.287 De Soto County

.288 Marshall County

.289 Benton County

.29 Northeastern counties

.291 Flatwoods region counties
Including black prairie belt, Pontotoc Ridge

.292 Tippah County

.292 5 Union County

.293 Pontotoc County

.293 5 Lee County

.294 Chickasaw County

.294 5 Clay County
Called Colfax County, 1871–1876

.295 Oktibbeha County

.295 5 Noxubee County

.296 Tennessee River hills

.297 Lowndes County

.297 5 Monroe County

.298 Itawamba County

.298 5 Prentiss County

.299 Alcorn County

.299 5 Tishomingo County

976.3 Louisiana

976.301–976.306 Period divisions

.301 Discovery and early exploration, 1528–1718

.302 French period, 1718–1763

.303 Spanish period, 1763–1803

.304 French and territorial period, 1803–1812

.305 Early statehood, 1812–1865

.306 Modern period, 1865–

976.31–976.399 Geographic divisions

.31 Eastern Uplands parishes
Including former Baton Rouge district of West Florida

.311 Washington Parish

.312 Saint Tammany Parish

.313 Tangipahoa Parish

.314 Livingston Parish

.315 Saint Helena Parish

.316 East Feliciana Parish

.317 West Feliciana Parish

.318 East Baton Rouge Parish

.318 1 Baton Rouge

.319 Ascension Parish

.32 Gulf Coast parishes
Including southern Louisiana, coast and delta regions

.33 Mississippi Delta parishes
Including southeastern Louisiana

.331 Saint James Parish

976.332 Saint John the Baptist Parish
Including Lake Maurepas, Lac des Allemands

.333 Saint Charles Parish
Including Lake Salvador (Ouache)

.334 Lake Pontchartrain

.335 Orleans Parish

.335 5 New Orleans metropolitan area
Including Chalmette National Historical Park

.336 Saint Bernard Parish
Including Lake Borgne, Chandeleur Sound and Islands

.337 Plaquemines Parish
Including Breton Sound, Breton and Bird Islands

.338 Jefferson Parish
Including Barataria Bay, Grand Isle, Grand Terre Island

.339 Lafourche Parish
Including Timbalier Bay and Island

.34 South central parishes

.341 Terrebonne Parish
Including Terrebonne, Atchafalaya, Caillou Bays

.342 Saint Mary Parish
Including Cote Blanche Bay

.343 Assumption Parish

.344 Iberville Parish

.345 West Baton Rouge Parish

.345 4 Pointe Coupee Parish

.346 Saint Landry Parish

.347 Lafayette Parish

.348 Saint Martin Parish
Including Evangeline country

.349 Iberia Parish
Including Grand Lake, Marsh Island

976.35 Southwestern parishes

.351 Vermilion Parish
Including Vermilion Bay

.352 Cameron Parish
Including Grand, Calcasieu, Sabine Lakes

.353 Atakapas Prairie parishes

.354 Calcasieu Parish

.355 Jefferson Davis Parish

.356 Acadia Parish

.357 Evangeline Parish

.358 Allen Parish

.359 Beauregard Parish

.36 Central parishes
Including west central Louisiana, Western Uplands, Kisatchie National Forest, Red River in Louisiana

.361 Vernon Parish

.362 Sabine Parish

.363 De Soto Parish

.364 Red River Parish

.365 Natchitoches Parish

.366 Winn Parish
Including Saline Lake

.367 Grant Parish

.369 Rapides Parish

.37 East central parishes
Including Ouachita River

.371 Avoyelles Parish

.373 Concordia Parish

976.374 Catahoula Parish

.375 La Salle Parish
Including Catahoula Lake

.376 Caldwell Parish

.377 Franklin Parish

.379 Tensas Parish

.38 Northern parishes
Including northeastern Louisiana

.381 Madison Parish

.382 East Carroll Parish

.383 West Carroll Parish

.384 Morehouse Parish

.386 Richland Parish

.387 Ouachita Parish

.389 Union Parish

.39 Northwestern parishes

.391 Lincoln Parish

.392 Jackson Parish

.393 Bienville Parish
Including Lake Bistineau

.394 Claiborne Parish

.396 Webster Parish

.397 Bossier Parish

.399 Caddo Parish
Including Caddo Lake

976.4 Texas

976.401–976.406 Period divisions

.401 Discovery and early exploration, 1519–1680

.402 Spanish and French periods, 1680–1821

.403 Mexican period, 1821–1836

.404 Republic of Texas, 1836–1846

.405 Early statehood, 1846–1865

.406 Modern period, 1865–

976.41–976.496 Geographic divisions

.41 Coastal Plains
Including Trinity, Brazos, Colorado, Guadalupe, San Antonio, Nueces Rivers

.411 Gulf Coastal Plain counties
Including southeastern Texas; comprehensive works on Texas Gulf Coast

.411 3 Nueces County
Including Corpus Christi Bay, Mustang Island

.411 5 San Patricio County

.411 7 Bee County

.411 9 Refugio County

.412 Aransas County
Including Aransas Bay, Saint Joseph Island

.412 1 Calhoun County
Including Matagorda Island

.412 3 Goliad County

.412 5 Victoria County

.412 7 Jackson County

.413 Matagorda County
Including Matagorda Bay and Peninsula

.413 3 Wharton County

976.413 5	Fort Bend County
.413 7	Brazoria County
.413 9	Galveston County
	Including Galveston Bay and Island
.414	Harris County
.414 3	Chambers County
.414 5	Jefferson County
.414 7	Orange County
.415	Pine Woods region counties
	Including Neches River
.415 3	Montgomery County
.415 5	Liberty County
.415 7	Hardin County
.415 9	Jasper County
.416	Newton County
.416 3	Tyler County
.416 5	Polk County
.416 7	San Jacinto County
.416 9	Walker County
.417	Trinity County
.417 3	Angelina County
.417 5	San Augustine County
.417 7	Sabine County
.417 9	Shelby County
.418	Nacogdoches County
.418 3	Cherokee County
.418 5	Rusk County
.418 7	Panola County
.418 9	Gregg County
.419	Harrison County
.419 3	Marion County
.419 5	Cass County
.419 7	Bowie County

976.42	East Texas Timber Belt counties
.421	Red River County
.421 3	Franklin County
.421 5	Titus County
.421 7	Morris County
.421 9	Camp County
.422	Upshur County
.422 3	Wood County
.422 5	Smith County
.422 7	Henderson County
.422 9	Anderson County
.423	Freestone County
.423 3	Leon County
.423 5	Houston County
.423 7	Madison County
.423 9	Robertson County
.424	Brazos County
.424 1	Burleson County
.424 3	Grimes County
.424 5	Washington County
.424 7	Lee County
.424 9	Waller County
.425	Austin County
.425 1	Fayette County
.425 3	Colorado County
.425 5	Lavaca County
.425 7	Gonzales County
.425 9	De Witt County
.426	Blackland Prairie counties
.426 3	Lamar County
.426 5	Fannin County
.427 2	Hunt County

976.427 3 Delta County
.427 4 Hopkins County
.427 5 Rains County
.427 6 Van Zandt County
.427 7 Kaufman County
.427 8 Rockwall County
.428 Dallas County
.428 1 Ellis County
.428 2 Navarro County
.428 3 Hill County
.428 4 McLennan County
.428 5 Limestone County
.428 6 Falls County
.428 7 Bell County
.428 8 Milam County
.428 9 Williamson County
.43 Travis County
Including Austin
.432 Bastrop County
.433 Caldwell County
.434 Guadalupe County
.435 Bexar County

.44 Rio Grande Plain (Lower Rio Grande Valley)
Including comprehensive works on Rio Grande
For upper Rio Grande of Texas, see 976.496; *Rio Grande Valley of New Mexico,* 978.95
.442 Medina County
.443 Uvalde County
.443 3 Kinney County
.443 5 Maverick County
.443 7 Zavala County
.444 Frio County

976.444 3 Atascosa County
.444 4 Karnes County
.444 5 Wilson County
.444 7 Live Oak County
.445 McMullen County
.445 3 La Salle County
.445 5 Dimmit County
.446 Webb County
.446 3 Duval County
.446 5 Jim Wells County
.447 Kleberg County
Including Padre Island
.447 3 Kenedy County
.447 5 Brooks County
.448 Jim Hogg County
.448 3 Zapata County
.448 5 Starr County
.449 Hidalgo County
.449 3 Willacy County
.449 5 Cameron County

.45 North central plains
.451 Grand Prairie counties
.451 2 Mills County
.451 3 Lampasas County
.451 5 Coryell County
.451 8 Bosque County
.452 Somervell County
.452 2 Hood County
.452 4 Johnson County
.453 Tarrant County
.453 2 Wise County
.453 3 Cooke County

976.454 Cross Timbers Belt counties

Including East and West Cross Timbers region

.454 1 Montague County
.454 2 Clay County
.454 3 Archer County
.454 4 Jack County
.454 5 Young County
.454 6 Stephens County
.454 7 Eastland County
.454 8 Brown County
.454 9 Hamilton County
.455 Comanche County
.455 1 Erath County
.455 2 Palo Pinto County
.455 3 Parker County
.455 5 Denton County
.455 6 Collin County
.455 7 Grayson County

.46 Burnet-Llano region counties

.462 Llano County

Including Lake Buchanan (Lake Hamilton)

.463 Burnet County
.464 Blanco County
.465 Gillespie County
.466 Mason County
.467 McCulloch County
.468 San Saba County

.47 Northwestern Lowland counties

.471 Concho County
.472 Tom Green County
.472 3 Coke County
.472 4 Runnels County
.472 5 Coleman County

976.472 6 Callahan County
.472 7 Taylor County
.472 8 Nolan County
.472 9 Mitchell County
.473 Scurry County
.473 2 Fisher County
.473 3 Jones County
.473 4 Shackelford County
.473 5 Throckmorton County
.473 6 Haskell County
.473 7 Stonewall County
.473 8 Kent County
.474 Dickens County
.474 2 King County
.474 3 Knox County
.474 4 Baylor County
.474 5 Wichita County
.474 6 Wilbarger County
.474 7 Hardeman County
.474 8 Foard County
.475 Cottle County
.475 2 Motley County
.475 3 Hall County
.475 4 Childress County

.48 Great Plains

.481 High Plains counties

Including Panhandle counties; comprehensive works on central western Texas, Cap Rock Escarpment

.481 2 Dallam County
.481 3 Sherman County
.481 4 Hansford County
.481 5 Ochiltree County
.481 6 Lipscomb County

976.481 7	Hemphill County
.481 8	Roberts County
.482	Hutchinson County
.482 2	Moore County
.482 3	Hartley County
.482 4	Oldham County
.482 5	Potter County
.482 6	Carson County
.482 7	Gray County
.482 8	Wheeler County
.483	Collingsworth County
.483 2	Donley County
.483 3	Armstrong County
.483 4	Randall County
.483 5	Deaf Smith County
.483 6	Parmer County
.483 7	Castro County
.483 8	Swisher County
.483 9	Briscoe County
.484	Floyd County
.484 2	Hale County
.484 3	Lamb County
.484 4	Bailey County
.484 5	Cochran County
.484 6	Hockley County
.484 7	Lubbock County
.484 8	Crosby County
.484 9	Yoakum County
.485	Terry County
.485 1	Lynn County
.485 2	Garza County
.485 3	Borden County
.485 4	Dawson County

976.485 5	Gaines County
.485 6	Andrews County
.485 7	Martin County
.485 8	Howard County
.486	Midland County
.486 2	Ector County
.486 3	Upton County
.487	Edwards Plateau counties Including Pecos River, Balcones Escarpment
.487 1	Sterling County
.487 2	Glasscock County
.487 3	Reagan County
.487 4	Irion County
.487 5	Crockett County
.487 6	Schleicher County
.487 7	Menard County
.487 8	Kimble County
.487 9	Sutton County
.488	Val Verde County
.488 2	Edwards County
.488 3	Real County
.488 4	Kerr County
.488 5	Bandera County
.488 6	Kendall County
.488 7	Comal County
.488 8	Hays County
.49	Western Mountain and Basin region Including Trans-Pecos counties
.491	Pecos Basin counties
.491 2	Loving County
.491 3	Winkler County
.491 4	Ward County
.491 5	Crane County

976.492 Stockton Plateau
.492 2 Terrell County
.492 3 Pecos County
.492 4 Reeves County
.493 Big Bend
.493 2 Brewster County
Including Santiago Mountains, Big Bend National Park
.493 3 Presidio County
.493 4 Jeff Davis County
Including Davis Mountains
.494 Culbertson County
Including Diablo Plateau, Sacramento Mountains
.495 Hudspeth County
Including Guadalupe Mountains
.496 El Paso County
Including upper Rio Grande of Texas

.6 Oklahoma

976.601–976.605 Period divisions

.601 Discovery and early exploration, 1541–1682
.602 French and Spanish periods, 1682–1803
.603 Indian Territory, 1803–1866
.604 Territorial period and statehood, 1866–1907
.605 Modern period, 1907–

976.61–976.699 Geographic divisions

.61 Western Oklahoma
Including former Oklahoma Territory, Canadian River
.611 Northwestern counties
Including High Plains region
.612 Panhandle of Oklahoma
Including Cimarron Territory, Canton Lake
.613 Cimarron County

976.613 5 Texas County
.614 Beaver County
.615 Harper County
.615 5 Ellis County
Called Day County until 1907
.616 Roger Mills County
Including Antelope Hills
.617 Custer County
Including Gypsum Hills region
.618 Dewey County
.619 Woodward County
.62 North central counties
Including Cherokee Outlet, Cherokee Strip, Salt Fork of Arkansas River
.621 Woods County
.622 Alfalfa County
.623 Grant County
.624 Kay County
.625 Osage County
.626 Pawnee County
.627 Noble County
.628 Garfield County
.629 Major County
.63 Central counties
Including Redbeds Plains region, Cimarron River
.631 Blaine County
Including Stony Hills
.632 Kingfisher County
.633 Logan County
.634 Payne County
.635 Lincoln County
.636 Pottawatomie County
.637 Cleveland County

976.638 Oklahoma County
.638 1 Oklahoma City
.639 Canadian County

.64 Southwestern counties
.641 Caddo County
.642 Washita County
.643 Beckham County
.644 Greer County
.644 5 Harmon County
.645 Jackson County
.646 Tillman County
.647 Kiowa County
.648 Comanche County
Including Wichita Mountains
.649 Cotton County

.65 Eastern Oklahoma
Indian Territory, 1866–1907

.651 South central counties
Including Washita River, Arbuckle Mountains
.652 Jefferson County
.653 Stephens County
.654 Grady County
.655 McClain County
.656 Garvin County
.657 Murray County
Including Platt National Park
.658 Carter County
Including Lake Murray
.659 Love County

.66 Southeastern counties
Including Red River, Ouachita Mountains
.661 Marshall County
Including Lake Texoma

976.662 Bryan County
.663 Choctaw County
.664 McCurtain County
.665 Pushmataha County
.666 Atoka County
.667 Coal County
.668 Johnston County
.669 Pontotoc County

.67 Southern east central counties
Including Sandstone Hills
.671 Seminole County
.672 Hughes County
.673 Okfuskee County
.674 McIntosh County
.675 Pittsburg County
.676 Latimer County
.677 Haskell County
.679 Le Flore County

.68 Northern east central counties
Including Arkansas River in Oklahoma, Ozark Plateau in Oklahoma, Boston Mountains in Oklahoma
.681 Sequoyah County
.682 Muskogee County
.683 Okmulgee County
.684 Creek County
.686 Tulsa County
.687 Wagner County
Including Fort Gibson Reservoir
.688 Cherokee County
Including Tenkiller Ferry Reservoir
.689 Adair County

976.69 Northeastern counties
Including Prairie Plains region
.691 Delaware County
Including Lake of the Cherokees
.693 Mayes County
.694 Rogers County
.696 Washington County
.697 Nowata County
.698 Craig County
.699 Ottawa County

.7 Arkansas

976.701–976.705 Period divisions

.701 Discovery and early exploration, 1541–1686
.702 French and Spanish periods, 1686–1803
.703 Preterritorial and territorial periods, 1803–1836
.704 Early statehood, 1836–1865
.705 Modern period, 1865–

976.71–976.799 5 Geographic divisions

.71 Highland area
.711 Ozark Plateau counties
.712 Northwestern counties
Including Springfield Plateau
.713 Benton County
.714 Washington County
Called Loveley County, 1827–1828
.715 Madison County
.716 Newton County
Including Boston Mountains, Diamond Cave

976.717 Carroll County
.718 Boone County
.719 Marion County
Including Bull Shoals Lake
.719 5 Searcy County
.72 North central counties
Including Salem Plateau, Black and White Rivers
.721 Baxter County
Including Norfork Lake
.722 Fulton County
Including Mammoth Spring
.723 Sharp County
.724 Randolph County
.725 Lawrence County
.726 Independence County
.727 Izard County
.728 Stone County
.728 5 Cleburne County
.729 Van Buren County
.73 Arkansas River Valley counties
Including northern west central Arkansas, Arkansas River
.731 Conway County
.732 Pope County
.733 Johnson County
.734 Franklin County
.735 Crawford County
.736 Sebastian County
.737 Logan County
Called Sarber County, 1871–1875
Including Magazine Mountain, Blue Mountain Reservoir
.738 Yell County
Including Mount Nebo, Nimrod Reservoir
.739 Perry County

976.74 Ouachita Mountains counties
Including southern west central Arkansas, Ouachita National Forest
.741 Garland County
Including Lake Hamilton, Hot Springs National Park
.742 Hot Spring County
.743 Montgomery County
.744 Scott County
.745 Polk County
.746 Athens Plateau
.747 Sevier County
.748 Howard County
.748 5 Pike County
.749 Clark County

.75 Mississippi Valley area
.751 Southwestern counties
.752 Nevada County
.754 Hempstead County
.755 Little River County
.756 Miller County
.757 Lafayette County
.759 Columbia County

.76 South central counties
.761 Union County
.763 Bradley County
.764 Calhoun County
.766 Ouachita County
.767 Dallas County
.769 Cleveland County
Called Dorsey County, 1873–1875

.77 Central counties
.771 Grant County
.772 Saline County

976.773 Pulaski County
.773 1 Little Rock
Including North Little Rock
.774 Faulkner County
.776 White County
Including Little Red River
.777 Prairie County
.778 Lonoke County
.779 Jefferson County

.78 Mississippi Alluvial Plain counties
.781 Southeastern counties
.782 Lincoln County
.782 5 Drew County
.783 Ashley County
.784 Chicot County
.785 Desha County
.786 Arkansas County
.787 Monroe County
.788 Phillips County
.789 Lee County

.79 Northeastern counties
Including Crowley's Ridge, Saint Francis River
.791 Saint Francis County
.792 Woodruff County
.793 Cross County
.794 Crittenden County
.795 Mississippi County
.796 Poinsett County
.797 Jackson County
.798 Craighead County
Including Sunk lands
.799 Greene County
.799 5 Clay County
Called Clayton County, 1873–1875

976.8 **Tennessee**

Including Tennessee River, Tennessee Valley Authority area

976.801–976.805 Period divisions

.801 Discovery and early exploration, 1541–1682

.802 French, Spanish, English periods, 1682–1769

.803 Early settlement and territorial period, 1769–1796

Including formation of Watauga Association, District of Washington, State of Franklin

.804 Early statehood, 1796–1865

.805 Modern period, 1865–

976.81–976.899 Geographic divisions

.81 West Tennessee

.811 Mississippi Valley counties

.812 Lake County

Including Reelfoot Lake

.813 Obion County

.815 Dyer County

.816 Lauderdale County

.817 Tipton County

.819 Shelby County

.82 West Tennessee Plain counties

Including Jackson Plain

.821 Fayette County

.822 Haywood County

.822 5 Crockett County

.823 Gibson County

.824 Weakley County

.825 Carroll County

.826 Henderson County

976.826 5 Chester County

Called Wisdom County, 1875–1879

.827 Madison County

.828 Hardeman County

.829 McNairy County

.83 Western Tennessee River Valley counties

.831 Hardin County

Including Shiloh National Military Park

.832 Decatur County

.833 Benton County

.834 Henry County

.835 Stewart County

.836 Houston County

.837 Humphreys County

.838 Perry County

.839 Wayne County

.84 Middle Tennessee

.841 Highland Rim counties

.842 Lawrence County

.843 Lewis County

.843 4 Hickman County

Including Duck River

.844 Dickson County

.845 Montgomery County

Called Tennessee County, 1788–1796, when it included Robertson County

Including Fort Donelson National Military Park

.846 Cheatham County

.846 4 Robertson County

.847 Sumner County

976.848 Trousdale County
.848 4 Macon County
.849 Clay County
Including Dale Hollow Reservoir

.85 Central Basin counties
Including Cumberland River
.851 Jackson County
.852 Smith County
.853 De Kalb County
Including Center Hill Reservoir
.853 5 Cannon County
.854 Wilson County
.855 Davidson County
.855 1 Nashville
.856 Williamson County
.857 Rutherford County
.858 Bedford County
.858 5 Marshall County
.859 Maury County

.86 East Highland Rim counties
.861 Giles County
.862 Lincoln County
.862 7 Moore County
.863 Franklin County
.864 Coffee County
.865 Warren County
.865 7 Van Buren County
.866 White County
.867 Putnam County
.868 Overton County
.868 7 Pickett County
.869 Fentress County

976.87 Cumberland Plateau counties
Including South Appalachian Plateau
.871 Scott County
.872 Campbell County
.873 Anderson County
Including Clinch River
.874 Morgan County
.875 Cumberland County
.876 Bledsoe County
.877 Sequatchie County
Including Sequatchie Valley, Waldens Ridge
.878 Grundy County
.879 Marion County

.88 East Tennessee
Including Eastern Tennessee River Valley, Appalachian Mountain region in Tennessee, Great Appalachian Valley

.881 Southeastern counties
.882 Hamilton County
James County, 1871–1919, formed part of present Hamilton County
Including Chickamauga and Chattanooga National Park, Lookout Mountain, Missionary Ridge, Lake Chickamauga
.883 Rhea County
.883 6 Meigs County
.884 Roane County
.885 Knox County
Including Fort Loudoun Reservoir
.886 Loudon County
.886 5 McMinn County
.887 Bradley County
.887 5 Polk County

976.888 Monroe County
Including Unaka Mountains

.888 5 Blount County

.889 Great Smoky Mountains
Including Great Smoky Mountains National Park

.889 3 Sevier County

.889 5 Cocke County
Including French Broad River, Mount Guyot

.89 Northeastern counties
Including Holston River

.891 Greene County
Including Bald Mountains

.892 Hamblen County
Including Cherokee Reservoir

.892 4 Jefferson County
Including Douglas Reservoir

.893 Grainger County
Including Clinch Mountains

.893 5 Union County
Including Norris Lake

.894 Claiborne County
Including Cumberland Mountains in Tennessee, Cumberland Gap

.894 6 Hancock County

.895 Hawkins County
Including Holston Mountains

.896 Sullivan County
Including Boone Reservoir

.897 Washington County

.898 Unicoi County

.898 4 Carter County
Including Iron Mountains, Watauga Reservoir

.899 Johnson County
Including Roan and Stone Mountains

976.9 Kentucky
Including Ohio River
For comprehensive works on Ohio Valley, see 977

976.901–976.904 Period divisions

.901 Discovery and early exploration, 1584–1736

.902 French and territorial period, 1736–1792
Including formation of Transylvania Colony, Kentucky County of Virginia

.903 Early statehood, 1792–1865

.904 Modern period, 1865–

976.91–976.999 Geographic divisions

.91 Mountain region
Including Cumberland Plateau in Kentucky, eastern Kentucky

.911 Southern mountain region counties
Including southeastern Kentucky

.912 Bell County
Formerly called Josh Bell County
Including Pine Mountain

.912 5 Knox County

.913 Whitley County

.913 5 McCreary County

.914 Laurel County

.914 5 Clay County
Including Kentucky Ridge

.915 Leslie County

.915 4 Harlan County
Including Cumberland, Big Black, Little Black, Log Mountains

976.916	Letcher County
.916 5	Knott County
.917	Perry County
.917 6	Owsley County
.918	Jackson County
.918 5	Lee County
.919	Breathitt County
.92	Northern mountain region counties Including northeastern Kentucky; Big Sandy, Tug, Levisa Valleys
.921	Wolfe County
.921 5	Magoffin County
.922	Floyd County
.923	Pike County
.924	Martin County
.924 5	Johnson County
.925	Morgan County
.925 5	Elliott County
.926	Lawrence County
.927	Boyd County
.928	Carter County
.929	Greenup County
.929 5	Lewis County
.93	Bluegrass region Including northern Kentucky, Kentucky River
.931	Outer (Northern) Bluegrass counties Including Licking River
.932	Mason County
.932 5	Bracken County
.933	Pendleton County
.934	Campbell County

976.935	Kenton County
.936	Boone County
.936 5	Gallatin County
.937	Carroll County
.937 5	Trimble County
.938	Oldham County
.938 5	Henry County
.939	Owen County
.939 5	Grant County
.94	Inner (Southern) Bluegrass counties Including central Kentucky
.941	Harrison County
.941 5	Robertson County
.941 7	Nicholas County
.942	Bourbon County
.942 5	Scott County
.943	Franklin County
.943 1	Frankfort
.943 5	Shelby County
.944	Jefferson County Including beargrass region
.945	Bullitt County Including Salt River
.945 5	Spencer County
.946	Anderson County
.946 5	Woodford County
.947	Fayette County
.948	Jessamine County
.948 5	Mercer County Including Harrington Lake
.949	Washington County
.949 5	Nelson County

976.95 The Knobs counties

.951 Marion County

.952 Boyle County

.952 5 Garrard County

.953 Madison County

.954 Clark County

.955 Montgomery County

.955 5 Bath County

.956 Fleming County

.957 Rowan County

.958 Menifee County

.958 5 Powell County

.959 Estill County

.96 Pennyroyal counties

Including Mississippian Plateau of Kentucky, southern Kentucky, the Barrens, Highland Rim in Kentucky, cavernous limestone area

.961 Eastern Pennyroyal counties

.962 Rockcastle County

.962 5 Lincoln County

.963 Pulaski County

Including Lake Cumberland

.964 Wayne County

.965 Clinton County

.965 5 Russell County

.966 Casey County

Including Green River Knobs

976.967 Taylor County

.967 5 Adair County

.968 Cumberland County

.968 5 Monroe County

.969 Metcalfe County

.969 5 Green County

.97 Western Pennyroyal counties

.971 Larue County

.971 5 Hart County

.972 Barren County

.973 Allen County

.973 5 Simpson County

.974 Warren County

.975 Edmonson County

.975 4 Mammoth Cave

.975 5 Butler County

.976 Logan County

.977 Todd County

.978 Christian County

.979 Trigg County

.98 Western Basin counties

Including Green River

.981 Lyon County

.981 5 Caldwell County

.982 Hopkins County

.982 6 McLean County

.983 Muhlenberg County

.983 5 Ohio County

.984 Grayson County

976.984 5 Hardin County
.985 Meade County
.985 4 Breckinridge County
.986 Hancock County
.986 4 Daviess County
.986 5 Owensboro
.987 Henderson County
.988 Webster County
.988 5 Union County
.989 Crittenden County
.989 5 Livingston County
Including Kentucky Reservoir
.99 Jackson Purchase counties
Including Mississippi Valley in Kentucky
.991 Marshall County
.992 Calloway County
.993 Graves County
.995 McCracken County
.996 Ballard County
.997 Carlisle County
.998 Hickman County
.999 Fulton County

977 North central states (Lake states)

Including comprehensive works on Mississippi River and Valley, Ohio Valley, Great Lakes, Northwest Territory

For comprehensive works on Ohio River, see 976.9

.1 Ohio

977.101–977.104 Period divisions

.101 Discovery and early settlement to 1763
Including French period
.102 British and early United States periods, 1763–1787
.103 Territorial period and early statehood, 1787–1865
.104 Modern period, 1865–

977.11–977.199 Geographic divisions

.11 Northwestern counties
Including Maumee River, lake plains region
.111 Williams County
.111 5 Fulton County
.112 Lucas County
Including West Sister Island, Maumee Bay
.113 Toledo metropolitan area
.114 Defiance County
.115 Henry County
.116 Wood County
.117 Paulding County
.118 Putnam County
.119 Hancock County

.12 North central counties
Including Lake Erie [*formerly* *971.3], Sandusky River
.121 Ottawa County
Including Catawba, North Bass, Middle Bass, South Bass Islands

977.121 4 Sandusky County
Including Sandusky Bay
.122 Erie County
.123 Lorain County
.124 Seneca County
.125 Huron County
.126 Wyandot County
.127 Crawford County
.128 Richland County
.129 Ashland County

.13 Northeastern counties
Including the Western Reserve
.131 Cuyahoga County
Including Cuyahoga River
.132 Cleveland metropolitan area
.133 Lake County
.133 6 Geauga County
.134 Ashtabula County
.135 Medina County
.136 Summit County
.137 Portage County
Including Berlin Reservoir
.138 Trumbull County
Including Meander Reservoir
.139 Mahoning County

.14 West central counties
Including interior plains region
.141 Van Wert County
.141 5 Mercer County
Including Lake Saint Marys
.142 Allen County
.143 Auglaize County

977.144 Hardin County
.145 Shelby County
.146 Logan County
.146 5 Champaign County
.147 Darke County
.148 Miami County
.149 Clark County

.15 Central counties
Including Scioto River
.151 Marion County
.151 6 Morrow County
.152 Knox County
.153 Union County
.153 5 Delaware County
.154 Licking County
.155 Madison County
.156 Franklin County
.157 Columbus
.158 Fairfield County
.159 Perry County

.16 East central counties
Including Allegheny Plateau region
.161 Wayne County
.162 Stark County
.163 Columbiana County
.164 Holmes County
.165 Coshocton County
Including Mohican River
.166 Tuscarawas County
Including Tuscarawas River
.167 Carroll County
.168 Harrison County

977.169 Jefferson County

.17 Southwestern counties

Including Miami River

.171 Preble County

.172 Montgomery County

.173 Dayton

.174 Greene County

.175 Butler County

.176 Warren County

.176 5 Clinton County

.177 Hamilton County

.178 Cincinnati metropolitan area

.179 Clermont County

.179 6 Brown County

.18 South central counties

.181 Fayette County

.181 5 Pickaway County

.182 Ross County

.183 Hocking County

.183 7 Vinton County

.184 Highland County

.184 7 Pike County

.185 Jackson County

.186 Adams County

.187 Scioto County

.188 Lawrence County

.189 Gallia County

.19 Southeastern counties

.191 Muskingum County

Including Muskingum River

.192 Guernsey County

977.193 Belmont County

.194 Morgan County

.195 Noble County

.196 Monroe County

.197 Athens County

Including Hocking River

.198 Washington County

.199 Meigs County

.2 Indiana

.201–.204 Period divisions

Divide like 977.101–977.104, e.g., territorial period of Indiana 977.203

977.21–977.299 Geographic divisions

.21 Southeastern counties

Including uplands region

.211 Dearborn County

.212 Ohio County

.212 5 Switzerland County

.213 Jefferson County

.214 Ripley County

.215 Franklin County

.216 Decatur County

.217 Jennings County

.218 Scott County

.218 5 Clark County

.219 Floyd County

.22 South central counties

Including southern hill and lowlands region

.221 Harrison County

.222 Washington County

977.223 Jackson County
.224 Bartholomew County
.225 Brown County
.225 5 Monroe County
.226 Lawrence County
.227 Orange County
.228 Crawford County
.229 Perry County

.23 Southwestern counties
Including White River, Wabash lowland region
.231 Spencer County
.232 Warrick County
.233 Vanderburgh County
.234 Posey County
.235 Gibson County
.236 Pike County
.237 Dubois County
.238 Martin County
.238 5 Daviess County
.239 Knox County

.24 West central counties
Including Wabash River, central plains region
.241 Sullivan County
.242 Greene County
.243 Owen County
.244 Clay County
.245 Vigo County
.246 Vermillion County
.246 5 Parke County
.247 Fountain County
.248 Montgomery County
.249 Putnam County

977.25 Central counties
.251 Morgan County
.251 5 Johnson County
.252 Marion County
.252 1 Indianapolis metropolitan area
.253 Hendricks County
.254 Boone County
.255 Clinton County
.255 5 Tipton County
.256 Hamilton County
.257 Madison County
.258 Hancock County
.259 Shelby County

.26 East central counties
.261 Rush County
.262 Fayette County
.262 5 Union County
.263 Wayne County
.264 Henry County
.265 Delaware County
.266 Randolph County
.267 Jay County
.268 Blackford County
.269 Grant County

.27 Northeastern counties
.271 Huntington County
.272 Wells County
.273 Adams County
.274 Allen County
.275 Whitley County

977.276 Noble County
.277 De Kalb County
.278 Steuben County
.279 Lagrange County
.28 North central counties
Including northern hill and lake region
.281 Elkhart County
.282 Kosciusko County
.283 Wabash County
.284 Miami County
.285 Howard County
.286 Cass County
.287 Fulton County
.288 Marshall County
.289 Saint Joseph County
.29 Northwestern counties
.291 La Porte County
.292 Starke County
.292 5 Pulaski County
.293 White County
.294 Carroll County
.295 Tippecanoe County
.296 Warren County
.297 Benton County
.297 4 Newton County
.297 7 Jasper County
.298 Porter County
.299 Lake County

977.3 Illinois
.301–.304 Period divisions
Divide like 977.101–977.104, e.g., territorial period of Illinois 977.303

977.31–977.399 9 Geographic divisions
.31 Cook County
.311 Chicago metropolitan area
.32 Northeastern counties
Including Des Plaines River
For Cook County, see 977.31
.321 Lake County
.322 McHenry County
.323 Kane County
.324 Du Page County
.325 Will County
.326 Kendall County
.326 5 Grundy County
.327 La Salle County
.328 De Kalb County
.329 Boone County
.33 Northwestern counties
Including Rock River
.331 Winnebago County
.332 Ogle County
.333 Stephenson County
.334 Jo Daviess County
.334 5 Carroll County
.335 Whiteside County
.336 Lee County
.337 Bureau County

977.337 5 Putnam County
.338 Henry County
.339 Rock Island County
.339 5 Mercer County
.34 West central counties
.341 Henderson County
.341 5 Warren County
.342 McDonough County
.343 Hancock County
.344 Adams County
.345 Pike County
.345 5 Scott County
.346 Morgan County
.346 5 Cass County
.347 Brown County
.347 5 Schuyler County
.348 Fulton County
.349 Knox County
.35 Central counties
Including Illinois River and Valley
.351 Stark County
.351 5 Marshall County
.352 Peoria County
.353 Woodford County
.354 Tazewell County
.355 Mason County
Including Sangamon River
.355 5 Menard County
.356 Sangamon County
.356 1 Springfield
.357 Logan County
.358 Macon County

977.358 5 De Witt County
.359 McLean County
.36 East central counties
Including Vermilion River
.361 Livingston County
.362 Ford County
.363 Kankakee County
.364 Iroquois County
.365 Vermilion County
.366 Champaign County
.367 Piatt County
.367 5 Moultrie County
.368 Douglas County
.369 Edgar County
.37 Southeastern counties
Including Embarrass and Little Wabash Rivers, Skillet Fork
.371 Clark County
.372 Coles County
.373 Cumberland County
.374 Jasper County
.375 Crawford County
.376 Lawrence County
.377 Richland County
.378 Wabash County
.379 1 Edwards County
.379 2 Wayne County
.379 3 Jefferson County
.379 4 Marion County
.379 5 Clay County
.379 6 Effingham County
.379 7 Fayette County
.379 8 Shelby County

977.38 Southwestern counties
Including Kaskaskia River
.381 Christian County
.382 Montgomery County
.383 Macoupin County
.384 Greene County
.385 Calhoun County
.385 5 Jersey County
.386 Madison County
.387 Bond County
.387 5 Clinton County
.388 Washington County
.389 Saint Clair County

.39 Southern counties
.391 Monroe County
.392 Randolph County
.393 Perry County
.394 Franklin County
.395 Hamilton County
.396 White County
.397 Gallatin County
.398 Hardin County
.399 1 Pope County
.399 2 Saline County
.399 3 Williamson County
.399 4 Jackson County
.399 5 Union County
.399 6 Johnson County
.399 7 Massac County
.399 8 Pulaski County
.399 9 Alexander County

977.4 **Michigan**
Including Lake Huron [*formerly* *971.3], Lake Michigan

.401–.404 Period divisions
Divide like 977.101–977.104, e.g., territorial period of Michigan 977.403

977.41–977.499 7 Geographic divisions

.41 Southwestern counties of Lower Peninsula
Including Kalamazoo River
.411 Berrien County
Including Saint Joseph River
.412 Cass County
.413 Van Buren County
.414 Allegan County
.415 Ottawa County
.416 Barry County
.417 Kalamazoo County
.418 Kalamazoo
.419 Saint Joseph County

.42 South central counties of Lower Peninsula
.421 Branch County
.422 Calhoun County
.423 Eaton County
.424 Clinton County
.425 Shiawassee County
.426 Ingham County
.427 Lansing
.428 Jackson County
.429 Hillsdale County

977.43 Southeastern counties of Lower Peninsula
Including Lake Saint Clair
.431 Lenawee County
Including Raisin River
.432 Monroe County
.433 Wayne County
Including Detroit River
.434 Detroit metropolitan area
.435 Washtenaw County
.436 Livingston County
.437 Genesee County
Including Flint River
.438 Oakland County
.439 Macomb County

.44 Southeast central counties of Lower Peninsula
Including Saginaw Bay
.441 Saint Clair County
Including Saint Clair River
.442 Lapeer County
.443 Sanilac County
.444 Huron County
.445 Tuscola County
.446 Saginaw County
.447 Bay County
Including Saginaw River
.448 Midland County
.449 Gratiot County

.45 Southwest central counties of Lower Peninsula
Including Muskegon River
.451 Isabella County
.452 Mecosta County
.453 Montcalm County

977.454 Ionia County
.455 Kent County
.456 Grand Rapids
.457 Muskegon County
.458 Newaygo County
.459 Oceana County
.46 Northwest central counties of Lower Peninsula
Including Manistee River
.461 Mason County
Including Pere Marquette River
.462 Manistee County
.463 Benzie County
.463 5 Leelanau County
Including part of former Manitou County; North and South Fox Islands, North and South Manitou Islands
.464 Grand Traverse County
Including Grand Traverse Bay
.465 Kalkaska County
.466 Missaukee County
.467 Wexford County
.468 Lake County
.469 Osceola County
.47 Northeast central counties of Lower Peninsula
Including Au Sable River
.471 Clare County
.472 Gladwin County
.473 Arenac County
.474 Iosco County
.475 Ogemaw County
.476 Roscommon County
.477 Crawford County
.478 Oscoda County
.479 Alcona County

977.48 Northern counties of Lower Peninsula
Including Straits of Mackinac

.481 Alpena County

.482 Presque Isle County

.483 Montmorency County

.484 Otsego County

.485 Antrim County

.486 Charlevoix County
Including part of former Manitou County; Hog, Beaver, Garden, High Islands

.487 Cheboygan County
Including Black Lake and River

.488 Emmet County

.489 Manitou County to 1896
Divided in 1896 between Leelanau County and Charlevoix County
For Leelanau County, see 977.463 5; *Charlevoix County,* 977.486

.49 Upper Peninsula
Including Lake Superior [*formerly* *971.3]

.491 Chippewa County
Including Whitefish Bay, Saint Marys River; Sugar, Neebish, Drummond Islands

.492 Mackinac County
Including Mackinac, Marquette, Bois Blanc Islands; Manistique Lake

.492 5 Luce County

.493 Alger County
Including Wood, Grand Islands

.493 5 Schoolcraft County

.494 Delta County
Including Summer, Poverty, Saint Martin Islands

977.495 Menominee County
Including Menominee River

.495 5 Dickinson County

.496 Marquette County

.497 Baraga County

.497 5 Iron County

.498 Gogebic County
Including Lake Gogebic

.498 5 Ontonagon County
Including Porcupine Mountains

.499 Houghton County

.499 5 Keweenaw County
Including Keweenaw Peninsula

.499 7 Isle Royale
Including Isle Royale National Park

.5 Wisconsin
Including Wisconsin River

.501–.504 Period divisions
Divide like 977.101–977.104, e.g., territorial period of Wisconsin 977.503

977.51–977.599 Geographic divisions

.51 Northwestern counties
Including Lake Superior lowland region, Saint Croix River

.511 Douglas County

.512 Superior

.513 Bayfield County
Including Sand Island

.514 Burnett County

.515 Washburn County

.516 Sawyer County

977.517 Polk County
.518 Barron County
.519 Rusk County
Formerly Gates County
.52 North central counties
Including Lake Superior highland region
.521 Ashland County
Including Apostle Islands
.522 Iron County
.523 Vilas County
.524 Price County
.525 Oneida County
.526 Taylor County
.527 Lincoln County
.528 Clark County
.529 Marathon County
.53 Northeastern counties
Including Green Bay
.531 Forest County
.532 Florence County
.533 Marinette County
.534 Marinette
.535 Langlade County
Including Wolf River
.536 Shawano County
.537 Oconto County
.538 Waupaca County
.539 Outagamie County
.54 West central counties
Including western upland region, Chippewa River
.541 Saint Croix County

977.542 Pierce County
.543 Dunn County
.544 Chippewa County
.545 Eau Claire County
.546 Eau Claire
.547 Pepin County
.548 Buffalo County
.549 Trempealeau County
.55 Central counties
Including central plain region, Black River
.551 Jackson County
.552 Wood County
.553 Portage County
.554 Monroe County
.555 Juneau County
.556 Adams County
.557 Waushara County
.558 Marquette County
.559 Green Lake County
.56 East central counties
Including eastern ridge and lowland region, Fox River
.561 Brown County
.562 Kewaunee County
Including comprehensive works on Door Peninsula
.563 Door County
Including Washington, Chambers Islands
.564 Winnebago County
Including Lake Winnebago
.565 Oshkosh
.566 Calumet County
.567 Manitowoc County
.568 Fond du Lac County

977.569 Sheboygan County

.57 Southwestern counties

.571 La Crosse County

.572 La Crosse

.573 Vernon County

.574 Crawford County

Including Kickapoo River

.575 Richland County

.576 Sauk County

.577 Grant County

.578 Iowa County

.579 Lafayette County

.58 South central counties

.581 Columbia County

.582 Dodge County

.583 Dane County

.584 Madison

.585 Jefferson County

.586 Green County

.587 Rock County

.588 Beloit

.589 Walworth County

.59 Southeastern counties

.591 Washington County

.592 Ozaukee County

.593 Waukesha County

.594 Milwaukee County

.595 Milwaukee

.596 Racine County

.597 Racine

.598 Kenosha County

.599 Kenosha

977.6 Minnesota

977.601–977.605 Period divisions

.601 Discovery and early settlement to 1660

.602 French period, 1660–1783

.603 Preterritorial period, 1783–1849

Including acquisition of western Minnesota

.604 Territorial period and early statehood, 1849–1900

.605 Modern period, 1900–

977.61–977.699 Geographic divisions

.61 Southeastern counties

Including driftless region

.611 Houston County

.612 Winona County

.613 Wabasha County

Including Lake Pepin

.614 Goodhue County

.615 Dodge County

.615 5 Olmsted County

.616 Fillmore County

.617 Mower County

.618 Freeborn County

.619 Steele County

.619 5 Waseca County

.62 Southwestern counties

Including southwestern upland region

.621 Blue Earth County

.622 Faribault County

.623 Martin County

977.623 5 Jackson County
.624 Nobles County
.625 Rock County
.626 Pipestone County
.627 Murray County
.628 Cottonwood County
.629 Watonwan County

.63 Southwest central counties
Including Minnesota River and Valley
.631 Brown County
.632 Nicollet County
.633 Sibley County
.634 Renville County
.635 Redwood County
.636 Lyon County
.636 5 Lincoln County
.637 Yellow Medicine County
.638 Lac Qui Parle County
.639 Chippewa County

.64 West central counties
Including central plains region
.641 Swift County
.642 Stevens County
.643 Big Stone County
.643 5 Traverse County
.644 Grant County
.645 Douglas County
.646 Pope County

977.647 Stearns County
.648 Kandiyohi County
.649 Meeker County

.65 Southeast central counties
.651 Wright County
.652 McLeod County
.653 Carver County
.654 Scott County
.655 Le Sueur County
.655 5 Rice County
.656 Dakota County
.657 Hennepin County
.657 9 Minneapolis
Including comprehensive works on Minneapolis–Saint Paul (Twin Cities) metropolitan area
For Saint Paul, see 977.658 1
.658 Ramsey County
.658 1 Saint Paul
.659 Washington County

.66 East central counties
.661 Chisago County
.662 Pine County
.663 Kanabec County
.664 Isanti County
.665 Anoka County
.666 Sherburne County
.667 Benton County
.668 Mille Lacs County
Including Mille Lacs Lake
.669 Morrison County

977.67 Northeastern counties
Including northeastern highlands region
.671 Crow Wing County
.672 Aitkin County
.673 Carlton County
.674 Lake Superior region
Including Arrowhead country
.675 Cook County
.676 Lake County
Including Vermilion Range
.677 Saint Louis County
Including Mesabi Range, La Croix Lake
.677 1 Duluth metropolitan area
For Superior, Wisconsin, see 977.512
.678 Itasca County
Including Winnibigoshish Lake
.679 Koochiching County
Including Rainy River, Rainy Lake
.68 North central counties
.681 Lake of the Woods County
Including Lake of the Woods
.682 Beltrami County
.683 Clearwater County
.684 Becker County
.685 Hubbard County
.686 Cass County
.687 Wadena County
.688 Todd County
.689 Otter Tail County

977.69 Northwestern counties
Including Lake Agassiz plains region, Red River of the North in Minnesota
.691 Wilkin County
.692 Clay County
.693 Norman County
.694 Mahnomen County
.695 Polk County
Including Red Lake River
.696 Red Lake County
.696 5 Pennington County
.697 Marshall County
.698 Roseau County
Including Muskeg Bay
.699 Kittson County

.7 Iowa
Including Des Moines River

977.701–977.703 Period divisions

.701 Discovery and early settlement, 1673–1838
.702 Territorial period and early statehood, 1838–1900
.703 Modern period, 1900–

977.71–977.799 Geographic divisions

.71 Northwestern counties
Including Big Sioux and Little Sioux Rivers in Iowa
.711 Lyon County
.711 6 Osceola County
.712 Dickinson County
.712 5 Emmet County
.713 Sioux County

977.714 O'Brien County
.715 Clay County
.715 5 Palo Alto County
.716 Plymouth County
.717 Cherokee County
.718 Buena Vista County
.719 Pocahontas County
.72 North central counties
.721 Kossuth County
.722 Winnebago County
.723 Worth County
.723 4 Mitchell County
.724 Hancock County
.725 Cerro Gordo County
.726 Floyd County
.727 Humboldt County
.727 4 Wright County
.728 Franklin County
.729 Butler County
.73 Northeastern counties
Including Turkey River
.731 Howard County
.731 5 Chickasaw County
.732 Winneshiek County
.733 Allamakee County
.734 Bremer County
.735 Fayette County
.736 Clayton County
.737 Black Hawk County
.738 Buchanan County
.738 5 Delaware County
.739 Dubuque County

977.74 West central counties
Including Boyer, Raccoon Rivers
.741 Woodbury County
.742 Ida County
.742 4 Sac County
.743 Calhoun County
.744 Monona County
.745 Crawford County
.746 Carroll County
.746 6 Greene County
.747 Harrison County
.748 Shelby County
.748 6 Audubon County
.749 Guthrie County
.75 Central counties
.751 Webster County
.752 Hamilton County
.753 Hardin County
.753 7 Grundy County
.754 Boone County
.754 6 Story County
.755 Marshall County
.756 Tama County
.757 Dallas County
.758 Polk County
.758 1 Des Moines
.759 Jasper County
.759 6 Poweshiek County

977.76 East central counties
Including Wapsipinicon, Cedar, Iowa Rivers

.761 Benton County

.762 Linn County

.763 Jones County

.764 Jackson County

.765 Iowa County

.765 5 Johnson County

.766 Cedar County

.767 Clinton County

.768 Muscatine County

.769 Scott County

.769 1 Davenport
Including Davenport–Rock Island–Moline metropolitan area
For Rock Island, Moline, see 977.339

.77 Southwestern counties
Including Nishnabotna River

.771 Pottawattamie County

.772 Cass County

.773 Adair County

.774 Mills County

.775 Montgomery County

.776 Adams County

.777 Fremont County

.778 Page County

.779 Taylor County

977.78 South central counties

.781 Madison County

.782 Warren County

.783 Marion County

.784 Mahaska County

.785 Union County

.785 6 Clarke County

.786 Lucas County

.786 5 Monroe County

.787 Ringgold County

.787 5 Decatur County

.788 Wayne County

.789 Appanoose County

.79 Southeastern counties
Including Skunk River

.791 Keokuk County

.792 Washington County

.792 6 Louisa County

.793 Wapello County

.794 Jefferson County

.795 Henry County

.796 Des Moines County

.797 Davis County

.798 Van Buren County

.799 Lee County

977.8 **Missouri**

Including Missouri River in Missouri

977.801–977.804 Period divisions

.801 Discovery and early settlement, 1673–1750

.802 French and Spanish periods, 1750–1803

.803 Territorial period and early statehood, 1803–1900

.804 Modern period, 1900–

977.81–977.899 6 Geographic divisions

.81 Northwest counties

Including prairies region

.811 Atchison County

.811 5 Holt County

.812 Nodaway County

.812 6 Andrew County

.813 Buchanan County

.813 5 Platte County

.814 Worth County

Including Grand River

.814 5 Gentry County

.815 De Kalb County

.815 5 Clinton County

.816 Clay County

.817 Harrison County

.818 Daviess County

.818 5 Caldwell County

.819 Ray County

977.82 North central counties

Including Chariton River

.821 Mercer County

.821 5 Grundy County

.822 Livingston County

.822 5 Carroll County

.823 Putnam County

.823 5 Sullivan County

.824 Linn County

.825 Chariton County

.826 Schuyler County

.826 4 Adair County

.827 Macon County

.828 Randolph County

.828 5 Howard County

.829 Boone County

.83 Northeastern counties

Including glacial plains region

.831 Scotland County

.831 5 Knox County

.832 Shelby County

Including Salt River

.832 5 Monroe County

.833 Audrain County

.833 5 Callaway County

.834 Clark County

.834 5 Lewis County

.835 Marion County

.835 5 Ralls County

.836 Pike County

977.837 Lincoln County
.838 Montgomery County
.838 6 Warren County
.839 Saint Charles County

.84 West central counties
Including old prairies region
.841 Jackson County
.841 1 Kansas City metropolitan area
For Johnson County, Kansas, see 978.167 5; *Wyandotte County, Kansas,* 978.139
.842 Cass County
.843 Bates County
.844 Vernon County
.845 Lafayette County
.845 5 Johnson County
.846 Henry County
.846 6 Saint Clair County
.847 Saline County
.848 Pettis County
.849 Benton County
Including Lake of the Ozarks
.849 6 Hickory County

.85 Central counties
Including Ozark highlands region
.851 Cooper County
.852 Moniteau County
.853 Morgan County
.854 Camden County
.855 Cole County
.855 1 Jefferson City
.856 Miller County

977.857 Pulaski County
.858 Osage County
.859 Maries County
.859 4 Phelps County

.86 East central counties
.861 Gasconade County
.862 Crawford County
.863 Franklin County
.864 Washington County
.865 Saint Louis County
.866 Saint Louis (city)
.867 Jefferson County
.868 Saint Francois County
.869 Sainte Genevieve County
.869 4 Perry County

.87 Southwestern counties
.871 Barton County
.872 Jasper County
.873 Newton County
.873 6 McDonald County
.874 Cedar County
.874 5 Dade County
.875 Lawrence County
.876 Barry County
.877 Polk County
.878 Greene County
.879 Christian County
.879 4 Stone County
.879 7 Taney County

977.88 South central counties
Including Ozark Plateau in Missouri
.881 Dallas County
.881 5 Laclede County
.882 Webster County
.882 5 Wright County
.883 Douglas County
.883 5 Ozark County
.884 Texas County
.885 Howell County
.886 Dent County
.887 Shannon County
.887 5 Oregon County
.888 Iron County
.888 5 Reynolds County
.889 Carter County
.889 4 Ripley County
.89 Southeastern counties
Including southeastern lowlands region
.891 Madison County
.892 Wayne County
.893 Butler County
.894 Bollinger County
.895 Stoddard County
.896 Cape Girardeau County
.897 Scott County
.898 Mississippi County
.898 5 New Madrid County
.899 Dunklin County
.899 6 Pemiscot County

978 Western states
Including the West, Rocky Mountains, Continental Divide, Missouri River

.1 Kansas
Including Kansas (Kaw) River

978.101–978.103 Period divisions

.101 Discovery and early exploration, 1541–1803
Including Spanish and French periods
.102 Territorial period, 1803–1861
.103 Statehood, 1861–

978.11–978.199 Geographic divisions

.11 Northwestern counties
Including High Plains in Kansas
.111 Cheyenne County
.111 5 Sherman County
.112 Wallace County
.112 5 Rawlins County
.113 Thomas County
.113 5 Logan County
.114 Decatur County
.114 5 Sheridan County
.115 Gove County
.115 5 Norton County
.116 Graham County
.116 5 Trego County
.117 Phillips County
.118 Rooks County
.119 Ellis County

978.12 North central counties

Including Central Plains in Kansas; Solomon, Republican, Big Blue Rivers

.121 Smith County
.121 5 Osborne County
.122 Jewell County
.123 Mitchell County
.124 Republic County
.125 Cloud County
.126 Ottawa County
.127 Washington County
.127 5 Clay County
.128 Riley County
.129 Geary County

.13 Northeastern counties

Including Bluestem Belt

.131 Marshall County
.132 Pottawatomie County
.133 Nemaha County
.133 5 Jackson County
.134 Brown County
.135 Doniphan County
.136 Atchison County
.137 Jefferson County
.138 Leavenworth County
.139 Wyandotte County

.14 West central counties

Including Arkansas River in Kansas

.141 Greeley County
.141 5 Hamilton County
.142 Wichita County

978.142 5 Kearny County
.143 Scott County
.144 Finney County
.145 Lane County
.146 Ness County
.147 Hodgeman County
.148 Rush County
.149 Pawnee County

.15 Central counties

.151 Russell County
.152 Barton County
.153 Lincoln County
.153 5 Ellsworth County
.154 Rice County
.154 5 Saline County
.155 McPherson County
.156 Dickinson County
.157 Marion County
.158 Morris County
.159 Chase County

.16 East central counties

.161 Wabaunsee County
.162 Lyon County
.163 Shawnee County
.163 1 Topeka
.164 Osage County
.164 5 Coffey County
.165 Douglas County
.166 Franklin County
.167 Anderson County
.167 5 Johnson County

978.168 Miami County
.169 Linn County

.17 Southwestern counties
.171 Stanton County
.171 5 Morton County
.172 Grant County
.172 5 Stevens County
.173 Haskell County
.173 5 Seward County
.174 Gray County
.175 Meade County
.176 Ford County
.177 Clark County
.178 Edwards County
.178 5 Kiowa County
.179 Comanche County

.18 South central counties
.181 Stafford County
.181 5 Pratt County
.182 Barber County
.183 Reno County
.184 Kingman County
.184 5 Harper County
.185 Harvey County
.186 Sedgwick County
.187 Sumner County
.188 Butler County
.189 Cowley County

.19 Southeastern counties
.191 Greenwood County
.191 5 Elk County

978.191 8 Chautauqua County
.192 Woodson County
.192 5 Wilson County
.193 Montgomery County
.194 Allen County
.195 Neosho County
.196 Labette County
.197 Bourbon County
.198 Crawford County
.199 Cherokee County

.2 Nebraska
Including Platte River

978.201–978.203 Period divisions

.201 Discovery and early exploration, 1739–1854
Including French period
.202 Territorial period, 1854–1867
.203 Statehood, 1867–

978.21–978.299 Geographic divisions

.21 Eastern Nebraska
.22 Missouri River lowland region
.221 Northeastern counties
Including Loess Hills region
.222 Dixon County
.222 4 Dakota County
.222 7 Thurston County
Called Blackbird County before 1889
.223 Cuming County
.223 5 Dodge County
.224 Burt County

978.224 5 Washington County
.225 Douglas County
.225 6 Sarpy County
.226 Southeastern counties
Including Drift Hills region
.227 Cass County
.227 3 Otoe County
Called Pierce County until 1855
For present Pierce County, see 978.256
.227 6 Johnson County
.227 8 Nemaha County
Called Forney County until 1855
.228 Richardson County
.228 4 Pawnee County
.228 6 Gage County
Including former Jackson County
.228 7 Beatrice
.229 Lancaster County
Including former Clay County
For present Clay County, see 978.235 7
.229 1 Lincoln
.229 6 Saunders County
Called Calhoun County until 1862
Including Todd Valley
.23 Southern central counties
Including Loess Plains region
.231 Blue River area
Including Big Blue and Little Blue Rivers
.232 Butler County
.232 4 Seward County
Called Greene County until 1862
.232 7 Saline County
Including former Johnston County

978.233 Jefferson County
Formerly called Jones County
For former Jefferson County, see 978.233 5
Thayer County
Formerly Jefferson County
For present Jefferson County, see 978.233
Fillmore County
York County
Polk County
Hamilton County
Clay County
For original Clay County, see 978.229
Republican River area
Nuckolls County
Webster County
Franklin County
Harlan County
Furnas County
Gosper County
Phelps County
Kearney County
Adams County
Hastings
Central counties
Including Platte Valley lowland region, Loup River area
Hall County
Merrick County
Nance County
Howard County
Sherman County
Buffalo County
Dawson County

978.247 Custer County
Including Garber and Kountze Counties as proposed in 1875
.248 Valley County
.249 Greeley County
.25 Northeast central counties
Including Loess Hills region, Elkhorn River area
.251 Boone County
.252 Platte County
Including former Monroe and Loup Counties
For present Loup County, see 978.276 7
.253 Colfax County
.253 5 Stanton County
Called McNeale County, 1855; Izard County, 1856–1862
.254 Madison County
.255 Antelope County
.256 Pierce County
For original Pierce County, see 978.227 3
.257 Wayne County
.258 Cedar County
.259 Knox County
Called L'Eau qui Court County until 1873
.26 Western Nebraska
.27 North central counties
Including Sand Hills region
.271 Niobrara River (L'Eau qui Court, Running Water River) area
Including Northern Tablelands region
.272 Boyd County
.272 5 Keyapaha County
.273 Cherry County
.273 6 Brown County
.274 Rock County

978.274 5 Holt County
Including West County, establisht 1860 but never organized
.275 Southern Sand Hills area
.276 Wheeler County
.276 4 Garfield County
.276 7 Loup County
For original Loup County, see 978.252
.277 Blaine County
.277 4 Thomas County
.277 7 Hooker County
.278 Grant County
.278 5 Arthur County
.279 McPherson County
.279 5 Logan County
.28 Southwestern counties
.281 Loess Canyons area
.282 Lincoln County
Called Shorter County until 1861
.283 Hayes County
.283 5 Frontier County
.284 Redwillow County
.284 5 Hitchcock County
.285 Perkins Plain area
.286 Dundy County
.287 Chase County
.288 Perkins County
.289 Keith County
Including McConaughy Lake
.29 Northwestern counties
Including Western Tablelands region, Panhandle
.291 Deuel County
.291 5 Garden County

978.292 Sheridan County
Including proposed Kersey County
.293 Dawes County
.294 Box Butte County
.295 Morrill County
Including North Platte Plain
.296 Cheyenne County
Including former unorganized Taylor County
.297 Kimball County
Including proposed Potter County, former unorganized Lyons County
.297 5 Banner County
.298 Scotts Bluff County
.299 Sioux County

.3 South Dakota
Including comprehensive works on Dakota Territory

978.301–978.303 Period divisions

.301 Discovery and early exploration, 1743–1861
Including French period
.302 Territorial period, 1861–1889
.303 Statehood, 1889–

978.31–978.397 Geographic divisions

.31 Glacial Drift region (Prairie Plains)
.311 Northern counties
Including Minnesota Basin counties, Coteaux des Prairies counties
.312 Roberts County
.313 Marshall County
.314 Day County
.314 4 Brown County

978.315 Edmunds County
.316 McPherson County
.317 Campbell County
.318 Walworth County
.319 Potter County
.32 Faulk County
.321 Spink County
.322 Clark County
.323 Codington County
.324 Grant County
.325 Deuel County
.326 Hamlin County
.327 Brookings County
.327 3 Kingsbury County
.327 4 Beadle County
.328 Hand County
.328 3 Hyde County
.328 4 Sully County
.329 Hughes County
Including Pierre

.33 Southern counties
Including James River and Valley, Missouri Hills region
.331 Buffalo County
.332 Jerauld County
.333 Sanborn County
.334 Miner County
.335 Lake County
.336 Moody County
.337 Minnehaha County
.337 2 McCook County
.337 3 Hanson County
.337 4 Davison County
.337 5 Aurora County

978.338 Brule County
.338 2 Charles Mix County
.338 3 Douglas County
.338 4 Hutchinson County
.338 5 Turner County
.339 Lincoln County
Including Big Sioux River
.339 2 Union County
.339 3 Clay County
.339 4 Yankton County
.339 5 Bon Homme County

.34 Western Plains region

.341 Missouri Plateau counties
Including Grand, Moreau, Cheyenne Rivers
.342 Harding County
.343 Butte County
.344 Meade County
.345 Perkins County
.35 Corson County
.353 Ziebach County
.354 Dewey County
Including former Armstrong County
.355 Stanley County
.356 Haakon County
.357 Jackson County
.357 7 Jones County
.358 Lyman County
.359 Gregory County

.36 High Plains counties
Including White River
.361 Tripp County
.362 Todd County
.363 Mellette County

978.364 Washabaugh County
.365 Bennett County
.366 Shannon County

.39 Black Hills region
.391 Lawrence County
.393 Pennington County
.395 Custer County
.397 Fall River County

.4 North Dakota

.401–.403 Period divisions
Divide like 978.301–978.303, e.g., territorial period of North Dakota 978.402

978.41–978.495 Geographic divisions

.41 Red River Valley region
Including Red River of the North
.412 Richland County
.413 Cass County
.414 Traill County
.416 Grand Forks County
.418 Walsh County
.419 Pembina County

.43 Glacial Drift Plains region
Including Sheyenne River, James River in North Dakota
.431 Sargent County
.431 5 Ransom County
.432 Barnes County
Including Lake Ashtabula (Baldhill Reservoir)
.433 Steele County
.434 Griggs County
.435 Nelson County

978.436 Ramsey County
Including Devils Lake
.437 Cavalier County
.438 Towner County
.439 Benson County
.45 Eddy County
.451 Foster County
.452 Stutsman County
.453 LaMoure County
.454 Dickey County
.455 McIntosh County
.456 Logan County
.457 Kidder County
.458 Wells County
.459 Pierce County
.459 2 Rolette County
.46 Lake Sauris Plain counties
Including Sauris River, Turtle Mountains
.461 Bottineau County
.462 McHenry County
.463 Ward County
.464 Renville County
.47 Missouri Plateau counties (Coteau du Missouri)
.471 Divide County
.472 Burke County
.473 Williams County
.474 Mountrail County
.475 McLean County
Including Garrison Reservoir
.476 Sheridan County
.477 Burleigh County
Including Bismarck
.478 Emmans County

978.48 Great Plains region
Including Little Missouri River
.481 McKenzie County
.482 Dunn County
.483 Mercer County
.484 Oliver County
.484 4 Stark County
.485 Morton County
.486 Hettinger County
.487 Grant County
Including Heart Butte Reservoir
.488 Sioux County
.489 Adams County
.49 Badlands counties
.492 Bowman County
.493 Slope County
.494 Billings County
.495 Golden Valley County

.6 Montana

978.601–978.603 Period divisions

.601 Discovery and early exploration, 1803–1864
.602 Territorial period, 1864–1899
.603 Statehood, 1899–

978.61–978.689 Geographic divisions

.61 Great Plains region
.611 Northern counties
Including Milk River
.612 Toole County
.613 Liberty County

978.614 Hill County
.615 Blaine County
.616 Phillips County
.617 Valley County
Including Fort Peck Reservoir
.62 Daniels County
.621 Sheridan County
.622 Roosevelt County
.623 Richland County
.624 Dawson County
.625 Prairie County
.626 McCone County
.627 Garfield County
.628 Petroleum County
.629 Fergus County
.629 3 Chouteau County
.63 Southern counties
Including Yellowstone River
.631 Golden Valley County
.631 2 Musselshell County
.631 3 Treasure County
.632 Rosebud County
.633 Custer County
.634 Wibaux County
.635 Fallon County
.636 Carter County
.637 Powder River County
.638 Big Horn County
.639 Yellowstone County

978.65 Rocky Mountains region
Including Bitterroot Range
.651 Central and southwestern counties
Counties predominantly east of the Continental Divide
.652 Glacier County
Including Waterton-Glacier International Peace Park, Glacier National Park
.653 Pondera County
.655 Teton County
.66 Lewis and Clark County
Including Helena
.661 Cascade County
.661 2 Meagher County
.662 Judith Basin County
.663 Wheatland County
.664 Sweet Grass County
.665 Stillwater County
.665 2 Carbon County
.666 Park County
.666 2 Gallatin County
.666 3 Madison County
.666 4 Broadwater County
.667 Jefferson County
.668 Silver Bow County
.669 Beaverhead County
.68 Northwestern counties
Counties predominantly west of the Continental Divide
Including Cabinet and Purcell Mountains, Mission Range
.681 Lincoln County
.682 Flathead County
Including Lewis Range

978.683 Lake County
Including Flathead Lake
.683 3 Sanders County
.684 Mineral County
.685 Missoula County
.686 Powell County
.687 Deer Lodge County
.688 Granite County
.689 Ravalli County

.7 Wyoming

978.701–978.703 Period divisions

.701 Discovery and early exploration, 1743–1868
.702 Territorial period, 1868–1890
.703 Statehood, 1890–

978.71–978.795 Geographic divisions

.71 High Plains region
.712 Campbell County
.713 Crook County
Including Belle Fourche River
.714 Weston County
.715 Niobrara County
.716 Converse County
Including North Platte River
.717 Platte County
.718 Goshen County
.719 Laramie County
Including Cheyenne, Cheyenne Plain

.72 Rocky Mountains region
.73 Big Horn Mountains counties
.732 Sheridan County

978.733 Big Horn County
.734 Washakie County
.735 Johnson County

.74 Absaroka Range counties
.742 Park County
.743 Hot Springs County
Including Owl Creek Mountains

.75 Teton Range area
.752 Yellowstone National Park
.755 Teton County
Including Grand Teton National Park, Snake River and Gros Ventre Ranges

.76 Wind River Range counties
.763 Fremont County
.765 Sublette County

.78 Southwestern counties
Including Bridger Basin
.782 Lincoln County
Including Salt River Range, Absaroka Ridge
.784 Uinta County
Including Bear River Divide, Tump Range
.785 Sweetwater County
Including Green River in Wyoming, Great Divide Basin
.786 Carbon County
Including Medicine Bow Range, Shirley Basin, Pathfinder Reservoir

.79 Laramie Range counties
.793 Natrona County
Including Rattlesnake, Casper, Haystack Ranges
.795 Albany County
Including Laramie Basin

978.8 Colorado

978.801–978.803 Period divisions

.801 Discovery and early exploration, 1541–1803

.802 Acquisition and territorial period, 1803–1876
Including acquisition of East Colorado thru Louisiana Purchase, of West Colorado from Mexico

.803 Statehood, 1876–

978.81–978.899 Geographic divisions

.81 Colorado Plateau region

.811 Northern Plateau counties
Including Colorado River in Colorado

.812 Moffat County
Including Dinosaur National Monument, Yampa Plateau

.814 Routt County
Including Elk Head Mountains

.815 Rio Blanco County

.816 Garfield County
Including Roan Plateau and Cliffs

.817 Mesa County

.818 Delta County

.819 Montrose County
Including Uncompahgre Plateau

.82 Southern Plateau counties

.822 Ouray County

.823 San Miguel County

.825 San Juan County

.826 Dolores County

978.827 Montezuma County

.829 La Plata County
Including La Plata Mountains

.83 Rocky Mountains region

.831 South central counties

.832 Archuleta County

.833 Conejos County
Formerly Guadaloupe County
Including San Luis Valley

.835 Costilla County
Including Sangre de Cristo grant

.836 Alamosa County

.837 Rio Grande County

.838 Mineral County
Including San Juan Mountains

.839 Hinsdale County

.84 West central counties
Including Sawatch Range

.841 Gunnison County
Including Elk Mountains

.843 Pitkin County

.844 Eagle County

.845 Summit County
Including Gore Range

.846 Lake County
Including Leadville Basin

.847 Chaffee County

978.849 Saguache County
Including Sangre de Cristo Range, Great Sand Dunes National Monument

.85 East central counties

.851 Huerfano County
Including Park Plateau

.852 Custer County
Including Wet Mountains

.853 Fremont County
Including Royal Gorge of the Arkansas

.855 Pueblo County

.856 El Paso County

.858 Teller County

.859 Park County
Including Mosquito Range, South Park

.86 North central counties

.861 Clear Creek County

.862 Gilpin County

.863 Boulder County

.865 Grand County
Including Rabbit Ears Range, Middle Park, Granby Reservoir

.866 Jackson County
Including Park Range, North Park

.868 Larimer County

.869 Rocky Mountain National Park

.87 Great Plains region (Eastern Colorado)

.871 Northern Plains counties
Including South Platte River

978.872 Weld County

.874 Morgan County

.875 Logan County

.876 Sedgwick County

.877 Phillips County

.878 Yuma County

.879 Washington County

.88 West Central Plains counties

.881 Adams County

.882 Arapahoe County

.883 Denver County

.883 1 Denver

.884 Jefferson County

.886 Douglas County

.887 Elbert County

.889 Lincoln County

.89 Southern Plains counties

.891 Kit Carson County

.892 Cheyenne County

.893 Kiowa County

.894 Crowley County

.895 Otero County

.896 Las Animas County
Including Culebra Range

.897 Bent County

.898 Prowers County

.899 Baca County

978.9 New Mexico

978.901–978.905 Period divisions

.901 Discovery and early exploration, 1540–1598

.902 Spanish period, 1598–1821

.903 Mexican period, 1821–1848

.904 Territorial period, 1848–1912

.905 Statehood, 1912–

978.91–978.993 Geographic divisions

.91 Great Plains region

.92 Raton Section counties

Including northeastern counties

.922 Colfax County

.923 Union County

.924 Harding County

.925 Guadalupe County

.926 Quay County

.927 Curry County

.93 Llano Estacado counties

.932 Roosevelt County

.933 Lea County

.94 Pecos Valley counties

.942 Eddy County

.943 Chaves County

.944 De Baca County

.95 Rocky Mountains region

.952 Rio Arriba County

.953 Taos County

978.954 Mora County

.955 San Miguel County

.956 Santa Fe County

Including Santa Fe

.957 Sandoval County

.958 Los Alamos County

.96 Basin and Range region

Including upper Rio Grande Valley

.961 Bernalillo County

.962 Socorro County

Including Elephant Butte Reservoir, Jornada del Muerto, San Andres Mountains

.963 Torrance County

.964 Lincoln County

.965 Otero County

Including Tularosa Valley, White Sands National Monument, Sacramento Mountains

.966 Dona Ana County

.967 Sierra County

.968 Luna County

.969 Grant County

.969 3 Hidalgo County

Including Peloncillo Mountains

.97 Colorado Plateau region

.98 San Juan Basin counties

.982 San Juan County

.983 McKinley County

.99 Datil Section counties

.992 Valencia County

.993 Catron County

Including Plains of Saint Augustine

979 Far western states

Including comprehensive works on Pacific Coast, New Southwest

.1 Arizona

.101–.105 Period divisions

Divide like 978.901–978.905, e.g., territorial period of Arizona 979.104

979.13–979.179 Geographic divisions

.13 Colorado Plateau region

Including comprehensive works on Colorado River

.132 Grand Canyon National Park

Including Grand Canyon National Monument

.133 Coconino County

Including Painted Desert, Little Colorado River

.135 Navajo County

.137 Apache County

Including Petrified Forest National Monument

.15 Mountain region (Mexican Highland region)

.151 Greenlee County

.153 Cochise County

.154 Graham County

Including San Carlos Lake

.155 Gila County

Including Roosevelt Reservoir

.157 Yavapai County

.159 Mohave County

.17 Plains region (Sonoran Desert region)

Including Gila River

.171 Yuma County

.173 Maricopa County

Including Phoenix

979.175 Pinal County

.177 Pima County

.179 Santa Cruz County

.2 Utah

979.201–979.203 Period divisions

.201 Discovery and early exploration, 1776–1848

Including Spanish and Mexican periods

.202 Territorial period, 1848–1896

Including provisional State of Deseret

.203 Statehood, 1896–

979.21–979.259 Geographic divisions

.21 Wyoming Basin region

.212 Cache County

.213 Rich County

.214 Summit County

Including Uinta Mountains

.215 Daggett County

.22 Rocky Mountains region

Including Wasatch Range

.221 Uintah County

Including comprehensive works on Green River

.222 Duchesne County

.223 Wasatch County

.224 Utah County

.225 Salt Lake County

Including Salt Lake City

.226 Morgan County

.227 Davis County

Including Antelope Island

979.228 Weber County

.24 Great Basin region

.242 Box Elder County
Including Great Salt Lake

.243 Tooele County
Including Great Salt Desert

.244 Juab County
Including Deep Creek Mountains

.245 Millard County
Including Pavant Mountains, Confusion Range

.246 Beaver County

.247 Iron County

.248 Washington County
Including Zion National Monument, Zion National Park

.25 Colorado Plateau region

.251 Kane County
Including Kaiparowits Plateau, Bryce Canyon National Park

.252 Garfield County
Including Paunsaugunt Plateau

.253 Piute County

.254 Wayne County

.255 Sevier County

.256 Sanpeta County
Including Wasatch Plateau

.2566 Carbon County

.257 Emery County

.258 Grand County

.259 San Juan County
Including San Juan River

979.3 Nevada

979.301–979.303 Period divisions

.301 Discovery and early exploration, 1825–1861

.302 Territorial period and early statehood, 1861–1900

.303 Modern period, 1900–

979.31–979.359 Geographic divisions

.31 Eastern region

.312 Lake Mead National Recreational Area

.313 Clark County

.314 Lincoln County

.315 White Pine County

.316 Elko County
Including Humboldt River

.33 Central region

.332 Eureka County

.333 Lander County

.334 Nye County
Including Yucca Flats, Frenchman Flat

.335 Esmeralda County

.35 Western region

.351 Mineral County

.352 Churchill County

.353 Pershing County

.354 Humboldt County
Including Black Rock Desert

.355 Washoe County

.356 Storey County

.357 Ormsby County
Including Carson City, Lake Tahoe in Nevada

.358 Lyon County

.359 Douglas County

979.4 **California**

979.401–979.405 Period divisions

.401 Discovery and early exploration, 1542–1769

.402 Spanish period, 1769–1822

.403 Mexican period, 1822–1848

.404 Territorial period and early statehood, 1848–1900

.405 Modern period, 1900–

979.41–979.499 Geographic divisions

.41 Northwestern counties

Including comprehensive works on northern California, Coast Ranges in California

.411 Del Norte County

.412 Humboldt County

.414 Trinity County

.415 Mendocino County

.417 Lake County

.418 Sonoma County

.419 Napa County

.42 Northeastern counties

Including Cascade Range in California

.421 Siskiyou County

Including Lava Beds National Monument, Klamath Mountains

.423 Modoc County

Including Goose Lake

.424 Shasta County

Including Lassen Volcanic National Park

.426 Lassen County

979.427 Tehama County

.429 Plumas County

.43 North central counties

.431 Glenn County

.432 Butte County

.433 Colusa County

.434 Sutter County

.435 Yuba County

.436 Sierra County

.437 Nevada County

.438 Placer County

Including Lake Tahoe

.44 East central counties

Including comprehensive works on central California, Sierra Nevada

.441 El Dorado County

.442 Amador County

.443 Alpine County

.444 Calaveras County

.445 Tuolumne County

.446 Mariposa County

.447 Yosemite National Park

.448 Mono County

.45 Central counties

Including Sacramento River and Valley; comprehensive works on the Great Valley (Central Valley)

.451 Yolo County

.452 Solano County

.453 Sacramento County

.454 Sacramento

979.455 San Joaquin County
.456 Stockton
.457 Stanislaus County
.458 Merced County

.46 West central counties
Including San Francisco Bay area, Farallon Islands
.461 San Francisco County
Including San Francisco metropolitan area
.462 Marin County
.463 Contra Costa County
.465 Alameda County
.466 Oakland
.467 Berkeley
.469 San Mateo County

.47 Southern Coast Range counties
.471 Santa Cruz County
.473 Santa Clara County
.474 San José
.475 San Benito County
.476 Monterey County
Including Salinas River
.478 San Luis Obispo County
Including Santa Lucia Range

.48 South central counties
Including San Joaquin River and Valley
.481 Madera County
.482 Fresno County
Including Kings Canyon National Park
.483 Fresno
.485 Kings County
.486 Tulare County
Including Sequoia National Park, Mount Whitney

979.487 Inyo County
Including Death Valley National Monument, Owens Valley, Inyo Mountains, Panamint Valley and Range
.488 Kern County
Including Tehachapi Mountains, Kern River

.49 Southern counties (Southern California)
.491 Santa Barbara County
Including San Miguel, Santa Rosa, Santa Cruz, Santa Barbara Islands
.492 Ventura County
Including Anacapa, San Nicolas Islands
.493 Los Angeles County
Including Santa Catalina and San Clemente Islands, San Gabriel Mountains
.494 Los Angeles metropolitan area
.495 San Bernardino County
Including Mojave Desert, San Bernardino Mountains
.496 Orange County
Including Santa Ana Mountains
.497 Riverside County
Including Joshua Tree National Monument
.498 San Diego County
.499 Imperial County
Including Salton Sea, Imperial Valley, Colorado Desert

.5 Oregon
Including Old Oregon Territory, Pacific Northwest

979.501–979.504 Period divisions

.501 Discovery and early exploration, 1543–1778
.502 Spanish and British periods, 1778–1819
.503 Preterritorial and territorial periods, 1819–1859
.504 Statehood, 1859–

979.51–979.597 Geographic divisions

979.51 Western Oregon
Including Cascade, Coast Ranges
.52 Southwestern counties
Formerly Umpqua County
Including Klamath Mountains region
.521 Curry County
Including Rogue River
.523 Coos County
.525 Josephine County
Including Siskiyou Mountains
.527 Jackson County
.529 Douglas County
Including Umpqua River, Calapooya Mountains
.53 West central counties
Including Willamette Valley and coastal regions
.531 Lane County
.533 Lincoln County
.534 Benton County
.535 Linn County
Including Santiam River
.537 Marion County
Called Champoeg County until 1849
.537 1 Salem
.538 Polk County
.539 Yamhill County
.54 Northwestern counties
Including lower Columbia River and Valley
.541 Clackamas County
.543 Washington County
Called Tuality County until 1849
.544 Tillamook County
.546 Clatsop County

979.547 Columbia County
.549 Multnomah County
Including Portland metropolitan area
.55 Eastern Oregon
.56 North central counties
Including Columbia-Deschutes Plateau region, Deschutes River
.561 Hood River County
Including Mount Hood
.562 Wasco County
.564 Sherman County
.565 Gilliam County
.567 Morrow County
.569 Umatilla County
.57 Northeastern counties
Including Blue-Wallowa Mountains and Snake River in Oregon
.571 Union County
Including Grande Ronde River
.573 Wallowa County
.575 Baker County
.578 Grant County
.58 Central counties
.581 Wheeler County
.583 Crook County
Including Maury Mountains
.585 Jefferson County
.587 Deschutes County
.59 Southeastern counties
Including southeastern lake region
.591 Klamath County
.591 5 Crater Lake National Park
.593 Lake County
.595 Harney County
.597 Malheur County

979.6 Idaho

979.601–979.603 Period divisions

.601 Discovery and early exploration, 1805–1863

.602 Territorial period, 1863–1890

.603 Statehood, 1890–

979.61–979.698 Geographic divisions

.61 Southern Idaho
Including Snake River, Snake River Plains region

.62 Southwestern counties

.621 Owyhee County

.623 Canyon County

.624 Payette County

.625 Washington County

.626 Adams County
Including Seven Devils Mountains

.627 Gem County

.628 Ada County

.628 1 Boise

.629 Elmore County
Including Arrow Rock Reservoir, Sawtooth Range

.63 South central counties
Including former Alturas County

.631 Camas County

.632 Blaine County
Including former Alta and Logan Counties, Craters of the Moon National Monument, Pioneer Mountains

.633 Minidoka County

.634 Lincoln County

.635 Jerome County

.636 Gooding County

979.637 Twin Falls County
Including falls of Snake River, e.g., Salmon, Auger, Shoshone, Twin Falls

.639 Cassia County
Including Goose Creek Mountains, Lake Walcott

.64 Southeastern counties
Including southern mountain region

.641 Oneida County

.642 Franklin County

.644 Bear Lake County
Including Wasatch Range in Idaho

.645 Caribou County
Including Preuss Range, Aspen Ridge

.647 Bannock County
Including Bannock Range

.649 Power County
Including American Falls Reservoir

.65 Northeastern counties

.651 Bingham County

.653 Bonneville County
Including Caribou Range, Grays Lake

.654 Teton County

.655 Madison County

.656 Fremont County

.657 Clark County
Including Birch Creek Valley

.658 Jefferson County

.659 Butte County

979.66 Central Idaho
Including Bitterroot Range in Idaho

.67 Southeast central counties
Including Sawtooth Mountains

.672 Custer County
Including Lost River Range

.674 Boise County

.676 Valley County

.678 Lemhi County
Including Salmon River Mountains, Lemhi Range, Yellowjacket Mountains, Beaverhead Mountains

.68 North central counties
Including northern mountain region

.682 Idaho County
Including Salmon River, Clearwater Mountains

.684 Lewis County

.685 Nez Perce County
Including Clearwater River

.686 Latah County

.688 Clearwater County

.69 Northern Idaho
Including Panhandle region

.691 Shoshone County
Including Coeur d'Alene Mountains

.693 Benewah County

.694 Kootenai County

.696 Bonner County
Including Cabinet Mountains in Idaho

.698 Boundary County

979.7 Washington

979.701–979.704 Period divisions

.701 Discovery and early exploration, 1592–1818

.702 British and preterritorial periods, 1818–1853

.703 Territorial period, 1853–1889

.704 Statehood, 1889–

979.71–979.799 Geographic divisions

.71 Eastern Washington

.72 Northeastern counties
Including Northeastern Highlands region

.721 Pend Oreille County

.723 Stevens County
Including Franklin D. Roosevelt Lake

.725 Ferry County
Including Kettle River Range

.728 Okanogan County
Including Sawtooth Ridge

.73 East central counties
Including Columbia Plateau region, Columbia River

.731 Douglas County
Including Grand Coulee Valley

.732 Grant County

.733 Franklin County

.734 Adams County

.735 Lincoln County

.737 Spokane County

.739 Whitman County
Including Palouse River

979.74 Southeastern counties
Including Snake River in Washington
.742 Asotin County
.744 Garfield County
.746 Columbia County
Including Blue Mountains region in Washington
.748 Walla Walla County
.75 Central counties
Including Cascade Mountains region
.751 Benton County
.753 Klickitat County
.755 Yakima County
Including Yakima Ridge, Yakima River and Valley
.757 Kittitas County
Including Wenatchee Mountains
.759 Chelan County
Including Entiat Range, Chelan Mountains, Wenatchee River and Valley
.76 Western Washington
.77 Puget Sound counties
Including Puget Sound, Puget Sound lowland region
.771 Snohomish County
.772 Skagit County
Including Fidalgo, Guemes, Cypress Islands; Rosario Strait
.773 Whatcom County
Including Lummi Island, Ruby Reservoir, Bellingham Bay
.774 San Juan County
Including San Juan, Orcas, Lopez Islands; Washington Sound; Haro Strait
.775 Island County
Including Whidbey and Camano Islands
.776 Kitsap County
Including Bainbridge Island, Hood Canal

979.777 King County
Including Vason Island
.778 Pierce County
Including Mount Rainier National Park
.779 Thurston County
.779 1 Olympia
.78 Southwest central counties
Including Columbia-Cowlitz Basin
.782 Lewis County
Including Cowlitz River
.784 Skamania County
.786 Clark County
Called Vancouver County, 1845–1849
.788 Cowlitz County
.79 Coastal counties
Including Coast Range, coastal lowland regions
.791 Wahkiakum County
.792 Pacific County
.794 Olympic Peninsula
Including Olympic Mountains
.795 Grays Harbor County
Called Chehalis County, 1854–1915
.797 Mason County
Called Sawamish County, 1854–1864
.798 Jefferson County
Including Olympic National Park
.799 Clallam County
Including Juan de Fuca Strait

979.8 **Alaska**

979.801–979.804 Period divisions

.801 Discovery and early exploration, 1741–1799

.802 Russian period, 1799–1867

.803 Preterritorial period, 1867–1912

Including discovery of gold, settlement of boundary disputes

.804 Territorial period, 1912–1958

.805 Statehood, 1958–

979.82–979.87 Geographic divisions

.82 Southeastern region

Coastal Range area between Dixon Entrance and Icy Bay

Including Alexander Archipelago, Sitka, Juneau, Ketchikan

.83 South central region

Pacific Coast area from Icy Bay to Cook Inlet, inland to Alaska Range

Including Alaska Range, Mount McKinley National Park, Kenai Peninsula, Cook Inlet, Matanuska Valley, Wrangell and Chugach Mountains, Anchorage, Cordova

.84 Southwestern region

Area from Cook Inlet to Norton Sound

Including Kodiak Island, Alaska Peninsula, Mount Katmai, Valley of Ten Thousand Smokes, Aleutian Islands, Bristol Bay, Kuskokwim Mountains, Nunivak Island, Pribilof Islands, Saint Lawrence Island, Norton Sound

.86 Central Plateau region

Area from Alaska Range to Brooks Range

Including Seward Peninsula, Nome, Kotzebue Sound, Yukon River and Valley, Fairbanks, Tanana River

.87 Arctic Slope region (Polar region)

Area between Brooks Range and Arctic Ocean

Including Brooks Range, Point Barrow, Colville River

980 **South America**

Including comprehensive works on Latin America, Spanish America, the Andes

980.01–980.03 Period divisions

.01 Early history to 1806

Including discovery, exploration, colonization

.02 Wars of Independence, 1806–1830

.03 Later 19th and 20th centuries, 1830–

.1–.6 **Indians of South America**

Divide like 970.1–970.6, e.g., South American Indian tribes 980.3; divide 980.4 like 981–989

For a specific ancient Indian civilization, see the subject, e.g., Inca civilization 985.01

981 **Brazil**

981.01–981.06 Period divisions

.01 Early history to 1534

Including discovery, conquest

.02 Hereditary captaincies, 1534–1549

.03 Colonial period, 1549–1822

.04 Empire, 1822–1889

For Paraguayan War, 1865–1870, see 989.205

.05 First republic, 1889–1930

.06 20th century, 1930–

981.1–981.7 Geographic divisions

.1 **Northern states**

Acre, Amazonas, Pará, Amapá, Rio Branco

Including Amazon River

981.2 **Northeastern states**

Including Maranhão, Piauí

.3 Easternmost northeastern states

Ceará, Rio Grande do Norte, Paraíba, Pernambuco, Alagoas, Fernando de Noronha

.4 **Eastern states**

Including Sergipe, Bahia

.5 Southernmost eastern states

Minas Gerais, Espírito Santo, Rio de Janeiro (state), Federal District, Rio de Janeiro (city)

.6 **Southern states**

São Paulo, Paraná, Santa Catarina, Rio Grande do Sul

Including Paraná River in Brazil

.7 **Central west states**

Goiás, Mato Grosso, Rondônia (called until 1956 Guaporé)

982 Argentina

982.01–982.06 Period divisions

.01 Early history to 1516

.02 Discovery, conquest, colonization, 1516–1810

.03 Revolutionary period, 1810–1829

Including Wars of Independence, 1810–1817

.04 Republic, 1829–1861

.05 Constitutional period, 1861–1910

For Paraguayan War, 1865–1870, see 989.205

.06 20th century, 1910–

982.1–982.7 Geographic divisions

.1 **Río de la Plata region**

Buenos Aires (province and federal capital), La Pampa

Including Río de la Plata

For Uruguayan shore of Río de la Plata, see 989.51

982.2 **Mesopotamian region**

Santa Fe, Entre Ríos, Corrientes, Misiones

Including Paraná River, Uruguay River

.3 **Northeast region**

Chaco, Formosa

Including comprehensive works on Gran Chaco

For Chaco Boreal, see 989.22

.4 **Northwest region**

Salta, Jujuy, Catamarca, La Rioja, Tucumán

.5 **Central region**

Córdoba, Santiago del Estero

.6 **Central Highland region**

San Juan, Mendoza, San Luis

.7 **Patagonian region**

Neuquén, Río Negro, Chubut, Comodoro Rivadavia (military zone), Santa Cruz, Tierra del Fuego

Including comprehensive works on Tierra del Fuego

For Chilean islands of Tierra del Fuego, see 983.6

983 Chile

983.01–983.064 Period divisions

.01 Early history to 1535

.02 Discovery and conquest, 1535–1560

.03 Colonial period, 1560–1810

.04 Republic, 1810–1830

.05 Autocratic republic, 1830–1861

.06 Later republics, 1861–

.061 Liberal republic, 1861–1891

Including war with Spain; comprehensive works on War of the Pacific, 1879–1883

For participation in War of the Pacific by a specific country, see the country, e.g., by Bolivia 984.045

.062 Revolution of 1891 [*formerly* *983.07]

983.063 Democratic republic, 1891–1924 [*formerly* *983.08]

.064 Republic, 1924– [*formerly* *983.09]

[*.07] Revolution of 1891

Class in 983.062

[*.08] Democratic republic, 1891–1924

Class in 983.063

[*.09] Contemporary Chile, 1924–

Class in 983.064

983.1–983.6 Geographic divisions

.1 **Desert region**

Tarapacá, Antofagasta, Atacama

.2 **Northern region**

Coquimbo, Aconcagua, Valparaiso

.3 **Central region**

Santiago, O'Higgins, Colchagua, Curicó, Talca, Maule, Linares, Ñuble, Concepción

.4 **Frontier region**

Arauco, Bío-Bío, Malleco, Cautín

.5 **Southern region**

Valdivia, Osorno, Llanquihue, Chiloé

.6 **Austral region**

Aysén, Magallanes

Including Strait of Magellan

For comprehensive works on Tierra del Fuego, see 982.7

984 Bolivia

984.01–984.05 Period divisions

.01 Early history to 1532

.02 Discovery and conquest, 1532–1559

.03 Colonial period, 1559–1809

984.04 Republic, 1809–1899

.041 War of Independence, 1809–1825

.042 First republic, 1825–1831

.044 Administration of Andrés Santa Cruz, 1831–1839

Including confederation with Peru, 1835–1836

.045 Period of boundary wars, 1839–1883

Including War of the Pacific, 1879–1883

For comprehensive works on War of the Pacific, see 983.061

.046 Conservative republic, 1883–1899

.05 20th century, 1899–

984.1–984.4 Geographic divisions

.1 **Mountain region**

La Paz, Oruro, Potosí

Including Lake Titicaca

.2 **Valley region**

Cochabamba, Chuquisaca, Tarija

.3 **Plain region: Santa Cruz**

.4 **Amazon region**

Beni, Pando

985 Peru

985.01–985.063 Period divisions

.01 Early history to 1519

Including Inca Empire

.02 Discovery and conquest, 1519–1555

.03 Colonial period, 1555–1808

.04 Independence, 1808–1824

.05 Rise of military power, 1824–1867

Including confederation with Bolivia, 1835–1836

985.06 Later 19th and 20th centuries, 1867–

.061 1867–1883

Including War of the Pacific, 1879–1883

For comprehensive works on War of the Pacific, see 983.061

.062 Reconstruction, 1883–1895 [*formerly* *985.07]

.063 20th century, 1895– [*formerly* *985.08]

[*.07] Reconstruction, 1883–1895

Class in 985.062

[*.08] 20th century, 1895–

Class in 985.063

985.1–985.4 Geographic divisions

.1 Northern departments

Tumbes, Piura, Lambayeque, Libertad, Cajamarca

.2 Central departments

Lima, Ancash, Ica, Junín, Pasco, Huánuco, Huancavelica, Ayacucho, Apurimac

.3 Southern departments

Arequipa, Moquegua, Tacna, Cuzco, Puno

Including Lake Titicaca in Peru

.4 Eastern departments

Loreto, Amazonas, San Martín, Madre de Dios

986 Colombia, Panama, Ecuador

.1 Colombia

986.101–986.106 3 Period divisions

.101 Early history to 1550

Including pre-Hispanic period, discovery, conquest

.102 Colonial period, 1550–1810

.103 Independence, 1810–1819

.104 Republic of Colombia, 1819–1830

.105 New Granada, 1831–1863

Including Granadine Confederation, 1858–1863

986.106 Later republics, 1863–

.106 1 United States of Colombia, 1863–1886

.106 2 Republic of Colombia, 1886–1930 [*formerly* *986.107]

.106 3 Later 20th century, 1930– [*formerly* *986.108]

[*.107] Republic of Colombia, 1886–1930

Class in 986.106 2

[*.108] Later 20th century, 1930–

Class in 986.106 3

986.11–986.18 Geographic divisions

.11 Atlantic Coast region

Bolívar, Atlántico, Magdalena, Guajira

.12 Northwestern region

Antioquia, Norte de Santander, Santander, Chocó

.13 North central region

Including Caldas, Tolima, Boyacá, Arauca, Vichada

.14 Cundinamarca

Including Bogotá

.15 South central region

Cauca, Valle del Cauca, Huila, Meta

.16 Southern region

Including Nariño, Putumayo, Caquetá, Vaupés

.17 Amazonas

.18 San Andrés y Providencia

.2 Panama

.201 Early history to 1550

Including pre-Columbian period, discovery, conquest

.202 Colonial period, 1550–1821

.203 19th century, 1821–1903

.204 Independence, 1903–1904

.205 Republic, 1904–

.21 Panama (city)

986.3 **Panama Canal Zone**

.6 **Ecuador**

986.601–986.607 Period divisions

.601 Early history to 1561
Including discovery, conquest

.602 Colonial period, 1562–1809

.603 Independence, 1810–1822

.604 Quito Presidency as part of Greater Colombia, 1822–1830

.605 Republic, 1830–1859

.606 Restoration, 1860–1895

.607 20th century, 1896–

986.61–986.65 Geographic divisions

.61 Northern interior provinces
Bolívar, Carchi, Chimborazo, Cotopaxi, Imbabura, Pichincha, Tungurahua

.62 Southern interior provinces
Azuay, Cañar, Loja

.63 Coastal provinces
Esmeraldas, Guayas, Manabí, El Oro
Including Los Ríos

.64 Eastern provinces
Santiago-Zamora, Napo-Pastaza

.65 Galápagos Islands

987 Venezuela

Including Orinoco River

987.01–987.063 Period divisions

.01 Early history to 1498

.02 Discovery and conquest, 1498–1528

987.03 Colonial period, 1528–1806

.04 Independence, 1806–1819

.05 Venezuela as part of Greater Colombia, 1819–1830

.06 Later 19th and 20th centuries, 1830–

.061 Republic, 1830–1864

.062 Federal period, 1864–1900 [*formerly* *987.07]

.063 20th century, 1900– [*formerly* *987.08]

[*.07] Federal period, 1864–1900
Class in 987.062

[*.08] 20th century, 1900–
Class in 987.063

987.1–987.71 Geographic divisions

.1 **Western region**
Mérida, Trujillo, Táchira

.2 **Northwestern region**
Zulia, Falcón, Lara, Yaracuy
Including Lake Maracaibo

.3 **Central region**
Aragua, Carabobo, Miranda

.4 **Lake region**
Apure, Barinas, Portuguesa, Cojedes, Guárico

.5 **Eastern region**
Anzoátegui, Sucre, Nueva Esparta, Monagas

.6 **Guiana region**
Bolívar, Territoria Delta Amacuro, Amazonas

.7 **Federal District**

.71 Caracas

988 Guiana

.1 **British Guiana**

.2 **French Guiana**

.3 **Dutch Guiana (Surinam)**

989 Paraguay and Uruguay

[†.1] **Uruguay**

Class in 989.5

.2 **Paraguay**

989.201–989.207 Period divisions

.201 Early history to 1524

.202 Discovery, exploration, conquest, 1524–1537

.203 Colonial period, 1537–1811

.204 Independence, 1811–1814

.205 Dictatorship, 1814–1870

Including Paraguayan War, 1865–1870

.206 Republic, 1870–1902

.207 20th century, 1902–

989.21–989.22 Geographic divisions

.21 Eastern region

Concepción, Amambay, San Pedro, Caaguazú, Alto Paraná, Central, La Cordillera, Guairá, Paraguarí, Caazapá, Ñeembucú, Misiones, Itapúa, Capital District

.22 Western region

Presidente Hayes, Boquerón, Olimpo

Including Chaco Boreal

For comprehensive works on Gran Chaco, see 982.3

989.5 **Uruguay [*formerly* †989.1]**

Including Uruguay River in Uruguay

989.501–989.506 Period divisions

.501 Early history to 1516

.502 Discovery and conquest, 1516–1724

.503 Colonial period, 1724–1811

.504 Independence, 1811–1825

.505 Republic, 1825–1830

.505 5 National state, 1830–1886 [*formerly* *989.506]

For Paraguayan War, 1865–1870, see 989.205

.506 Late 19th and 20th centuries, 1886–

Class national state, 1830–1886 [*formerly* *989.506] in 989.505 5

989.51–989.53 Geographic divisions

.51 Coastal region

Montevideo, Canelones, Maldonado, San José, Colonia, Rocha

Including Uruguayan shore of the Río de la Plata

.52 Central region

Lavalleja, Florida, Flores, Soriano, Treinte y Tres, Durazno, Cerro Largo, Río Negro

.53 Northern region

Tacuarembó, Paysandú, Rivera, Salto, Artigas

990 Pacific Ocean islands

Including Oceania; comprehensive works on islands of the world

For a specific island or group of islands not provided for here, see the subject, e.g., Saint Helena 997.12, *Madagascar* 969.1, *Galápagos Islands* 986.65

991 Indonesia

Formerly Dutch (Netherlands) East Indies; republic formed, 1945, of Sunda Islands, Moluccas, numerous small islands

Including comprehensive works on Malay Archipelago (Malaysia), on Southwest Pacific

Class works on a specific part of Indonesia with the part, e.g., Java 992.2; if preferred, class all specific parts of Indonesia in 991

For a specific part of the Malay Archipelago, of the Southwest Pacific, see the part, e.g., Philippine Islands 991.4; *Dutch New Guinea,* 995.1; *comprehensive works on Malay Peninsula and Malay Archipelago,* 959.5

991.01–991.03 Period divisions

.01 Early history to 1596

Including Hindu period; arrival of Portuguese, 1511; of Dutch, 1596

.02 Dutch colony, 1596–1945

Including wars with Portuguese and English; British rule, 1811–1816; Dutch colonial period, 1816–1942; Java War, 1825–1830; Japanese occupation, 1942–1945

.03 Republic, 1945–

Including war with Dutch, 1945–1949; separate state, 1950–

991.1–991.3 Geographic divisions

For Sunda Islands, see 992

.1 Borneo

Including Indonesian Borneo

.15 North Borneo, Sarawak, Brunei

British possessions and protectorate

.2 Celebes

.3 Moluccas (Spice Islands)

991.4 Philippine Islands

991.401–991.404 Period divisions

.401 Early history to 1564

Including discovery, 1521

.402 Spanish period, 1564–1898

Including struggles with Portuguese and Dutch; English rule, 1762–1763

.403 American period, 1898–1946

Including Commonwealth, 1935–1942; Japanese occupation, 1942–1945

.404 Republic, 1946–

991.41–991.49 Geographic divisions

.41 Luzon

Including Manila, Quezon City

.43 Mindoro

.44 Palawan

.45 Visayan Islands

Including Bohol, Cebu, Masbate, Leyte, Negros, Panay, Samar

.47 Mindanao

.49 Other islands

Including Sulu Archipelago, former sultanate ceded to Philippines, 1940

992 Sunda Islands

Part of Indonesia

Class comprehensive works on Indonesia in 991; if preferred, use 991 also for specific parts of Indonesia

For Borneo, see 991.1; *Celebes,* 991.2

.1 Sumatra

.2 Java

Including Jakarta (Batavia); Madura

992.3 **Lesser Sunda Islands**

Including Bali, Flores, Lombok

.4 Timor

Including Portuguese Timor colony (eastern half)

[*.5] Andaman and Nicobar Islands

Class in 954.88

993 New Zealand and Melanesia

.1 **New Zealand**

Including comprehensive works on Australasia

For a specific part of Australasia, see the part, e.g., Australia 994

993.101–993.103 Period divisions

.101 Early history to 1840

Including early Maori civilization

.102 Colonial period, 1840–1907

Including Maori wars, 1843–1847, 1860–1870

.103 Dominion status, 1907–

993.11–993.157 5 Geographic divisions

.11 Outlying islands

Including Chatham, Pitt, Auckland, Antipodes Islands

For a specific island dependency of New Zealand, see the subject, e.g., Cook Islands 996.23

.12 North Island

.122 Auckland province

Including Auckland city, North Auckland land district

.123 Taranaki province

.125 Hawke's Bay province

Including Gisborne land district

.127 Wellington province

Including Wellington city

993.15 South Island (Middle Island) and Stewart Island

Including Nelson province

.152 Marlborough province

.154 Westland province

.155 Canterbury province

Including Christchurch

.157 Otago province

Including Dunedin, Southland land district

.157 5 Stewart Island

.2 **Melanesia**

Comprehensive works

For Louisiade Archipelago, D'Entrecasteaux Islands, see 995.3; *Fiji Islands,* 996.11

.25 New Caledonia

Overseas territory of French Union, 1946–

Including Isle of Pines, Huon Islands, Chesterfield Islands, Walpole Island, Belep Islands, Wallis and Futuna Islands

.3 Loyalty Islands

Dependency of New Caledonia

.4 New Hebrides

Anglo-French condominium establisht, 1906

.5 Solomon Islands

British protectorate

Including Bougainville and Buka (governed separately by Australia as mandated territory), Santa Cruz, New Georgia, Shortland, Guadalcanal, Malaita, San Cristobal, Santa Isabel, Choiseul

For comprehensive works on Territory of New Guinea, see 995.5

.6 Bismarck Archipelago

Part of Territory of New Guinea under Australian trusteeship, 1947–

Including New Britain, New Ireland

For comprehensive works on Territory of New Guinea, see 995.5

.7 Admiralty Islands

994 Australia

994.01–994.05 Period divisions

.01 Early history to 1788

.02 Settlement and early growth, 1788–1851

Including penal settlements

.03 Colonial administration, 1851–1901

Including discovery of gold, 1851

.04 Commonwealth, 1901–

Including period 1923–1945 [*formerly* †*994.05]; comprehensive works on 20th century [*formerly* †994.05]

.05 Later 20th century, 1945–

Class period 1923–1945 [*formerly* †*994.05], comprehensive works on 20th century [*formerly* †994.05] in 994.04

994.1–994.8 Geographic divisions

.1 **Western Australia**

Including Perth

.2 **South Australia**

Including Adelaide

.29 **Northern Territory**

Including Port Darwin; Arnhem Land

.3 **Queensland**

Including Brisbane; Great Barrier Reef, Gulf of Carpentaria

.4 **New South Wales**

Including Sydney; Murray River

For Australian Capital Territory, see 994.7; *Lord Howe Island,* 994.8

.5 **Victoria**

Including Phillip Island [*formerly* †994.8]; Melbourne

.6 **Tasmania**

Including Hobart

994.7 **Australian Capital Territory**

Including Canberra

.8 **Outlying islands**

Including Lord Howe Island (dependency of New South Wales), Norfolk Island

Class Phillip Island [*formerly* †994.8] in 994.5

For Australian New Guinea, see 995.3; *Territory of New Guinea,* 995.5

995 New Guinea (Papua)

.1 **Dutch (Netherlands) New Guinea**

.3 **Australian New Guinea (Territory of Papua)**

Including Port Moresby; Louisiade Archipelago; D'Entrecasteaux Islands; comprehensive works on western New Guinea

For Territory of New Guinea, see 995.5

.5 **Territory of New Guinea**

Comprehensive works on northeastern New Guinea, Bismarck Archipelago, Buka and Bougainville in the Solomons, governed by Australia under United Nations trusteeship

For Bismarck Archipelago, see 993.6; *Buka and Bougainville,* 993.5

996 Polynesia

Comprehensive works

Including Central Pacific

For a specific island or group of islands of Polynesia, see the subject, e.g., Ellice Islands 996.81; *Micronesia,* 996.5; *Melanesia,* 993.2

.1 **Islands of South Pacific**

Comprehensive works

For a specific island or group of islands of South Pacific, see the subject, e.g., Society Islands 996.21; *comprehensive works on Southwest Pacific,* 991; *Micronesia,* 996.5; *Melanesia,* 993.2

.11 Fiji Islands

Melanesian islands, ceded by native chiefs to Great Britain, 1874

For comprehensive works on Melanesia, see 993.2

996.12 Tonga (Friendly Islands)

British protectorate

.13 Samoa

Including American Samoa (Navigators' Islands)

For Western Samoa, see 996.14

.14 Western Samoa

Former German possession under United Nations trusteeship to New Zealand

.15 Tokelau (Union Islands)

Administered by Western Samoa as part of New Zealand trusteeship

.18 Isolated islands of South Pacific [*formerly* †997, *997.2]

Including Easter Island, Pitcairn and adjacent Henderson, Ducie, Oeno Islands

.2 French Oceania

.21 Society Islands

.211 Tahiti

.22 Tubuai (Austral) Islands

Including Rapa Island, Gambier Islands

.23 Cook Islands

Annext to New Zealand, 1901

.24 Manihiki Islands

Under New Zealand Cook Islands administration

.3 Marquesas Islands

Acquired by France, 1842

.32 Tuamotu Islands (Low Archipelago)

Annext by France, 1881

.4 Line (Equatorial) Islands

Including Christmas, Fanning, Washington Islands [*all formerly* *996.81], administered by British colony of Gilbert and Ellice Islands; Flint, Vostok, Caroline (Thornton), Starbuck, Malden Islands; Jarvis Island, claimed by both United States and Great Britain

For Palmyra Island, see 996.932

996.5 Micronesia

Including Wake Island [*formerly* *997.2]; United States Trust Territory of the Pacific Islands

.6 Caroline Islands

Including Palau, Truk, Yap

.7 Marianas (Ladrone) Islands

Including Guam (United States possession), Saipan, Tinian

.8 Marshall Islands

Including Bikini, Eniwetok, Kwajalein

.81 Gilbert and Ellice Islands

Including Makin, Tarawa; comprehensive works on British colony of Gilbert and Ellice Islands (Gilbert Islands, Ellice Islands, Ocean Island, Fanning Island, Washington Island, Christmas Island, Phoenix Islands); Canton and Enderbury Islands, claimed by both United States and Great Britain

Class Christmas, Fanning, Washington Islands [*formerly* *996.81] in 996.4

.85 Nauru (Pleasant Island) [*formerly* *997.2]

Under United Nations trusteeship administered by Australia

.9 Hawaiian Islands (Territory of Hawaii)

996.902–996.903 Period divisions

.902 Native rule and republic to 1898

.903 United States period, 1898–

Annext, 1898; territory, 1900–

996.91–996.99 Geographic divisions

.91 Hawaii County (Island of Hawaii)

Including Hilo; Mauna Loa, Mauna Kea

.92 Maui County

.921 Maui Island

.922 Kahoolawe Island

996.923 Lanai Island

.924 Molokai Island

.93 Honolulu County

Including uninhabited islands

For outlying islands, see 996.99

.931 Oahu Island

Including Pearl Harbor

.931 5 Honolulu city

.932 Palmyra Island

.94 Kauai County

.941 Kauai Island

.942 Niihau Island

.99 Outlying islands

Including Midway [*formerly* *997.2], Baker, Howland, Johnston Islands, all under Honolulu County for census purposes, tho not part of Territory of Hawaii

For Palmyra Island, see 996.932; *Canton and Enderbury Islands,* 996.81; *Jarvis Island,* 996.4

997 Atlantic Ocean islands

Including Bouvet Island

Class isolated islands of South Pacific [*formerly* †997] in 996.18

For a specific island or group of islands not provided for here, see the subject, e.g., Azores 946.99

.11 Falkland Islands (Islas Malvinas)

Crown colony annext to Great Britain, 1908

Including dependencies: South Georgia; South Orkney, South Sandwich, South Shetland Islands

For Palmer Peninsula (Graham's Land), see 999

997.12 Saint Helena

British crown colony

Including dependencies: Ascension Island, Tristan da Cunha Island, Gough Island, Inaccessible Island, Nightingale Island

[*.2] Isolated islands of Pacific Ocean

Class Midway Island in 996.99, Wake Island in 996.5, Nauru in 996.85, Easter Island in 996.18

[*.21] Pitcairn and adjacent islands

Class in 996.18

998 Arctic Regions

Including North Pole, Arctic Ocean; comprehensive works on the Polar Regions, on Eskimos

For Canadian Arctic, see 971.22; *Antarctic Regions,* 999

.1 Svalbard (Spitsbergen Archipelago)

Including Barents and Bear Islands, Barents Sea

.2 Greenland

.3 Jan Mayen Island

.5 Franz Josef Land

.6 Novaya Zemlya (New Land)

.7 Severnaya Zemlya (Northern Land)

999 Antarctic Regions

Including Antarctica, Palmer Peninsula (Graham's Land), Ross and Weddell Seas, South Pole

For South Shetland Islands, see 997.11

CONTINUED
ON
NEXT REEL

2.0 mm ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz1234567890

1.5 mm ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz1234567890

PM-MGP
METRIC GENERAL PURPOSE TARGET
PHOTOGRAPHIC

200 mm

150 mm

100 mm

A3

A4

A5

1.0 mm ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz1234567890

1.5 mm ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz1234567890

2.0 mm ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz 1234567890

2.5 mm ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz 1234567890

PRECISION℠ RESOLUTION TARGETS

A&P International
2715 Upper Afton Road, St. Paul, MN 55119-4760
612/738-9329 FAX 612/738-1496

4.5 mm ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz 1234567890

3.5 mm ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz1234567890

END OF REEL

PLEASE REWIND